OXFORD

obook pro

HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

OXFORD HASS 8

SERIES CONSULTANTS:
JULIE DAVIS
KAY BISHOP

MARK EASTON
MAGGY SALDAIS
KATRINA DAVEY
RICHARD SMITH
KIRSTIN WOODARD
VLADIMIR DUMOVIC
BRONWYN COOK
OLIVIA ANDREW

SECOND EDITION

AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

HUMANITIES AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

OXFORD HASS 8

SERIES CONSULTANTS:
JULIE DAVIS
KAY BISHOP

MARK EASTON
MAGGY SALDAIS
KATRINA DAVEY
RICHARD SMITH
KIRSTIN WOODARD
VLADIMIR DUMOVIC
BRONWYN COOK
OLIVIA ANDREW

SECOND EDITION

AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

obook pro

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trademark
of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries.

Published in Australia by
Oxford University Press
Level 8, 737 Bourke Street, Docklands, Victoria 3008, Australia.

First published 2016
Second edition 2023

ISBN 9780190331627

Edited by Natasha Broadstock
Typeset by Newgen KnowledgeWorks Pvt. Ltd., Chennai, India
Proofread by Carolyn Leslie
Indexed by Max McMaster
Printed in Singapore by Markono Print Media Pte Ltd

The authors and publisher of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences second edition Australian Curriculum* would like to thank Peter Lawrence and Sally Lawrence (Black Cockatoo) for their review of content concerning First Nations peoples of Australia.

Oxford University Press Australia & New Zealand is committed to sourcing paper responsibly.

Acknowledgement of Country
Oxford University Press acknowledges the Traditional Owners of the many lands on which we create and share our learning resources. We acknowledge the Traditional Owners as the original storytellers, teachers and students of this land we call Australia. We pay our respects to Elders, past and present, for the ways in which they have enabled the teachings of their rich cultures and knowledge systems to be shared for millennia.

Warning to First Nations Australians
Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples are advised that this publication may include images or names of people now deceased.

CONTENTS

PART 1
Geography

Concepts and skills

Landscapes and landforms

Chapter 3
Mountain landscapes 54

Chapter 4
Coastal landscapes 94

Changing nations

Chapter 5
Urban life 128

Chapter 6
Migration 170

PART 2
History

Concepts and skills

Medieval Europe and the early modern world

Empires and expansions

Asia-Pacific world

PART 4
Civics and citizenship

Skills

Government and democracy

Citizenship, diversity and identity

Laws and citizens

CONTENTS BY SKILL

Throughout Humanities and Social Sciences, you will study four distinct subjects: Geography, History, Economics & Business and Civics & Citizenship. Each of these subjects has its own set of key skill areas that you will learn about and develop through the course of your study. This table of contents shows where you can find the opportunities to practise these skills, both in the book and on obook pro. For more information on the key skill areas listed, visit the Toolkit for each subject.

Geography skills

continued

History skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Generating questions	7	201
		Exploring the English Renaissance	9	obook
		Generating historical inquiry questions	11	323
		Extracting information to answer research questions	12	367
		Using the internet to find relevant, credible and reliable sources	13	obook
		Researching the earliest settlers in Japan	15	obook
		Summarising your research	15	384
		Identifying and locating relevant sources	17	obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Using historical sources	USING HISTORICAL SOURCES	Using Venn diagrams to compare information from a range of sources	8	241
		Drawing conclusions about the usefulness of sources	8	251
		Identifying the origin and purpose of primary sources	8	267
		Analysing primary sources	9	obook
		Evaluating the usefulness of a historical source	10	obook
		Understanding motive in historical sources	10	obook
		Determining the usefulness and reliability of sources	11	313
		Analysing primary sources	12	349
		Analysing a source using DAMMIT U	13	obook
		Creating a concept map	14	obook
		Analysing a source on social order	15	obook
		Writing a source analysis	15	400
		Analysing a map	16	obook
		Analysing historical representations	16	obook
		Analysing primary sources	17	obook
		Locating, comparing, selecting and using information from a range of sources as evidence	17	obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Historical perspectives and interpretations	HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES & INTERPRETATIONS	Creating a timeline	7	211
		Exploring cause and effect and plague	7	213
		Exploring continuity and change and pandemics	7	215
		Interpreting a source	8	245
		Sequencing events of the Crusades	8	obook
		Plotting events on a timeline	9	obook
		Comparing historical perspectives	10	obook
		Analysing historical significance	11	307
		Interpreting sources	13	obook
		Sequencing the rulers of Japan during the Shogunate era	15	obook
		Identifying continuity and change in sumo wrestling	15	obook
		Analysing perspectives	15	411
		Analysing perspectives	16	obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Preparing a speech	8	285
		Communicating Chapter 8	8	obook
		Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation	9	obook
		Communicating Chapter 9	9	obook
		Communicating Chapter 10	10	obook
		Writing a historical discussion	11	328
		Communicating Chapter 11	11	obook
		Integrating evidence into your explanations	12	357
		Communicating Chapter 12	12	obook
		Writing an extended response	13	obook
		Communicating Chapter 13	13	obook
		Writing descriptions	14	obook
		Creating and presenting an audiovisual presentation	14	obook
		Communicating Chapter 14	14	obook
		Writing a historical description	15	397
		Writing an evaluative essay	15	413
		Communicating Chapter 15	15	obook
		Developing a written historical argument	16	obook
		Communicating Chapter 16	16	obook
		Communicating Chapter 17	17	obook

Economics & business skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Investigating why house prices increase Comparing savings accounts	19 19	obook obook
Curriculum sub-strand: Interpreting and analysing	INTERPRETING & ANALYSING	Analysing house prices Analysing economic data from a bar graph	19 19	433 447
Curriculum sub-strand: Evaluating, concluding and decision making	EVALUATING, CONCLUDING & DECISION MAKING	Evaluating options Evaluating pros and cons of working from home Creating a budget	18 19 19	427 obook 451
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Constructing a demand graph Communicating Chapter 19	19 19	440 obook

Civics & citizenship skills

	Key skill	Practise the skill	Chapter	Page number
Curriculum sub-strand: Questioning and researching	QUESTIONING & RESEARCHING	Exploring First Nations' perspectives Investigating Australia's national identity Exploring public holidays in Australia	22 22 22	obook obook 499
Curriculum sub-strand: Analysis, evaluation and interpretation	ANALYSIS, EVALUATION & INTERPRETATION	Analysing political cartoons Analysing the *Nationality and Citizenship Act 1948* Evaluating opportunities and limitations of laws	21 22 23	476 495 509
Curriculum sub-strand: Civic participation and decision making	CIVIC PARTICIPATION & DECISION MAKING	Creating a petition Drafting a bill	21 23	485 521
Curriculum sub-strand: Communicating	COMMUNICATING	Communicating Chapter 21 Communicating Chapter 22 Communicating Chapter 23	21 22 23	obook obook obook

INTRODUCING OXFORD HASS 7–10

Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences Australian Curriculum has been developed to meet the requirements of version 9.0 of the *Australian Curriculum: Humanities and Social Sciences* across Years 7–10. As well as offering complete coverage of *Geography, History, Economics and Business,* and *Civics and Citizenship*, this new edition ensures that students build their Humanities and Social Sciences skills across all four subjects, preparing them for success in HASS subjects in the senior years.

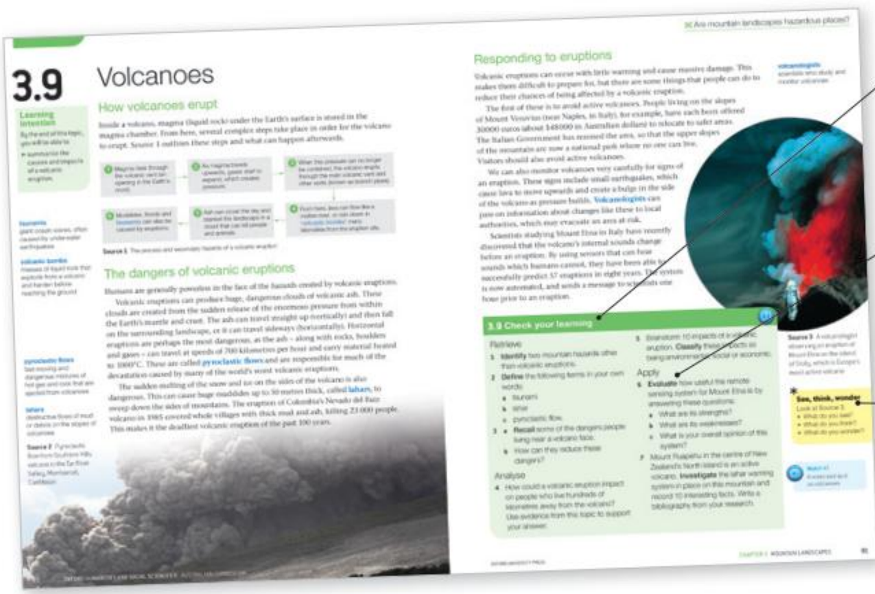
The series offers a completely integrated suite of print and digital resources to meet your needs, including:

> Student Book
> Student obook pro
> Teacher obook pro.

Key features of Student Books

> The Student Books combine complete curriculum coverage with clear and engaging design.
> Each print Student Book comes with complete access to all of the digital resources available on Student obook pro.

Focus on skill development

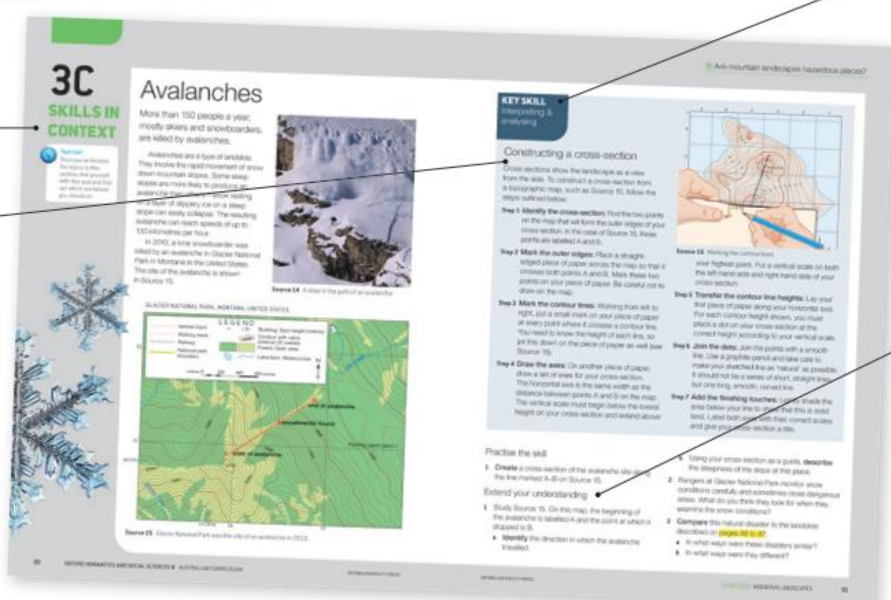


Check your learning
- Each topic finishes with a set of questions that enable students to meet the learning intentions and consolidate their learning.

Cognitive verbs
- Questions are generally phrased using bolded cognitive verbs, which state what is expected of a student and help develop their understanding of questions beyond 'who, what, when, where and why'.

Visible thinking prompts
- Visible thinking prompts encourage students to develop their critical thinking and analysis skills.

Key skills
- Key skill activities enable students to practise and master skills in each subject. More key skill activities are available via Student obook pro to provide comprehensive coverage of HASS skills.



Skills in Context tasks
- Skills in Context tasks provide in-depth skills practice, encouraging students to apply the knowledge and skills they have learnt to a new case study, event or issue.

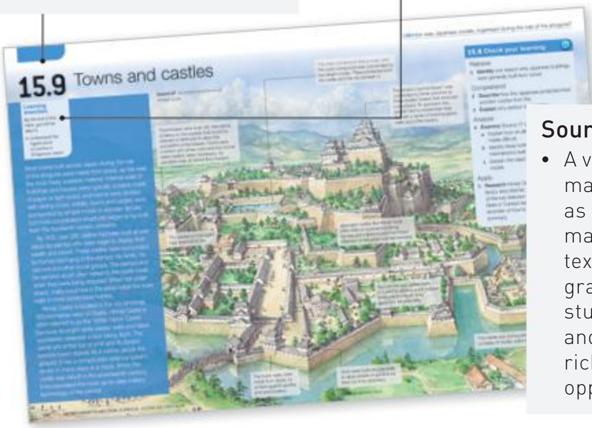
Extend your understanding
- These activities challenge students to conduct further research or complete group work to deepen their understanding of an issue or skill.

Focus on engagement

Topic-based approach
- Chapter content is sequenced in numbered topics to support teaching and learning.

Learning intentions
- Each topic begins with a statement of learning intentions, which link the content to the curriculum.

Integrated digital resources
- Digital icons signpost a range of engaging resources that can be accessed via Student obook pro, including drag-and-drop activities, video quizzes, virtual field trips and quick quizzes. These resources are directly integrated with the topic being covered.



Source materials
- A variety of source materials such as photographs, maps, illustrations, text extracts and graphs will spark students' curiosity and provide rich learning opportunities.

Focus on support for mixed-ability classrooms

Margin glossary terms
- On-page glossary definitions are provided for key terms, supporting students at their point of learning. Key terms also appear in a glossary at the end of the book, and can be revised in a Quizlet game via Student obook pro.

Easy-to-access text and design
- The text is written in clear and concise language and the text design is appealing and easy to navigate.

Structured questions
- Questions for each topic are categorised according to the Marzano and Kendall taxonomy, catering for a range of abilities.

Chapter review
- At the end of each chapter, a review activity gives students the chance to consolidate their knowledge and apply the skills they have learnt throughout.
- Students are encouraged to self-assess their learning in the chapter checklist at the end of the chapter. If students do not feel confident about their learning, they are directed back to the relevant topic.

Focus on STEAM

Integrated STEAM projects
- Take the hard work out of cross-curricular learning with engaging STEAM projects. Two fully integrated projects are included at the end of each book in the series, and are scaffolded and mapped to the Humanities and Social Sciences, Science and Maths curricula. The same projects also feature in the corresponding Oxford Science and Oxford Maths series to assist cross-curricular learning.

Problem solving through design thinking
- Each STEAM project investigates a real-world problem that students are encouraged to problem-solve using design thinking.

Full digital support
- Each STEAM project is supported by a wealth of digital resources, including student booklets to scaffold students through the design thinking process of each project, videos to support key concepts and skills, and implementation and assessment advice for teachers.

Key features of Student obook pro

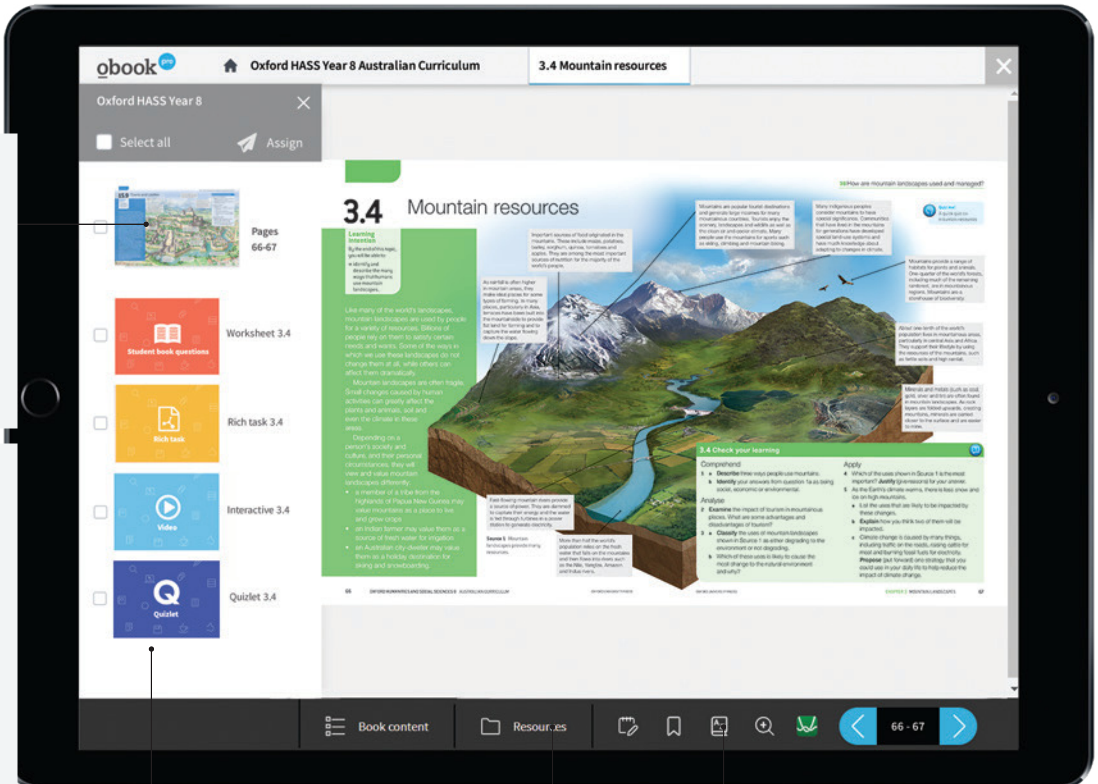
obook pro

> Student obook pro is a completely digital product delivered via Oxford's online learning platform, **Oxford Digital**.

> It offers a complete digital version of the Student Book with interactive note-taking, highlighting and bookmarking functionality, allowing students to revisit points of learning.

> A complete ePDF of the Student Book is also available for download for offline use and read-aloud functionality.

Focus on eLearning



Complete digital version of the Student Book

- This digital version of the Student Book is true to the print version, making it easy to navigate and transition between print and digital.

Interactive assessments

- Each topic in the Student Book is accompanied by an interactive assessment that can be used to consolidate concepts and skills and for formative assessment.
- These interactive assessments provide a mix of auto- and teacher-corrected questions, with students receiving instant feedback on achievement and progress. Students can also access all their online assessment results to track their own progress and reflect on their learning.

Quizlet

- Integrated Quizlet sets, including real-time online quizzes with live leaderboards, motivate students by providing interactive games that can be played solo or as a class. Quizlet can be used for revision or as a warm-up activity when a chapter is introduced.

Additional resources

- A rich variety of additional resources such as interactive layered maps, videos, worksheets, quizzes and weblinks are linked to individual topics in the book so they can be accessed at the point of learning.

Integrated dictionary

- Each digital Student Book provides an integrated Australian Concise Oxford Dictionary look-up feature, so students can quickly access any terminology they aren't sure of and continue their learning.

Benefits for students

> integrated Australian Concise Oxford Dictionary look-up feature

> interactive assessments to consolidate understanding

> integrated Quizlet sets including real-time online quizzes with live leaderboards

> additional resources available at the point of learning

> access to their online assessment results to track their own progress

Key features of Teacher obook pro

obook pro

- Teacher obook pro is a completely digital product delivered via **Oxford Digital**.
- Each chapter and topic of the Student Book is accompanied by full teaching support. Teaching programs clearly direct learning pathways throughout each chapter and provide ideas for differentiation.
- Teachers can use their Teacher obook pro to share notes and easily assign resources or assessments to students, including due dates and email notifications.

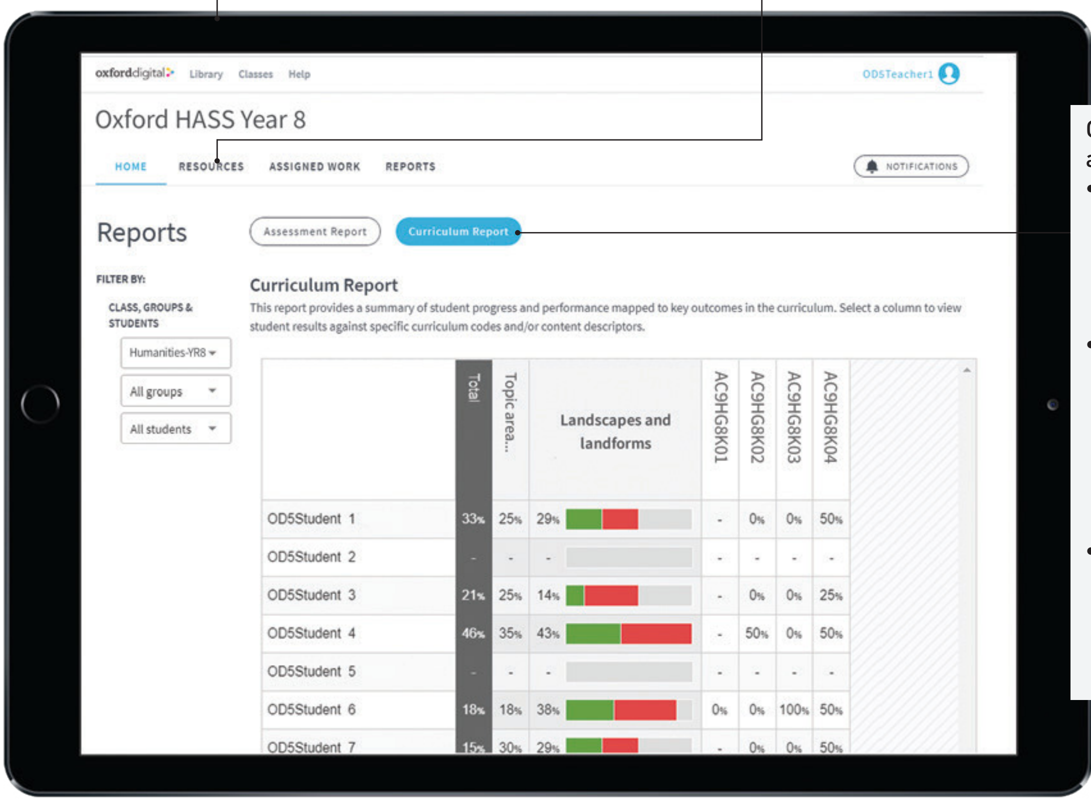
Focus on assessment and reporting

Complete teaching support

- Teaching support provides full lesson and assessment planning, ensuring there is more time to focus on students.

Additional resources

- Each chapter of the Student Book is accompanied by additional resources, including answers to every Student Book question, differentiated worksheets and class tests to monitor student progress.



Curriculum and assessment reports

- Teachers are provided with clear and tangible evidence of student learning progress through curriculum and assessment reports.
- Assessment reports directly show how students are performing in each online interactive assessment, providing instant feedback for teachers about areas of understanding.
- Curriculum reports summarise student performance against specific curriculum content descriptions and curriculum codes.

Benefits for teachers

- Teachers have access to all student resources.
- As well as online assessment, teachers have access to editable class tests that are provided at the end of each chapter. These tests can be used as formative or summative assessment and can be edited to suit the class's learning outcomes.
- As students complete online assessments, their results are measured against curriculum outcomes through the curriculum report. This allows easy understanding of how students are progressing, and where they may need support.

What are cognitive verbs and why do we use them?

A cognitive verb is a verb or 'doing word' that helps you understand how to answer a question. For example, the word **describe** is a cognitive verb because it requires you to remember what you know about something and talk about its features. Cognitive verbs are commonly shown in **bold** in the questions in this book. You will encounter a variety of cognitive verbs as you learn new information.

Common cognitive verbs and the task/s associated with them are given in the table on the next page. Understanding these cognitive verbs and the tasks behind them will help you work out how to best answer a question.

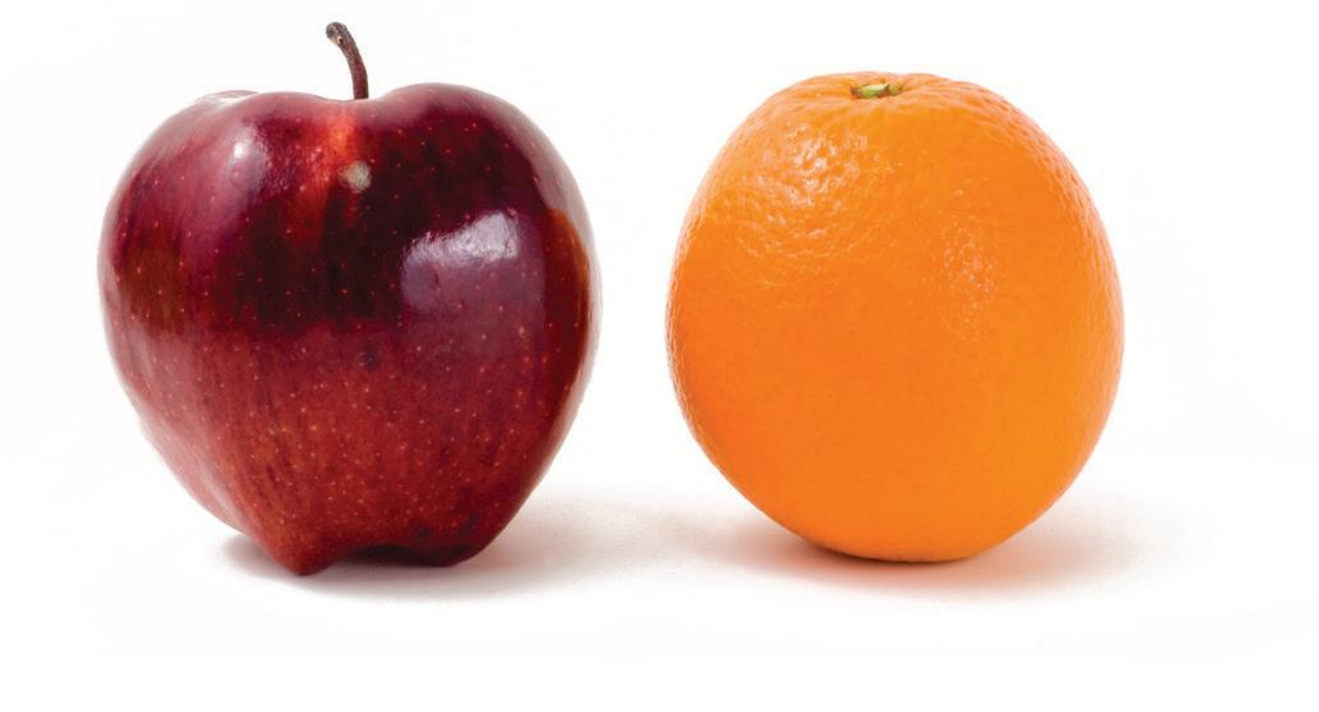
Some cognitive verbs require more thinking and understanding than others. For example, if you were given a picture of an apple and an orange, and asked to **name** the two fruits, you might instantly remember 'apple' and 'orange' and could write the names down without much trouble. However, if you were asked to **compare** the two fruits, you would need to think about the two fruits and identify at least one similarity and one difference between them. In this sense, **compare** requires a deeper level of thinking than **name**.

Throughout this book you will notice that the questions in the Check Your Learning boxes are categorised in the following order:

> Retrieve
> Comprehend
> Analyse
> Apply.

This is because working in order from 'Retrieve' to 'Comprehend' to 'Analyse' and finally to 'Apply' helps your learning process.

Source 1 shows the thought processes required for each type of cognitive verb, and the category to which it belongs.



Cognitive verbs

Cognitive verb	Task	Category
define	give the meaning of a word or term	**Retrieve** – recall information from permanent memory
identify	recognise and state a fact or feature	
name	provide the correct name	
state	provide the correct piece of information	
describe	give an account of a situation, event, pattern or process, or of the features of something	**Comprehend** – activate and transfer knowledge from your permanent memory to your working memory
explain	make an idea or situation plain or clear by describing it in more detail, or providing reasons how or why	
summarise	outline or give a brief statement of an event, theme or major point/s; present ideas and information in fewer words and in sequence	
analyse	examine or consider something in order to explain and interpret it, identifying different components and the relationship between them	**Analyse** – use your reasoning to go beyond what was directly taught
classify	arrange, distribute or order in classes or categories according to shared qualities or characteristics	
compare	identify the similarities and differences between things	
consider	think carefully and reflect on before making a decision	
distinguish	identify the differences between things	
examine	inspect something carefully	
create	make or invent; reorganise or put elements together into a new pattern or structure	**Apply** – use your knowledge in specific situations
discuss	examine by argument; examine the considerations for and against; debate; talk or write about a topic taking into account different views and issues	
evaluate	examine and determine the value or significance of something, talking about its strengths and weakness and giving your overall opinion	
determine	decide or come to a resolution	
investigate	plan, search or inquire into a topic to establish or obtain facts and reach new conclusions	
justify	give reasons or evidence to support an answer, response or conclusion	
propose	put forward a suggestion for consideration or action	

Source 1 The tasks and categories associated with cognitive verbs

PART 1

Geography

Concepts and skills

Landscapes and landforms

Changing nations

CHAPTER 1

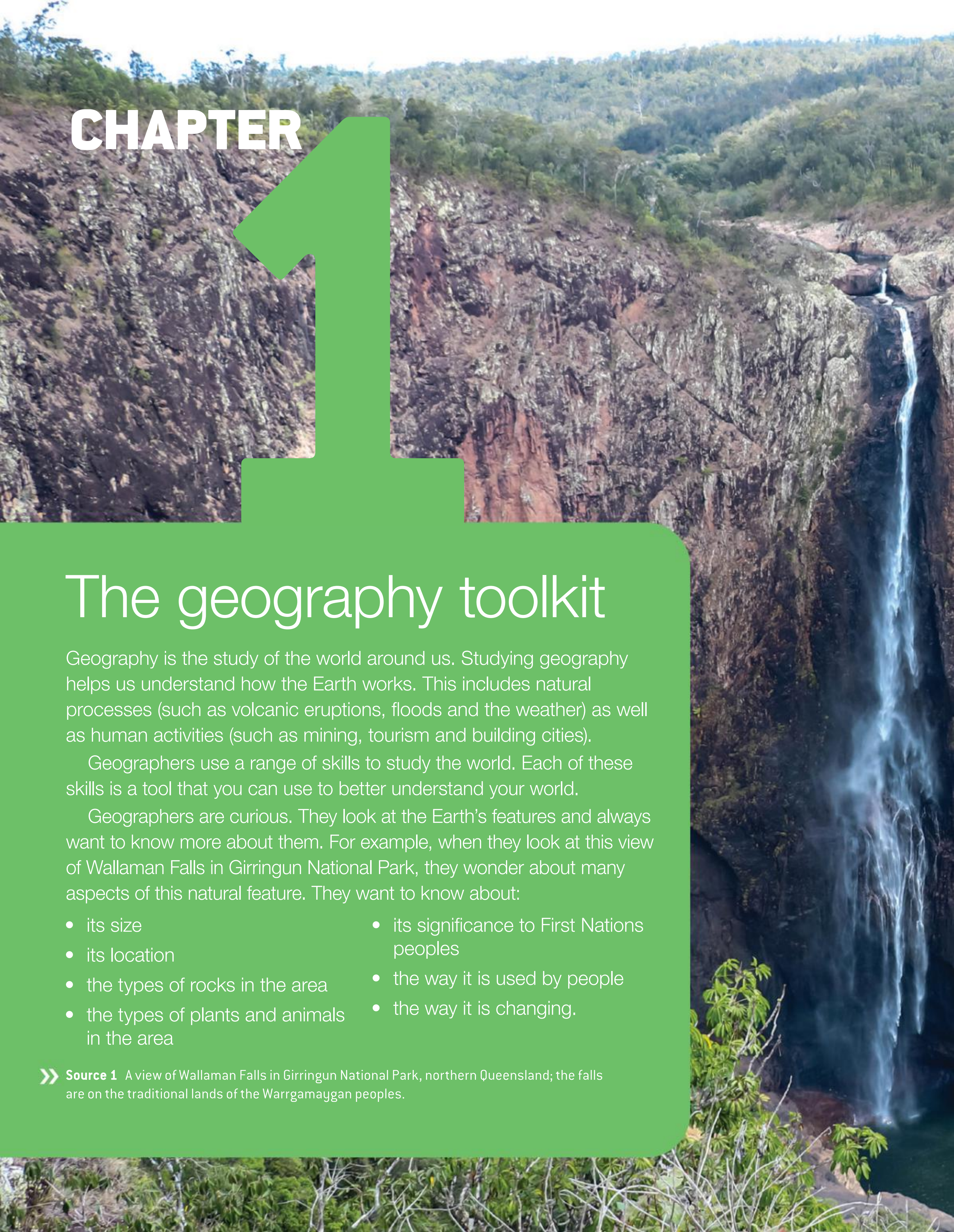
The geography toolkit

Geography is the study of the world around us. Studying geography helps us understand how the Earth works. This includes natural processes (such as volcanic eruptions, floods and the weather) as well as human activities (such as mining, tourism and building cities).

Geographers use a range of skills to study the world. Each of these skills is a tool that you can use to better understand your world.

Geographers are curious. They look at the Earth's features and always want to know more about them. For example, when they look at this view of Wallaman Falls in Girringun National Park, they wonder about many aspects of this natural feature. They want to know about:

- its size
- its location
- the types of rocks in the area
- the types of plants and animals in the area
- its significance to First Nations peoples
- the way it is used by people
- the way it is changing.



Source 1 A view of Wallaman Falls in Girringun National Park, northern Queensland; the falls are on the traditional lands of the Warrgamaygan peoples.

1A
What are the geographical concepts?

1B
What are the geographical skills?

1.1 Geographical concepts

Geographers use seven key concepts to help them investigate and understand the world. As you learn to use each of the concepts, you will begin to think like a geographer. At times you will use several of these at once, while at other times you may focus on just one.

The seven key concepts in geography are:

- place
- space
- environment
- interconnections
- sustainability
- scale
- change.

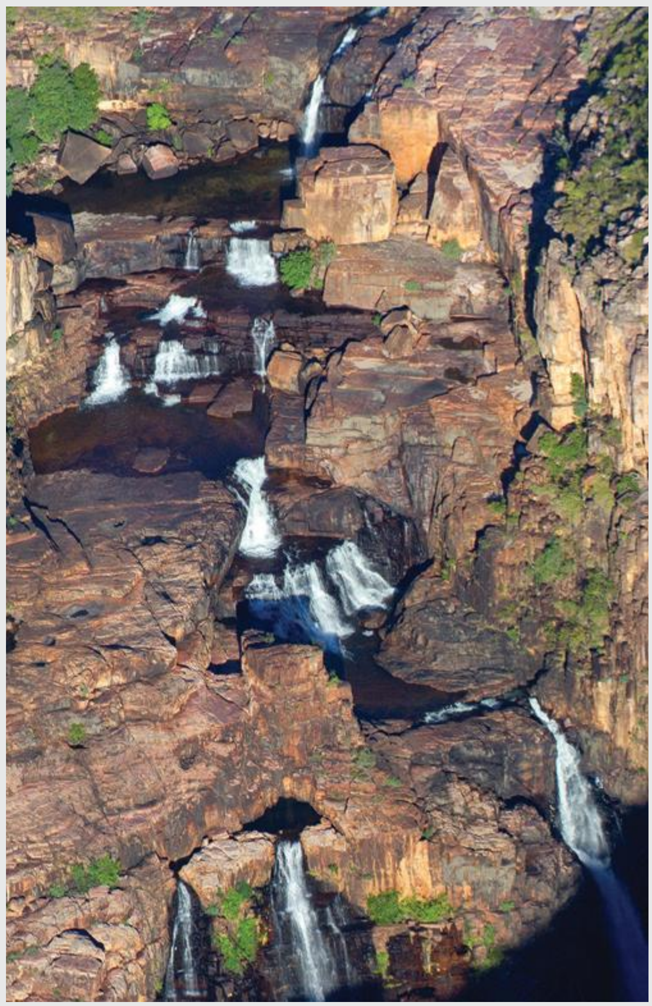
Place

Places are parts of the Earth's surface that are identified and given meaning by people. A place can be as small as your bedroom or as large as the entire planet! The life of every person and animal on the Earth is influenced by place. Places can be natural (shaped by the environment and largely unchanged by humans) or built (constructed by humans). Places often determine our relationships with one another (for example, our closest relationships are likely to be with people in the same place). The environmental and social qualities of a place also influence the way we live. Climate, landscapes, types of plants and resources, transport networks, entertainment venues and workplaces all have a major impact on the way we live.

For Australia's First Nations peoples, place also has a deeper spiritual meaning and can provide a sense of identity. First Nations peoples see themselves as custodians of the land and believe that they have a responsibility to look after it.

Geographers use the concept of place when conducting any geographical inquiry. They study how the physical and human aspects of a location relate and interact. The ways in which we live, and the actions we take, change the places in which we live. Geographers investigate the outcomes of these changes.

For more information on place, read the key concept box 'Place' in topic 2.4 on page 47.



Source 1 An aerial view of Twin Falls, Kakadu National Park, Northern Territory; Aboriginal people have lived in the Kakadu region of the Northern Territory for over 50 000 years, and Kakadu National Park is World Heritage listed due to its cultural significance.

Space

To a geographer, the concept of space is the way that things are arranged on the Earth's surface. Geographers investigate spaces, look for patterns and try to find an explanation. The concept of space helps them to do this. It has three main elements:

- *location* – where things are located on the Earth's surface
- *spatial distribution* – the patterns formed by the way things are arranged on the Earth's surface
- *organisation* – how and why things are arranged and managed on the Earth's surface by people.

Geographers investigate the way that people use and change the spaces available to them. They study the patterns and trends in the distribution of spaces to identify causes and consequences, and understand how spaces change over time.

The concepts of place and space can be difficult to separate, but it will help if you remember that places can be divided into spaces. For example, a small place, such as your school, has different spaces. Each of these spaces has its own purpose. There are spaces for learning (such as classrooms and computer rooms), playing (such as playgrounds and play equipment), eating (such as the cafeteria or canteen) and running the school (such as staffrooms and administration buildings).

Source 2 A house is an example of a place with many different spaces. For example, the kitchen is a space for cooking, the bathroom is a space for washing and the bedroom is a space for resting.

Larger places (such as your suburb, town or city) are also organised into different spaces. There are spaces for housing (such as homes for families), businesses (such as shops and offices), industry (such as factories and warehouses), entertainment (such as concert halls and theatres), and sport and recreation (such as stadiums, parks and gardens).

For more information on space, read the key concept box 'Space' in topics 4.10 on page 119 and 5.9 on page 149.

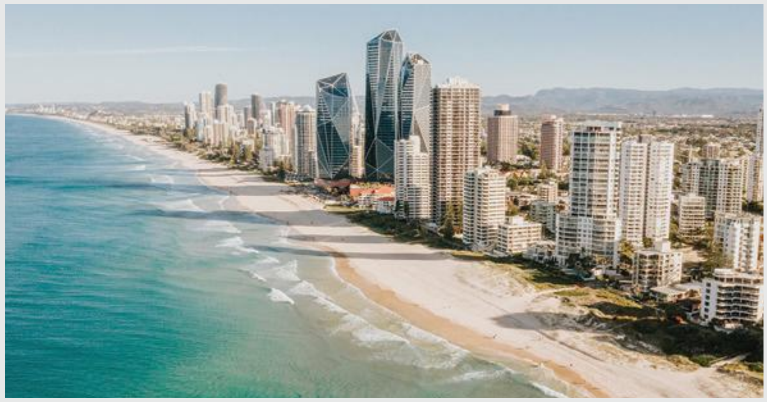
Environment

Our world is made up of many different environments. Some environments are natural (or physical), such as deserts, grasslands, mountains, coral reefs, forests, oceans and ice caps (thick layers of ice that cover areas of land). In order for an environment to be considered natural, its soils, rocks, climate, plants and animals must remain largely unaltered by humans. Today, there are very few truly natural environments left on the Earth.

Other environments have been so altered by humans that hardly any natural features remain. These environments are known as built (or human) environments and include large cities, towns, suburbs and vast areas of farmland and mine sites. Human environments not only affect the natural features, they also affect the climate. For example, a large city will often be a few degrees hotter than the surrounding areas because concrete in the buildings traps the sun's heat. Most environments on the Earth are now a combination of natural and human features.

Source 3 This glacial environment in Antarctica is an example of a natural environment, untouched by humans.

The study of different environments helps geographers to better understand and appreciate natural processes, such as how weather works, how mountains are formed, and how rainforests and coral reefs grow. The concept helps geographers to analyse the changes humans make to natural environments and better appreciate their impact, so that these environments can be managed.



Source 4 An aerial view of the Gold Coast strip in Queensland; this example of a built environment is contrasted against the natural environment of the ocean and beach.

Interconnections

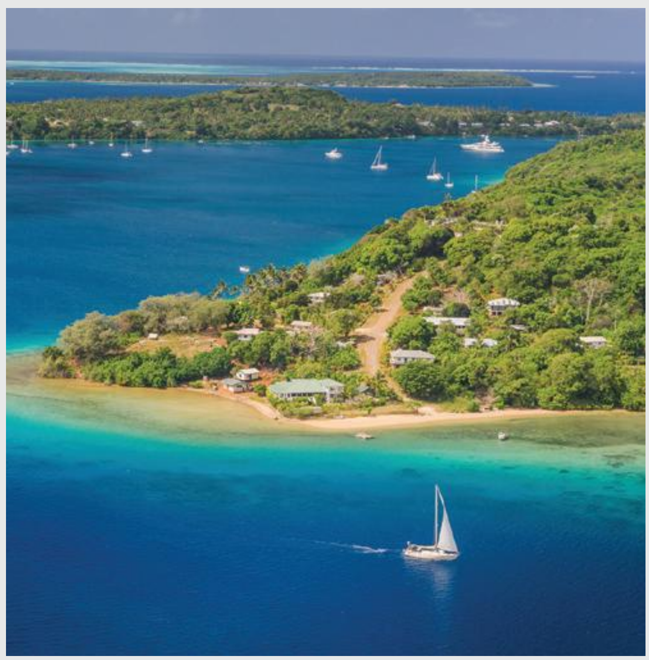
No place or thing on the Earth exists in isolation. All environments and every living and non-living thing found within them are connected. These connections can be on a local, national or global level.

Geographers use the concept of interconnections to better understand the complex links between natural and human processes that shape our Earth. Places and people can be linked in many different ways. These can be categorised as:

- *natural processes* – such as the water cycle and food chain
- *human activities* – such as the movement of people, the production and trade of goods, and the flow of investment and money linked within and between different countries.

Think of the Earth as a single living organism, much like the human body. Your brain, heart, lungs, stomach, arms and legs all work together as a single system to keep you alive and healthy. In much the same way, the Earth's living systems (such as climate, plants, animals, oceans, soils, atmosphere and energy) all function together and are interconnected. Even a slight rise in the Earth's temperature, for example, will have an effect on the oceans (such as damaging coral reefs and affecting the populations of fish and other sea creatures), the land (such as failure of crops and drought) and the polar ice caps (such as increasing sea levels and forcing millions of people to relocate their homes).

For more information on interconnections, read the key concept box 'Interconnections' in topics 3.11 on page 89 and 4.6 on page 110.



Source 5 A number of interconnected processes are causing sea levels around the archipelago nation of Tonga to increase by 6 mm per year – nearly twice the global average. Rising tides threaten the livelihood of Tonga's people, the majority of whom live on the coast. Several communities on smaller islands have already relocated.

Sustainability

The concept of sustainability relates to the ongoing capacity of the Earth to maintain all life. In order to live sustainably, we must manage the Earth's resources so that they can be used to meet our own needs without compromising these resources for future generations.

Sustainability is an important concept for geographers. They use it to investigate how natural and human systems work, and to understand how resources can be managed in such a way that means they will be sustained into the future.

Many of the world's resources (such as oil, coal and natural gas) are non-renewable. This means that if we continue to use them, they will one day run out. Other resources (such as wind, forests, solar and water) are renewable. This means that they replace themselves naturally, or can be replaced to meet the needs of society. Sustainability encourages us to think more closely about these different types of resources – the ways in which they are formed and the speed at which they are being used. It also encourages us to look more closely at renewable options and take greater care of the Earth. Actions to improve sustainability can operate at any scale: local, national, international or global.

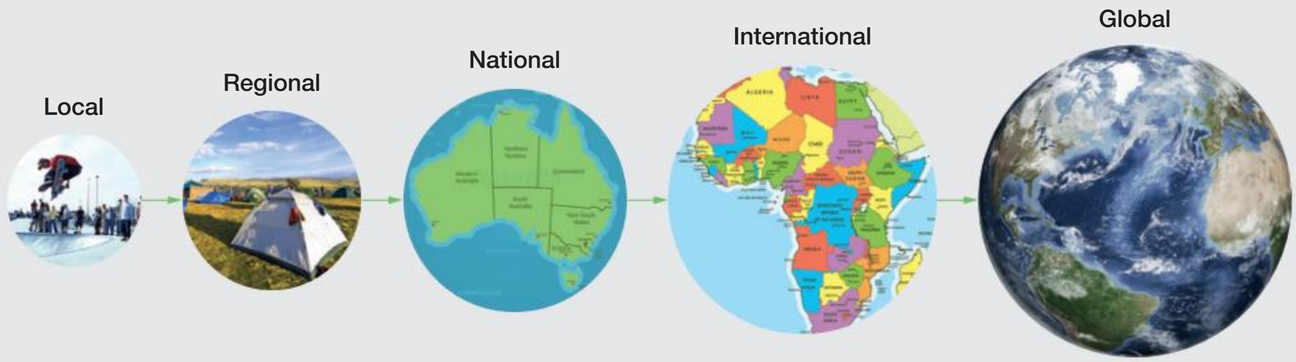
For more information on sustainability, read the key concept box 'Sustainability' in topic 3.6 on page 72.

Source 6 A wind farm – a source of renewable energy – near the town of Albany in Western Australia

Scale

The concept of scale is used to guide geographical inquiries. Geographers study things that take place on many different spatial levels – from small areas (such as a local park) to very large areas (such as the use of oil and coal all over the world). They use the concept of scale to look for explanations and outcomes at these different levels. A geographic inquiry of the ways in which people use parks, for example, may be carried out at a range of scales (from smallest to largest):

- *local* – such as an inquiry into the number of daily visitors to a neighbourhood skate park
- *regional* – such as an inquiry into the types of visitors staying at campsites in the Grampians/ Gariwerd region of Victoria
- *national* – such as an inquiry into the numbers of tourists visiting national parks across Australia each year
- *international* – such as an inquiry into animal poaching in national parks and wild game reserves in different countries across Africa
- *global* – such as an inquiry into the use of all marine parks around the world and their effectiveness in protecting different species of marine animals.



Source 7 Geographical inquiries can be carried out on a number of different spatial levels: local, regional, national, international and global.

Change

Changes are constantly happening on the Earth. Some changes occur very rapidly and are obvious, while others take place over millions of years and are almost undetectable to us. The concept of change is important because it helps us to understand what is happening around us and how the Earth has been shaped and changed by natural forces, such as climate, earthquakes, volcanoes, running water and storms, to name just a few. In recent times, humans have shaped and changed the Earth to suit their own needs, but events such as volcanic eruptions and tsunamis are a reminder that powerful natural forces continue to alter the face of the Earth, regardless of what humans do.

Changes take place on many different levels, from personal and local right through to national and global. Small local changes that happen quickly, such as a tree falling over on your street, are often easy to observe and explain. Larger regional or national changes, such as an earthquake, can happen quickly, and their effects can be widespread and have devastating impacts on places and people. Changes that take place on a global scale can take much longer. Global warming, for example, is a long-term change that happens slowly. Its widespread effects are becoming clearer every year.

Observing and understanding natural and human-made changes is an important part of any geographical inquiry. Geographers need to look at different types of changes, why they have occurred, over what time period they have occurred and what further changes may take place as a result. Sometimes changes can be positive, such as the conservation of plants and animals in national parks, while other changes can have negative consequences, such as the deforestation of native rainforests. Geographers play an important role in ensuring that change is managed in a sustainable way.

For more information on change, read the key concept box 'Change' in topic 4.1 on page 97.

Source 8 Aerial images are a good tool for geographers to use to observe the impact of natural disasters, as well as the change to an area over time. The changes that took place in Wallabi Point, New South Wales in December 2020, when a bushfire raged over much of the area, were devastating and rapid. The top image shows the area before the fire and the bottom image shows the same area after the fire.

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 1.1.

1.2 Geographical skills

Geography has been described as the 'why of where'. Geographers examine the world and try to explain what they see. Like a detective at the scene of a crime, they follow a line of inquiry; and to do so, they need a range of skills.

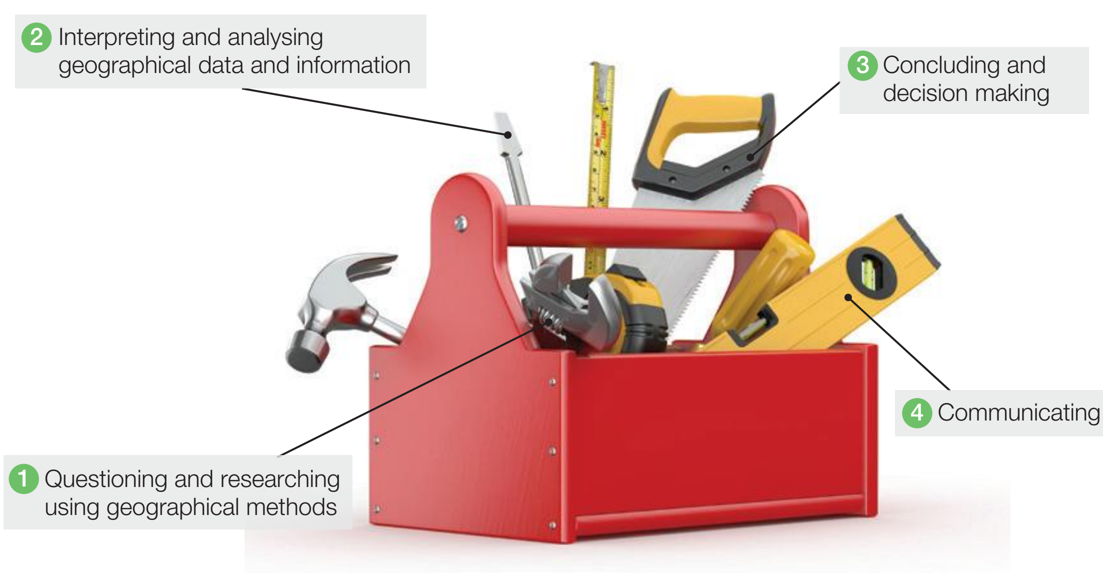
Geographical skills can be grouped into four main categories. The categories are:

1. Questioning and researching using geographical methods
2. Interpreting and analysing geographical data and information
3. Concluding and decision making
4. Communicating.

Each of the skills you will learn over the course of this year is explained in this chapter, and by studying geography you will gradually master each one. As you develop each new skill, you will have gained another important tool for explaining the natural processes and human activities that shape our amazing planet.

These skills will help you to conduct a geographical inquiry into a phenomenon or challenge. An inquiry has many steps, and involves asking geographical questions; collecting geographic data and information to explain how patterns, trends and relationships represent a geographical challenge; applying understanding from the analysis to generalise about the impacts of the challenge for people and places; proposing action to address the challenge; communicating the challenge; and proposing solutions to address the challenge using geographic terminology and appropriate digital and spatial technologies. You will need skills from the four categories to successfully complete a geographical inquiry.

It might help you to think of each of these skills as individual tools in your toolkit. For some geographical inquiries, you may only need to use one tool; for others, you may need to use many.



Source 1 At each stage of any geographical inquiry, geographers use different skills. Each of these skills is like a tool in a toolkit.

1.3 Questioning and researching using geographical methods

geographical inquiry the process that geographers use to guide their investigations of people, places and issues

If you look out the window of your classroom, you could ask some simple questions to form the basis of a geographical investigation, also known as a **geographical inquiry**. If the sun is shining, you could begin an inquiry into the hours of sunlight and the pattern of temperatures in your area. If you can see lots of trees or buildings, you could begin an inquiry into what type of environment you are in and the different forces that have shaped it.

Once you have observed what is around you, the next stage is to develop some geographical questions to focus your inquiry. Geographical questions can be as simple as 'What is it?' and 'Where is it?'; or more complex, such as 'What is the connection between these two things?' and 'How and why have things changed over time?'

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Planning a geographical inquiry

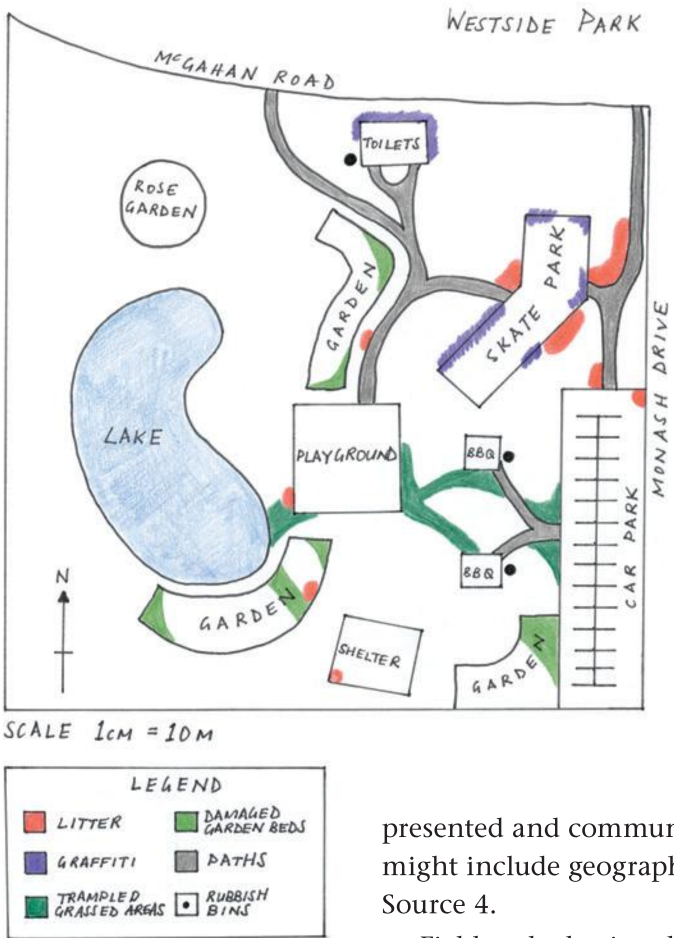
Look at the image of Uluru in Source 3. As a geographer, no longer will you look at something in your world, such as Uluru, and only think of it as an interesting place to visit. Instead, you will begin to ask questions about how it was formed and came to look the way it does. You will also start to ask questions about the area in which it is located, its vegetation, how it is managed and its significance for First Nations peoples.

Here is an example of how to begin planning a geographical inquiry into Uluru. You can see that this geographer has chosen one key inquiry question to focus on, and made some notes about how they might begin to find answers.

Source 2 A guide for planning the direction of a geographical inquiry

Key inquiry question	Data needed	Possible sources of data
Is it a good thing that so many tourists visit Uluru–Kata Tjuta National Park?	• Information on the importance and significance of Uluru to the Anangu, who are the Aboriginal peoples of the area • Information on the management and maintenance of the park • Information on the number of visitors and their activities in the park	• Research tourism and government websites for data on tourist numbers and activities • Contact Parks Australia and Uluru–Kata Tjuta National Park for information on how the park is managed • Download resources from the Parks Australia website, e.g. podcasts, maps, visitor guides, geological reports, audio tours and images

Source 3 Uluru



Source 4 This sketch map has been completed by a student conducting fieldwork at Westside Park.

Conducting fieldwork

Conducting fieldwork is a skill that you will develop over time as you study geography. **Fieldwork** is any geographical study that takes place outside the classroom or office – or, as geographers say, 'in the field'. The 'field' is the source of geographical information (primary data). It can be conducted at a number of scales – in your school grounds, within your local community, in another state or even in another country. Fieldwork is an essential part of geography because the world outside the classroom is the geographer's 'laboratory'.

Fieldwork provides the opportunity for first-hand investigation of both natural and built environments, and the development of skills associated with observing, measuring and recording. Different forms of geographical data can be collected and analysed to find relationships between and within natural and human places. The results of a fieldwork investigation are presented and communicated in a fieldwork report. Your fieldwork report might include geographical images, graphs or sketches like the one in Source 4.

Fieldwork also involves identifying issues or problems and finding possible solutions. It is a way to engage with the real world and make a contribution to developing more sustainable and fair ways to manage the Earth's resources.

fieldwork
geographical study that takes place outside the classroom at the site of inquiry

Different types of fieldwork

Most topics you learn about in class can also be studied through fieldwork. The types of fieldwork you conduct will differ according to the topic and the places you visit, but all these activities will help you to better understand your world. Source 5 provides examples of fieldwork locations and activities for a range of topics.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Writing a fieldwork report

Source 5 Examples of fieldwork locations and activities for a range of topics

Topic	Possible location	Sample fieldwork activity
Water in our environment	Local river or stream	Water sampling
Water as a resource	Water treatment plant, desalination plant or dam	Taking geographic photographs or creating a field sketch
Growing cities	Edge of a large city	Observing and describing
Changing cities	Urban renewal project	Land use mapping

Collecting and representing data

In geography, an important skill to master is that of collecting and representing data. In any geographical inquiry, you will collect data that helps you answer your key question.

Geographers find answers to their questions in many places. They may collect information themselves by taking measurements, taking photographs, making sketches out in the field or conducting surveys, interviews and questionnaires. This kind of information will generally only be relevant to a particular inquiry and is called **primary data**.

Often, a geographer collects information that supports their inquiry but has not been specifically collected or designed by the geographer for the inquiry. This type of information is called **secondary data**.

primary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was collected in the field by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. survey data, hand-drawn maps and photographs)

secondary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was not collected by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. textbooks, atlases and government websites)

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time

Source 6 Examples of primary and secondary data

Some examples of primary data	Some examples of secondary data
• Hand-drawn maps and field sketches • Photographs and images taken for the inquiry • Questionnaires designed and created for the inquiry • Survey data (such as number of visitors, number of cars counted, and temperature and wind statistics) gathered by the geographer for the inquiry	• Information from textbooks, atlases, maps, graphs, reports and websites that were not created specifically for the inquiry • Data that was collected by a government department (such as census data), the media, companies and other organisations, and not collected specifically for the inquiry

Distinguish between quantitative and qualitative data

Primary and secondary data provide either quantitative data or qualitative data.

- *Quantitative data* includes anything that can be recorded as numbers – for example, 'Uluru is 3.6 kilometres long and 1.9 kilometres wide, and has a circumference of 9.4 kilometres'.
- *Qualitative data* includes anything that can be recorded in words – for example, 'Uluru, one of Australia's best-known natural landmarks, is very large'.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Distinguishing between quantitative and qualitative data

Source 7 Examples of quantitative and qualitative data

Some examples of quantitative data	Some examples of qualitative data
• Climate and temperature statistics • Tourist numbers • Population figures • Types and amounts of food grown • Plant and animal species in certain areas • Numbers of people killed in natural disasters • Numbers of volcanic eruptions and earthquakes	• Opinions • Points of view • Personal stories • Likes and dislikes • Feelings

Good geographical inquiries will always be based on a combination of primary and secondary data that is both quantitative and qualitative. Even though qualitative data is an important part of any geographical inquiry, quantitative data is considered to be more valuable because it is less open to personal interpretations and can be more accurately represented in graphs and charts.

It is also important to check that you have recorded all your data without errors, and that it is balanced and fair. Your data should not reflect your personal opinions or emotions; instead it should present the facts.

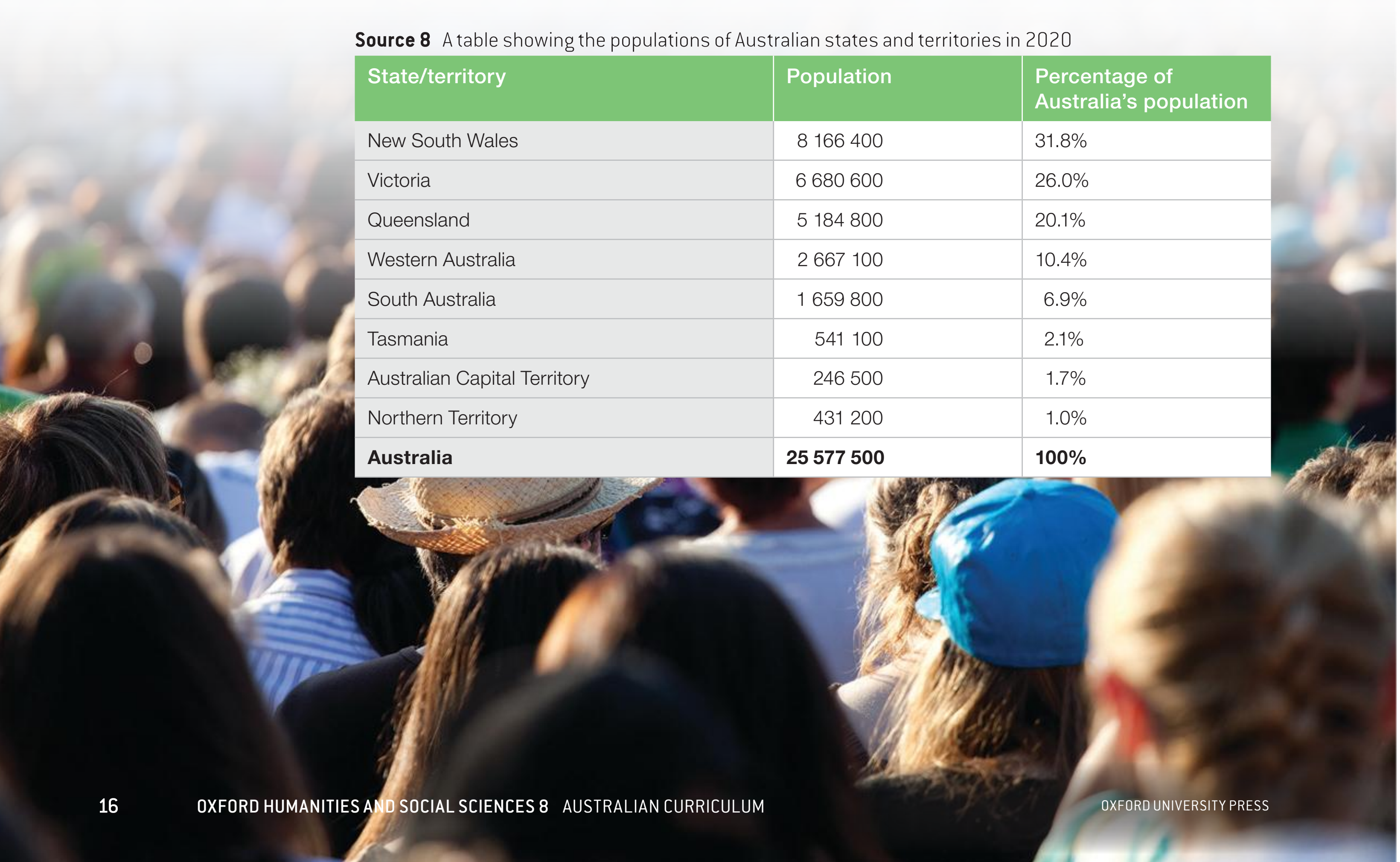
Create graphic representations

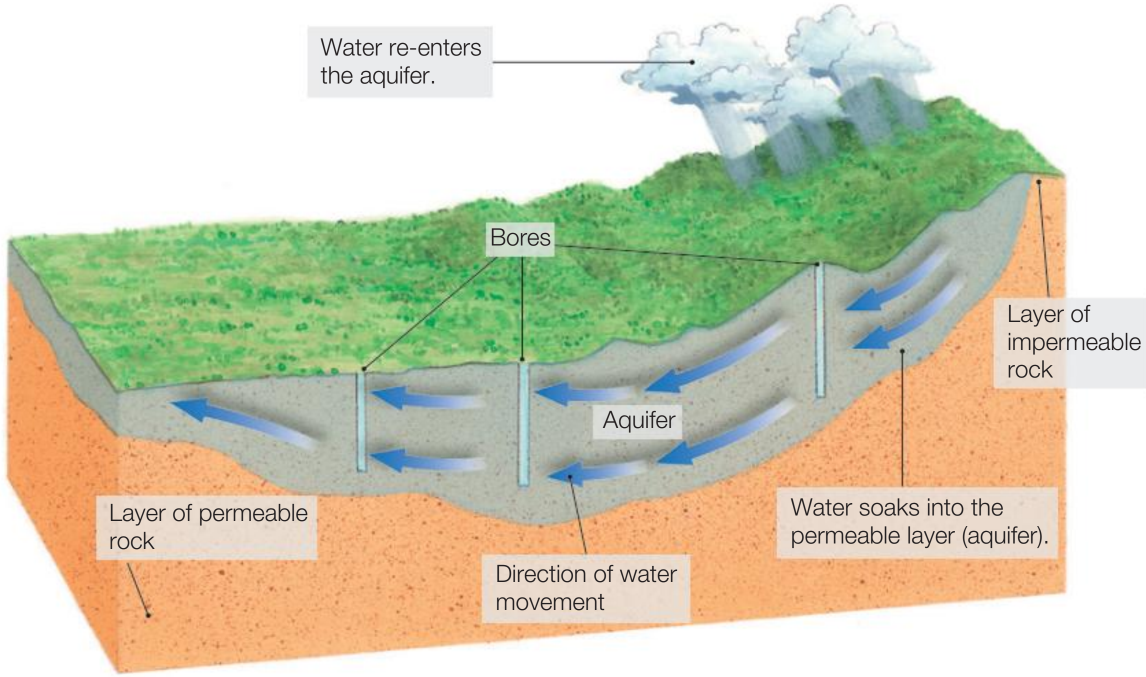
Geographers use a range of visual representations to communicate information they have collected.

- *Tables* allow geographers to compare data by organising it under different headings (see Source 8).
- *Diagrams* allow geographers to show the features or characteristics of some places or processes more effectively than describing them in words (see Source 9 on the following page). A concept map is a handy tool that you might use to show a complex idea, such as strategies for sustainability, in an engaging, easy-to-read format (see Source 10 on the following page).
- *Graphs* allow geographers to compare data and present it in an interesting and useful way. There are a number of different types of graphs used by geographers for different purposes. Some kinds of graphs are simple, while others are more complex. The most common ones are explained on the following pages.

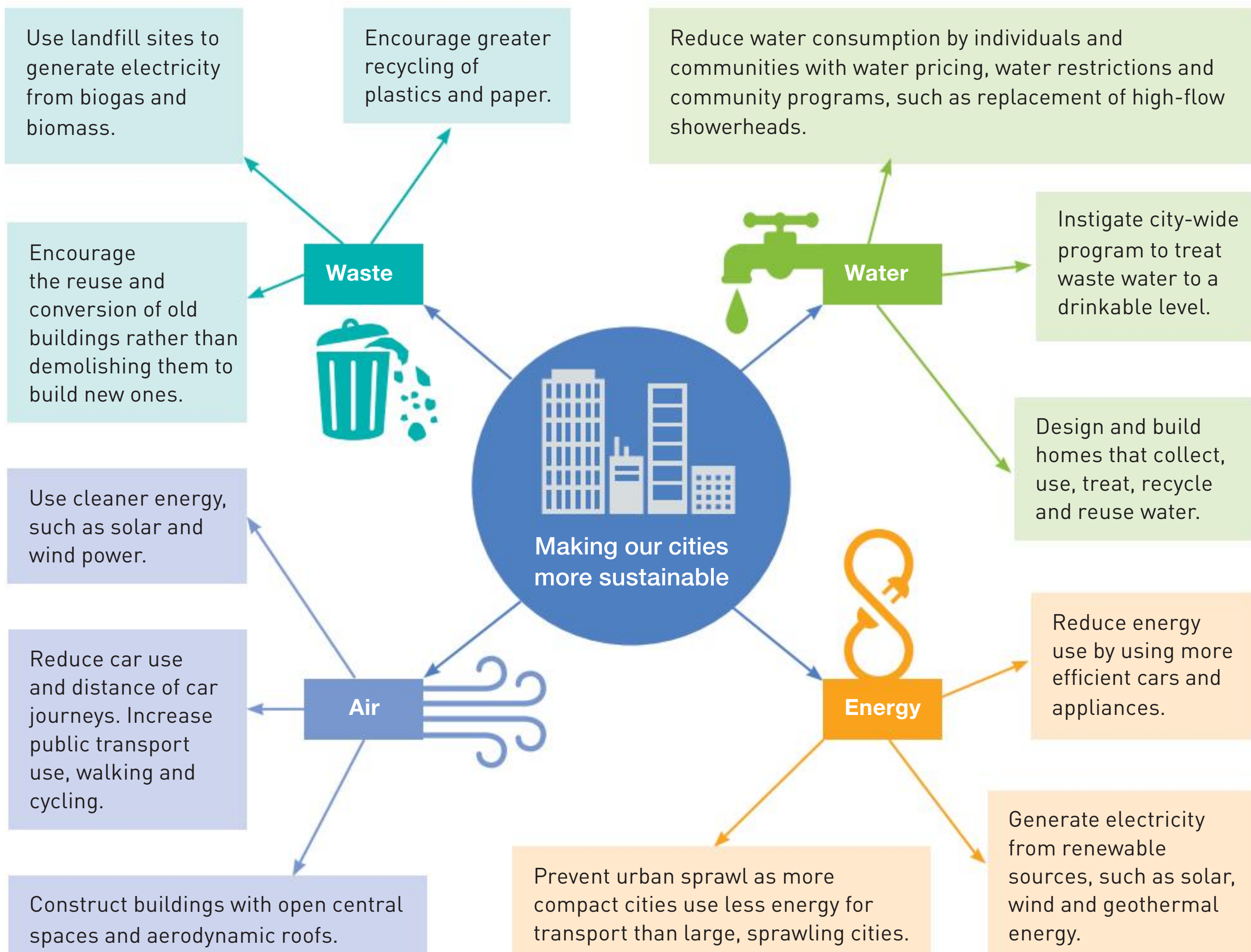
Source 8 A table showing the populations of Australian states and territories in 2020

State/territory	Population	Percentage of Australia's population
New South Wales	8 166 400	31.8%
Victoria	6 680 600	26.0%
Queensland	5 184 800	20.1%
Western Australia	2 667 100	10.4%
South Australia	1 659 800	6.9%
Tasmania	541 100	2.1%
Australian Capital Territory	246 500	1.7%
Northern Territory	431 200	1.0%
Australia	**25 577 500**	**100%**





Source 9 A diagram can be an effective way of explaining a complex idea. This diagram shows how bores can be drilled to enable access to underground water.



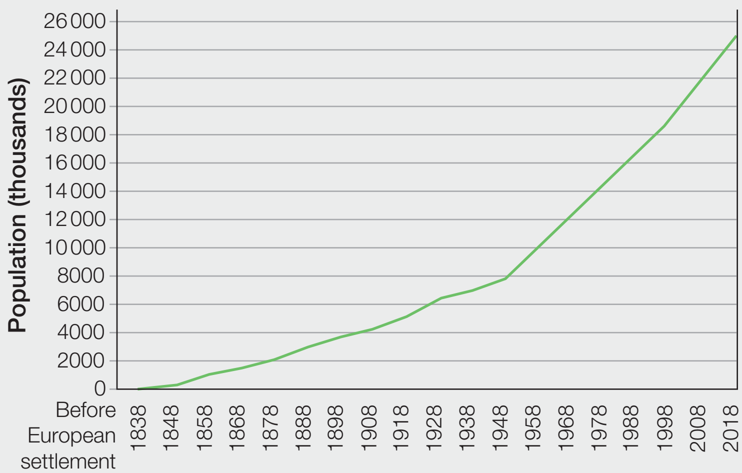
Source 10 A concept map showing strategies for a more sustainable city

Simple graphs

Graphs are one of the most effective visual representations when it comes to showing numerical (or quantitative) data. This year you will be learning how to create a number of different types of graphs and interpreting the information that they provide. Some simple graphs are described below.

Line graphs

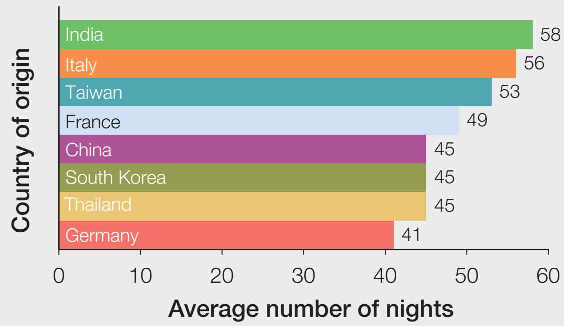
Line graphs show information as a series of points that are joined up to form a line. The line shows a trend or change over time. The horizontal axis (*x*) will usually show units of time and the vertical axis (*y*) will usually show amounts.



Source 11 A line graph showing the increase in Australia's population, 1838–2018

Bar graphs

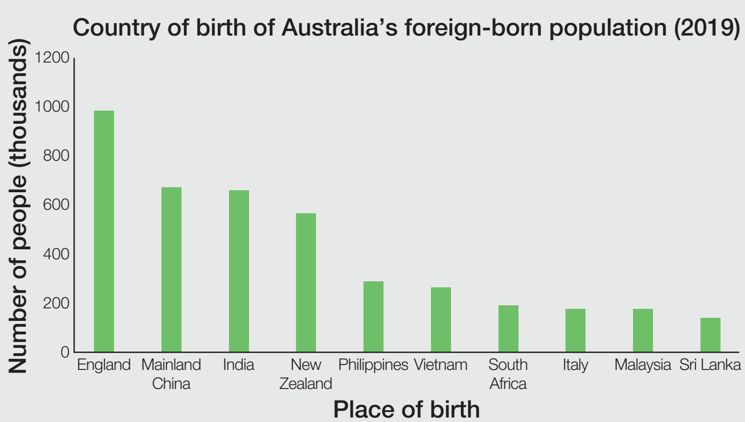
Bar graphs show information as a series of bars that run in a horizontal direction and are stacked one on top of the other. They are usually used to compare quantities.



Source 12 A bar graph showing the average number of nights spent in Australia by tourists from different countries, 2009

Column graphs

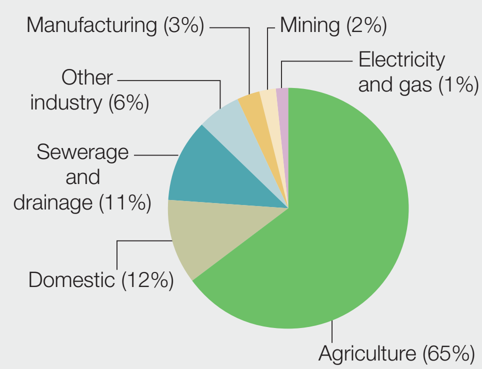
Column graphs are similar to bar graphs, but they show information as a series of vertical columns that are arranged side by side. They are also usually used to compare quantities.



Source 13 A column graph showing the top 10 countries of birth for Australia's overseas-born population in 2019

Pie graphs

Pie graphs (or pie charts) are shaped like a circle and are divided up so that the information is shown in slices – like the slices of a pie. The circle represents 100 per cent and each of the slices is a percentage of that. The slices of the 'pie' are usually organised from largest to smallest in a clockwise direction starting from 12 o'clock.



Source 14 A pie graph showing the different uses for water throughout Australia

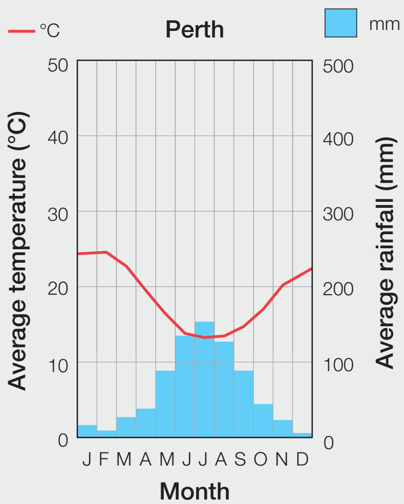
More complex graphs

Over the course of the year you will also be working with a number of more complex graphs. You will not necessarily be creating these yourself, but you will be learning how to make sense of the information they provide. Some of these graphs are described below.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 1.3.

Climate graphs

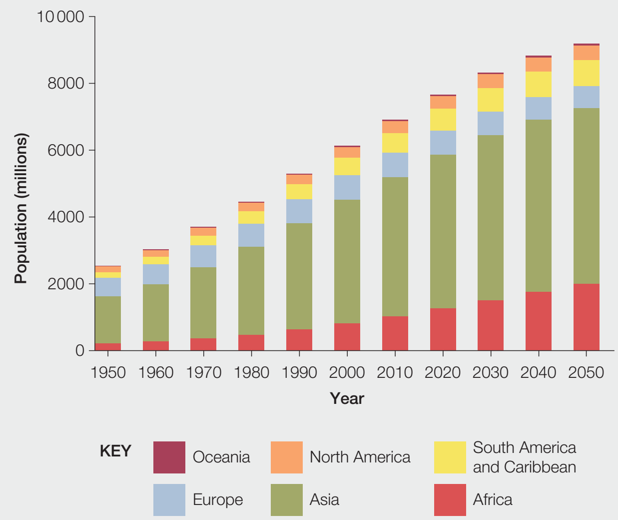
Climate graphs show the average monthly temperature and rainfall for a place over a year. Climate graphs combine line and column graphs. Temperature is recorded as a line graph and rainfall is recorded as a column graph.



Source 15 A climate graph showing the average monthly temperature and rainfall in Perth

Compound column graphs

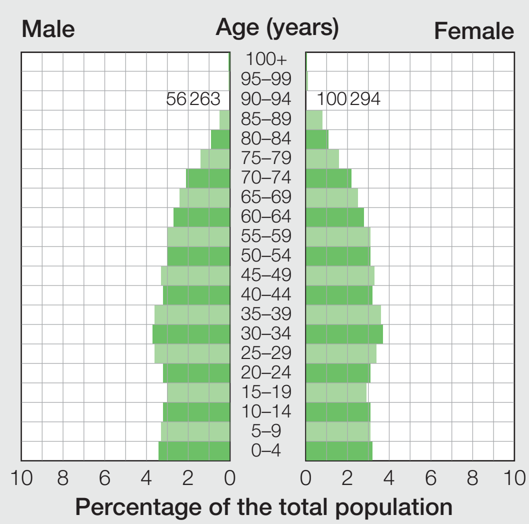
Compound column graphs are a more complex type of column graph where each column is split into sections so more data can be included and compared.



Source 16 A compound column graph showing the increase in world population by region, 1950–2050

Population pyramids

Population pyramids are bar graphs that show the percentage of males and females in different age groups in a population. They help geographers identify trends in population growth in a country or other area. Population pyramids are organised so that younger age groups are at the bottom and older age groups are at the top. Percentages of males are placed on the left-hand side and percentages of females are placed on the right-hand side.



Source 17 A population pyramid for Australia in 2020. From it you can see, for example, that there are more females than males over the age of 80.

1.4 Interpreting and analysing geographical data and information

Interpreting geographical images

Like maps and graphs, geographers use geographical images as sources of data. These include a range of geographical photos. Such photos are different to those that you take for fun; in fact geographical photos are taken to depict and present a place or particular feature of the landscape that is being studied. The different types of photos are explained below.

Ground-level photograph

The camera is held by someone at the same level as the landscape being photographed.

This angle allows you to clearly see the height of any object and the detail in vertical surfaces.

However, objects such as the trees on the left-hand side of the image hide the landscape behind them.

Oblique aerial photograph

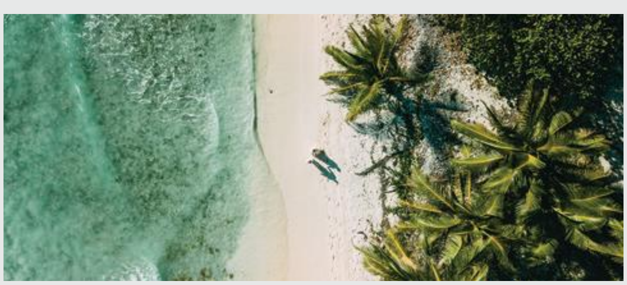
The camera is positioned above the landscape and angled towards the scene being photographed.

This angle allows you to see both the foreground and the background of the scene. You can also see both the height of an object and its width or area.

Vertical aerial photograph

The camera is positioned directly above the landscape. This vertical (or plan) view allows you to see the extent of any feature.

However, it is difficult to judge the height of the trees or the depth of the water from this view.



Satellite image

This image is taken from space. It allows us to see large areas of the Earth's surface. These images are often used to investigate patterns. It is difficult, however, to see smaller features of the environment.

Analysing maps

An important skill in geography is the ability to identify and explain patterns in the world around you (see page 31). Often these patterns appear on a **map**. You will also create your own maps to display data you have found during fieldwork or through research.

Before doing so, it is important to develop an understanding of the essential features that appear on maps and how to read them. You will develop your skills in map reading and analysis over time. You can refer to these pages throughout your study of geography if you need help understanding the features of simple and complex maps.

map
a simplified plan of an area shown from directly above

Essential features of maps

Maps are drawn in the **plan view** (directly from above) because this ensures the scale will be the same across the entire area. If maps were drawn from an angle, some parts of the mapped area would look distorted and so it would not be an accurate representation of the area. When properly used, maps can reveal a great deal about our planet and the ways in which we use it.

plan view
a way of showing something as if the viewer is looking down on it from above; a bird's-eye view

BOLTSS

Regardless of the type of maps you are creating or analysing, all will share some common features. There are six features that ensure every map is drawn in a clear, concise and accurate way. To help you remember these features, you can use a mnemonic (memory aid) that consists of the first letter of each of the features: border, orientation, legend, title, scale and source. Together, these six letters make up the acronym BOLTSS.

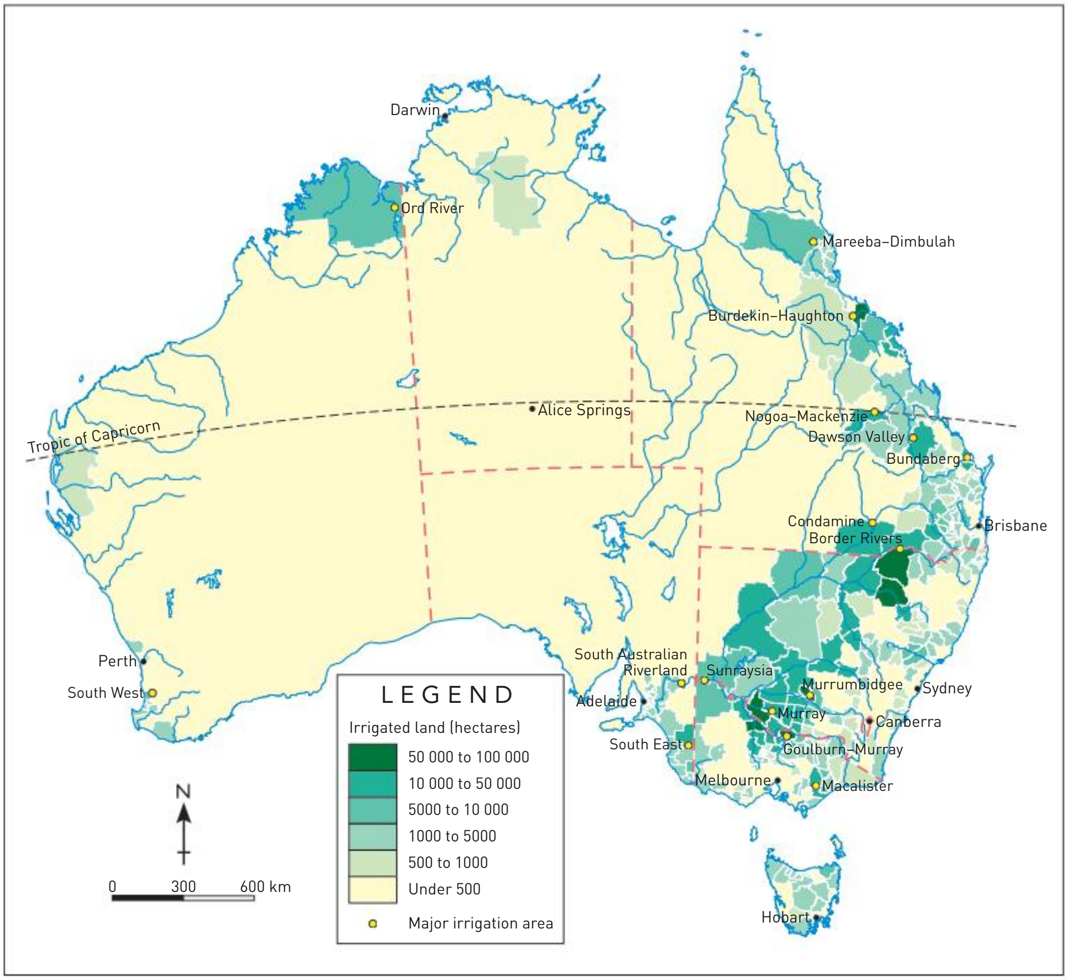
B	Border – an outline or box drawn around the map
O	Orientation – an indication of direction, usually shown with a north arrow or compass rose
L	Legend – an explanation of the symbols, colours and patterns used on the map (also known as a key)
T	Title – a heading that describes the map and what it is showing
S	Scale – a way of indicating what distances on the map represent in the real world. Scale can be shown in three different ways: as a written scale, a line scale or a ratio. Source 21 on page 23 shows the three ways a scale can be represented on a map.
S	Source – where the information used to create the map came from. If these details are not known, simply write 'Source: unknown'. If you have created the map from your own data, simply write 'Source: own map' or 'Source: [add your name]'.

Source 18 The six features of BOLTSS

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Understanding BOLTSS features

Enlarged map
Australia: Irrigated land

AUSTRALIA: IRRIGATED LAND



Source 19 A map of Australia showing all the features of BOLTSS Source: Oxford University Press

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Understanding direction

Direction

Direction must always be shown on maps because it enables the user to work out the location of features shown. Direction is shown on maps by the use of compass points. A compass is an instrument, used for navigation, with a magnetised needle that will always point to the Earth's magnetic field near the North Pole, known as **magnetic north**. The face of a compass shows a circle made up of 360 degrees (see Source 20).

The four main directions on a compass are north, south, east and west, and these are called the **cardinal points**. Most maps are oriented to north. Once north has been established, you can find the other points of the compass. Using compass points is an accurate way of giving directions because the compass always points to magnetic north no matter which direction you are facing.

Compass bearings provide an even more precise way to give directions. A bearing is an angle that is measured clockwise from magnetic north. The bearing of magnetic north can be either 0 degrees or 360 degrees, the bearing of south is 180 degrees, the bearing of east is 90 degrees and the bearing of west is 270 degrees. These bearings are also shown in Source 20.

Source 20 A compass face, showing cardinal points and compass bearings

direction
a way of orienting a map, usually shown by the use of compass points, such as north

magnetic north
the physical place on the Earth, near the North Pole, to which a magnetised needle points

cardinal points
the four main directions: north, south, east and west

compass bearings
a precise way of giving compass directions, such as '135° south-east'

Scale

Maps are scaled representations of real areas. These representations have been designed to fit on a piece of paper or on a computer screen. Maps look the same as the real areas they are representing, just reduced to a size you can work with. Scale on maps allows you to work out the distances in the real world.

Look at the map of Tasmania in Source 21. In the bottom left-hand corner it shows the three types of scale that can be used on maps and how they work:

- A *written scale* tells you how much a distance on the map represents on the ground. The written scale on Source 21 is: 'One centimetre on the map measures 30 kilometres on the ground.' Using this information, we can easily work out that 5 centimetres on the map would be equal to 150 kilometres on the ground, and so on.
- A *line scale* is a numbered line that acts like a ruler. You can use it to measure distances on the map. The Source 21 line scale shows that 1 centimetre is equal to 30 kilometres.
- A *ratio scale* shows scale in numbers. The ratio scale for Source 21 is 1:3 000 000, so 1 unit (that is, 1 centimetre) on the map represents 3 000 000 centimetres on the ground. Of course, 3 000 000 centimetres is equal to 30 kilometres.

TASMANIA

Source 21 Source: Oxford University Press

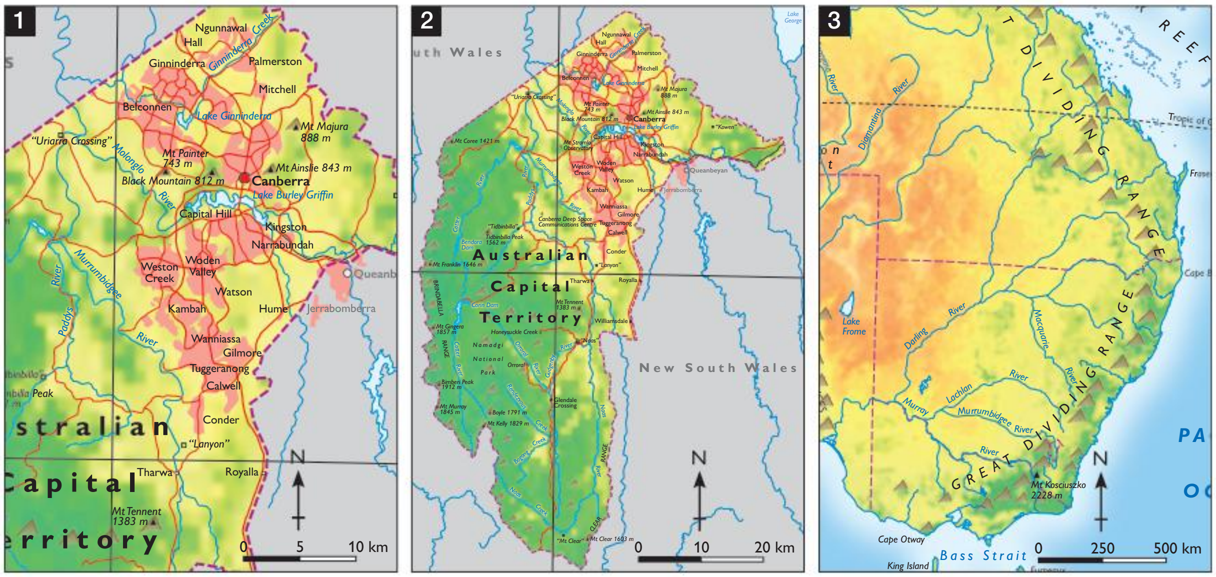
Enlarged map
Tasmania

Comparing map scales

Maps are often shown at different scales, depending on the amount of detail they need to show. Source 22 shows three maps at different scales:

- Map 1 is a large-scale map. It shows a large amount of detail, but only a small area. You can see the Canberra city area (in pink) and Lake Burley Griffin.
- Map 2 is a medium-scale map. It shows a medium amount of detail and a medium area. You can see the whole of the Australian Capital Territory.
- Map 3 is a small-scale map. It shows a small amount of detail, but a large area. You can only just see the border of the Australian Capital Territory.

AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY AND EASTERN AUSTRALIA



Large-scale maps show detailed information about a small area.

Small-scale maps show general information about a large area.

Source 22

Source: Oxford University Press

Locating places on maps

Maps are used for many different purposes, but the most commonly used maps help us to find things we are looking for. These maps are often overlaid with a set of lines that form a grid. The gridlines divide the map into smaller areas and help us find places more easily.

There are a number of ways in which you can locate things on maps, and a number of methods you can use to help other people find these places. Some of these methods will give you a general idea of where something is, while others can help you pinpoint the exact location of something.

alphanumeric grid referencing
a coordinate system on a grid in which each cell is identified by a combination of a letter and number; using this system makes it easy to locate a specific position on a map

Grid and area referencing

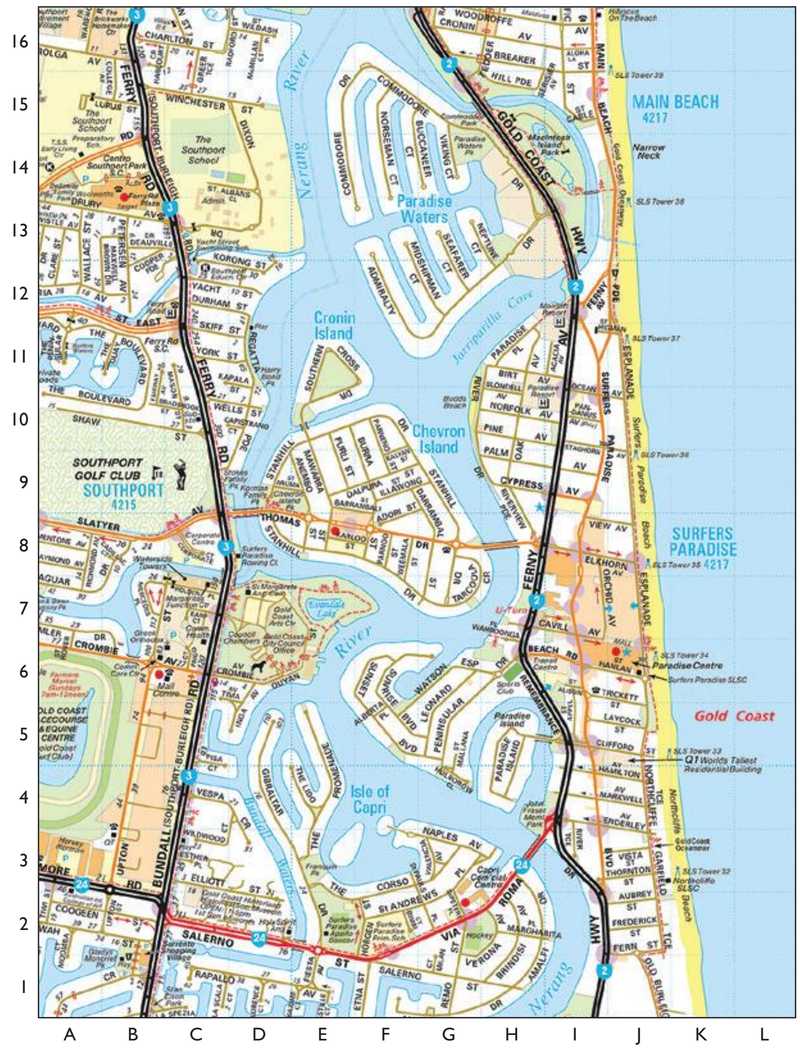
Alphanumeric grid referencing

In maps that use **alphanumeric grid referencing**, the spaces between gridlines are labelled with letters and numbers. The letters appear along the bottom (or top and bottom) of the map while the numbers appear down the left-hand side (or both sides) of the map. For example, in Source 23 the grid reference for the Paradise Centre is J6.

Area referencing (AR)

The area referencing (AR) method is used on **topographic maps** that have gridlines. Each line is given a two-digit number. The lines that run up and down the map (that is, vertically) are known as eastings (because the numbers increase as you move east). The lines that run across the map (that is, horizontally) are known as northings (because the numbers increase as you move north). A four-figure AR will pinpoint the bottom left-hand corner of the grid square in which you will find the feature. The eastings are given first, then the northings. For example, in Source 23 the park is located in AR2813.

SURFERS PARADISE STREET MAP

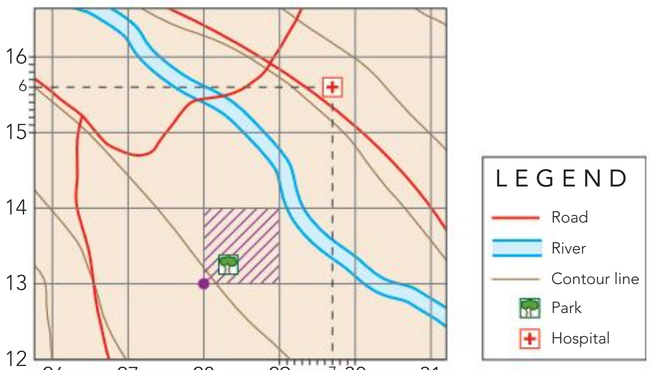


Source 23

Source: *Brisway*

topographic maps
maps that show the shape of the land, its relief and landforms

TOPOGRAPHIC MAP EXTRACT SHOWING AR AND GR



Source 24 Source: Oxford University Press

Six-figure grid referencing (GR)

The six-figure grid referencing (GR) method helps locate exact points on a topographic map. The area between each easting is divided into ten further parts (tenths), as is the area between each northing. This is just like adding a finer set of gridlines over the existing gridlines, allowing you to be very specific about where things are within each grid square. As with AR, the eastings are given first, then the northings. The difference is that one more figure is added to the easting and one more figure is added to the northing. This makes six figures in total. For example, in Source 24 the hospital is located at GR297156.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Understanding six-figure grid reference

latitude
imaginary lines running east–west around the Earth's surface, parallel to the Equator, used to work out location and direction

longitude
imaginary lines running north–south around the Earth's surface, from the North Pole to the South Pole, used to work out location and direction

Equator
an imaginary line that runs around the middle of the Earth, separating the Northern Hemisphere from the Southern Hemisphere

prime meridian
an imaginary line of longitude that runs from the North Pole to the South Pole; longitude is defined as 0 degrees at the prime meridian

Latitude and longitude

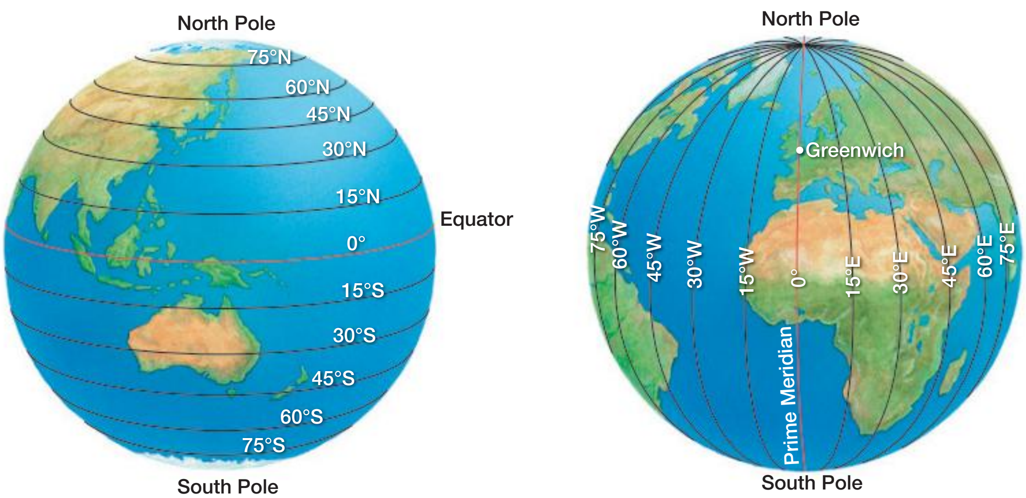
Maps that show large areas of the Earth's surface (such as world maps) use a set of imaginary lines that form a grid. These gridlines, known as **latitude** and **longitude**, help us to locate places accurately.

- Lines that run from east to west are known as lines (or parallels) of latitude.
- Lines that run from north to south are known as lines (or meridians) of longitude.

Each of the lines is separated by degrees rather than distance, because the world is round, not flat.

The line of latitude midway between the North Pole (90 degrees north) and the South Pole (90 degrees south) is known as the **Equator**, which is located at 0 degrees latitude. It divides the Earth into the Northern Hemisphere and the Southern Hemisphere.

- Lines of latitude are measured in degrees north and south of the Equator.
- Lines of longitude are measured east and west of the **prime meridian** (also known as the Greenwich meridian), which is located at 0 degrees longitude.



Source 25 Left: lines (or parallels) of latitude; right: lines (or meridians) of longitude

Simple maps

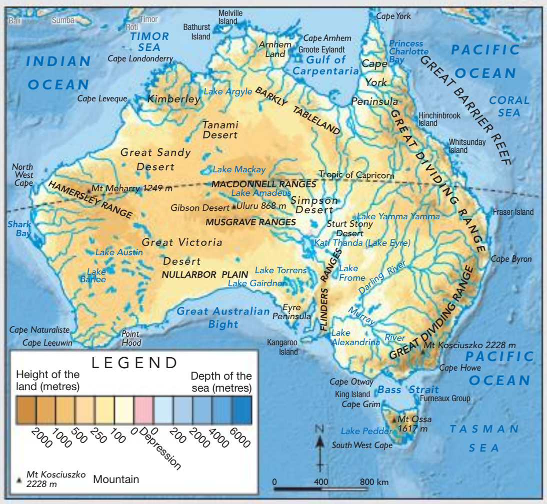
Geographers use different types of maps to show a whole range of different natural and built features – and to analyse the connections between them.

Enlarged maps
Physical, political and dot distribution maps of Australia

Physical maps

Physical maps show the locations and names of natural features of the Earth. These may include deserts, mountains, rivers, plains, oceans, reefs, volcanoes and lakes.

PHYSICAL MAP OF AUSTRALIA SHOWING OCEANS AND MAJOR MOUNTAIN RANGES, RIVERS, LAKES AND DESERTS



Source 26 Source: Oxford University Press

Political maps

Political maps show the locations and names of built features of the Earth. These may include country borders, state and territory borders, cities and towns.

POLITICAL MAP OF AUSTRALIA SHOWING STATE AND TERRITORY BORDERS, CITIES AND TOWNS

Source 27 Source: Oxford University Press

Dot distribution maps

Dot distribution maps use dots (or shapes) to represent (and sometimes compare) a range of different features. The dots show the location of the chosen feature. The size and colour of the dots on the map can show different characteristics of that feature. For example, in Source 28, small towns are shown as small green dots and big cities are shown as big purple squares. Other dot distribution maps show the location of a single feature (for example, see Source 11 on page 191 of topic 6.8). Dot distribution maps help to show patterns and links between features – geographers refer to this as spatial distribution.

DOT DISTRIBUTION MAP OF AUSTRALIA SHOWING POPULATION

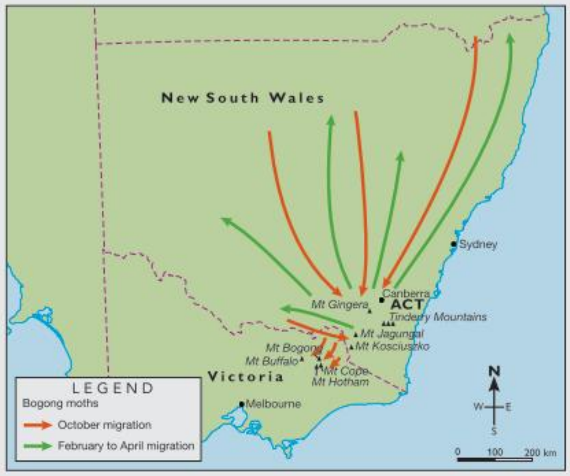
Source 28 Source: Oxford University Press

Flow maps

Flow maps show movement from one place to another. Arrows of different thicknesses or colours are used to show where different things (such as people, goods or animals) are moving to and from, and to compare the numbers involved in the movement.

Enlarged map
Bogong Moth migration routes

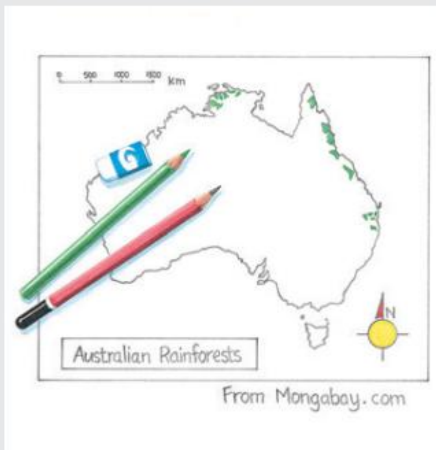
FLOW MAP SHOWING BOGONG MOTH MIGRATION ROUTES

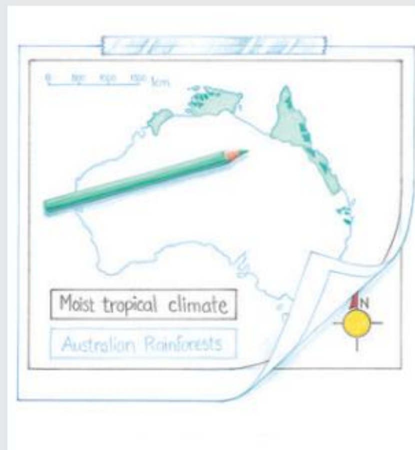


Source 29 Source: Oxford University Press

Overlay maps

Overlay maps show how features on the Earth's surface may be related to each other. To create an overlay map, you first need to produce a base map showing one feature (such as the location of Australian rainforests) and then place a piece of tracing paper or plastic sheet over this base map showing the other feature you are investigating (such as areas with a moist tropical climate).





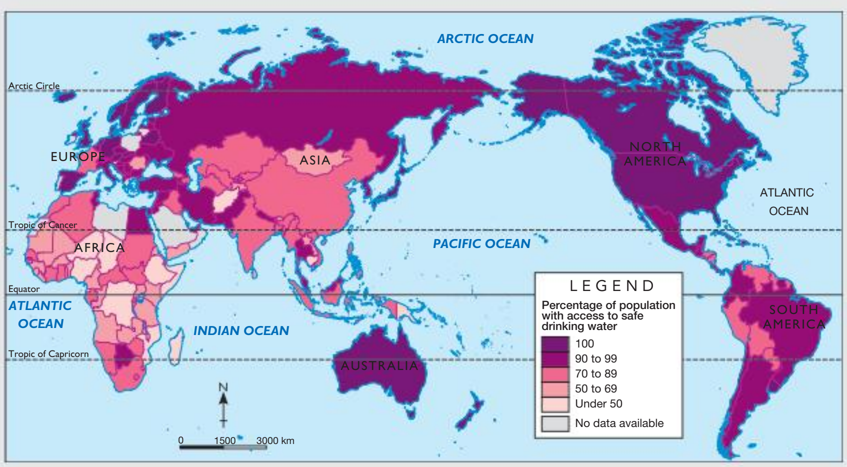
Source 30 An overlay map showing the location of Australian rainforests on a base map (left) and areas with a moist tropical climate on an overlay (right)

Choropleth maps

Choropleth maps use different shades of the same colour to give a quick impression of the pattern formed by the data being shown. Darker shades show the highest values or the greatest amounts, while lighter shades show the lowest values or the least amounts.

Enlarged map
World: Access to safe drinking water

CHOROPLETH MAP SHOWING WORLD ACCESS TO SAFE DRINKING WATER



Source 31 Source: Oxford University Press

More complex maps

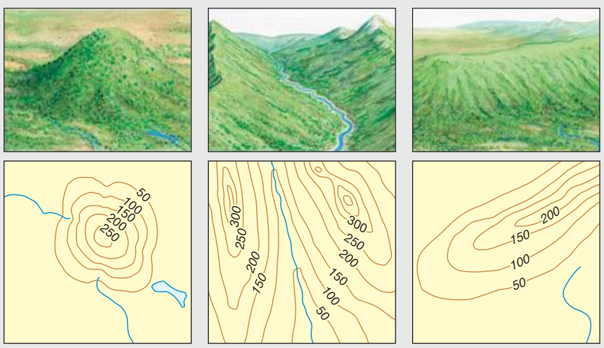
Geographers also use a number of more complex maps to represent information. Some of these are outlined below.

contour lines
lines drawn on a map that connect points at the same height to show the height and steepness of land

Topographic maps

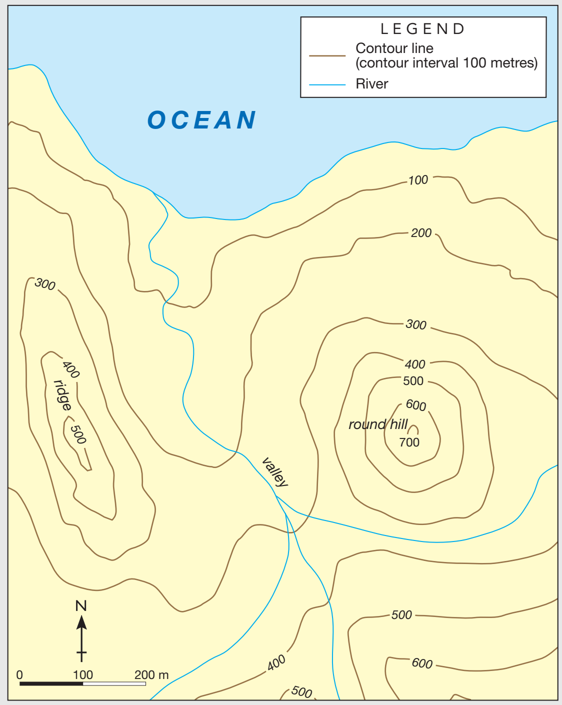
Topographic maps show the shape of the land (such as the shapes formed by valleys, hills and ridges) by using **contour lines**. Numbers on some of the contour lines show the height of the land above sea level. The closer together the contour lines are, the steeper the land. Symbols and colours are also used on topographic maps to show other natural features (such as forests, rivers and lakes) and built features (such as towns, roads and mines). The contour patterns of three common features are shown below.

A ROUND HILL | A VALLEY | A RIDGE



Source 32

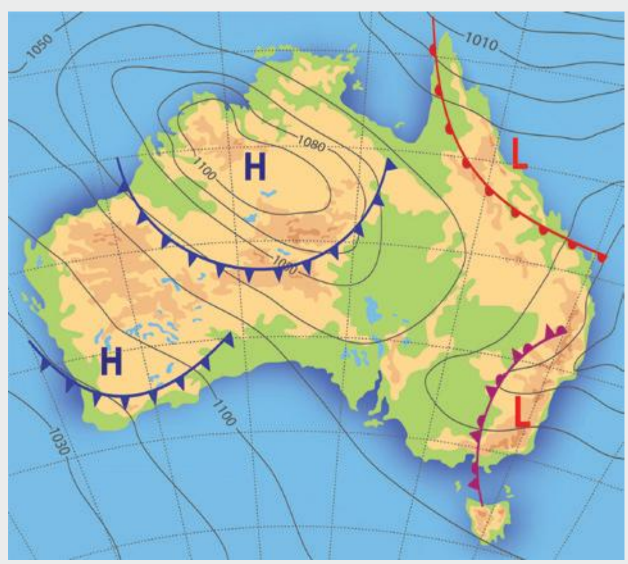
TOPOGRAPHIC MAP SHOWING A ROUND HILL, A VALLEY AND A RIDGE



Source: Oxford University Press

Weather maps

Weather maps show conditions in the atmosphere, such as air pressure, wind speed and wind direction. They also show the size and location of warm and cold fronts. Weather maps are also known as synoptic charts. They are most commonly seen on the nightly television news as part of the weather forecast.

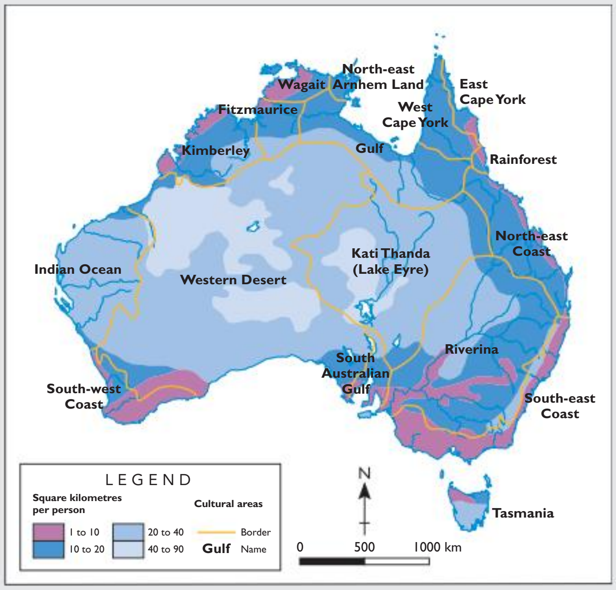


Source 33 Weather maps feature on the nightly news on television.

Thematic maps

Thematic maps show a particular theme or topic; for example, the distribution of resources (such as coal and gas), the different types of forests around the world, access to safe drinking water, or where people live in Australia.

THEMATIC MAP OF AUSTRALIA SHOWING LOCATION AND DISTRIBUTION OF FIRST NATIONS PEOPLES IN 1788



Source 34 Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Australia: Location and distribution of First Nations peoples in 1788

Geographic Information Systems (GISs)

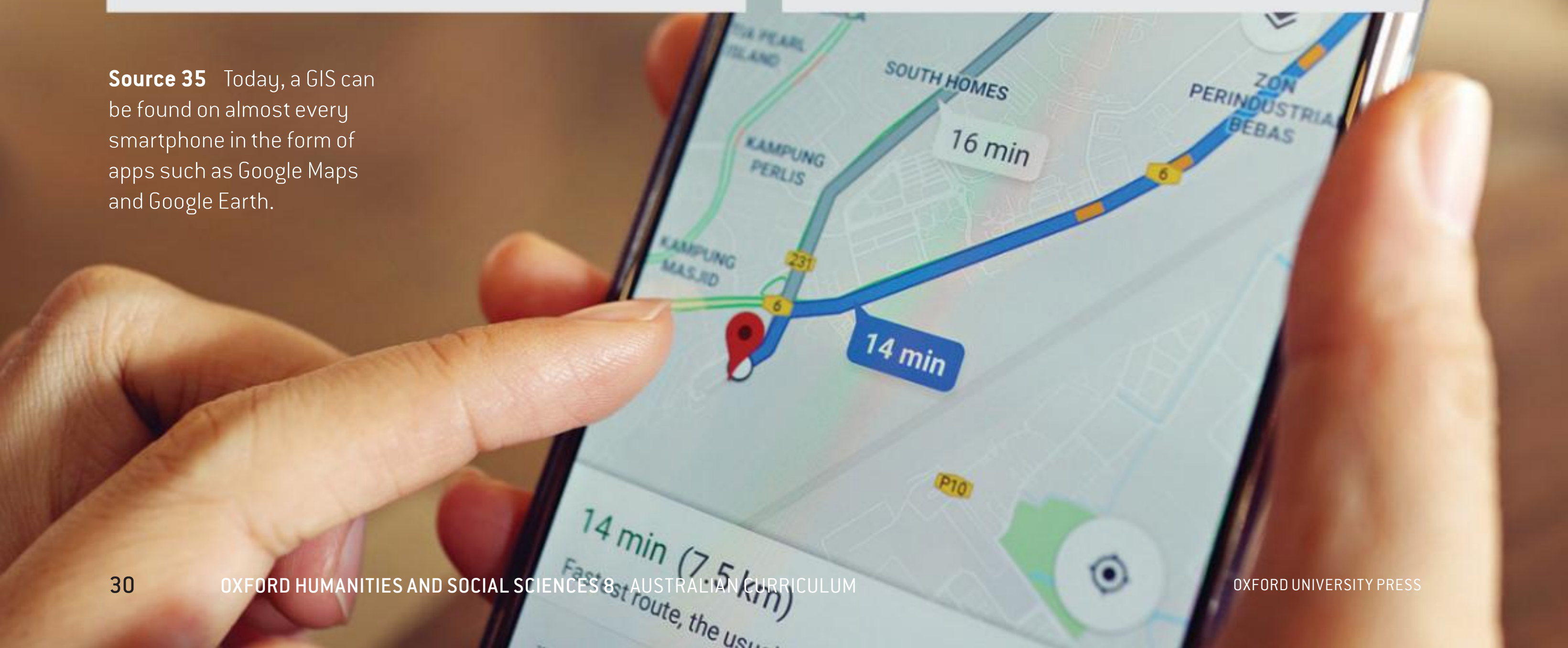
Geographic Information Systems (GISs) are a way of creating, viewing, organising and analysing geographical information with the use of an app. GIS allows geographers to access and share an incredible amount of data and look at the world in new ways.

GISs are made up of three elements:

- digital base maps
- data that is layered over the base map (such as a chart, overlay or table)
- a software app or platform that links these elements and allows the user to interact with all of this information.

GISs combine satellite images, graphs and databases to allow you to identify patterns and trends so that you can gain a better understanding of the world around you. They allow you to turn different layers of data on and off to isolate exactly what you are looking for. You can even create and share your own maps, look at 3D models of areas and record video simulations, known as flyovers.

GISs are already a part of many people's everyday life. Governments, companies and individuals all around the world use GISs. There are a number of GIS platforms available today, but one of the most commonly used and free GISs is Google Earth.



Source 35 Today, a GIS can be found on almost every smartphone in the form of apps such as Google Maps and Google Earth.

Identifying patterns and relationships

In geography, an important skill to master is that of identifying trends, patterns and relationships in the information you are looking at. There are two main ways to do this: the PQE method and the SHEEPT method.

PQE method

PQE is a tool used by geographers to analyse the data they have gathered (such as maps, tables, graphs and diagrams) and reach conclusions. The letters PQE stand for:

- *pattern* – when looking at data, look for things that stand out or form patterns; a pattern may be a group of similar features on a diagram, a concentration of a particular feature on a map, or a particular shape that is created by data on a column graph
- *quantify* – in this step, read the map closely to try to quantify (measure) statistics, amounts, sizes and locations to find a pattern (or patterns)
- *exceptions* – often you may find that there are things in your data that do not fit into a pattern you have identified; these are called exceptions. They also need to be identified and quantified.

Source 36 shows how the PQE method can be used to describe the distribution of major cities on a physical map of Australia (Source 37 on page 32). Read the highlighted sections closely. These are sentence starters that can be used to structure your response whenever you use the PQE method.

If you can identify the type of map that you are looking at, make sure that you name it. See pages 21 to 30 of the toolkit for an overview of different types of maps.

The uneven pattern of this political map shows that Australia's most populated cities are located along the east coast and in the south-east of the country.

The evidence that quantifies this pattern is the coastal location of capital cities and other major cities on the continent. These large cities include Cairns, Townsville, Brisbane, Gold Coast, Newcastle, Sydney, Melbourne, Geelong, Hobart and Adelaide.

The exception to this pattern is Darwin and Perth. While both of these cities are located in coastal areas, they are in the north and the west respectively, and are isolated from the concentration of the cities on the other side of the country.

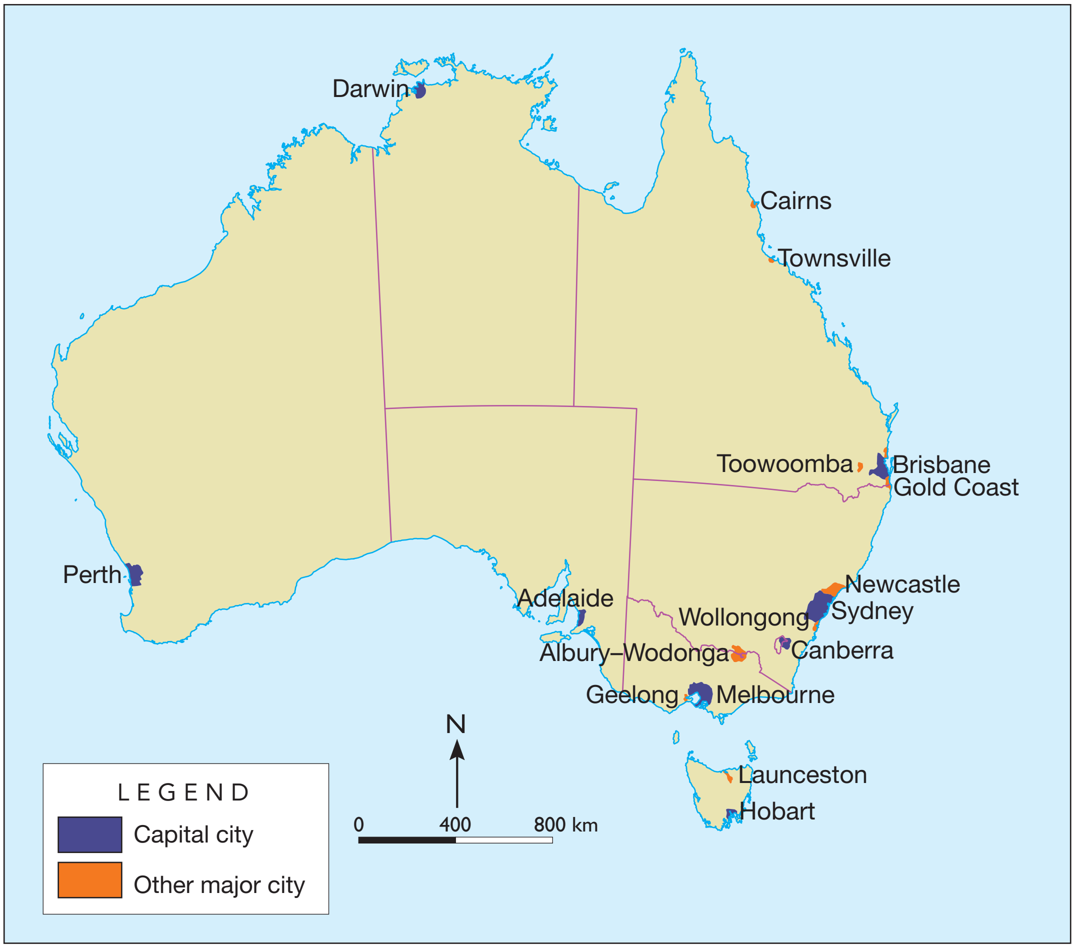
Pattern – in this step, you need to give a general overview of any patterns you may identify.

Quantify – in this step, you need to add specific and accurate information to define and explain the pattern.

Exception – in this step, you need to identify anything that does not fit the pattern.

Source 36 Example of how to use the PQE method

PHYSICAL MAP OF AUSTRALIA SHOWING MAJOR CITIES WITH POPULATIONS OVER 100 000



Source 37

Source: Oxford University Press

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 1.4.

S	Social – factors relating to culture and people
H	Historical – factors relating to past events
E	Environmental – factors relating to the natural environment (including climate, landforms and vegetation)
E	Economic – factors relating to the earning or spending of money (including income earned from industry and tourism and land use for food and fibre production)
P	Political – factors relating to governments (including laws, regulations and policies)
T	Technological – factors relating to the availability and use of different types of technology (including the development of greener technologies, alternative energy sources and GIS)

Source 38 The six factors that make up SHEEPT

SHEEPT method

SHEEPT is a tool used by geographers to help them consider the many factors that may contribute to the patterns identified in their data. When you are examining issues related to your inquiry, it is useful to think about them in terms of these six factors (see Source 38), and consider how relevant each is to the patterns you have discovered. This will help you reach your conclusions.

1.5 Concluding and decision making

Once geographers have researched, collected and analysed geographical data, they start to think about what it means for people, places and environments. They reflect on their findings and make conclusions about who or what has been impacted by a geographical challenge, and the level of impact. Geographers then make decisions about the effectiveness of possible solutions and develop strategies to address the issue.

Key skill worksheet
Concluding & decision making: Evaluating effectiveness

Reflect on what you have learnt

One of the key aspects of drawing conclusions is reflecting on all of the information you have gathered and analysed. Reflecting involves not only looking at *what* you have learnt, but also *how* you have learnt it. It involves asking critical questions about the way in which your geographical inquiry was conducted and your role in it. One of the best ways to reflect on your progress is to complete a self-evaluation checklist like the one in Source 39 – rating your performance and adding comments.

Source 39 A self-evaluation checklist

The title of my geographical inquiry is:		
My geographical inquiry set out to investigate:		
General points	**My rating**	**Comments**
I was able to complete all stages of my geographical inquiry.	1 2 3 4 5	
I was able to answer all my key inquiry questions.	1 2 3 4 5	
I was able to plan my inquiry effectively.	1 2 3 4 5	
My maps, graphs, tables and diagrams were clear and accurate.	1 2 3 4 5	
I was able to analyse my data and reach a conclusion.	1 2 3 4 5	
Areas of strength		**Comments**
My areas of strength are:		
I'm getting much better at:		
Areas needing improvement		**Comments**
The part I found most difficult was:		
I need the most help with:		

Justify possible methods of response

After reflecting on what you have learnt, you may discover that action is needed in order to respond to the issue you have been investigating. There are a number of different ways that geographers can take action to make a change. These include:

- creating a fact sheet or multimedia presentation to inform your school or community
- using social media to raise awareness and gather support
- emailing your local government representative or member of parliament about the issue
- inviting an expert speaker to give a presentation at your school assembly
- planning a campaign to raise money for the issue.

For example, our geographical inquiry into Uluru – based around the key inquiry question 'Is it a good thing that so many tourists visit Uluru–Kata Tjuta National Park?' (see topic 1.3 on page 13) – may lead us to actively campaign for tourism at Uluru to be managed in a more sustainable way so that this important landmark can be enjoyed by future generations.

Another example is a geographical inquiry into litter that was undertaken at Tilden High School. The inquiry found that green waste, such as food scraps, was a leading cause of recycling contamination at the school, as students and staff were consistently putting waste into the wrong bins. One of the responses was the introduction of bright, clear labelling on existing bins ('Landfill' and 'Recycle') and the introduction of four dedicated compost bins in different locations around the school.

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 1.5.

Source 40 One response to the findings of a geographical inquiry

1.6 Communicating

Quizlet
Become familiar with geographical terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

An essential skill for you to develop in geography is that of communicating your findings. Having looked at maps, graphs and other representations of data, and made a decision about what action to take, it is important for you to be able to put your findings into words.

Use correct geographical terminology

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Just like scientists, geographers share a common language. They use geographical terminology to clarify what they are talking about and to share their findings. Source 41 lists and defines some commonly used geographical terms. Additional geographical terms can be found in the glossary definitions throughout the chapters and at the end of this book.

Source 41 Some useful geographical terms

Term	Definition
BOLTSS	a mnemonic (memory device) for remembering the essentials of a map: border, orientation, legend, title, scale and source
Direction	a way of orienting a map, usually shown by the use of compass points, such as north
Distance	the amount of space between two objects or places, generally measured by using the scale on a map
Distribution	the way in which things are arranged on the Earth's surface; the pattern formed by the way objects or places are distributed across a space
Exception	a feature that falls outside a usual pattern or does not follow an observed pattern
Geographical inquiry	the stages that geographers follow to guide their investigations
Key inquiry question	a question that helps geographers to plan and focus their geographical inquiry
Primary data	data for a geographical inquiry that was collected in the field by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. survey data, hand-drawn maps and photographs)
Region	an area of the Earth's surface with a feature that makes it different from surrounding areas
Scale	the relationship (or ratio) between distance on a map and the corresponding distance in the real world
Secondary data	data for a geographical inquiry that was not collected by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. textbooks, atlases and government websites)
Spatial pattern	the distribution of features on the Earth's surface that may form particular patterns, such as linear (in lines), clustered or radial (like spokes on a wheel)
Trend	a general direction in which something is developing or changing (e.g. the trend in population in Australia is positive because the population is growing)

Present findings using a range of communication forms and digital technologies

Geographers use a wide range of methods to inform other people about what they have found over the course of a geographical inquiry. After carefully considering their audience and the purpose of the inquiry, they may choose to communicate their conclusions in one of the following ways:

- written methods, such as essays or reports
- oral forms, such as oral reports, presentations, discussions and debates
- graphic forms, such as maps, graphs and diagrams
- visual forms, such as **annotated visual displays (AVDs)**, photographs, sketches, satellite images and posters
- digital forms, such as Wikis, GISs, databases, 3D models and simulations, and multimedia presentations.

annotated visual display (AVD)
a way of presenting the final results of a research project, incorporating images, graphs, notes and explanations in a poster-style format

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Creating an annotated visual display (AVD)

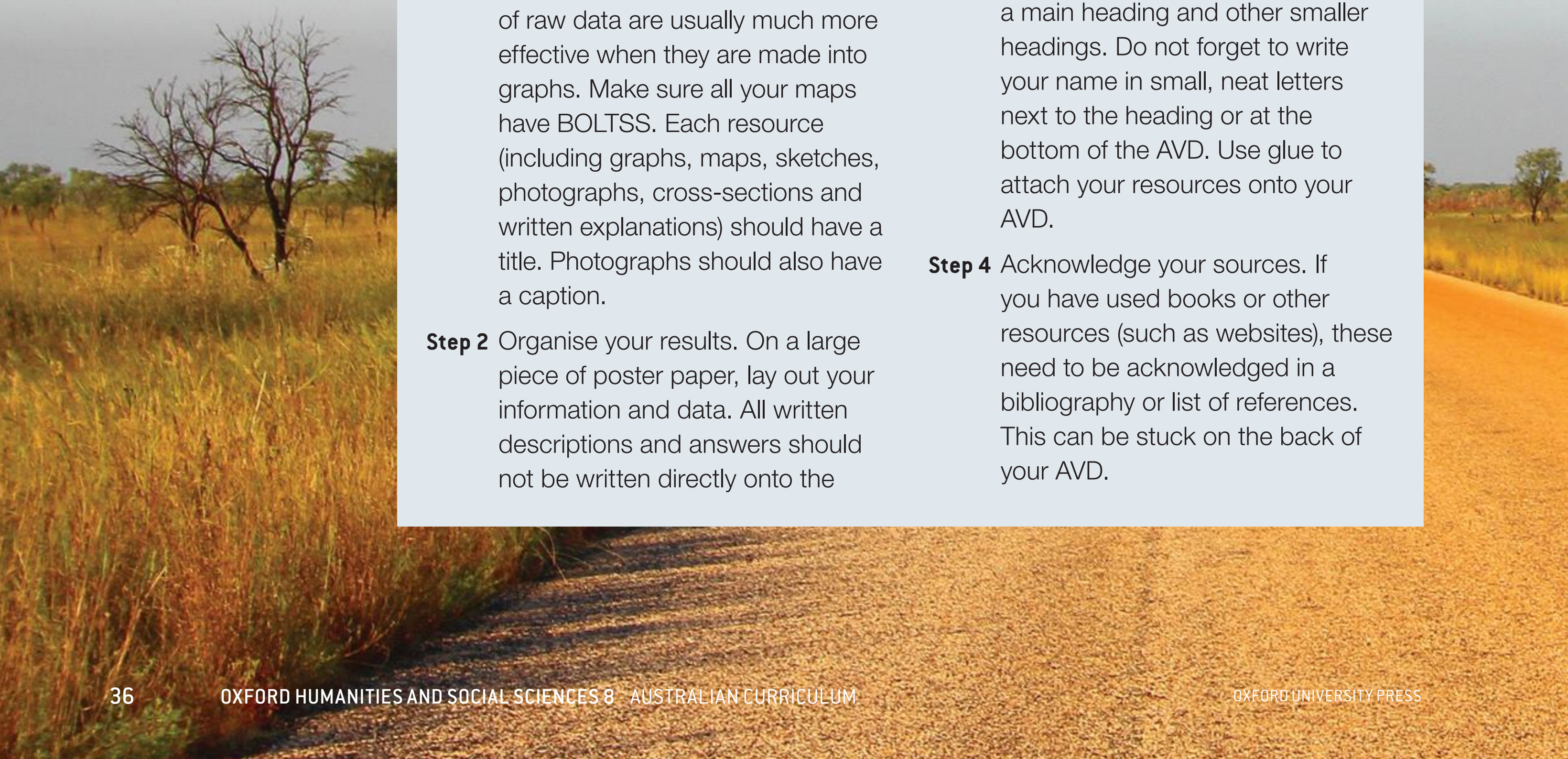
An AVD combines written text with visual images (such as photographs) and other graphic representations (such as maps, graphs, tables, sketches and diagrams). To create a successful AVD, follow these steps:

Step 1 Gather your data. Print your photographs, refine your sketches and tidy up any information and data that you have collected. Tables of raw data are usually much more effective when they are made into graphs. Make sure all your maps have BOLTSS. Each resource (including graphs, maps, sketches, photographs, cross-sections and written explanations) should have a title. Photographs should also have a caption.

Step 2 Organise your results. On a large piece of poster paper, lay out your information and data. All written descriptions and answers should not be written directly onto the poster paper, but should be typed or neatly printed on separate sheets of white paper. This will allow you to arrange them on the poster in the most logical and relevant way before you glue them down. The key inquiry question that began your geographical inquiry may guide your final layout. In the example in Source 42, this question acts as the heading for the poster.

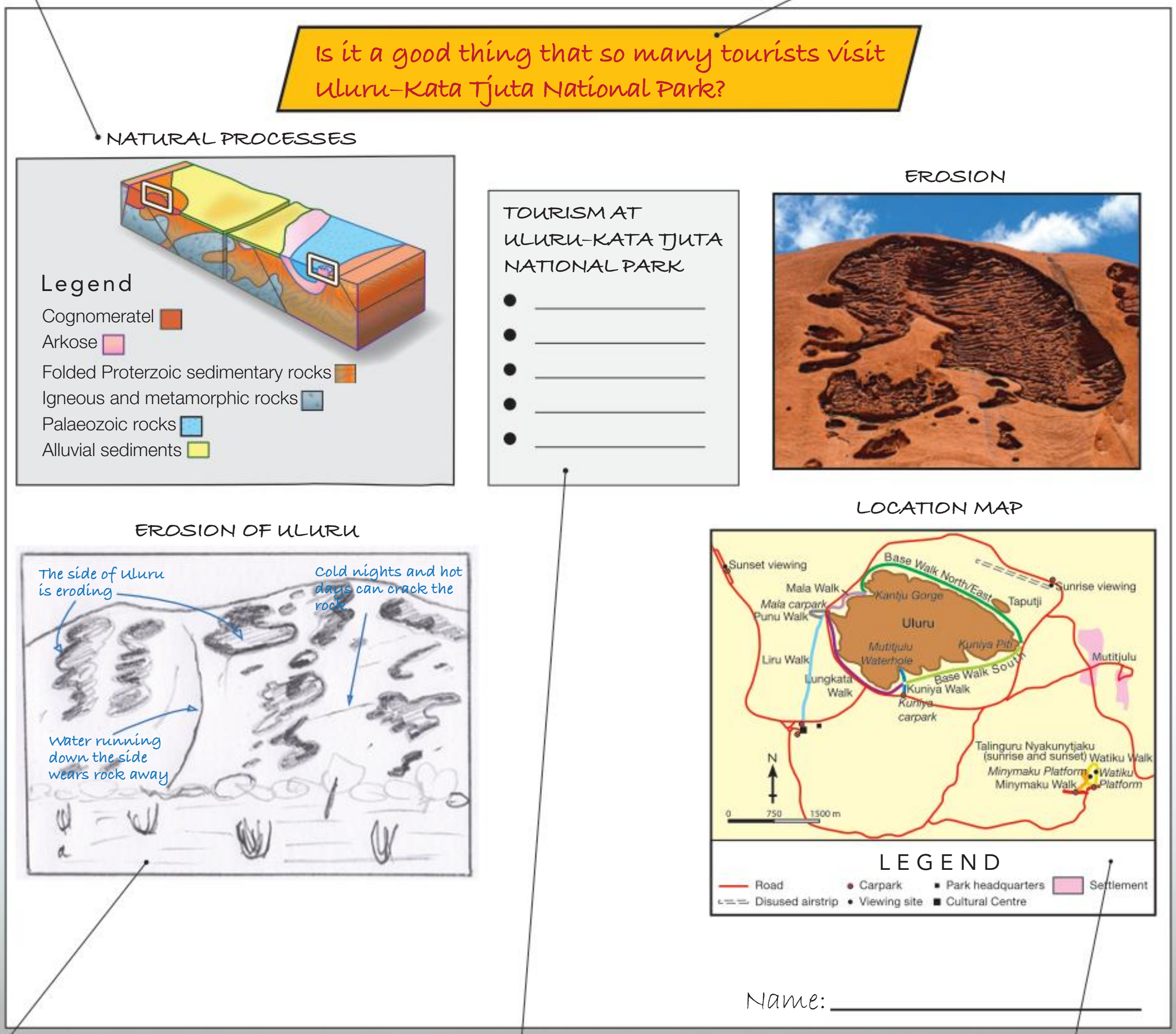
Step 3 Present your results. When you are happy with your layout, design a main heading and other smaller headings. Do not forget to write your name in small, neat letters next to the heading or at the bottom of the AVD. Use glue to attach your resources onto your AVD.

Step 4 Acknowledge your sources. If you have used books or other resources (such as websites), these need to be acknowledged in a bibliography or list of references. This can be stuck on the back of your AVD.



All diagrams, sketches, photographs and graphs must have a title.

Make the heading stand out.



A simple sketch can break up lots of writing.

Lists may be better than long paragraphs.

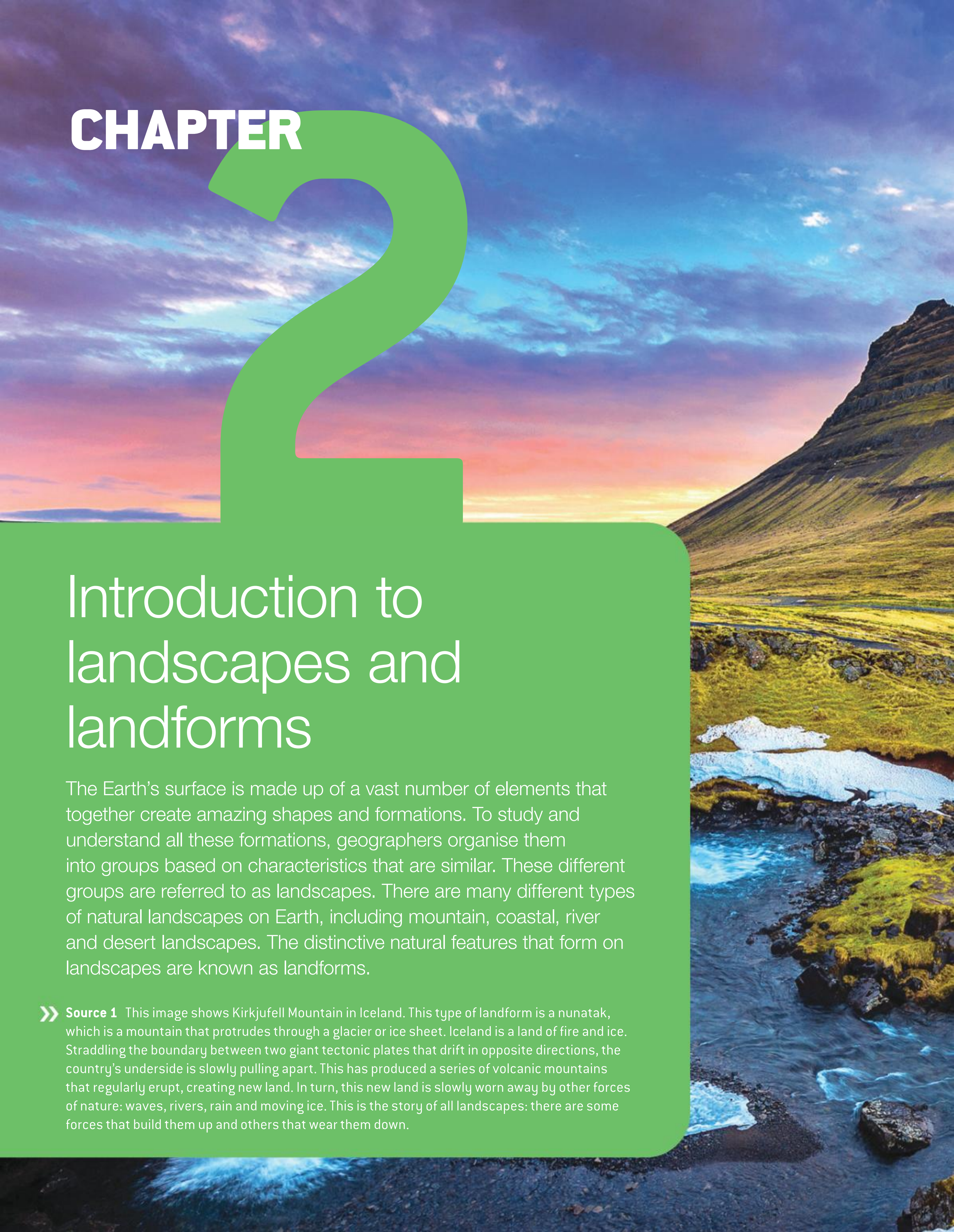
Always include a location map; remember BOLTSS.

Source 42 An AVD

Source: Natural processes illustration © Director of National Parks (Parks Australia) www.parksaustralia.gov.au

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 1.6.



CHAPTER 2

Introduction to landscapes and landforms

The Earth's surface is made up of a vast number of elements that together create amazing shapes and formations. To study and understand all these formations, geographers organise them into groups based on characteristics that are similar. These different groups are referred to as landscapes. There are many different types of natural landscapes on Earth, including mountain, coastal, river and desert landscapes. The distinctive natural features that form on landscapes are known as landforms.

Source 1 This image shows Kirkjufell Mountain in Iceland. This type of landform is a nunatak, which is a mountain that protrudes through a glacier or ice sheet. Iceland is a land of fire and ice. Straddling the boundary between two giant tectonic plates that drift in opposite directions, the country's underside is slowly pulling apart. This has produced a series of volcanic mountains that regularly erupt, creating new land. In turn, this new land is slowly worn away by other forces of nature: waves, rivers, rain and moving ice. This is the story of all landscapes: there are some forces that build them up and others that wear them down.

2A
What are landscapes and landforms?

2.1 The Earth's landscapes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe different types of landscapes around the world.

landscape
a section of the Earth's surface made up of a variety of geographical features (known as landforms) that define and characterise it; landscapes can be natural (e.g. coastal and mountain landscapes) or human (e.g. neighbourhoods and cities)

tectonic plates
immense, slowly moving pieces that make up the Earth's surface (or crust)

mountain ranges
series of mountains or hills ranged in lines and connected by high ground

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to the Himalayas

A **landscape** is a part of the Earth's surface. It consists of a variety of geographical features that are distinct from other parts of the Earth. Each landscape has been created by a mix of factors, including natural processes and human activities. Landscapes are divided into two main categories – natural and human. Natural landscapes (for example, mountains and deserts) are mainly unaffected by human activity whereas human landscapes (for example, cities and farms) have been created and modified by people. Some different types of natural landscapes are described below.

Mountain landscapes

Mountain landscapes are formed by movement of the **tectonic plates** that make up the Earth's surface. As they move, they push against each other and force land upwards, forming **mountain ranges**. These mountain ranges are made up of ridges and valleys. In some places, the hot rock below the plates is forced upwards, creating volcanic mountains. Their eruptions create distinct landscapes, such as much of Iceland (see Source 1 on the previous page). We will explore mountain landscapes in more detail in Chapter 3.

Source 1 The Himalayas are the world's highest mountain range. They were formed by the collision of two of the Earth's tectonic plates, the Indo-Australian and Eurasian. The range includes Mount Everest, the highest mountain on Earth, which rises almost 9 kilometres above sea level.

Source 2 The sea cliffs of Ireland are under constant attack from storms in the Irish Sea, which produce large waves.

Coastal landscapes

The coast is where a land mass meets the sea. Coastal landscapes are shaped by the natural forces of the wind and waves. These geographical forces erode (wear away) or construct (build up) the natural environment, constantly changing its shape. Features of coastal landscapes include beaches, dunes, bays, cliffs, platforms, spits and lagoons. We will explore coastal landscapes in more detail in Chapter 4.

River landscapes

Rivers shape the land over which they flow. Fast-flowing rivers wear away rocks and soil, and carry them downstream. In slower-moving parts of the river, these rocks and soil are deposited and create distinctive **landforms**. River landscapes (or riverscapes) are often excellent for agricultural uses such as farming because the land is rich and fertile. They are a valuable resource for growing food, and often support large human populations in cities and towns.

Source 3 The Li River in China flows through a distinctive landscape of limestone formations. The river supports many farming communities.

Desert landscapes

A desert is an area of land that receives no more than 250 millimetres of rain per year. Deserts cover about one-third of the Earth's surface and contain some of the least habitable regions on the planet. There are two types of deserts – hot deserts and cold deserts. Hot deserts are located along the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn (the latitude lines to the north and south of the Equator) and are shaped by heat and wind. Cold deserts are located closer to the poles and are shaped by the movement of ice in large **glaciers** and **ice sheets**.

Source 4 Uluru is located in the Central Australian Desert. Its distinctive shape is the result of different rates of **erosion** on hard and soft rocks.

landforms
natural geographic features or shapes that appear on the Earth's surface (e.g. dune, hill, valley, beach or cave)

glaciers
rivers of ice in mountain and polar landscapes

ice sheets
layers of ice covering a large area of land for a long period of time

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

2.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'landscape'.
2 **Identify** the type of landscape that is typically found along the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn.

Comprehend

3 For each of the four landscapes pictured, **describe** the forces responsible for creating or changing them.
4 Researchers have recently added almost a metre to the official height of Mount Everest. **Explain** how it is possible for a mountain to grow taller.

Analyse

5 **Distinguish** between a natural and human landscape.

Apply

6 **Investigate** one landscape that interests you. Your chosen landscape might be on the World Heritage List (such as the Uluru–Kata Tjuta National Park) or in your local area. Find out what makes this landscape unique, and provide information about how it is used. Present your research in the form of a brochure, poster or webpage.

2.2 The Earth's landforms

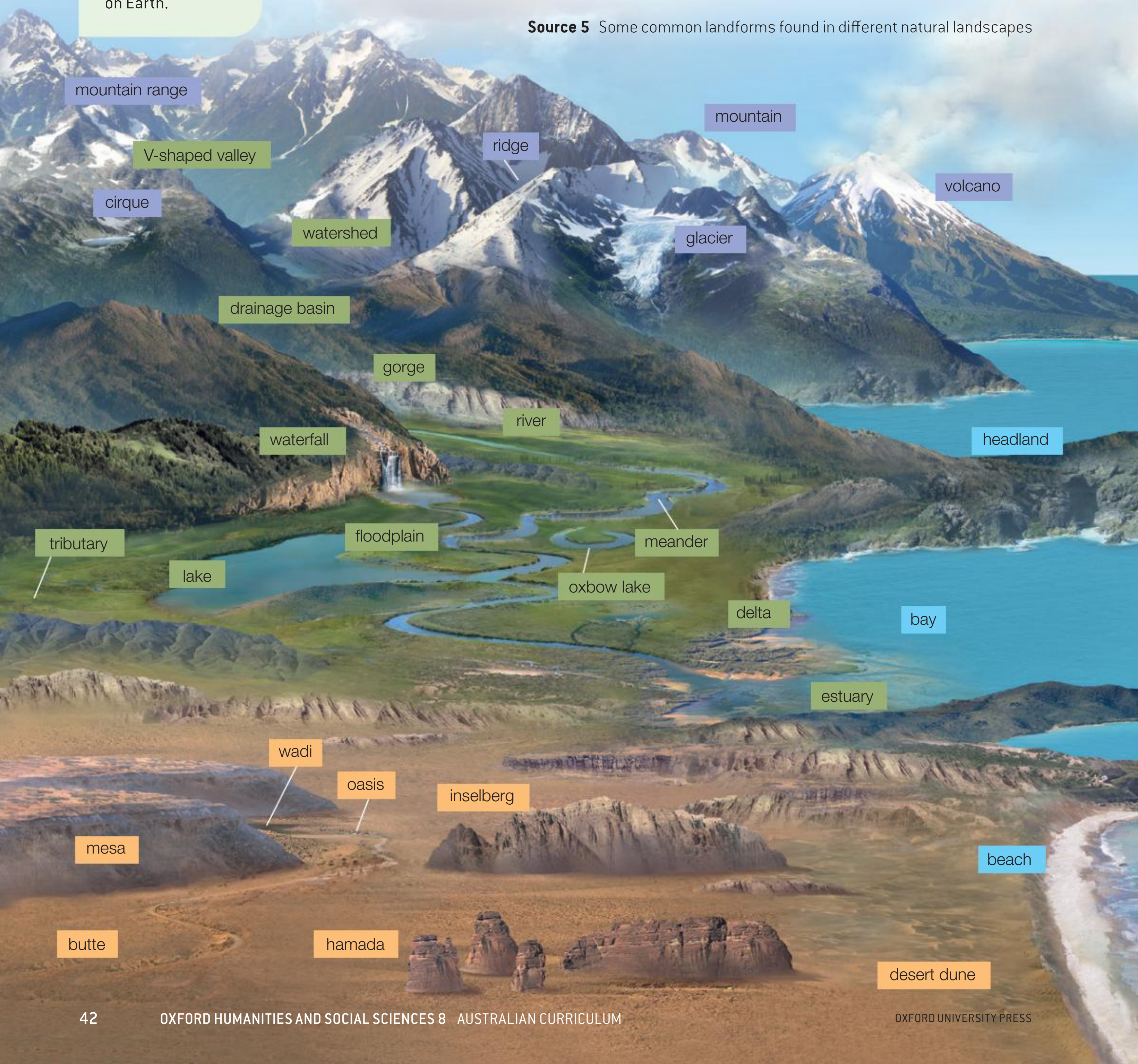
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe different types of landforms on Earth.

You have already discovered that the Earth has a great range of natural landscapes, including mountain, coastal, river and desert landscapes. Within these landscapes, distinctive landforms can be found. A landform is a specific shape or physical feature of the Earth's surface that has been produced by a geomorphic process. These are natural processes that shape the Earth's surface. Some of these processes, such as volcanic eruptions and plate movements, build up the Earth's surface. Others wear it away. Some common landforms are shown in Source 5.

Source 5 Some common landforms found in different natural landscapes



MOUNTAIN LANDSCAPES

Cirque
Bowl-shaped hollow at the head of a valley or on a mountainside, formed by glacial erosion

Glacier
Large frozen river of ice that slowly moves down a valley in response to gravity

Mountain
Steep-sided, lone peak rising over 600 metres above the surrounding land

Mountain range
Chain of connected mountains

Ridge
Long, narrow elevation of land

Volcano
Opening in the Earth's crust where molten rock, ash and gas can escape

DESERT LANDSCAPES

Butte
Flat-topped hill

Desert dune
Wind-blown particle formation

Hamada
Area covered in boulders and large stones

Inselberg
Isolated, steep-sided hill of resistant rock on a plain

Mesa
Flat-topped, steep-sided plateau

Oasis
Desert area with a water supply provided by groundwater

Wadi
Dry watercourse in a narrow valley that divides a plateau

RIVER LANDSCAPES

Delta
Fan-shaped, low-lying area of deposits at the mouth of a river

Drainage basin
Area providing water to a river system

Estuary
River mouth broadening into the sea

Floodplain
Flat area over which water spreads in times of flood

Gorge
Deep, narrow, steep-sided valley

Lake
Large body of water surrounded by land

Meander
Bend in a river

Oxbow lake
Crescent-shaped lake on a river floodplain

River
Natural waterway that takes water downhill by gravity to the sea

Tributary
Small river that joins a larger river

V-shaped valley
Narrow, steep-sided valley carved out by the upper reaches of a river

Waterfall
River-water spill over resistant rock

Watershed
High point from which water flows into a drainage basin

COASTAL LANDSCAPES

Archipelago
Group or chain of islands

Atoll
Ring-shaped coral reef or a string of closely spaced small coral islands encircling a shallow lagoon

Bay
Broad, curved indentation in the coastline

Beach
Deposited rock particles – such as sand, gravel or pebbles – along the coastline

Cliff
Steep rock face formed by the action of the waves

Coral reef
Underwater ridge formed by the growth and deposit of coral

Headland
Narrow, high land jutting out from a coastal cliff into the sea

Island
Area of land surrounded by water

Isthmus
Narrow strip of land or sand that connects an island to the mainland

Spit
Narrow strip of sand protruding into the sea

Stack
Tall pillar of rock formed by wave action eroding a cliff

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Earth's landforms

2.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three landforms that you could find in desert landscapes.

2 **Identify** the landscape where you could find a delta, an estuary and a gorge.

Analyse

3 a **Examine** Source 1 on page 40. What type of landscape is shown in this source?

b **Identify** three landforms you can see in this source.

Apply

4 **Create** a travel brochure for Tourism Australia promoting one Australian landform. Your brochure should point out the special features of the landform that would encourage people to visit.

2.3 How we value landscapes and landforms

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the spiritual, aesthetic, economic and cultural value of landscapes and landforms for people.

Landscapes and landforms around the world are valued by many different people for many different reasons. In general, geographers divide the ways in which people value landforms and landscapes into four categories:

- spiritual value
- cultural value
- aesthetic value
- economic value.

Source 6 Spiritual value: Wilpena Pound is a landform in the Flinders Ranges mountain landscape of South Australia. The traditional landowners, the Adnyamathanha people, regard it as an important part of their Creation Stories. By contrast, many people visit this landform as a tourist site.

Spiritual value

For Aboriginal peoples, the spiritual value of land is expressed through the concept of **Country**. Some believe that the stories of their **Dreaming** bind them to the land. They also believe that their ancestors live on through the land, and ensure their continued connection with it.

As a result, Australian landscapes contain many sacred sites of spiritual importance for Aboriginal peoples. For example, the Adnyamathanha people believe that the walls of Wilpena Pound (Source 6) were formed by two large serpents.

Country
for Aboriginal peoples, Country is both a place of belonging and a way of knowing; Country includes all living things and embraces creation stories

Dreaming
the belief system central to some Aboriginal cultures; the Dreaming also provides a moral code and guidance on interacting with Country; the Dreaming is not fixed in time – it is in the past, present and future

Cultural value

Cultural value is linked to the importance of landforms and landscapes in shaping the identity and belonging of individuals and communities. This is often expressed through creative means, such as literature, art and film. Many Australian films, such as *Tracks*, were filmed in the Flinders Ranges. In *Tracks*, the landscape has a profound impact on the characters and influences their sense of self.

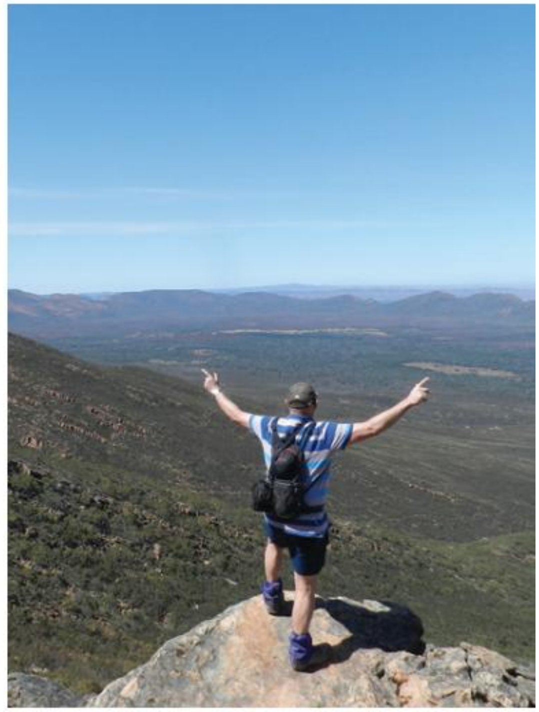
Aboriginal peoples express the importance of the land to them through Dreaming stories, song and dance, and art. Aboriginal art often relates to important landscapes and landforms.

Source 7 Cultural value: An image from the 2013 film *Tracks*, which tells the true story of a young woman who trekked across the Australian outback with camels

Aesthetic value

The aesthetic value of a landscape is closely linked to its beauty and uniqueness, and is always subjective (personal). People are drawn to places for many reasons. Being surrounded by the beauty of the landscape may give someone a sense of freedom and well-being.

Thousands of tourists visit Wilpena Pound each year and many climb the highest nearby mountain, St Mary Peak (Ngarri Mudlanha), to enjoy the spectacular views.



Source 8 Aesthetic value: A visitor enjoys the view across Wilpena Pound, from near the top of St Mary Peak (Ngarri Mudlanha).

Economic value

Economic value is a measurement of how financially important landscapes and landforms are. Income can be generated from landscapes in many ways. The mining industry, for example, attaches economic value to landscapes that contain sought-after metals and minerals, such as coal and gold.

Tourism is an important industry in the Flinders Ranges. More than 700 000 people visit the region each year, contributing $450 million to the local economy. Businesses such as tour operators, hotel owners and service stations all benefit from this income.

Competing values

The same landscape can be valued by different people for different reasons. To a mining corporation, the most important thing might be the economic value of a landscape; while to an Aboriginal community, it may the spiritual value. Then again, an artist might appreciate the aesthetic value of a landform. All these values are important to consider when deciding on how a landscape is best used.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on how we value landscapes and landforms

2.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What type of landscape is the Flinders Ranges?

2 Using Source 5 on pages 42 to 43 as a guide, **identify** the landform in Source 7.

Analyse

3 **Distinguish** between economic value and cultural value. Remember, when you distinguish between two things you must talk about how they are different.

4 Rank the values of landscapes and landforms in order of importance to you. Give reasons for your top choice.

5 There is a sign near the top of St Mary Peak (Ngarri Mudlanha) at Wilpena Pound from the Adnyamathanha peoples requesting that visitors do not climb to the top.

a Why do you think this request has been made?

b Many visitors ignore the sign and climb to the top. **Consider** how this is an example of competing values.

Apply

6 Research a book, poem, movie or artwork that features an Australian landscape or landform. **Create** a poster to present your findings. Include the title of the work, its creator, a blurb about it, the Australian landscape or landform it represents, and an image. Provide three reasons why you think the landscape or landform has cultural value.

2.4 Spiritual value in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the significance of landscapes and landforms for First Nations peoples.

For First Nations peoples, land is much more than soil, rocks and ridges. Each person belongs to a piece of land in the same way each of us belongs to a family. As such, First Nations peoples care for the land in a way that is known as 'Caring for Country'. In doing so, First Nations peoples maintain the material, cultural and spiritual wellbeing of the land and its people.

CASE STUDY

The Glass House Mountains

The Glass House Mountains in south-east Queensland have been home to the neighbouring Jinibara and Gubbi Gubbi/ Kabi Kabi peoples for thousands of years.

We know this from their oral history and songs. We also know this from physical evidence, such as axe-grinding grooves and rock art sites.

The Creation story of the Glass House Mountains

Mount Tibrogargan (the father) and Mount Beerwah (the mother) had many children, the eldest of whom was Mount Coonowrin. One day, Tibrogargan saw a great wave approaching from the sea. He called on Coonowrin to help Beerwah, who was pregnant at the time.

In the meantime, Tibrogargan gathered up his other children and ran towards higher land. Tibrogargan looked back to see that Coonowrin was not helping his mother, but running off alone. He chased his son and hit him in a great rage.

When the floods had dried up, Coonowrin begged Tibrogargan for forgiveness, but instead Tibrogargan wept in shame. By crying, Tibrogargan created the streams that still run in the region today. He asked Coonowrin why he had not helped his mother. Not knowing his mother was pregnant, Coonowrin replied that Beerwah was the biggest of all of them and could look after herself. As a result, Tibrogargan turned his back and vowed never to look at his son again.

Today, Tibrogargan gazes out to sea, while Coonowrin hangs his head and cries, his tears running off to the sea. His mother Beerwah is still pregnant, as it takes a long time to birth a mountain.

Spiritual significance today

The Glass House Mountains continue to be a place of strong spiritual value for the Aboriginal peoples of south-east Queensland. As Mount Beerwah is a mother mountain, she holds particular significance.

Jinibara Elder Ken Murphy tells us why Beerwah needs to be respected by the tourists who visit the mountain: 'It is a sacred site. It's where the birthing places were, that's the main thing, not for people to climb and take videos up.'

oral history
a mix of oral traditions and recorded history – allowing people to share their memories and ensure their stories are never forgotten

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Ethically researching First Nations landscapes and landforms

Source 9 The Glass House Mountains – the large broad mountain on the left is Tibrogargan (the father), to the right of centre is the pyramid-shaped Beerwah (the mother), and Coonowrin (the son) is the tall, narrow mountain on the right.

Elders have repeatedly asked that climbing Beerwah be banned out of respect for its spiritual significance. The Queensland Government has asked visitors to consider its significance to First Nations peoples when visiting the area, but has no plans to ban climbers entirely.

Meanings of place

It is important to remember that not all people think about place in the same way. Geographers see mountains as places to be studied so that they can learn more about how they are formed.

For many First Nations peoples, however, mountains are much more than rocks to be studied. They believe that the mountains were alive in the time before humans walked the Earth, and that the shapes and locations of mountains can tell us about the ancient events that have led to us being here today. Learning these stories helps geographers to appreciate that we do not all see the same place in the same way. It also prompts them to ask questions about which perspective should be considered as most important, and why.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 6 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source 10 Members of the Gubbi Gubbi peoples lead a group of First Nations rugby league players on a cultural retreat in the Glass House Mountains.

KEY CONCEPT
Place

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on spiritual value in Australia

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on the spiritual value of the natural landscape in Sources 9 and 10, and complete the following sentences.
- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

2.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three pieces of evidence that tell us that the Glass House Mountains have been inhabited for thousands of years.

2 What is oral history?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how the Glass House Mountains case study shows us the different ways in which people value landscapes.

4 First Nations peoples in many countries have stories to explain the creation of landscapes. Why do you think this is the case?

Apply

5 'Mount Beerwah should be open to anyone who wants to climb it.' To what extent (how much) do you agree or disagree with this statement? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

6 In October 2019, Uluru was permanently closed to climbers. **Investigate** why this decision was made. What were the differing points of view about this decision?

2.5 Human impacts on landscapes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the causes and effects of landscape degradation.

Humans have been changing landscapes for thousands of years. We clear forests and change the shape of the land to graze animals and grow crops. We move mountains and divert rivers to build towns. We even create new land from the sea in coastal areas. In fact, humans have changed the Earth so much that today very few truly natural landscapes remain.

Landscape degradation

landscape degradation a process that occurs when the productivity of land is lost

Landscape degradation affects 33 per cent of the Earth's land surface. It reduces the quality of the land and its capacity to produce food. Human activities are the main cause of landscape degradation. Examples of this include overgrazing, crop growing without resting the fields, deforestation, collection of wood for fuel, and mining.

Mining and landscape degradation

Through the ages, people have extracted minerals from rocks (ores) to use for different purposes. The discovery of ores, and people's ability to extract the metals within them, has been crucial for the technological development of society. Today our lifestyle depends on the use of a large range of minerals; for example, the batteries in our phones and laptops are made from lithium.

Minerals come from the rock in the Earth's crust. If the rock containing the mineral is close to the Earth's surface, it can be dug up by open-cut mining (see Source 11). Mining and the processes used to extract minerals from the ore damage our environment. Even where mining occurs underground, crushed rock is dumped in piles around the mine after the valuable minerals have been extracted.

Source 11 This open-cut coal mine in the Hunter Valley, New South Wales, illustrates how mining and quarrying dramatically change natural landscapes. First, the natural vegetation has been cleared; then the top layer of soil and rock has been removed so the minerals can be accessed, leaving a huge open-air pit. Sometimes, the mining process may also release dangerous chemicals into the environment.

Enlarged map
World: The Earth's remaining wilderness

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on human impacts on landscapes

The shrinking wilderness

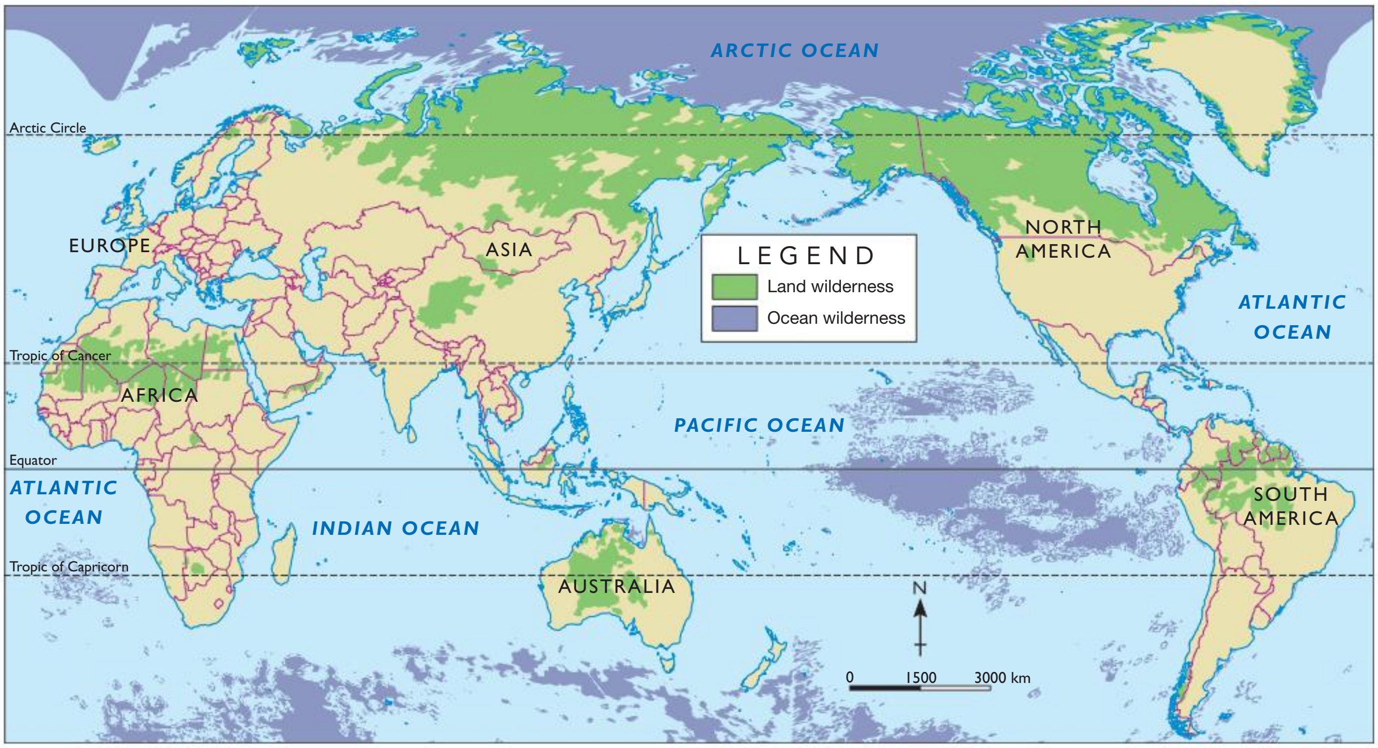
Recent studies have shown that there are very few intact areas of wilderness left on Earth. More than three-quarters of the Earth's **ecosystems** have been changed by human activities. While this topic has so far focused on changes on land, the world's oceans are also undergoing change.

Climate change is responsible for much of this change as it raises the temperature of the water and makes the ocean slightly more acidic. This can have devastating impacts on fragile ecosystems, such as coral reefs. The world's largest reef, Australia's Great Barrier Reef, for example, has lost half of its corals since 1995.

ecosystems
communities of organisms that live together and interact with each other in a specific environment

climate change
the long-term change in the average weather patterns of Earth

WORLD: THE EARTH'S REMAINING WILDERNESS



Source: Oxford University Press/AFP

Source 12 Only 23 per cent of the land and 13 per cent of the oceans is considered wilderness today.

2.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How does mining contribute to landscape degradation?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the changes that have been made to the landscape in Source 11.

3 **Explain** how climate change contributes to the degradation of the ocean.

4 Look closely at Source 12.

a **Identify** and **describe** the purpose of this type of map (see page 30 of 'The geography toolkit').

b Use the world map at the back of the book to list the countries where the Earth's wilderness is located.

c **Describe** the distribution of wilderness in Australia.

Apply

5 Which of the sources in this topic would you use to convince a friend that the Earth's landscapes are under threat? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

6 Which of the threats described in this topic do you consider the most difficult to overcome? **Discuss** this as a class.

2A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Tourism in Australia

Local and international tourists visit Australia's unique landscapes and landforms. These include the Great Ocean Road in Victoria, Sydney Harbour in New South Wales, Uluru in Central Australia and the Bungle Bungle Range in Western Australia.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

These places not only have cultural, spiritual and aesthetic value, but they also have economic value to Australia. This is because of the money brought in by tourism. Each year, tourism generates around $60 billion for the Australian economy. Tourism provides jobs for many people, such as travel agents and tour guides. When tourists visit sites, they also spend money on food and souvenirs, as well as public transport and accommodation.

One of Australia's most famous landscapes is the Great Barrier Reef. It is the world's largest reef system, made up of 2000 individual reefs and islands, and stretching for 2300 kilometres along the Queensland coast. It is estimated that about 2 million people visit the reef each year, although it is difficult to know the exact number. Most of these visitors are Australians who stay at least one night in towns and cities nearby, such as Cairns. Visitors generate around $6 billion a year in the region. The reef is also responsible for more than 60 000 jobs in many different industries.

Source 13 Reefworld at Hardy Reef, where tourists can snorkel, dive or even stay the night

KEY SKILL Questioning & researching

Reading multiple-line graphs

Line graphs are used to show changes in data so that we can readily identify trends. In order to compare trends in different sets of data, geographers use multiple-line graphs (that is, line graphs with more than two lines) like the one shown in Source 14.

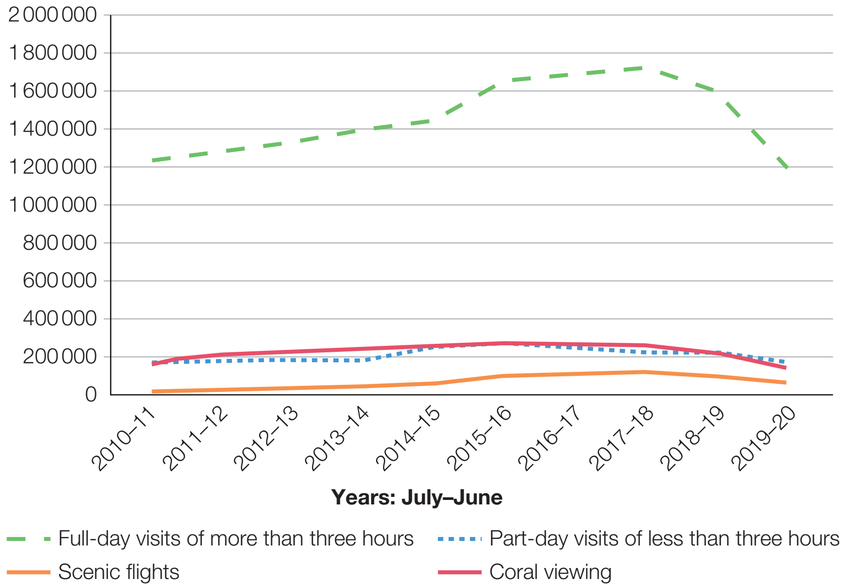
To interpret these types of graphs, follow the steps below.

Step 1 Read the title carefully so that you understand what type of data is being shown on the graph.

Step 2 Look closely at each scale. In Source 14, you will notice that the vertical axis shows the numbers of visitors of each type, while the horizontal axis shows the years from 2010 to 2020.

Step 3 Look closely at the legend and colours so that you understand the different sets of data being graphed.

Step 4 Look for major patterns. In this graph, there has been an obvious decline in all types of tourism to the Great Barrier Reef in 2019–20.



Source: Statistics from Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority, Australian Government

Source 14 Visitation data, Great Barrier Reef, 2010–20

Month	Number of visitors in 2019	Number of visitors in 2020
January	731 100	766 600
February	927 200	685 400
March	836 000	331 900
April	700 400	0
May	668 300	0

Source: Data provided by Budget Direct Travel Insurance

Source 15 The number of overseas tourists in Australia from January to May in 2019 and 2020

Practise the skill

1. Identify the type of graph used in Source 14 and **describe** its purpose.
2. **Describe** the trend over time in full-day visits as shown in Source 14.
3. **Compare** the trends in the number of visitors to the landscape who listed 'coral viewing' as their main activity to the number of visitors who undertook a scenic flight. Remember, when you compare two things you must talk about how they are similar and different.
4. Give reasons for the decline in tourist numbers in 2019–20. What events were happening at the time that might have discouraged tourism?
5. Imagine that a friend visiting from overseas has asked your opinion on how they should see the Great Barrier Reef. Although you might not have been to the reef yourself, you can use the data from Source 14 to give recommendations. **Determine** (decide) how they should visit the reef and explain how you found your answer.

Extend your understanding

1. Using the data provided in Source 15, **create** a multiple-line graph of your own.
   - a Plot the number of tourists on the vertical axis and the months of the year on the horizontal axis.
   - b Use different-coloured lines to represent the different sets of data.
   - c Give your graph a title and legend.
2. Now that you have created your graph, answer the following questions to interpret the data:
   - a **Identify** the number of visitors to Australia in January 2019.
   - b Calculate the difference between the number of visitors to Australia in March 2019 and the number of visitors in the same month in 2020.
   - c In a paragraph (around 200 words), **discuss** the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on tourism in Australia. In your paragraph, talk about one economic impact, one social impact and one environmental impact that the pandemic has had on tourism in Australia. These can be either positive or negative impacts. Remember, the best discussions always include more than one point of view.

2 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine Sources 16 to 19 and answer the questions.

Geographical photos

Geographical photos are taken at a specific angle to show the geography of a particular landscape. There are many different types of geographical photos, including vertical (bird's-eye) and oblique photos.

1 For Landscapes A, B and C, identify two landforms in each image. (2 marks)

2 **Identify** the type of landscapes shown in Landscapes A–D. (4 marks)

3 **Compare** Landscape A with Landscape C. How are they similar and how are they different? (4 marks)

4 Look closely at Landscape D.

 a **Identify** two ways that human activities have changed this landscape. (2 marks)

 b **Explain** why these changes have taken place. (3 marks)

5 Landscape degradation is one of the most serious threats to our landscape. **Predict** two types of changes that would happen to Landscape D if all the forest was cleared. What type of impact do you think this would have on the natural environment? (5 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 16 Landscape A

Source 17 Landscape B

Source 18 Landscape C

Source 19 Landscape D

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify and describe different types of landscapes around the world.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.1, page 40.
Identify and describe different types of landforms on Earth.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.2, page 42.
Explain the spiritual, aesthetic, cultural and economic value of landscapes and landforms for people.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.3, page 44.
Understand the significance of landscapes and landforms for First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.4, page 46.
Explain the causes and effects of landscape degradation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 2.5, page 48.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 2

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 2

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Introduction to landscapes and landforms.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 2

CHAPTER 3

Mountain landscapes

A mountain is an elevated landform that rises above the surrounding landscape. Mountain landscapes appear on every continent on Earth and are created by the movement of the Earth's tectonic plates. Human activities – such as mining, tourism, farming and the damming of rivers – have changed mountain landscapes in many places. In response to these changes, some communities have developed ways to protect these landscapes.

Mountains can be harsh, dangerous and unforgiving landscapes. Weather conditions can change quickly, bringing flash flooding and snow, and the risk of avalanches and landslides. In some places, volcanic eruptions are an ever-present threat.

In this chapter we will explore mountain landscapes and the forces that shape them, both natural and human.

Source 1 Indonesia is one of the most volcanic countries on Earth. This is because of its location on a boundary between several of the Earth's tectonic plates. Nearly 200 million Indonesians live within 100 kilometres of a volcano. The rich volcanic soils have allowed them to grow plentiful food, but they live in the knowledge that an eruption could occur at any time.

3A
How are mountain landscapes formed?

3B
How are mountain landscapes used and managed?

3C
Are mountain landscapes hazardous places?

3.1 Tectonic plates

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand how tectonic plates shape landscapes and create geomorphological hazards.

The outer layer of the Earth's surface (known as the crust) is broken into large pieces called tectonic plates. These plates are around 100 kilometres thick and fit together like enormous pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. Currents in the red-hot molten material (**magma**) under these tectonic plates cause them to move about. The places where tectonic plates meet are known as **plate boundaries**. Here, plates will do one of three things: collide (**converge**), separate (**diverge**) or slide past each other.

When plates converge, the edge of the more dense plate is usually forced below the other in a process called **subduction**. Plates beneath oceans are denser than plates beneath land, so they tend to be pushed downwards in the collision. This creates a line of mountains along the crumpled edge. Volcanoes can also be created in this way, as hot magma rises through cracks in the crust created in the plate collision (see Source 10 on page 60).

When plates diverge, magma rises to fill the space. This can also create a line of mountains, as magma spreads upwards into a ridge.

Where plates slide past each other, this is known as a **transform boundary**. By sliding past, these plates do not create any new land. However, they can scrape against each other and, in doing so, often cause earthquakes.

magma
the hot, liquid (molten) rock beneath the surface of the Earth

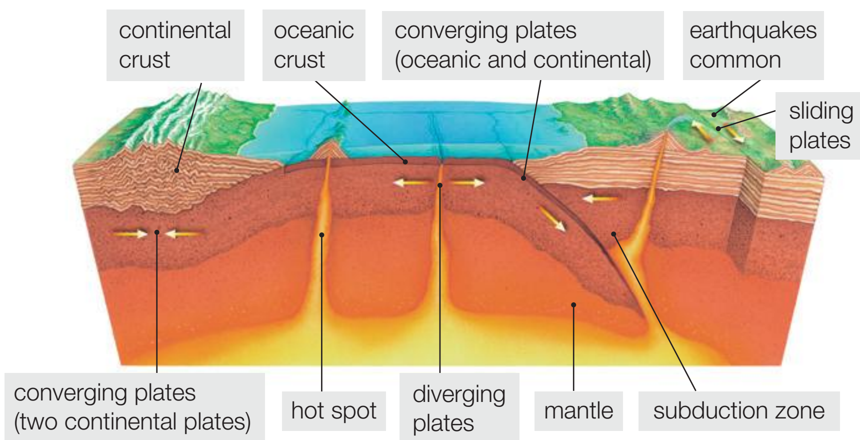
plate boundaries
the edges where two tectonic plates meet; most geologic activities take place here, including volcanoes and earthquakes

converge
come together from different directions

diverge
move apart in different directions

subduction
when two tectonic plates meet, and one is forced under the other

transform boundary
when two tectonic plates scrape sideways past each other, often causing an earthquake



Source 1 Tectonic plate movement

3.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 In your own words, **summarise** three ways that the Earth's tectonic plates move.

2 **Explain** why most of the world's mountains are located on converging plate boundaries.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 2.

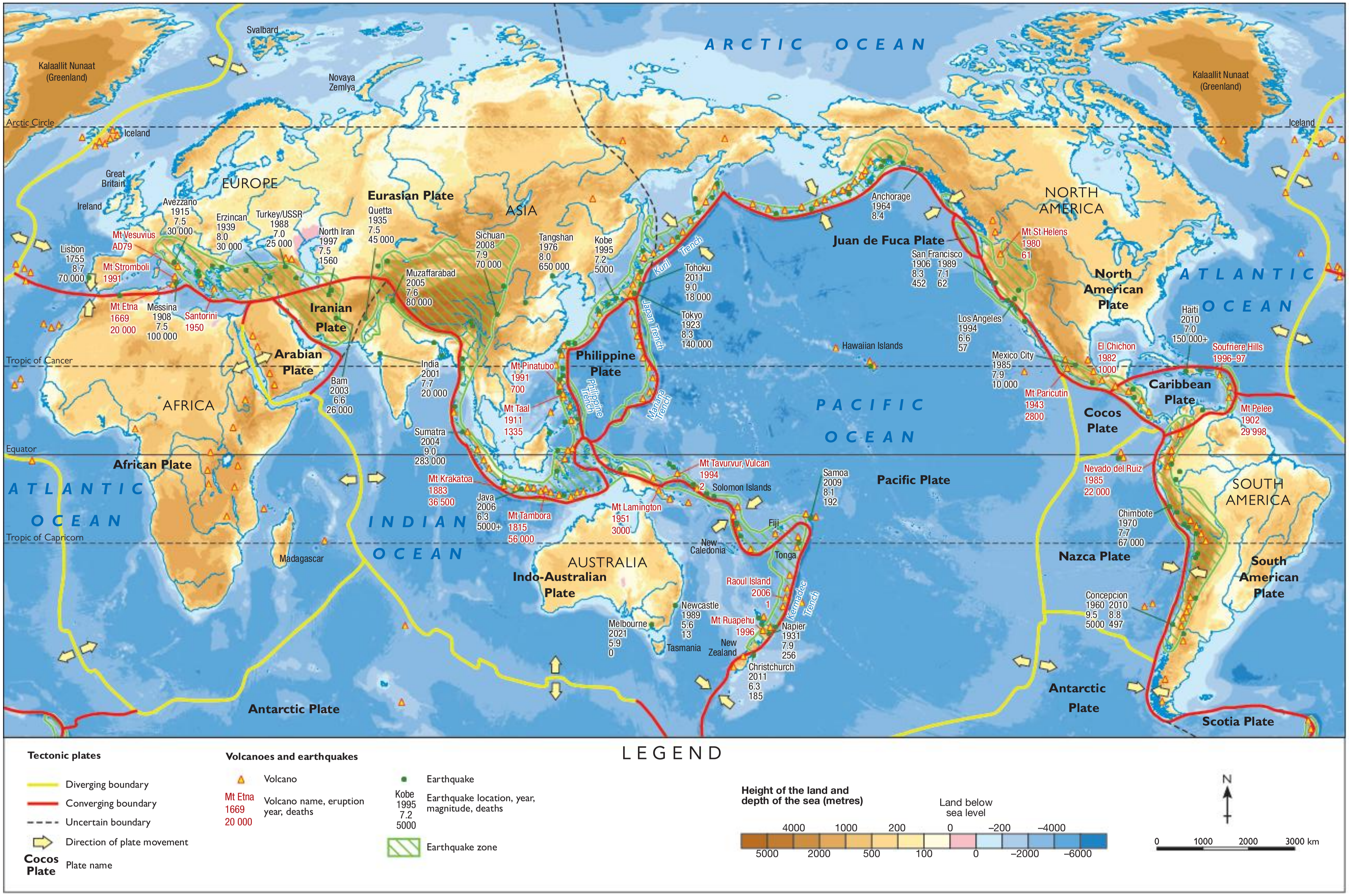
a What relationship can you see between plate boundaries and mountain ranges?

b Australia is the flattest continent on Earth. Use evidence from the map to explain why this is the case.

Apply

4 **Investigate** tectonic plates to explain the difference between 'continental' and 'oceanic' plates.

WORLD: MAJOR TECTONIC PLATES



Source 2

Source: Oxford University Press

Watch it!
A video and quiz on tectonic plates

3.2 How mountains are formed

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

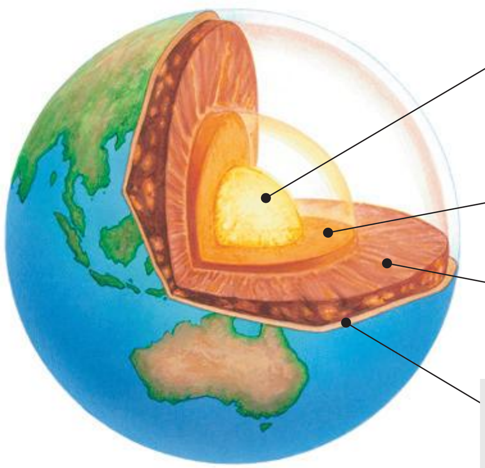
» explain the geomorphological processes that produce mountain landscapes and landforms

» describe how fold, fault-block and volcanic mountains are formed.

Mountains are formed where the surface of the Earth has been pushed upwards. Tremendous forces inside the Earth can crumple the surface into long mountain chains, such as the Himalayas in Tibet; or punch through the surface to create volcanoes, such as Mauna Kea on the island of Hawaii. To understand how this happens, you need to know about the world beneath your feet.

You may be used to thinking of the Earth as a solid ball, like a giant shot-put, but this is far from the reality. The Earth is more like a giant peach, with a thin skin and a core at the centre surrounded by soft flesh. Scientists believe that the Earth is made up of four layers (see Source 3).

mantle
the soft layer of hot rock between the crust and the core of the Earth



At the centre of the Earth is the inner core. This is a place of extreme temperatures (up to 10 000°C) and pressure – as the rest of the Earth pushes down on it.

The outer core is mainly made up of liquid metals, such as iron. It is very hot (up to 6000°C).

Most of the Earth's interior is in the mantle. It is so hot in the mantle that rocks melt and move slowly in giant currents.

The crust is made up of large slabs, called tectonic plates. The movement of these plates creates mountains and valleys.

Source 3 The Earth's layers

CASE STUDY

Victoria's 2021 earthquake

On Wednesday, 22 September 2021, Victoria experienced a magnitude-5.9 earthquake. Shocks rippled through Melbourne and regional Victoria, and reached as far as Sydney, Canberra, Adelaide and Launceston. There were no fatalities, but several buildings in the Mansfield area and in Melbourne were damaged. Scientists believe it may have been the largest recorded earthquake in eastern Australia.

Dr Trevor Allen, a seismologist with Geoscience Australia, uses the metaphor of a pavlova to explain why we have earthquakes here in Australia:

> Imagine that a tectonic plate is a pavlova – with a thin brittle crust [and a] mostly solid meringue mantle. The Australian continent would sit in the middle of our pavlova. If you put your hands on the edge of the pavlova and start to squeeze, the crust around your hands will be the first to break, like those earthquakes at the boundaries of tectonic plates. But if you continue to squeeze, eventually strain builds up in the centre of the crust, and cracks will begin to appear. This is similar to how we get earthquakes in Australia.

It is very unlikely Australia would ever experience a magnitude-8 or magnitude-9 earthquake, because the forces responsible for them only occur at the plate boundaries.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on how mountains are formed

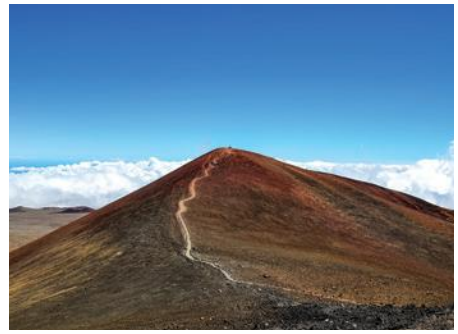
Types of mountains

Mountains are classified according to how they were formed. There are three main types of mountains:

1 fold mountains
2 fault-block mountains
3 volcanic mountains.

Source 4 The folded rocks of the Himalayas are clearly visible in this view of the mountains in Tibet.

Source 5 Steens Mountain in the state of Oregon, United States, is an example of a fault-block mountain.

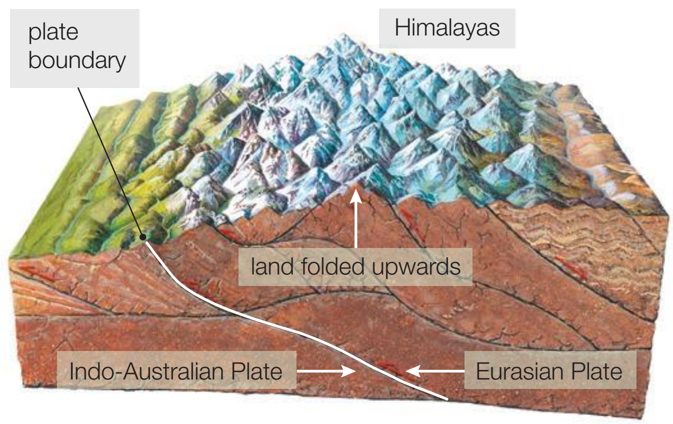


Source 6 Mauna Kea on the island of Hawaii is an example of a shield volcano.

Fold mountains

Fold mountains are created by upward pressure where two tectonic plates collide. As the plates converge, layers of rock are buckled and pushed upwards, creating fold mountains (see Source 7).

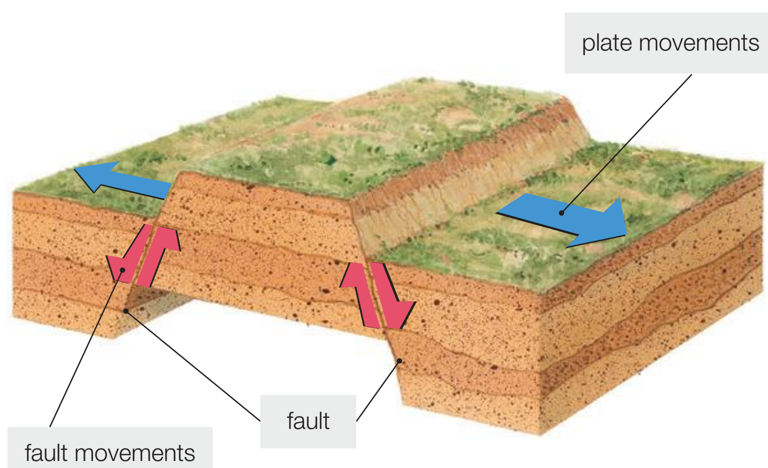
The world's largest fold mountains are in the Himalayas, a mountain range that separates southern Asia from central Asia and includes the world's highest mountain, Mount Everest. The Himalayas have been formed by the collision between the Indo-Australian Plate and the Eurasian Plate over the last 55 million years. Currents within the mantle are moving the Indo-Australian Plate northwards, and its front edge is bulldozing into the Eurasian Plate, folding the edges of both plates upwards.



Source 7 The collision of tectonic plates caused the formation of the Himalayas. This diagram shows us how fold mountains are created.

Fault-block mountains

Fault-block mountains are created when cracks in the Earth's crust – known as faults – force blocks of land upwards (see Source 8). Unlike fold mountains, which tend to have gently sloping sides, fault-block mountains usually have steep sides and flat summits. Some of the best-known examples are the Swiss Alps in Europe, the Grampians in Victoria and the Teton Range in the United States.



Source 8 Creation of a fault-block mountain

hot spots
points where there is volcanic activity, but the hot spots are not on a plate boundary

ash
very fine rock and mineral particles, less than 2 millimetres in diameter

lava
the molten material that flows from a volcano

shield volcanoes
volcanoes characterised by gentle eruptions that emit runny lava over a wide area

volcanic cones
triangle-shaped mountains formed as material from volcanic eruptions piles up around the volcanic vent or opening in the Earth's crust

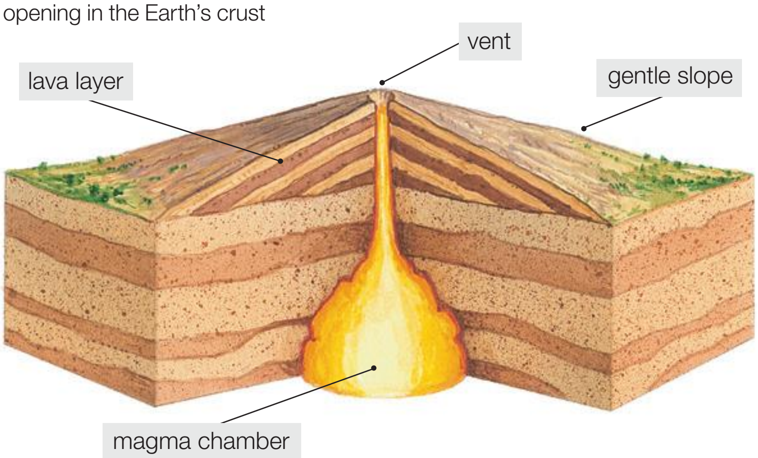
Volcanic mountains

There are two ways volcanic mountains can form. The first is through the process of subduction, where plates collide, and the more dense plate is forced downwards into the mantle (see Source 1 on page 56). This is how most of the world's volcanoes are formed and explains why most volcanoes are located on or near plate boundaries. Volcanoes also form in **hot spots**, which are areas far from the plate where the mantle is particularly hot.

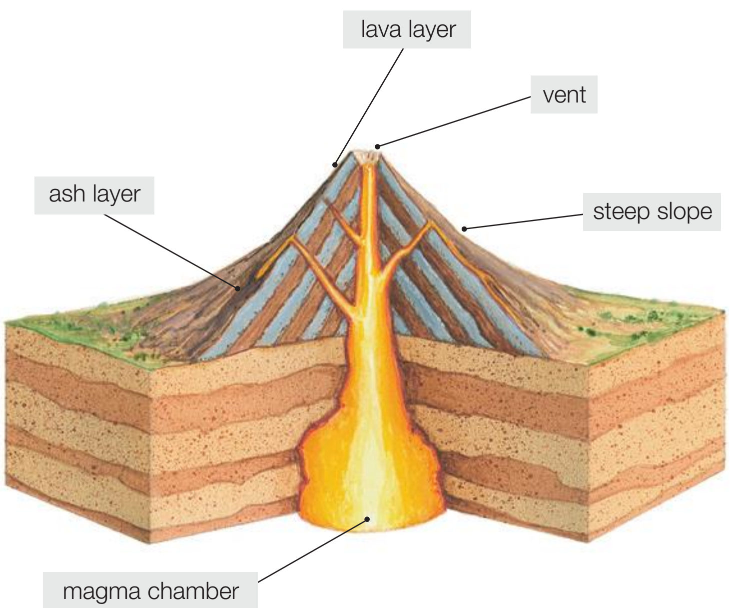
A volcanic eruption occurs when pressure sends hot magma upward and it forces its way out through a weakness in the crust. Each eruption brings new material to the surface, as **ash** or **lava** or both. As lava flows across the surface, it covers the rocks from previous eruptions and builds up the height of the land in layers. Runny lava can travel many kilometres from the crater and leave behind a shallow layer of new rocks over a wide area. These types of volcanoes are known as **shield volcanoes** (see Source 9). The Hawaiian volcanoes and Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania are examples of shield volcanoes.

The more familiar steep-sided **volcanic cones** (see Sources 10 and 11), such as New Zealand's Mount Taranaki and Japan's Mount Fuji, are formed when lava and ash do not travel far from the crater. These materials are then left as a new layer on the sides of the cone, building it higher.

The Hawaiian Islands have been formed above a hot spot. As the Pacific Plate moves over the hot spot, a line of volcanoes has been created. The oldest volcanoes have been eroded so that little remains above sea level. The newest island, Hawaii, has many active volcanoes and is increasing in size every year.



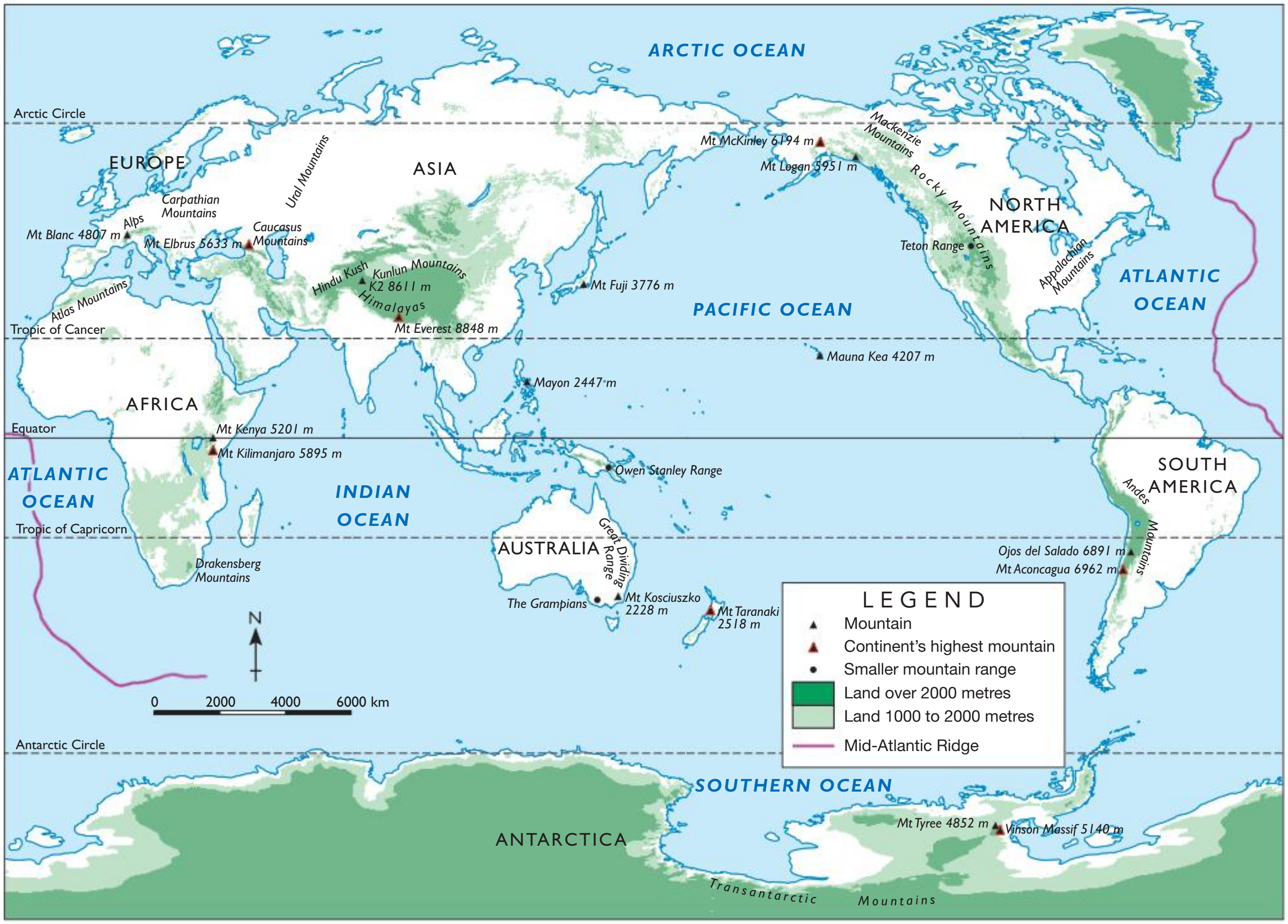
Source 9 A cutaway diagram of a shield volcano



Source 10 A cutaway diagram of a volcanic cone

Source 11 The Mayon volcano in the Philippines is an example of a volcanic cone.

WORLD: MAJOR MOUNTAINS AND MOUNTAIN RANGES



Source 12 This thematic map shows land over 1000 metres and 2000 metres.

Source: Oxford University Press

3.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the three main types of mountains.

2 **Recall** the four layers of the Earth and write a brief description for each.

3 Why do some volcanoes have steep sides while others have gently sloping sides?

Analyse

4 There are four mountain landforms shown in the photos in this topic. **Explain** how the shape of each landform is a result of the way it is created.

5 **Examine** Source 12:

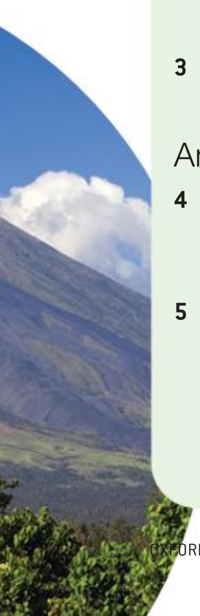
a What type of scale has been used on this map?

b Use the legend to find the highest mountain on each continent. Rank these mountains from highest to lowest.

c Use the PQE method to describe the distribution of mountains in Asia. You can find sentence starters to help get you started on page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Apply

6 Read the case study on Victoria's 2021 earthquake on page 58 and conduct further research on other Australian earthquakes. You might even speak with friends and family members to find out if they have experienced an earthquake in Australia. Report your findings back to the class.



Enlarged map
World: Major mountains and mountain ranges

3.3 Mountains of the world

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how erosion shapes mountain landscapes and landforms, including the role of glaciers.

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

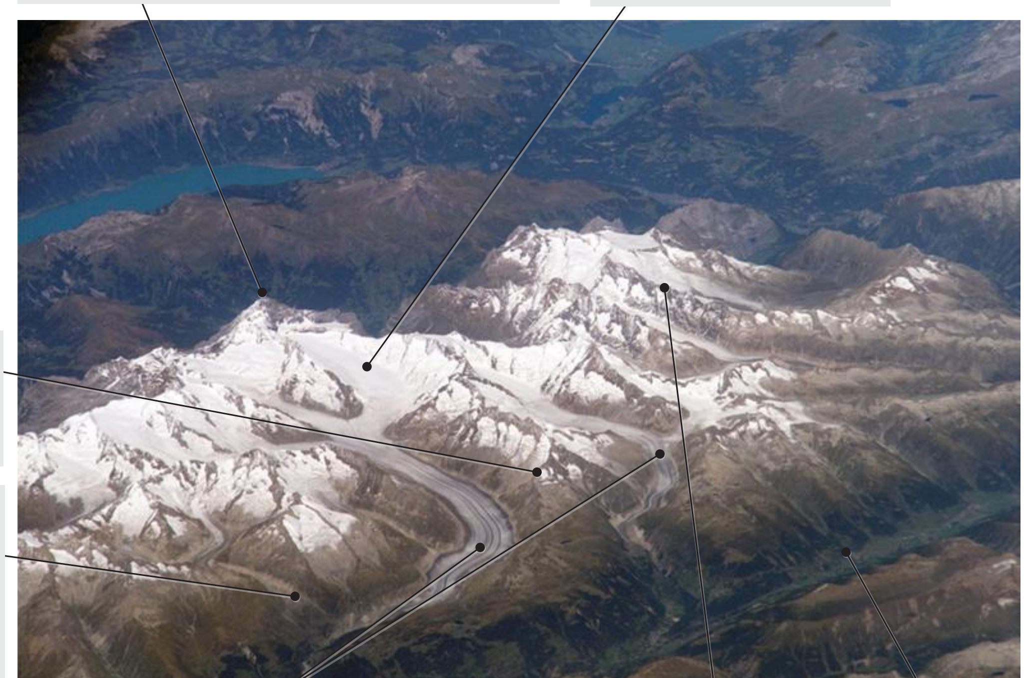
glaciers
rivers of ice in mountain and polar landscapes

Like all landforms, mountains are worn down by the forces of **erosion**, including wind, water and ice. In high mountain landscapes or in cold places near to the poles, ice is the key agent of erosion. Ice and snow collect in large rivers of ice known as **glaciers**.

As glaciers move downhill, they grind rocks into small pieces and carry them away. Harder rocks take longer to erode than soft rocks, so some structures remain to form distinctive landforms. Glaciers melt when temperatures rise, leaving behind a landscape that is greatly changed.

Source 13 shows the Alps. The Alps are a mountain range in Europe that stretches across France, Switzerland, Germany, Liechtenstein, Italy, Austria and Slovenia. They are most commonly referred to as 'the Swiss Alps', as the section in Switzerland includes the highest peaks in the entire mountain range.

The image in Source 13 was taken by an astronaut on board the International Space Station. It shows many of the key features of a mountain landscape shaped by glaciers, and includes the iconic Mount Eiger.



Source 13 Glacial landforms of the Swiss Alps

Cradle Mountain: An iconic Australian mountain

Source 14 Cradle Mountain and Dove Lake

Today, the temperature near the top of Australia's mountains is not cold enough to support large glaciers. However, this was not always the case. Over thousands of years, the Earth's temperature has changed, and there have been **ice ages** when it was cold enough for large glaciers to cover much of the mountain landscapes of mainland Australia and Tasmania.

Cradle Mountain is located in the central highlands of Tasmania. It has many of the same glacial formations we see in the Swiss Alps, including cirques and u-shaped valleys. During the last of the ice ages, about 20 000 years ago, Cradle Mountain was covered by a large **ice cap** that geographers estimate was about 6 kilometres deep. Glaciers flowed from its edge, shaping the landscape into what we see today.

Dove Lake, which sits at the base of Cradle Mountain, is a glacial lake. As glaciers moved, they eroded the soil and sediment around them. This created grooves in the land, which the melted water from the glacier filled up. This is how Dove Lake was formed.

ice ages
cooler periods in the Earth's history when ice covered much of the northern hemisphere and sea levels were much lower than they are today

ice cap
a thick layer of ice that covers an area of land

3.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What type of landform is Mount Eiger?
2 In your own words, **define** 'glacial lake.'

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the role glaciers play in shaping mountain landscapes.
4 Look at Source 13.
   a **Identify** as many aretes as you can. **Describe** their position.
   b **Identify** as many horns as you can. **Describe** their position.
   c What evidence is there that there were once many more, larger glaciers in this region? **Explain** your answer.
5 Look at Source 14.
   a What glacial landforms can you identify in this landscape?
   b **Describe** two ways human activities have altered this landscape.

Analyse

6 **Compare** the geographical features of the Swiss Alps with those of Cradle Mountain. What are the similarities and what are the differences?
7 Use Google Earth to explore Mount Eiger and each of its faces. Which side do you think would be the most challenging to climb? Why?
8 Download an image of Mount Eiger or Cradle Mountain from ground level. Label and annotate the landform features you can identify.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Mount Eiger

The mountains of the Kokoda Track

Papua New Guinea lies on the converging plate boundary between the Pacific and Indo-Australian Plates (see Source 12 on page 61). As a result, Papua New Guinea is a very mountainous country. Its highest mountain, Mount Wilhelm, is more than twice the height of Australia's highest mountain, Mount Kosciuszko.

In 1942, during World War II, the Australian and Japanese armies fought a series of battles along the Kokoda Track in Papua New Guinea. The track crosses a high mountain range, the Owen Stanley Range (see Source 17). The rugged mountains and heavy tropical rainfall made movement along the track very difficult.

Source 15 Steps on the Kokoda Track (AWM 026821)

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Enlarged map
Topographic map of the Owen Stanley Range

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Interpreting a cross-section

Maps are useful tools for showing where places are located, but they do not usually show the height of the land. This is because they show a view from above, rather than from the side. Some maps, such as the one in Source 17, show the height of the land through contour lines. These lines help us to visualise the shape of the land.

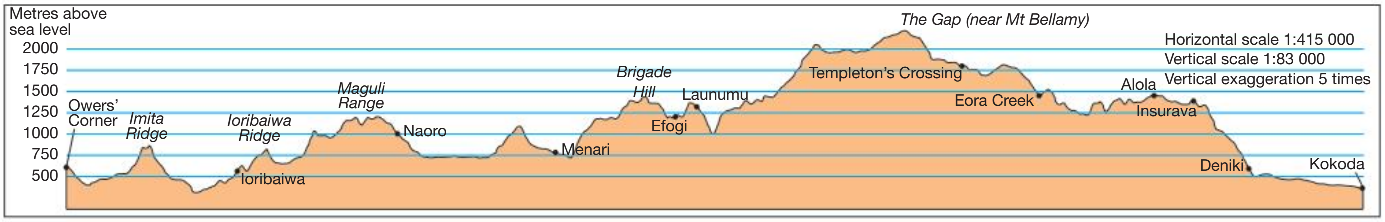
One of the most useful tools that geographers use to see a landscape from the side is a cross-section (see Source 16). This shows the landscape as a view from the side, as if it had been cut along a line.

Step 1 Look at the topographic map of the Owen Stanley Range in Source 17. Find the Kokoda Track, which runs from Owers' Corner to Kokoda on the map. This identifies the section of land shown as a cross-section in Source 16.

Step 2 Look at the cross-section of the Kokoda Track in Source 16.

Step 3 Use the cross-section to estimate the height of the mountains in the Owen Stanley Range.

For more information on this skill, see page 29 of 'The geography toolkit'.



Source 16 Cross-section: Kokoda Track

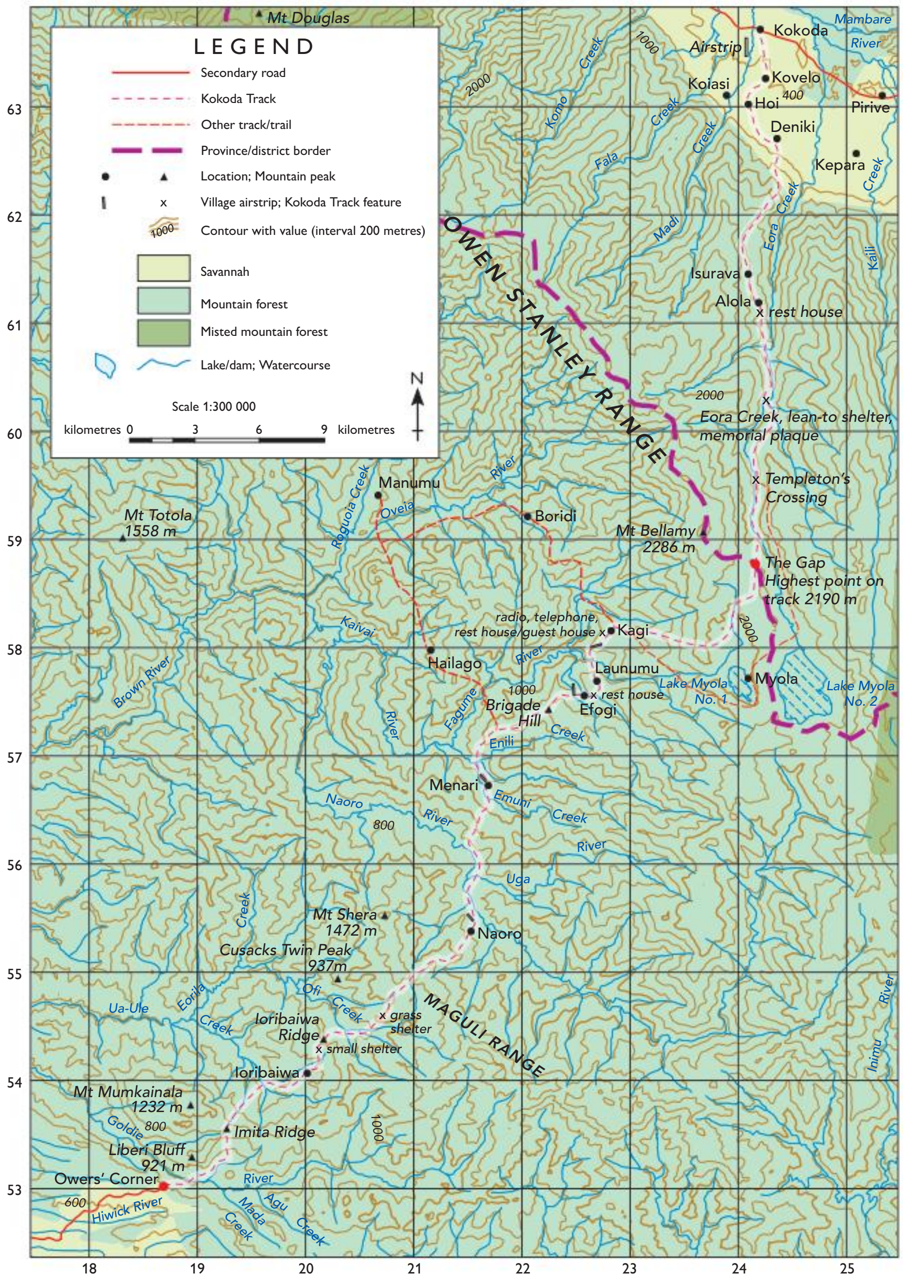
Practise the skill

1. **Identify** the highest point on the Kokoda Track.
2. How high above sea level is this point?
3. **Explain** why walking the Kokoda Track between Owers' Corner and Naoro is a difficult challenge.
4. a. **Identify** which part of the Kokoda Track is steepest. Use evidence from the cross-section to support your answer.
   b. Record the grid reference for this area on the topographic map.
   c. Record your observations about the contour lines in this part of the map.

Extend your understanding

1. Use your understanding of the forces that create mountains to **explain** the formation of the Owen Stanley Range.
2. What are two difficulties that the people who live in the small villages in this area might experience? **Explain** your answer.
3. **Investigate** the Kokoda Track campaign. Write a short report that includes:
   a. who was involved in the battles
   b. how the landscape influenced the fighting that took place.

TOPOGRAPHIC MAP OF THE OWEN STANLEY RANGE



Source 17

Source: Oxford University Press

3.4 Mountain resources

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

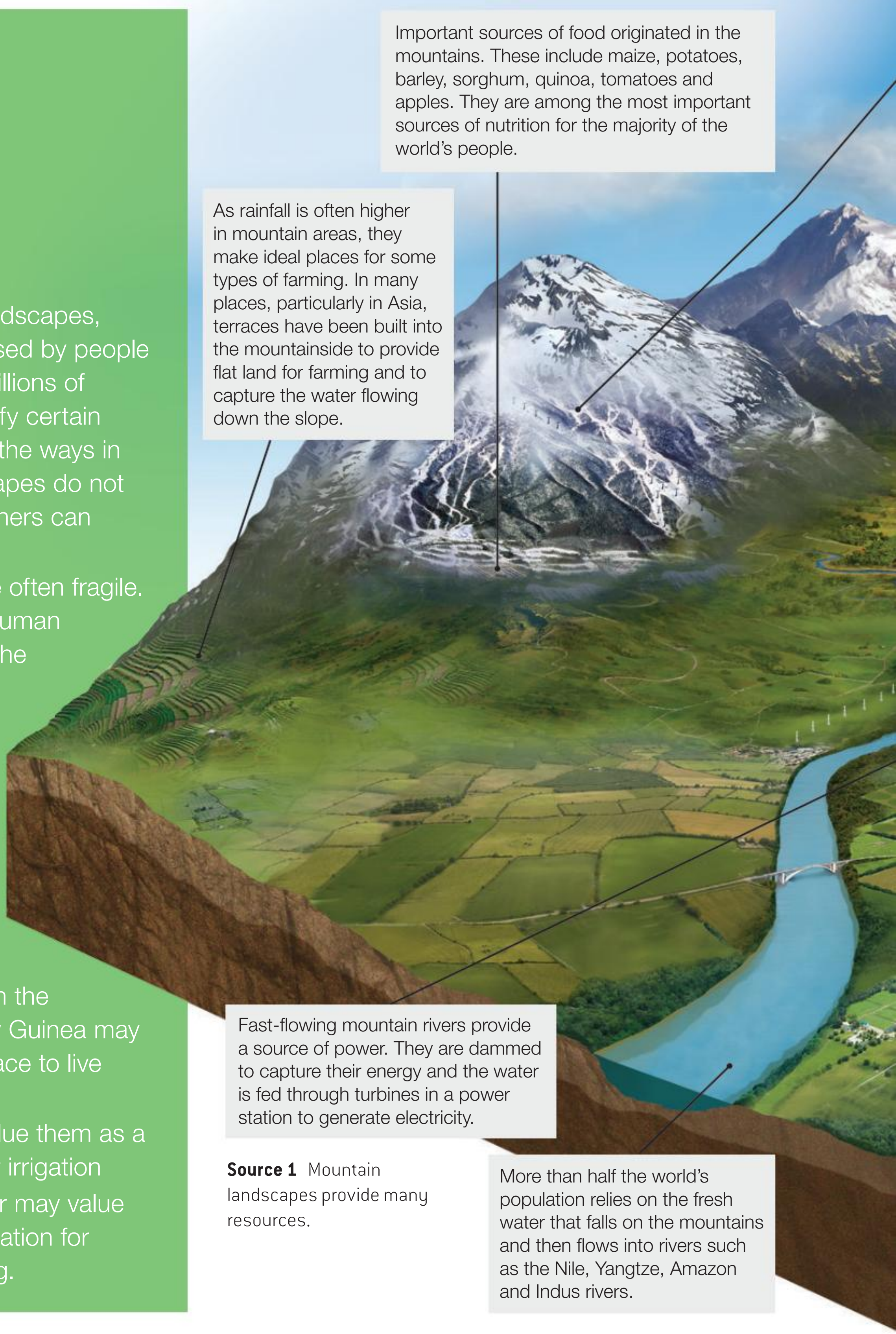
» identify and describe the many ways that humans use mountain landscapes.

Like many of the world's landscapes, mountain landscapes are used by people for a variety of resources. Billions of people rely on them to satisfy certain needs and wants. Some of the ways in which we use these landscapes do not change them at all, while others can affect them dramatically.

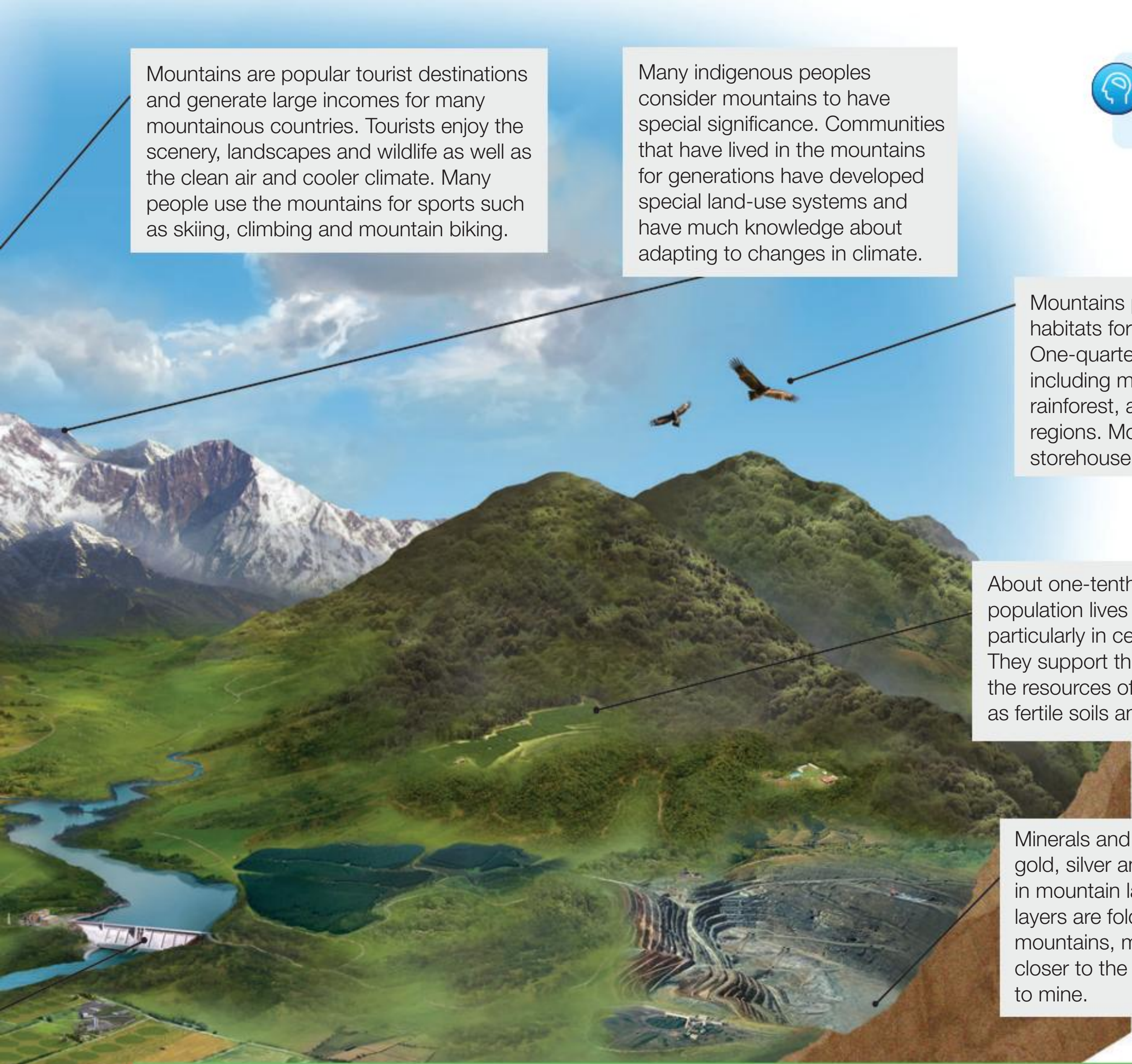
Mountain landscapes are often fragile. Small changes caused by human activities can greatly affect the plants and animals, soil and even the climate in these areas.

Depending on a person's society and culture, and their personal circumstances, they will view and value mountain landscapes differently:

- a member of a tribe from the highlands of Papua New Guinea may value mountains as a place to live and grow crops
- an Indian farmer may value them as a source of fresh water for irrigation
- an Australian city-dweller may value them as a holiday destination for skiing and snowboarding.



Source 1 Mountain landscapes provide many resources.



Mountains are popular tourist destinations and generate large incomes for many mountainous countries. Tourists enjoy the scenery, landscapes and wildlife as well as the clean air and cooler climate. Many people use the mountains for sports such as skiing, climbing and mountain biking.

Many indigenous peoples consider mountains to have special significance. Communities that have lived in the mountains for generations have developed special land-use systems and have much knowledge about adapting to changes in climate.

Quiz me! A quick quiz on mountain resources

Mountains provide a range of habitats for plants and animals. One-quarter of the world's forests, including much of the remaining rainforest, are in mountainous regions. Mountains are a storehouse of biodiversity.

About one-tenth of the world's population lives in mountainous areas, particularly in central Asia and Africa. They support their lifestyle by using the resources of the mountains, such as fertile soils and high rainfall.

Minerals and metals (such as coal, gold, silver and tin) are often found in mountain landscapes. As rock layers are folded upwards, creating mountains, minerals are carried closer to the surface and are easier to mine.

3.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 a **Describe** three ways people use mountains.
  b **Identify** your answers from question 1a as being social, economic or environmental.

Analyse

2 **Examine** the impact of tourism in mountainous places. What are some advantages and disadvantages of tourism?

3 a **Classify** the uses of mountain landscapes shown in Source 1 as either degrading to the environment or not degrading.
  b Which of these uses is likely to cause the most change to the natural environment and why?

Apply

4 Which of the uses shown in Source 1 is the most important? **Justify** (give reasons) for your answer.

5 As the Earth's climate warms, there is less snow and ice on high mountains.
  a List the uses that are likely to be impacted by these changes.
  b **Explain** how you think two of them will be impacted.
  c Climate change is caused by many things, including traffic on the roads, raising cattle for meat and burning fossil fuels for electricity. **Propose** (put forward) one strategy that you could use in your daily life to help reduce the impact of climate change.

3.5 Importance of mountains for First Nations peoples

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the material, cultural and spiritual value of mountain landscapes for First Nations peoples.

For Australia's First Nations peoples, the value of a landscape is often multilayered. As well as having spiritual importance, many of Australia's landscapes and landforms also have significant material value. Before European colonisation, these places provided food, tools and shelter, and were used as meeting places for social and cultural events.

Australia's highest mountain ranges are located in the Snowy Mountains and Victorian Alps regions of south-eastern Australia. Often referred to as the Australian Alps, this range includes our highest mountain, Mount Kosciuszko. For thousands of years, this alpine landscape has been an important spiritual and cultural site for many Aboriginal nations, and continues to be today.

> The Mountains are very old and an ongoing life force that strengthens the ancestral link of our people. We have a living, spiritual connection with the mountains. We retain family stories and memories of the mountains, which makes them spiritually and culturally significant to us. Our traditional knowledge and cultural practices still exist and need to be maintained.
>
> Statement from the Kosciuszko Aboriginal Working Group

The Bogong moth

Source 2 A Bogong moth

The Bogong moth, a prized food source, can be found in great abundance in the Australian Alps. In early summer, groups would travel great distances into neighbouring tribal areas to feast on the moths. Rich in fat content, they also provide an important food source for alpine animals, such as the mountain pygmy possum, lizards, birds and fish. Each year millions of these brown moths migrate up to 1000 kilometres to the mountain tops of the Great Dividing Range. As the moths sleep in huge colonies during summer, they are easy to catch. Thrown into the ashes of a fire to burn off their wings and legs, they were then roasted and eaten.

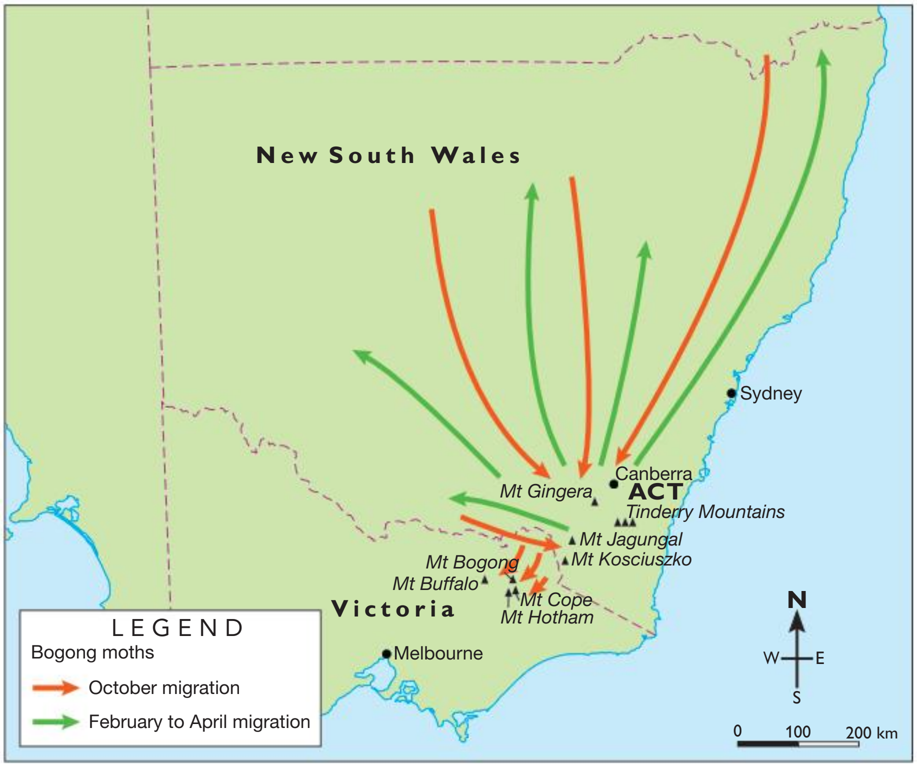
The moths also served an important social purpose. As hundreds of people met at each nesting site, links between nations and language groups were made and family and cultural ties strengthened. Up to 1000 people may have converged at some sites, representing some of the largest gatherings of First Nations peoples in Australia. The feasts were an opportunity for groups to conduct high-level governance through trade in food and resources from their own **Country** and to learn more about the customs and languages of other nation groups.

Country
for Aboriginal peoples, Country is both a place of belonging and a way of knowing; Country includes all living things and embraces creation stories

Other resources

As well as providing food, the mountains provided First Nations peoples with other resources important to technology and science. Some alpine plants, for example, were used in medicine, and others used in important ceremonies. The Bangalow palm,

BOGONG MOTH MIGRATION ROUTES



Source 3 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 4 Stone tools made using greenstone from Mount William in central Victoria

which grows in the rainforests of the eastern Australian coastal mountains, was used for thatching roofs and making water carriers.

The rocks of the mountains also had their uses, and groups would travel to particular stone quarries to collect rocks for tools such as axes and hatchets. Often they would trade other goods for these rocks, strengthening the ties between and within groups. One of the most important of these quarries was Mount William in central Victoria, which was the source of greatly prized greenstone hatchet heads.

Enlarged map
Bogong moth migration routes

3.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. Why was the Bogong moth an important resource for Aboriginal peoples in south-east Australia?
2. Why did people travel to Mount William?
3. How do you think the tools shown in Source 4 were used?

Analyse

4. **Analyse** Source 3.
   a. Describe the migration patterns of the Bogong moth. Include compass directions, distances and times of the year in your description.
   b. How did these migration patterns influence the movement of some Aboriginal nations?

Apply

5. Was the harvesting of the Bogong moth a sustainable use of this resource? **Justify** your response.
6. What questions could you ask to help you decide if the quarrying of stone at Mount William was a sustainable use of this resource?

3.6 The impacts of farming on mountains

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the human effects of farming on mountain landscapes.

Mountainous landscapes can be great places for farming. They receive reliable rainfall and often contain large areas of fertile soil. However, farming on mountains brings many challenges. The greatest of these challenges is a lack of flat land.

Flat land allows farmers to irrigate their fields without the water draining away. In many places, including South America, Europe and Asia, mountain landscapes have been **terraced** to create flat land and allow farmers to trap and control the flow of water (see Source 5). Flat land also makes it easier to use animals or tractors for tasks such as ploughing.

terraced
formed a flat area on a sloping piece of land (such as a mountain face)

While terraces have provided food security in many countries for hundreds of years, geographers are beginning to understand that the way they are being used is having major impacts on the environment.

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Comparing types of geographical images

Abandoning the land

In order to stop them collapsing, terraces need to be continually maintained. This takes a lot of time and a large number of people and resources. In the past 30 years, the movement of people from small farming areas to large cities has begun to impact on how well these terraces are maintained. In **developing countries**, young people in particular have moved to large cities in search of a different life.

developing countries
less economically developed countries that have some difficulties in supporting the needs of their own people

The result of this is that a number of terraces have been abandoned and are no longer being maintained. These terraces are now collapsing, as centuries-old farming knowledge is no longer being passed down. Collapsing terraces cause an increase in soil erosion, as rainwater flows more quickly down the slope and washes away the precious topsoil.

Source 5 Farming terraces in Nepal

Source 6 Abandoned terraces in the mountains of Portugal

Changes in farming practices

As the number of workers in remote farming areas declines, farmers are forced to move away from traditional farming methods and towards more automated practices. One example of this is farmers swapping traditional ploughing methods (using a plough pulled by water buffalos or oxen) for tractors.

Heavy tractors compact the soil. This means that water is unable to soak through, making the soil less fertile. As the terraces become less fertile and produce fewer crops, they are abandoned.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the impacts of farming on mountains

Changes in land use

Even though soil becomes less fertile and produces fewer crops, the demand for food remains as high as ever. This forces farmers to look elsewhere. As a result, many farmers are moving into areas once considered unsuitable for farming. These areas include bare landscapes, such as rocky and sandy areas, as well as forests.

To make forests suitable for farming, they must be cleared (a process known as **deforestation**). Deforestation has many negative impacts on the environment. For example, soil erosion increases dramatically when the trees that usually protect soil from the rain are cleared (especially in tropical areas).

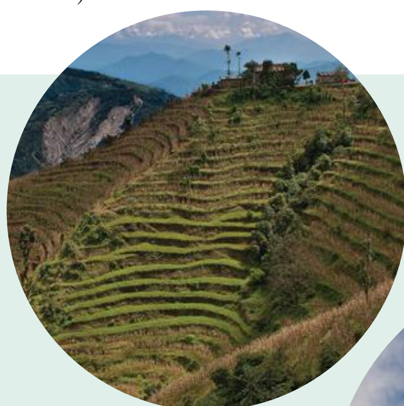
deforestation
the action of clearing a wide area of trees

CASE STUDY

Nepal

Nepal is one of the most mountainous countries on Earth. As a result, only one-fifth of the country's land is suitable for farming. Despite this, most Nepalese people are farmers. The main crops produced throughout the country are rice and corn. Both require flat land, so most Nepalese farms are terraced into steep hillsides.

However, in recent years, as many people have moved to the cities, farms have spread to forests and bare land throughout the country. As a result, there has been a significant increase in soil erosion. This has led to a loss of soil fertility in these areas and has pushed farmers onto even more **marginal land**. Sources 7 to 9 show the amount of soil eroded per year for different types of land use in Nepal.



Source 7 On land dedicated to agricultural (farming) use, 21.5 tonnes of topsoil are eroded per hectare per year.

Source 8 On bare land, 8.9 tonnes of topsoil are eroded per hectare per year.

Source 9 In forests, 0.3 tonnes of topsoil are eroded per hectare per year.

Source: Data courtesy of Science Direct

marginal land
land that is of little economic value due to its poor soil or other undesirable characteristics

KEY CONCEPT
Sustainabilty

Regenerative farming

Farmers must be careful to use soil sustainably. If they grow too many crops or graze too many animals, the soil will lose its fertility and become unsuitable for farming.

Canadian farmers Cody Straza and Allison Squires own a farm in the province of Wood Mountain, Saskatchewan. They use the five principles of regenerative farming to improve the health of the farm's soil: good water management, minimal use of machinery, crop diversity (the use of different types of crops rather than just one), livestock and cover crops. A cover crop is a crop grown for the protection and enrichment of the soil. This practice dates all the way back to the Roman Empire.

As a result, Cody and Allison have seen huge improvements in the quantity and quality of their soil. This practice should ensure the sustainability of their farm into the future.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 9 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Source 10 Cody Straza and Allison Squires

3.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two reasons why mountains are good places for farming.

2 How does replacing animal labour (such as water buffalos and oxen) with machines change the soil in mountain areas?

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the impact of farming on mountain landscapes. Use evidence from one of the sources in this topic in your description.

4 Using data from Sources 7 to 9, **explain** what happens to soil if forests and bare land are replaced with farms.

Analyse

5 Read the case study 'Regenerative farming'. **Analyse** the impact (effectiveness) of using regenerative farming to achieve sustainability. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts, and talk about how those parts relate to each other.

Apply

6 **Create** a flow diagram with labelled boxes and arrows to show how young people leaving farming areas leads to land degradation.

7 'Soil erosion is a human impact on mountain landscapes.' To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph **discussing** your position. Use evidence from this topic to support your answer.

3.7 The impacts of climate change on mountains

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the impacts of climate change on mountain landscapes.

glacial retreat
where the lowest point of a glacier does not extend as far down the mountain as it did previously; this is happening more often because of climate change

The Earth's average temperature has risen by about 1°C in the past century. It is expected to rise by another 1.5°C in the next 80 years. While this might not seem like a large rise, it has led to dramatic changes in many landscapes, including mountains. The most obvious change is the melting of ice.

Virtually all the world's mountain glaciers are melting, and becoming shorter and thinner. This is known as **glacial retreat**. Some glaciers have disappeared completely. Glacial retreat is a serious threat to people living in areas where it is taking place, many of them in developing countries such as Bangladesh, India and Pakistan.

More than 1 billion people around the world rely on the water stored in glaciers. Typically, glaciers melt a little bit each year, producing water that irrigates terraces and fills rivers. The water in these rivers is also used to generate electricity in hydroelectric power stations. In places such as Japan, where there is a huge tourism industry for skiing, glacial retreat threatens the economy as well as the environment.

KEY SKILL
Concluding & decision making

Justifying conclusions using historical imagery

Source 11 gives us an insight into how the Trient Glacier in Switzerland has changed over time. The geographer in the picture is holding up a photograph of the Trient Glacier from 1891 to compare what it looked like then with what it looks like now. You can then use the imagery to justify conclusions about the impact of climate change on the Trient Glacier.

Using Google Earth, you can investigate this change at a more advanced and precise level using the 'historical imagery' tool. Complete the following steps to investigate change at the Trient Glacier:

Step 1 Search for the Trient Glacier in Google Earth. It will automatically display the image of what the glacier looks like today.

Step 2 On the toolbar at the top of your screen, click the small clock icon. This icon represents the 'historical imagery' tool and when clicked, a sliding scale will appear in the top left-hand corner of your screen.

Step 3 Investigate the change over time by sliding your cursor back and forth across the scale.

Practise the skill

1 Write a paragraph **explaining** the impact of climate change on the Trient Glacier over time. Refer to three specific points in time to support your answer.

Source 11 A photograph of the Trient Glacier in Switzerland taken in 1891, held up at the same location in 2019

Climate-related hazards

Climate change has made mountain landscapes more dangerous for visitors and locals. Source 12 shows some of the hazards in mountainous places that have become more severe due to rising temperatures and changes to rainfall and snow patterns.


Avalanches


Floods and flash floods


Heavy snow and cold extremes


Wildfires


Melting glaciers and glacial lake outburst floods


Landslides

Source 12 Hazards in mountain areas have been heightened by climate change.

The escalator to extinction

As temperatures rise, plants and animals that thrive in cold temperatures are forced to move further up the mountain slopes. On mountain tops and ridges where the snow and ice are disappearing, many species face extinction. Scientists have called this the 'escalator to extinction', as species are packed together into shrinking spaces and brought into conflict with each other.

One of these animals is the snow leopard of central Asia, whose home is in the Himalayas. The snow leopard has been threatened for a long time by poaching and habitat loss. Climate change has brought new threats to this endangered species. As temperatures rise in the Himalayas, plant species (such as trees) adapt and grow further up the slopes. Snow leopards prefer rocky places, which means they are displaced by these trees and forced further up the escalator to extinction.

As temperatures rise, farmers are also able to bring their livestock into higher areas of the mountain (which were once uninhabitable for livestock) for summer grazing. In order to protect their herds, farmers may kill the leopards.

Once widespread throughout the region, there may be as few as 3000 mature snow leopards left in the wild.

Source 13 The endangered snow leopard of central Asia

Think, pair, share

There are more than 600 snow leopards in zoos, including in four Australian zoos. Some people believe that this helps to ensure their survival as a species, but others feel that animals requiring large spaces should not be kept in zoos.

- Think about whether animals such as these should be kept in zoos.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

3.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 Why are the world's mountain glaciers shrinking?

2 **Describe** one impact of climate change on each of the following:

   a the land in mountain landscapes

   b the people in mountain landscapes

   c the plants and animals in mountain landscapes.

3 In your own words, **summarise** the process known as the 'escalator to extinction'.

4 Source 12 shows that floods are becoming more common in mountain areas. **Explain** why this is the case.

Apply

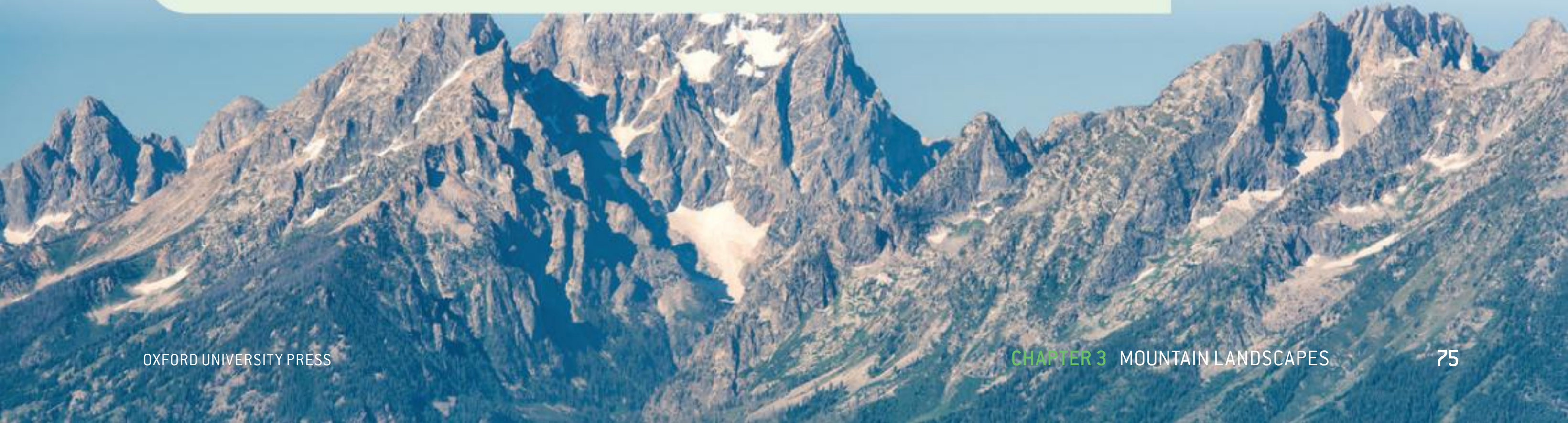
5 'The temperature is only changing by 1 degree every hundred years. So what?'

To what extent do you identify with this statement? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a short paragraph explaining your position. Use evidence from this topic to support your answer.

6 There are several Australian animals on the escalator to extinction. Using the internet, **investigate** the dangers faced by the white lemuroid ringtail possum and the mountain pygmy possum in Australia. Present your findings in a poster or brochure.

Quiz me!

A quick quiz on the impact of climate change on mountains



3.8 Protecting the mountains

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify methods used to protect mountain landscapes.

Some countries protect their mountains by declaring them to be national parks or nature reserves. Some of these locations are given further protection by being included on the United Nations (UN) World Heritage List.

The Tasmanian Wilderness World Heritage Area

The Tasmanian Wilderness World Heritage Area (TWWHA) in south-west Tasmania is one of the special places included on the United Nations World Heritage List. This protected area makes up one-fifth of Tasmania's entire territory. The Tasmanian Parks and Wildlife Service claims that the area 'protects one of the last true wilderness regions on Earth and encompasses a greater range of natural and cultural values than any other region on Earth'.

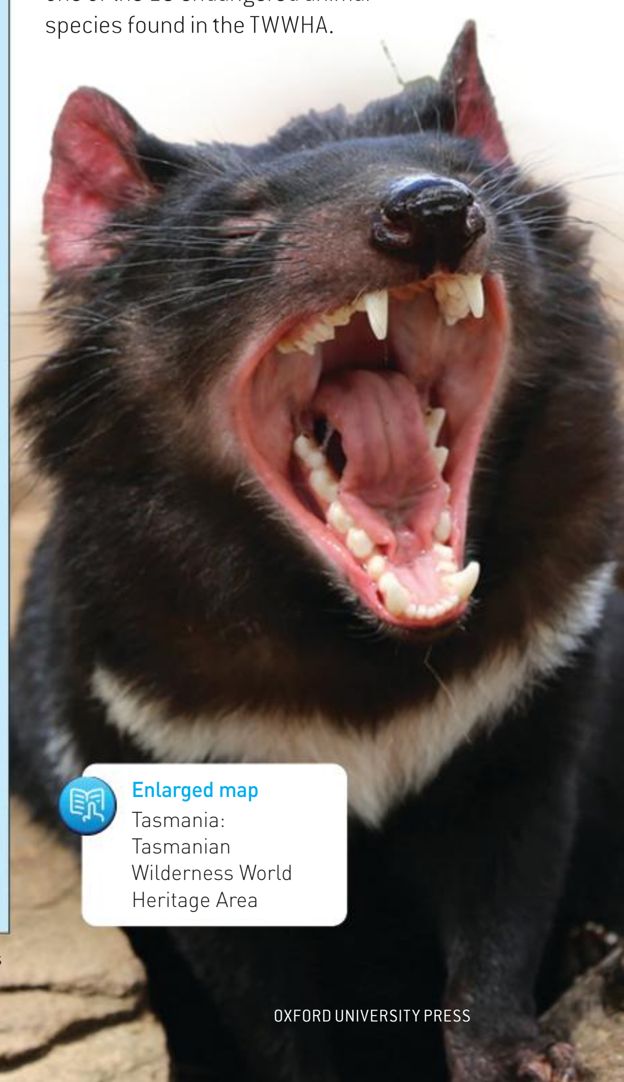
While fold mountains dominate in the east of the TWWHA, rugged fault-block mountains dominate the west. A large part of the area has been eroded by glaciers, and this has led to some spectacular landforms. Most of the TWWHA is blanketed by rainforest, but there are also areas of mountain vegetation and wetlands. Nineteen endangered animal species are found in the TWWHA, including the Tasmanian devil.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on protecting the mountains

TASMANIA: TASMANIAN WILDERNESS WORLD HERITAGE AREA

Source 15 The TWWHA is made up of several national parks. Source: Oxford University Press

Source 14 The Tasmanian devil is one of the 19 endangered animal species found in the TWWHA.



Enlarged map
Tasmania: Tasmanian Wilderness World Heritage Area

Cultural significance

The TWWHA is included on the UN World Heritage List not only for its natural beauty, but also for its cultural importance. It contains evidence of Aboriginal peoples living in the area dating back over 42 000 years. This evidence includes rock shelters and caves where these peoples lived. At the time, these Aboriginal peoples were the southernmost-located group of humans living during the last Ice Age.

Researchers have found more than 1000 Aboriginal sites in the TWWHA, including Kutikina Cave (see Source 16). In 2006, geographers conducted research on this cave, which uncovered a great deal about the way of life of the Aboriginal peoples who lived there thousands of years ago. They found animal bones on the floor of the cave, proving that the Aboriginal peoples hunted and ate wallaby, wombat and emu.

The Tasmanian Parks and Wildlife Service works closely with Aboriginal rangers today to ensure that the Kutikina Cave and other sites in the TWWHA are protected from human degradation.

Source 16 Archaeologists explore Kutikina Cave. Discoveries made at this site helped to stop a plan to dam the nearby Franklin River in the 1980s. The cave would have been submerged beneath the dammed river.

Source 17 Needwonnee Walk contains interpretive installations that help visitors to the TWWHA understand the way of life of the Needwonnee people of south-west Tasmania.

3.8 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 How do some countries protect their mountains?

2 **Describe** some of the natural features that make Tasmania's mountain landscapes special.

3 **Summarise** why Kutikina Cave is a significant place in Australian history.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 15 and answer the following:
- a How many national parks are shown on this map?
- b Using the scale provided, measure the distance from:
  - i Mount Wellington to Cradle Mountain
  - ii Mount Field National Park to Mount William National Park
  - iii Kutikina Cave to the nearest coast.

5 **Reflect on** why it is important to consult First Nations peoples when protecting Australian landscapes.

Apply

6 Other significant mountain landscapes on the World Heritage List include the Virunga Mountains, the Himalayas, Mount Kilimanjaro and Macchu Piccu.
- a **Investigate** one of these places and the threats that it faces.
- b Do you think the TWWHA faces the same threats? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

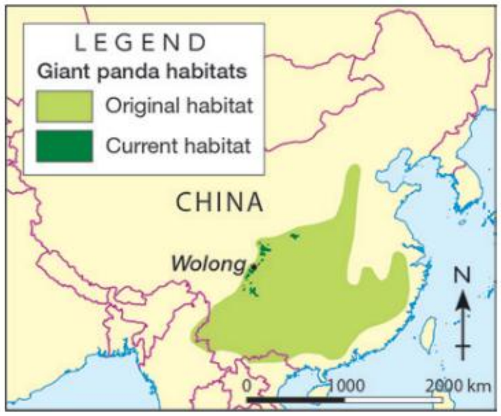
3B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Wolong National Nature Reserve, China

Mountain landscapes are home to some of the world's most endangered animals, including one of the most iconic – the giant panda. Once widespread throughout the mountains of southern China, giant pandas are now limited to a few bamboo forest reserves. The largest of these reserves is the Wolong National Nature Reserve in Sichuan Province, which is home to about 150 giant pandas.

CHANGE IN PANDA HABITAT IN CHINA OVER TIME



Source 18 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 19 A giant panda in the mountains of the Wolong National Nature Reserve

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Additional resource
Contour patterns

Interpreting contour lines

Topographic maps show the shape of the land (such as the shapes formed by valleys, hills and ridges) by using contour lines. Contour lines join all places of equal height, and the numbers on the contour lines show the height of the land above sea level. They are shown on the map as brown lines with the height written on them. By observing the patterns made by the contour lines, you can see the shape of the land. For example, the closer together the contour lines are, the steeper the land. The difference in height between contour lines is called the contour interval.

The contour patterns of common landscape features are shown in a document called 'Contour patterns' on your obook pro to help you complete this activity.

Follow these steps to interpret the contour lines in Source 20.

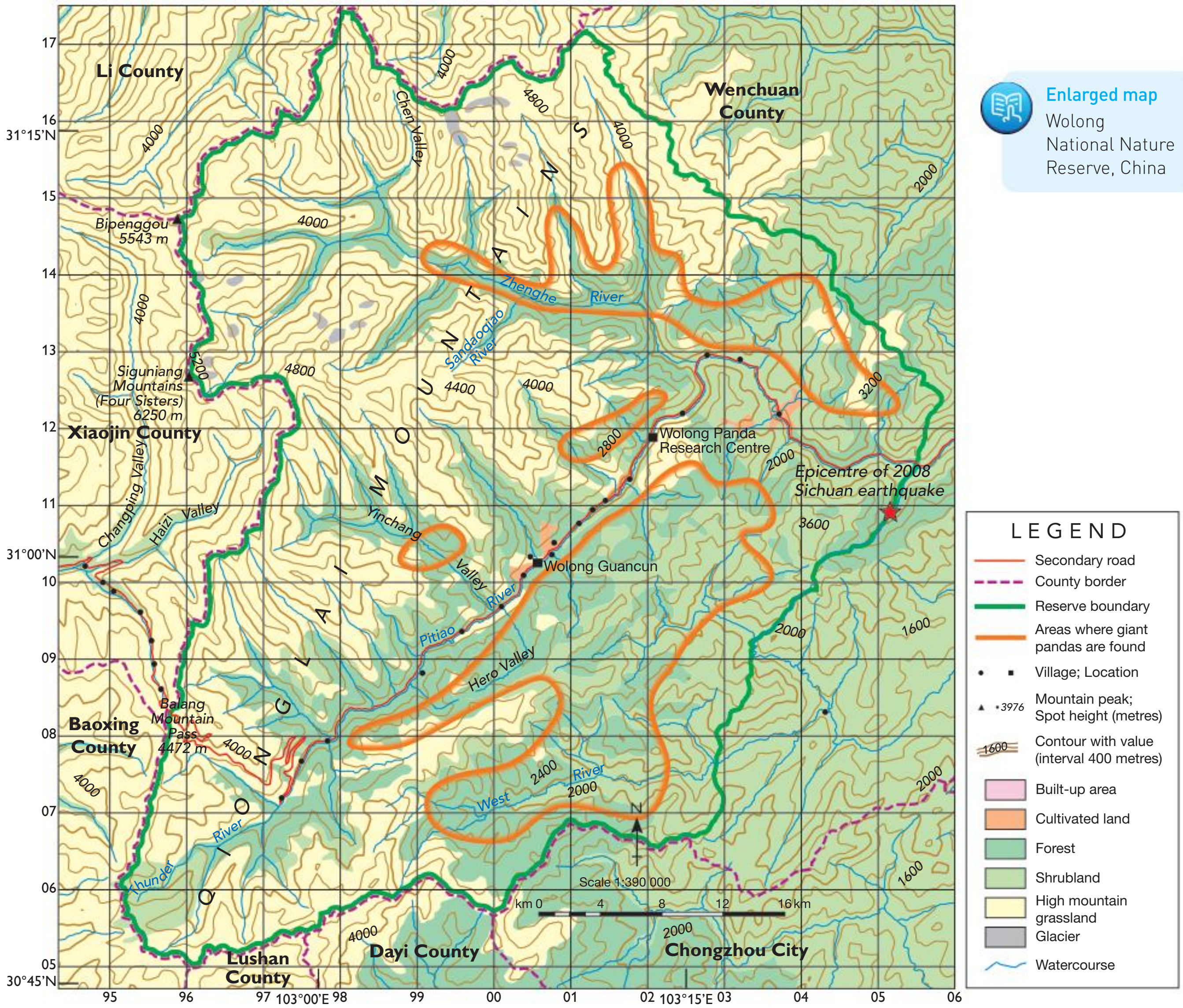
Step 1 Locate a landscape feature using the six-figure grid reference.

Step 2 Look carefully at the pattern of contour lines at this location.

Step 3 Using the 'Contour patterns' document on your obook pro, determine what type of landform is in this area as shown by its contour pattern.

WOLONG NATIONAL NATURE RESERVE, CHINA

Enlarged map
Wolong National Nature Reserve, China



Source 20

Source: Oxford University Press

Practise the skill

1 **Identify** the landform features at each of the following places in Source 20:

- a GR 050142
- b GR 015146
- c GR 996110
- d GR 037075.

2 Would you describe the landscape in this area as mountainous? Use evidence from the map to support your answer.

3 Refer to the 'Contour patterns' document on your obook pro. Give a six-figure grid reference for the following features (do not use the examples given in question 1):

- a ridge
- b valley
- c spur.

Extend your understanding

1 Study Source 18. **Describe** the change over time between the giant pandas' original and current habitats. What are some possible reasons for this?

2 Do you think that the reserves such as Wolong will save the pandas from extinction? **Investigate** this issue further and find two reputable sources to support your answer. Write a paragraph that shows your informed position.

3.9 Volcanoes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the causes and impacts of a volcanic eruption.

How volcanoes erupt

Inside a volcano, magma (liquid rock) under the Earth's surface is stored in the magma chamber. From here, several complex steps take place in order for the volcano to erupt. Source 1 outlines these steps and what can happen afterwards.

1. Magma rises through the volcanic vent (an opening in the Earth's crust).
2. As magma travels upwards, gases start to expand, which creates pressure.
3. When this pressure can no longer be contained, the volcano erupts through the main volcanic vent and other vents (known as branch pipes).
4. From here, lava can flow like a molten river, or rain down in '**volcanic bombs**' many kilometres from the eruption site.
5. Ash can cover the sky and blanket the landscape in a cloud that can kill people and animals.
6. Mudslides, floods and **tsunamis** can also be caused by eruptions.

Source 1 The process and secondary hazards of a volcanic eruption

tsunamis
giant ocean waves, often caused by underwater earthquakes

volcanic bombs
masses of liquid rock that explode from a volcano and harden before reaching the ground

The dangers of volcanic eruptions

Humans are generally powerless in the face of the hazards created by volcanic eruptions.

Volcanic eruptions can produce huge, dangerous clouds of volcanic ash. These clouds are created from the sudden release of the enormous pressure from within the Earth's mantle and crust. The ash can travel straight up (vertically) and then fall on the surrounding landscape, or it can travel sideways (horizontally). Horizontal eruptions are perhaps the most dangerous, as the ash – along with rocks, boulders and gases – can travel at speeds of 700 kilometres per hour and carry material heated to 1000°C. These are called **pyroclastic flows** and are responsible for much of the devastation caused by many of the world's worst volcanic eruptions.

The sudden melting of the snow and ice on the sides of the volcano is also dangerous. This can cause huge mudslides up to 50 metres thick, called **lahars**, to sweep down the sides of mountains. The eruption of Colombia's Nevado del Ruiz volcano in 1985 covered whole villages with thick mud and ash, killing 23 000 people. This makes it the deadliest volcanic eruption of the past 100 years.

pyroclastic flows
fast-moving and dangerous mixtures of hot gas and rock that are ejected from volcanoes

lahars
destructive flows of mud or debris on the slopes of volcanoes

Source 2 Pyroclastic flow from Soufriere Hills volcano in the Tar River Valley, Montserrat, Caribbean

Responding to eruptions

Volcanic eruptions can occur with little warning and cause massive damage. This makes them difficult to prepare for, but there are some things that people can do to reduce their chances of being affected by a volcanic eruption.

volcanologists
scientists who study and monitor volcanoes

The first of these is to avoid active volcanoes. People living on the slopes of Mount Vesuvius (near Naples, in Italy), for example, have each been offered 30 000 euros (about $48 000 in Australian dollars) to relocate to safer areas. The Italian Government has rezoned the area, so that the upper slopes of the mountain are now a national park where no one can live. Visitors should also avoid active volcanoes.

We can also monitor volcanoes very carefully for signs of an eruption. These signs include small earthquakes, which cause lava to move upwards and create a bulge in the side of the volcano as pressure builds. **Volcanologists** can pass on information about changes like these to local authorities, which may evacuate an area at risk.

Scientists studying Mount Etna in Italy have recently discovered that the volcano's internal sounds change before an eruption. By using sensors that can hear sounds which humans cannot, they have been able to successfully predict 57 eruptions in eight years. The system is now automated, and sends a message to scientists one hour prior to an eruption.

Source 3 A volcanologist observing an eruption of Mount Etna on the island of Sicily, which is Europe's most active volcano

3.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two mountain hazards other than volcanic eruptions.

2 **Define** the following terms in your own words:
  a tsunami
  b lahar
  c pyroclastic flow.

3 a **Recall** some of the dangers people living near a volcano face.
  b How can they reduce these dangers?

Analyse

4 How could a volcanic eruption impact on people who live hundreds of kilometres away from the volcano? Use evidence from this topic to support your answer.

5 Brainstorm 10 impacts of a volcanic eruption. **Classify** these impacts as being environmental, social or economic.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** how useful the remote sensing system for Mount Etna is by answering these questions:
  a What are its strengths?
  b What are its weaknesses?
  c What is your overall opinion of this system?

7 Mount Ruapehu in the centre of New Zealand's North Island is an active volcano. **Investigate** the lahar warning system in place on this mountain and record 10 interesting facts. Write a bibliography from your research.

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 3.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Watch it!
A video and quiz on volcanoes

3.10 Indonesia: Home of the volcano

Learning intention

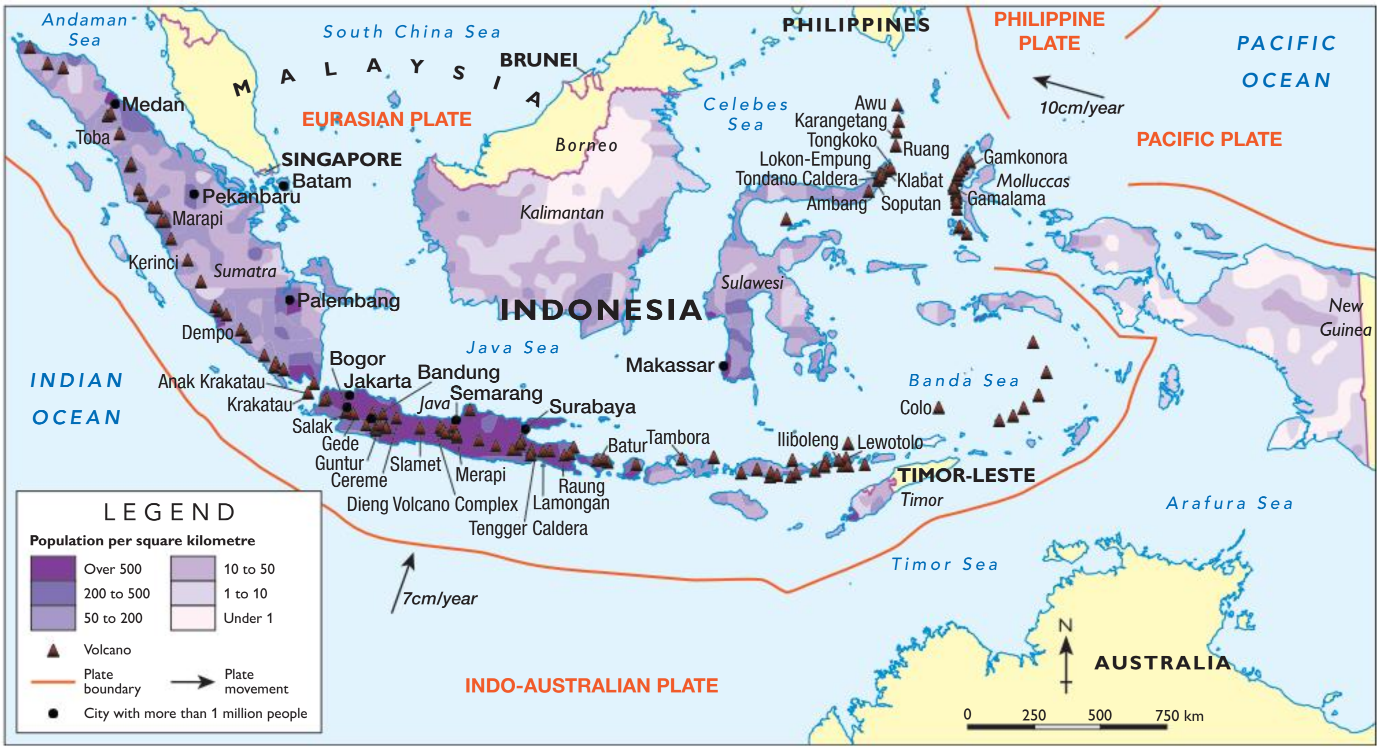
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the environmental, economic and social impacts of living near a volcano.

Indonesia is one of the most volcanic countries on Earth. It is home to almost 150 volcanoes, half of which are considered active. This is due to its location on the boundary between four tectonic plates. In the south, the Indo-Australian Plate moves northwards and is forced beneath the Eurasian Plate, creating a long arc of volcanic islands (see Source 12 on page 61). In the north, the collision of the Philippine and Pacific Plates has created a second cluster of volcanoes.

This volcanic activity is typical of many countries on the edge of the Pacific Plate. About 90 per cent of the world's earthquakes and volcanoes occur on this plate boundary, earning it the nickname of the 'ring of fire'.

VOLCANOES, TECTONIC PLATES AND POPULATION DENSITY OF INDONESIA



Source 4

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Volcanoes, tectonic plates and population density of Indonesia

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Indonesia: Home of the volcano

Deadly volcanic eruptions

It is estimated that about 5 million Indonesians live in volcanic danger zones and that there is a major eruption in the country about once a year. While most of the eruptions occur away from populated areas, that is not always the case. In the past 100 years, there have been 11 extremely deadly volcanic eruptions, the most recent of which was the 2018 eruption of Anak Krakatau, which killed 437 people.

The deadliest volcanic eruption of all time took place in Indonesia in 1815, when Mount Tambora erupted (see Source 8 on pages 84 to 85). About 92 000 people were killed by the pyroclastic flow from the eruption and the tsunami it triggered.

Source 5 Rice terraces in Bali

More than 100 cubic kilometres of new material (ash and lava) was produced by the eruption and deposited on the Earth's surface. So much ash was released into the atmosphere it changed the climate of the planet. In Europe, 1816 was called the 'year without a summer', as ash from Tambora blocked the sun for many months. Volcanologists have labelled the Mount Tambora eruption as a 'super-colossal eruption', meaning that it released more than 100 cubic kilometres of material at one point in time. It is the only super-colossal eruption to have occurred in the past 750 years.

Volcanic gifts

While living near a volcano is very risky, volcanoes do produce some benefits. Many precious stones and minerals are formed by volcanic activity. For example:

- In South Africa, diamonds are produced deep below the Earth's crust and carried to the surface by volcanic eruptions.
- In the United States, copper deposits are created by volcanic activity.
- In some places like New Zealand and Hawaii, volcanic hot springs are used to produce electricity.

Perhaps the greatest gift of volcanoes is the soil they produce. Both lava and ash contain minerals that help plants grow. When they break down, these minerals are released into the soil. People can then use this soil to grow crops and raise livestock.

For this reason, places with volcanic soils – such as the island of Java, which has 76 active volcanoes – are among the most densely populated on Earth. Java's rich volcanic soils support more than half of Indonesia's population. The island of Bali also has very fertile soils. The Balinese people have terraced the slopes of the island's volcanoes for thousands of years, resulting in some spectacular landscapes (see Source 5).

*

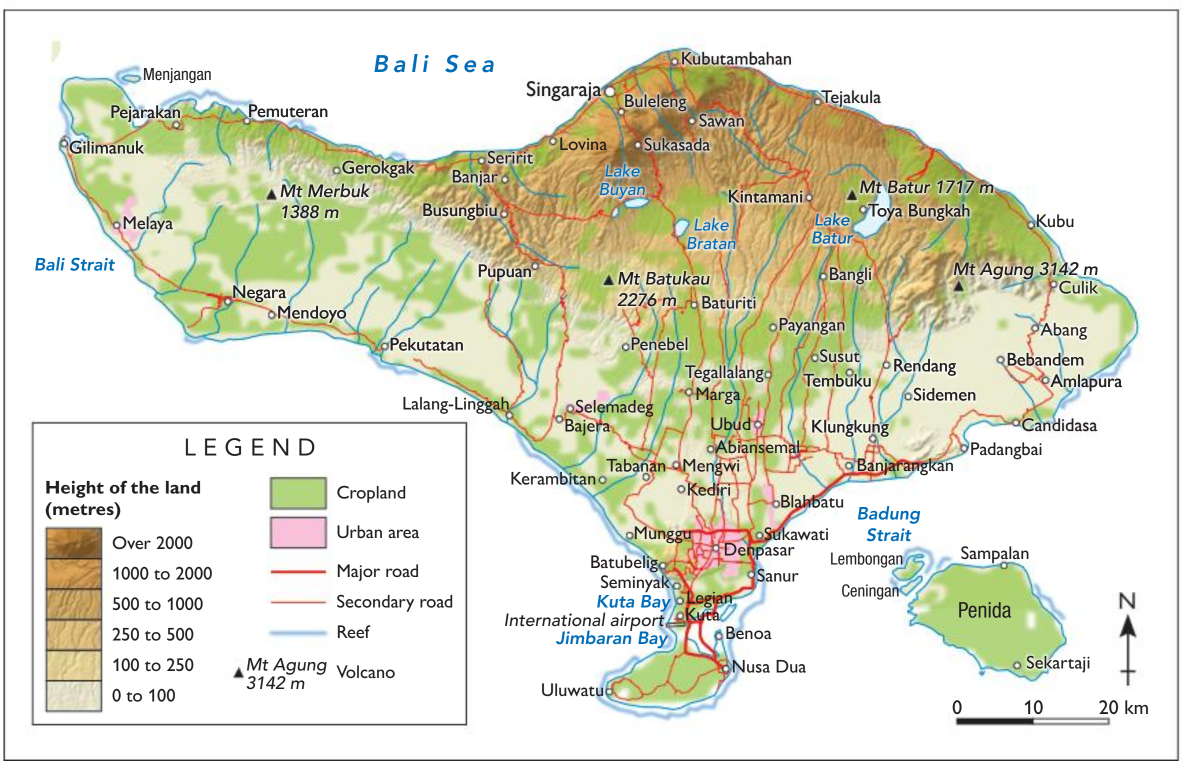
I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the dangers and benefits of volcanoes and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

BALI

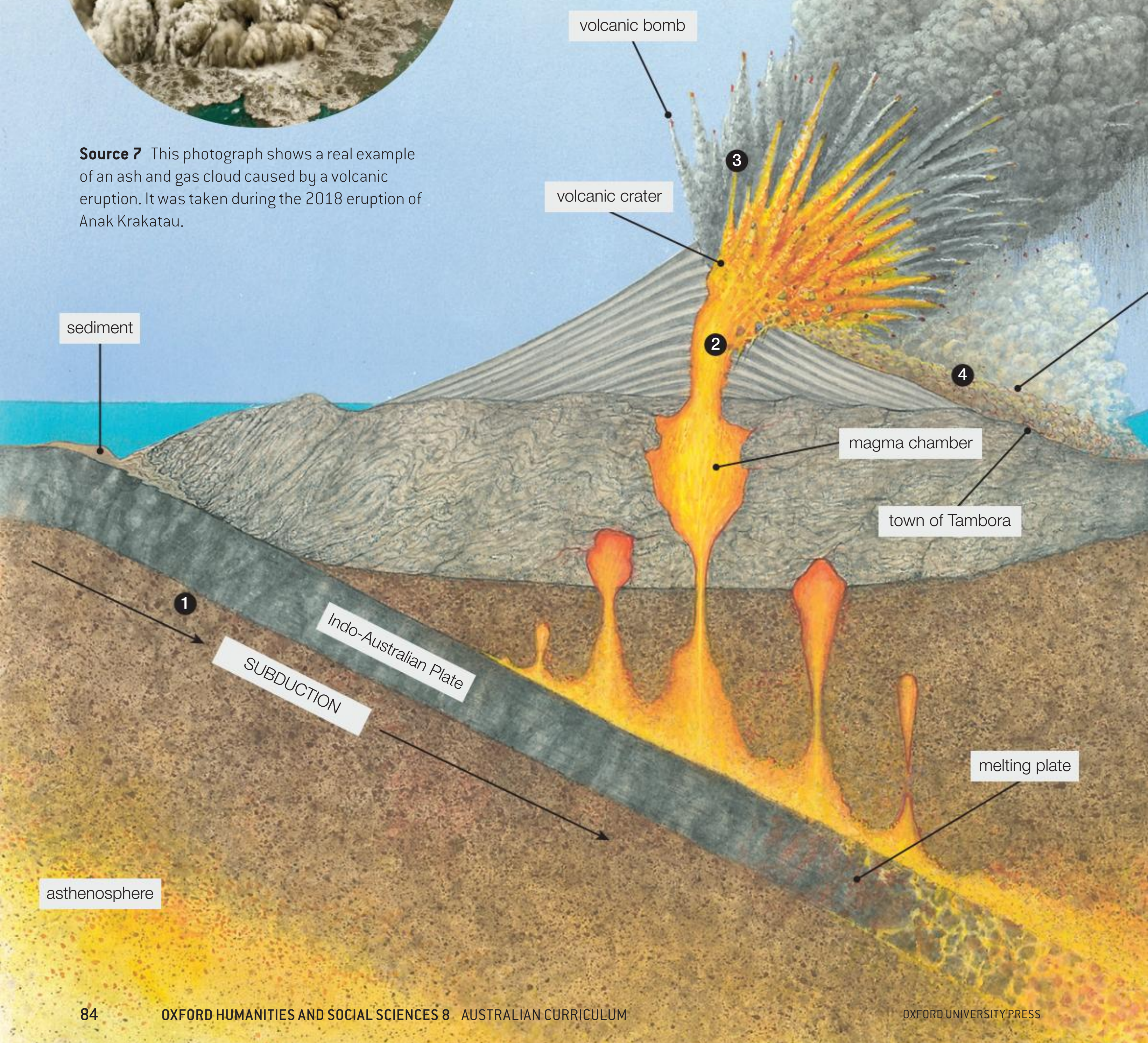


Source 6

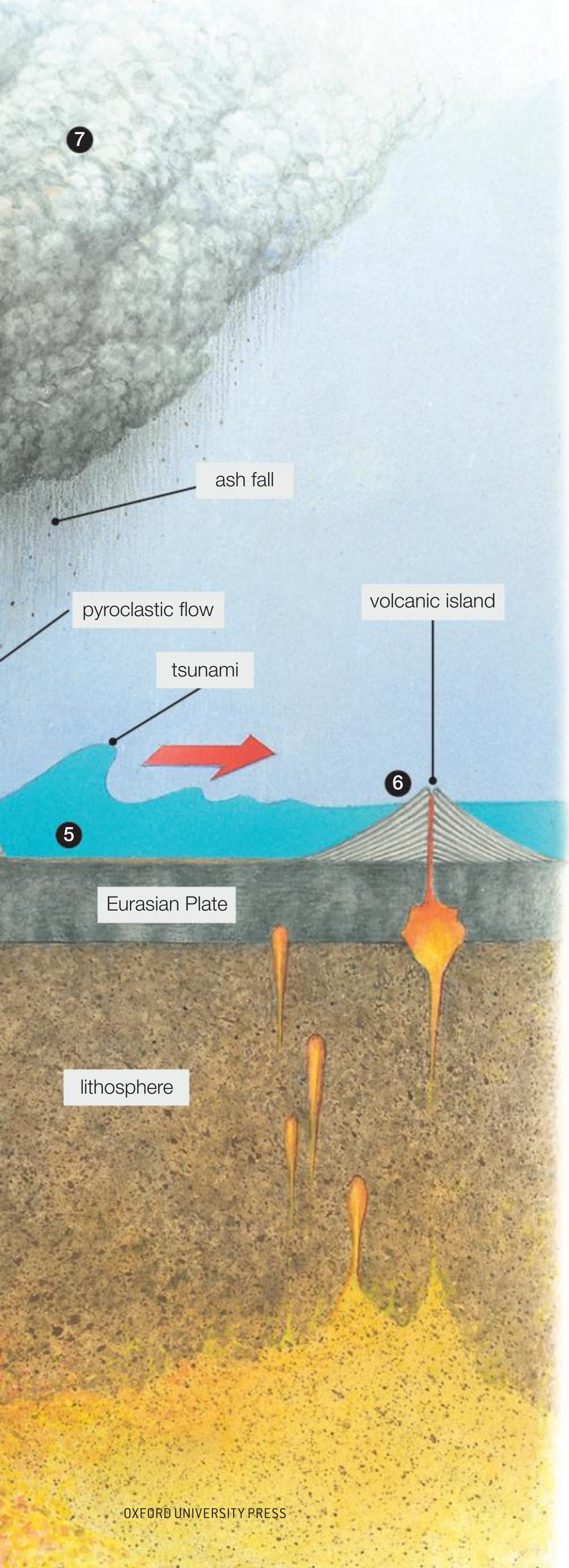
Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Bali

Source 7 This photograph shows a real example of an ash and gas cloud caused by a volcanic eruption. It was taken during the 2018 eruption of Anak Krakatau.



Source 8 The 1815 eruption of Mount Tambora



The steps in Mount Tambora's 1815 eruption

1. Driven by currents in the mantle, the Indo-Australian Plate subducts below the Eurasian Plate and melts.
2. Heat and friction cause a body of magma to rise to the surface and erupt. Much of the blast is sideways (horizontal).
3. The volcano collapses, losing 1200 metres of height.
4. A massive fast-flowing avalanche of mud, lava and ash (pyroclastic flow) hurtles down the mountain, burying the town of Tambora.
5. As the material tumbles into the sea, it creates a tsunami wave that travels at high speeds to distant, volcanic islands.
6. The tsunami swamps islands, killing 90 000 people.
7. The ash and gas cloud reaches 43 kilometres into the upper atmosphere.

3.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Identify** the features of the eruption of Mount Tambora that made it the deadliest of all time.
2. How have volcanoes impacted the landscape and people of Indonesia?

Analyse

3. **Examine** Source 2 on page 57.
   a. Explain why the 'ring of fire' has its name and identify one country from each continent it surrounds.
   b. Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the distribution of volcanoes around the world.
4. **Examine** Source 6 on page 83.
   a. How many volcanoes are there on the island of Bali?
   b. What evidence is there on this map that these volcanoes have helped to produce good soil for farming?
   c. Using the scale provided, calculate the distance from Mount Batukau to Mount Merbuk.

Apply

5. Using at least five of the terms shown in Source 8, write a short paragraph about volcanoes.
6. With a partner, **discuss** the link between volcanoes and population density in Indonesia, using Source 4. Share your answers with the class.
7. **Investigate** one of the other places on Earth where many people live near volcanoes, such as Italy, Mexico, Costa Rica and Honduras. What are the volcanic gifts in this place, and what are the dangers?

3.11 Landslides

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify different types of landslides and their causes
- understand how the principles of prevention, mitigation and preparedness can reduce the harmful effects of a hazard.

Map it!
World: Landslides and other hazards

Landslides are one of the most common and dangerous types of hazard that affect mountain landscapes. The term 'landslide' is used to describe any type of large-scale movement of soil, mud, rocks or snow carried by the force of gravity downhill. The movement can be as slow as a few centimetres per year, or very rapid. Large, rapid landslides have the potential to destroy towns, roads and bridges, block rivers and take lives.

Landslides are often caused by a combination of natural processes and human factors. Natural factors include heavy rain, unstable slopes, an earthquake or volcanic eruption, and erosion by rivers or waves. The likelihood of a landslide happening is often increased by human activities, such as:

- deforestation
- road or mine construction that requires cutting into a slope
- leaking pipes
- vibrations caused by rock blasting or heavy traffic.

Preparing for landslides

People who live in areas prone to landslides should be aware of the dangers and develop an evacuation plan in case one occurs. Landslides are most likely to occur during heavy rainfall, in areas where debris flows and rock falls are common. They are also likely to occur during an eruption in an area prone to mudflows.

The best defence against a landslide is to reduce the chance of it occurring. While there will always be natural forces at play, humans can protect themselves against landslides by minimising their interference with sloped environments. This includes leaving hillsides forested and avoiding cutting into hillsides to create flat land for farming, roads or buildings.

As with many natural disasters, people in developing countries are most at risk of being negatively impacted by landslides. In such countries, buildings in mountainous areas are often poorly made, and hillsides are deforested to collect timber.

Source 9 A landslide has destroyed this road in Camiguin, in the Philippines.

Types of landslides

Five of the most common types of landslides are described below.

SOIL CREEP

Soil creep is the gradual movement of soil, rocks and earth down a gentle slope. This is the slowest-moving type of landslide and can take place over many years. As a result, it is often unnoticeable to people living in the area. Areas affected by soil creep can be identified by features such as leaning telegraph poles and fences, cracked walls and bowed trees.

SLUMPING

Slumping is the movement of larger sections of soil and rocks down a steep slope. These sections slip down the surface of the slope to different degrees, often creating several different levels (called scarps). Slumping is usually triggered by earthquakes, excessive rain, or freezing and thawing of the soil.

MUDFLOW

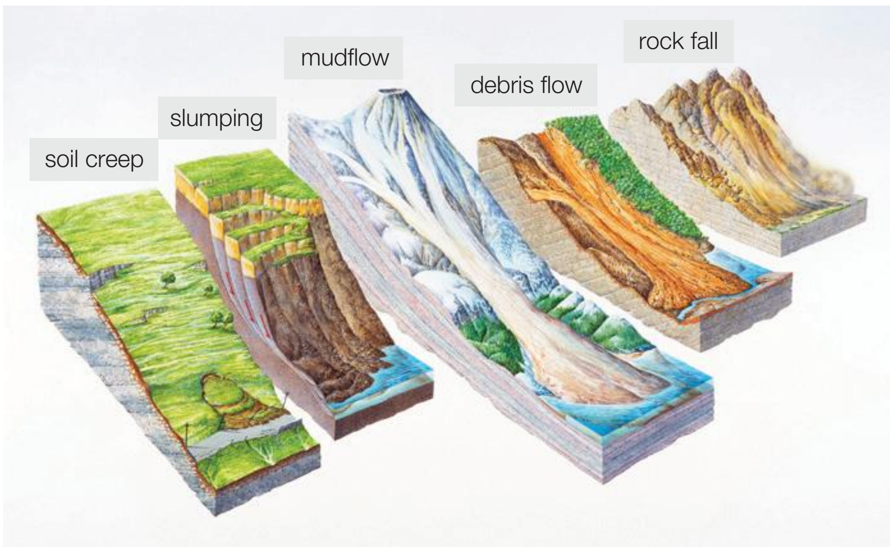
Mudflows are often triggered by heavy rain, quick-thawing earth, earthquakes or volcanic activity. For example, snow on the sides of active volcanoes melts quickly and combines with soil and rocks to create mud slurry that travels downhill. The mud can be up to 50 metres thick and can travel at speeds of up to 80 kilometres per hour, burying entire villages and killing many people.

DEBRIS FLOW

Debris flow is characterised by the sudden collapse of a slope. In Source 9, you can see how debris flow has been triggered by the removal of trees from the slope, which has exposed the soils to heavy rainfall.

ROCK FALL

Rock falls are usually triggered by heavy rain or earthquakes. Human activities, such as cutting into slopes to build roads, can greatly increase the likelihood of rock falls occurring.



Source 10 Types of landslides

3.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** four human activities that can contribute to landslides.

2 **Recall** how people living in mountain communities can prepare for landslides.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 9.

a Using Source 10, identify which type of landslide has occurred in this image.

b Write a paragraph reflecting on the human and natural causes of such a landslide. Think about which of the causes would have had the most impact on this type of landslide.

4 **Distinguish** between soil creep and mudflow. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

Apply

5 Rank the five types of landslides from the one you consider to be the least dangerous to the one you consider to be the most dangerous. **Justify** (give reasons for) your ranking.

3.12 Landslides in Burma's jade mines

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe how human activities have heightened the impact of a hazard by altering the environment.

Buried deep in the north of Burma is a great natural treasure: the jade mines of the Kachin Hills. These mines have produced some of the world's most valuable gems for over 250 years, including flawless jade stones that are worth as much as diamonds. A necklace made from Burma jade sold for more than $36 million in Hong Kong in 2014. The legal trade in jade in Burma generates more than $16 billion a year. Researchers estimate that the illegal trade may be worth double that sum.

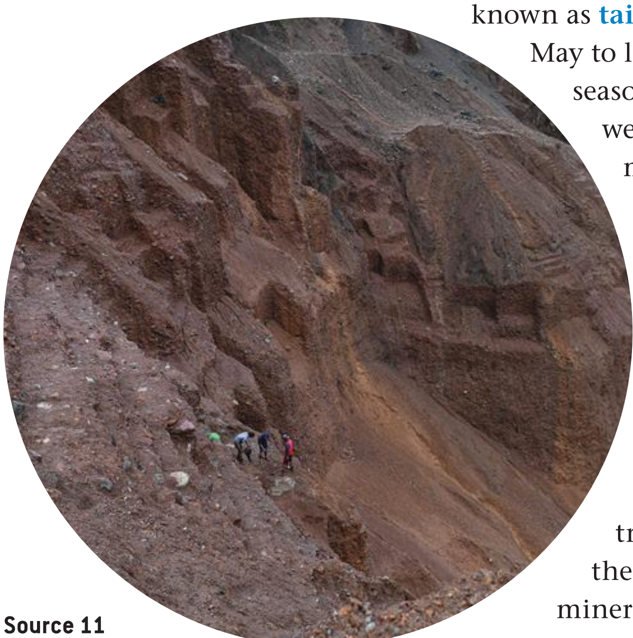
There is a growing demand for jade in China, and as a result the jade industry in Burma is booming. However, mining for jade is incredibly dangerous. Each year, miners are killed in landslides – the deadliest of which to date occurred in July 2020, when more than 174 miners were killed, with another 100 listed as missing.

Working conditions

Most miners working in the Kachin Hills are unregistered workers from poor families; these workers are known as 'pickers'. As a result, authorities do not have a precise number as to how many pickers are working in the mines at any given time.

tailings
rock waste from mines

Pickers work in very dangerous conditions, often digging with their bare hands in the piles of rock that tumble from the back of huge dump trucks. These piles, known as **tailings**, form large, unstable hills (see Source 11). From mid-May to late October each year, Burma experiences its monsoon season, where heavy rain falls throughout the country. The west coast in particular is prone to tropical cyclones. During monsoon season, heavy rainfall causes tailings to collapse as landslides. Tragically, this results in injury and death for the pickers digging in piles of rock for the precious jade.



Source 11
Pickers digging in tailings piles in the Kachin Hills of northern Burma

The July 2020 landslide

On 1 July 2020, heavy rains poured onto the Kachin Hills. Local authorities warned pickers that they should evacuate the area, but many ignored the warning. At 6.30 am, a tailings pile collapsed into a small lake. This triggered what survivors called an 'inland tsunami', as the water, mud and rock flooded the settlements where the miners lived.

As most pickers lived in shacks made with tarp, they were quickly swamped in the deadly wave. The heavy rain continued, toppling the unstable slopes and making rescue efforts extremely difficult. One witness told the BBC: 'Within a minute, all the people at the bottom [of the hill] just disappeared. I feel empty in my heart … There were people stuck in the mud shouting for help, but no one could help them.'

Producers and consumers

Geographers are interested in the links between people in different places, and the impacts of these links. When it comes to jade, the link between Burma and China has existed for hundreds of years. A 'jade road' existed between Burma and China from the late 1700s to the mid 1900s, up until World War II. After that, much of the trade began taking place in Hong Kong.

Today, the pickers of Burma are linked to the jade consumers of China even though it is unlikely they will ever meet. While Chinese consumers are willing to pay a lot of money for the precious stones, their demand for jade has a serious impact on the working conditions in Burma's mines. To cope with the long hours and hard labour, many pickers have turned to drug use, and there are high rates of addiction and disease in the picker communities.

For more information on this key concept, see page 8 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Interconnections

Source 12 Necklaces made from Burma jade

3.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How many people were considered missing after the 2020 landslide in Burma?

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** the human activities and natural processes that contributed to the 2020 landslide.

3 **Explain** how the jade industry demonstrates the geographical concept of interconnection.

Analyse

4 Using the world map in the back of your book, locate Burma. **Identify** three of the countries that border it.

5 Using Source 10 on page 87, **classify** the July 2020 landslide. Give reasons for your answer.

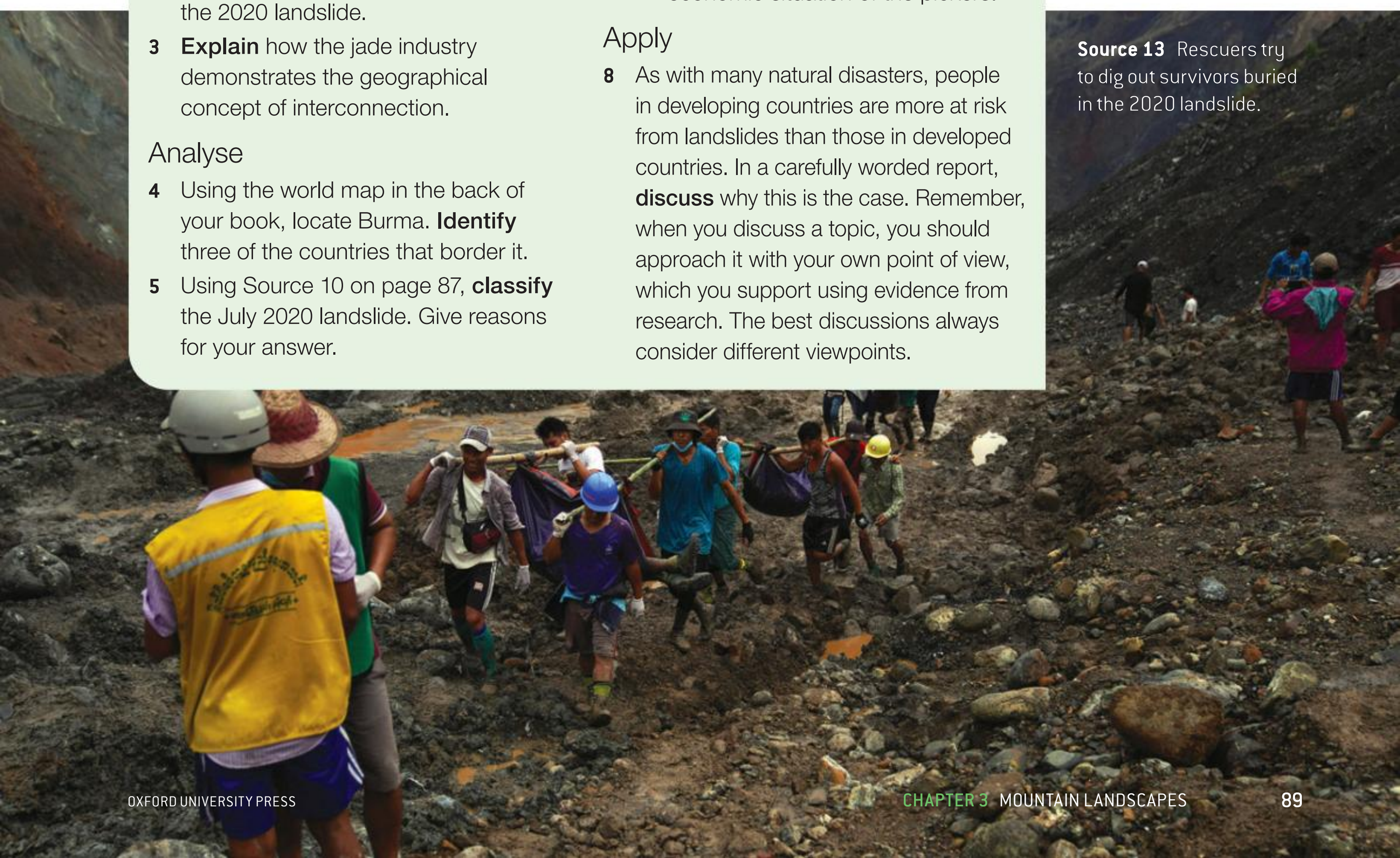
6 Why did pickers ignore advice to evacuate? Suggest two reasons.

7 In pairs, **reflect on** why pickers were vulnerable to this type of disaster.
   a Think about the geographical influences in the Kachin Hills.
   b Think about the social and economic situation of the pickers.

Apply

8 As with many natural disasters, people in developing countries are more at risk from landslides than those in developed countries. In a carefully worded report, **discuss** why this is the case. Remember, when you discuss a topic, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research. The best discussions always consider different viewpoints.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on landslides in Burma's jade mines



Source 13 Rescuers try to dig out survivors buried in the 2020 landslide.

3C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Enlarged map
Glacier National Park, Montana, United States

Avalanches

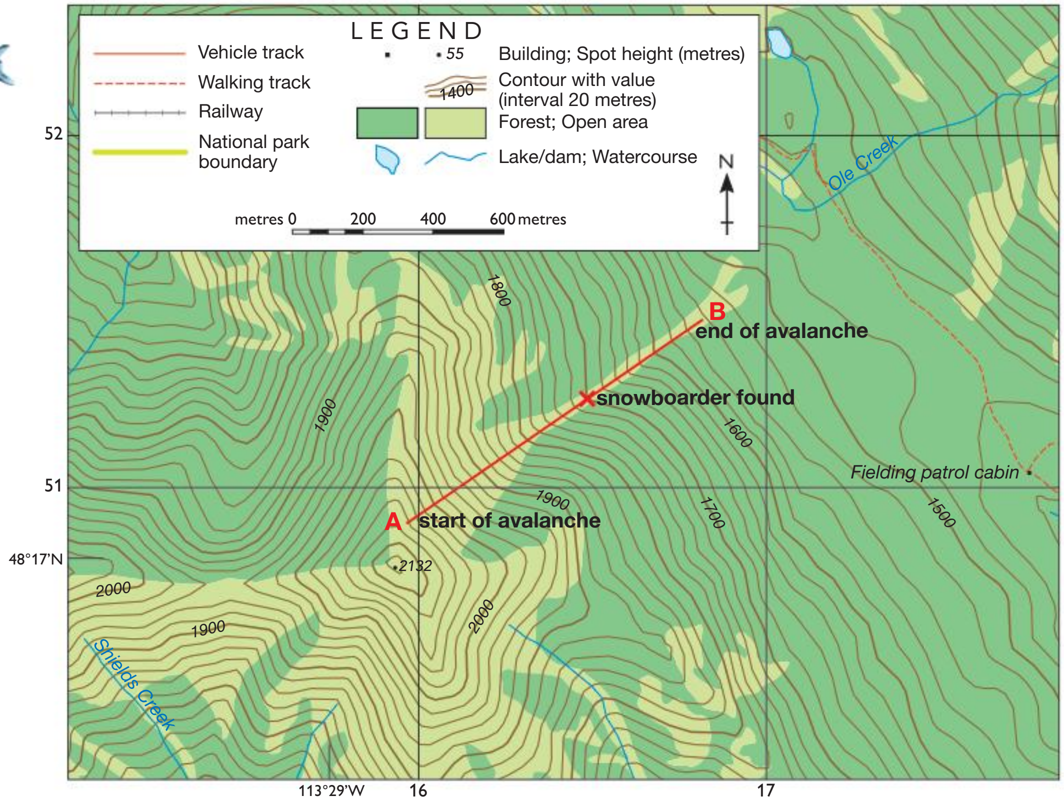
More than 150 people a year, mostly skiers and snowboarders, are killed by avalanches.

Avalanches are a type of landslide. They involve the rapid movement of snow down mountain slopes. Some steep slopes are more likely to produce an avalanche than others – snow resting on a layer of slippery ice on a steep slope can easily collapse. The resulting avalanche can reach speeds of up to 130 kilometres per hour.

In 2010, a lone snowboarder was killed by an avalanche in Glacier National Park in Montana in the United States. The site of the avalanche is shown in Source 15.

Source 14 A skier in the path of an avalanche

GLACIER NATIONAL PARK, MONTANA, UNITED STATES



Source 15 Glacier National Park was the site of an avalanche in 2010.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Constructing a cross-section

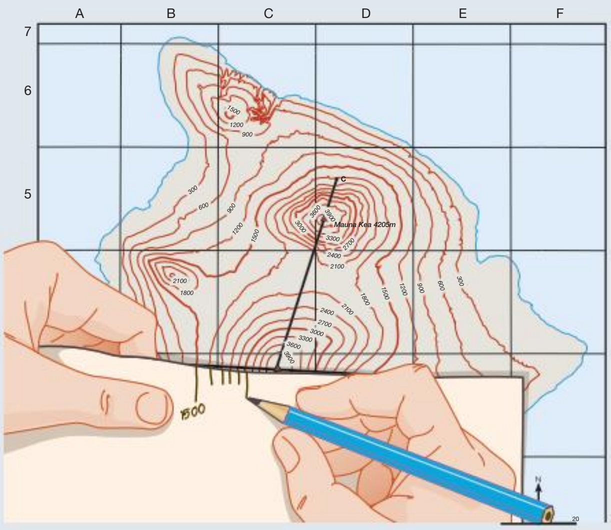
Cross-sections show the landscape as a view from the side. To construct a cross-section from a topographic map, such as Source 15, follow the steps outlined below.

Step 1 **Identify the cross-section:** Find the two points on the map that will form the outer edges of your cross-section. In the case of Source 15, these points are labelled A and B.

Step 2 **Mark the outer edges:** Place a straight-edged piece of paper across the map so that it crosses both points A and B. Mark these two points on your piece of paper. Be careful not to draw on the map.

Step 3 **Mark the contour lines:** Working from left to right, put a small mark on your piece of paper at every point where it crosses a contour line. You need to know the height of each line, so jot this down on the piece of paper as well (see Source 16).

Step 4 **Draw the axes:** On another piece of paper, draw a set of axes for your cross-section. The horizontal axis is the same width as the distance between points A and B on the map. The vertical scale must begin below the lowest height on your cross-section and extend above your highest point. Put a vertical scale on both the left-hand side and right-hand side of your cross-section.



Source 16 Marking the contour lines

Step 5 **Transfer the contour line heights:** Lay your first piece of paper along your horizontal axis. For each contour height shown, you must place a dot on your cross-section at the correct height according to your vertical scale.

Step 6 **Join the dots:** Join the points with a smooth line. Use a graphite pencil and take care to make your sketched line as 'natural' as possible. It should not be a series of short, straight lines, but one long, smooth, curved line.

Step 7 **Add the finishing touches:** Lightly shade the area below your line to show that this is solid land. Label both axes with their correct scales and give your cross-section a title.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** a cross-section of the avalanche site along the line marked A–B on Source 15. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro.

Extend your understanding

1 Study Source 15. On this map, the beginning of the avalanche is labelled A and the point at which it stopped is B.

  a **Identify** the direction in which the avalanche travelled.

  b Using your cross-section as a guide, **describe** the steepness of the slope at this place.

2 Rangers at Glacier National Park monitor snow conditions carefully and sometimes close dangerous areas. What do you think they look for when they examine the snow conditions?

3 **Compare** this natural disaster to the landslide described on pages 88 to 89.

  a In what ways were these disasters similar?

  b In what ways were they different?

3 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine the sources and answer the questions that follow.

Disappearing glaciers

There are thousands of glaciers in the Andes Mountains of South America. They contain vital supplies of water for people in many parts of the continent. However, as temperatures rise, the glaciers are shrinking. This has the potential to change the lives of millions of people as water becomes scarce.

1 **Examine** Source 17.
   a Identify the type of geographical photograph shown here: ground-level or aerial. (1 mark)
   b Describe the change in the Upsala Glacier between 1928 and 2004. (2 marks)
   c Why are geographical photos useful tools? (2 marks)

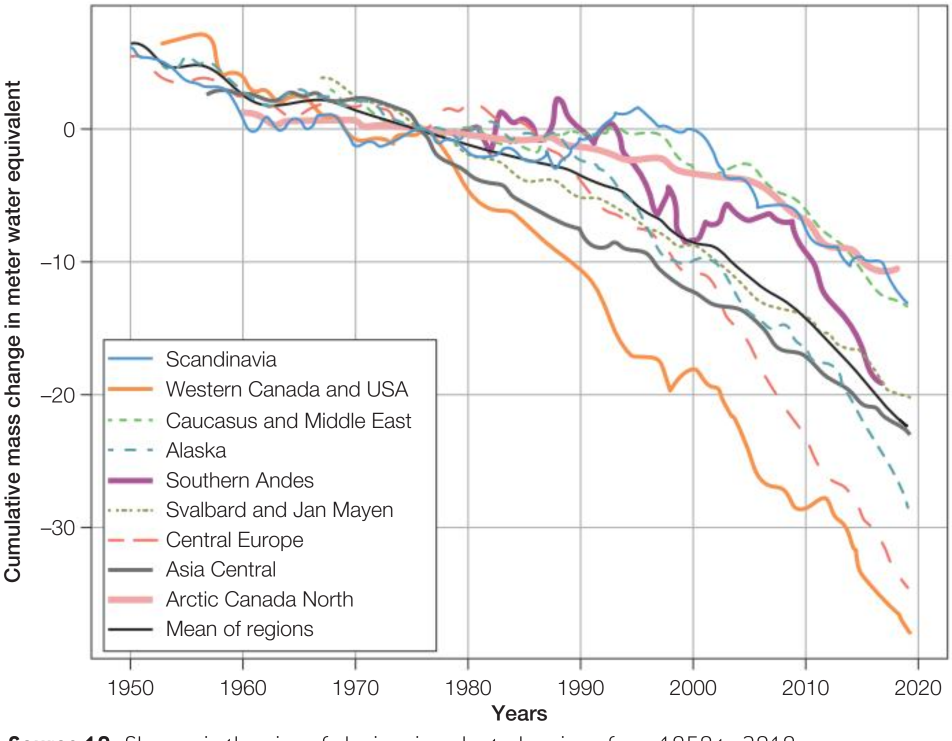
2 Using Source 18, **describe** the trend in the change in size of the world's glaciers since 1950. (2 marks)

3 **Determine** (decide) if the glaciers in the Southern Andes followed this same trend. Use evidence from both sources to support your answer. (3 marks)

4 Climate change is one of the major factors contributing to the change in the size of glaciers around the world. In a 200- to 300-word response:
   - **define** the term 'glacial retreat'
   - **explain** how glacial retreat impacts mountain landscapes
   - **explain** the consequences of glacial retreat on different species (including humans)
   - **propose** (put forward) ideas about what could be done to stop the effects of climate change on glaciers. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 17 The Upsala Glacier in Argentina in 1928 (top) and in *c.* 2017 (bottom)



Source 18 Change in the size of glaciers in selected regions from 1950 to 2019

Note: 'Cumulative mass change in meter water equivalent' refers to the change in the amount of ice on the glacier assuming that it had melted and become water.

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Understand how tectonic plates shape landscapes and create geomorphological hazards.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.1, page 56.
Explain the geomorphological processes that produce mountain landscapes and landforms. Describe how fold, fault-block and volcanic mountains are formed.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.2, page 58.
Explain how erosion shapes mountain landscapes and landforms, including the role of glaciers.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.3, page 62.
Identify and describe the many ways that humans use mountain landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.4, page 66.
Understand the material, cultural and spiritual value of mountain landscapes for First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.5, page 68.
Describe the human effects of farming on mountain landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.6, page 70.
Explain the impacts of climate change on mountain landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.7, page 73.
Identify methods used to protect mountain landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.8, page 76.
Summarise the causes and impacts of a volcanic eruption.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.9, page 80.
Explain the environmental, economic and social impacts of living near a volcano.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.10, page 82.
Identify different types of landslides and their causes. Understand how the principles of prevention, mitigation and preparedness can reduce the harmful effects of a hazard.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.11, page 86.
Describe how human activities have heightened the impact of a hazard by altering the environment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 3.12, page 88.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 3

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 3

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Mountain landscapes.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 3

CHAPTER

4

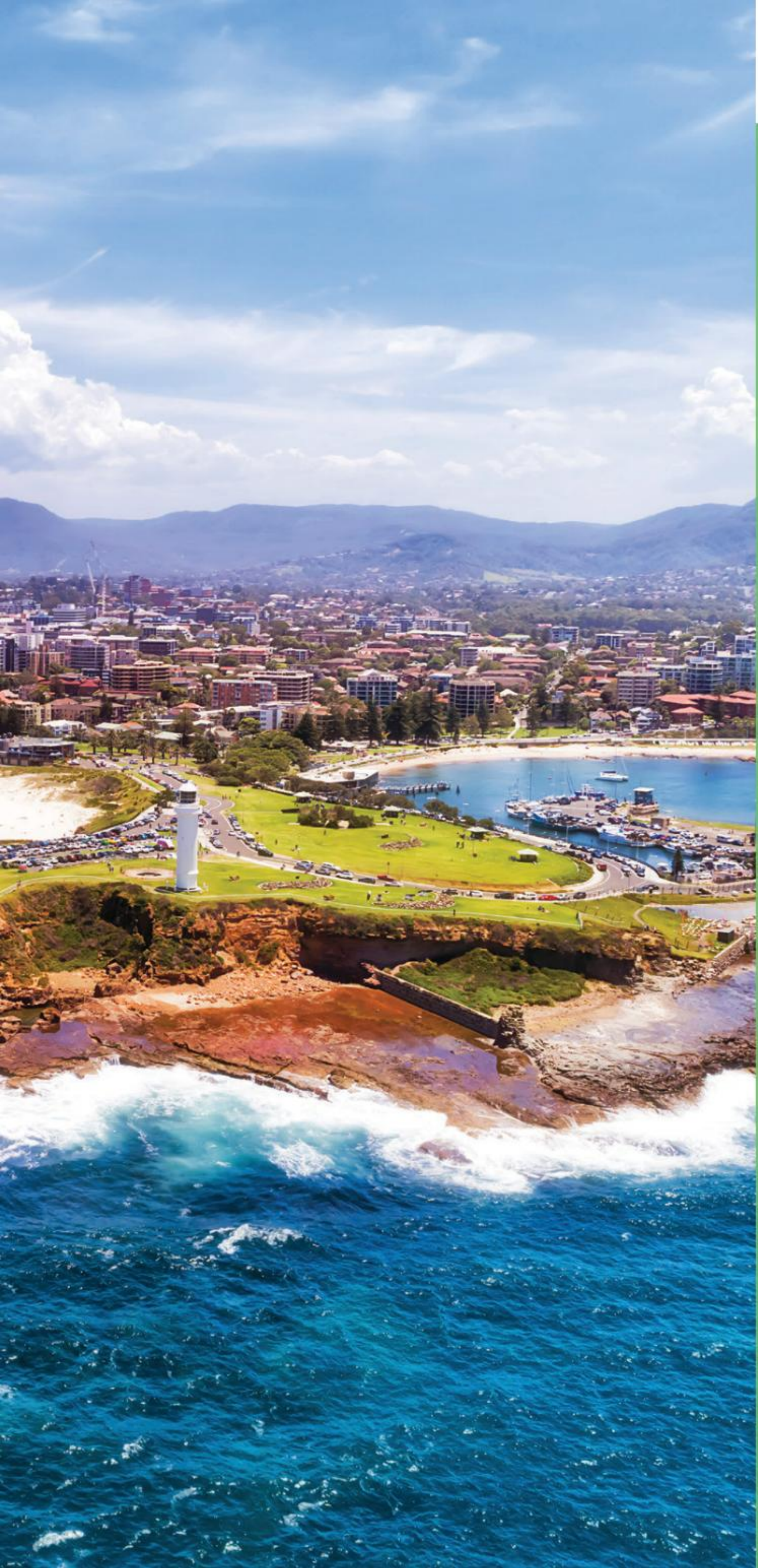
Coastal landscapes

Coasts are very dynamic places – they are constantly changing. There is an ever-present battle between the forces that wear away the land, such as crashing waves, strong currents and winds, and the forces that build new landforms. These include tides, gentle waves and winds that shape the soft sands and hard rocks that make up coastal landscapes.

People, too, bring about changes to coastal landscapes. These changes range from small human activities, such as walking across a sand dune, to large activities, such as building ports and sea walls.

Increasingly, the coast is the place where change caused by climate change is most obvious. Rising seas mean that waves are breaking onto soft sand dunes and cliffs, wearing them away at a faster rate.

Source 1 Flagstaff Point lighthouse has kept watch over the Wollongong coast, south of Sydney, since 1936. In the centre of this dramatic coastal landscape, you can see waves attacking and eroding the hard rocks of the headland. To the left is Wollongong Beach, built of sand carried along the coast by waves and currents. On the right is a marina where rock walls have been built to protect boats from the waves of the Pacific Ocean.



4A
How are coastal landscapes formed?

4B
How are coastal landscapes used and managed?

4C
Are coastal landscapes hazardous places?

4.1 How coastal landscapes are formed

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the geomorphological processes that produce coastal landscapes and landforms.

Constant movements of water and wind carve coastal landscapes into an incredible range of shapes. Geographers, who refer to these shapes as landforms, are particularly interested in exploring the forces that create them. To begin your study of coastal landscapes, you should start by finding out the names of the most common coastal landforms, shown in Source 1. Some of them you may have heard of before, but others may be new to you.

Coastal landforms can be formed in two different ways – by **erosion** or by **deposition**. Because of these processes, there is no 'typical' or 'average' coastal landform: every **arch**, **stack**, **cave** or **headland** will be unique. There are, however, common features for each type of landform. Geographers examine and describe the similarities and differences of these features and use them to explain how they were formed. For example, Sources 3 and 4 show two coastal landforms. Geographers would describe both landforms as stacks, even though they look quite different.

erosion
the wearing away of land by wind, water or ice

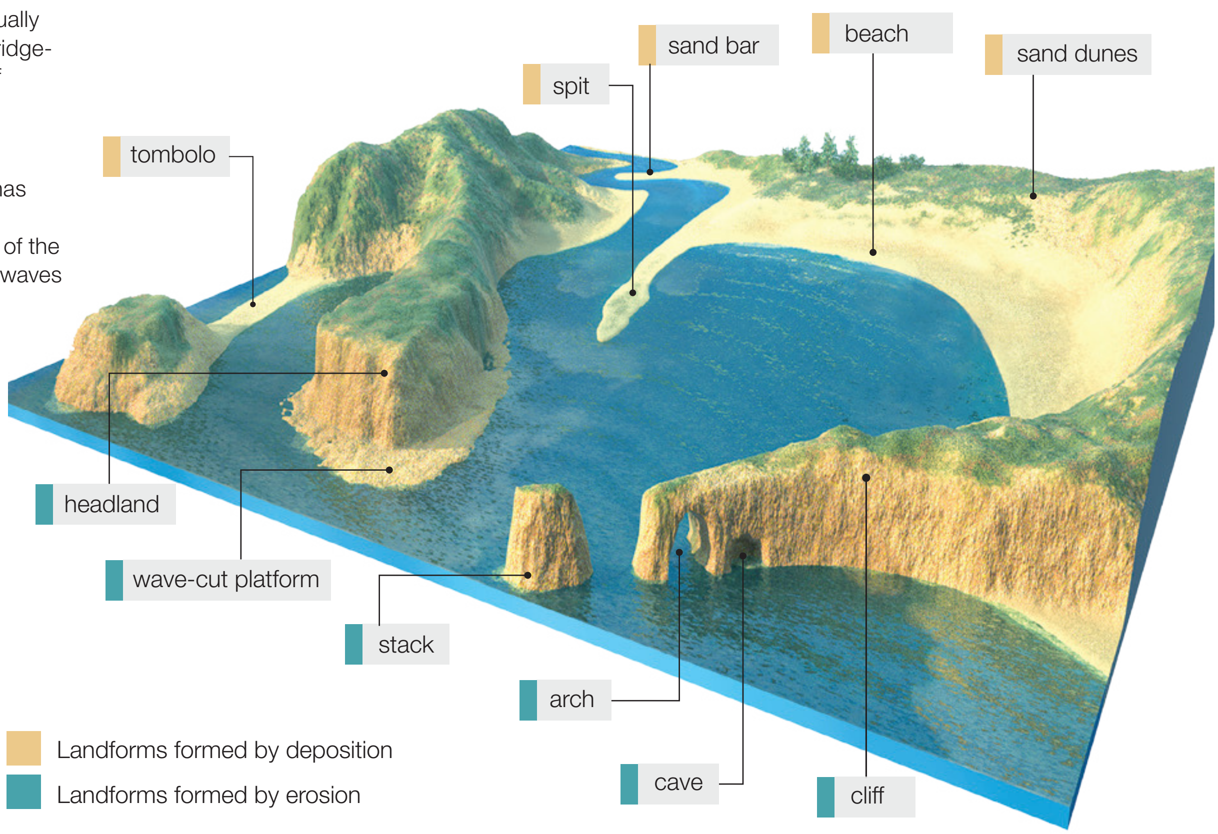
deposition
the building up of land through deposits of sand and other materials

arch
a natural feature, usually rock, that forms a bridge-like arc as a result of erosion

stack
a part of a cliff that has separated from the mainland as a result of the erosive effect of the waves

cave
a hollow space along the coast produced by the action of waves

headland
a piece of land jutting out into the sea



Source 1 Some common coastal landforms

Source 2 Whitehaven Beach on Queensland's Whitsunday Islands is often voted the world's most beautiful beach.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Developing inquiry questions

A day at the beach

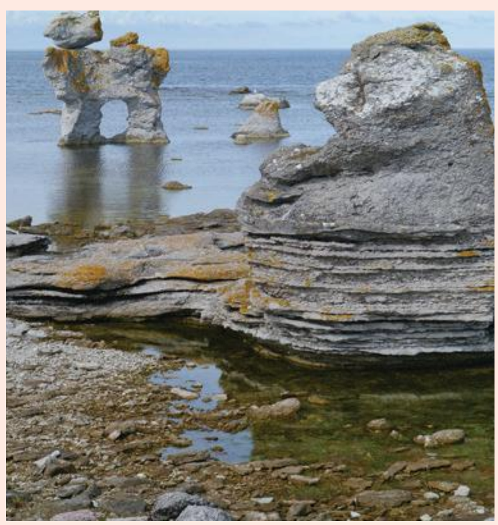
Like all landscapes, coasts are constantly changing. During a five-hour visit to a beach, about 2500 waves hit the shore. Each wave picks up millions of grains of sand and moves them. Some grains are moved further inland, some along the beach, some out to sea, and some are put back in the same place. The wind also picks up millions of grains of dry sand and blows them onto the sand dunes, which are hills or mounds of sand formed by wind deposition on the landward side of a beach. Visitors walk through the dunes, trampling the plants and creating a wind tunnel that speeds up erosion. During the day, the sea level rises and falls about 2 metres, as the Moon's gravity pulls the oceans towards shore and away from it, creating tides.

What makes a beach perfect for geographers to study is the rapid rate of change that takes place there. This is mainly because:

- one wave breaks on the beach about every 8–10 seconds, and each of them changes the coast
- sand is easily eroded and deposited
- people use the coast in many ways, constantly changing it.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 10 of 'The geography toolkit.'

Source 3 Stacks at Port Campbell, Victoria



Source 4 Stacks at Faro Island, Sweden

KEY CONCEPT
Change

The power of waves

destructive waves strong waves that wear away coasts and remove material

constructive waves gentle waves that deposit material and build up beaches

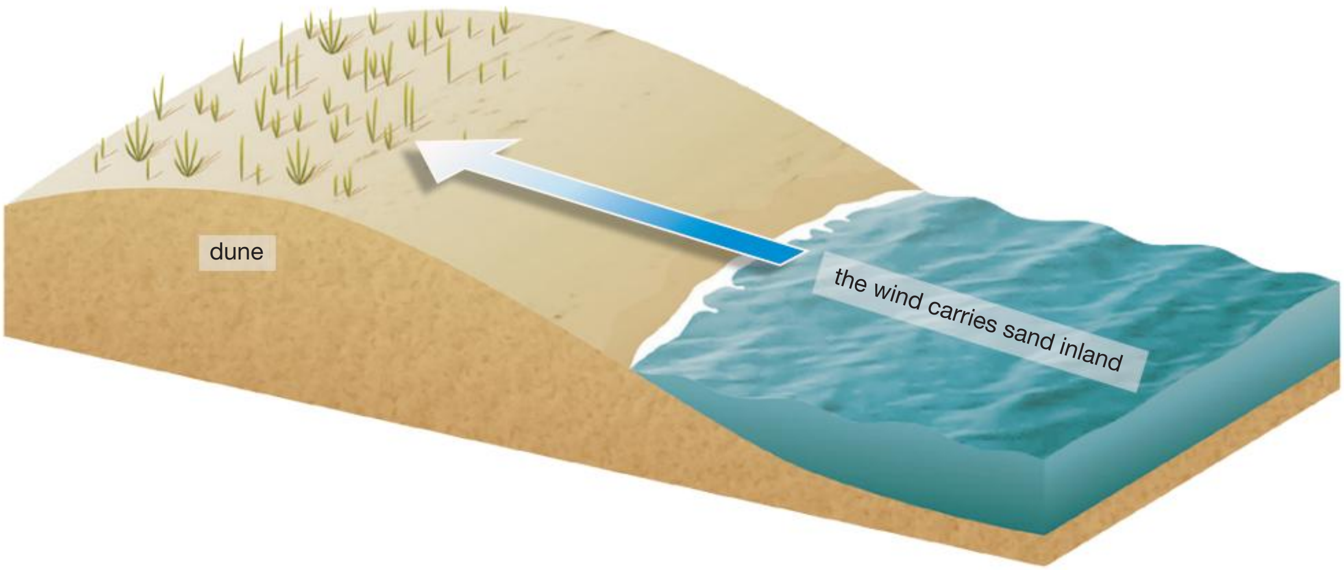
Waves are the main force that shape coastal landscapes. They form as wind blows across the surface of the water, and their energy builds as the wind continues to blow them towards the coastline. This energy is then released as the wave breaks on the coast.

In places where the waves have travelled large distances or have been pushed by powerful winds, they can break with great force on the coast. These **destructive waves** break rocks apart and smash them into fine pieces of sand. By contrast, waves that have only travelled a short distance break with much less force. These **constructive waves** carry sand up onto the coast where it is deposited, creating beaches.

Source 5 The difference between constructive waves and destructive waves can be seen on the Mornington Peninsula near Melbourne. On the right-hand side of this photograph is the Southern Ocean. Waves generated on this side of the peninsula have travelled thousands of kilometres and are large, destructive waves. On the left-hand side of the photograph is Port Phillip Bay. As a bay, it has produced much smaller, constructive waves.

The power of the wind

The other important force that shapes the coast is wind. Waves themselves are created by wind. Wind also picks up sand and moves it inland, away from the waves (see Source 6). Over time, this wind-blown sand collects in large piles or dunes. As plants grow on the dunes, they become more permanent landforms and a feature of many coastal landscapes. In some places, the wind-blown sand acts like sandpaper – eroding rocks and carving them into remarkable shapes.



Source 6 The wind is a creative force that helps shape the coast.

4.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the two natural forces that shape coastal landscapes.

2 **Recall** how wind shapes coastal landforms.

Comprehend

3 Think carefully about the important role that waves play in shaping the coast.
   a Why are some waves more powerful than others?
   b How does the size and force of the wave affect its impact on the coastline?

4 Look at Source 1 in the opening of this chapter (pages 94 to 95). **Identify** four landforms created by erosion and four created by deposition.

5 Look at Source 1 on page 96.
   a **Describe** what each of these landforms look like: arch, spit and tombolo.
   b How do you think each of these has been formed?

6 **Describe** the differences in what you see between the two sides of the peninsula in Source 5.

Analyse

7 **Compare** the stacks in Sources 3 and 4:
   a How are they different from each other?
   b In pairs, generate three geographical questions you would ask to explore why these stacks are different.
   c Research these stacks to answer your questions from part b.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on how coastal landscapes are formed

4.2 Erosional landforms

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the process of erosion, and explain how it creates coastal landforms.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about how coastal landforms are created and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

As we saw in topic 4.1, coastal landforms are created in two main ways: erosion and deposition. This is due to the fact that when waves hit the shoreline, their effects can be varied.

Destructive waves are those that erode and destroy sections of coast. Such waves are tall and frequent, which means they crash into the shoreline, digging out large chunks of land and eroding the coast.

Destructive waves usually begin in a large, windswept ocean. The waves travel thousands of kilometres, building up energy that is unleashed onto the rocks and sands of the coast. These waves carve the coastline into amazing shapes, in much the same way that a sculptor carves shapes from a piece of marble. This process of wearing away is known as erosion, and therefore the landforms created this way are called erosional landforms.

A stretch of coastline close to the town of Port Campbell in southern Victoria provides a good example of erosional landforms (see Source 7). The coastline is made up of limestone, which is a relatively soft rock. This part of Australia's coast is constantly being battered by destructive waves from the Southern Ocean. As a result, the limestone cliffs in the area are being slowly eroded, creating an ever-changing coast.

1 Cliff

Cliffs along coasts are formed by the action of waves on rock. The power of the waves erodes softer rock, leaving the more durable rock behind.

2 Blowhole

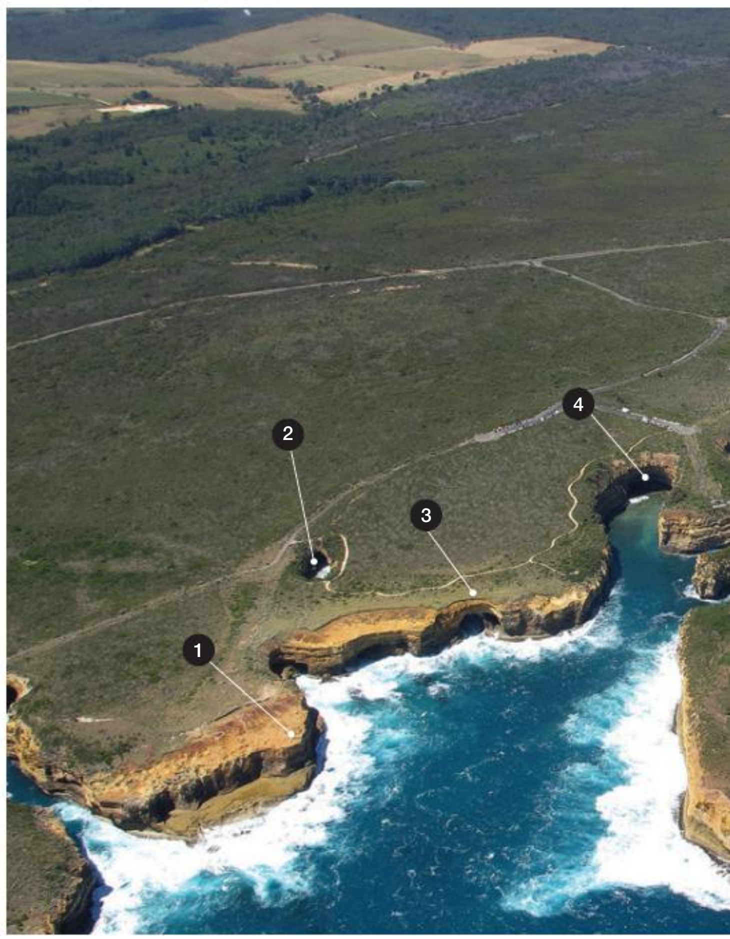
Waves entering a cave have eroded the back of the cave, causing it to collapse.

3 Cave

As waves approach the coast they tend to bend around headlands and islands and attack them from the side in a process known as **refraction**. When waves encounter a weak spot in the cliff (such as a section of soft limestone) they wear away the rock. They create a small opening, which is soon enlarged into a cave. The waves can now enter the cave and erode the sides and top.

4 Gorge

Some caves can be hundreds of metres long. Waves entering long caves can wear away the roof, causing it to collapse and forming a deep gorge.



Source 7 A section of coastline near the town of Port Campbell in Victoria

refraction
the process by which the direction of a wave is changed when moving into shallow water

Photo for sketching
The coastline near Port Campbell

Watch it!
A video and quiz on erosional landforms

4.2 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 What are two features of the Port Campbell coast that make it vulnerable to erosion?

2 **Explain** how an arch becomes a stack.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 7.

a Identify the number of caves, arches and stacks in the image.

b What evidence is there that the waves of Port Campbell are destructive waves?

4 **Distinguish** between a bay and a headland. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

Apply

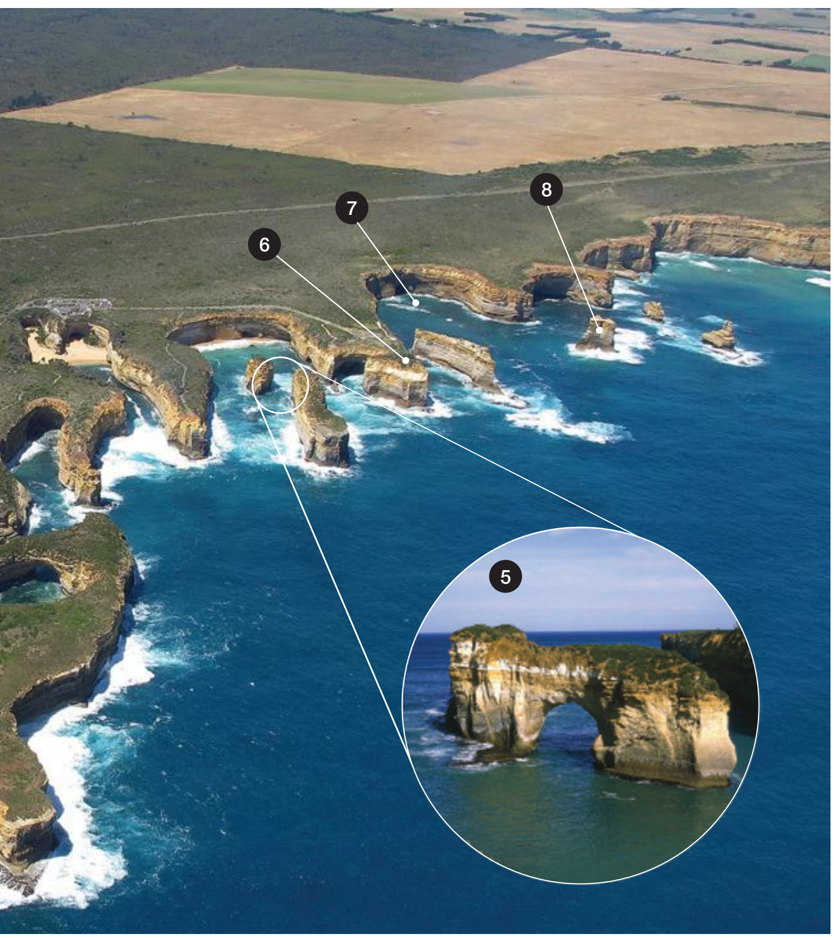
5 **Predict** what changes might occur in the next few thousand years in the landscape shown in Source 7 by following these instructions: On a drawing or copy of the photograph (available on obook pro), sketch and label the following features of a future landscape:

- a collapsed stack
- a new arch
- a new stack
- the shape of the new coastline
- a new gorge.

6 This coastline is moving inland at the rate of about 2 centimetres a year. The Great Ocean Road, which you can see in the background, is about 200 metres from the coast at present.

a Based on this information, estimate what year you think the Great Ocean Road will fall into the sea.

b Brainstorm a list of other human features in this region that you think might also change by then.



5 Arch
As waves erode the back of a cave they may penetrate right through the headland and produce an arch. Waves may pass through the arch, eroding the sides and top. The arch shown here (inset) has since eroded and fallen into the sea, creating two stacks (main image).

6 Headland
Some sections of the coastline are made up of harder rock than other sections. These can resist the energy of the destructive waves longer than the softer parts and remain as headlands – high, rocky outcrops of land.

7 Bay
The softer parts of a coastline wear away more quickly than headlands and become bays.

8 Stack
As the soft rock of arches is eroded by the destructive waves, the rock above the arches eventually falls into the sea leaving behind stacks – vertical columns – of rock.

4.3 Depositional landforms

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the process of deposition, and explain how it creates costal landforms.

Coasts that are shaped by smaller, constructive waves are quite different from those shaped by destructive waves. Over time, smaller waves carry sand along the coast, and wind carries it inland. This sand and other material is deposited up onto the coast. The process is called deposition. It shapes the coast and creates distinctive depositional landforms, including beaches, dunes, spits, lagoons and tombolos.

Longshore drift

Although some waves hit the shoreline directly, most do so at an angle. From there, they pick up the sand and carry it along the beach, rather than just dumping it directly forward onto the shore. The next wave that comes along will also move the sand along the beach until eventually, after hundreds of small zigzags, millions of grains of sand are moved to one end of the beach. This movement of sand along a coast is called **longshore drift**. It is a major contributor to the shape of the coastline.

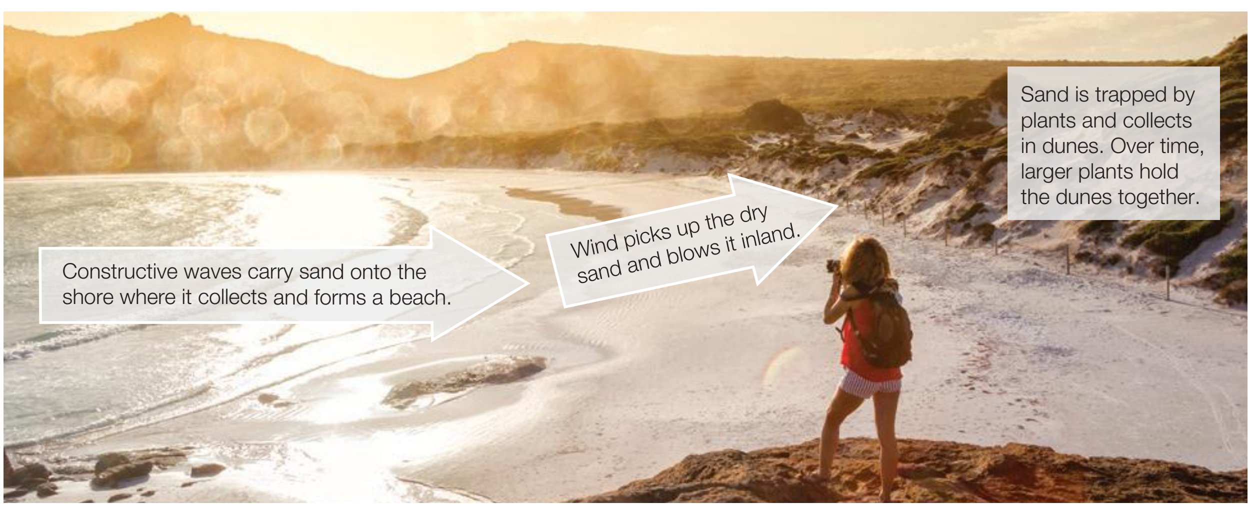
longshore drift
the process that moves sediment in a zigzag pattern along a beach by the wash and backwash of waves approaching the shore at an angle

Beaches and dunes

The most common depositional landforms are beaches. A beach is formed when constructive waves carry sand, pebbles and broken shells and deposit them on the shore (see Source 8). These small waves do not have enough energy to take this material back to sea, so it remains as a beach. Storms may bring destructive waves several times a year and wash away parts of the beach, but the slow, gradual process of beach building repairs this damage.

As the tide goes out, the sand dries out. The wind can then pick up individual grains and blow them inland. As the grains move, they may become trapped by plants or collected in areas sheltered from the wind. These collections of sand pile up, forming sand dunes. Plants grow on these dunes and hold them together. But if the plants are removed, entire dunes can move further inland, covering roads, car parks, paddocks and plants. These are called **blowout dunes**.

blowout dunes
horseshoe-shaped disturbances in a sand dune system



Source 8 The formation of beaches and dunes

Other coastal landforms

Longshore drift also moves sand *along* the coast. As sand is deposited along coasts, other landforms can be created by the forces of water and wind. These include spits, lagoons and tombolos.

Spits

A spit is a long, curved landform that is created from the build-up of eroded material at the mouth of a river, where it enters the sea. A river carries soil and rocks from upstream in its swiftly moving water. This material is dumped at the river mouth, forming a spit. Over time, the spit stabilises as plants grow on top of it and hold it together.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on depositional landforms

Lagoons

Some spits grow so large that a river may be forced to change its course to reach the sea. Over thousands of years, the river mouth may move hundreds of metres along the coast and a stretch of calm, shallow water behind the spit, known as a lagoon, is formed. Lagoons are therefore partly or completely separated from the sea by a narrow strip of land.

Tombolos

A tombolo is formed when constructive waves deposit sand or other sediment between an island and the mainland (or another island). Eventually, enough material builds up that a permanent connection, or tombolo, is made between the island and the mainland.

Source 9 The formation of spits and a tombolo at Port Stephens, New South Wales

4.3 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. In your own words, **describe** how smaller waves shape the coast.
2. **Explain** how longshore drift shapes coastlines.

Analyse

3. **Distinguish** between constructive waves and destructive waves. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.
4. How many spits can you identify in Source 9? Describe how spits are formed.
5. **Identify** the role plants play in shaping constructive coastlines.

Apply

6. **Compare** the beach in Source 8 with Wollongong Beach, as shown in Source 1 in the opening of this chapter (pages 94 to 95). In what ways are these beaches the same and in what ways are they different?
7. Using the internet, locate an oblique photograph of a beach. Using what you have learnt so far, label and annotate as many features of the coastline as you can see.

4.4 Coastal landforms of the world

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe the features of a distinctive Australian landscape compared to a distinctive landscape in another country.

Geographers study landforms in different parts of the world to learn more about how they are formed. By examining the same type of landform in two different locations on the Earth, geographers can learn a great deal more about the forces that shape them, including the climate, geology, and forces of erosion and deposition.

In the case studies below, we will do as geographers do and compare the same type of landform in two different areas on the Earth.

CASE STUDY

sedimentary rock
rock formed from compacted mud, sand or pebbles, or the remains of living things

The Bunda and Baxter Cliffs – the edge of the world?

A remarkable coastal landscape can be found along Australia's southern edge. The Bunda and Baxter Cliffs stand nearly 100 metres high, facing into the rough waters of the Southern Ocean. The cliffs are part of the Great Southern Scarp, which is 820 kilometres long. Geographers believe it is probably the world's longest unbroken cliff line.

As this region receives little rainfall, there is very little erosion at the top of the cliffs from streams and rivers. By contrast, powerful, destructive waves crash against the limestone at the base of the cliffs. These waves cause dramatic rock collapses, which keep the cliff face steep. Each year, the base of the cliff is cut back by about 30 millimetres by the power of these destructive waves.

The limestone, a kind of **sedimentary rock**, that forms the cliffs is made up of the compressed fossils from millions of tiny marine organisms that lived and died in an ancient shallow sea. As the Australian continent changed over time, it tilted and heaved these southern limestones out of the sea and formed the 820-kilometre-long coastal cliffs that we see today. Later, another smaller tectonic movement lifted parts of the seabed just a little, forming sections of low coastal plains along the scarp.

Today, two sections of the Great Southern Scarp look out over low coastal plains, while the rest is made up of spectacular coastal cliffs. The area is also famous for caves and marsupial fossils.

Source 10 The Bunda and Baxter Cliffs are part of the Great Southern Scarp, the longest cliff line in the world.

The White Cliffs of Dover

CASE STUDY

On the south-east coast of England, facing towards France, are the famous White Cliffs of Dover. The cliffs are more than 100 metres high, and stretch for 13 kilometres along the coast of the English Channel.

Their formation began around 70 million years ago, when Britain and a great deal of Europe lay beneath the sea. Over the course of millions of years, white mud and the skeletons of tiny algae collected on the seabed, to a depth of 500 metres. As they became compressed, these deposits formed chalk. Gradually, tectonic movements lifted much of Britain and Europe above sea level, forming many of Europe's mountain ranges. Glaciers then carved the mountains and eroded away the land between Britain and mainland Europe.

The White Cliffs of Dover are now being eroded slowly by the waves of the English Channel from below and the rain from above. For thousands of years, the cliffs have only retreated 5 centimetres per year. However, this rate has increased dramatically in the past 150 years, with the cliffs now being eroded at a rate of around 30 centimetres per year. Scientists believe this increase has been caused by two factors: first, the changing climate has caused larger, more aggressive waves; and second, sand has been removed from the base of the cliffs in an attempt to control longshore drift.

Explore it! A virtual field trip to the White Cliffs of Dover

Source 11 The White Cliffs of Dover

4.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. What is the name of the coastal process that forms cliffs?
2. **Identify** two reasons why the Bunda and Baxter Cliffs are iconic places.

Comprehend

3. Compare Sources 10 and 11 by answering the following questions.
   a. **Summarise** the ways in which these two landforms appear similar, and the ways they appear different.
   b. **Explain** why these landforms are similar.
   c. **Explain** why these landforms are different.
4. **Summarise** why the rate of erosion has changed at the White Cliffs of Dover.

Apply

5. In pairs, sketch the two landforms. Use labels to show the following features:
   - layers of rock
   - waves
   - evidence of erosion.

4A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Hampton Beach

Hampton Beach is located in Melbourne, 14 kilometres south of the Central Business District. Like many beaches on Port Phillip Bay, it is struggling to hold onto its sand.

A series of decisions made over the past 100 years have gradually robbed the beach of its sand. These include building a wall between the beach and the low cliffs behind it, and constructing a marina at one end of the beach. Both of these strategies have stopped sand moved by longshore drift from being deposited on the beach.

There have also been many attempts to repair the beach. Most notable of these has been the building of a series of rock walls that jut out into the bay and trap sand moving along the shore. Sand has also been pumped from the bay onto the beach.

Source 12 The fieldwork site at Hampton Beach

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Measuring longshore drift

The coast is a popular place for geography field trips because it is possible to see and measure many of the changes that are taking place there. There are several ways to measure the forces responsible for longshore drift. You will need some equipment to do this, and you will need to record your findings to process the data back in the classroom and present your findings.

Source 13 There are many free compass apps you can install on your phone.

Step 1 **Measuring wind direction:** Stand on the beach. In which direction is the wind blowing? You may need to pick up and drop a few grains of dry sand to help you find out.

Use a magnetic compass or a compass app to determine the wind direction. Draw a line in the sand showing this direction.

Step 2 **Measuring wind speed:** The device for measuring wind speed is called an anemometer. Your school's sports department may have one. Set up the anemometer and take regular readings of the wind speed every 5 minutes over a 20-minute period. This will allow you to work out the average wind speed.

Step 3 **Measuring longshore drift:** Measure and mark out a set distance of 10 metres on the beach near the water's edge. Stand at the upwind end of your marked-out area and throw a tennis ball into the water from that point. Record the time taken in seconds for the ball to move 10 metres along the coast. Divide this number by 10 to find out the rate of longshore drift in metres per second. Try this at a few different places along the beach and a few different distances from the shoreline to work out the average speed of longshore drift. Use your compass to work out the direction of this drift.

Source 14 An anemometer

Practise the skill

1 List the equipment you would need to complete the fieldwork activities described.

2 **Explain** why measuring wind direction is important in understanding longshore drift.

3 Source 15 shows a student's notes from a field trip to Hampton Beach. Read them carefully and then answer these questions.

  a **Determine** the average wind speed by adding together all the recorded speeds and dividing the total by four.

  b **Describe** the other evidence provided that tells you it was windy on the day of the field trip.

  c **Determine** the average rate of longshore drift. Add together the five observations and then divide the total by five.

  d Why was the sand moving southwards on the day of the field trip?

  e What type of data has been collected? How reliable is it?

Extend your understanding

1 Work with your teacher and geography class to plan a fieldwork trip to a coastal area near you.

Year 8 Fieldwork: Hampton Beach

Date: 9 August 2021

Location: Hampton Beach, Port Phillip Bay

Weather: Cloudy and windy

Waves: Small choppy waves, about 40 cm high

Wind Direction: Northwesterly

Wind speed observation

Time	Wind speed
10.00	18 km/hr
10.15	16 km/hr
10.30	23 km/hr
10.45	21 km/hr

Longshore drift observation

Test no.	Approximate distance from shore line	Time (in seconds) taken to travel 10 metres
1	5 metres	182
2	4 metres	140
3	12 metres	228
4	20 metres	425
5	10 metres	212

Direction of movement: Southwards

Evidence of sand movement: There was a lot of sand built up on the north side of the groynes but hardly any on the south side. I think this is because sand gets trapped by the groynes. There was also sand being blown along the beach. I could feel this on my legs, and my bag that I left on the beach for about 10 minutes had a lot of sand on it.

Source 15 Student fieldwork recorded at Hampton Beach

4.5 The many uses of coastal landscapes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify and describe the many ways in which coastal landscapes can be used.

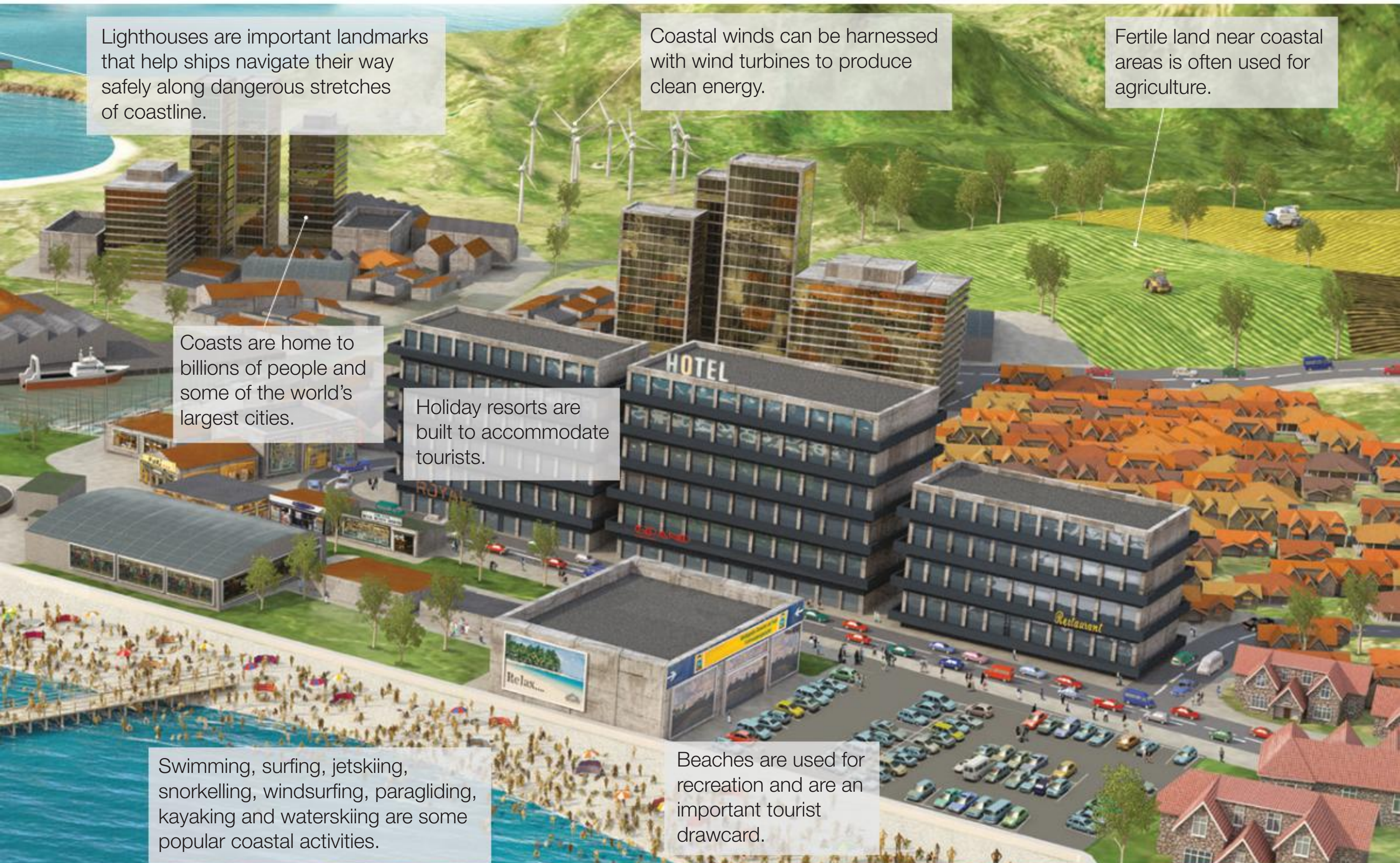
Coastal landscapes are some of the most highly populated areas on Earth. About half of the world's population live on or near a coast. Some geographers estimate that this number will double over the next 15 years.

In Australia, this figure is already much higher – 85 per cent of us live within 50 kilometres of the sea. Many coastal towns and cities are currently experiencing rapid population growth, increasing this figure even more.

As shown in Source 1, coastal areas are used for much more than places to live. Some of these uses of coastal landscapes conflict with each other. This means that one use may cause problems for another area. On the other hand, some uses complement each other – they can both occur without causing problems for each other. Some uses of the coast have little or no impact on the natural environment, while others can have a significant impact.

Source 1 How and why people use coastlines

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the many uses of coastal landscapes



4.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** three ways that people use coastlines.

Analyse

2 **Identify** two reasons why coasts are among the most popular places to live.

3 What is the impact of tourism on coastal places?

4 **Examine** Source 1 and list:

- an example of a social resource
- an example of an economic resource
- an example of a recreational resource.

5 **Distinguish** between the use of the coastal area in the top left-hand corner of Source 1, and the bottom right-hand corner. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

Apply

6 Which of these uses of the coast do you believe has the potential to cause the greatest environmental change? **Discuss** this with a partner and then with the class.

4.6 Gas exports

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the effects of exporting natural gas on coastal landscapes.

liquefied natural gas (LNG)
natural gas that has been converted to a liquid form to make it easier and safer to transport and store

Human activities impact many coastal areas around the world. One such example is the natural gas plants on Curtis Island off the coast of Queensland (see Source 3).

Here, three large plants store **liquefied natural gas (LNG)**. The gas is extracted from onshore coal fields before being piped to Curtis Island. The companies that own the plants then sell the gas. This has created thousands of jobs and boosted the economy of the region. Companies all around the world buy the gas, including many in Asia.

To reach buyers, the gas is transported in huge ships. Each week, two to three specially designed ships carry LNG from Curtis Island to buyers in export markets.

Curtis Island is located beside the Great Barrier Reef. The Great Barrier Reef is the largest reef in the world and is considered one of the world's great natural wonders. It is also included on the United Nations World Heritage list. Curtis Island sits within the Great Barrier Reef World Heritage Area, so gas plant and ship operators must ensure that they follow strict guidelines about their impacts on the natural environment.

Impact on the environment

Some people remain concerned that the gas plants endanger the natural environment, including the reef. In particular, they are worried about the following:

- To allow large LNG ships to reach the gas plants, millions of cubic metres of sand and mud are dredged from the channel between Curtis Island and the mainland. This environment is home to marine life, such as turtles and dugongs.
- Some of the dredged material is dumped outside of the harbour, near the Great Barrier Reef.
- The LNG plants require a reliable supply of fresh water, so a desalination plant is being built as part of the facility. This takes water from the sea, removes the salt and pumps the salt back into the sea, changing salinity levels in the immediate area.
- The movement of ships through the reef means there is the potential for a shipping accident that may damage the reef.

Map it!
Natural gas plant area

KEY CONCEPT
Interconnections

How gas connects us to China

Coal seam natural gas is mined in eastern Queensland, close to the towns of Roma and Fairfield. It is then piped 520 kilometres to Curtis Island, where it is converted to a liquid and loaded onto ships. These ships take the LNG to Asian markets, including China. The liquid is then converted back to gas and used to generate electricity for Chinese factories and homes. In this way, the coal-miners of Roma are linked to the people of Beijing. Geographers refer to this type of link as an interconnection.

Source 2 LNG tankers are loaded at gas plants on Curtis Island.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 8 of 'The geography toolkit'.

NATURAL GAS PLANT AREA

Source 3

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Natural gas plant area

Source 4 Dugongs rely on healthy seagrass in order to survive, but seagrass can be smothered by dredging.

4.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What does LNG stand for?

2 **Select** two positive impacts and two negative impacts of the change on Curtis Island.

Analyse

3 **Examine** the map in Source 3.

a Identify the location of this map in relation to Brisbane (this is known as 'relative location').

b Using the scale, measure the length of the turtle nesting beaches at Facing Island.

c Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the distribution of major shorebird resting sites around the area.

d In pairs, consider how dredging in the area might affect dugongs, turtles and shorebirds.

4 **Apply** the geographical concept of interconnection to explain how gas connects us to China.

Apply

5 **Explain** how the Curtis Island development is an example of the ways in which landscapes have different values for different people (see topic 2.3 on page 44).

6 Open Google Earth on your device and complete these steps:

a Use the historical imagery tool to explore the changes that have taken place on Curtis Island.

b Copy dual images of the region in 2009 and 2020 (use 'copy image' in the edit menu) and label them to show the changes to the environment. **Discuss** the reasons for these changes.

4.7 Pollution

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

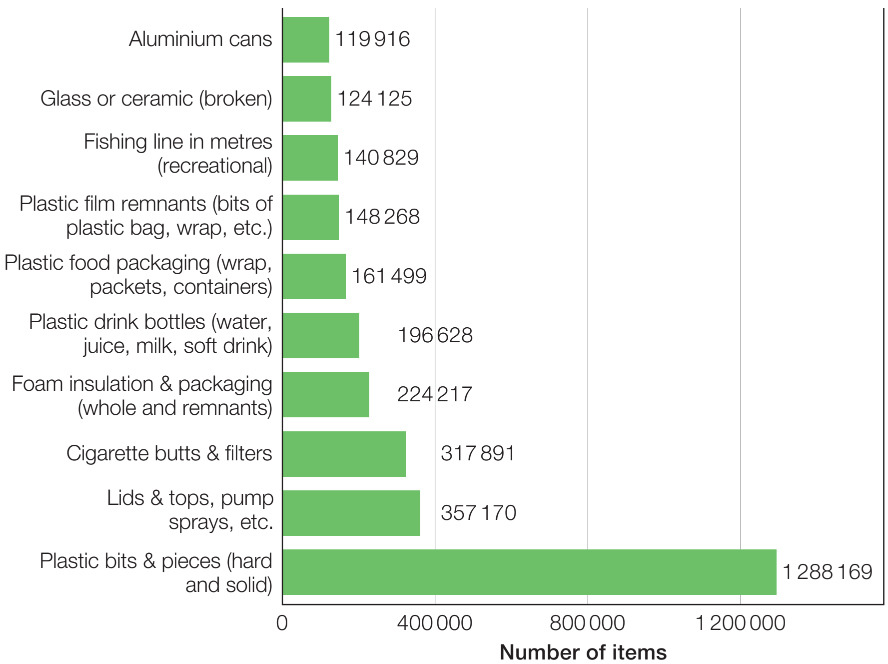
» describe the impacts of pollution on coastal landscapes.

polluted
when harmful materials have been introduced into the environment

Although it may be hard to imagine, many of the activities that humans do on land can have serious consequences for coastal landscapes. The world's oceans and coasts are being **polluted** by human activities, including farming, shopping and travel.

For example, streams and rivers carry farming chemicals and fertilisers to the ocean, where they can cause a growth in some plants that smother ecosystems, such as coral reefs. Dredging of the sea floor also adds extra sediment to the ocean waters. This can smother habitats, such as seagrass, and block the sunlight that plants need to grow.

Pollution from urban areas, such as streets and rubbish dumps, can be carried into drains and streams. From there, they flow through to the sea. Plastics are the most visible of these pollutants as they float easily and are often washed onto coastal landscapes. Source 5 shows the top 10 items found on Australian beaches and waterways.



Data sourced from Tangaroa Blue Foundation

Source 5 Top 10 items: Beach and waterway clean-ups, Australia, 2004–15

Source 6 Despite being in the centre of the Pacific Ocean, many of Hawaii's beaches are covered in plastic rubbish. Most of this has been carried by ocean currents from the countries that surround the Pacific.

CASE STUDY

Ghost nets

Every year, about 640 000 tonnes of fishing gear (nets and tackle) is lost in the world's oceans. Most of this is made up of abandoned fishing nets that have drifted free from boats in extreme weather conditions, or have been cut free because they became entangled. In many cases it is cheaper and easier for fishermen working in waters to the north of Australia to cut these tangled nets free rather than to haul them in and untangle them. The nets – which are still afloat because they are plastic – are carried south on ocean currents and continue to entangle fish and other marine species, such as turtles, dugongs, and even sharks and crocodiles. They are referred to as 'ghost nets', and there are thousands of them in the oceans.

Key skill worksheet
Concluding & decision making: Evaluating data

About 100 000 marine animals are killed by ghost nets every year. These include endangered mammals, such as whales and Australian sea lions. Reptiles such as turtles can also become entangled. In northern Australia, ocean currents and winds carry ghost nets into the Gulf of Carpentaria where they can remain for years, trapped by circulating currents (see Source 8). Tides and storms wash them onto the shore and then drag them back to sea or bury them in the sand.

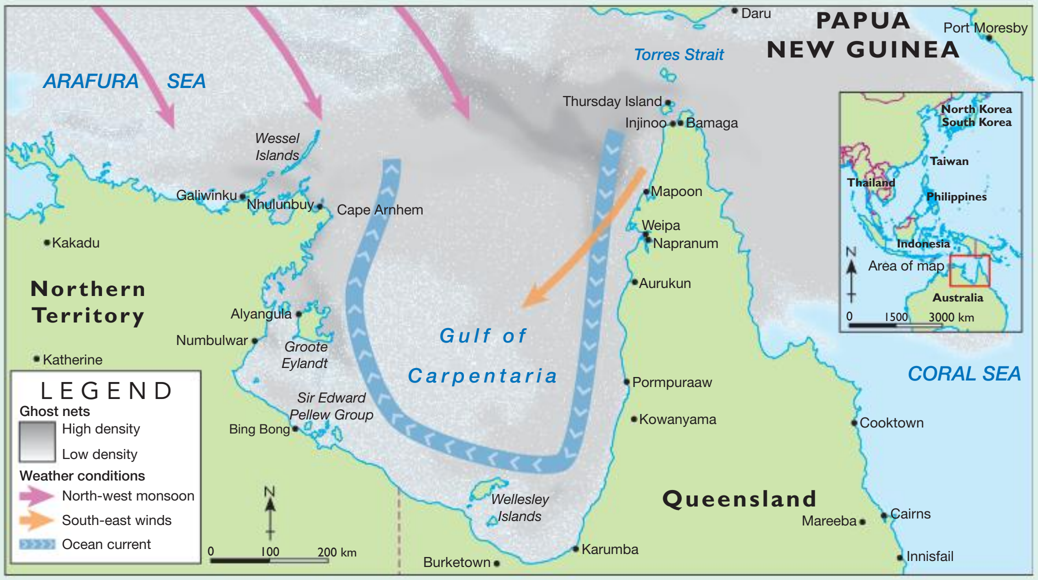
Source 7 Rescue came just in time for this turtle who was found trapped in a ghost net in the Indian Ocean.

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 7.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

THE GULF OF CARPENTARIA: WEATHER PATTERNS AND DENSITY OF GHOST NETS



Source 8 Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
The Gulf of Carpentaria: Weather patterns and density of ghost nets

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on pollution

4.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 List the main types of plastic pollution on Australian beaches and waterways.

2 **Identify** some of the main sources of marine pollution.

3 In your own words, **define** ghost nets. In what part of Australia are they a problem?

Comprehend

4 **Explain** how the plastic on Hawaii's beaches demonstrates the geographical concept of interconnections.

5 Look at Source 8. How do ocean currents and winds affect the movement of ghost nets? Refer to specific winds and places in your answer.

Apply

6 a **Propose** (put forward) one strategy that might help reduce the number of ghost nets in the oceans in order to improve sustainability. Be sure to explain your strategy and why it would be helpful.

b Why do you think ghost nets are such a hard problem to solve?

4.8 Managing coastal landscapes

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify methods used to manage coastal landscapes, including the contribution of First Nations peoples.

Coasts are difficult landscapes to manage because they are such dynamic places. They are constantly changing, thanks to the natural and human activities taking place around them.

Natural processes such as erosion and deposition cause spits, cliffs, beaches and many other landforms to change. This can cause problems for communities such as those in Hampton Beach (see Skills in Context task 4A on page 106).

Human activities can alter coastal landscapes in many ways. This may be a large-scale change, such as the one taking place at Curtis Island (see topic 4.6 on page 110), or a smaller scale change such as plastic rubbish on a beach (see topic 4.7 on page 112).

Because every coastal landscape is different, each change requires its own response. Geographers and scientists must consider conditions at the local scale to address change effectively. What works in one place may not work in another.

training walls
walls, banks, or jetties built to confine and direct the flow of a river or tide

Source 9 Many coastal communities have built sea walls to protect homes and roads from eroding waves.

Source 10 Other coastal communities use walls, known as **training walls**, to keep river mouths clear of sand that is moving along the coast.

CASE STUDY

Managing ghost nets

GhostNets Australia is an organisation dedicated to removing ghost nets from the waters and beaches of northern Australia. Formed in 2004, it is an alliance of 31 different coastal Aboriginal communities from Queensland, the Northern Territory and Western Australia. Since GhostNets Australia was formed, its rangers have retrieved about 14 000 nets from Australian waters. This represents more 100 kilometres of netting, retrieved from over 3000 kilometres of coastline. As well as removing the nets, these rangers free trapped wildlife, map the location of the nets using GPS systems, and try to identify the origin of the nets using resources supplied by the World Wildlife Fund.

Collecting spatial information

One of the biggest problems in removing ghost nets is locating them in millions of square kilometres of open ocean and thousands of kilometres of coastline. Scientists are working on several tools that will help in this fight.

One of these tools is a small, inexpensive tracking device that fishers can attach to their nets so they can be located if they are discarded. The devices can also be placed onto nets found by fishers at sea, who may find it difficult to bring the nets onto their boats.

There are several global databases that monitor these tracking devices. They can then send location information to organisations such as GhostNets Australia, which can retrieve them.

Source 11 Wik and Kugu rangers removing a ghost net from the shore at western Cape York

Source 12 The Ghost Gear Reporter App lets anyone with a smartphone record and report the location of abandoned fishing gear.

4.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two natural processes that cause coastal landscapes to change.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** how coastal communities respond to wave erosion.

3 **Describe** one method the community has used to respond to an environmental problem in the following sources:

- a Source 1 in the opening of this chapter (pages 94 to 95).
- b Source 12 in Skills in Context task 4A (page 106).

4 Look at Sources 9 and 10. Each of these communities has built walls to protect its coastline; however, each community is facing a different problem. **Explain** how each of these problems is different.

5 **Explain** how spatial technology allows rangers to find the absolute location of ghost nets, and why this is important.

Apply

6 Install the Ghost Gear Reporter app on your phone or smart device. In a short paragraph, **summarise** the type of information that the app collects.

7 Using Google Earth, locate one coastal community in your state.

- a Record the absolute location (that is, latitude and longitude).
- b Identify at least one structure that has been built in response to coastal erosion or deposition.

Analyse the strengths and weaknesses of the structure you identified in part b.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on managing coastal landscapes

4B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Photo for sketching
A vertical aerial photograph of Hampton Beach

Tweed Heads sand bypassing

Tweed Heads is located on the border of New South Wales and Queensland. It is home to the Tweed River, where coastal management can be seen in action at the mouth of the river.

Over centuries, northward sand movement has caused the mouth of the Tweed River to be clogged with sand, and a large dangerous sandbar to form. In order to address this problem, large walls were built to trap the sand. While this largely solved the problem of sand building up, it caused a different problem. The sand that had been trapped by the walls was now no longer able to flow through the river and nourish the beaches of southern Queensland, including tourist beaches on the Gold Coast.

To solve this problem, sand is now pumped from a sand-collection jetty on the south side of the river. From there, it is transported through a system of pipes across the headland to the northern beaches. The system is designed to mimic the natural movement of sand along the coast. When there is a large volume of sand moving, more pumps automatically switch on to move it. The strategy of sand pumping has proven to be effective at keeping sand from clogging up the river mouth, while still supplying sand to the beaches north of the river.

Source 13 A vertical aerial photograph of Tweed Heads in 2021

KEY SKILL Questioning & researching

Drawing sketch maps

Sketch maps show the main features of the landscape that you are studying, but do not contain the details you would be expected to include on a formal map.

The steps listed here are for a sketch map that you would complete as part of your fieldwork. While conducting fieldwork, you will probably start with a basic outline map of the main features of the location you are studying, such as a coastline, as shown in Source 14.

Step 1 Look closely at the outline map you have been given to see if you can recognise some of the features around you. Orient your map by turning it around so that it is facing the right way.

Step 2 Decide on the focus of your fieldwork. If you are studying the ways that people have managed a coastal landscape, you will mark on your map features such as training walls and a sand collection jetty.

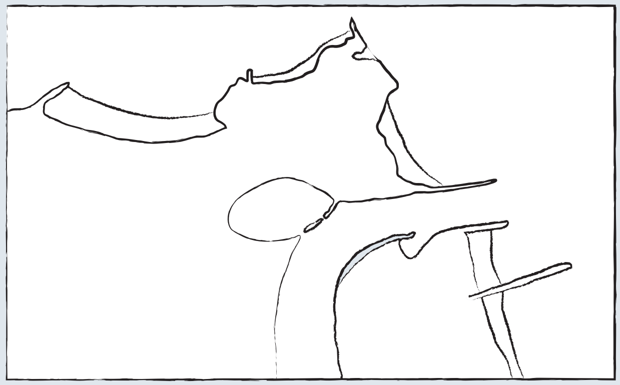
Step 3 Label the features that you recognise. Keep your writing neat and level across the page.

Step 4 Look around the area you are studying in your fieldwork and find other examples of ways that people have managed the coast. Locate and label these on your sketch map. You may find it best to shade large areas, such as training walls, and to add a legend to explain the shading and any other symbols you use.

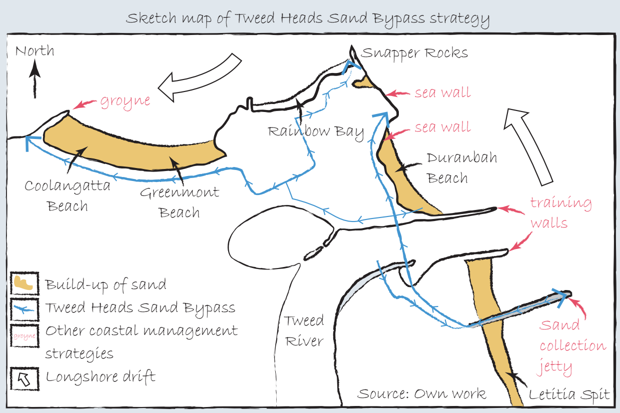
Step 5 Add carefully labelled arrows to show examples of movement. For example, in the sketch map of the Tweed Heads Sand Bypass strategy (Source 15), arrows show the direction in which sand is moving. Other examples may include the movement of people, cars and water.

Step 6 Add any examples you can find of change over time. A build-up of sand on one side of a groyne (a barrier built into the water from a beach to prevent erosion), for example, shows that sand is moving along a beach. A collapsed stack or a pile of rocks at the base of a cliff is evidence of erosion.

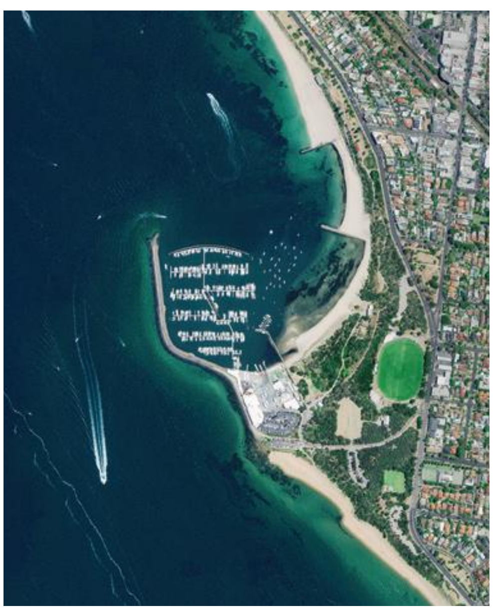
Step 7 Add a title that includes the date, and a north arrow. (You may need to use a compass or an app.)



Source 14 An outline map of the Tweed Heads region.



Source 15 A completed sketch map of the Tweed Heads Sand Bypass strategy



Source 16 A vertical aerial photograph of Hampton Beach, Port Phillip Bay, 2021

Practise the skill

1. **Create** a sketch map of the area shown in Source 16 (a larger version is available on your obook pro), or another coastline. Remember to use all BOLTSS features. On your sketch map, show how people have managed this coast.

Extend your understanding

1. **Explain** why training walls were built at the mouth of the Tweed River.
2. What effect did the training walls have on the beaches north of the river?
3. **Identify** the coastal process that the training walls and groynes were designed to manage.
4. How successful has the Tweed Heads Sand Bypass strategy been? Use some evidence from the vertical aerial photograph in Source 13 to support your answer.
5. **Identify** and **describe** two pieces of evidence in Source 13 that show sand is moving down the Tweed River.

4.9 Tsunamis

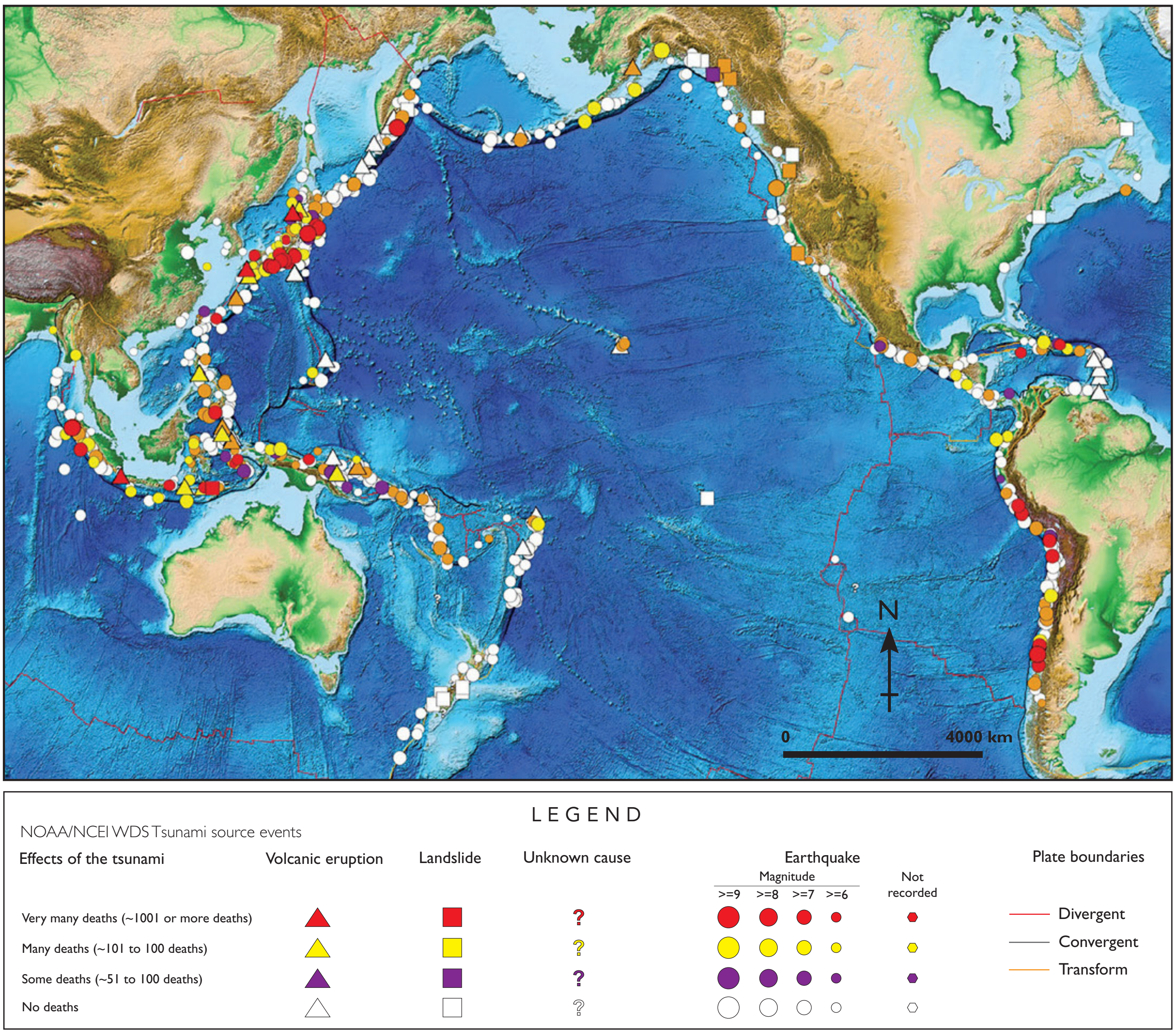
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

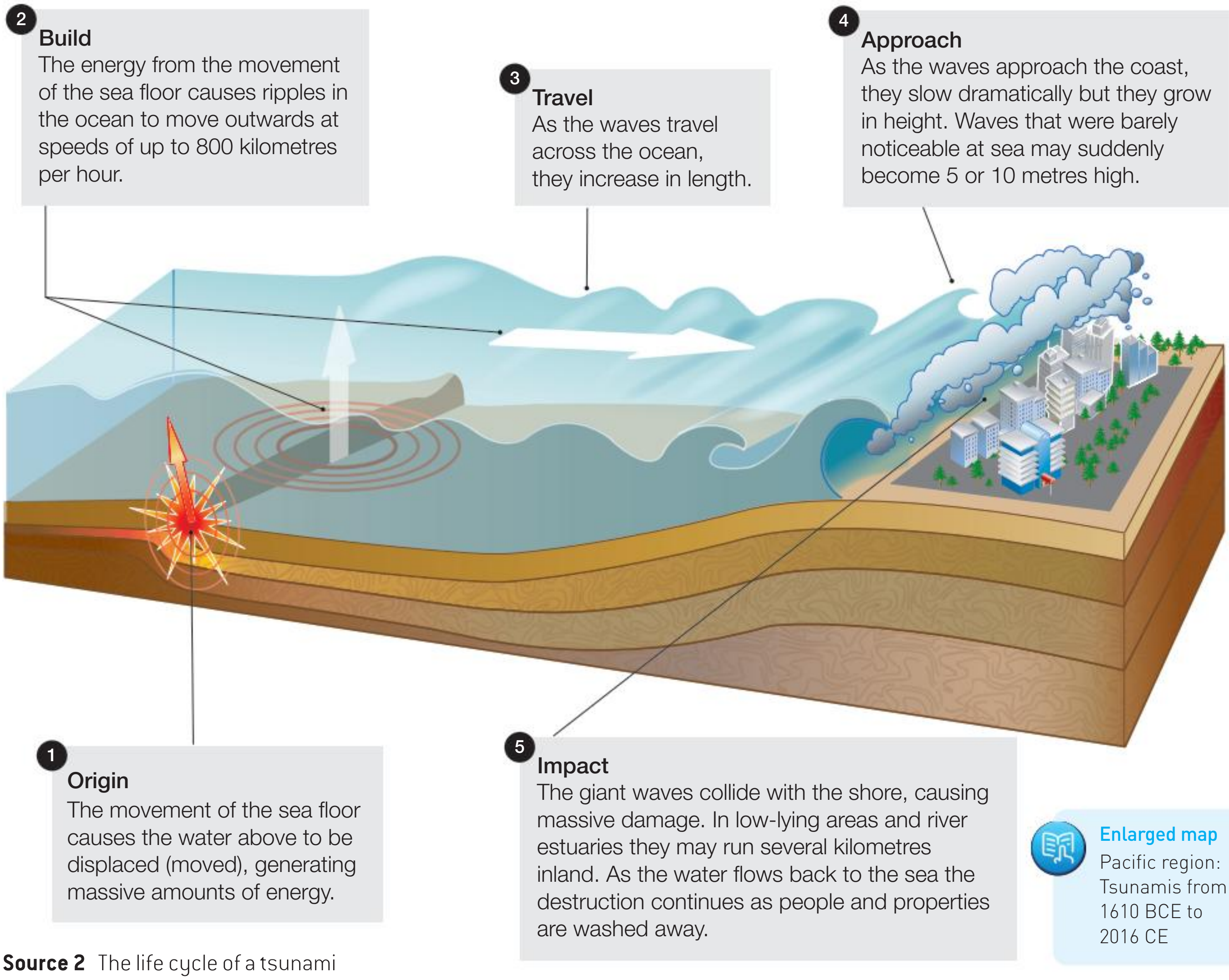
» summarise the causes and impacts of tsunamis.

Giant waves called tsunamis (a Japanese word meaning 'harbour wave') are perhaps the most terrifying coastal hazard. A tsunami is created when natural events move a huge amount of water in a short period of time. The largest and most common tsunamis are created when the sea floor moves upwards during an earthquake. This causes a series of high, very broad waves to be generated. Other events that can cause tsunamis include underwater volcanic eruptions and landslides. Smaller tsunamis can be created when a large landslide reaches the sea or when large sheets of ice break off glaciers.

PACIFIC REGION: TSUNAMIS FROM 1610 BCE TO 2016 CE, SHOWING THEIR ORIGIN AND IMPACT



Source 1 Source: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/National Centers for Environmental Information World Data Service



Source 2 The life cycle of a tsunami

Enlarged map
Pacific region: Tsunamis from 1610 BCE to 2016 CE

Where do tsunamis occur?

Geographers have noticed that some coastal areas are much more at risk from tsunamis than others. By comparing the spatial distribution of tectonic plate boundaries, earthquakes and tsunamis, they found that coastal areas facing a region where undersea earthquakes occur are most at risk from tsunamis. Japan is the world's most tsunami-prone country, as its east coast lies within 100 kilometres of a very active plate boundary.

Most of the world's most destructive tsunamis have occurred on the margin of the Pacific Plate (see Source 2 in topic 3.1 on page 57). As other plates push against the Pacific Plate or slide beside it, they trigger earthquakes that are often the source of tsunamis. This region is also associated with volcanic eruptions and has therefore earned the nickname of the 'ring of fire'. Other active regions include the margins of the Caribbean Plate and the islands of Indonesia.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 7 of 'The geography toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Space

Source 3 A tsunami warning buoy

Japan earthquake and tsunami (2011)

epicentre
the place on the Earth's surface directly above where an earthquake occurs

On 11 March 2011, one of the largest earthquakes ever recorded sent massive tsunami waves racing towards Japan and eastward across the Pacific Ocean. Within an hour, tsunami waves up to 7 metres high reached Japan's east coast and caused immediate devastation.

Source 4 A view from a helicopter of the town of Minamisanriku, moments after the tsunami receded

The waves in some places pushed several kilometres inland. The water washed away buildings, cars, roads and people.

The damage was the worst in areas closest to the **epicentre** of the earthquake; in these areas entire towns were destroyed or entirely washed away. The movement of the tsunami waves was strongly influenced by the shape of the land, as the water tended to be funnelled into estuaries and bays. In one location, researchers found fishing equipment that had been carried 30 metres up a cliff face, making these waves among the highest ever recorded in Japan.

Nuclear reactors at the Fukushima Daiichi Power Plant were damaged, releasing high levels of radiation into the atmosphere. In response to the disaster, all people living within 20 kilometres of the damaged power plant were ordered to evacuate their homes.

An estimated 20 000 people were killed in this double disaster, and half a million people lost their homes.

4.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 a **Identify** the most common cause of a tsunami.
  b **Identify** two other causes of tsunamis.

2 Why does Japan experience so many tsunamis?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the 2011 Japanese event is referred to as a 'double disaster'.

4 Look closely at Source 1.
  a Using the political map at the back of your book, list the countries in the Pacific region that have experienced tsunamis resulting in 'very many deaths'.
  b **Explain** how the legend of this map tells you how the tsunamis shown were caused.
  c Use the legend to decide what causes the most tsunamis: earthquakes, volcanoes or landslides. Explain your working out.
  d **Explain** the relationship between plate boundaries and tsunamis.

5 **Describe** the scene in Source 4 as if you were a news reporter in the helicopter.

Apply

6 a In small groups, **propose** three strategies that people could use to prepare for a tsunami.
  b **Evaluate** each of your strategies by thinking carefully about their strengths and weaknesses.
  c Share your ideas with the class.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on tsunamis

4.10 Indian Ocean earthquake and tsunami (2004)

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the environmental, economic and social impacts of experiencing a tsunami at a local scale.

On Boxing Day 2004, a natural disaster of epic scale and force struck many of the countries surrounding the Indian Ocean. A massive earthquake, the largest recorded in 40 years, set off a huge landslide on an undersea mountain range near the southern coast of the Indonesian island of Sumatra. The landslide pushed water upwards and sideways, starting a tsunami. The waves – some up to 30 metres high and travelling at 800 kilometres per hour – slammed into the coast of Indonesia, flooding towns and villages such as Banda Aceh, which were already in ruins from the earthquake.

The tsunami then travelled across the Indian Ocean, sending huge amounts of water inland with tremendous force wherever it encountered low-lying coastal areas. Indonesia, Sri Lanka, India, Thailand and Burma were most affected, but deaths were recorded as far away as Somalia, Tanzania and even South Africa. By the time the tsunami had run its course, much of coastal Asia lay in ruins.

More than 280 000 lives were lost in the disaster, making it the world's deadliest tsunami on record. Twenty-six Australians were killed, most of whom were holidaying in Thailand.

Many of the towns, cities and tourist resorts have now been rebuilt, but the risk of another tsunami is always present.

Source 5 The Indonesian city of Banda Aceh was closest to the centre of the earthquake. Around 60 per cent of the city's buildings were destroyed.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Analysing change using satellite images

By examining satellite images closely, you can describe changes that have occurred over time and suggest explanations for these changes.

When studying the same area at two different times, find a key feature as a reference point on both sources. In Sources 6 and 7, the road in the bottom right-hand corner of each image is a feature that we can examine to see how the landscape has changed.

Practise the skill

Step 1 List the differences between Source 6 (before the tsunami) and Source 7 (after the tsunami).

Step 2 Find three key features in Source 6.

Step 3 Describe how these have changed after the tsunami in Source 7.

Step 4 In a carefully worded paragraph, analyse the change that occurred during this tsunami by:

- stating when and where the tsunami took place
- identifying the cause of the tsunami
- describing the effects of the tsunami, using evidence from the images in Sources 6 and 7
- suggesting one extra piece of evidence (that you cannot see in these images) that could be helpful for understanding how this tsunami changed the landscape.

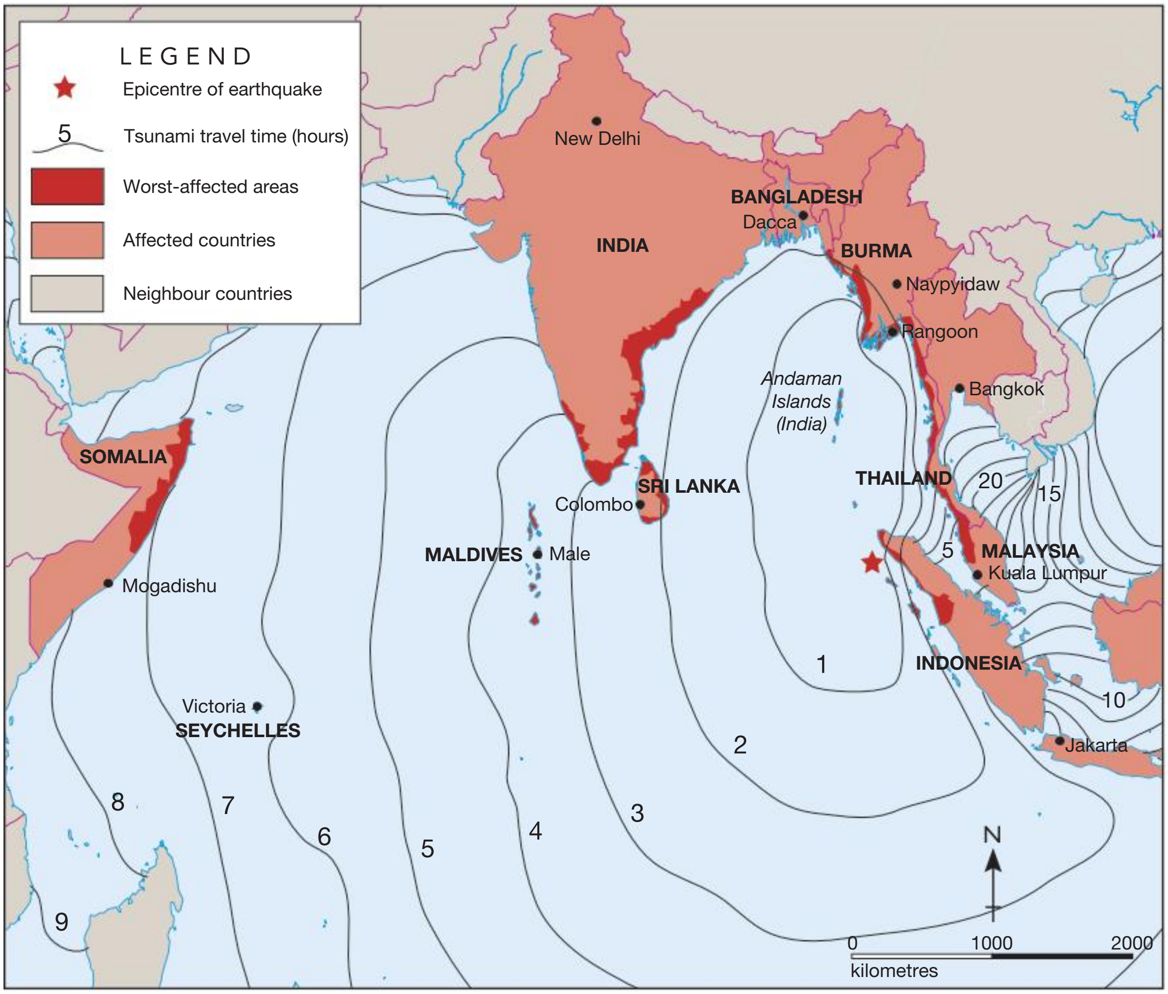
For more information on this skill, see page 21 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Map it!
The 2004 Tsunami

Source 6 Banda Aceh, Indonesia, before the tsunami struck: 23 June 2004

Source 7 Banda Aceh, Indonesia, after the tsunami struck: 28 December 2004

THE 2004 TSUNAMI



Source 8

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
The 2004 tsunami

4.10 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 What triggered the 2004 tsunami?

2 **Summarise** why the Indonesian city of Banda Aceh was the most severely impacted by the tsunami.

3 Use Source 5 to **describe** the impacts of the tsunami on Banda Aceh in your own words.

Analyse

4 Although the tsunami began in Indonesia, countries as far away as Somalia in Africa and Sri Lanka were severely impacted. Why do you think this was the case?

5 **Examine** Source 8.

a Using the scale, measure the distance between the earthquake epicentre and Mogadishu.

b Identify how long it took the tsunami waves to cross the Indian Ocean.

c Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the pattern of affected areas of the 2004 tsunami. Make sure you use the correct sentence starters.

Apply

6 Sketch the outline of the Banda Aceh coast as shown in Source 6. On your sketch, label five changes caused by the 2004 tsunami.

7 Design a tsunami warning sign to be placed on beaches in Thailand, Indonesia and Sri Lanka. Because locals and tourists speak many different languages your sign needs to communicate its warning in pictures only.

4C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Twelve Apostles

Victoria's south-western coastline is under constant attack from the water. Large, destructive waves from the Southern Ocean are eroding the soft limestone. Softer rocks are being eroded more quickly, while harder rocks are withstanding the attack a little longer. These harder rocks remain as stacks, arches and headlands, producing one of the world's most spectacular coasts.

More than 1 million visitors a year are drawn to the Port Campbell coast, many of whom are secondary school students who come to see and study coastal erosion in action.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Creating a field sketch

Field sketching is an important skill for all geographers. It is used to show the different geographic features of a landscape in a simple visual form. Being able to sketch the features of an environment is useful, as it can provide the geographer with a visual record of their observations while in the field. Outlines, shading and annotations and labels are used by the geographer to capture all relevant details of the environment being observed in their sketch.

For example, imagine that you are standing on the viewing platform looking at the Twelve Apostles while on a geography field trip. You have been asked to complete a field sketch with a focus on the ways in which this coast is changing. Sources 10 to 12 demonstrate how to build up a field sketch.

Follow these steps to complete a field sketch.

Step 1 Establish the boundaries of your landscape and draw a border of the correct shape.

Step 2 With a pencil, lightly sketch the main landscape lines. If there is a horizon in the scene, put this about one-third from the top of the frame.

Step 3 Keeping in mind the features that you want to focus on, add detail to your sketch.

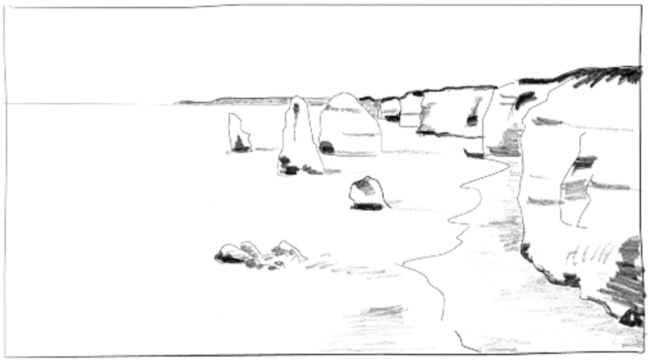
Step 4 Add shading. Shading helps to establish depth in your sketch and helps to show the shape of objects.

Step 5 Add some colour if you wish. Do not try to copy every subtle colour of nature; just give a hint of the right colour. Label those parts of the scene that you consider most important.

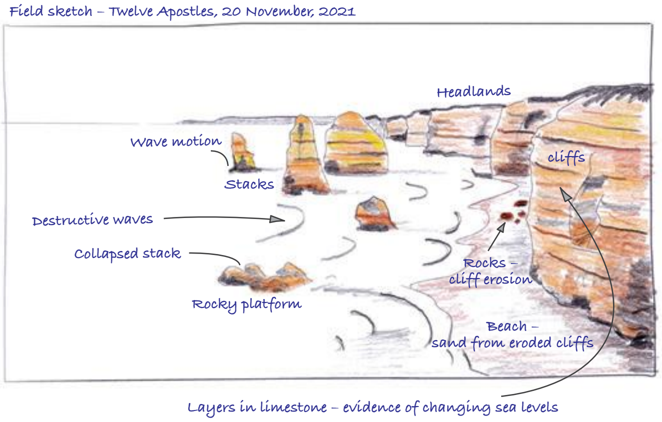
Step 6 Label your sketch with the location and date.

Source 9 The Twelve Apostles, seen from the visitors' viewing platform.

Source 10 Steps 1–2 in completing a field sketch of the Twelve Apostles



Source 11 Steps 3–4 in completing a field sketch of the Twelve Apostles



Source 12 Steps 5–6 in completing a field sketch of the Twelve Apostles

Practise the skill

1. Complete a field sketch of the Wollongong coast, using Source 1 in the opening of this chapter. On your sketch, label the following features:
   - beach
   - headland
   - marina
   - wave-cut platform
   - destructive waves
   - groyne.

   Use arrows to show the likely direction of longshore drift.

Extend your understanding

1. What evidence is there in Source 9 that this coast is changing over time? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.
2. **Describe** the natural forces that are bringing about these changes.
3. **Distinguish** between this and the coastal landscape shown in Source 1 in the opening of this chapter. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.
4. **Explain** why you think these differences occur.
5. **Propose** two management strategies that could protect this coastline. Remember that there are a number of factors that impact on natural environments, including erosion, deposition and human activities.
6. **Predict** which natural hazards might occur if the coastline in this task sat along a tectonic plate boundary.

4 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Stockton Beach

Stockton Beach is located at the mouth of the Hunter River in New South Wales. Across the river lies the large city of Newcastle. Boats entering the port of Newcastle pass Stockton Beach. It has long been renowned as a holiday destination and is home to the Stockton Dunes, an area of large sand dunes loved by four-wheel drivers, quad bikers and campers. In recent years, however, Stockton Beach is being washed away. A childcare centre was demolished before it fell into the sea. Now, roads, homes, a caravan park, a surf lifesaving club and a football oval are all under threat.

1 **Identify** the type of landform shown in Source 13. (1 mark)

2 What is the likely direction of longshore drift on Stockton Beach? (1 mark)

3 Is this a constructive or destructive beach landscape? Give two reasons for your answer. (3 marks)

4 **Examine** Source 13.
 a Identify two structures that have been built to change natural coastal processes. (2 marks)
 b Describe what these structures are designed to do. (2 marks)
 c Predict whether these structures may have contributed to the problem of coastal erosion. (3 marks)

5 As well as impacting the coastline, the increased erosion of Stockton Beach has impacted the community. **Propose** one strategy that the community could use to slow or stop the erosion in this area. In your response:
 - Identify two ways the economy is impacted by erosion.
 - Describe how your strategy will address the erosion of the dunes.
 - Think carefully about your strategy. Identify one strength and one weakness of putting it into place. (8 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 13 Stockton Beach

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain the geomorphological processes that produce coastal landscapes and landforms.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.1, page 96.
Describe the process of erosion, and explain how it creates coastal landforms.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.2, page 100.
Describe the process of deposition, and explain how it creates coastal landforms.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.3, page 102.
Identify and describe the features of a distinctive Australian landscape compared to a distinctive landscape in another country.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.4, page 104.
Identify and describe the many ways that humans use coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.5, page 108.
Explain the effects of exporting natural gas on coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.6, page 110.
Describe the impacts of pollution on coastal landscapes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.7, page 112.
Identify methods used to manage coastal landscapes, including the contribution of First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.8, page 114.
Summarise the causes and impacts of tsunamis.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.9, page 118.
Explain the environmental, economic and social impacts of experiencing a tsunami at a local scale.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 4.10, page 121.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 4

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 4

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Coastal landscapes.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 4

CHAPTER 5

Urban life

One of the greatest changes to the way in which people live has been the growth of the world's cities. There are now more people living in urban areas (cities) than living in rural areas (the countryside). This is due to a number of significant discoveries and developments in farming that have made it possible for people to live away from where their food is grown. As cities have grown, many people have moved out of a life of rural poverty and into one of urban prosperity.

Australia is one of the most urbanised countries in the world. In fact, around 90 per cent of all Australians live in cities. In this chapter, we will look at some of the reasons why people in Australia and around the world choose to live in urban areas. We will also look at how we can better manage and plan our cities into the future.

Source 1 There has never been a city as big as Tokyo. Its population has grown to more than 37 million, but this is now thought to be declining along with the overall population of Japan. One hundred years ago the world's largest city was London, with 7 million residents. One thousand years ago it was Kaifeng, an ancient capital of China, with a population of around 700 000.

Changing nations

5A
Why do people live in cities?

5B
Where do people in different countries live?

5C
How can we plan for and manage Australia’s future?

5.1 The urban explosion

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» define urbanisation

» identify the causes of urbanisation.

It is almost impossible to imagine the world today without huge cities. However, up until around 250 years ago, most people lived in small family groups or rural communities. There, they farmed land and raised animals to meet their own needs. Of course, there were large cities in ancient times, such as Rome and Athens, but these were the exception rather than the rule.

This all changed with the arrival of the **industrial age**. New, improved farming methods and machinery meant that fewer people were needed to grow and produce larger amounts of food. In the cities, new inventions created jobs for many people.

Less work in rural areas caused people to flood into cities looking for work. This trend quickly changed the economies of many countries, and cities became centres of industry and business. The social and economic change brought about by the increase in urban populations is known as urbanisation (see pages 135 to 136 for more on urbanisation).

Cities around the world have grown rapidly in the last 60 years. In 1960, the world's population was around 3 billion and only one-third of these people lived in cities. Today, there are close to 8 billion people on Earth and more than half of them live in cities. While many of these cities have populations under 1 million, there has been an explosion in the number and size of the world's very large cities. Cities with a population greater than 10 million are called megacities.

Geographers refer to the rapid growth of the world's cities in the last 20 years as an urban explosion.

industrial age
a period of history that began around 1760; it saw huge social and economic changes in society due to the widespread use of machinery, factories and automatic labour

infrastructure
the facilities and services necessary for any community, city or country to function

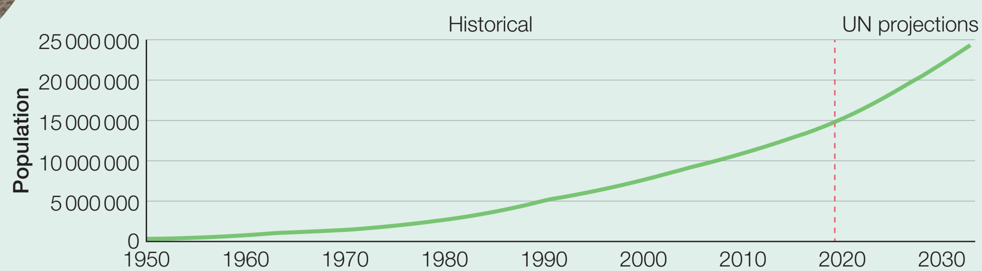
CASE STUDY

Lagos, Nigeria

In 1960, fewer than 200 000 people lived in Lagos, Nigeria. This is about the size of Townsville today. The **infrastructure** of the city reflected its small population. For example, there were few paved roads and hardly any buildings over six storeys high. In just 60 years, Lagos has become a megacity with more than 13 million inhabitants.

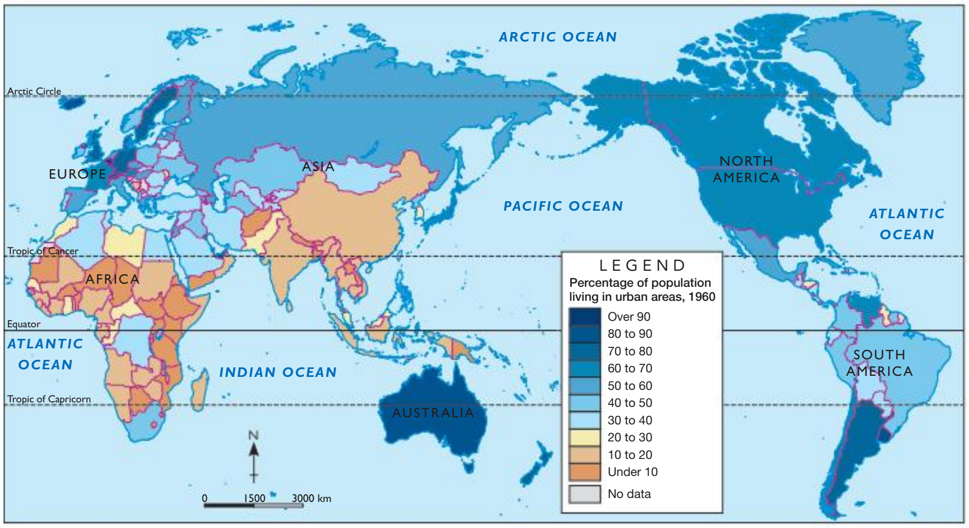
People from the countryside have flooded into Lagos seeking a better life. For many of these new arrivals, life in their new city is tough. The population boomed so quickly that the infrastructure of the city could not keep up. Most people live in slums, where very few homes are connected to basic services such as water, sanitation and electricity.

Source 1 Makako was once a small fishing village on a lagoon. It has now been swallowed by the population explosion of Lagos and is a slum, home to hundreds of thousands of people.



Source 2 The growth of population of Lagos, 1960–2030

PERCENTAGE OF THE WORLD'S POPULATION LIVING IN URBAN AREAS IN 1960

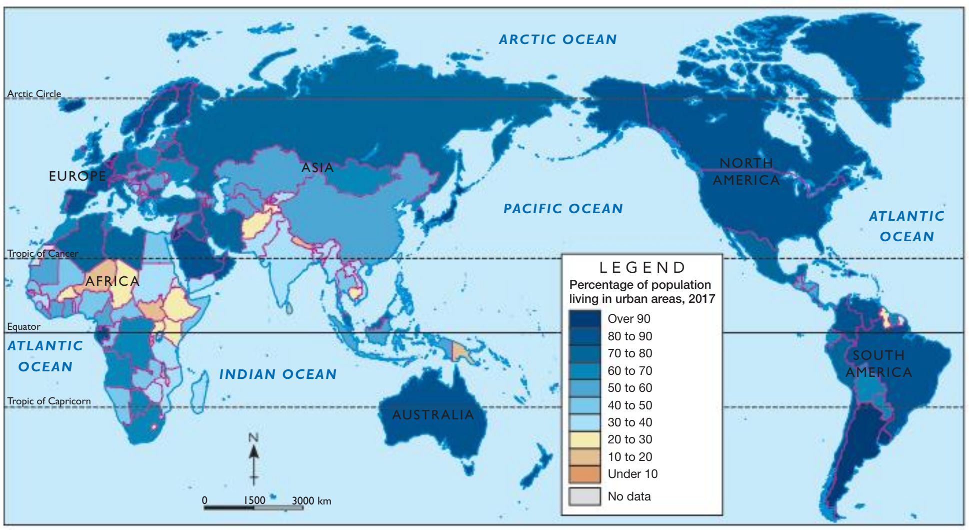


Source 3

Source: Oxford University Press/Our World in Data

Map it!
Percentage of the world's population living in urban areas

PERCENTAGE OF THE WORLD'S POPULATION LIVING IN URBAN AREAS IN 2017



Source 4

Source: Oxford University Press/Our World in Data

Key skill worksheet
Interpreting & analysing: Using maps to describe change

5.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the following terms:
- urbanisation
- megacity
- infrastructure.

2 What has happened to the world's cities in the past 60 years?

Analyse

3 **Examine** Sources 3 and 4.

a Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the distribution of countries that have more than 60 per cent of their population in urban areas in 2017.

b How does this compare to the distribution of countries that have more than 60 per cent of their population in urban areas in 1960?

4 Using data from Source 2, **describe** the growth of the population of Lagos.

Apply

5 Imagine that you visited Makako in 1960, and again in 2020. In a short paragraph, describe the differences you would see between your two visits. Include observations about how the buildings and people have changed.

5.2 The rise of the megacity

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the characteristics of megacities across the world

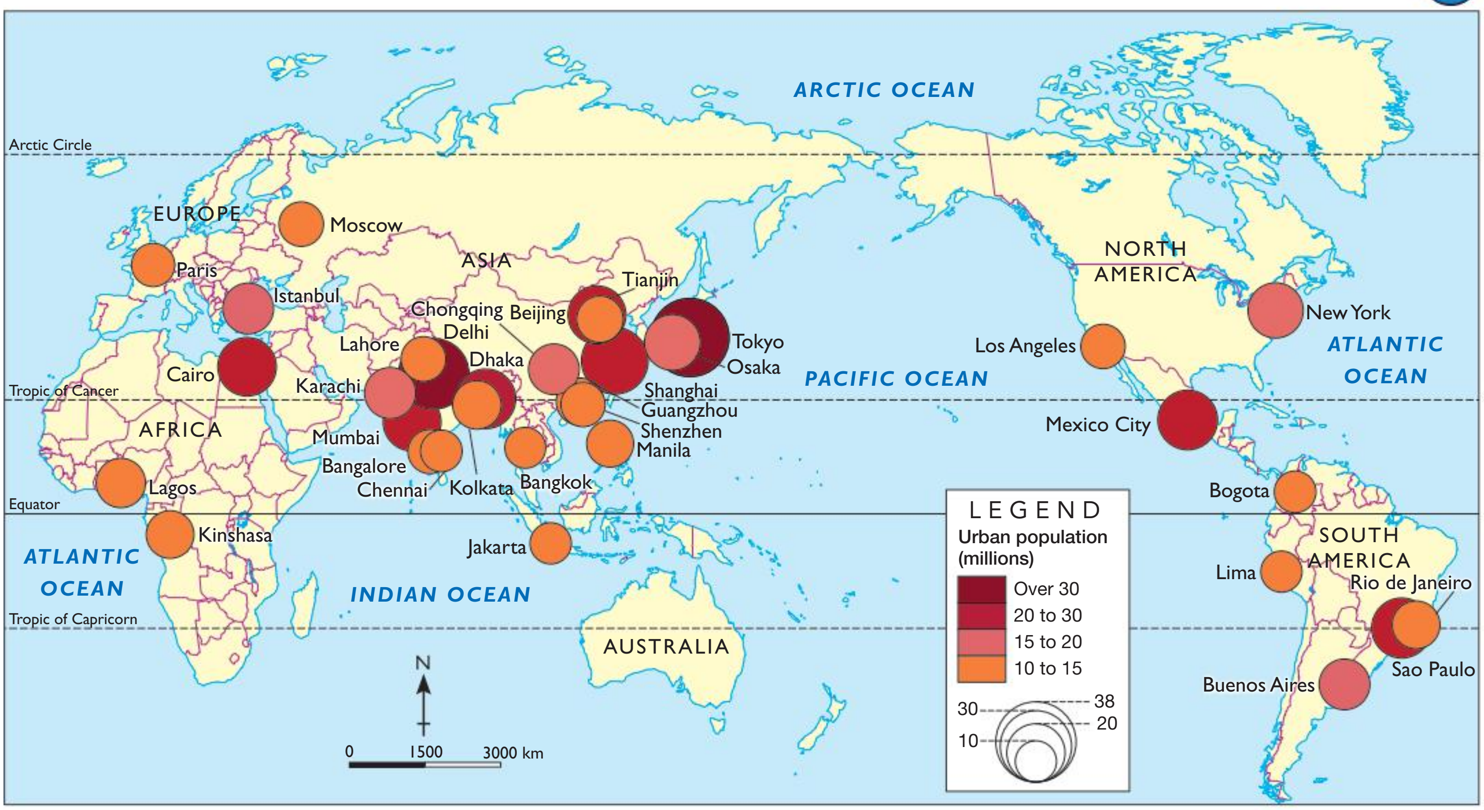
» distinguish between large cities and megacities.

A century ago, only about 15 in every 100 people lived in cities. Today, that number is more than 50 in every 100. This increase has resulted in the creation and growth of many cities worldwide, and an explosion in the number of very large cities, known as megacities.

In addition to the increase in the number of megacities over the past century, there has been a change in where these cities are found. No longer do the megacities of Europe and North America dominate – instead, the megacities of Asia, South America and Africa are becoming the world's largest.

Four of the world's megacities are explored briefly in this topic. Although they are in different parts of the world and have many unique characteristics, they also face a lot of the same challenges and have more in common than you might first think.

WORLD: MEGACITIES

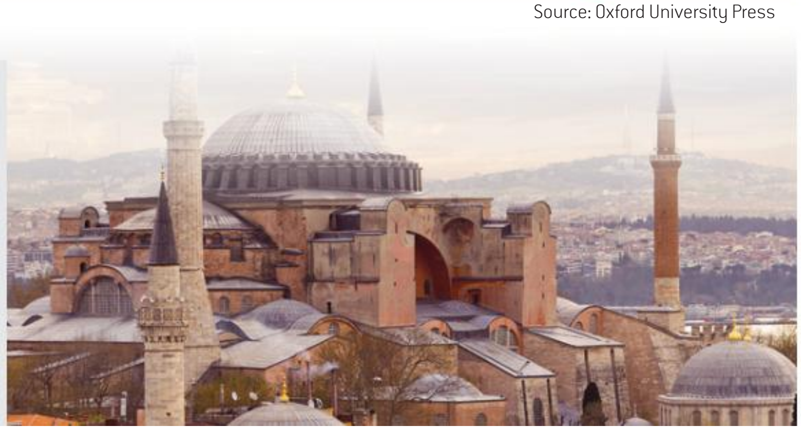


Source: Oxford University Press

Source 5

ISTANBUL: THE MEGACITY OF TWO CONTINENTS

One part of Istanbul lies in Europe and one part lies in Asia, making it the only city in the world to straddle two continents. It has been one of the most important cities in history, as it lies on a crossroads of these two continents. Istanbul has experienced rapid population growth since the mid-twentieth century, when it had fewer than 1 million residents. Largely driven by internal migration, it is now home to more than 15 million people.



Source 6 Istanbul

DELHI: THE WORLD'S FASTEST-GROWING MEGACITY

The population of Delhi has doubled in size this century. It has swelled by an average of 730 000 people a year for the past 20 years – that is an extra 83 people each hour! At this rate, Delhi will become the world's largest city by 2030, when it is predicted to be home to almost 39 million people. Its fertile soils and water, supplied from two rivers, make this is a suitable location for a city. Its rapid growth, however, has led to many issues, particularly air pollution, poor waste disposal and a public transport system struggling to cope with the demands of the population.

Source 7 Delhi

LIMA: THE NEWEST MEGACITY

It is difficult to know exactly when a rapidly growing city reaches a milestone, but geographers believe Lima's population passed the 10 million mark in about 2018. Lima sprawls from the Pacific coast to the Andes Mountains. Despite being in a desert, it has a mild climate and a supply of water from the River Rimac. However, rapid population growth has put this important resource under pressure, and many slum areas on the city's fringe now lack good access to safe water.

Source 9 Lima

NEW YORK: THE FIRST MEGACITY

In 1950, New York was the world's largest city and its only megacity. New York's outward growth has seen it take over many other cities on its fringes, making the region one of the world's largest cities in terms of land area. New York's location made it the first place to land for waves of migrants arriving in the United States from Europe for hundreds of years. Living in a city in a developed country, New Yorkers do not suffer the same levels of poverty and pollution as those living in other countries. In a recent survey, they listed the cost of living, availability of housing and crime rate as three issues they face.

Source 8 New York

5.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the number of megacities in the world.

2 **Identify** how many megacities there are in each of these continents: Asia, South America and Africa.

Comprehend

3 Look closely at Source 5. Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), **describe** the distribution of megacities throughout the world.

4 a **Summarise** three problems faced by people living in megacities.

b Which of these problems will become worse as the megacities grow?

Apply

5 Select one of the megacities shown on the map in Source 5 that has not been described in this topic. Using the internet, **investigate** this city. Find out about its location, history and any issues faced by the people who live there. Write a paragraph about this city, similar to those shown here. Include a picture.

5.3 Urbanisation in Indonesia

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the connection between urbanisation and economic and social opportunities

» understand how push-pull forces contribute to internal migration.

As we have seen, in the past few decades, there has been an increase in the amount of the world's population living in cities. This change, along with its causes and consequences, is referred to as urbanisation. Changes in Indonesia's population have closely mirrored this global trend of city living (see Source 11). In the 1950s, only 15 per cent of Indonesians lived in urban areas, but by 1990, this proportion had doubled to 30 per cent. Today, more than half of Indonesia's residents live in cities and many of these cities (such as Jakarta) are struggling to cope with this rapid growth.

Causes of urbanisation

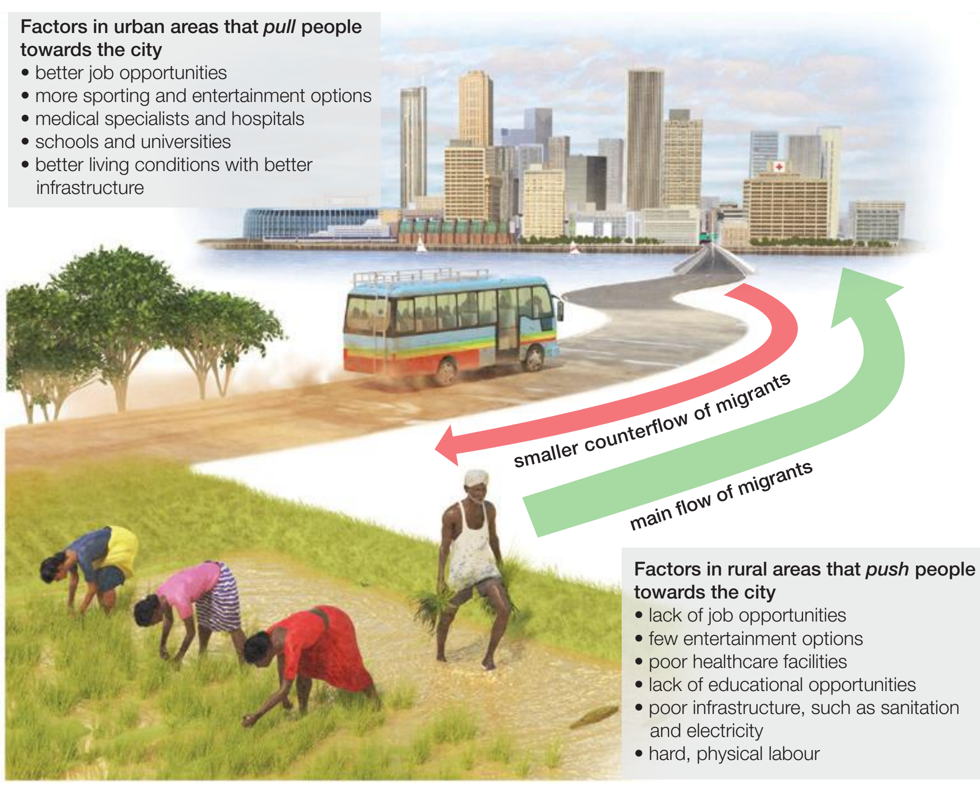
migration
movement of people to a new country or area

Watch it!
A video and quiz on push and pull factors

The main cause of urbanisation in Indonesia is the movement, or **migration**, of people from rural to urban areas. This is typical of the situation in many developing countries. To better understand this flow of people, a US geographer named Everett Lee developed a model of migration (see Source 10). He explained that there are both positive and negative factors of the place each migrant comes from (the origin) and the place each migrant is going to (the destination). Lee named the negative factors 'push factors', as they tend to push people away from a certain place. By contrast, he named the positive factors 'pull factors', as they tend to pull people towards a certain place.

Generally, every migrant believes that the place they are going to is better than the place they are leaving. However, not everyone who believes that better opportunities exist elsewhere will move; they may see certain obstacles to moving, such as family ties and moving costs. Furthermore, some migrants find that the new place does not give them everything they hoped for and so they return to where they came from. This is called counter-migration.

Source 10 Lee's migration model

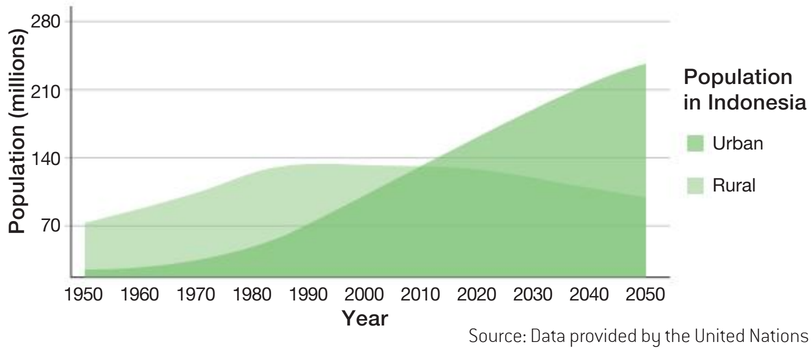


Consequences of urbanisation in Indonesia

Urbanisation in Indonesia's cities has led to many issues, including the following:

- *Inequalities between the rich and poor* – many of the rural migrants who settle in Indonesia's growing cities have trouble finding secure employment or housing. Indonesia is now the country with the sixth greatest **wealth inequality** in the world.
- *Strains on infrastructure* – public transportation, roads, water, sanitation and electricity networks are all under strain from the rapid influx of people to the cities. For example, the commute from Bekasi, a city less than 20 kilometres from Jakarta, takes around three hours. There are 5.4 million commuters travelling throughout Jakarta each day.
- *Potential food insecurity* – with young people leaving rural areas seeking better job opportunities in the city, there are not enough workers on farms to plant and harvest crops. This may lead to lack of **food security** in the future, where the population could suffer from reduced access to food and nutrition.

Despite the challenges caused by urbanisation, it also has the potential to bring new prosperity to Indonesia. Other countries in Asia, including China, India and Thailand, have achieved economic growth and increased labour productivity as a result of urbanisation. With more workers in the cities, factories can operate more efficiently, producing more goods for **export** and growing the economy.



Source: Data provided by the United Nations

Source 11 Urban and rural population in Indonesia

wealth inequality
the unequal distribution of money and assets in a group of people

food security
a state where all people at all times have access to enough safe, nutritious food to sustain a healthy life

export
sending goods or services from one country to another for sale

5.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** 'urbanisation'.
2. In your own words, **define** 'migration'.
3. **Identify** three reasons why people move from rural areas to urban areas.

Analyse

4. **Distinguish** between 'push factors' and 'pull factors'. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.
5. Using the data in Source 11:
   a. **describe** the change in Indonesia's population between 1950 and today.
   b. **consider** whether this trend is expected to continue into the future, and give reasons for your answer.

Apply

6. **Investigate** one of the consequences of urbanisation in Indonesia listed in this topic. Write a short paragraph explaining how this is affecting the people of Indonesia today.
7. Interview a person who has moved home – either interstate or between countries. What were the push and pull factors that help explain why they moved?

Source 12 Surabaya is Indonesia's second-largest city and is one of Asia's most important trading ports. It has been a trading centre for almost 1000 years, and is an important financial, commercial and entertainment hub. It is also known for being one of the cleanest and greenest cities in Indonesia.

5.4 Jakarta: Our closest megacity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the effects of urban concentration in Indonesia.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Jakarta: Our closest megacity

Indonesia's capital is a vast, sprawling megacity called Jakarta. The official population of Jakarta is almost 11 million, but if all the adjoining cities and settlements are included, the true population is closer to 36 million.

Jakarta is a very old city, having begun as a trading settlement over 1500 years ago. As the capital of Indonesia, Jakarta plays an important role in uniting the 267 million people of the country, which is the fourth most populous country in the world. The city is also responsible for about one-fifth of the country's economic activity. Jakarta's residents have an average income four times greater than other Indonesians, and this is one key reason why people choose to move there from rural areas.

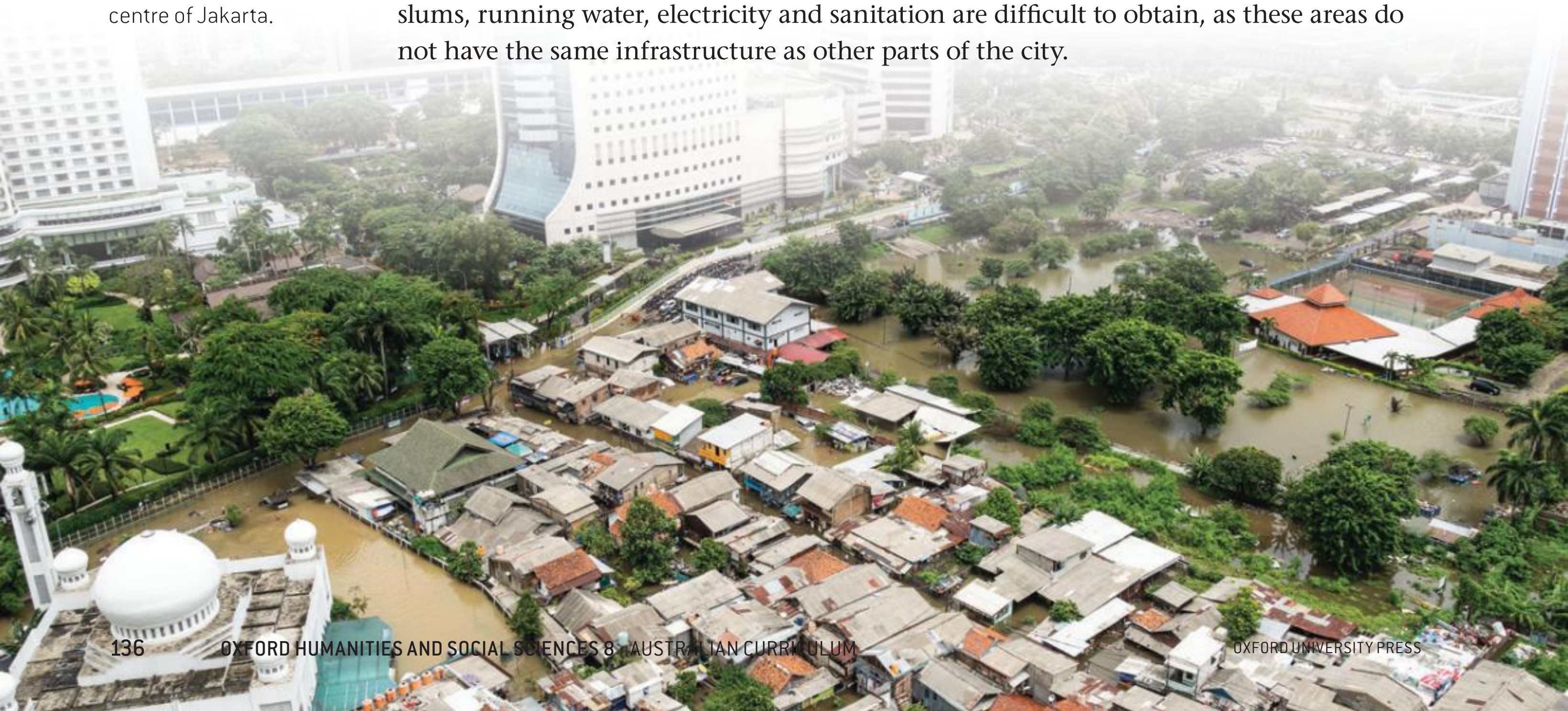
Geography of Jakarta

Jakarta is located on the north-western coast of the island of Java. South of the city, a range of volcanoes and hilly slopes feed a series of rivers that have built up a fertile floodplain leading to the Java Sea. There are 13 rivers that flow through Jakarta. The combination of the flat, low-lying plain and the tropical climate means that flooding is a frequent problem for the residents of Jakarta. Like most places in Indonesia, Jakarta is also at risk from earthquakes.

kampongs
an Indonesian word that means 'villages'; it is also used to refer to slum areas in cities

Housing in Jakarta

Like many other Asian megacities, Jakarta is a place of contrasts. Slums sit alongside skyscrapers, modern homes and luxury hotels. Half of the population of Jakarta lives in these slums, which are referred to as **kampongs**. The term means a small traditional village, but has also been used to describe urban slum areas. Houses in slums are often built from temporary materials on land considered unsuitable for regular housing. In the slums, running water, electricity and sanitation are difficult to obtain, as these areas do not have the same infrastructure as other parts of the city.



Source 13 A flooded kampong sits beside a mosque and new residential towers near the centre of Jakarta.

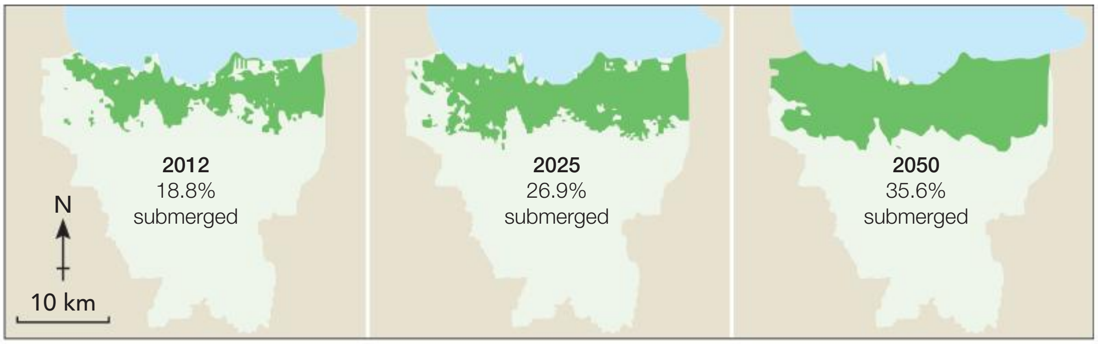
Issues in Jakarta

One of the biggest problems faced by the people of Jakarta is that the city is slowly sinking. This is because many homes – particularly those in the kampongs – do not have a steady water supply; and so to access fresh water, residents dig wells and take water from the **aquifer** that lies beneath the city. So much water has been taken out that the city is sinking – in some places, 10–20 centimetres per year.

As a result, floods are becoming more common. Almost half of Jakarta now sits below sea level. Heavy tropical rain swells the city's 13 rivers each year, bringing floods to the low-lying regions. In addition, rising sea levels are flooding parts of the city located on the coast of the Java Sea. Some experts predict that more than one-third of the city is at risk of being submerged by 2050 (see Source 14).

aquifer
layers of rock or soil in the ground that hold water or that water can pass through

AREAS OF JAKARTA AT RISK OF FLOODING AS SEA LEVELS RISE



Source: Oxford University Press/Bandung Institute of Technology

Source 14 Sinking Jakarta: more than a third of the Indonesian capital could be submerged by 2050, according to expert forecasts.

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Answering 'to what extent' questions

Photo for sketching
A flooded neighbourhood in Jakarta

Responding to floods

A range of solutions have been proposed to try to reduce the risk of flooding in Jakarta. Kampongs built on riverbeds have been cleared out so that rivers can drain more quickly, and new channels have been built to drain water to the sea. To protect against the rising sea levels, sea walls have been constructed along the coast. However, these have been difficult to maintain and many are leaking.

In 2019, the President of Indonesia announced plans for a new capital city to be built on the Indonesian island of Borneo (see Source 21 on page 142). It is hoped that this new city will take the pressure off Jakarta and allow the growth of the city to slow down.

5.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** one reason why people choose to live in Jakarta.
2 **Identify** one consequence of urbanisation in Jakarta.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** some of the natural features of Jakarta that have contributed to flooding.
4 **Explain** how human activities have contributed to flooding.

Apply

5 Use your field sketching skills (see Skills in Context task 4C on pages 124 to 125) to sketch Source 13. (A larger version is available on your obook pro.) Label the following features on your sketch: apartment towers, mosque, kampong, flooded area, parkland.
6 'Poor people are often the most vulnerable in cities, and are more impacted by disasters than wealthier people.'
To what extent do you agree with this statement – completely, somewhat or not at all? Use Source 13 to support your answer.

5.5 The advantages of living in cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the advantages of living in cities, including economic, social and environmental advantages.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the advantages of living in cities

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Reading a scatterplot

As the world becomes more urbanised, geographers have identified the advantages and disadvantages of city living. These can be roughly divided into three categories: economic, social and environmental.

Economic advantages

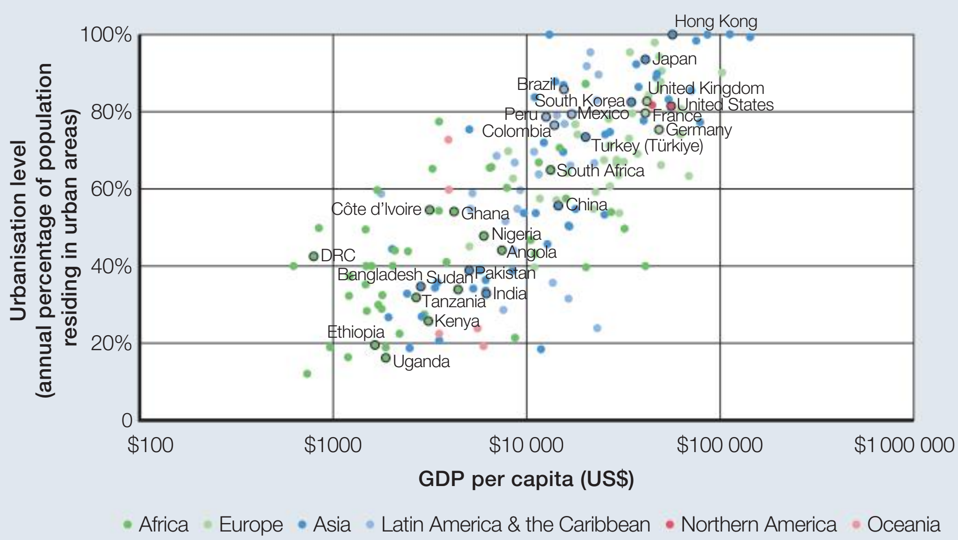
Most cities today have strong infrastructure to support the large number of people who live there. This includes piped water, sewerage, electricity, communications, health care, education and public transport.

Because cities are home to so many people, they are an obvious location for companies to base their businesses. Cities provide a ready supply of both workers and customers. For this reason, cities generate 70 per cent of the world's income, despite being home to only 55 per cent of its population. Three-quarters of all jobs in Australia are based in our major cities, and the income generated in those cities accounts for around 80 per cent of our total economy.

Reading a scatterplot

Scatterplots are useful tools for interpreting trends in data. Each point on a scatterplot has two coordinates: the *x* coordinate (on the horizontal axis) and the *y* coordinate (on the vertical axis). The point at which they intersect is represented by a dot. The closer the dots come to forming a straight line on the graph, the stronger the relationship is between the two variables.

The variables in Source 15 are the average income per person in selected countries (the horizontal axis) and the level of urbanisation in those countries (the vertical axis).



Source: Data from Urban Age

Source 15 Urbanisation and average income. The dots for countries are labelled and have a black circle around them. The other dots represent cities.

Social advantages

Cities provide a range of social advantages, including access to schools, hospitals, banks and government services, as well as non-essential services such as theatres, casinos, aquariums and major sporting events.

One of the main ways in which the populations of cities grow is through the arrival of people from overseas. For migrants, cities offer the best opportunities for employment, good access to government and support services (such as translators and community workers), and the best chance of making links with people from their own cultural and language backgrounds. Cities benefit from immigration, as it results in cultural diversity. This can often be seen in a range of shops, cultural organisations, restaurants and religious buildings, all of which help to make cities dynamic and vibrant places.

Source 16 Cities are meeting places for many cultures. Here, two Buddhist nuns record a multicultural celebration in Hobart, Tasmania.

Environmental advantages

Not all cities have environmental advantages, but well-designed and well-managed cities can reduce the impact of their people on the environment.

Four of the world's top five eco-friendly cities are in Europe: Copenhagen, Amsterdam, Stockholm and Berlin. In these cities, the government encourages people to use low-carbon transport options, such as bikes or simply walking. Waste-disposal services are used to convert household and factory waste to electricity, which reduces the amount of non-renewable resources used to create energy. Water is also collected and used sustainably.

The Government of South Australia has pledged to work towards a carbon-neutral Adelaide by 2050, to reduce the impact of climate change.

Source 17 Zurich's public transport system of trams, trains, boats and electric buses make it one of the most environmentally sustainable cities in the world.

5.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Identify** two economic advantages for people who live in cities.
2. Why are cities often multicultural places?

Analyse

3. **Examine** Source 15.
   a. Compare (look at the similarities and differences between) the rate of urbanisation and income of people in Hong Kong with those in Ethiopia.
   b. Identify the region of the world that is the least urbanised.
   c. There is a trend in this scatterplot that shows that people in more urbanised countries have a greater-than-average income than those in less urbanised countries. Explain how we know this from reading Source 15.
4. Think of one new strategy that could be put in place to make your state's capital more eco-friendly.

Apply

5. Can you think of any disadvantages to living in cities? **Discuss** this with a partner and then with the class.
6. Many important inventions happened in cities. These include the internet, telephones, wi-fi, the bionic ear, plastic bank notes, computers, cameras and sewerage systems. **Investigate** one of these to find the inventor and the city where the invention occurred.

5.6 The disadvantages of living in cities

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the disadvantages of living in cities, including economic and social disadvantages

» explain how urbanisation can negatively affect the quality of the environment.

While there are many advantages to city life, there are also a number of disadvantages. These can be roughly divided into three categories: economic, social and environmental.

Economic disadvantages

Cities can provide opportunities to generate wealth. However, geographers have found that it is residents with higher incomes who benefit from this most.

By contrast, many people find themselves experiencing poverty in cities. As a result, the world's city slums are growing. They are now home to about 900 million people, most of whom live in slums in Asia (530 million). Cities struggle to provide those in slums with jobs and basic services, such as water, housing and sanitation.

Social disadvantages

The social disadvantages faced by city-dwellers can vary widely from suburb to suburb, so one person's experience may be very different from another's. Overcrowding and rising house prices might be a disadvantage for those living in the inner city, while lack of schools and hospitals might be a disadvantage for those living in new housing estates on the edge of the city.

Most of these disadvantages are linked to competition for services. Because cities are home to large numbers of people concentrated in relatively small areas, services can be stretched beyond their limits.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the disadvantages of living cities

Some of the problems most experienced by people living in cities include:

- traffic congestion – the result of too many people trying to use personal transport on the roads at the same time
- higher cost of housing, food and utilities – the result of greater numbers of people competing for resources than can be supplied
- waiting times for schools, public transport and medical care – the result of more people trying to access these services than they were originally designed to serve
- rates of crime – the result of a complex combination of factors, including unemployment, social unrest, economic situation, age and gender.

Source 18 Slums are often built on land that is vulnerable to disasters. In Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, the slums are built in the hills and ravines that surround the city.

Environmental disadvantages

The people, factories, cars and industries based in cities often pollute the air, water and soil. The goods and services needed by the residents of cities include food, water, electricity, petrol and gas. These often must be transported long distances, creating even more pollution. As cities grow in size, they place an enormous amount of stress on the natural environment around them (see Source 19).

To make room for cities to grow, forests and grasslands are cleared, lakes and wetlands are drained, and rivers are diverted or dammed. Soft earth is replaced with hard surfaces, such as footpaths and roads, to service the city. This often has serious consequences for native animal, plant and bird populations in the area.

Cities also consume a great deal of energy, which produces large amounts of carbon dioxide. In fact, cities produce about 75 per cent of the world's carbon dioxide, which contributes to climate change.

Source 19 Satellite images of Rio de Janeiro in 1975 (top) and 2014 (bottom); these images show urban expansion over the years. Urban areas are grey, while forested regions appear as green.

5.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** one economic disadvantage of living in cities.

2 Why does traffic congestion commonly occur in large cities?

Comprehend

3 Source 18 shows a slum area in Rio de Janeiro.

a What type of geographical photo is this? Refer to page 20 of 'The geography toolkit' if you get stuck.

b **Describe** the key differences between the slum (in the foreground) and the city (in the background).

c **Explain** how slums develop in cities as a result of urbanisation.

4 Look at Source 19.

a **Describe** the change in Rio de Janeiro between 1975 and 2014.

b **Describe** the impact this change has had on the forest areas.

Apply

5 If new arrivals in cities face many difficulties, why do they keep coming? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

6 The images in this topic show urban disadvantages in Brazil. Use your research skills to find images of urban problems in Australia, Indonesia, China or the United States. **Classify** the problems into these categories: social, economic or environmental. Give each image a caption. Use your images to create a display on your classroom wall.

5A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Patterns of urbanisation

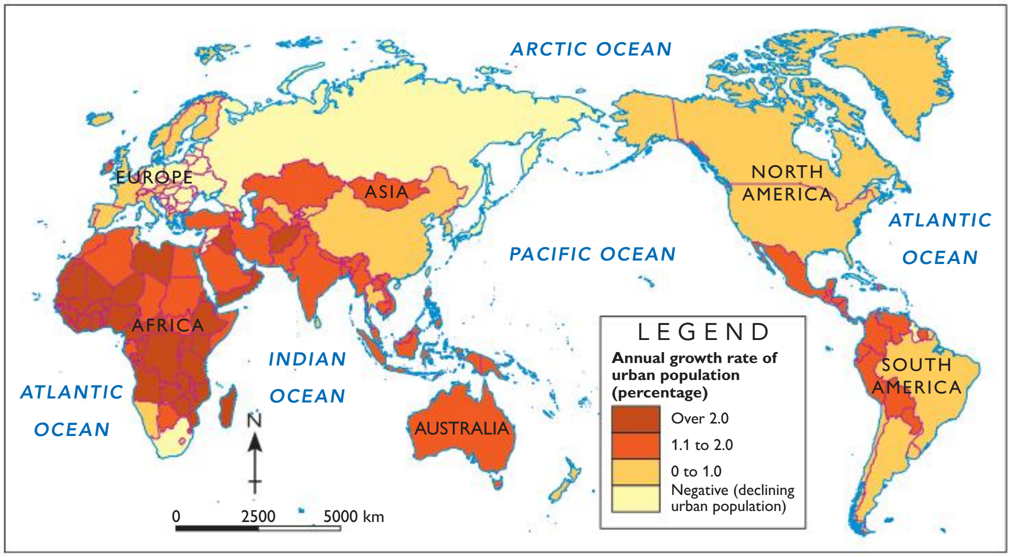
The growth of the world's cities has been one of the biggest changes in the way people live over the past 100 years or so. This change can be seen at a range of scales, from the global to the local.

At the global scale, for example, we have seen the emergence of megacities. For some countries this has caused a decline in the overall rural population, which is a change at the national scale. And at the local scale, farmland has been converted into homes, particularly at the edges of cities.

POPULATION DENSITY IN INDONESIA

Source 20 Source: Oxford University Press

URBAN POPULATION GROWTH AT THE GLOBAL SCALE



Source 21 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 22 Traffic congestion in the Tanah Abang district of Jakarta, Indonesia

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Drawing conclusions from choropleth maps

The maps on these pages are choropleth maps. These maps give a quick impression of spatial patterns by using dark and light shades of the same colour. Darker shades usually show the greatest value and lighter shades show the lowest value. To interpret a choropleth map, follow these steps:

Step 1 Read the title carefully, so you understand what is being shown on the map.

Step 2 Look carefully at the legend, so that you understand what the various shades and colours represent.

Step 3 Look for large areas of similar shades and for other patterns (such as darker shades near a city or coast).

Step 4 Describe the patterns that you find in a few carefully worded sentences.

Step 5 Look for any exceptions to the general pattern.

Step 6 Describe these exceptions in a carefully worded sentence.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Source 20. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro.
   a Identify the Indonesian island that is the most densely populated.
   b Identify the Indonesian island that is the least densely populated.
2 **Examine** Source 21. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro.
   a Describe the purpose of this map.
   b Identify the continent with the highest annual urban population growth rate.
   c Are there any exceptions to this, or does the whole continent show a high annual growth rate? Use the world map at the back of your book to list the areas where exceptions might occur.
   d Identify the continent where there are many countries with declining urban populations.
3 Use the information you have extracted from answering the first two questions to answer the following:
   a Use the PQE method to describe the distribution of population in Indonesia.
   b Use the PQE method to describe the distribution of urban growth around the world.

Refer to page 31 of 'The geography toolkit' to get you started.

Extend your understanding

Look closely at Source 20.

1 **Identify** the proposed location of Indonesia's new capital city.
2 **Describe** the location:
   a What are its geographical features?
   b What is its current population density?
3 Will the plan to add a new capital city increase or decrease the population density of this place? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.
4 **Investigate** this proposal. What are some of the main arguments supporting this proposal and what are some of the main arguments against it?

Enlarged map
Population density in Indonesia

Enlarged map
Urban population growth at the global scale

5.7 Australia's cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain why Australians live where they do.

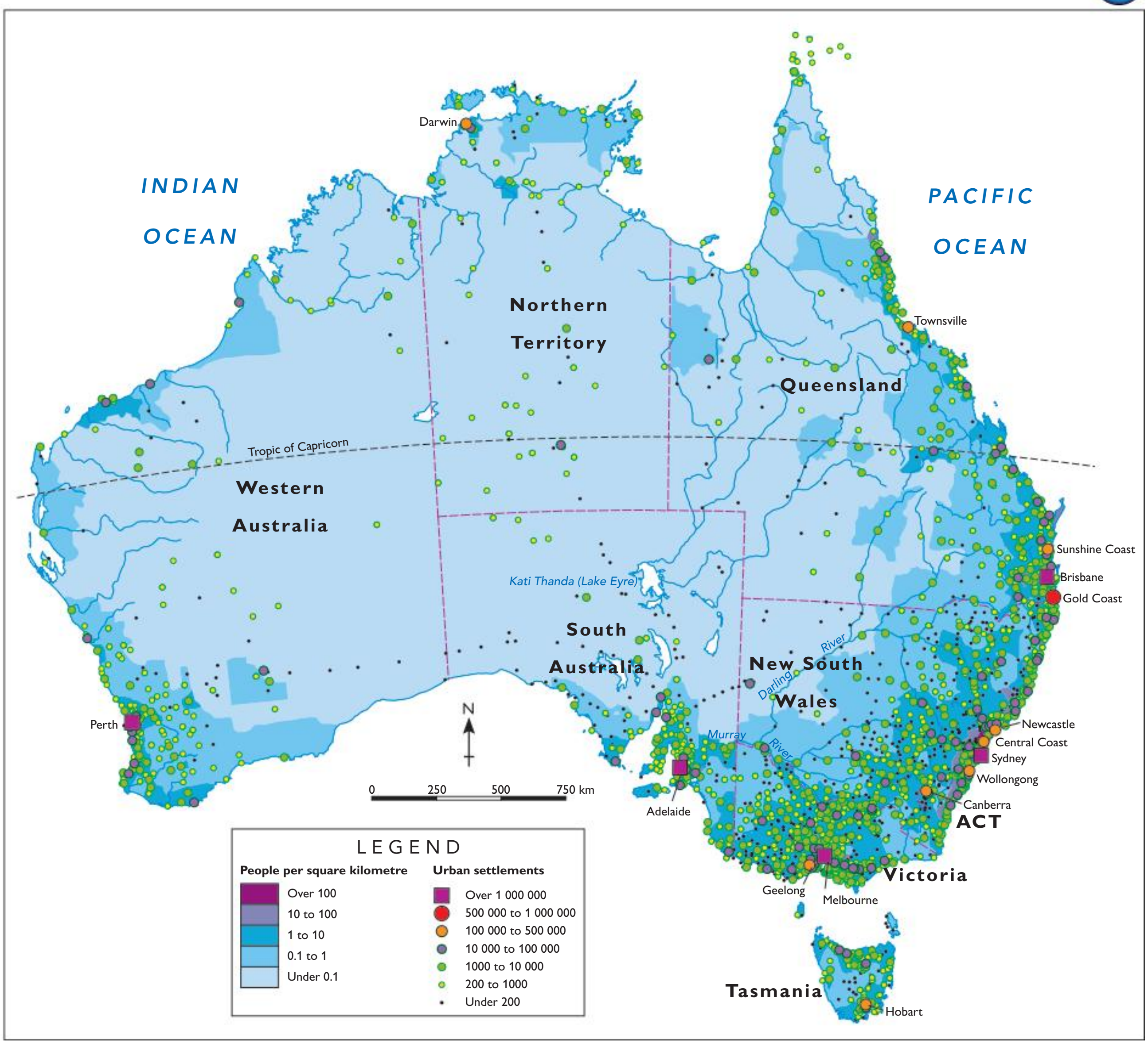
Map it!
Australia: Population density and distribution, 2016

Australia is one of the world's most urbanised countries. Around 90 per cent of the population live in cities, but cities occupy just 0.2 per cent of our land. In every state and territory, well over half of the population lives in the capital city. Each year, these cities continue to grow (see Source 2).

Why Australians live where they do

As in other countries around the world, in Australia the economic pull of the large cities is attracting more people to them. A major push factor in rural areas is the limited access to education opportunities, and many young people move to capital cities to attend university. According to the Regional Universities Network, around 74 per cent of them remain in cities when their courses finish.

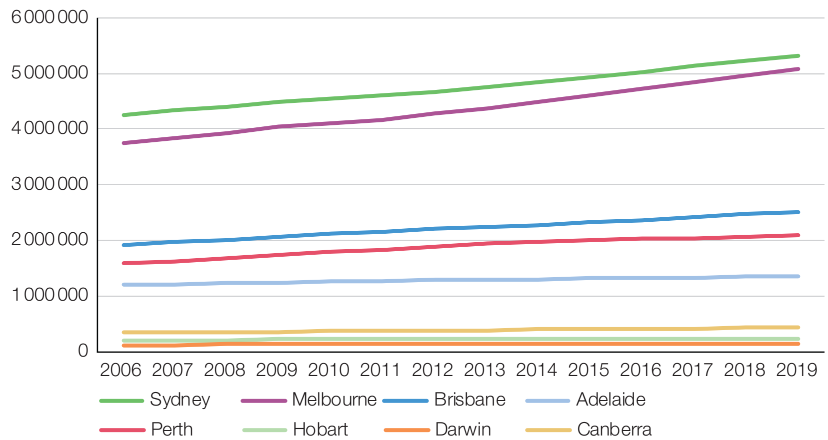
AUSTRALIA: POPULATION DENSITY AND DISTRIBUTION, 2016



Source 1

Source: Oxford University Press

Migrants, too, are more likely to settle in our capital cities. For many newly arrived migrants, their first experience of Australia will be a new home in a large city. Cities offer access to government support services and good job opportunities. Since the 1940s, just under half of all migrants to Australia have settled in Sydney and Melbourne.



Source 2 Population of Australia's capital cities, 2006–19 Source: Data from .id

Source 3 Melbourne's Central Business District is the most densely populated suburb in Australia. There are more than 20 000 people in each square kilometre, most of them in apartment buildings.

Growing cities

Today, most of the growth in Australia's large cities occurs on the edges of cities. Land there is generally cheaper than land closer to the centre of the city, and is therefore attractive to people who wish to build a new home. Young families, particularly migrant families, tend to be drawn to the affordable housing in these areas. Property developers purchase land from farmers, build infrastructure such as roads and shopping centres, and divide the land into blocks to sell to new home builders. This process is known as **suburbanisation**.

As land is developed in this way, the city gradually grows outwards. Suburbanisation places a strain on city infrastructure, such as public transport and roads. Workers in mainland state capital cities consistently spend more time travelling to work than those living elsewhere. In Brisbane, the average commute time is about 67 minutes a day.

suburbanisation
the process of growing cities outwards by building new housing estates and businesses away from the Central Business District

5.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Where do most Australians live?

2 In your own words, **define** 'suburbanisation'.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why cities grow outwards as their populations increase.

4 Look closely at Source 1.
  a What type of map is this?
  b Which urban settlements have more than 1 million people?
  c Use the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit') to **describe** the distribution of population in Australia.

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 2.
  a Identify Australia's largest city.
  b Identify Australia's fastest-growing city.
  c Using data from the graph, compare the population growth in Melbourne and Sydney. Remember, when you compare two things, you should talk about their similarities and their differences.

6 **Explain** how growth can create difficulties in urban areas. Use examples to support your answer.

Apply

7 In a 200-word paragraph, **discuss** the advantages that Australia has as a nation with a largely urbanised population.

5.8 Why Australians live in cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the causes of urban concentration in Australia.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on why Australians live in cities

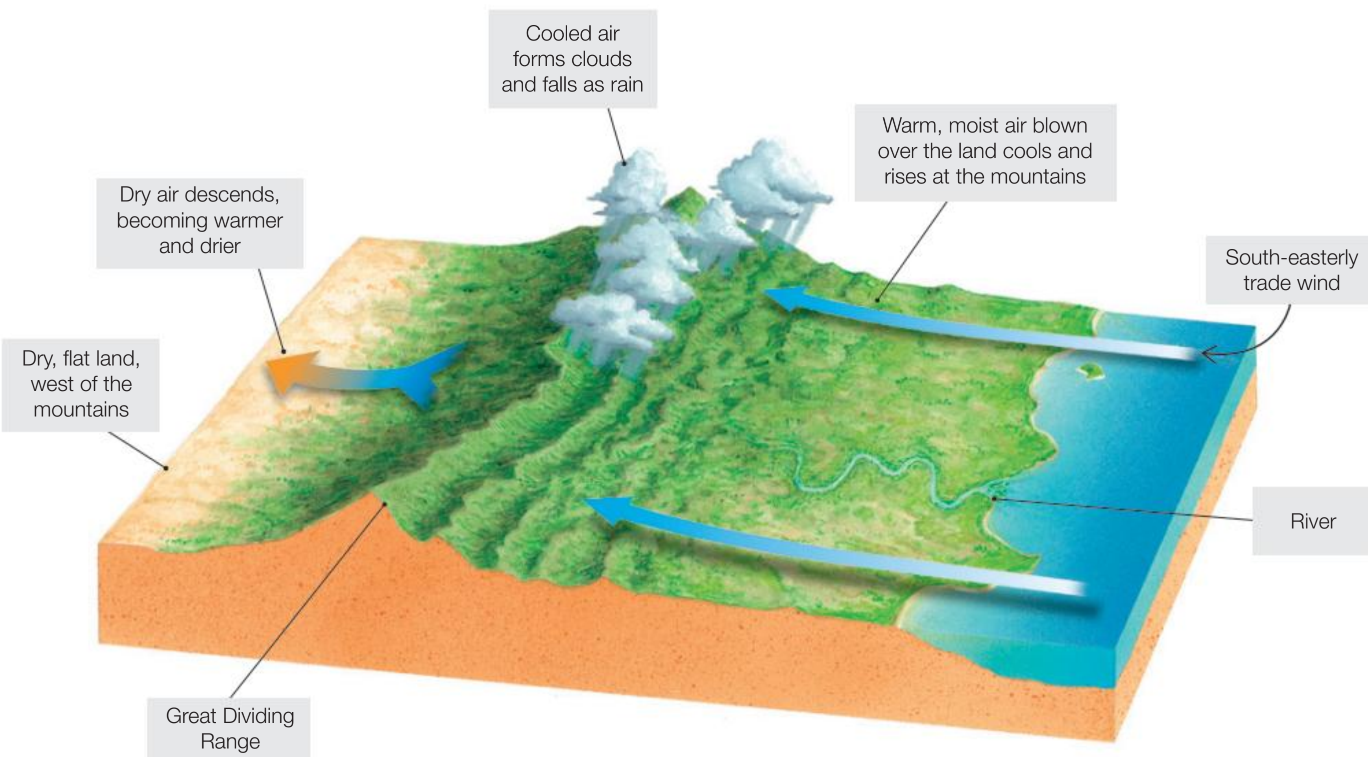
There are many reasons why Australians tend to live in cities. These reasons can roughly be divided into three categories: environmental factors, historic factors, and factors relating to trade and transport networks.

Environmental factors

Australia's geographical features and different climate zones (see Source 5) play a major role in where Australians choose to live.

Places that receive the highest and most reliable rainfall are the most populated. These regions are found in the south-east of the country, to the east of a mountain range known as the Great Dividing Range. This mountain range stretches from Cape York Peninsula in the north of Queensland to the Grampians in western Victoria.

The Great Dividing Range has a major impact on the climate along the east coast of Australia. Rain falls on the eastern side of the range. It fills hundreds of rivers that run eastward to the coast. These rivers supply fresh water for drinking, food production, hydroelectricity, industry and transport. Most Australians live in coastal towns and cities near the mouths of these rivers. On the western side of the range, most of the land is dry and flat. As a result, this area is much less populated.



Source 4 The influence of the Great Dividing Range on the climate of Australia's east

Historic factors

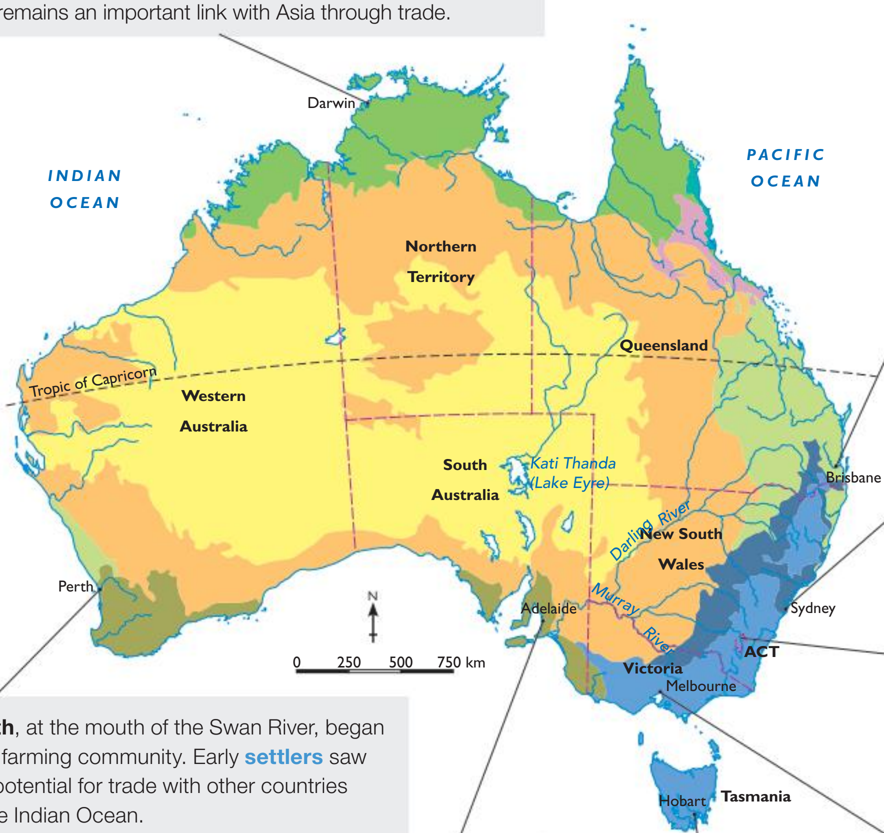
Prior to the arrival of European colonists, there were hundreds of Aboriginal nations and language groups that lived throughout Australia. When European colonists arrived by sea in 1788, they looked for land that was the most suitable for farming and the building of towns. Places at the mouths of rivers provided them with fresh water and flat, fertile land (see Source 5). Apart from Canberra, all our capital cities were built by European colonists arriving by sea.

colony
a country or area under the control of another country, and occupied by people from that country

settlers
people who leave their homeland by choice to settle in a new country or colony

The site of **Darwin** was chosen as the location of the end of the communications cable that connects Australia to Java and then to Europe. It lies near the mouth of the Elizabeth River and remains an important link with Asia through trade.

Brisbane lies at the mouth of the Brisbane River. Originally settled as a place for the worst of the convicts from Sydney, it became the centre of an important farming district due to the fertile soils and reliable rains in surrounding areas. Brisbane is home to the third largest container port in Australia, and is also an important tourist hub.



Sydney is Australia's first city. Founded on a huge natural harbour at the mouth of several rivers, it was chosen as the site of a British penal **colony**. The first convicts arrived in 1788. It is home to Australia's busiest airport and second busiest container port.

Canberra's location was chosen as the site of Australia's national capital in 1908. It lies on the Molonglo River and has grown to become Australia's largest inland city.

Perth, at the mouth of the Swan River, began as a farming community. Early **settlers** saw the potential for trade with other countries in the Indian Ocean.

Adelaide was built on the rich soil near the mouth of the Torrens River. Like Canberra, it was a planned city. Land was sold to English settlers before they arrived in Australia.

Hobart lies at the mouth of the Derwent River. It was founded as the second prison colony in Australia, and for a while it was Australia's main whaling port.

Melbourne was founded at the mouth of the Yarra River by farmers looking for fertile land and fresh water. It has grown to become Australia's second largest city and home to the country's busiest container port.

LEGEND

Tropical
- **Tropical wet:** hot and wet all year
- **Tropical wet or dry:** hot with wet and dry seasons
- **Sub-tropical wet:** hot or warm, wet summers; mild winters
- **Sub-tropical dry winter:** hot or warm, wet summers; dry winters

Temperate
- **Mediterranean:** hot and warm, dry summers; mild, wet winters
- **Semi-arid steppe:** warm to hot summers, cool winters; 25–50 cm rain each year
- **Maritime hot summer:** hot summers, cool winters; wet all year
- **Humid continental (warm):** warm summers, cold winters; rainfall distributed throughout the year

Dry
- **Desert:** hot all year; less than 250 mm rain each year

Source 5 Australia's climate zones and state capital cities

Enlarged map
Australia's climate zones and state capital cities

Trade and transport networks

Australia is a trading nation. Much of our wealth comes from selling goods to other countries. Some of our largest exports are minerals, including iron ore, coal and gas; and farm products, such as beef and wheat. All these products leave Australia by ship. We also import goods from other countries. Some of our biggest imports are machinery, fuel, and vehicles from manufacturers in other countries. This means that ports are important parts of Australia's infrastructure. Our largest ports are located in our cities.

5.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** four of Australia's biggest cities.

2 List three ways in which water has influenced where people in Australia live.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the influence of the Great Dividing Range on Australia's climate.

4 **Explain** how our present way of life reflects decisions made hundreds of years ago.

5 a What two common features are shared by most of our capital cities?

b **Explain** what is unique about the location of Canberra.

6 Look closely at Source 5.

a Which climate zone is common to three of Australia's state capitals?

b Use this map to **explain** why so few Australians live in the interior of the country.

Apply

7 Long before European colonists arrived, the areas that became our major cities already had names and significance to First Nations peoples. Use the internet to **investigate** the original place names of where our capital cities are now and share your findings with the class.

Source 6 Australia's busiest container port is in the centre of Melbourne.

5.9 America's cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the distribution of urban settlements in the United States.

KEY CONCEPT
Space

megalopolis
a collection of large cities that are close together, and are so closely linked that they effectively form one continuous urban area

exurbs
areas beyond a city's suburbs, with some economic and commuting connection to the the city

Like Australia, the United States is one of the world's most urbanised countries. More than 80 per cent of its population live in cities. There are now more than 300 cities in the United States that have a population greater than 100 000. Ten of these cities have populations greater than 1 million.

The country's biggest city by far is New York City, with a population of more than 8 million. Australia's biggest cities, Sydney and Melbourne, have populations of about 5 million, making them closer in size to America's second most populous city, Los Angeles.

BosNYWash

In the north-east United States, several major cities and smaller surrounding areas have grown so large that they have begun to merge into one continuous urban area. The major cities in this area are Boston, New York, Washington and Philadelphia.

The area is known as the Northeast Megalopolis, but is commonly referred to as 'BosNYWash'. Between 2010 and 2019, the population in this area grew by about 6 million people, and currently has around 50 million residents. Geographers predict that by 2025, the area will be home to 58.1 million people.

For more information on this key concept, see page 7 of 'The geography toolkit'.

American cities

There are generally three distinct parts to US cities:

- the city centre (usually referred to as 'downtown')
- the suburbs
- the exurbs.

Downtown

Downtown is often the place where the city was first settled. Land in the city centre is generally very expensive, so buildings tend to be tall rather than wide. These include towering residential apartment buildings. Downtown areas typically have many high-rise buildings that contain the offices of large companies. In Los Angeles (see Source 7), this is reflected in the demographic of people who live there. Of the 60 000 or so residents of downtown Los Angeles, just under 25 000 of them are office workers.

Source 7 Downtown Los Angeles; Los Angeles is America's second-largest city, home to approximately 4 million people

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on America's cities

Suburbs

Typically, beyond the city centre lies a large area of residential housing. This area is known as the suburbs. In many US cities, the suburbs grew rapidly from the 1950s onwards. In this period, people moved out of apartment buildings downtown and built free-standing houses on the city's edges.

The first suburban community in the United States was built in 1946 in Long Island, New York. One man purchased many acres of land, subdivided it into lots and built homes on them. This is the same model of suburbanisation we see today on the outskirts of cities around the world. The suburbs are now home to well over half of those who live in US cities.

urban sprawl
the growth of a city onto productive farmland on the city fringes

Exurbs

The exurbs are areas that are separated from the suburbs, but connected to them by road and rail networks. Between exurbs and the city are farmland and open spaces. The people who live there usually commute into the city for work. For this reason, the exurbs are sometimes also called 'dormitory suburbs'.

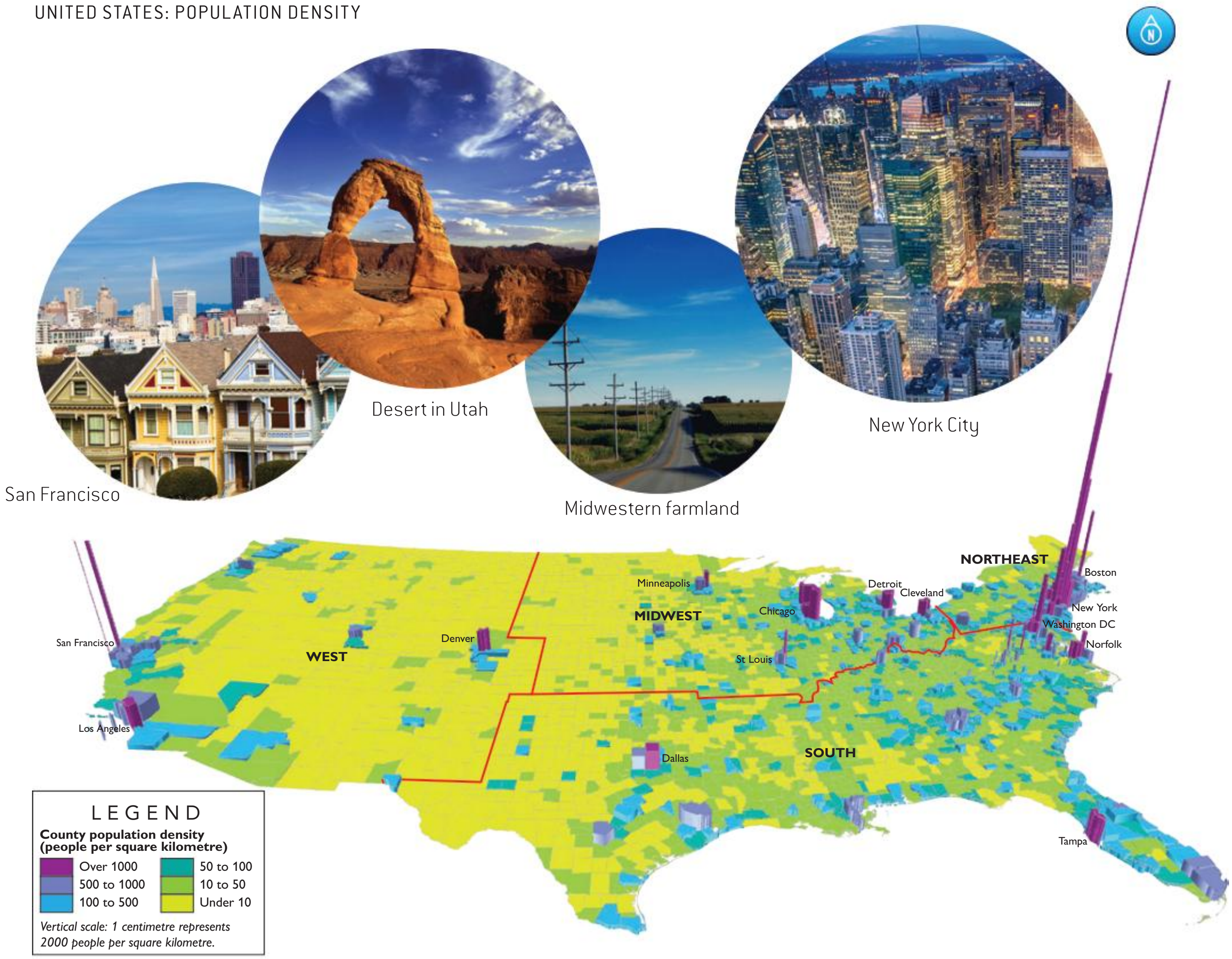
Over time, as suburbs and exurbs grow, they may join together and increase the overall size of a city. Geographers refer to this expansion as **urban sprawl**. The United States is home to some of the world's most sprawling cities.

One of the biggest factors that contributes to urban sprawl is access to car ownership. Cars allow those people who live in the suburbs or exurbs to commute to work in the city centre more easily than they could in the past.

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 8.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Source 8 An exurb on the edges of Las Vegas; this rapidly growing city is in a desert, and this places a strain on the water resources of the area.

UNITED STATES: POPULATION DENSITY



Horizontal scale varies on this oblique view – New York to Los Angeles is about 4000 kilometres.

Source 9 United States: Population density

Source: Oxford University Press

5.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Identify** the three main parts of American cities.
2. In your own words, **define** 'megalopolis'.

Analyse

3. **Distinguish** between the suburbs and the exurbs. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.
4. **Examine** Source 9.
   a. Identify the areas of the United States that are the most densely populated.
   b. Identify the areas that are the least densely populated.
   c. Compare the distribution of population in the United States to the distribution of population in Australia (see Source 2 on page 145). In what ways are they similar, and in what ways are they different?

Apply

5. Suggest four natural and human factors that have contributed to the growth of America's cities. **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

5.10 Why Americans live in cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the causes of urban concentration in the United States.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on why Americans live in cities

America's population of 328 million people is not distributed evenly. Some parts of the country are dominated by enormous, crowded cities and large towns that, together, are home to tens of millions of people, while other parts are vast areas of wilderness where few people live. This is because people usually live in places that supply their basic needs – food, water and shelter. In the United States, the most densely populated places tend to share the same features:

- a temperate climate (one that is not too cold or too hot)
- reliable rainfall and rivers to supply fresh water
- fertile soils for growing crops
- links to other cities by transport networks
- closeness to the coast.

The role of climate

The United States is the world's fourth largest country. It extends almost from the tropics in the south to the Arctic Circle in the north. This gives it a wide range of climates. In winter, snow can blanket northern cities, such as New York and Chicago. In summer, it can be extremely hot and humid in southern cities, such as Atlanta and Austin. Temperatures tend to vary between the south and the north, while the amount of rainfall tends to vary from the east to the west (see Source 12 on page 154).

Enlarged map
United States: Railroads built in the late 1800s

Source 10 The climate of Florida, in the south, is warm and tropical. Some of the state's cities, such as Miami, are among the fastest growing in the United States.

Transport networks

The distribution of cities throughout the United States is partly a reflection of the **Industrial Revolution**. The Industrial Revolution began in Britain, around 1760. During this period, new machineries, power sources and ways of organising work greatly changed all aspects of life.

Industrial Revolution
a period of major change in the late 1700s and early 1800s, where industries were revolutionised by the use of machinery

Arriving in America, early British settlers brought with them many of the new technological methods that had radically changed Britain. These included improvements in farming that allowed people to live in cities rather than in rural places where food was grown.

One of the most significant developments was the ability to build train networks. The first railways were built in the early 1800s in the America's north-east. This was the point of arrival for many European migrants, and gave them access to travel. By 1850, there were 14 000 kilometres of train tracks in different parts of the country. In 1869, the first track was built across the country. Towns developed around train lines, at railroad junctions and at the end of the lines in many areas. Many of these are now the nation's largest cities, including New York, Chicago and Los Angeles.

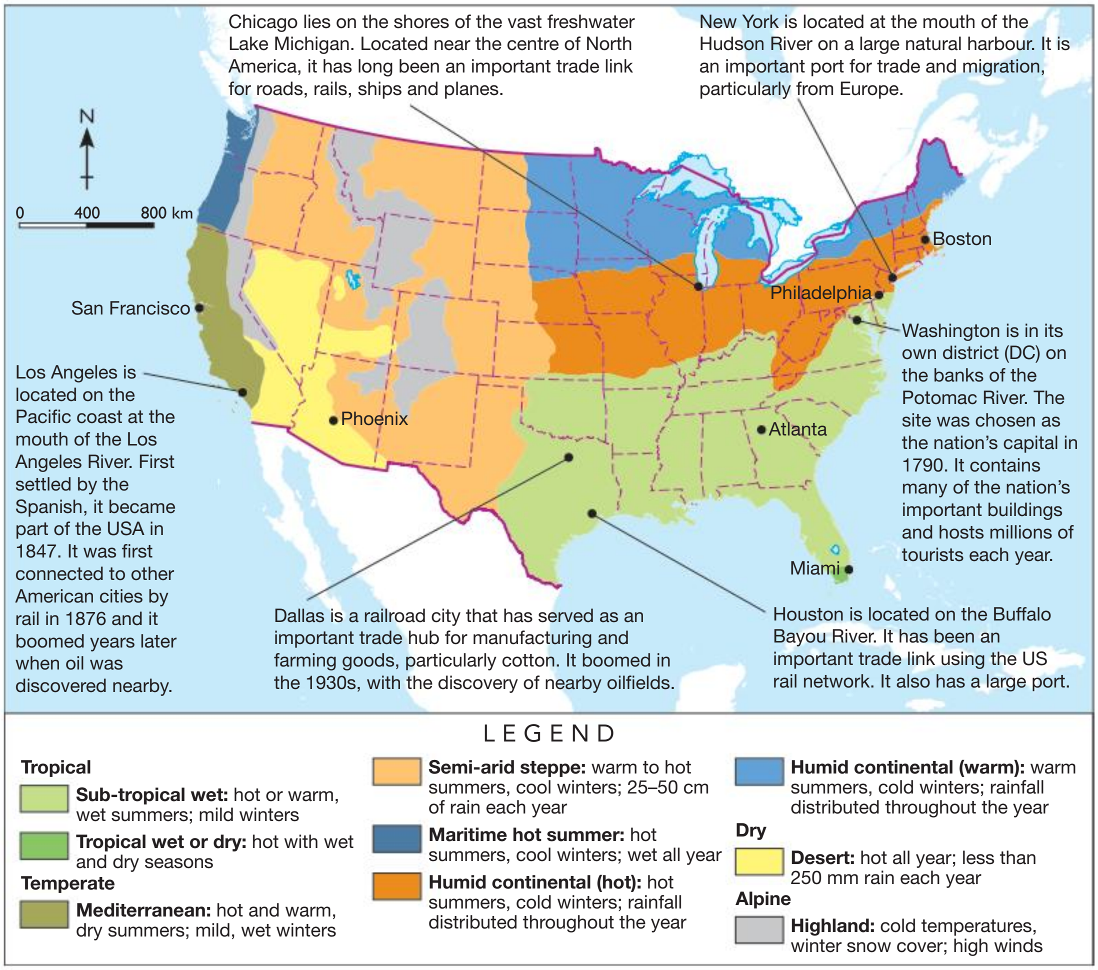
The Interstate Highway System, an extensive freeway network that runs through all contiguous states, was established in the mid-twentieth century, helping to further establish key urban areas.

UNITED STATES: RAILROADS BUILT IN THE LATE 1800S

Source: Oxford University Press/National Geographic

Source 11 Between 1870 and 1890 the amount of railroad track in the United States tripled, linking together small towns and helping them grow into huge cities.

UNITED STATES: CLIMATE ZONES



Enlarged map
United States: Climate zones

Source 12 Source: Oxford University Press

5.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How did railways affect the growth of cities in the United States?

2 List the five factors that the most densely populated places in the United States have in common.

3 **Identify** one reason why there are such different climates in different parts of the United States.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 12.

- **a** Identify the type of climate that three of America's largest cities have in common.
- **b** Describe some of the common features of these cities.

5 **Compare** Source 12 with Source 5 on page 147 by answering the following questions:

- **a** Identify the climate in the areas with the highest population densities.
- **b** Suggest why the population may be highest in these areas.
- **c** **Identify** the climate in the areas with the lowest population densities.
- **d** Suggest why the population may be lowest in these areas.

Apply

6 **a** Do you think climate has influenced where towns and cities have developed in the United States? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

- **b** In what ways is this similar to the settlement pattern of towns and cities in Australia?

7 Source 12 includes a description of America's six largest cities. The next six largest are also labelled on the map. Select one of these and **investigate** its location and history. Write your own label for this city, to be added to the map.

5.11 New York: America's megacity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the living conditions in New York City, a megacity in the United States.

New York is the largest city in the United States and was the world's first megacity. For much of the twentieth century, it was the largest city in the world.

New York is made up of five areas known as boroughs. These boroughs are Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn and Staten Island. Houses in Queens and Staten Island are similar to those in Australian suburbs. However, in the other three boroughs, almost everyone lives in apartments.

Manhattan, in particular, is one of the most densely populated places on Earth. It has a population of more than 1.5 million people in an area of less than 60 square kilometres. This is a **population density** of about 27 000 people per square kilometre. The overall population density of all five boroughs of New York, however, is around 10 500 people per square kilometre. When you compare this with Sydney – which has a population density of 2000 people per square kilometre – you get an idea of just how many people there are in New York. They literally live on top of one another!

population density
a measurement of the number of individuals per unit area (e.g. 1500 people per square kilometre)

Apartment buildings dominate the skyline in New York. Each floor of an apartment building is commonly divided into four to six apartments. A typical New York apartment is about 21 square metres in area, but this varies widely depending on the apartment blocks themselves and their location. About half of all New Yorkers own their own apartment, and the other half rent. There is often a convenience store at ground level in the building and a subway station nearby. For many New Yorkers, the corner coffee shop is an important meeting place because their apartments are too small for entertaining.

Source 13 This oblique aerial photograph shows part of Manhattan in New York. In the foreground are apartment buildings in an area known as Central Park West; in the middle ground is Central Park; and in the background is the Upper East Side.

CASE STUDY

The smallest apartment in New York?

Felice Cohen pays US$800 per month to live in a tiny, 8-square-metre apartment in a building on the Upper West Side of Manhattan. Cohen has transformed the studio apartment, which resembles a wardrobe more than a traditional living space, to accommodate her with all the features of a typical home.

Cohen's bed is on a loft that sits above the front door. She climbs a ladder to get into the bed, which is so close to the ceiling that she cannot sit upright when she is in it. This saves her additional space on the floor, where her office, closet, bathroom and kitchen are all located close to each other.

The kitchen consists of a mini fridge, toaster oven, electric hot plate and two shelves full of pantry staples. Just a few centimetres to the right of the kitchen is Cohen's office. This includes a computer, desk and a chair that tucks neatly underneath the desk when she is not using it.

As of August 2021, the average price for a one-bedroom apartment in the Upper West Side is US$2550 per month. Like Cohen, many residents of New York's Upper West Side choose to live in tiny apartments in order to enjoy the lifestyle that the neighbourhood offers.

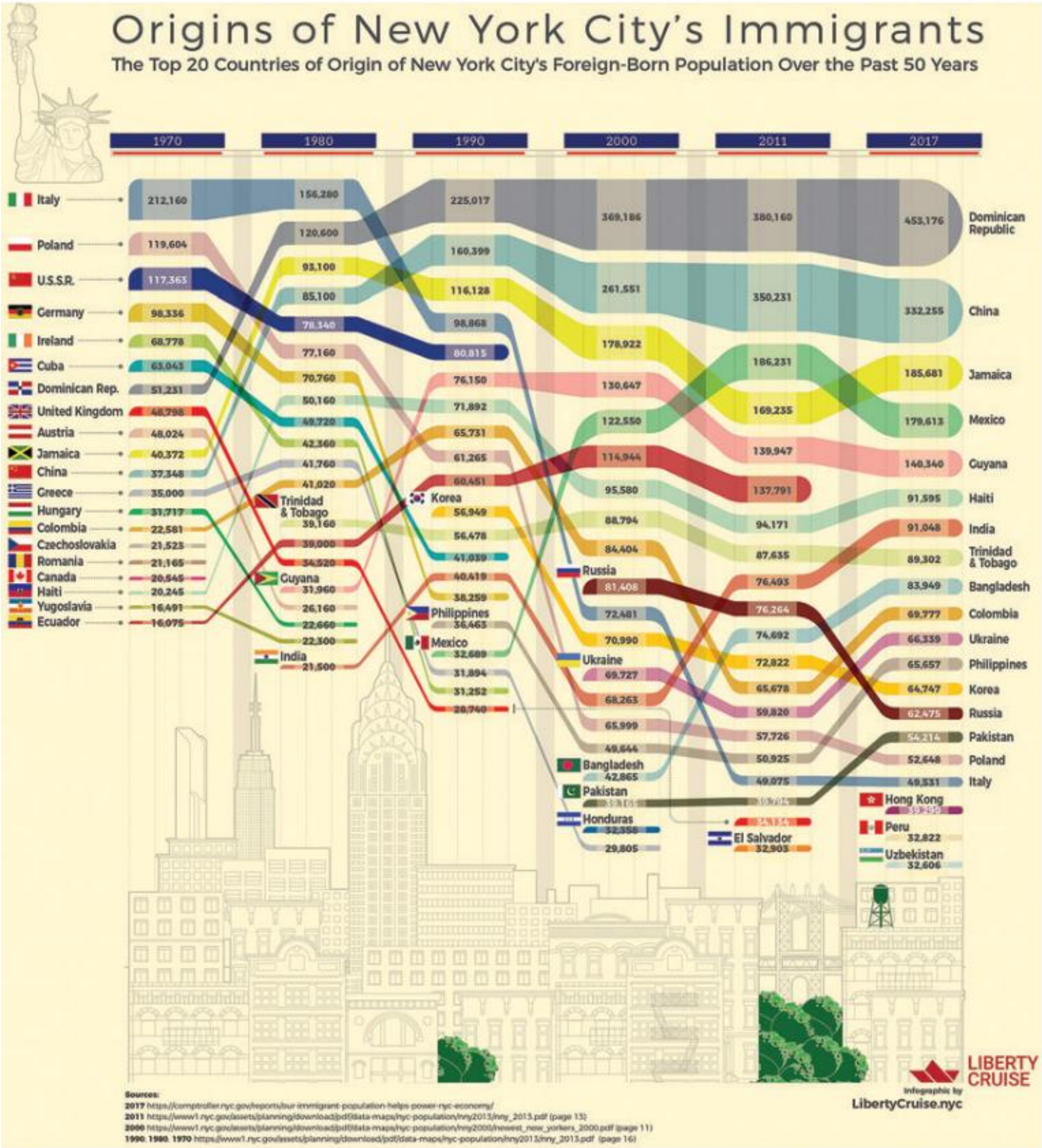
Source 14 Is this the smallest apartment in New York? Felice Cohen's living space is so small that she can open the front door while sitting on the toilet!

The impact of migration

New York, like many Australian cities, has been shaped by migration. Waves of migrants – many of them escaping trouble in their home country – have travelled to New York in search for a better future. Some of the most notable of these waves have been:

- Irish immigrants escaping a collapse in their food security, known as the 'Great Potato Famine' (1840s)
- Jewish people from Eastern Europe fleeing persecution (1880s to 1920s) – by the mid-1920s, New York was home to nearly 2 million Jews
- Italian people, many of whom were landless farmers escaping poverty (1800s to 1950s)
- freed slaves and their ancestors from the southern states of America (1915 to 1960s)
- people from Central American and Caribbean countries such as the Dominican Republic and Mexico (1970s onwards).

A recent dominant wave has been the outward flow of internal migrants from New York to other states. This includes neighbouring states, such as New Jersey, but also the so-called 'sun belt', which includes warmer states such as Florida and California.



Source 15 Origins of migrants to New York, 1970–2017

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on New York: America's megacity

Outline map
World map

5.11 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. List the five boroughs of New York City.
2. **Describe** how the lack of space in Manhattan affects the way people live.

Analyse

3. **Analyse** the difference between the population density of New York and Sydney. What impact do you think this difference has on the lives of people living in New York?
4. Examine Source 15.
   a. What changes have occurred in the number of migrants from the Dominican Republic since 1970?
   b. **Compare** this to the number of migrants from Italy. Do the changes in number follow a similar or different trend?
   c. **Consider** one reason for the difference that you identified in question 4b.
5. Locate and label the countries listed in Source 15 on a blank map of the world (one has been provided for you on your obook pro).
   a. On each country, record the number of migrants from that country who arrived in New York in 2017.
   b. Do most migrants come from countries close to North America or from distant countries?

5B
SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The growth of Washington DC

Washington DC is the capital of the United States. Unlike most other cities in the world, it was a planned city.

Shortly after the United States was created as a country in 1776, it was decided that the nation's capital should not be a part of a state, but should be in its own district (the District of Columbia, or DC as it is known). The states of Maryland and Virginia each donated a piece of land on their border for the new capital. It was designed as a square city, 16 kilometres (10 miles) long on each side, on the banks of the Potomac River. Since that time, Washington has expanded beyond these borders, and now spills into its neighbouring states.

As the nation's capital, Washington contains many buildings of national significance. Millions of visitors come to Washington each year to see these buildings and other important landmarks.

Source 16 Visitors at the Lincoln Memorial, Washington DC

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Creating column and line graphs

Graphs are used in geography to display data and make it easier to understand. Raw data often appears as a confusing table of numbers, so turning data into graphs makes it easier to recognise and analyse trends and patterns. Some commonly used graphs in geography are:

- column graphs – used to compare data (for example, the sizes of several cities)
- line graphs – used to show trends over time (for example, the growth of a city's population).

To draw a graph, you should follow these steps:

Step 1 Decide whether a column graph or line graph will best suit your purpose.

Step 2 Examine the data carefully to decide on the axes and the scale you should use so that all the data fits. It is important that the scale on each axis is an even scale; for example, 3 centimetres equals 1 million people.

Step 3 Construct your axes and your scale using a ruler.

Step 4 Plot the data carefully. Use a straight, horizontal line for a column graph. Use a small, neat dot for a line graph.

Step 5 On a column graph, draw a series of columns that extend to the horizontal axis. Lightly shade each column with a coloured pencil. On a line graph, join the dots with a smooth, freehand line.

Step 6 Label each axis with a description of the data, and give your completed graph a title.

For more information on this skill, see page 18 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Using the data provided in Sources 17 and 18, **create** two different types of graphs:

a a line graph showing the growth of the population of Washington DC, 1950–2020

b a column graph showing the numbers of visitors to Washington's top tourist attractions.

Extend your understanding

1 Study your completed line graph.

a **Describe** the changes in the population of Washington between 1950 and 2020.

b **Predict** what you think will happen to Washington's population in the next 20 years.

Year	Population
1950	1 298 000
1960	1 823 000
1970	2 488 000
1980	2 777 000
1990	3 376 000
2000	3 949 000
2010	4 604 000
2020	5 322 000

Source 17 Population of Washington DC, 1950–2020

Tourist attraction	Number of visitors each year (millions)
Lincoln Memorial	7.96
National Air and Space Museum	7.12
National Museum of Natural History	6.10
Vietnam Veterans Memorial	5.07
National Gallery of Art	5.00

Source 18 Washington's five most popular tourist attractions.

Source: Washington Business Journal

5.12 Forecasting urban growth in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify methods used to forecast urban growth in Australia.

Geographers are interested in planning for the future. One of the most important issues is the growth of our population. So how do we make predictions about population changes? Geographers generally rely on three methods:

- *Examining past trends* – geographers examine past trends, particularly ones that have occurred recently. For example, the fastest-growing cities of the last five years are likely to continue to be the fastest-growing cities in the next five years. Source 1 shows the predicted population of Australia's largest cities by 2050. This prediction is based on the idea that current trends, such as the number of babies born and the number of migrants arriving in Australia, will continue at the same rate.
- *Relying on the data* – geographers rely on the best data from reliable sources. Every five years, the Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) completes a census of Australia's population. This is a very accurate snapshot of how many people are living in different parts of Australia, and also contains a great deal of other data. Between the census years, the ABS provides annual predictions of the population.
- *Allowing for uncertainty* – geographers allow for uncertainty. Unpredictable events occur, which means their predictions may change. The COVID-19 pandemic, for example, slowed migration to Australia significantly for many months. This cut off the country's main source of population growth.

Map it!
ABS predictions for the population of Australia's capital cities in 2050

ABS PREDICTIONS FOR THE POPULATION OF AUSTRALIA'S CAPITAL CITIES IN 2050

Source 1

Source: Oxford University Press/ABS

Forecasting urban growth

Today, Australia's population is around 25.5 million. The ABS predicts that Australia's population will reach about 40 million by 2050. Most of this growth is likely to occur in our capital cities. This puts many pressures on governments and councils, which are in charge of planning and building new services to serve new residents.

By 2050, it has been estimated that Australia will need a further:

- 6.9 million homes (an 82 per cent increase from today)
- 173 348 kilometres of new roads (a 51 per cent increase from today)
- thousands of new services, including 3254 new schools, 1370 new supermarkets and 1370 new cinema screens.

Expanding cities also create environmental issues. Clearing land to build new homes and suburbs damages the natural environment, and negatively impacts on plant and animal populations.

Source 2 Is this the future of Australia's cities? This artist's rendition of a new inner-city Australian suburb looks more like science fiction than reality.

Future Brisbane

Over the next 30 years, Brisbane will face the challenges of rapid population growth and climate change. In response, city planners have introduced a series of infrastructure and sustainability projects aimed at transforming the state capital into a city of the future.

Planned developments include several skyscrapers, a revamped riverfront precinct, four new underground train stations, a pedestrian bridge across the river, and an indoor entertainment venue.

Brisbane City Council's *Clean, Green, Sustainable 2017–2031* strategy outlines the city's commitment to incorporating environmental sustainability and resilience to climate change into all planning. The new developments will be concentrated in the inner city and around bus and train stations in order to preserve green spaces for the future.

Climate change will increase exposure to hazards such as bushfires, flooding, storms and heatwaves. Good city planning will need to take these dangers into account. Infrastructure that is carbon-neutral, water-smart and adaptable to a changing climate is crucial for cities of the future.

5.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the three methods geographers rely on to help predict the future population.
2 What is a census?
3 **Recall** the major changes that are predicted for Australia's population by 2050.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** why it is important for communities to know about future population changes.
5 Look closely at Source 1.
   a **Identify** the capital city expected to grow the most by 2050.
   b What three key services and infrastructure improvements will this city need to meet the needs of the growing population?
   c Rank the capital cities from largest to smallest in 2050.

Apply

6 Australia's population is ageing as well as growing. This means that older people will make up a greater share of the population in the future. How do you think this trend might influence city planning in the future?
7 In pairs, **discuss** how an unpredictable event, such as the COVID-19 pandemic, can impact on geographers' ability to predict the future population. Share your answers with the class.

5.13 Managing urban growth in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain strategies used by governments to manage projected population growth in Australian cities.

Governments are responsible for managing the growth of Australia's cities. They employ urban planners to help them make decisions that allow our cities to grow.

There are three main strategies that planners use to manage the growth of cities: suburbanisation, decentralisation and urban renewal.

Suburbanisation

Suburbanisation is the process of making land on the outskirts of cities available for new suburbs to be built. In Australia, this has been the preferred strategy of growing our cities since they were founded. In new suburbs, residents can build a large home with a backyard, once referred to as the 'Australian Dream'. Industries can also be attracted to new suburbs by the more affordable land and rent that they offer.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on managing urban growth in Australia

However, there are some disadvantages to this strategy. Councils may find it difficult to provide new infrastructure to service new suburbs. This includes important services such as schools, roads and hospitals.

There are also environmental costs with this strategy. The land cleared for new suburbs impacts on the farm land, plants and animals in the area. In addition, residents in new suburbs often rely on cars because of infrequent or unreliable public transport. As a result, the daily commute into the city causes more pollution.

Source 3 A new suburb on the fringe of Brisbane; Brisbane is one of Australia's most suburbanised cities.

Decentralisation

decentralisation
the process of encouraging population growth and job creation in suburbs and smaller regional towns or cities, rather than in central areas of major cities

Decentralisation is the process of encouraging population and job creation outside the Central Business Districts of major cities. The Australian Government supports the growth of smaller towns and cities. One of the key methods they use is to move jobs and businesses from the Central Business Districts of the big cities into regional areas.

For example, the federal government offers regional visas for migrants to work and settle in rural areas. As a result, many regional towns are experiencing a surge in new residents. Like all changes, there are advantages and disadvantages to this strategy. This is discussed in greater detail in topic 5.14 on page 164.

Urban renewal

Urban renewal is the process of redeveloping existing areas within a city's boundaries by turning them into residential or business areas. In many large cities, there are areas of unused land or buildings. This happens for a variety of reasons; for example, schools close, quarries are no longer needed, or businesses move. It provides planners with the opportunity to plan and develop housing areas for new residents, offices for businesses, and green spaces for leisure.

One of the advantages of urban renewal is that it uses existing infrastructure, such as transport routes, energy supply and telecommunications. By doing so, it has the potential to reduce the sprawl of the outer suburbs.

One disadvantage is that it changes the character of the inner suburbs. As buildings are redeveloped and thousands of new residents arrive, existing residents may feel that the liveability of their area is reduced. A sharp increase in population density can also put pressure on the services that already exist in the area.

urban renewal
the process of taking areas of land in a city that are no longer being used and redeveloping them

5.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. What is the role of an urban planner?
2. **Name** two advantages and two disadvantages of suburbanisation.

Comprehend

3. **Summarise** the differences between suburbanisation and decentralisation.
4. a **Describe** the change between the two photographs in Source 4. Use specific examples from the images.
   b **Explain** how the change in the Docklands area of Melbourne is an example of urban renewal.

Apply

5. **Investigate** an example of three management strategies in a major city near you. Create a PowerPoint presentation or poster displaying how these strategies have been put into place.

Source 4 Australia's largest urban renewal project to date is the Docklands area of inner Melbourne. Once Melbourne's main port, the land became vacant and unused (left) when the port operations were moved further down the river. Now it is home to more than 13 000 people and many businesses (right).

5.14 Arguments for and against decentralisation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe decentralisation as a strategy for a more balanced distribution of urban population.

As we saw in topic 5.13 on page 162, decentralisation involves encouraging the growth of regional towns and cities to help slow the spread of large cities. Industries and companies are given financial benefits to encourage them to move their operations from capital cities to regional centres. This has become the preferred strategy for many of Australia's governments, and is changing the face of many of our smaller cities and towns.

In 2020, changes brought about by the COVID-19 pandemic gave this strategy an unexpected boost. Many workers throughout Australia discovered that they preferred working remotely from home, rather than commuting to an office in the CBD, or another workplace. Many also became concerned about the way a virus such as COVID-19 can spread rapidly in a densely populated city. These social changes renewed an interest in moving to regional areas. As a result, many such areas experienced a surge in demand for homes.

Source 5 Regional towns such as Daylesford in Victoria experienced a growth in population during the COVID-19 pandemic.

Benefits of decentralisation

Decentralisation of the population can help relieve some of the problems of large cities, such as the cost of housing, traffic congestion and damage to the natural environment. There are also many advantages for the regional cities that are expected to grow because of decentralisation.

The spike in population helps boost the economy in regional towns. Businesses have new customers and new employees, and this in turn creates even more business opportunities. As new residents build homes, they spend money in the local area, including paying rates to the local council. This money can be used by the council to improve the liveability of the area, through building new infrastructure that benefits all residents of the town.

As the population grows in these areas, it also brings with it social changes. This includes the diversification of cultural and ethnic groups. A survey conducted by Charles Sturt University found that a warm welcome from the locals was one of the most important factors for migrants settling in regional and rural Australia. According to this survey, two in three migrants said that their regional community had made them feel very welcome.

Disadvantages of decentralisation

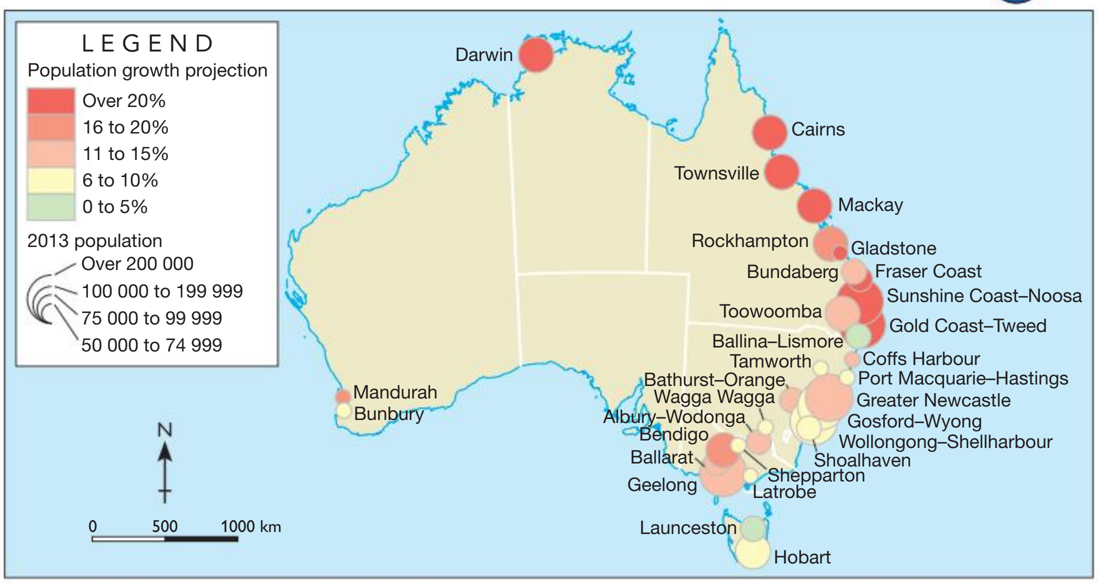
Some people who live in regional Australia are concerned that a surge in population will change their towns and cities forever. Geographers predict that property prices will rise as the demand for new homes increases. We can already see this happening in many towns near large mines, where the number of workers overwhelm the supply of housing in the towns. In the Central Highlands Region of Queensland, house prices jumped more than 30 per cent between 2018 and 2019. As a result, locals who have lived in the area for a long time are finding it difficult to afford their rent or to buy a new home.

Much like suburbanisation, the environmental impact of growing regional areas is also a disadvantage of decentralisation. Land is cleared and green space destroyed to make room for new residential and commercial buildings in expanding regional centres.

Further, it can often be difficult and expensive to get companies and workers to move to regional centres in the numbers necessary to make government incentive and development programs a success.

Source 6 The population growth rate of Cairns, in Far North Queensland, is larger than Australia's overall growth rate.

2013 POPULATION OF AUSTRALIA'S REGIONAL CITIES AND PROJECTED GROWTH RATE TO 2026



Source 7

Source: Oxford University Press/Regional Australia Institute

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on arguments for and against decentralisation

5.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why do many people move from big cities to regional cities in Australia?

2 What are the benefits of this movement for the regional cities themselves?

Comprehend

3 Look closely at Source 7.
- a **Identify** Australia's largest regional city.
- b Using the scale on the map, estimate the distance between Australia's largest regional city and smallest regional city.
- c In which state is regional city growth most rapid?
- d **Identify** the regional cities that are projected to grow most rapidly.
- e Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), **describe** the distribution of Australia's regional cities.

Apply

4
- a Cairns is growing rapidly. **Identify** one problem this might cause in the city.
- b **Propose** one strategy that could be put in place to help overcome the issue you identified in part a.
- c **Evaluate** your strategy. What are its strengths and what are its weaknesses?

5 Design an advertisement that encourages people to move from large cities to regional areas. Your advertisement should focus on both push and pull factors (see topic 5.4 on page 136).

5C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Canberra – a decentralised city

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

In 1911, the Australian Government announced a competition to design a new city located between Melbourne and Sydney. The winners were Chicago architects Marion Griffin and her husband, Walter Burley Griffin.

Their design involved a series of geometric shapes that would line up with important features of the natural environment, such as the surrounding hilltops. The plan also included a central lake that now bears the name Lake Burley Griffin.

Canberra is organised into a series of seven residential districts. Each district contains a mixture of town centres, local suburbs and industrial areas. The layout of these districts – around a series of central shopping and town centres linked by freeways – is designed to make them self-sufficient. It also prevents the mass-commuting of workers into the CBD every day, as is the case in all of Australia's other major cities.

Source 8 Parliament House in Canberra

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Comparing vertical aerial images

A range of sources used by geographers – such as maps, plans and photographs – are drawn or captured from directly above. In a vertical aerial photograph, the camera is positioned directly above the landscape (often from a drone or aeroplane). Vertical aerial images can be a useful tool for examining a small area of the Earth's surface in detail. This vertical view allows geographers to see the extent of any features and patterns they make on the Earth's surface. Most importantly, comparing these sources helps geographers identify any changes that have taken place over time.

When comparing vertical aerial images, follow these steps.

Step 1 Examine the scale and the legend of both sources. Ideally, these will be the same. If they are not, make sure that the area on one image corresponds exactly to the same area on the other image.

Step 2 Look for geographical features, such as the outline of lakes, the location of streets, and landmarks such as railway stations. This allows you to compare other features in the landscape.

Step 3 Locate features that appear on both images that are similar. Take note of these.

Step 4 Locate features that appear on both images that are different. Take note of these.

Step 5 Prepare a list or table of these similarities and differences, and try to explain the different reasons for them. You may need to conduct more research at this point in order to do this.

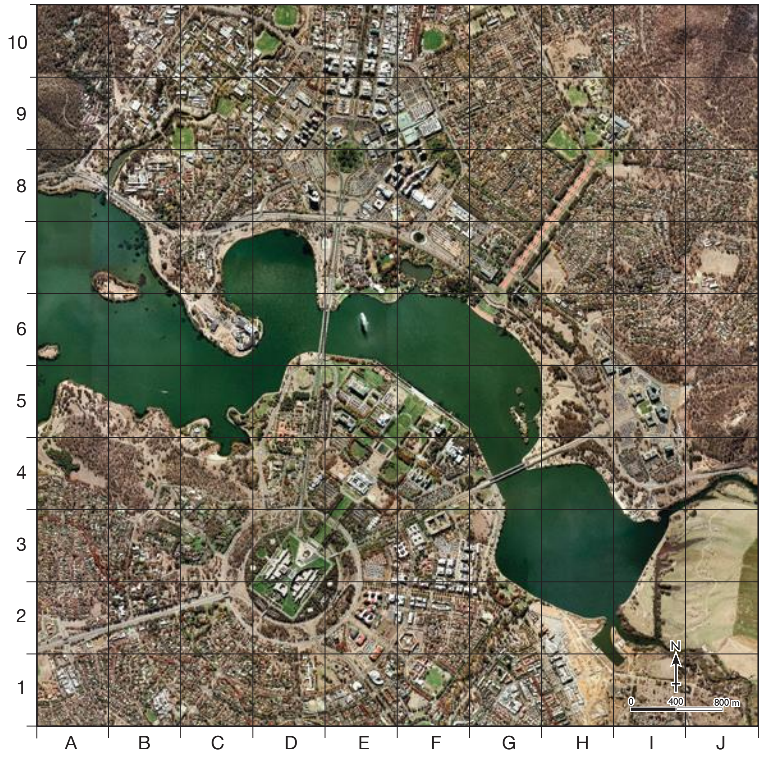
Practise the skill

1. Look closely at the Griffins' plan for Canberra (Source 9).
   a. **Identify** some of the distinctive features of their plan.
   b. The judges of the competition particularly liked the way that the Griffins' plan took into account natural features, such as the surrounding hills and the native bush. What evidence can you find of this on the original plan?
2. Look closely at the vertical aerial photograph of modern-day Canberra (Source 10).
   a. List the features that indicate this is a planned city.
   b. **Identify** the feature located at I5. Is this the land use that the Griffins called for at this place?
   c. Locate three examples of where the Griffins' plan has not been followed. (For example, there is a missing bridge north-west of Capital Hill.) Choose one of the examples and **propose** a reason why the original plan may have changed.

Extend your understanding

1. What types of issues can changing land use and development create for people living in cities?
2. In Source 10, **identify** and describe evidence of changing land use in H1 and H2.
3. **Explain** how Canberra is an example of the strategy of decentralisation.
4. Other examples of planned capital cities include Brasilia in Brazil and Ottawa in Canada. **Investigate** another planned capital city of your choice to find out about the reasons for its location and design.

Source 9 The Griffins' original plan for Canberra, drawn in 1911



Source 10 A vertical aerial photograph of modern-day Canberra

5 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Use your map-reading skills to answer the questions that follow about the world's urban slums. You may use an atlas or the world map at the back of this book to help.

Urban slums

One of the consequences of rapid urbanisation is the growth of the world's slums. The United Nations defines an 'urban slum' as an area of a city where there are households lacking one or more of the following: access to improved water; access to improved sanitation; sufficient living area; or durability of housing. Today, there are more than 900 million people living in slums around the world.

1 In your own words, **define** an urban slum. (1 mark)

2 **Identify** and **describe** the purpose and type of map in Source 11. (3 marks)

3 **Explain** the interconnection between the urban explosion and the emergence of urban slums. (3 marks)

4 **Examine** Source 11. An enlarged version is available on your obook pro.

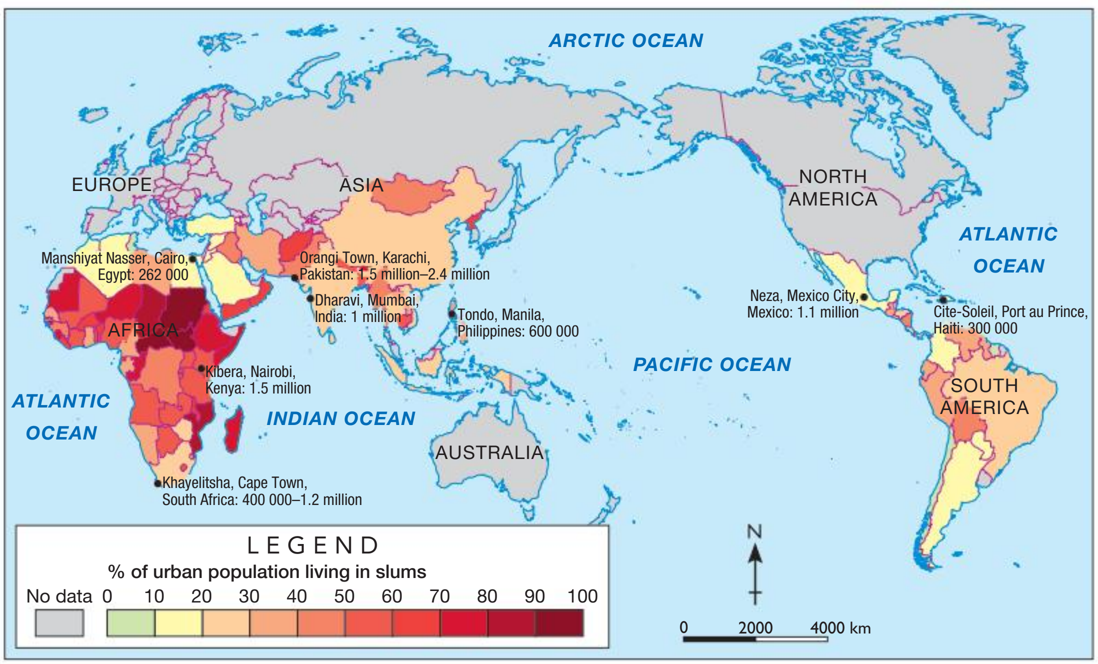
  a Identify the most populated slum in the world. Where is it found, on what continent is it located and how big is the population? (2 marks)

  b Using the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit'), describe the distribution of slums in this map. (5 marks)

  c Calculate the percentage of the population that lives in slums in each of these countries: Namibia, Sudan, Afghanistan, Burma, Niger, Argentina. Then rank the countries in order from the one with the highest percentage of its population living in slums to the one with the lowest percentage. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

URBAN POPULATIONS LIVING IN SLUMS



Enlarged map
Urban populations living in slums

Source 11

Source: Oxford University Press/Our World in Data

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Define urbanisation. Identify the causes of urbanisation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.1, page 130.
Explain the characteristics of megacities across the world. Distinguish between large cities and megacities.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.2, page 132.
Explain the connection between urbanisation and economic and social opportunities. Understand how push-pull forces contribute to internal migration.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.3, page 134.
Describe the effects of urban concentration in Indonesia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.4, page 136.
Identify the advantages of living in cities, including economic, social and environmental advantages.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.5, page 138.
Identify the disadvantages of living in cities, including economic and social disadvantages. Explain how urbanisation can negatively affect the quality of the environment.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.6, page 140.
Explain why Australians live where they do.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.7, page 144.
Understand the causes of urban concentration in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.8, page 146.
Describe the distribution of urban settlements in the United States.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.9, page 149.
Understand the causes of urban concentration in the United States.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.10, page 152.
Describe the living conditions in New York City, a megacity in the United States.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.11, page 155.
Identify methods used to forecast urban growth in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.12, page 160.
Explain strategies used by governments to manage projected population growth in Australian cities.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.13, page 162.
Describe decentralisation as a strategy for a more balanced distribution of urban population.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 5.14, page 164.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 5

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 5

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Urban life.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 5

CHAPTER 6

Migration

There are many different reasons why we move – for work, for family, for love, to escape persecution, or for the chance of a better life. There are also different ways in which we move – we move across the street, to the next town, to a different state, or even to the other side of the world. Geographers refer to this movement of people as migration. Movements within the same country are known as internal migration, while movements between different countries are known as international migration.

Some people choose to move, which is called voluntary migration; while others are forced to move – to flee violence, poverty, famine or war – and this is called forced migration. In Australia, most people are voluntary migrants; and within a five-year period, about one-third of Australians will change their home address at least once. Worldwide, however, the numbers of forced migrants are on the rise.

Source 1 People who leave their country to flee violence, war or natural disaster are known as refugees. This image shows lifejackets discarded by refugees along the shoreline of Lesvos, Greece. In September 2015, refugees from Syria, Afghanistan and Iraq began arriving on the shores of Lesvos. More than a half a million refugees and asylum seekers landed there.

6A
Why do people move?

6B
How has international migration changed Australia?

6.1 Explaining population movements

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify and explain the main types and patterns of internal and international migration.

migrants
people who move from one place to another

developing countries
less economically developed countries that have some difficulties supporting their own people

internally displaced persons (IDPs)
people who have been forced to migrate, but who remain in their home country

Each day, millions of people around the world pack up their belongings and move to a new home. Most of these people chose to move; while others have been forced to do so. Regardless of the different reasons, one thing is for certain – the world's population is always on the move! Geographers are interested in these movements because they shape our world. The movement of **migrants** from one place to another brings opportunities for some people and challenges for others.

There are two main types of migration: internal migration and international migration.

Internal migration

Source 1 In northern Syria, more than 1.5 million people live in IDP camps. This boy is returning from school to his temporary home in one of them.

Internal migration refers to the movement of people within a certain region or country (for example, a person moving from Melbourne to Perth). One of the largest movements of people in history is currently underway, as people around the world move from rural areas to cities in search of work and better opportunities. This type of internal migration is particularly common in **developing countries** such as China, Indonesia and India.

Most internal migrants choose to move. For many, this choice gives them the chance to improve their lifestyle. For example, a young couple may move to the fringe of the city to build a new home and start a family.

There are some internal migrants, however, who are forced to move. In many countries, wars and civil conflicts mean that a person's home becomes dangerous, and they must move to a safer place. Natural disasters – such as floods, storms and droughts – can also force people to move to a safer place. People who seek refuge (safety) in their home country are referred to as **internally displaced persons (IDPs)**. Worldwide, there are more than 40 million people who have been displaced by conflict and another 1.6 million who have been displaced by natural disasters.

Source 2 About 90 per cent of the workforce of the United Arab Emirates are migrants. These Pakistani workers are finishing the construction of a bridge in Dubai.

International migration

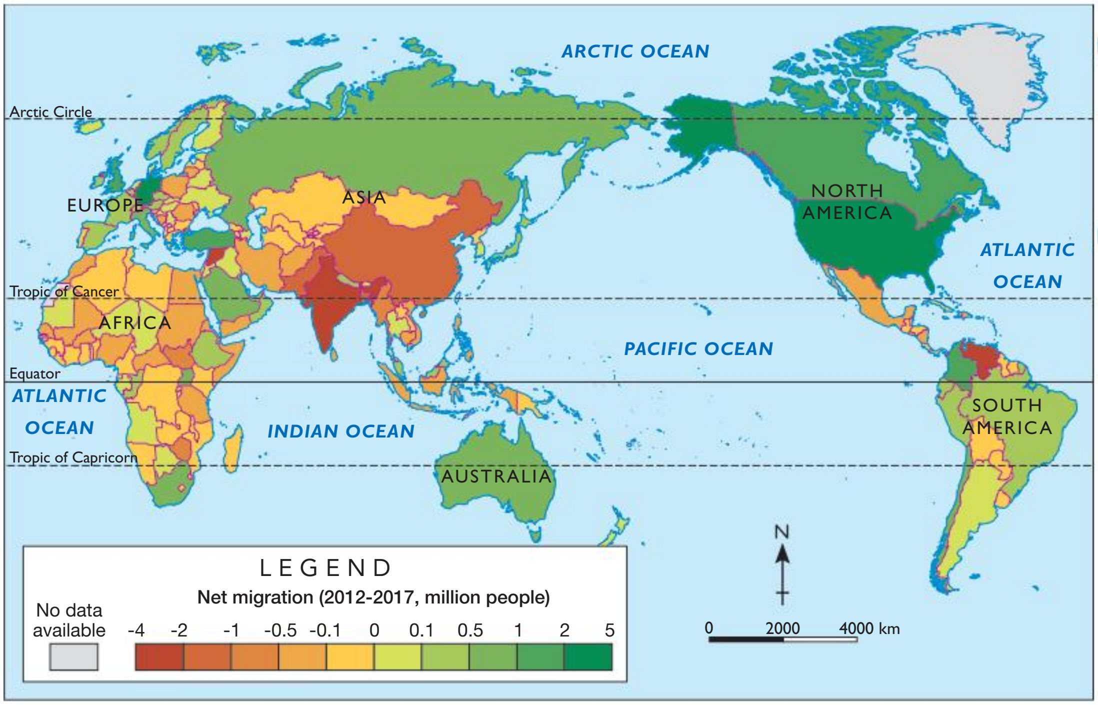
International migration refers to the movement of people across country borders (for example, a person moving from Africa to Australia). There are over 270 million people who move countries each year (around 3.5 per cent of the world's population). These people have the potential to bring great change – both to the place they leave and to their new home.

As with internal migrants, most international migrants choose to move. They often do so to improve their way of life. In many countries, migrants make important contributions to society in their new country.

Some people, however, flee their home country as they fear for their personal safety if they remain. These people are referred to as **refugees**. In 2018, there were over 25 million refugees worldwide. Refugees are some of our most vulnerable people. They often require assistance and support to thrive in their new country. Many return to their original country when it is safe to do so.

refugees
people who move to another country because of a natural disaster or to avoid persecution

WORLD: NET MIGRATION, 2017



Source 3

Source: Oxford University Press/Our World in Data

Enlarged map
World: Net migration, 2017

Map it!
World: Net migration, 2017

Note: 'Net migration' means the net total of migrants; that is, the total number of migrant arrivals less the total number of migrant departures, including both citizens and non-citizens. Data are five-year estimates.

6.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 What are the two main types of migration?

2 **Describe** the main features of internal migration.

3 **Describe** the main features of international migration.

Analyse

4 Copy the following table into your notebook:

Internal migrants		International migrants	
Voluntary	Forced (IDPs)	Voluntary	Forced (refugees)

a **Classify** the following migrants into the correct column on the table:
- the schoolboy in Source 1
- the Pakistani workers in Source 2
- a family that moves to the outer suburbs of their home city
- the people who have left behind lifejackets in Source 1 in the opening of this chapter.

b Give one more example of your own in each column.

5 **Examine** Source 3, which shows the number of migrant arrivals in each country over a five-year period minus the number of departures.

a Identify some countries shown as having less than zero net migrants.

b Does Australia have more arrivals or more departures?

c Identify the country that has the largest net number of migrants.

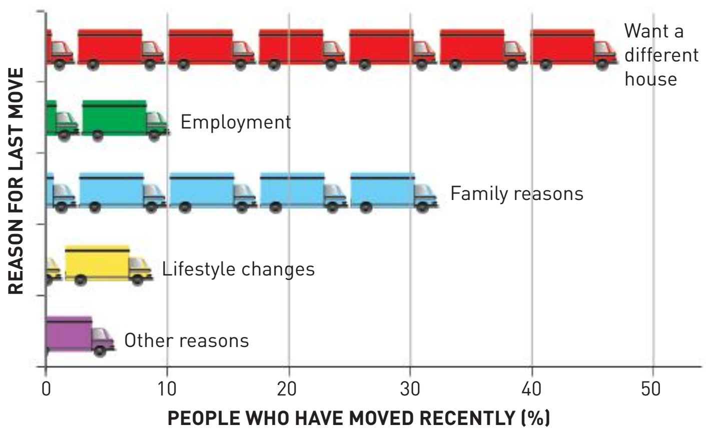
6.2 Population movements in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and describe the reasons for and effects of internal migration in Australia.

Australia has a very mobile population. Statistics show that about 40 per cent of us move home at least once every five years. Around 15 per cent of us move every year. Source 4 shows some of the main reasons why people move house in Australia, while Source 5 demonstrates these trends using an example of an individual and the types of decisions they might make during their lifetime.



Source 4 The main reasons people move home within Australia

Note: Proportions may add up to more than 100 per cent as respondents could provide more than one reason for their last move.

When my sister was born, my mum bought a three-bedroom house for us in the Sydney suburb of Epping. I was three years old when we moved in.

I lived at home with my mum and sister until my early 20s. I moved out when I started making enough money at my apprenticeship. I rented a unit close to the city centre with some friends.

When I was 32, my partner and I bought our first house in the suburb of Newtown and moved in together. It had two bedrooms.

By the time I was 38, we had three children. Our family moved interstate to Brisbane because my partner was offered a job promotion. We bought a large house with five bedrooms in the suburb of Oxley.

By the time my partner and I were in our late 50s, all our children had moved out and were starting families of their own. The house seemed too big for just the two of us, so we sold it and bought a two-bedroom apartment in a suburb closer to my work in the city.

When my partner and I retired in our mid-60s, we bought a small apartment in a development on the Sunshine Coast so we could enjoy a more relaxed lifestyle and be closer to our children's families.

Source 5 People move for different reasons at different stages of their lives.

As you can see, migration in Australia is usually a very personal decision and is based on a number of important factors. These may be linked to a person's personal tastes, family life, work income, or health. For example, in Australia there has been a movement of people towards the edges of large cities and towards smaller towns on the coast. The first of these moves is largely due to the cheaper land available on the city fringe, and the second is chiefly due to people looking for a change in lifestyle. This movement of people to regional coastal towns is referred to as a 'sea change'.

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Creating an infographic

Sydney to Melbourne migration: tipping the balance

Sydney has been Australia's largest city since 1901. Ten years ago, it had 450 000 more people than Melbourne. However, there has been a dramatic shift in Australia's population since then: Melbourne's population has increased rapidly, while the growth of Sydney's population has slowed down.

At the current rate of change, Melbourne's population will be larger than Sydney's by 2026. There are a few reasons for this predicted change:

- The rate of people leaving Sydney is much greater than the rate of people arriving. Each year, about 25 000 more people leave Sydney compared to those arriving from other parts of the country.
- Melbourne has been steadily gaining internal migrants for the past 10 years. These include a large number of Sydneysiders moving to Melbourne. One reason for this is the rising house prices in Sydney (see Source 6).

Source 6 One of the reasons people are leaving Sydney is increasing property prices. The average house price in Sydney is more than $150 000 greater than in Melbourne.

Going forward, geographers will have to take into consideration the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on population. Both Sydney and Melbourne lost residents in 2020, with many people moving to regional areas within the state. Over 10 years to 2020, Queensland has had the largest population growth due to interstate migration, gaining on average 14 300 people each year.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on population movements in Australia

6.2 Check your learning

Review

1 **Name** three reasons why people move home in Australia.

2 Rank the reasons people move to a new house in Australia from the most common to the least common.

3 **Identify** one reason why people are moving from Sydney to Melbourne.

Comprehend

4 Why do some people move after finishing secondary school? Suggest some reasons.

5 **Explain** why Melbourne's population is predicted to be bigger than Sydney's by 2026.

Apply

6 How does migration of people from large cities to coastal towns change both places? Brainstorm possible answers to this question as a class, and then group the responses into positive changes and negative changes.

7 Imagine you are a geographer in 2030 analysing the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on Australia's population. What changes do you think you would be including in your analysis?

6.3 Australian mining towns

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the influence of mining developments on internal migration in Australia.

Australia is home to some of the world's largest mines. These mines tend to be located in remote areas, where rich deposits of metals and minerals (such as coal, uranium and iron ore) can be found underground.

From around 2005 until 2015, Australia experienced a mining boom. During this period, a huge increase in demand for Australian mineral resources – particularly from China and India – meant that the prices of these minerals went up. To meet the demand, Australian mining companies built new mines and employed tens of thousands of new workers. The mining boom brought about one of the most significant population movements in recent Australian history.

CASE STUDY

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian mining towns

Karratha, Western Australia

The town of Karratha lies in the Pilbara region. Located in north-west Western Australia, the Pilbara has rich deposits of iron ore and vast reserves of natural gas (located offshore).

Karratha was established in 1970 for the workers employed in the mining industry. Since then, it has grown to a town with a permanent population of over 20 000 people. Not everyone who works on the mines in the Pilbara lives in Karratha. Some stay in the area for three weeks and then fly home for two weeks; while others work in the mines from Monday to Friday and then fly home for the weekend. This type of lifestyle is referred to as 'fly in, fly out' (FIFO), and it allows mine workers to take advantage of available jobs in remote areas without disrupting their families.

The changes in Karratha have presented several key issues for governments and the residents of the town. For example, new infrastructure, such as schools and roads, needs to be developed for the incoming mine workers and their families without reducing the liveability of the town. Some locals are expecting the town to reach a population of 50 000.

IRON ORE MINES AND RAILWAYS IN THE PILBARA REGION

Source 7

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Iron ore mines and railways in the Pilbara region

Reading population pyramids

Population pyramids are bar graphs that show the percentage of males and females of different ages in a population. The population pyramid in Source 8 compares the distribution of men and women in two different populations: in the Pilbara region, and nationwide in Australia. This type of population pyramid helps geographers compare population at a local scale with population at the national scale.

Log on to your obook pro to practise this skill.

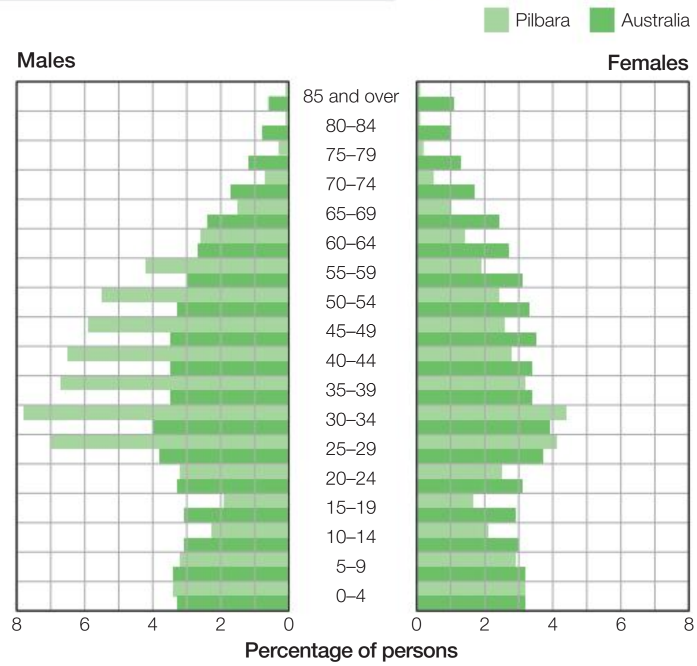
KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Reading population pyramids

Boom and bust

As the Australian mining economy boomed, the price of iron ore reached US$187 per tonne in 2011. However, a drop in demand from other countries meant that prices started to dive, and by the end of 2015, the price was about US$41 per tonne. Fortunately, by 2019, 'mining boom 2.0' was under way, and countries such as China, Japan and South Korea provided a healthy demand for iron ore. In April 2021, the price was US$190 per tonne.

The future of towns like Karratha is very dependent on the demand for minerals in other countries. If the price of iron ore drops again, it could significantly impact Karratha and other towns. This is referred to as a 'boom and bust' cycle.



Source 8 Population pyramid for the Pilbara region and for the total Australian population. Source: Data from .id

6.3 Check your learning

Review

1. **Name** three metals and/or minerals that Australia exports to other countries.
2. **Define** the term FIFO, and describe some features of this lifestyle.

Comprehend

3. **Outline** what happened in Australia between 2005 and 2015.
4. In your own words, **explain** what is meant by the term 'boom and bust'.

Analyse

5. **Examine** Source 7.
   - a Identify how many mines are shown on this map.
   - b Where is the iron ore taken once it is mined?
   - c Locate Karratha on the map. Using evidence from the map, explain why Karratha's location makes it an important mining town.
6. **Examine** Source 8.
   - a What are three major differences between the population of the Pilbara and the total Australian population?
   - b Suggest reasons why these differences occur. (Think about the typical age and gender of mine workers to help you answer this question.)

Apply

7. Work in groups to brainstorm positive and negative impacts of the population growth in Karratha during the mining boom. In your brainstorm, you may like to use headings, such as 'Changes to the environment', 'Changes to housing' and 'Changes to people's way of life'.

6.4 Population movement in China

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify and explain the patterns of internal migration in China.

For thousands of years, most Chinese people lived in small rural villages. Their lives were dominated by the daily routine of farming – planting, weeding and harvesting crops, and caring for animals such as pigs and cows. Over the past few decades, however, this situation has changed.

Although China is still home to more than half a billion farmers, it also has some of the world's largest and fastest-growing cities. Lured by the remarkable boom in China's economy from the late 1970s, millions of Chinese peasants have left – and continue to leave – their farms, and head for one of the cities along the east coast, to seek work and a better life.

This movement of people from rural areas to cities in China is one of the greatest migrations in human history; and it has led to many inequalities between rural and urban areas, with the average income in rural areas being about one-third of that in cities.

Source 9 Small rural villages dot the landscape of Guangxi Province in southern China.

From rural life …

Xianglan Li lives in a small village in Guangxi Province in southern China. Her day begins at dawn, when she wakes to sweep the concrete floor of the small home she shares with her husband – who works part time as a labourer on a building site in a nearby town – and their son. After breakfast Xianglan feeds the chickens and pigs, and collects waste from the pigsty for use as fertiliser in the fields.

The family home has no running water and no inside toilet. Using the water from the buckets she has placed beside the house to collect rainwater, Xianglan throws some on the road to keep down the dust. Like most rural villagers in China, the family has no car.

Xianglan joins other villagers walking to their fields a few kilometres from the village. The roads are slowly filling with small tractors and bikes, as well as farmers carrying their produce on long poles.

Xianglan spends her morning weeding the wheat and picking chillies for the market. In the afternoon she collects firewood from the nearby forest. Carrying the wood and chillies, she walks through the village to her home.

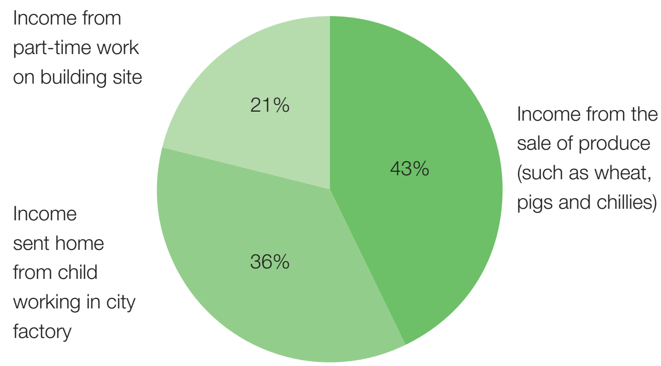
Like many people in rural China, Xianglan's family relies on money sent home from a relative working in the city. Xianglan's daughter, Xiu, has sent a new colour television from Shenzhen. There is only electricity for a few hours in the evening, so after dinner Xianglan and her husband sit on their bed and watch a new soap opera. They go to sleep as the sun sets.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Guangxi Province in southern China

… to urban life

Xianglan's daughter, Xiu, lives in Shenzhen, a major city with a population of more than 13 million people near Hong Kong, hundreds of kilometres from her family's village. Shenzhen is a full day's train ride away. Three years ago, Xiu left her family home to move to the city to find work. She now works in a factory, where she assembles laptop computers. Xiu lives in a dormitory owned by the company and shares a room with seven other workers. There is a cafeteria in the dormitory building and the bathrooms have hot and cold running water. There is reliable electricity, which the workers use to watch television in their spare time, wash their clothes and charge their mobile phones.

Xiu works 10 hours a day in the factory. She is pleased to have a job so she can help support her parents and brother, but she finds the work boring and repetitive. She knows that if she quits she will be quickly replaced, but she sometimes thinks about moving back to Guangxi. She catches the train home once a year to celebrate Chinese New Year with her family. Next year, she intends to take home a mobile phone for her father.



Source 10 Sources of income in Xianglan Li's household

Source 11 Xiu works in an electronics factory in Shenzhen, assembling computers for export.

6.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** why Chinese people are moving from rural areas to large cities.

2 What does Xiu do for a job? Where do you think she was trained for this job?

Analyse

3 Use the geographic concept of interconnections (see page 8 of 'The geography toolkit') to show how your classroom is linked to the factory where Xiu works.

4 a **Compare** the way of life in the village to that in the city. What are some of the major similarities and differences between the two places?

  b Do such differences occur between rural and urban places in Australia?

5 **Examine** Source 10.

  a What type of graph is this?

  b Use data from this graph to describe the income sources of the Li household.

Apply

6 In pairs, **discuss** the ways in which the migration of young people such as Xiu changes both the Chinese cities they migrate to and the rural villages they come from.

7 If Xiu's father visited her in Shenzhen, what do you think he would find most surprising about his daughter's way of life? Give reasons for your answer.

6.5 Case study: Growth in Shenzhen

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the effects of internal migration in China on the places of origin and destination.

megalopolis
a collection of large cities that are close together, and so closely linked that they effectively form one continuous urban area

Map it!
The Pearl River Delta Megalopolis

The city of Shenzhen in south-east China lies near the mouth of the Pearl River. In 1950, it was a small fishing village, home to about 3000 people. Today, the population is over 13 million. The region surrounding Shenzhen has experienced an urban explosion. As a result, the Pearl River **megalopolis** has formed. The Pearl River megalopolis is home to 55 million people, living in areas of south-east China including Guangzhou, Hong Kong and Macau.

The region has become an economic powerhouse, with different areas specialising in different industries. For example, Zhuhai in the region's west is a transportation hub, whereas Huizhou in the region's east produces petrochemicals. There is an interactive map of the Pearl City megalopolis available on your obook pro.

Shenzhen produces much of the world's electronic goods, including computers and mobile phones. It is very likely that somewhere in your home, school or even your pocket is something that was made in this region.

Source 12 A view of Shenzhen in 1969

Source 13 A view of Shenzhen in 2015

Internal migration to Shenzhen

The population boom in Shenzhen has been powered by internal migrants such as Xiu Li (see topic 6.4). It began in the late 1970s, when the Chinese Government began opening the Chinese economy to the rest of the world. Four locations in China were chosen as special economic zones (SEZs) where new industries would be built. Hundreds of millions of rural workers moved to the SEZs to work in these new industries. The government also encouraged this migration.

The Pearl River Delta was selected as the location of one of these SEZs, as it has a large harbour and is close to Hong Kong. The delta also provided a large area of cheap, flat land for the development of new industries (see Source 12).

The floating population

In China, there is a system of household registration known as *hukou*. Through this system, each person in China is registered in the place of their birth. Depending on where they were born, they are classified as either 'rural' or 'urban'. Each person carries this registration for life. As hundreds of millions of rural migrants flood into cities such as Shenzhen, they carry with them their rural registration. This marks them as non-residents of the city. These people have become known as the 'floating population' – people who work in the city, but legally belong to the countryside. As official residents of rural places, they are not entitled to benefits enjoyed by city residents. One of the important benefits they miss out on is owning property in the city where they now live.

Workers with rural *hukou* tend to fill lower-paid, less-skilled jobs in cities like Shenzhen. The children of these migrant workers often stay in the countryside, raised by their grandparents. Known as the 'left-behind children', they face a life largely without daily contact with one or both of their parents. Some geographers estimate that there are 70 million left-behind children in China. In recent years, the Chinese Government has made changes to the *hukou* system to try and reduce some of the social problems experienced by migrant workers.

Source 14 Two 'left-behind' children help their grandfather pull a cart in rural China.

6.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** why Shenzhen's population has grown so quickly.

2 a In your own words, **describe** the *hukou* system.
   b **Summarise** some of the social impacts of this system.

Analyse

3 **Compare** the two images of Shenzhen in Sources 12 and 13 by answering the following questions:
   a What type of geographical photograph is used in these sources: aerial or ground-level?
   b What major changes have occurred in the time between the two photographs?
   c Why have these changes occurred?

4 Use Google Earth to explore the Pearl River Delta.
   a List the names of some of the large cities on this delta.
   b What are some of the natural and human features of this region that make it ideal for building large industrial cities?
   c **Describe** the location of Shenzhen in relation to Hong Kong.

Apply

5 **Evaluate** the effect of the migration of workers to Shenzhen on China as a country by answering these questions:
   - What are the weaknesses of this system?
   - What are the strengths of this system?
   - What is your overall evaluation of this system?

6 Copy the following chart into your notebook. Complete a PMI (Plus, Minus, Interesting) analysis of the growth of Shenzhen by filling out the chart.

Plus	Minus	Interesting

6A

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Wealth and migration

As we saw on page 178, China's huge economic growth over the past few decades has resulted in one of the greatest movements of people in human history. More than half a billion rural migrants have left their homes and a life of poverty for booming cities, most of which are on the east coast of the country. While this has led to increased growth in the Chinese economy and its influence on the world, it has also contributed to important changes for individual Chinese people. By interpreting the maps on the following page, you will learn more about the patterns of wealth and health in China.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Drawing conclusions from maps

While maps are useful in everyday life for helping us to find our way, they can also reveal a great deal about places. By comparing different maps of the same place, we can see patterns that allow us to make conclusions about the place. Follow these steps to help you draw conclusions about life in China.

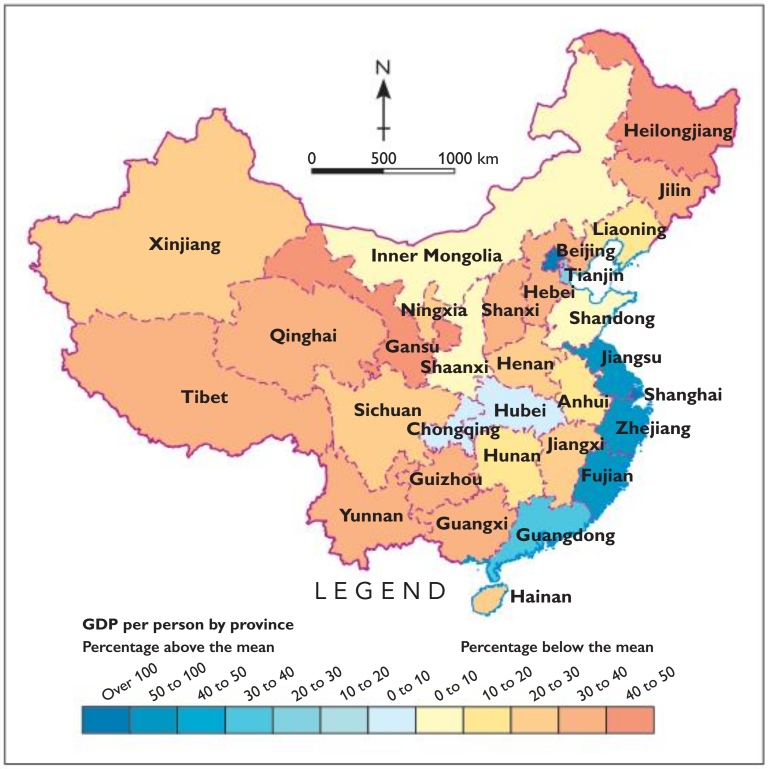
Step 1 Carefully examine each map in turn. Begin with the title, so you are clear about what is being shown in each map.

Step 2 Look carefully at the legend of each map. As the maps each show something different, their legends also differ. Before drawing any conclusions, you must clearly understand each legend.

Step 3 Link together the information for one place on the map. For example, for people living in the Xinjiang Province, the gross domestic product (GDP) per person is 40–50 per cent below the average mean (Source 15). Only a small number of migrants have moved into this province (Source 16).

Step 4 Look for general patterns on a map that match or appear similar to the general pattern on another map. This will allow you to draw conclusions that link together the information being shown on several maps. For example, provinces with low income levels tend to lose rather than gain migrants.

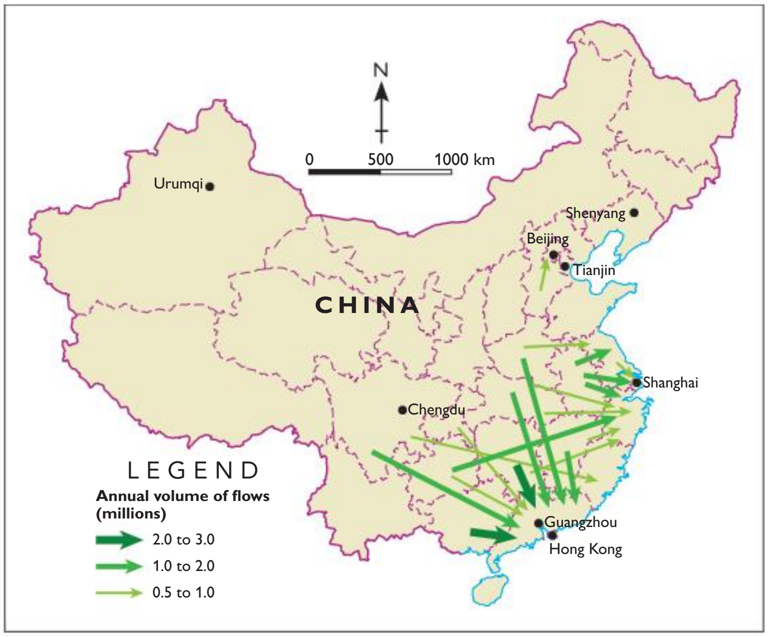
GDP PER PERSON FOR THE PROVINCES OF CHINA, 2019



Source 15 Source: Oxford University Press; data from statista

Note: 'GDP' is the total market value of all goods and services produced within a country in a given time frame. 'GDP per person' is an indication of people's average income.

MAP OF MIGRATION FLOWS, CHINA, 2005–10



Source 16 Source: Oxford University Press/ University of Washington

Practise the skill

1 Shenzhen is in Guangdong Province. **Describe** the migration flows to this province.

2 **Identify** the GDP per person in this province.

3 **Compare** this to the data for Sichuan Province. What are their similarities and what are their differences?

4 Write a short paragraph to **explain** the link between income and the direction of migration in China.

5 **Explain** how Sources 15 and 16 have helped you draw conclusions on migration in China.

Extend your understanding

1 On an A3 piece of paper, **construct** a sketch of Lee's migration model – see Source 12 on page 134 – as it applies to the cities of China. Use the information from Sources 15 and 16 and the case study of Shenzhen (page 180) to decide on the push and pull factors that attract migrants to China's cities.

Enlarged map
GDP per person for the provinces on China, 2019

Enlarged map
Map of migration flows, China, 2005–10

6.6 International migration to Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

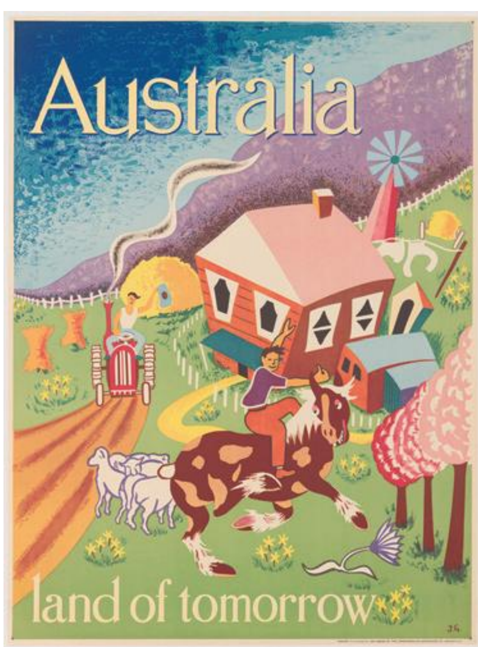
» understand why international migrants settle in Australia.

Modern Australia has been created and shaped by national and international population movements. From the arrival of the First Fleet in 1788 – loaded with almost 1500 convicts, sailors and soldiers – Australia has been populated by waves of migrants. First, penal colonies at Sydney, Port Arthur and Fremantle were established. Then large numbers of migrants from Britain and Ireland came to establish towns and farms. From the middle of the nineteenth century, migrants arrived from across Asia and the Pacific Islands, and continued to flow from Europe. They were attracted by various factors, such as gold, work, and the promise of a new life.

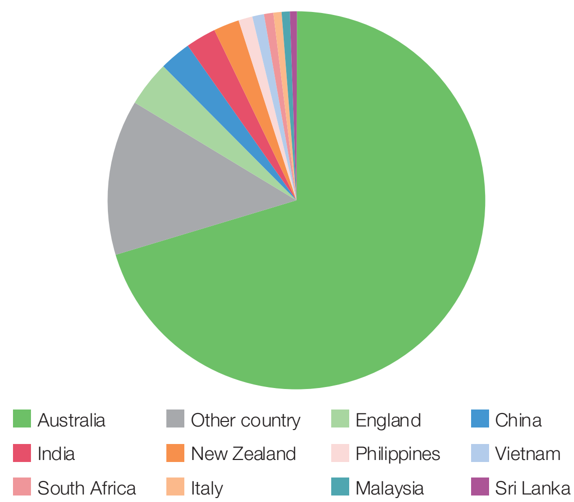
During the 1900s, migrants from Britain continued to dominate. An immigration policy that discriminated against non-white migrants (known as the White Australia Policy) was enacted in the first days of the new nation in 1901 and remained in place until the 1970s.

The end of World War II in 1945 saw waves of migrants come to Australia from southern European countries, such as Italy and Greece. As immigration policies were freed up, these waves were followed by others from the Middle East, Asia and South America. Australian society is therefore very different from societies in long-established countries in Europe and Asia. Just like the United States, Canada, New Zealand and Argentina, this country is largely a nation of migrants. There are 7.5 million migrants living in Australia, and about half of all Australians have at least one parent who was born overseas.

Source 1 A family in Liverpool, England boarding a ship for Australia in 1955



Source 2 An immigration poster from 1948; this was used in Britain to attract migrants to Australia.

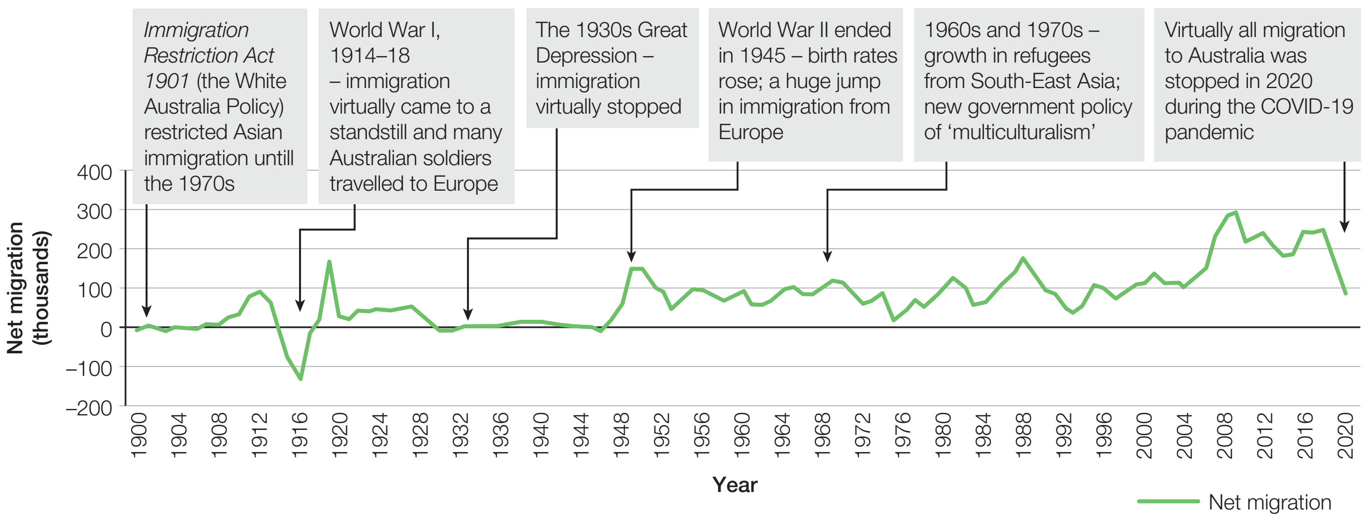


Source 3 Australian citizens by country of birth, 2019; in 2019, more than one-quarter of Australians (around 29 per cent) were born overseas.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on international migration to Australia

Multicultural Australia

Today, Australia is considered by many to be a multicultural country. This description acknowledges that the people of Australia come from a wide range of ethnic and cultural backgrounds. In *The People of Australia – Australia's Multicultural Policy* (2011), the Australian Government states that 'multiculturalism is in Australia's national interest and speaks to fairness and inclusion. It enhances respect and support for cultural, religious and linguistic diversity.' On 21 March each year, many Australian schools and communities celebrate Australia's cultural diversity by holding Harmony Day events.



Source 4 Net migration (total arrivals less total departures) to Australia during the period 1900–2020

6.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** multiculturalism.

2 **Identify** the most significant waves of migration to Australia in the past 100 years.

Analyse

3 Use Lee's migration model (see Source 12 in topic 5.4 on page 134) to reflect on migration in Australia, such as:

a some of the push factors that might encourage people to migrate to Australia

b some of the pull factors that might encourage people to migrate to Australia.

4 **Examine** Source 2.

a How is Australia portrayed in this poster?

b Explain why this might seem attractive to people in Britain at the time.

5 **Examine** Source 3.

a What type of graph is this?

b In which three countries are most migrants to Australia born?

Apply

6 Investigate your local community to find out how international migration has shaped it.

a Conduct some fieldwork in your local area. Take photographs of any places or things that you think have been shaped by migration.

b Use the photographs you collected to **create** an annotated visual display, showing your findings.

6.7 The changing face of Australia

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

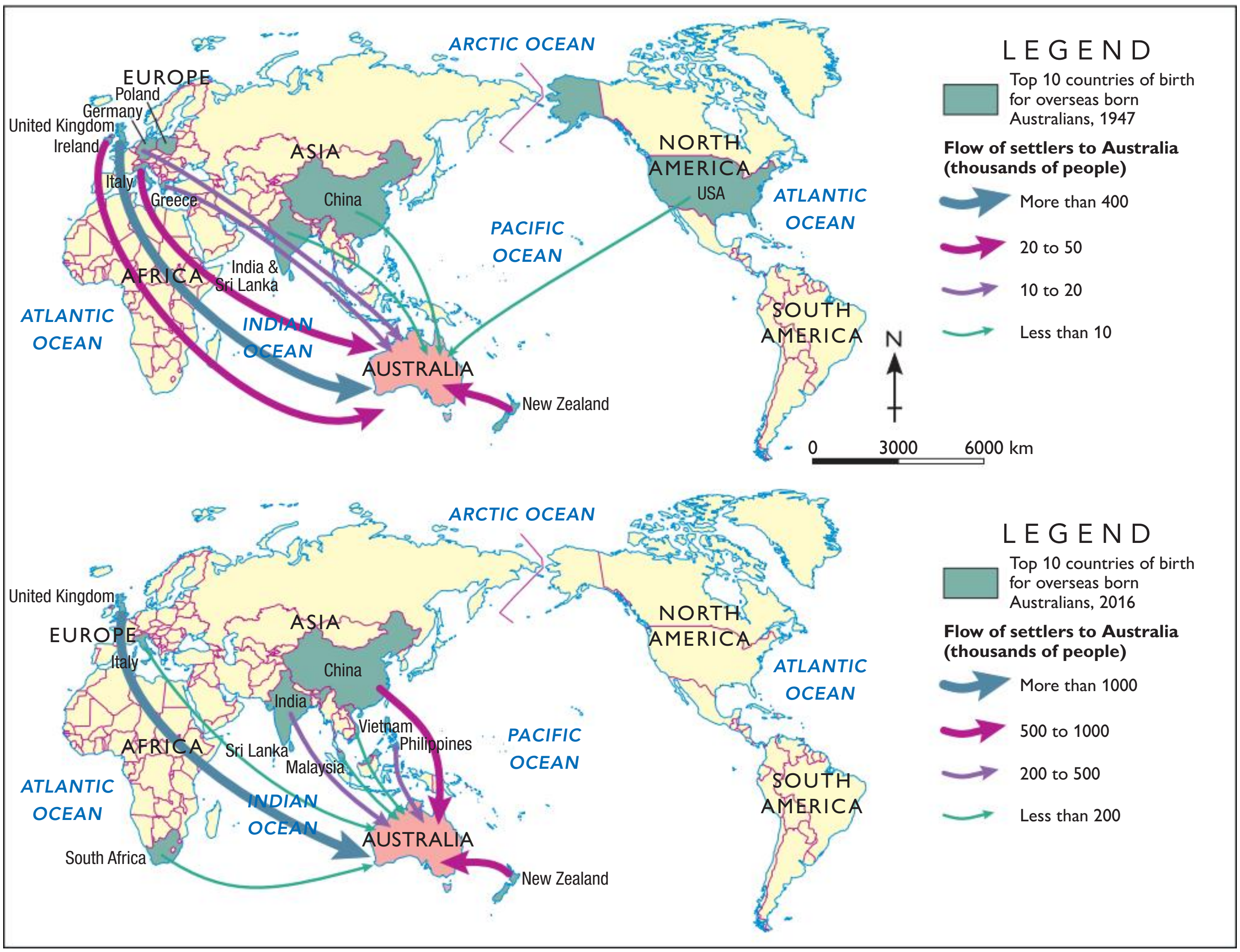
- explain the relationship between the cultural diversity of places and international migration
- summarise the different types of international migration, including skilled migration and forced migration.

Australia is a multicultural nation – that is, a nation of many cultures. As we saw in topic 6.6 on page 184, Australia's cultural diversity is due mainly to our history. Our population is made up of First Nations peoples, the descendants of British colonists, and migrants from the world's many countries. Modern Australia is largely a land of migrants and their children. Today, in Australia there are people from more than 200 countries.

Multiculturalism through migration

Australia is a country that has been shaped by migration. As each migrant wave reaches our shores, the cultural DNA of our nation is changed.

THE TOP 10 COUNTRIES OF BIRTH FOR OVERSEAS-BORN AUSTRALIANS, 1947 AND 2016



Source 5

Source: Oxford University Press; data from the Australian Government

The 2016 census was the first in Australia's history to record more migrants from Asia than Europe. While the COVID-19 pandemic stopped virtually all international migration to Australia in 2020–21, the decade leading up to 2020 saw immigration of Chinese-born and Indian-born people increase. At the same time, immigration of UK-born and New Zealand-born people decreased.

Many migrants to Australia are international students or temporary workers who will return to their country of birth after a few years, but some choose to stay. They become **permanent residents** or Australian citizens. These migrants bring with them different cultures and ways of living that eventually become a part of Australia's identity as a nation.

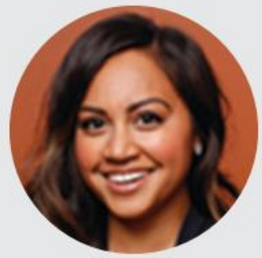
permanent residents non-citizens with a permanent visa that allows them to remain in a country indefinitely

The number of languages spoken in a nation is a good indicator of its multiculturalism. In Australia, the most dominant language is English, but more than 200 other languages are spoken in homes every day. The most common are Mandarin, Vietnamese, Arabic, Cantonese and Punjabi.

Comedian and artist **Anh Do** arrived in Australia as a refugee from Vietnam.

Australia's first female Prime Minister, **Julia Gillard**, was born in Wales and migrated to Australia as a child.

Host of *The Project*, **Waleed Aly**, is a Sunni Muslim, born and raised in Melbourne by Egyptian migrant parents.



Singer and actor **Jessica Mauboy** is an Aboriginal Australian.

Source 6 Just a few of the faces of cultural diversity in Australia

Types of migrants

In general, Australian governments encourage voluntary migrants to live and work in Australia. In times of strong economic growth, there is a higher demand for migrants; but the migration intake may fall when the economy is weak and unemployment climbs.

Enlarged map
The top 10 countries of birth for overseas-born Australians, 1947 and 2016

The federal government is responsible for deciding on the number of migrants who may settle in Australia each year. The government sets out categories for migration:

- permanent migration visa categories:
  - skilled labour – to fill specific shortages in the workforce
  - family – to help families to reunite
  - humanitarian – to assist people in need, such as refugees
- temporary migration visa categories:
  - student – for individuals coming to Australia to study for a fixed period
  - worker – for skilled workers migrating for a short period and working holiday visitors
  - visitor – for short-term visitors for business, family or tourism.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the changing face of Australia

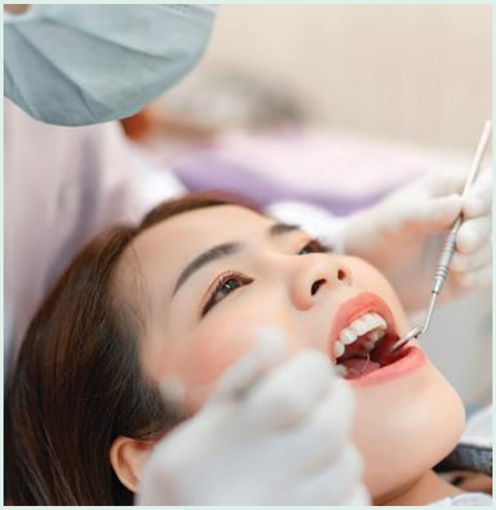
Preference is generally given to migrants with skills that are needed in Australia, or to those with family members who have already migrated.

CASE STUDY

A skilled migrant to Australia

Dr Adam Rahman applied to migrate to Australia as a skilled migrant from Cairo in Egypt. As an experienced dentist, his skills were in demand in Australia. His application was supported by an official from the Goulburn region in New South Wales. This official recognised that more dentists were needed in their area. Since migrating to Goulburn and starting a dentistry business, Dr Rahman has also founded several dentistry training academies in Sydney and Melbourne.

He employs between 15 and 20 people and helps train many dentists.



Source 7 Dr Adam Rahman is an experienced dentist who uses his skills to contribute to the community.

Forced migration to Australia

Some arrivals in Australia are forced migrants, such as refugees. The number of refugees allowed to settle permanently has been a highly debated topic in Australian politics for many years.

CASE STUDY

A forced migrant to Australia

Dabessa and Lelissa worked as television journalists in Ethiopia. They are members of the Oromo people, an ethnic community that has been persecuted for many years in their home country. In 2004, Dabessa was arrested by members of the military. They accused him of supporting a group that was trying to overthrow the government. He was held in prison for three years and tried in court 125 times. He was eventually released.

Fearing for his life, Dabessa fled to Kenya. His children were able to join him, but Lelissa was arrested and placed in prison while she was still in Ethiopia. Dabessa and his children were brought to Australia by the United Nations and were able to settle in Australia as refugees.

Source 8 The United Nations helped Dabessa and his children arrive and settle in Australia.

After three years, Lelissa was released from prison. Dabessa applied to the Australian Government for her to be allowed to migrate to this country as a family migrant. The application process took three more years, but eventually the family was reunited in Melbourne.

As explained on page 173, refugees are people who are forced to leave their home because it is no longer safe. Often, they move to other parts of their home country. Sometimes they travel to other countries, including Australia.

In 1997, the federal government created the Refugee and Humanitarian Program. It is through this program that refugees and other people who need protection settle in Australia. Each year, the Minister of Immigration, Multicultural Affairs and Citizenship sets the number of people that will be taken into Australia. This decision is usually made in consultation with the United Nations and the Refugee Council of Australia. Since 1997, Australia has resettled more than 880 000 refugees as residents around the country.

In 2013, the government changed its policy so that refugees arriving by boat (sometimes referred to as 'boat people') would not receive a permanent humanitarian visa. Instead, they are given temporary protection. This means they are no longer counted as a part of the Refugee and Humanitarian Program. They can apply to be refugees, but only if the minister allows them to.

These changes have led to heated debates in politics and among the members of the Australian public. While many believe we should limit the number of refugees we take into the country, others believe we should offer protection to those who have been forced to leave their home. You may have seen the issue talked about on television, heard it debated on the radio or discussed it around the dinner table at home.

6.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. In your own words, **describe** how the origins of migrants to Australia have changed over time.
2. **Define** the term 'skilled migrant'.
3. **Outline** how Dr Rahman has contributed to Australian society.

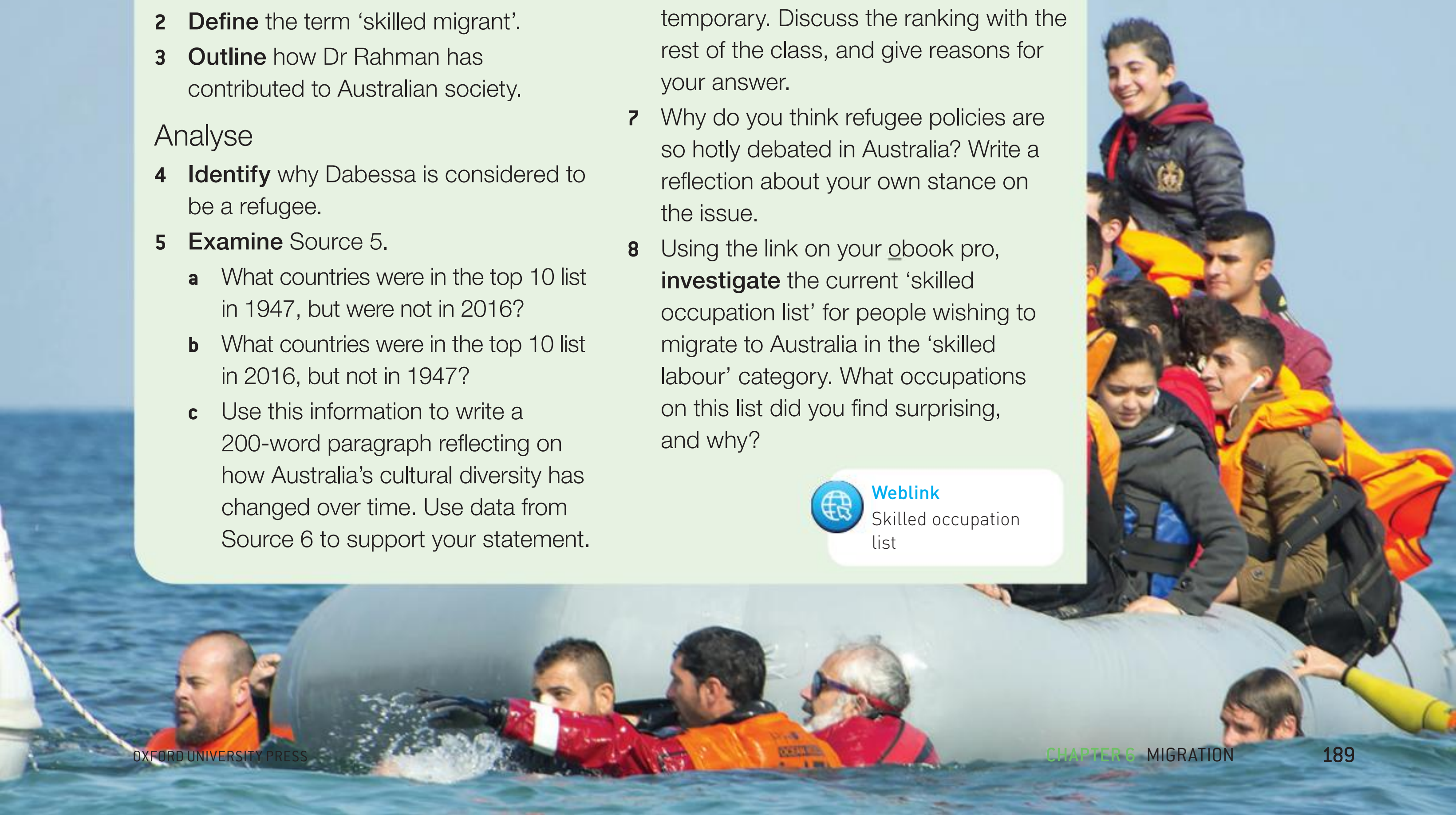
Analyse

4. **Identify** why Dabessa is considered to be a refugee.
5. **Examine** Source 5.
   a. What countries were in the top 10 list in 1947, but were not in 2016?
   b. What countries were in the top 10 list in 2016, but not in 1947?
   c. Use this information to write a 200-word paragraph reflecting on how Australia's cultural diversity has changed over time. Use data from Source 6 to support your statement.

Apply

6. In pairs, rank the different visa categories of migrants in order of importance, both permanent and temporary. Discuss the ranking with the rest of the class, and give reasons for your answer.
7. Why do you think refugee policies are so hotly debated in Australia? Write a reflection about your own stance on the issue.
8. Using the link on your obook pro, **investigate** the current 'skilled occupation list' for people wishing to migrate to Australia in the 'skilled labour' category. What occupations on this list did you find surprising, and why?

Weblink
Skilled occupation list



Source 9 Some refugees travel by boat. These refugees are sometimes referred to as 'boat people'.

6.8 Migrant communities in Australian cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the relationship between international migration and urban concentration within Australia.

Enlarged map
Concentration of Brisbane residents of selected ancestries, 2021

Many people migrating to Australia choose to start their new lives in areas of a city where people with a similar cultural background have also settled. Over time, these areas can develop particular characteristics that reflect the cultures of the people who live there. For example, the Melbourne suburb of Dandenong is home to a large Vietnamese population, while the Sydney suburb of Parramatta has a large Indian population.

New arrivals tend to settle in the same areas for a variety of reasons. The houses there may be affordable, they may have family or friends close by, or there may be a number of community groups and support services nearby. These services might include emergency accommodation, translation services, adult language and education centres, employment agencies and accommodation services (such as Centrelink and the Department of Housing). These areas may also provide important social institutions (such as places of worship), meeting places and shops selling familiar items (such as food, utensils and clothing).

For people from non-English-speaking backgrounds, an important factor that pulls them to live in certain suburbs is the presence of professionals (such as doctors, lawyers and accountants), shopkeepers and other people who speak their language. This can be vital in order for them to carry out their day-to-day lives.

CASE STUDY

The Chinese community in Sunnybank, Brisbane

Source 10
Sunnybank is home to a wide range of Chinese restaurants and food markets due to its large Asian-born population.

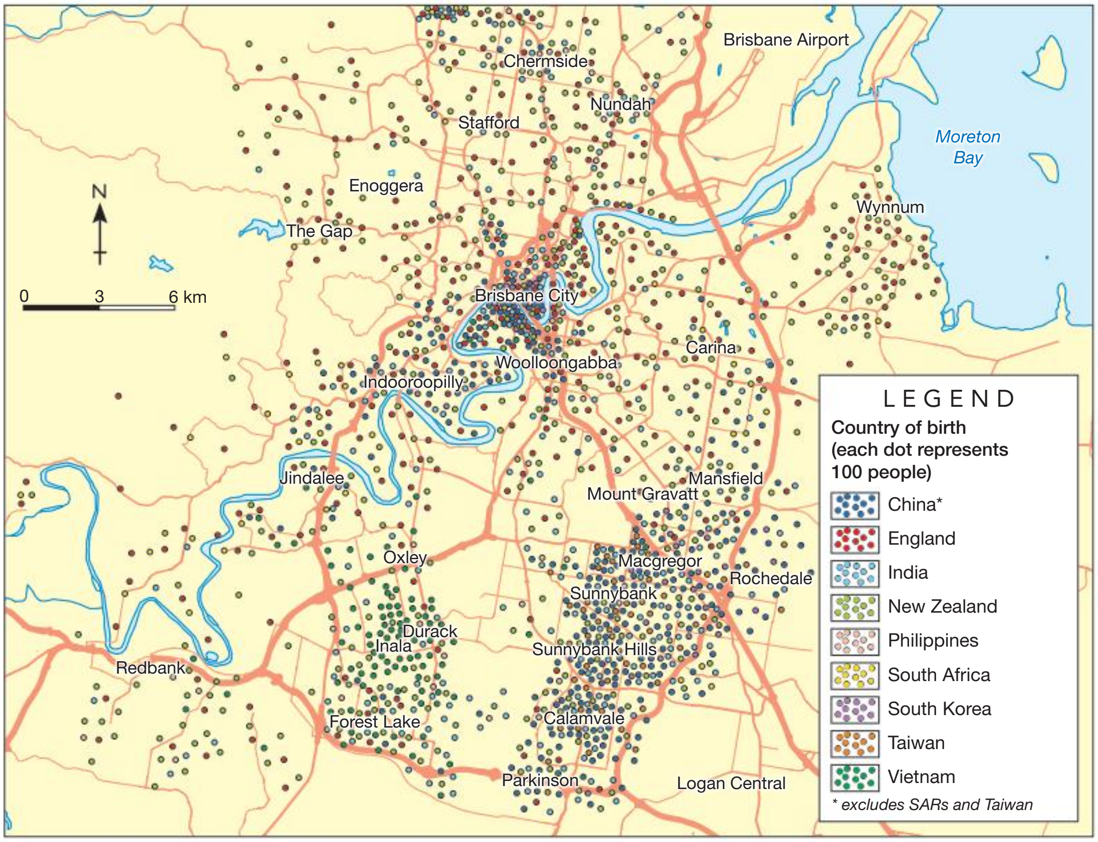
The suburb of Sunnybank in Brisbane's south is an example of an area with what geographers call a high ethnic concentration. People of Chinese ancestry make up 35 per cent of the suburb's population, with 16.9 per cent of residents born in China, and 7.5 per cent in Taiwan.

Often referred to as Brisbane's 'new Chinatown', Sunnybank has experienced several waves of migrants from China, Hong Kong and Taiwan since the 1980s. These residents largely came to Australia as skilled or business migrants, while the nearby Griffith University campus has made it a popular suburb for Chinese students. Many of these migrants have chosen to settle permanently in Australia as citizens. Once a migrant becomes a citizen, they can then seek to have family members join them under the family visa scheme.

Chinese migration to Australia dates back to the 1820s, but it boomed during the gold rushes of the 1850s and 1860s. Throughout the twentieth century, a series of Australian government policies (including the White Australia Policy) restricted the number of migrants from Asian countries. Since these policies were abandoned in the 1970s, there has been a steady increase in the numbers of Chinese people settling here. More than half a million Australian citizens were born in China. Mandarin is the second-most spoken language in our country, after English.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on migrant communities in Australian cities

CONCENTRATION OF BRISBANE RESIDENTS OF SELECTED ANCESTRIES, 2021



Source 11 Source: Oxford University Press; data from the Australian Bureau of Statistics

6.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three reasons why people from the same language and cultural backgrounds tend to settle in the same areas of a city.

2 List three pull factors that encourage non-English speaking migrants to live in a certain suburb.

Comprehend

3 Use the PQE method (see page 31 of 'The geography toolkit') to **describe** the distribution of residents from Chinese backgrounds in Brisbane shown in Source 11.

4 **Explain** how the arrival of large numbers of people from similar cultural and language backgrounds can change the areas in which they settle.

5 About 7 in every 100 people in Brisbane have Chinese ancestry. In Sunnybank, it is 35 in every 100. What can geographers learn by comparing these figures?

Apply

6 Access the profile for your community using the census data available on the Australian Bureau of Statistics website (a weblink is available on your obook pro). **Create** a bar graph of the top 5 languages spoken at home in your town or suburb using the 'country of birth' data.

7 Imagine you are a migrant moving to a place where nobody speaks your language. Write a diary entry that explores the challenges this would create.

Weblink
Australian Bureau of Statistics

6B

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

International migration and First Nations peoples

The settlement of Australia by migrants has had a devastating impact on Australia's First Nations peoples since the arrival of European colonists. For example, the population of the Darung people around Botany Bay – where the first wave of European colonisers landed in 1788 – fell by 90 per cent in just three years.

Source 12 This plaque commemorates the 28 unarmed Aboriginal people massacred in retaliation for cattle theft at Myall Creek in New South Wales, 1838.

Europeans spread across the country in search of farming land and mineral wealth, and by 1900, the number of Aboriginal peoples in Australia was less than a quarter of what it had been in 1788. This fall in population was caused by many things that began with the arrival of Europeans. Some Aboriginal peoples died from diseases that had been introduced into Australia by the Europeans, such as influenza and measles. Others suffered from changes in diet, as they were cut off from their usual food sources. Most disturbingly, many were deliberately killed by white colonists or died in conflicts with them.

Today, First Nations peoples have a life expectancy eight years less than that of non-Indigenous Australians. Both Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples are underrepresented in government, education and employment, and overrepresented in prisons when compared with the wider Australian population.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Reading a complex map

Complex maps contain more than one set of information. Follow these steps to help you read and understand a complex map.

Step 1 Look carefully at the legend. Complex maps can have more than one part to a legend. These parts will be represented on the map in different ways. For example, in Source 13 areas of colour are used to show the different types of First Nations land across Australia. Different-coloured symbols are used to show a range of significant sites.

Step 2 Train your eyes to look for one set of information at a time. For example, look at the solid blocks of colour on the map and work out what they tell you.

Step 3 Move to a different set of information and work out what that represents.

Step 4 Look for concentrations of the same symbol in areas to see if patterns exist.

For more information on this skill, see page 20 of 'The geography toolkit'.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Practise the skill

Study Source 13.

1 **Describe** where the largest areas of First Nations-owned (freehold) lands are located.

2 **Name** the states and territories that have no First Nations-owned or leased land over 100 square kilometres.

3 The significant sites are harder to pick out on this crowded map, but the colours help them stand out. **Describe** the location of the Waterloo Creek massacre site, and how it appears on the map.

4 **Identify** the areas of Australia in which there were many sites of massacres.

5 **Identify** one significant Aboriginal art site in South Australia.

Extend your understanding

1 List three examples of how international migration to Australia impacted on the population of First Nations peoples.

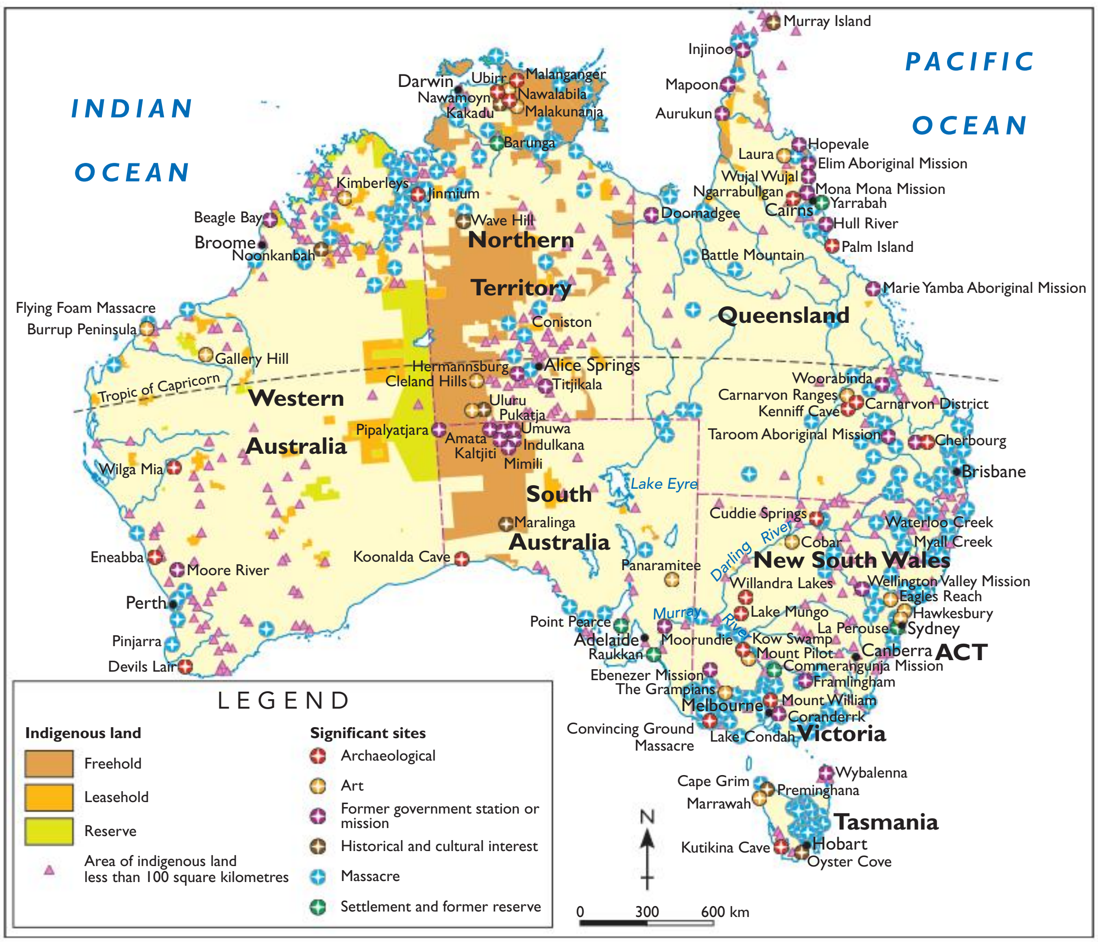
2 **Investigate** another indigenous group, such as the Māori peoples in New Zealand or the First Nations peoples of North America.

  a How was this group affected by early international migration?

  b How did this group respond to early international migration?

  c Find out the life expectancy, employment and imprisonment rates of members of this group compared with the rest of their country's population. How do these compare with those of First Nations peoples?

AUSTRALIA: FIRST NATIONS LANDS AND SIGNIFICANT SITES



Source 13

Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
Australia: First Nations lands and significant sites

6 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Reading graphs

Examine the following graphs and answer the questions that follow about changes to India's population.

1 **Identify** which of these graphs best shows why many Indians choose to move to urban areas. Why did you choose this graph? (2 marks)

2 a **Identify** which of these graphs best shows how India's population is changing over time. (1 mark)

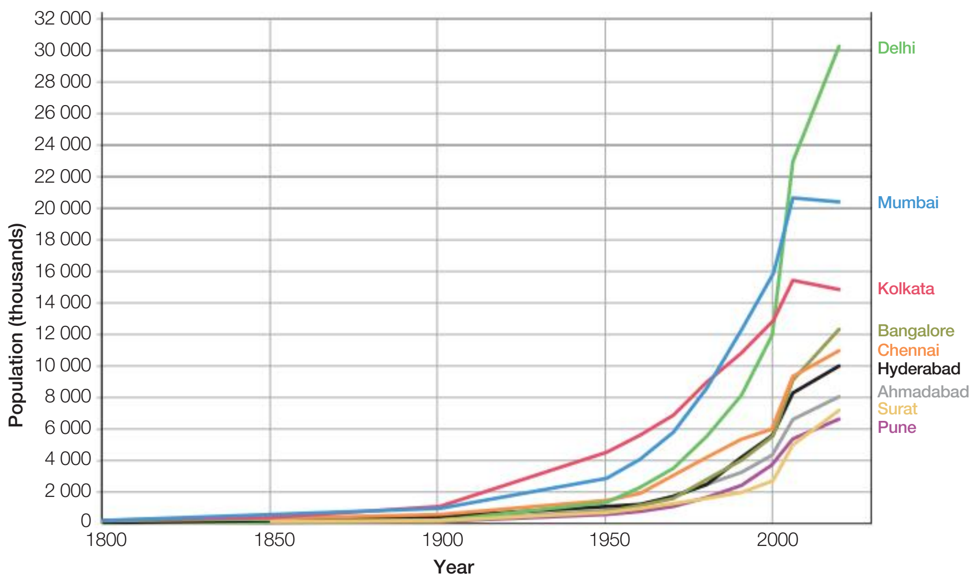
b Using the graph you identified in question 2a, **describe** two changes that occurred to India's population between 1990 and 2020. (4 marks)

3 Are conditions better in rural areas or urban areas? **Explain** your answer using data from the sources. (3 marks)

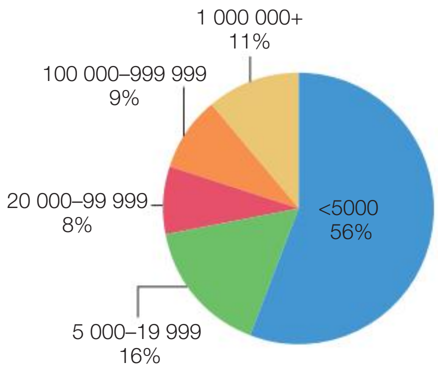
4 **Compare** the conditions in rural areas with those in urban areas. What are some key similarities and what are some key differences? (4 marks)

5 **Propose** three pull factors and three push factors that explain why many people in India are moving from rural areas to urban areas. (6 marks)

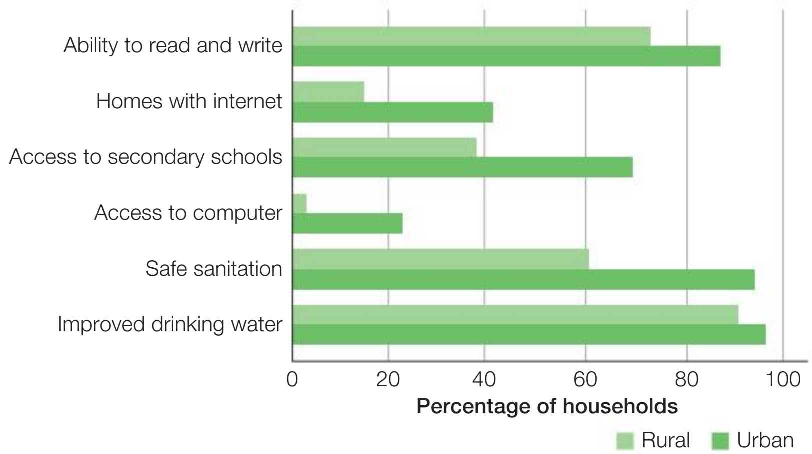
(Total: 20 marks)



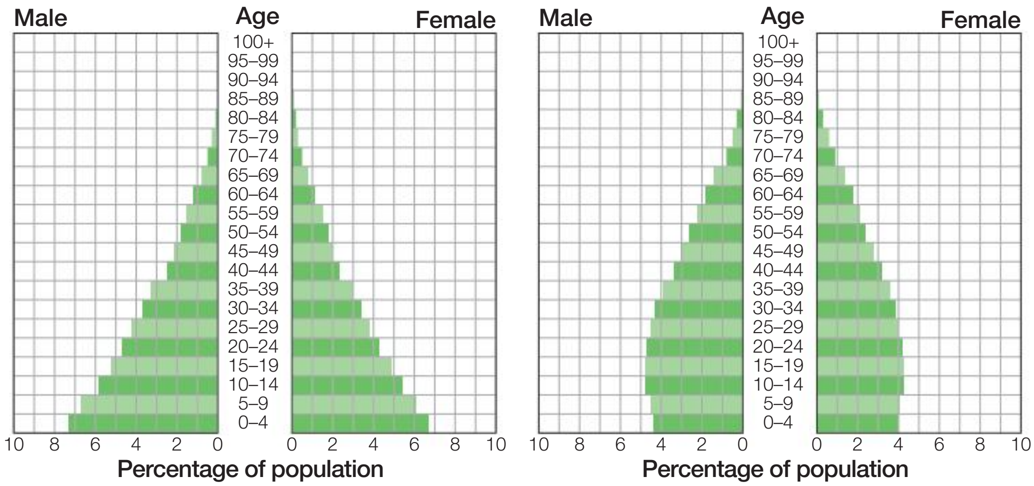
Source 14 Growth of India's cities, 1800–2020



Source 15 India's population ranked by the size of the community in which people live



Source 16 Household services and amenities of urban and rural Indians



Source 17 Population pyramids for India – 1990 (left; total population: 873 277 798) and 2020 (right; total population: 1 380 004 385)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify and explain the main types and patterns of internal and international migration.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.1, page 172.
Identify and describe the reasons for and effects of internal migration in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.2, page 174.
Explain the influence of mining developments on internal migration in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.3, page 176.
Identify and explain the patterns of internal migration in China.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.4, page 178.
Describe the effects of internal migration in China on the places of origin and destination.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.5, page 180.
Understand why international migrants settle in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.6, page 184.
Explain the connection between the cultural diversity of places and international migration. Summarise the different types of internal migration, including skilled migration and forced migration.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.7, page 186.
Describe the relationship between international migration and urban concentration within Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 6.8, page 190.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 6

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 6

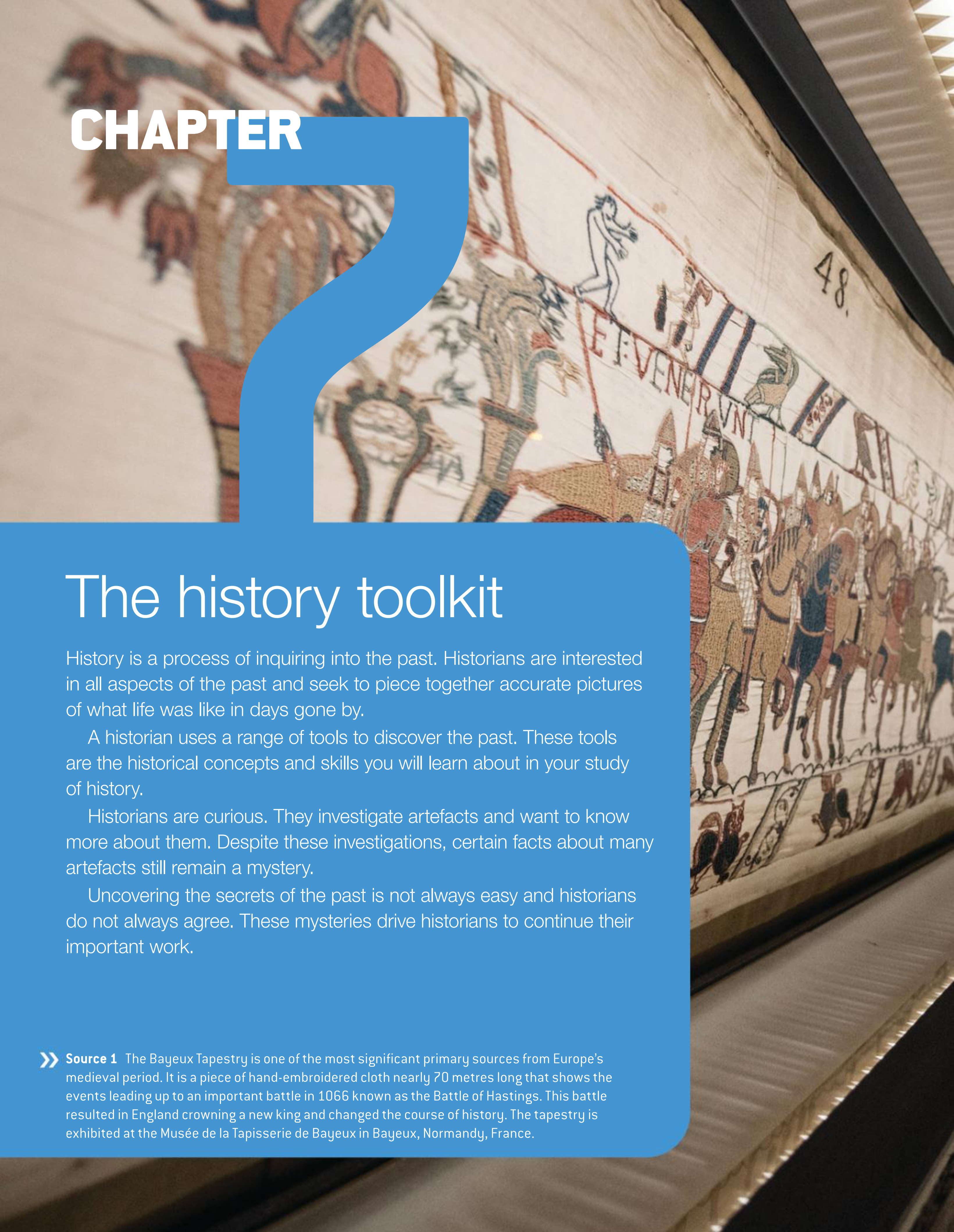
Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Migration.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 6


2

PART 2

History



CHAPTER 7

The history toolkit

History is a process of inquiring into the past. Historians are interested in all aspects of the past and seek to piece together accurate pictures of what life was like in days gone by.

A historian uses a range of tools to discover the past. These tools are the historical concepts and skills you will learn about in your study of history.

Historians are curious. They investigate artefacts and want to know more about them. Despite these investigations, certain facts about many artefacts still remain a mystery.

Uncovering the secrets of the past is not always easy and historians do not always agree. These mysteries drive historians to continue their important work.

Source 1 The Bayeux Tapestry is one of the most significant primary sources from Europe's medieval period. It is a piece of hand-embroidered cloth nearly 70 metres long that shows the events leading up to an important battle in 1066 known as the Battle of Hastings. This battle resulted in England crowning a new king and changed the course of history. The tapestry is exhibited at the Musée de la Tapisserie de Bayeux in Bayeux, Normandy, France.

7A
What are the historical concepts and skills?

7.1 Historical concepts and skills

Historians use concepts to help them investigate and understand the past. As you learn to apply each concept, you will begin to think like a historian. Six key concepts in history are:

- evidence
- cause and effect
- continuity and change
- perspectives
- interpretations and contestability
- significance.

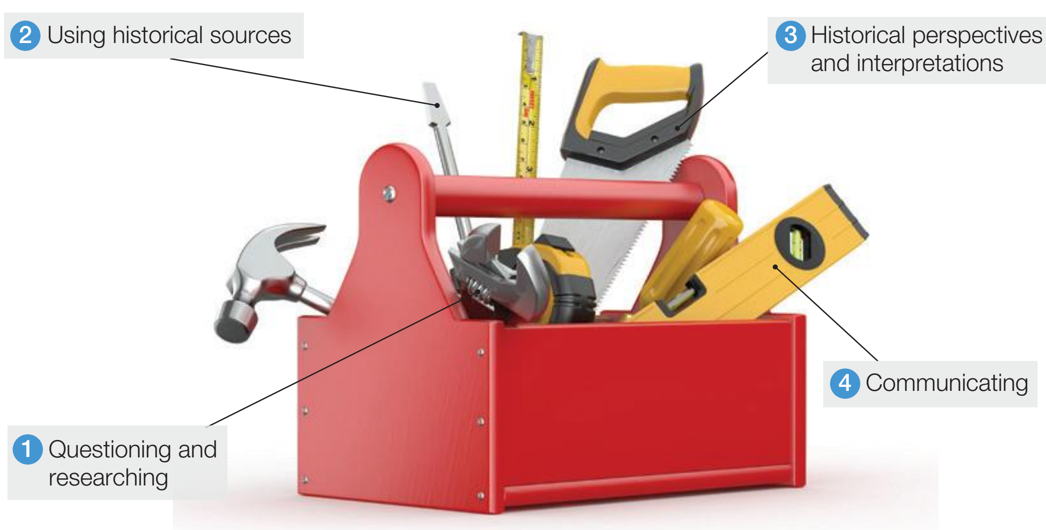
These concepts will be covered in more detail in the following topics.

There are a number of key skills that historians use to successfully investigate the past. They are:

1. Questioning and researching
2. Using historical sources
3. Historical perspectives and interpretations
4. Communicating.

Each of the skills you will learn over the course of this year is explained in this chapter, and by studying history you will gradually master each one. As you develop each new skill you will have gained another important tool for understanding and explaining events and people that have shaped our world.

It might help you to think of each of these skills as individual tools in your toolkit.



Source 1 Historians use several different skills. Each of these skills is like a tool in a toolkit.

7.2 Questioning and researching

Developing historical questions about the past

hypothesis
a considered theory or statement, based on research and evidence, about something that has not been proven (plural: hypotheses)

One way to understand the past is to undertake a historical inquiry. A historical inquiry is a process of asking questions, finding and analysing sources, and using information from sources as evidence to develop an informed explanation or argument about the past. Historians begin any historical inquiry by asking big questions. From research in response to these big questions, historians develop a **hypothesis** about what events took place, why, where, and who was involved.

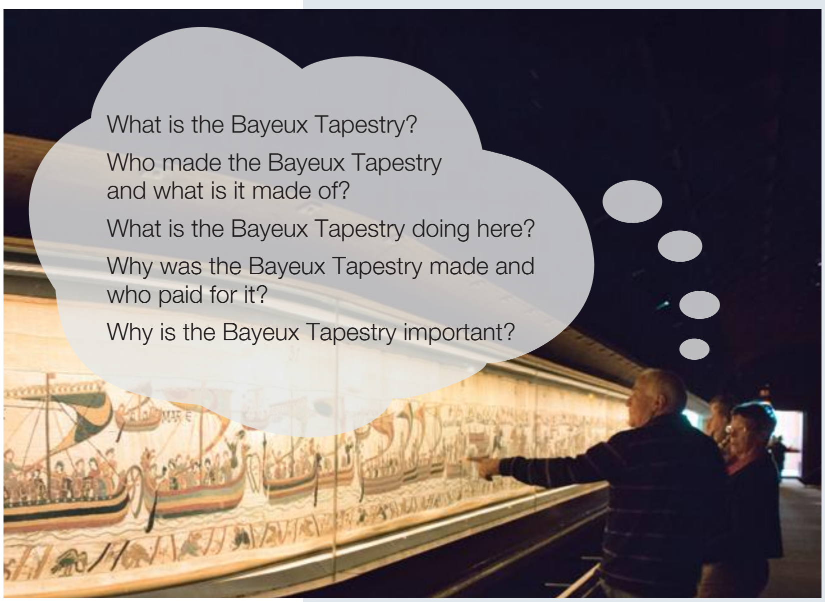
KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Generating questions

Look closely at Source 2. This visitor looking at the Bayeux Tapestry is asking some important questions. You can learn to do this too by starting your questions with the words 'what', 'where', 'how', 'when' and 'why', for example:

- What is the Bayeux Tapestry?
- Who made it?
- When was it made?

The best questions open up an exciting area for you to explore. For example, the visitor might ask a simple question, such as: 'What does the Bayeux Tapestry look like?' This is a question with a relatively simple answer. A better historical question for the visitor to ask might be: 'What does the design and construction of the Bayeux Tapestry tell us about the skills of people living in medieval Europe?' This question opens up a whole new area for exploration.



Source 2 Developing historical questions is an important part of every historical inquiry.

Practise the skill

1. Generate four questions of your own that will help you research the Bayeux Tapestry.
2. Once you have generated your questions, **identify** the information you will need to answer these questions and where you might be able to locate it.
3. Are there any questions for which you have not been able to find reliable evidence or answers? What reasons might there be for this?

Locating relevant sources

Sources provide information for historians. Locating relevant sources is a valuable skill that usually involves a number of different research methods, such as:

- using an online search engine such as Google
- visiting museum and government websites
- looking at newspaper and magazine archives
- contacting local historical societies
- interviewing older family members about the past.

Source 3 Research is an important part of history. Your teacher or librarian can help you develop your research skills, both for the library and online.

Locating relevant sources online

Books and newspapers are valuable sources of information. Research is also conducted online. Your teacher or librarian can help you to develop good research skills. To make sure that sources gathered online are accurate, reliable and relevant, follow the guidelines below:

- Search engines are useful research tools, but sometimes material found online is not reliable and can contain inaccurate and misleading information, or material that is out of date. When using search engines, use keywords and be as specific as you can.
- Use sites linked to educational institutions, government departments, reputable companies, museums and universities to find reliable information. A quick way of telling if a site is reputable is to look at the suffix of the domain name, which is part of the URL (internet address).
- Avoid blogs or social media posts. If you do find information on a blog or social media site, be sure to verify it by using a more reliable source.
- Never cut and paste information you find online straight into your own work. Taking someone else's work, ideas or words and using them as if they were your own is called plagiarism. Plagiarism is unethical and if you plagiarise, your work can be rejected.

Source 4 Some common domain suffixes

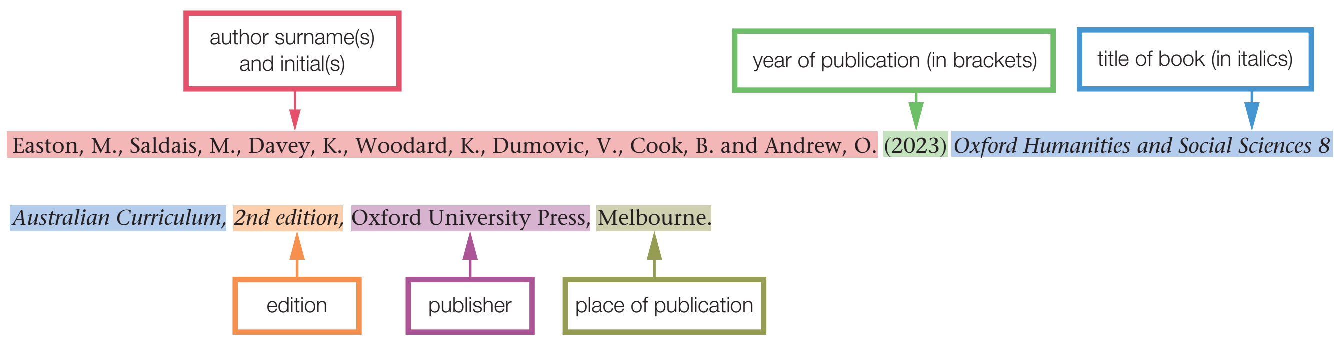
Domain suffix	Description
.edu	The site is linked to an educational institution, such as a university or school. These sites are generally very reliable.
.gov	The site is linked to a government institution. These sites are generally very reliable.
.net	The site is linked to a commercial organisation or network provider. Anyone can buy a domain name with this suffix, and generally nobody regulates the information posted on the site. As a result, these sites may be unreliable.
.org	The site is linked to an organisation. Generally, these organisations are not-for-profit (e.g. Greenpeace, World Vision International, British Museum). If the organisation is reputable and can be contacted, it generally means that the information provided has been checked and verified by that organisation. You need to be aware of any special interests that the organisation may represent (e.g. particular religious, commercial or political interests), as this may influence what it has to say on a particular issue.
.com	The site is linked to a commercially based operation and is likely to be promoting certain products or services. Domain names with this suffix can be purchased by anyone, so the content should be carefully checked and verified using another, more reliable source.

Recording relevant sources

As you identify and locate relevant sources, it is essential that you record details to include in your reference list or bibliography.

When citing (mentioning) a book in a bibliography, include the following, if available, in this order:

1. author surname(s) and initial(s)
2. year of publication (in brackets)
3. title of book (in italics)
4. edition (if relevant)
5. publisher
6. place of publication

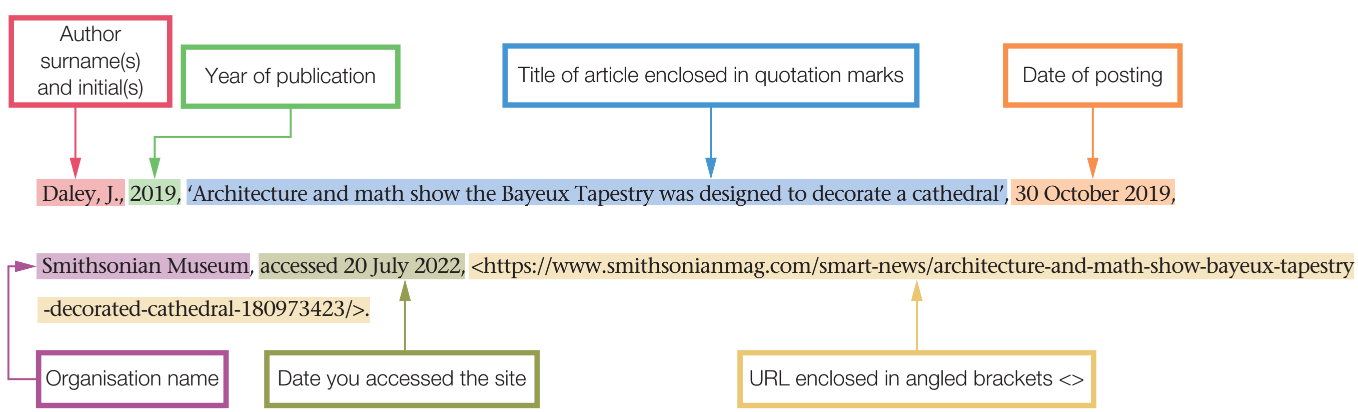


Source 5 An example of how to cite a book in a bibliography

When citing an online source in a bibliography include the following information, if available, in this order:

1. author surname(s) and initial(s) or organisation name
2. year of publication or date of webpage (last update)
3. title of document (article) enclosed in quotation marks
4. date of posting
5. organisation name (if different from author name)
6. date you accessed the site
7. URL or web address enclosed in angled brackets <>.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 7.2.



Source 6 An example of how to cite an online source in a bibliography

7.3 Using historical sources

Understanding evidence and sources

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

What is evidence?

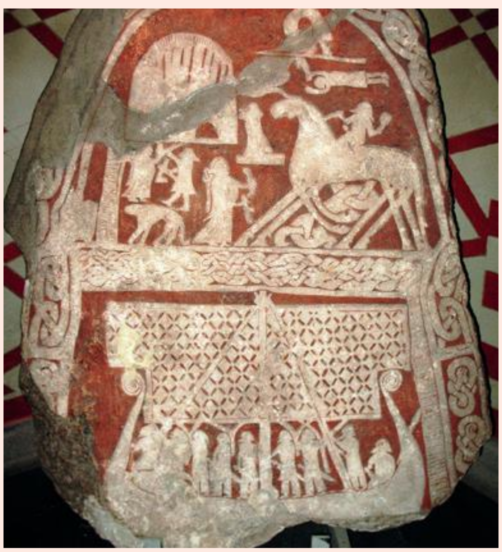
Evidence is the information gathered from historical sources that can be used to develop, revise or support an argument or challenge an interpretation. Evidence can come from many different sources; for example, films, maps, newspapers, buildings, nursery rhymes and clothing.

There are two types of sources:

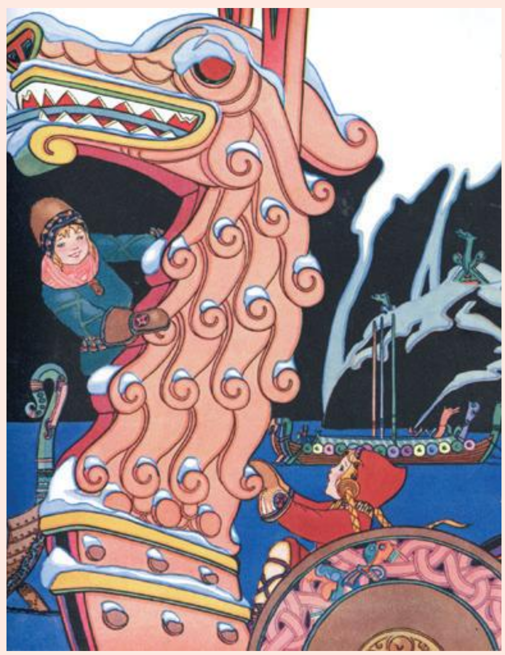
- *Primary sources* are things that existed, or were written or made, at the time being investigated. Examples of primary sources include human remains, **artefacts**, official documents (such as laws and treaties) and personal documents (such as diaries and letters). These original, first-hand accounts are analysed by historians to answer questions about the past.
- *Secondary sources* are accounts about the past that were created after the time being investigated. They often use or refer to primary sources and present a particular interpretation of them. Examples of secondary sources include documentaries, history textbooks and websites.

Historians often have different points of view and do not always agree on evidence. This is why historians are constantly searching for new sources of evidence – they need to use a range of different sources to help them gain a more complete picture of the past.

artefacts
any objects that are made or changed by humans



Source 7 This Viking stone carving, known as the Tjängvide image stone, was carved during the eighth century CE. It shows gods from Norse mythology and a Viking longship. It is a primary source because it was made during the Viking Age. The remains of several Viking longships confirm this representation.



Source 8 This illustration from a children's book published in 1929 shows a Viking longship. It is a secondary source because it was created long after the Viking Age. Although a number of historically accurate features are shown (such as the design of the longships), it is not a reliable source of information and cannot be used as evidence because its purpose is to entertain.

The concept of evidence refers to the information obtained from historical sources that can be used in a historical argument. Understanding this concept will help you when using historical sources.

Understanding the origin and purpose of primary and secondary sources

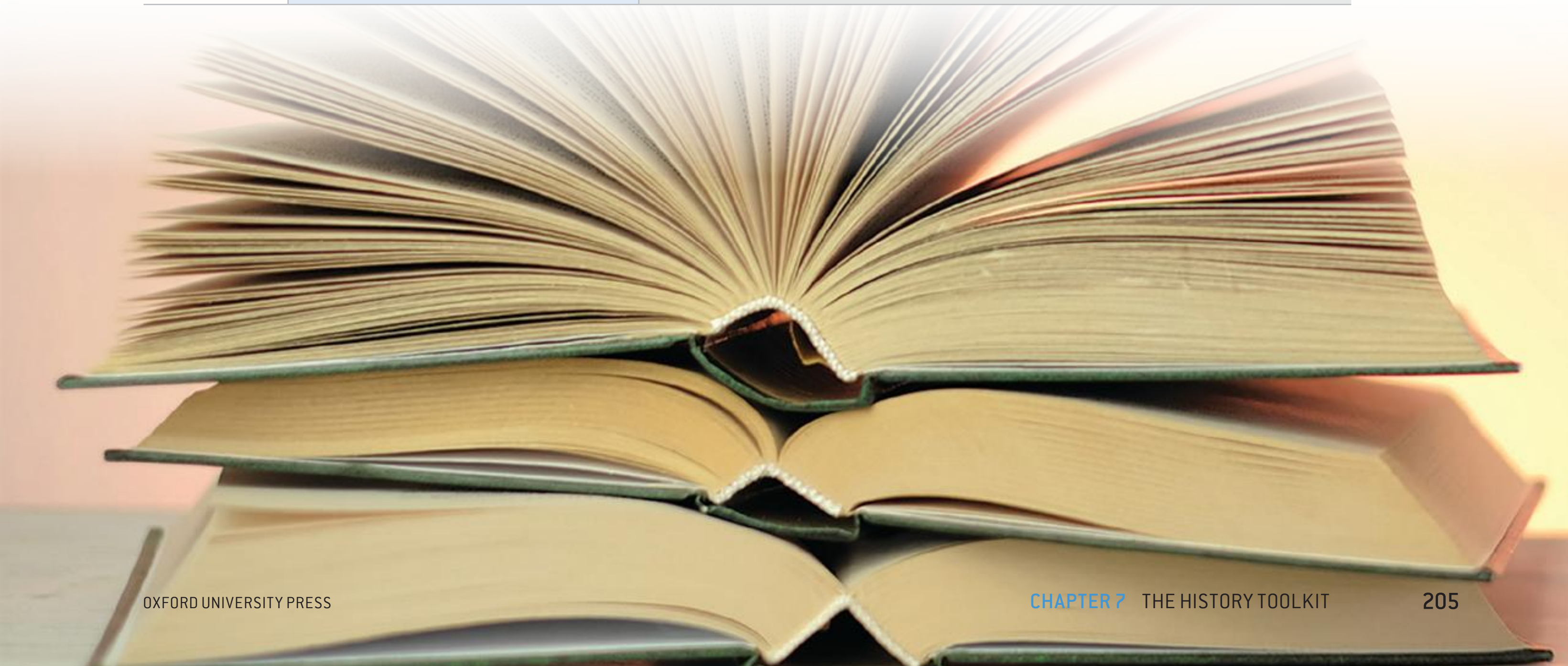
Both primary and secondary sources are useful, but it is important to understand where they came from (origin) and what the creator of the source hoped to achieve (purpose). It is also important to understand why the source was created (motive). All sources reflect the author's own point of view, and in some cases the author may have intentionally ignored certain facts because of their own views. This is referred to as **bias**, and is often aimed at persuading the reader to agree with the author's point of view.

Asking questions is a way to begin examining sources. Analysing sources by asking 'who', 'what', 'when' and 'why' questions will help you identify their origin and purpose.

bias
a pre-set view about someone or something that is not altered by the presentation of facts and opinions to the contrary

Source 9 Examples of questions to help identify the origin and purpose of sources

Who	Who wrote, produced or made the source?	• Is the creator a member of a particular group, religion or organisation?
What	What type of source is it?	• Was the source created at the time of the event or afterwards?
When	When was the source written, produced or made?	• How old is the source? • Is it an eyewitness account or is it written by someone at a later date? • Is the source complete?
Why	Why was it written or produced? What did the creator hope to achieve by producing this source? Did the creator want to change people's mind about something?	• Was it designed to entertain, persuade or argue a point of view? • Does the creator have anything to gain personally from the source? • What other events may have been happening at the time and might have influenced the author or source? • Was the creator motivated by a personal crusade? • Was the creator influenced by events at the time? • Was the creator paid to produce the source?



Collecting, comparing and selecting information

While researching, you will have located and collected a variety of different sources and types of information. Now it is time to compare and select the most relevant information that you will use as evidence.

Organisation charts are very useful tools for collecting, comparing and selecting suitable resources that you have located. A source evaluation chart like the one shown in Source 10 can help you do this.

Source 10 A source evaluation chart showing an example of how you might compare and select sources

Research topic: *Why was the Battle of Hastings important?* **Hypothesis:** *That the Battle of Hastings was important for medieval Europe because it changed the course of history in England forever.*			
Source 1: *'Battlefield Britain – medieval warfare at the Battle of Hastings', Culture 24*	Type of source: *Secondary source (but includes many primary sources too)*	Pros: • *good selection of primary sources, such as photos* • *includes lots of interviews* • *information is factually correct and detailed* Cons: • *information is a little complicated and the language is difficult to understand properly.*	Reference information: *www.culture24.org.uk/history-and-heritage/military-history/pre-20th-century-conflict/tra22820*
Source 2:		Pros: Cons:	Reference information:
Source 3:		Pros: Cons:	Reference information:
Source 4:		Pros: Cons:	Reference information:
Source 5:		Pros: Cons:	Reference information:
Recommended sources in order of relevance/usefulness: 1 2 3 4 5			

Drawing conclusions about the reliability and usefulness of sources

A useful source is one that adds to your understanding of a historical inquiry. The source needs to be reliable and relevant to the topic. The following questions will help determine the usefulness of a source:

- Is it a reliable source?
- Is there enough information to help me answer the inquiry question?
- Does the information support and reinforce evidence from other sources?
- Is it balanced, or does it present one point of view (meaning, is it biased)?
- Does it present facts, opinions or both?
- Is the information current?

Separating fact from opinion

Often, you will need to separate fact from opinion in a source.

- A *fact* is something that can be proved: when an event took place, what happened and who was involved.
- An *opinion* is based on what a person may believe to be true.

Look closely at the language used. The use of words such as 'might', 'could' and 'think' all indicate that an opinion is being expressed. For example:

- *Fact:* 'The Bayeux Tapestry is an important historical source.'
- *Opinion:* 'The Battle of Hastings might be the most important battle ever fought.'

Source 11 This illustration of the Battle of Hastings is from the nineteenth century. How useful do you think it is as a historical source?

Analysing sources using ‘DAMMIT U’

As we have learnt, an important skill in history is the ability to analyse sources for clues and insights about the past.

The term ‘source analysis’ is used a great deal in the study of history. But the fact is, there are different ways to analyse sources, or different ‘things’ that you might look for and discuss in any given source. These include:

- the date, author, material, motive, intended audience, tone and usefulness (‘DAMMIT U’) of a source
- the different perspectives, attitudes and values presented by a source
- the significance of a source.

Imagine that you have been asked to analyse the image in Source 12. Between the source itself and the information contained in the caption, there is a lot for you to interpret and analyse – however, it can be difficult to know how to start.

Using an acronym, such as ‘DAMMIT U’, can make it easier to know what you should be looking for, and what questions you should be asking. Read the steps in Source 13 closely to see what each word means and how it can help you begin analysing the source.

Source 12 *The Adoration of Mary*, illuminated manuscript, *c.* 1475; created on vellum leaf with 28 images of saints, angels, donors, Mary and baby Jesus

When writing your response, the ‘DAM’ (date, author, material) can be summarised in one to three sentences, whereas the ‘MIT’ (motive, intended audience, tone) will require a little more detail. You should provide examples from the source to support your analysis in the ‘MIT’ section.

For a written source, use a short quote from the source and explain its meaning. For a visual source, like Source 12, refer to a feature or symbol in the source and explain why it is relevant. In general, a historical source analysis should form a paragraph of eight to ten sentences.

Discussing the ‘U’ (usefulness) often requires its own paragraph. You should always discuss at least one strength or weakness, and you may include examples.

Source 14 is an example of a source analysis written in response to the illuminated manuscript in Source 12. Annotations have been provided to show you exactly how you can turn your questions into a written response.

D Date – when was the source created? If it was created during the time you are studying, it is a primary source, but if it was created after that, then it is a secondary source. A primary source may show attitudes or describe an experience, whereas a secondary source is often a factual interpretation.

A Author – who is the author of the source? Think about their gender, age, social status and profession. For example, they could be a historian, a leader, an aristocrat, a soldier or a prisoner.

M Material – is the source written, oral or visual? It could be a newspaper, letter, diary, photograph, textbook, online blog or tweet, or even statistics in the form of a graph or map.

M Motive – why did the author produce this source? Was it for official government use, a religious affiliation, the media or for personal reasons? A historian tries to establish the context of the source to help understand the perspective of the person who created it.

I Intended audience – for whom was the source produced? Was it for academics or the general public? Was it intended to be viewed, or was it meant to be private?

T Tone – how is the information in the source expressed? How does it make you feel? Words to describe tone can include 'persuasive', 'critical', 'questioning', 'funny' or 'reflective'. Often, primary sources are more emotional than secondary sources, which tend to be factual as they are written with hindsight.

U Usefulness – what are the strengths and weaknesses of the source as a piece of evidence? Sources can be factual and accurate, or they can be exaggerated and contain bias. They may have the detail of an eyewitness, or the advantage of hindsight. A source may be an oral history, or it may be written down. All of these can affect how useful the source is.

Source 13 The 'DAMMIT U' acronym is a helpful way to remember the questions you should ask yourself when approaching any source.

Date | Material | Author

The Adoration of Mary is an illuminated manuscript that was created *c.* 1475 in France. The author is unknown, but was possibly a monk of the Catholic Church. The purpose of this source is to show the respect for and the importance of Mary and baby Jesus. This is shown through the large size of Mary and her position front and centre in the artwork. The artist's motive may have been his deeply held religious beliefs and his devotion to Mary. The intended audience for this source may have included royalty, nobles and bishops, and priests. This is because most illuminated manuscripts were kept in church libraries or were made for wealthy families to use as prayer books. The tone of the source is one of respect. This is shown through the two figures kneeling in front of Mary, looking up with their hands in a prayer position.

This source is useful to some extent, because it shows us the importance of Mary in Catholic beliefs. The way the artist has shown Mary sitting on a throne, wearing a crown and a long robe, tells us that people considered Mary to be the Queen of Heaven and that Heaven reflected, to some extent, the social order of life on earth. However, the source is clearly biased as this is the only perspective it shows.

Motive

Intended audience

Tone

Usefulness

Source 14 A sample response that has been written using the 'DAMMIT U' approach

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 7.3.

7.4 Historical perspectives and interpretations

Sequencing significant historical events

One of the most helpful things historians can do to get a better understanding of the past is to organise events in the order that they happened. This is known as chronology. Chronology can help us organise things that happened over a small period of time, such as a day or week, or huge periods of time, such as hundreds of thousands of years. We can also use chronology to look at events that happened in one place or society, or to compare events across many different places and societies.

Chronology allows us to develop an ordered sense of time. Once events have been placed in **chronological order**, we are able to use a range of historical concepts such as cause and effect, significance, and continuity and change to analyse them in detail.

chronological order
the order in which events have taken place

Sequencing time

Examples of how historians sequence time are shown in Sources 15 and 16. Each table shows how 2100 years have been divided into smaller periods of 100 years, which are known as centuries. These tables will help you as you work through Year 8 history, so refer to them as often as you need to.

Source 15 Before the Common Era (BCE): more than 2000 years of history divided into centuries; zero is not used, so when ordering time BCE, remember to count backwards to 1.

Century BCE	Time period	Century BCE	Time period	Century BCE	Time period
21st century BCE	2100 to 2001	14th century BCE	1400 to 1301	7th century BCE	700 to 601
20th century BCE	2000 to 1901	13th century BCE	1300 to 1201	6th century BCE	600 to 501
19th century BCE	1900 to 1801	12th century BCE	1200 to 1101	5th century BCE	500 to 401
18th century BCE	1800 to 1701	11th century BCE	1100 to 1001	4th century BCE	400 to 301
17th century BCE	1700 to 1601	10th century BCE	1000 to 901	3rd century BCE	300 to 201
16th century BCE	1600 to 1501	9th century BCE	900 to 801	2nd century BCE	200 to 101
15th century BCE	1500 to 1401	8th century BCE	800 to 701	1st century BCE	100 to 1

Source 16 Common Era (CE): more than 2000 years of history divided into centuries; zero is not used, so when ordering time CE, remember to count forwards from 1.

Century CE	Time period	Century CE	Time period	Century CE	Time period
1st century CE	1 to 100	8th century CE	701 to 800	15th century CE	1401 to 1500
2nd century CE	101 to 200	9th century CE	801 to 900	16th century CE	1501 to 1600
3rd century CE	201 to 300	10th century CE	901 to 1000	17th century CE	1601 to 1700
4th century CE	301 to 400	11th century CE	1001 to 1100	18th century CE	1701 to 1800
5th century CE	401 to 500	12th century CE	1101 to 1200	19th century CE	1801 to 1900
6th century CE	501 to 600	13th century CE	1201 to 1300	20th century CE	1901 to 2000
7th century CE	601 to 700	14th century CE	1301 to 1400	21st century CE	2001 to 2100

Creating a timeline

Timelines are used by historians to sequence time and order important events chronologically. They help divide large sections of time into smaller periods so that events can be arranged in the correct order. Timelines can look quite different, but they all work in the same way.

Follow these steps, and refer to Source 17, when constructing a timeline:

Step 1 Work out the length of time you want to represent on your timeline, and then divide it evenly into suitable blocks of time.

Step 2 To represent a huge span of time, you may need to break your timeline into sections using a jagged line. This break shows that a section of time has been left out. Just make sure no important events fall in the time you are leaving out.

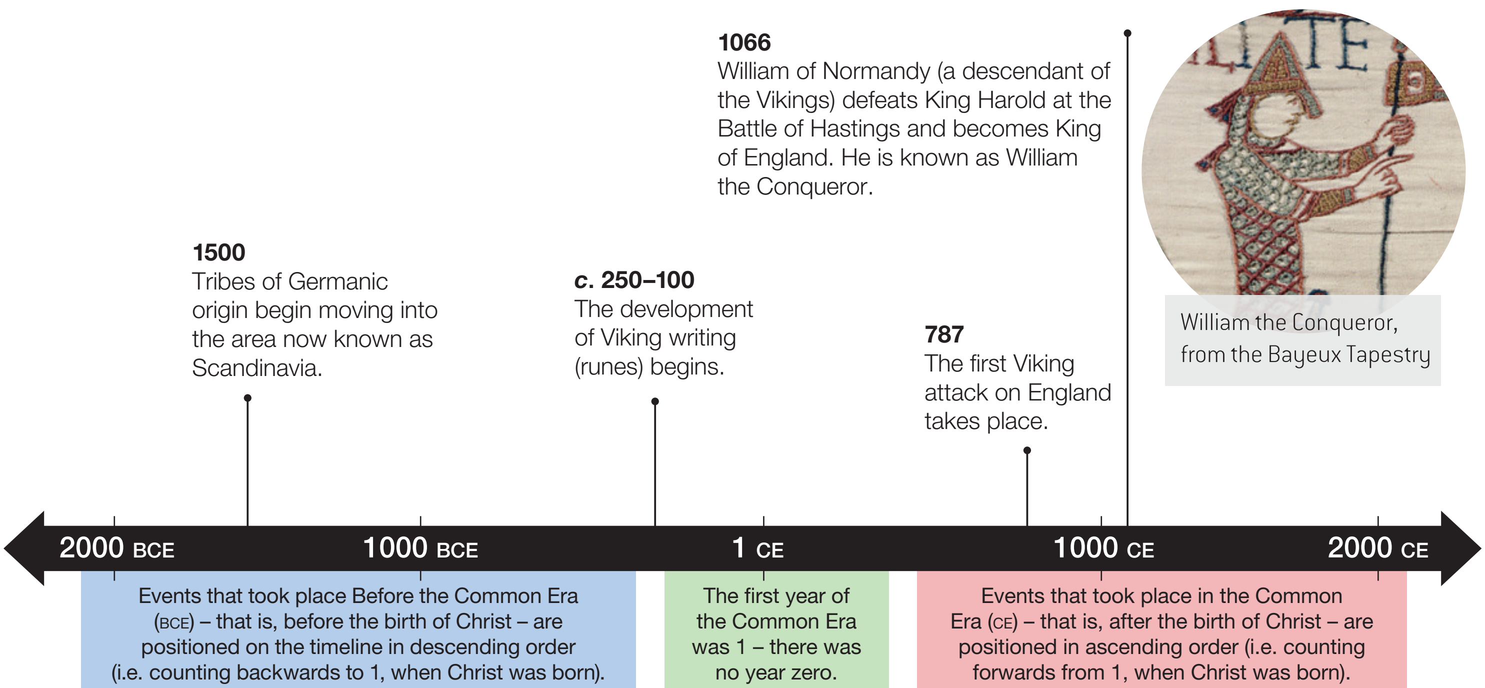
Step 3 Mark specific dates onto the timeline. These dates need to be accurately plotted so that they appear in chronological order (from left to right). If an exact date is not known, the abbreviation *c*. (from the Latin word *circa*, meaning 'around') is placed in front of it (for example, *c*. 250 BCE).

Step 4 Plot important dates and events on the timeline. Give a brief description of each event. Include pictures and captions, if appropriate.

Practise the skill

1 **Create** your own timeline based on one of the following topics:
- important events that have taken place in your life so far
- events in the life of someone important in your life (for example, a family member, a close friend or someone you admire).

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations



Source 17 An example of a simple timeline, with some reminders

Describing causes and effects

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

What is cause and effect?

The concept of cause and effect is used by historians to identify chains of events and developments, both in the short term and in the long term. Cause and effect aims to identify, examine and analyse the reasons why events have occurred and the resulting consequences or outcomes. It helps to think of cause and effect as the 'why' and 'what' of history.

Source 17 There were a number of factors that led to the rise and spread of the Black Death (event). Bubonic plague (the most common form of plague) was spread by fleas infected with a bacterium known as Yersinia pestis (cause). The Black Death is estimated to have killed more than 75 million people across Europe, Asia and Africa, resulting in a sudden drop in population (effect).

The concept of cause and effect refers to short-term and long-term causes and consequences. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. Cause and effect is used by historians to identify the reasons for an event, or changes in history, and the results of those events or developments, both in the short term and the long term. Sometimes the link between cause and effect is very clear. For example, heavy rain over many weeks (cause) leads to flooding (event) and the destruction of crops (effect). However, often this link is not quite so obvious. Generally, there are many causes (reasons) that lead to an event or action, and there can also be many effects (outcomes). Sometimes the effects are simple to identify, while in other cases they are more difficult to predict and may not even be observed until long after the event.

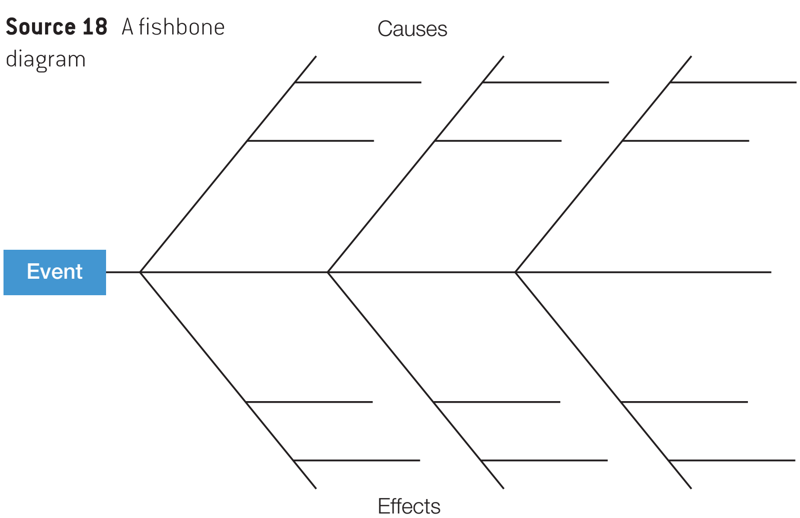
Analysing cause and effect

When you analyse something, you must break it down into smaller parts and explain how they relate to each other. The first step in analysing cause and effect is to identify the event, development or change, then what may have caused the event/development/change, and then the effects. Different types of causes might be social, economic or political, or a cause might be sudden, and act as a catalyst (a trigger) for change. Once the causes of the event have been identified, consider the effects. Explain how each effect is linked to the event that you have identified. Remember, historical events can have multiple causes, and multiple effects.

When analysing cause and effect, it can be helpful to organise the information in a way that helps you to see the links between the event or change, the cause and the effects. Graphic organisers, such as a fishbone diagram, are a good way to analyse cause and effect. Sometimes, causes and effects are part of a cycle, and one effect is the cause of another effect.

Timelines can also be used to organise events, people and movements in a way that helps you identify links between the cause and effect of an event or change.

Source 18 A fishbone diagram



Exploring cause and effect and plague

During the fourteenth century, a plague known as the Black Death swept across Europe, Asia and parts of Africa. Historians estimate that at least 75 million people died as a result. A number of factors led to the rise and spread of the Black Death. Bubonic plague (the most common form of plague) was spread by fleas infected with a bacterium known as *Yersinia pestis* (cause). These fleas lived on black rats, commonly found in all medieval towns and cities because of poor hygiene and sanitation (cause). Bites from the infected fleas spread the disease to humans (cause). Pneumonic plague (another form of plague) was spread from person to person through the air, infecting bodily fluids such as mucus and blood (cause). The Black Death resulted in a range of effects.

Short-term effects included:

- a massive drop in population, resulting in shortages of farm labourers and skilled tradespeople
- abandoned houses left dirty and unattended, and rubbish and sewage in towns left to rot
- some priests refusing to bury victims of the plague for fear of contracting the disease.

Long-term effects included:

- the breakdown of feudalism across Europe, because labourers and tradespeople could demand better conditions and higher wages (instead of working in return for the protection of feudal lords)
- a reduction in the power and influence of the Church on people's lives, due to the belief that the Church (including priests and clergy) had not been able to prevent the plague
- improvements in hygiene and medical knowledge due to new regulations and laws introduced to prevent further infections.

Practise the skill

1. **Identify** two forms of the plague known as the Black Death.
2. **Describe** the connection between fleas and the Black Death.
3. **Explain** how the short-term effect of a massive drop in the population led to the long-term effect of the decline of feudalism in Europe.
4. Use a fishbone diagram to record one cause and multiple effects of the Black Death in Europe.

Source 19 A medieval illustration of a couple with the plague; the Black Death had short-term effects and long-term effects.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

plague
a widespread disease with a high death rate

feudalism
a set of legal and military customs that served to organise the society of medieval Europe and Japan

Explaining continuities and changes

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

What is continuity and change?

Historians recognise that over time, some things stay the same while others change. This concept is referred to as continuity and change. Examples of continuity and change can be seen across every civilisation and any given period of time. Historians refer to aspects of the past that have remained the same over time as continuities. Aspects of the past that do not stay the same are referred to as changes. Change can occur within a certain civilisation or specific time period, but also across different civilisations and time periods.

Source 20 In medieval Europe, barber shops for cutting hair were common, as they are today (a continuity). However, medieval barbers also performed medical procedures (a change) such as bloodletting (see left). The red-and-white spiral on modern-day barber poles (see above), dates back to when bloodstained bandages were hung out to dry on poles after bloodletting at medieval barber shops.

The concept of continuity and change refers to how things change or remain the same over time. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. To identify continuity and change, the sequence (order) of events and significance of these events (or people, or ideas) should be understood. Timelines can be used to organise events in a way that makes it clear when things changed. Timelines can also be used to understand how long things continued without changing.

Once you have identified when changes occurred in a society or civilisation over a period of time, you can identify what these changes were. These changes can be listed, and ranked in order of significance. To understand the significance of an event, refer to the key concept of significance (see page 219). When ranking changes in order of significance, you should use evidence to justify how significant (or not) these changes were to the society or civilisation.

After a change (or continuity) has been identified, state what caused the change, and why it had the effect it did. It is important to look at multiple different examples of continuity or change within a society or civilisation to be able to see any patterns of continuity and change.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Exploring continuity and change and pandemics

A pandemic is a global outbreak of disease. In a pandemic, a disease is widespread through a country, or the world. There have been many pandemics throughout history, from the Black Death in the fourteenth century, to the Spanish flu pandemic in the twentieth century and more recently the COVID-19 pandemic. During earlier pandemics such as the Black Death, people had no idea why they were dying. They knew nothing about germs or bacteria. The cause of the Black Death (the bacterium *Yersinia pestis*) was not discovered until the late 1800s. In the fourteenth century, bad smells were commonly considered to be one cause of disease. To protect themselves from bad smells, people carried small bunches of flowers, or pouches filled with fragrant herbs or spices. Today we know far more about many diseases.

Source 21 shows how plague doctors dressed. Heavy floor-length coats extended up the back of the head. They wore a hat, and a bird-like beak, which was filled with strong-smelling items such as mint, spices, garlic, flowers or vinegar. They also used wooden canes to examine plague patients without having to touch them. Source 22 shows how a modern healthcare worker might dress, when required to wear personal protective equipment.

Practise the skill

1 **Identify** two items of clothing or objects that the plague doctor in Source 21 is wearing that modern healthcare workers do not wear today.

2 Briefly **explain** why modern healthcare workers no longer wear the things you have identified. To explain this example of a change:
- Calculate how much time (in centuries) has passed between the events of the Black Death and the start of the COVID-19 pandemic.
- Brainstorm what changes in medical knowledge or ideas have occurred between the Black Death and now (for example, what has changed in our knowledge about bacteria or germs?). Conduct research on your ideas.
- Decide how significant this change in medical knowledge or ideas has been to human history.

3 **Summarise** one example of a continuity between how the plague doctor shown in Source 21 is dressed and how the modern healthcare worker shown in Source 22 is dressed. Why do you think this aspect of fighting pandemics has continued?

Source 21 A nineteenth-century illustration of a typical plague doctor; some earlier medieval plague doctors were similarly dressed.

Source 22 A 2020 photo of a healthcare worker, wearing full personal protective equipment

Identifying perspectives

KEY CONCEPT
Perspectives

What are perspectives?

Perspective is the position from which people see and understand events going on in the world around them. People will have different points of view about a particular event, person, civilisation or artefact depending on their perspective, which can be affected by age, gender, social position, and their beliefs and values.

Historians also see events from different perspectives, which can influence their interpretation of the past and the way in which they write about it. Despite their own perspectives, historians must try to understand the different values and beliefs that shaped and affected the lives of people who lived in the past.

Source 23 This Spanish artist's impression shows the conquistador (a soldier or conqueror) Hernán Cortés meeting the Aztec ruler Moctezuma II in Tenochtitlan, the capital of the Aztec Empire, in 1519. From 1492 to 1572, Spanish conquistadors such as Cortés invaded the Americas, believing it was their right and duty to convert the indigenous peoples to Christianity, to expand Spanish territory and to increase Spanish wealth. Within 100 years, the Inca, Aztec and Maya civilisations and cultures had been largely destroyed. From a Spanish perspective at the time, their actions were lawful and blessed by their Christian god.

Source 24

Then King William came from Normandy into Pevensey [a town on the coast of England], on the eve of the Feast of St Michael, and as soon as they were fit, made a castle at Hastings market-town. Then this became known to King Harold and he gathered a great raiding-army, and came against him at the grey apple-tree. And William came upon him by surprise before his people were marshalled. Nevertheless the king fought very hard against him with those men who wanted to support him, and there was a great slaughter on either side. There were killed King Harold, and Earl Leofwine his brother, and Earl Gyrth his brother, and many good men.

Extract from the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* recounting the events of the Battle of Hastings

The concept of perspectives refers to the factors (such as age) which can shape a person's point of view. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. Historians analyse sources to identify points of view, perspectives, attitudes and values of people in the past. Both primary and secondary sources can show many different points of view, attitudes and values. These may reflect personal, social, political, economic or religious perspectives. The Battle of Hastings provides good examples of how different perspectives can be reflected in historical sources, such as Sources 24 and 25.

- Source 24 tells the story of the Battle of Hastings from the perspective of the Anglo-Saxons (from England).
- Source 25 shows a scene from the Battle of Hastings from the perspective of the Normans (from France).

Sources 24 and 25 illustrate how the same event can be told in different ways, depending on the perspectives of the people who were there. For example, Source 25 shows Norman and Anglo-Saxon troops prepared for battle, but Source 24 tells how William of Normandy 'came upon him [King Harold] by surprise'.

It is only when we consider a range of different perspectives and examine all of the available sources that we can begin to form a more complete picture of the Battle of Hastings. A good way to do this is to compare the two perspectives directly, as in Source 26.

Source 25 A section of the Bayeux Tapestry recounting the events of the Battle of Hastings; Norman soldiers are shown on horseback and Anglo-Saxon soldiers are shown on foot.

Source 26 A comparison of two historical sources relating to the Battle of Hastings in 1066

Source 24: The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* – an English source	Source 25: The Bayeux Tapestry – a Norman source
• The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* is the main source of English history at the time of the Battle of Hastings. • The chronicle is a kind of calendar of national life written by English monks in a number of different places across England. • Unfortunately for historians, there are gaps in the chronicle, and the Battle of Hastings is only mentioned briefly. • Because the English army lost the battle, and Harold Godwinson was killed, it is more difficult for English perspectives of the event to be taken as fact.	• Most historians believe the Bayeux Tapestry was commissioned by William the Conqueror's half-brother, Bishop Odo of Bayeux. • The tapestry provides a huge amount of detail for historians, both visually and in written accounts in Latin at the top and bottom of the cloth. • Because the Norman army won the battle, and William was crowned king, it is easier for the tapestry to present the events as fact.

Using empathy

Empathy helps us to understand the impact of past events on a particular individual or group, including their circumstances and the motivations, values and attitudes behind their actions. Empathy is the ability to 'walk in someone else's shoes' – to be aware of, and sensitive to, their feelings, thoughts and experiences.

Source 27 This Japanese woodblock print shows a samurai about to perform *seppuku* (ritual suicide). In medieval Japan, samurai lived under a strict code of behaviour known as *bushido* ('the way of the warrior'), based on honour, loyalty and discipline. To many people today, the act of *seppuku* may seem barbaric. However, by applying the concept of empathy, we are able to appreciate how young men trained in *bushido* would have believed that their honour and loyalty – and those of their families – were worth more than their life, and that if they lost their honour, no other option was acceptable.

Explaining interpretations and contestability

KEY CONCEPT
Interpretations & contestability

What are interpretations and contestability?

Historians use sources from the past to give meaning and order to the events of the past. In other words, they interpret sources to explain the why and how of past events. These explanations or **interpretations** can differ among historians.

Historians may have access to the same sources but draw different conclusions or provide different interpretations about what these sources tell us about the past. This is called **contestability**. Contested interpretations must be reasonable interpretations based on the available sources.

interpretations
the assumptions and conclusions historians make about an event after the fact. Interpretations are formed by examining evidence.

contestability
refers to explanations or interpretations of past events that are open to debate.

The concept of interpretations and contestability refers to explanations and debates about the past. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. The development of historical understanding about the past relies on the primary sources available to historians. The sources can be written sources, like inscriptions, laws, histories, memoirs and plays, or they can be artefacts, such as statues, coins and buildings. Oral accounts of the past, passed down from generation to generation, are also primary sources. These sources can be fragmented, or there may even be an excess of sources. The role of the historian is to give meaning and order to the events of the past by interpreting the sources, so that the why and the how of the past are explained.

These interpretations are only as reliable as the sources available. If there is a lack or shortage of sources, the historians' interpretations are likely to be more tentative or cautious. Differences in interpretations do not make one historian's interpretation wrong and another one's right. A historian's interpretation of a source from the past must be a reasonable one, but there can often be different ways events can be understood and therefore interpreted. For example, people in the past have not always made clear what the motives for their actions were, so historians need to interpret their actions to determine their motives. Students of history need to be able to analyse these interpretations and recognise their differences in their own historical arguments.

Source 28 DNA analysis carried out on Polynesian peoples across the Pacific – such as these Māori men in New Zealand – shows that they all share similar genetic characteristics with people in the South-East Asian countries of Taiwan and New Guinea. Many historians now believe this evidence proves 'the west–east theory' of Polynesian expansion.

For example, the Polynesian expansion across the Pacific took place over a long period of time. While historians generally agree that early Polynesians migrated to various islands across the Pacific Ocean from one point of origin (over a period of more than 2000 years), they do not always agree on exactly how or when the Polynesians spread throughout the area. One of the biggest disagreements is which direction the Polynesians came from – east or west. Since the sixteenth century, historians have argued about how stone-age people could have crossed vast stretches of oceans to settle on these remote islands. One theory (the 'east–west theory') suggests that Polynesians originated from modern-day Peru and travelled westwards. Another theory (the 'west–east theory') suggests that they originated in Asia and travelled eastwards. Today, many historians now believe the west–east theory is correct, due to supporting DNA evidence.

Understanding significance

What is significance?

The concept of significance relates to the importance assigned to aspects of the past, such as events, developments, discoveries, movements, people and historical sites. History is full of important events, significant people and interesting places. We need to make a judgment about which of these to study. To determine if an event, development, discovery, movement, person or site is historically significant, historians may ask the following questions:

- How important was this to people who lived at that time?
- How did this affect people's lives?
- How many people's lives were affected?
- How widespread and long-lasting were the effects?
- Can the effects still be felt today?

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 29 This statue of Genghis Khan, ruler of the Mongol Empire from 1206 to 1227 CE, is over 40 metres high. While Genghis Khan ruled the Mongol Empire for a relatively short period of time, the changes he introduced are considered significant because they affected enormous numbers of people over a vast area of the world.

The concept of significance refers to the widespread changes brought about by an event, person or development in the past and the continuing effects of those changes today. Understanding this concept will help you understand historical perspectives and interpretations. When analysing the significance of an event, development, issue, person, group or society, you should ask the questions listed in the key concept box above. For example, how important was this event, development or issue to people who lived at that time? One way to remember the sorts of questions you should ask to decide the significance of something is to use the '5Rs' of historical significance. Source 30 outlines each of the 5Rs of historical significance.

R Remarkable – what was the most notable thing about the event/individual/group of people?

R Resulted in change – what happened as an immediate result of the event/individual/group of people? (Think about short-term effects.)

R Revealing – what does the event/individual/group of people tell us about the time period?

R Resonates – how does the event/individual/group of people (in the past) affect the lives of people today?

R Remembered – how is the event/individual/group of people remembered today? (Think about evidence that still exists.)

Source 30 The 5Rs of historical significance

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 7.4.

7.5 Communicating

Historical writing

Additional resource
Table of useful historical terms

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Historical writing requires you to describe and explain using information from a range of sources as evidence.

How to write a description

The purpose of descriptions is to give clear information about people, places or objects at particular moments in time. They focus on the main characteristics of particular people or things. Descriptions must always follow a set structure, and events must be organised in chronological order.

Source 31

Structure of a description	
Introduction	• Introduces the subject • States the name of the person or event • Outlines why the topic is important
Body	• The body provides details about the person or event (including dates and important facts) • Information must be organised in paragraphs, with a new paragraph for each detail • Quotations and descriptive words must be used where relevant
Conclusion (optional)	• Revisits the most important details and provides a concluding statement

How to write an explanation

The purpose of explanations is to tell how or why something happened. They provide the reader with a greater understanding of the causes and effects of past events. Explanations must be clear and factual. They should not contain opinions or emotional language. There must be supporting evidence from a variety of sources.

How to reference in an explanation

When you use information from a source within an explanation, either by a direct quote or an indirect reference, the source needs to be acknowledged. This can be done in various ways, depending on the referencing system you are using. One of the simplest referencing systems is the Harvard referencing method, where quotes and indirect references are acknowledged within the text. This is done by placing basic information about the source after the quote or the indirect reference. In brackets, write the name of the author, the year the source was published and the page number where it occurs, for example (Smith 1999:234). Whichever method you use, it is important that you use that method consistently.

Source 32

Structure of an explanation	
Introduction	• Clearly states the main idea or aim • Briefly outlines the reasons why an event occurred and its effects

Structure of an explanation (continued)	
Body	• Each idea must be supported by evidence; the evidence should be analysed to explain its significance or importance • Information must be organised in paragraphs, with a new paragraph for each detail • Language should be precise and not contain emotional words • Personal opinions should be avoided
Conclusion (optional)	• Provides a short and clear overview of the main ideas presented in the body • States a conclusion drawn from the evidence

How to write a paragraph using TEEL

When writing a paragraph – either by itself or as a part of an essay – it is important to structure your thoughts logically. The acronym TEEL is a helpful way of remembering how to do this. Read Source 33 carefully to familiarise yourself with each of the steps of TEEL. Then read Source 34 to see an example of a paragraph that has been written using TEEL.

Source 33 The TEEL structure

T	Topic	Introduce your main idea in the first sentence.
E	Explain	Provide some background knowledge on your main idea.
E	Examples	Be sure to use two or three examples in a paragraph. Examples are important in a history essay, as they act as your evidence. Examples include facts and figures, dates, names, places, events, statistics and sources.
L	Link	Sum up your paragraph by providing some analysis or evaluation on the topic. Do this by providing your opinion on the matter. Some ideas for a good link include: • How useful is the evidence you have used? • Did any changes take place because of the example you have used? • Do you need any more evidence to make a proper judgment on the topic? In your link, use linking phrases such as 'overall' or 'ultimately' to help make your final statement.

Source 34 An example of a written response using TEEL, on the impact of the Black Death

T	One major effect of the Black Death on medieval Europe was the change in the way that people saw the role of the Catholic Church in society.
E	Up until then, the Church was very powerful, influential and wealthy. It governed people's behaviour and educated them in what was right and wrong. However, the Church was unable to control or explain the Black Death. In addition, many monks, nuns and priests died from the plague, or fled in fear of becoming infected. This made people feel disappointed and angry towards the Church.
E	As a result, many common people began behaving without regard for the moral teachings of the Church. Italian writer Giovanni Boccaccio explained this in the fourteenth century, when he wrote that some 'thought the sure cure for the plague was to drink and be merry, to go about singing and amusing themselves'. Furthermore, this feeling was also captured in the painting *Dance of Death* from the fourteenth century, which shows a knight and a man dancing happily with skeletons.
L	Ultimately, the Black Death weakened the role of the Church in medieval Europe. This caused people to question the Church and seek their own knowledge, which eventually led to the Renaissance era. Even royalty began to question the power of the Church, leading to Protestants establishing new faiths, and a Reformation. While the Black Death did not bring an end to feudalism or the Church, it significantly weakened the Church's role in medieval Europe.

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 7.5.

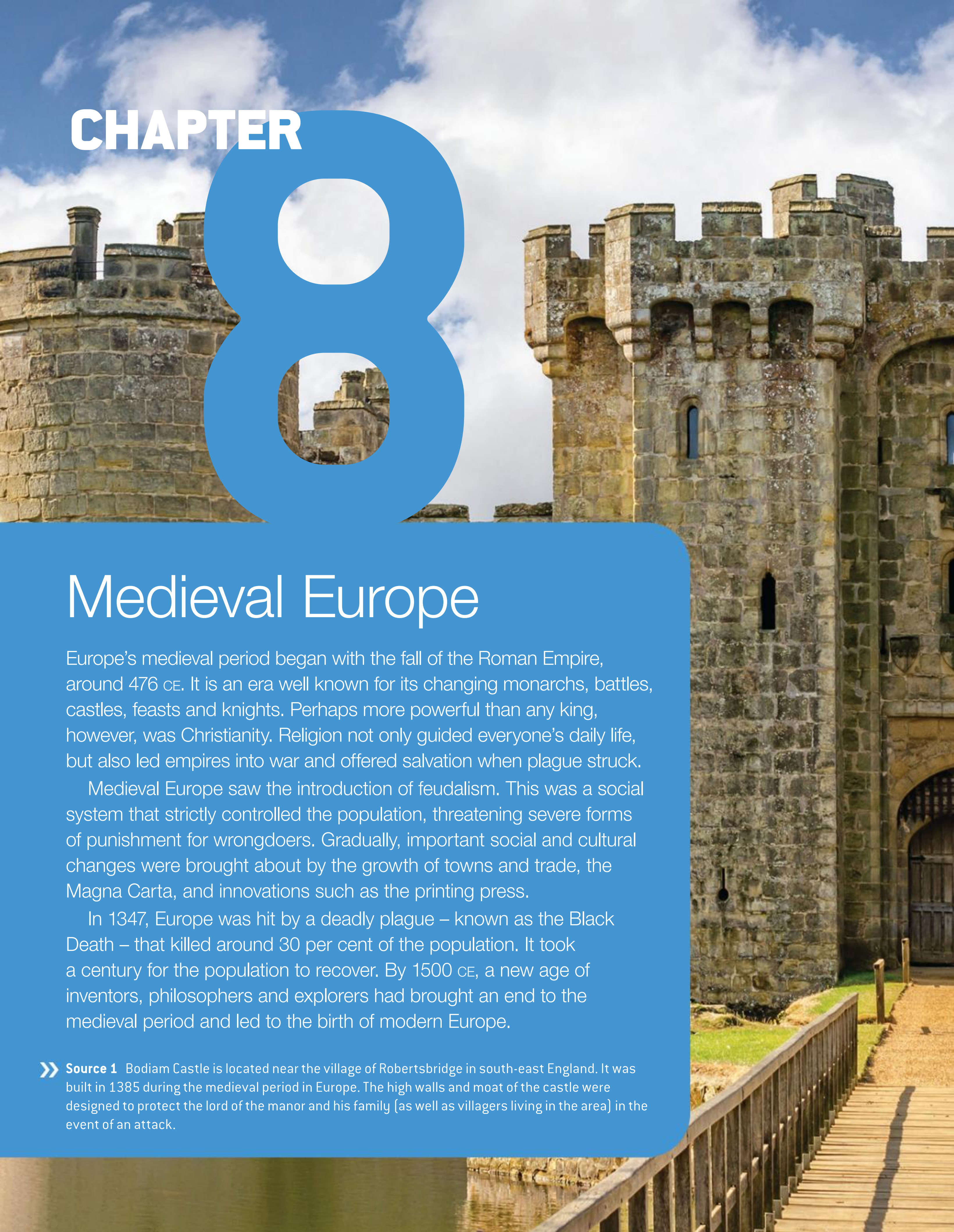
CHAPTER 8

Medieval Europe

Europe's medieval period began with the fall of the Roman Empire, around 476 CE. It is an era well known for its changing monarchs, battles, castles, feasts and knights. Perhaps more powerful than any king, however, was Christianity. Religion not only guided everyone's daily life, but also led empires into war and offered salvation when plague struck.

Medieval Europe saw the introduction of feudalism. This was a social system that strictly controlled the population, threatening severe forms of punishment for wrongdoers. Gradually, important social and cultural changes were brought about by the growth of towns and trade, the Magna Carta, and innovations such as the printing press.

In 1347, Europe was hit by a deadly plague – known as the Black Death – that killed around 30 per cent of the population. It took a century for the population to recover. By 1500 CE, a new age of inventors, philosophers and explorers had brought an end to the medieval period and led to the birth of modern Europe.



Source 1 Bodiam Castle is located near the village of Robertsbridge in south-east England. It was built in 1385 during the medieval period in Europe. The high walls and moat of the castle were designed to protect the lord of the manor and his family (as well as villagers living in the area) in the event of an attack.

8A

How were societies in medieval Europe organised?

8B

Why did societies in medieval Europe change?

8C

What developments influenced life in medieval Europe?

8D

How did the Black Death affect medieval Europe?

8.1 Medieval Europe: a timeline

A scene from the Bayeux Tapestry depicting Norman cavalry troops disembarking for their battle with Saxon forces at Hastings in England

An artist's impression of Charlemagne, Holy Roman Emperor

466
The Roman Empire in Western Europe collapses. The medieval period begins.

800
Charlemagne, King of the Franks, is crowned Holy Roman Emperor.

813
Charlemagne dies.

1042
Edward the Confessor becomes King of England.

1050
A militant Islamic group, the Seljuk Turks, takes control of Jerusalem.

1066
Edward the Confessor dies. Harold Godwinson declares himself king. William of Normandy invades England, defeats King Harold at the Battle of Hastings, and is crowned King William I of England.

400 CE — 800 — 1000 — 1100

1096
The First Crusade begins – this is the first of eight wars to be fought between Christians and Muslims over the next 175 years.

1154
Henry II becomes King of England.

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in the history of medieval Europe

8.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **State** the year in which the Battle of Hastings took place, and identify who fought in it.
2. What were the Crusades? In what year did they begin?

Analyse

3. What is the Magna Carta? Suggest why it is still important today.

Apply

4. In pairs or small groups, **investigate** the Crusades. Use the questions below to guide your research.
   a. How many Crusades were there in total?
   b. What was the aim of the First Crusade?
   c. Using the information you have gathered, create your own timeline of the Crusades. Include an image to represent each one.

An illustration from the Toggenburg Bible (*c.* 1411) of victim of a plague known as the Black Death

1200 | 1300 | 1400 | 1500 CE

1187
Muslim forces again capture Jerusalem, providing a motive for the Third Crusade.

1215
The Magna Carta – the first-ever document outlining the rights of the English people – is drawn up. King John is forced to give it his royal seal.

1315
The Great Famine begins. It lasts for two years and kills millions of people across Europe.

1337
The Hundred Years War between England and France begins.

1347
A deadly virus breaks out in Sicily and quickly spreads across Europe, killing between 50 and 90 per cent of those who catch it. The pandemic becomes known as the Black Death.

1381
The Peasants' Revolt takes place in England – peasants revolt against strict rules imposed on wage rises and working conditions, following the severe labour shortages caused by the Black Death.

***c.* 1450**
Johannes Gutenberg invents the printing press in Germany.

Sequence this!
Events in medieval Europe

An artist's impression of Gutenberg's printing press

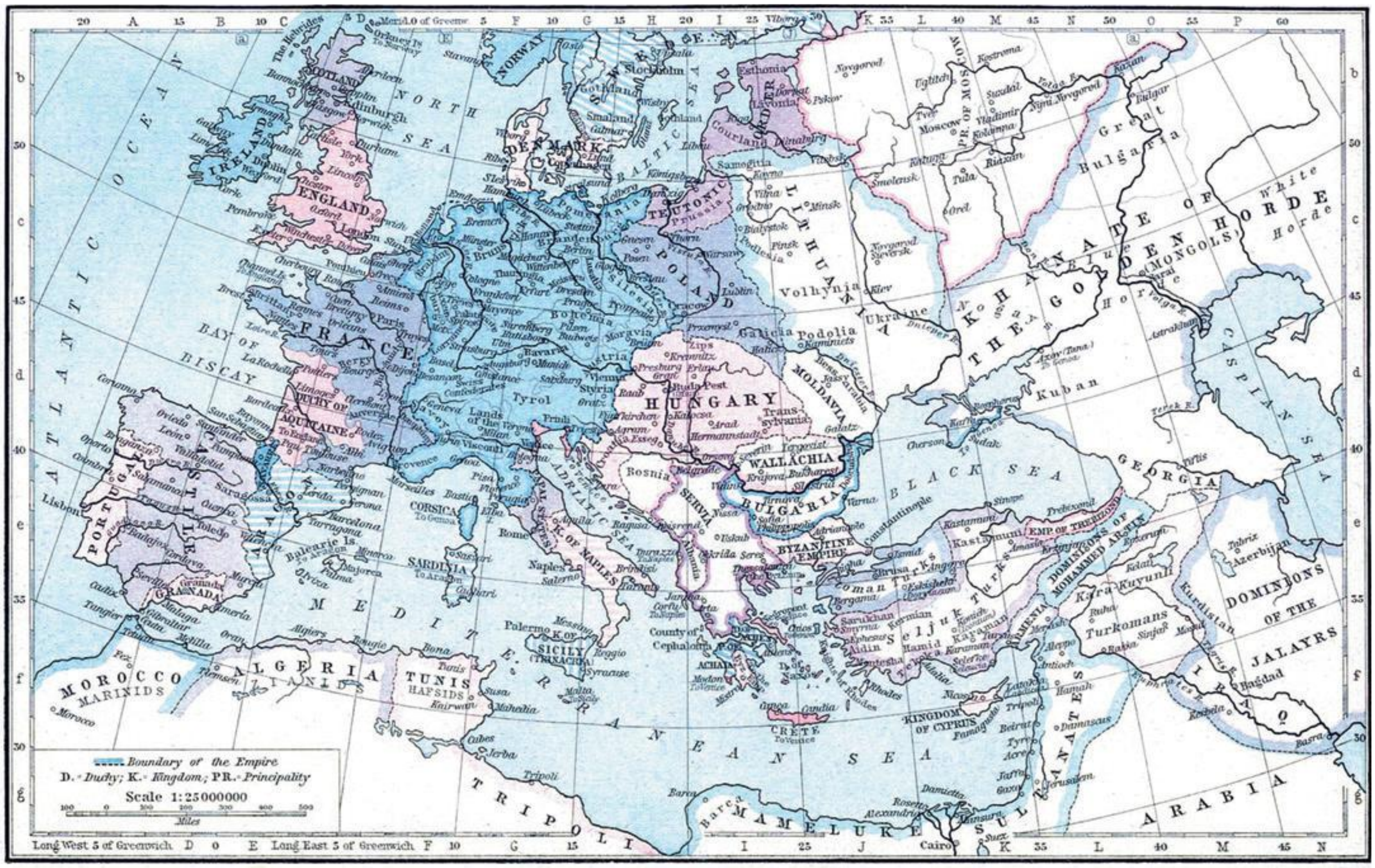
8.2 Feudalism in medieval Europe

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how the collapse of the Roman Empire led to the development of the feudal system.

Europe's medieval period lasted for about 1000 years, beginning almost immediately after the collapse of the Roman Empire in Western Europe in 476 CE. It was a time of great change over a vast area – from the Viking homelands in the north to the Mediterranean Sea in the south, and from the Atlantic coast in the west to the borders of Russia and the peoples of the east (see Source 2). During the medieval period, the borders and rulers of European societies changed countless times, as people competed for territory and power.



Source 2 A map of medieval Europe in 1360 (taken from a 1911 atlas of historical maps)

The origins of feudalism

Without the Roman army to enforce the laws, society largely broke down. Between 476 and 800 CE, barbarian raids from aggressive groups – such as the Huns, Visigoths and Vandals – were common. Over time, the term 'Dark Ages' was often used to refer to this period of constant warfare.

People had to find new ways to protect and provide for themselves. As a result, they moved onto lands owned by wealthy and powerful **lords**, where they could be protected by the lord's private army and take shelter in his castle during attacks. As payment to their lord, these people, called **vassals**, worked the land for him and tended his animals.

lords
wealthy nobles under the system of feudalism

vassals
people who offered their loyalty and service to a lord in return for his protection and the granting of land

This was the beginning of **feudalism** – a social system based on rights and obligations around land ownership. Feudalism shaped medieval Europe for hundreds of years.

Source 3 A medieval artist's impression of peasants harvesting grapes and tending grapevines on a feudal manor (a large country house, with land); in the foreground, the lord of the manor is inspecting their work.

feudalism
a set of legal and military customs that served to organise the society of medieval Europe and Japan; under feudalism, a lord gave a fief (parcel of land) to a person (called a vassal) in exchange for service and loyalty

The Domesday Book

This precious book, containing 832 pages, was created in 1086 under the reign of William the Conqueror. Similar to a **census** today, it recorded the landowners, property and population in medieval England, so it is a valuable source of evidence. Historians believe this book had two main purposes: to help the new ruler understand who owned which parts of the land, and to assess the kingdom's wealth. This was particularly important so that William could work out how to tax the population. Bishop Robert of Hereford noted in 1086: 'he sent his men … into every shire and had them find out … what dues [taxes] he ought to have in twelve months … nor indeed one ox or cow nor one pig was there left out.'

The term 'Domesday' comes from the word 'doom' in medieval England, meaning 'law'. Historians believe that 'Domesday' is a reference to 'Doomsday', or 'Judgment Day' – as the book granted William the power to assert his final decision, or 'judgment'.

In total, the Domesday Book recorded 30 000 manors, 13 000 villages, 50 castles and 16 000 **knights**.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 4 The Domesday Book is now held in the UK National Archives.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

knights
warriors in medieval Europe

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on feudalism in medieval Europe

8.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the term 'Dark Ages'.
2 **Explain** why feudalism emerged after the fall of the Roman Empire in Europe.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how the Domesday Book gave William the Conqueror more power.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 3. How has the artist depicted the lord to appear the most powerful person in the image?
5 **Compare** the map in Source 2 to a modern-day map of Europe (there is one in the back of this book). How are they similar (continuity) and how are they different (change)? Remember, when you compare two things, you must talk about how they are similar and how they are different. Similarities are an example of continuity, while differences are an example of change.

8.3 Key social groups in medieval society

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

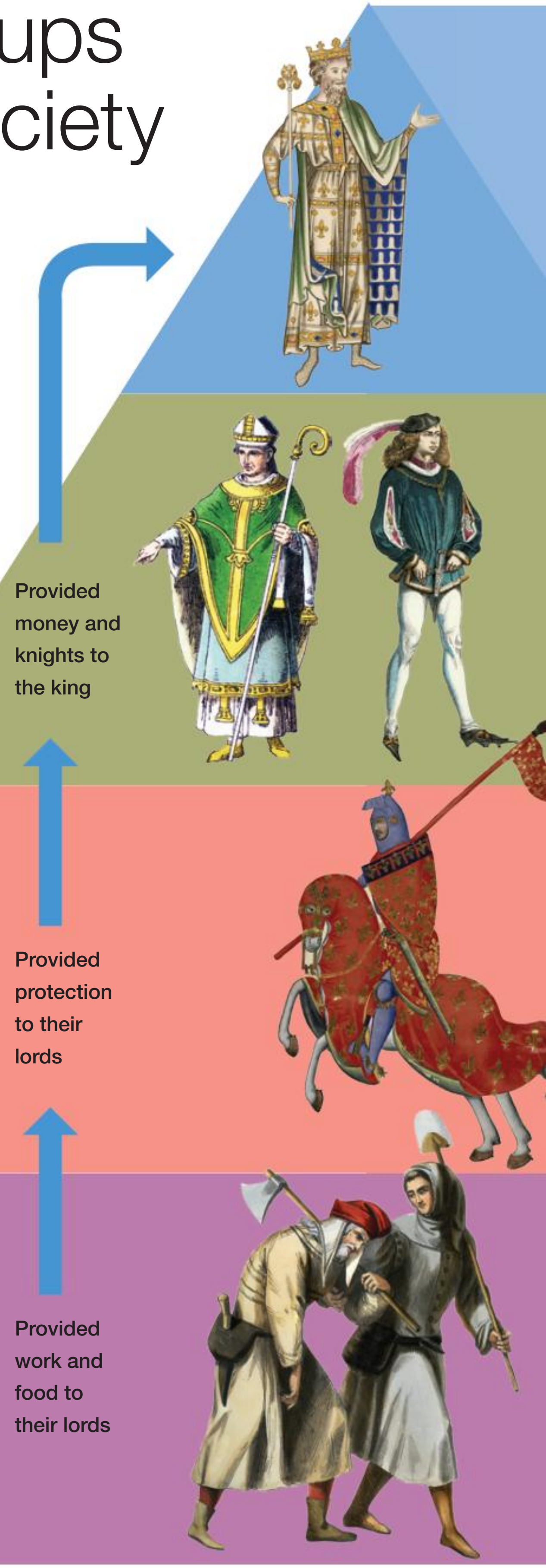
» describe the structure of feudal society in medieval Europe.

Feudalism was a way of organising a society through a hierarchy. A hierarchy is a social structure that organises people with the most important group on top and others ranked beneath. In a feudal society, everyone from the king to the poorest peasant had certain rights (things they could expect), and responsibilities (work they had to perform in return).

The feudal hierarchy was made up of mutual (two-way) relationships between lords (people higher up in the hierarchy) and vassals (people lower down in the hierarchy). For example, a king (lord) had an obligation to the nobles directly below him (his vassals). He provided them with land to live on (known as a fief). In return, each noble promised to obey the king and provide military support when needed.

In a feudal system, a person could not change their social position. If a person was born as a peasant, they died as a peasant. Peasants could not become nobles, no matter how hard they worked or how intelligent they were.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on key social groups in medieval society



Source 5 The hierarchy of medieval societies under feudalism

King
- The king owned all the land. He kept 25% and granted 75% to his vassals.
- He administered the country, directed wars and fended off challengers to the throne.
- He enjoyed wealth and privileges, such as banquets and balls.

Nobles, lords and bishops
- Nobles inherited their family titles. They made up less than 1% of the population.
  - They were granted 75% of the land belonging to the king.
  - They lived in large manors or castles on a fief. Every fief had a church with many Christian workers, such as friars, monks and nuns.
- Lords ruled over all business matters, and collected taxes from peasants.
- Bishops also collected taxes, but did not pay taxes to the king. They became very wealthy.

Knights
- Knights were a small social group who protected their lords and would fight for the king when required. Most were the sons of nobles.
- They provided security within the fief, and received income (food and supplies) from the peasants.
- Knighthood could be earned through official training, starting as a page (a servant of a knight) at the age of 7. At 14, they received a sacred sword from the bishop and became a squire. As a squire, they fulfilled honourable duties for their knight. If they proved their bravery, they became a knight at 21.

Peasants and serfs
- Peasants and serfs were the labourers and farmers – producing all the food, supplies and services. They made up over 90% of feudal society.
  - They were heavily taxed and paid rent to those above them.
  - Their lives were hard, with little rest or comfort. They worked long hours on the fields with simple tools, such as sickles.
- Peasants had a few political rights and some owned land.
- Serfs had no political rights and did not own any land.

8.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What is a fief?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the relationship between a vassal and a lord.

3 What is a hierarchy? Do we have hierarchies of any kind in Australia today? **Explain** your answer.

Analyse

4 Suggest how a medieval ruler's position might have been strengthened by giving fiefs to those who provided loyalty and support.

5 **Distinguish** between the main responsibilities of each group shown in Source 5 by writing about how they are different.

8.4 The feudal manor

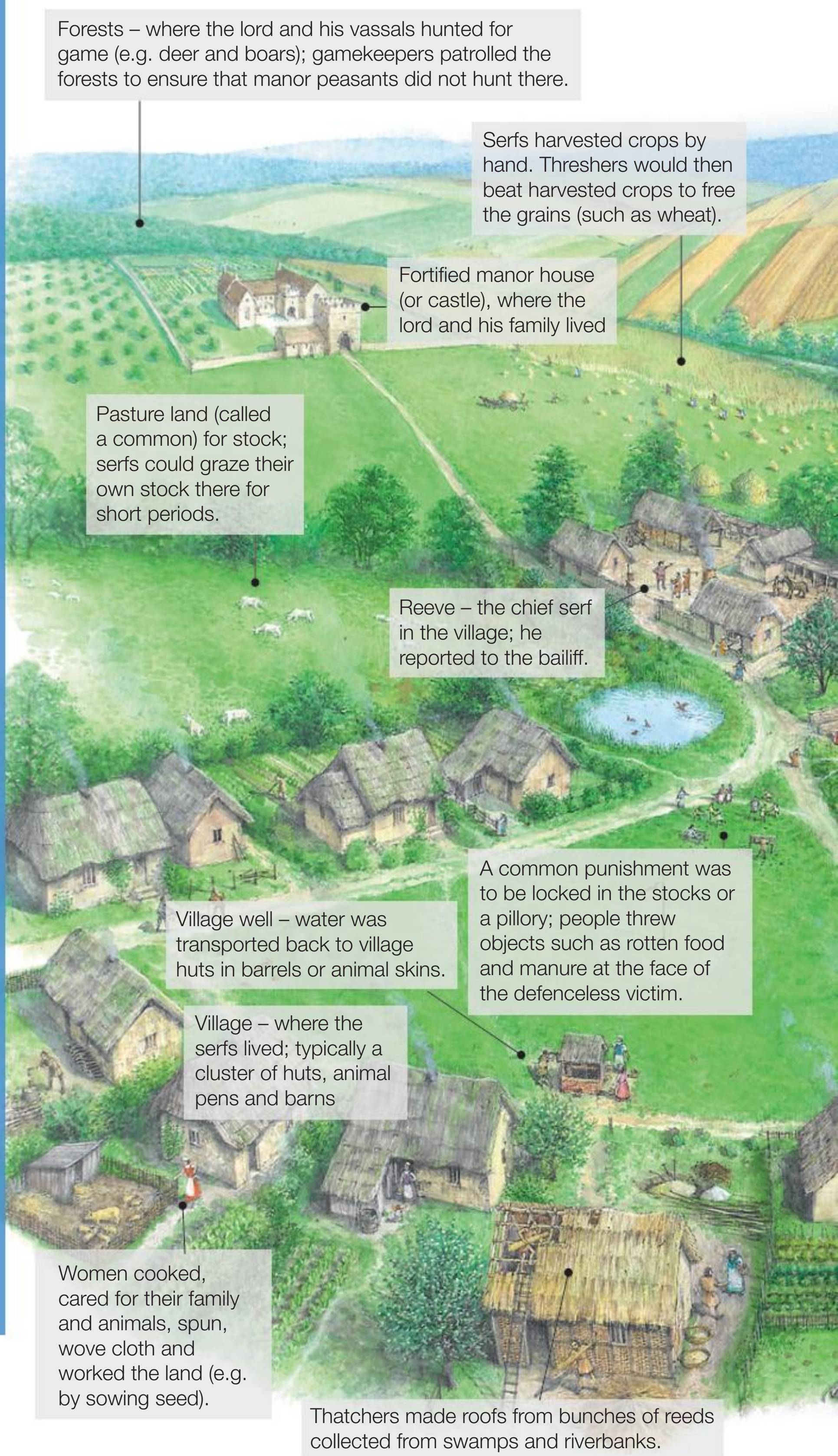
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the roles and relationships of different groups on a feudal manor.

Under feudalism in Europe, land that did not belong to the ruler or the Church was mostly divided into manor lands, called *demesnes* (meaning the lord's land, or domain). Each of these estates was owned by a noble or knight – the manor and its lands would have been given to him by his own lord, as a fief. Serfs farmed the lands to meet the lords' needs. Serfs were peasants who lived and worked on land; they had to obey the landowner.

The lord of a manor provided serfs on his estate with a place to live and the means to survive, and they provided him with their labour. Serfs also paid taxes (a portion of what they produced on the land they farmed) and a tithe. A tithe was a tax paid to support the Church. It was a tenth of the money a person earned, or of the goods they produced. Most serfs were not free to leave the manor lands and had to have the lord's permission to do many everyday tasks.



Source 6 A modern artist's impression of a typical feudal manor and its lands

8.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** who was responsible for business matters on the manor.

Comprehend

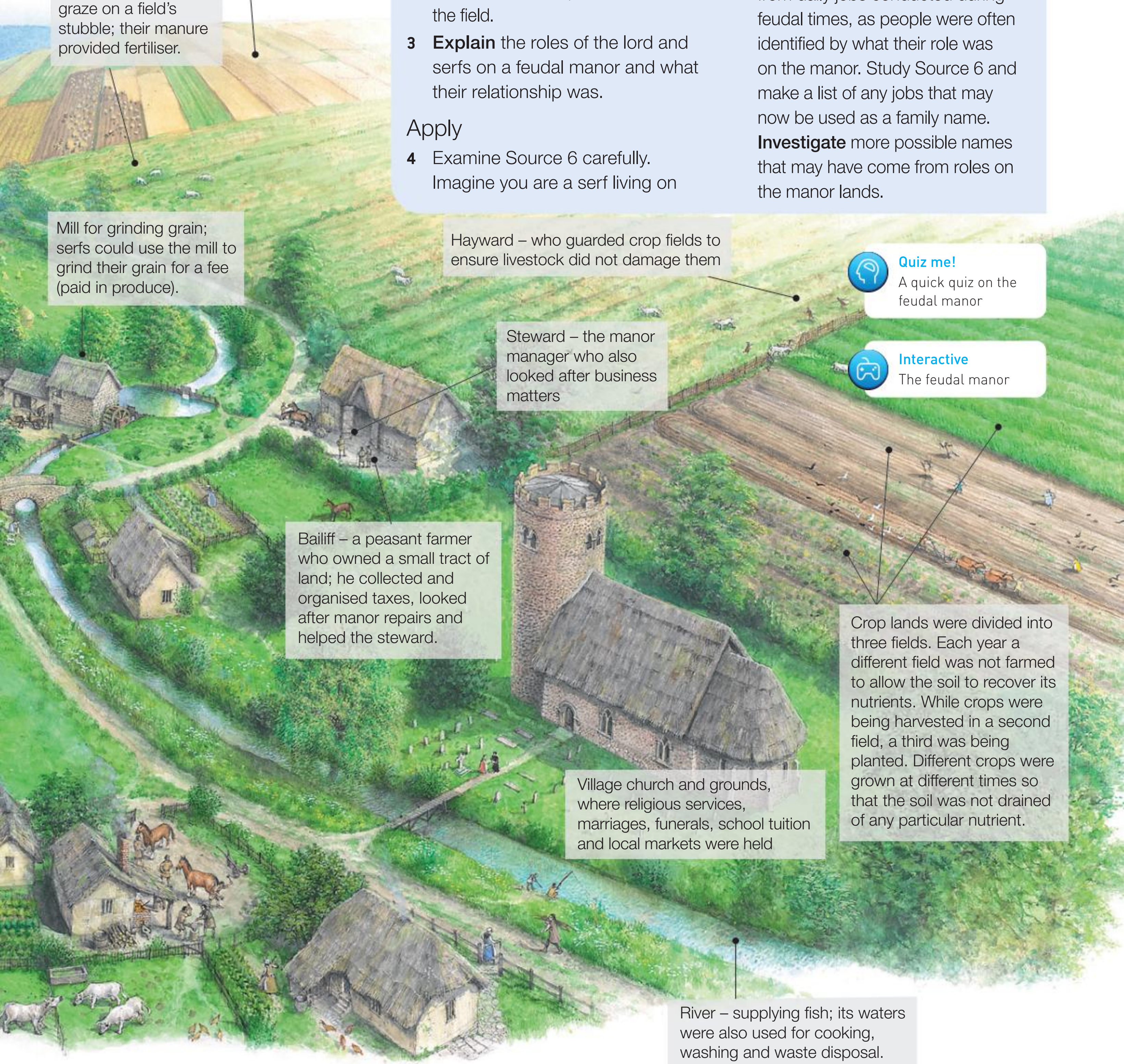
2 **Describe** how crops were rotated in the field.

3 **Explain** the roles of the lord and serfs on a feudal manor and what their relationship was.

Apply

4 Examine Source 6 carefully. Imagine you are a serf living on medieval manor lands. **Create** a short diary entry describing a typical day in your life.

5 Many family names such as Hayward or Miller, originated from daily jobs conducted during feudal times, as people were often identified by what their role was on the manor. Study Source 6 and make a list of any jobs that may now be used as a family name. **Investigate** more possible names that may have come from roles on the manor lands.



Quiz me! A quick quiz on the feudal manor

Interactive The feudal manor

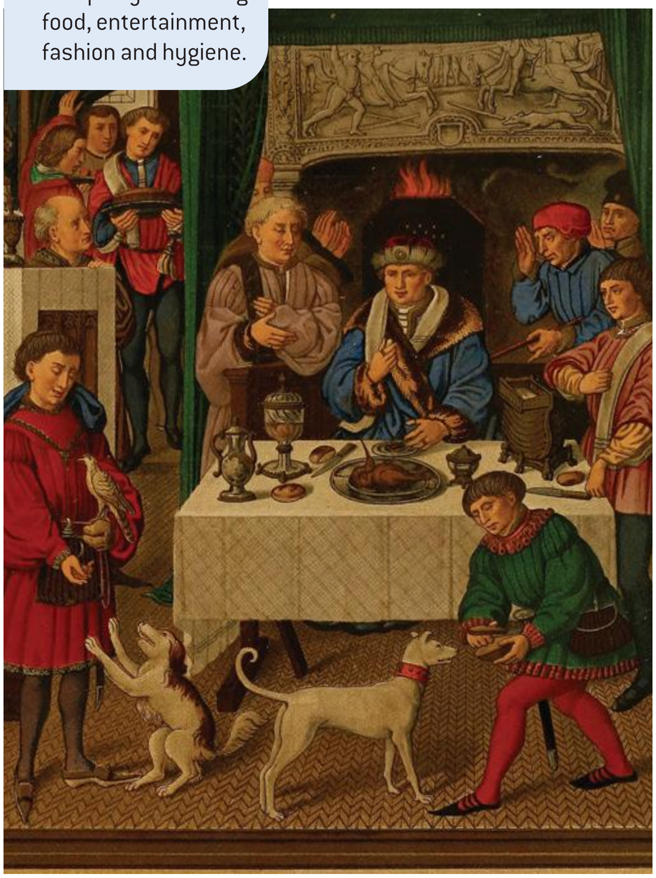
8.5 Daily life in medieval Europe

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» compare the daily lives of the rich and the poor in medieval Europe by examining food, entertainment, fashion and hygiene.

In medieval Europe, the lives of the wealthy and the poor were very different. These differences reflected the social group of which people were members, and could be seen in aspects such as food, entertainment, fashion and hygiene. In some instances, laws enforced these differences.



Source 7 A fifteenth-century illustration of a rich man's feast

Food

The rich ate a range of meats, fish, fruit, soft cheese, eggs, vegetables, sauces, soups, salads, white bread, pies and tarts, and ornate sweet dishes called subtleties. With their food, they drank ale, wine or mead (a brew made from honey and water).

Source 8 A king's appetite

> At six o'clock the king rises and asks what there is for breakfast. 'Sire, a fat chicken and chops.' 'It would be easy to poach me some eggs in meat juice.' The king supervises the preparations, eats four chops, the fat chicken, six eggs in meat juice and a slice of ham and drinks a bottle and a half of champagne; he dresses, sets out to hunt and returns with an incredible appetite.

Extract outlining the feasting of King Louis XVI of France – who reigned from 1774 until 1792, when France was still living under a feudal society – from Leonard W. Cowie, *The French Revolution: Documents and Debates*, Red Globe Press, 1987, pp. 6–7

minstrels
medieval singers and musicians who typically wandered around the countryside performing at events (often as part of a small group)

jesters
medieval comedians who joked and 'played the fool' at occasions such as banquets and fairs; they typically wore a multi-pronged floppy hat with bells on it

Banquets were held on important religious feast days and for special events. Important people (such as members of the lord's family) sat at a higher table than other diners. Feasts often lasted for hours. In between the many courses, diners were entertained by acrobats, **minstrels** and **jesters**.

The poor ate a simpler and less varied diet than the rich. It included stews, grainy bread, vegetables and fruit (when available), milk, hard cheese, porridge made from oats or barley, and perhaps some nuts from the forests. Most peasants ate their main meal for the day while working in the fields. They ate very little meat, as they were often too poor to own and raise animals. Hunting for game (wild animals) in the lord's forests was forbidden. Instead, they hunted for rabbits and birds in the fields.

Entertainment

Generally, hobbies were a privilege for the nobility. For men, activities such as hunting, falconry (training falcons to attack small animals) and playing chess were enjoyed. Hunts were typically conducted in the woods and forests surrounding feudal manors. Entertainment for women might include embroidery, stitching tapestries or listening to musical performances.

The poor did not have many opportunities for entertainment, but during special feasts, such as at harvest time, there might be dancing, dice throwing, ball games and wrestling. Many of the games played by medieval children, such as hopscotch and hide-and-seek, are still played today (see Source 9).

Fashion

The clothes of the wealthy were usually custom-made by tailors using silk, satin or velvet. Women typically wore long, trailing garments with elaborate sleeves and ornate headwear, such as veils. Wealthy men commonly wore tunics, stockings, decorated cloaks and fancy hats. Only royalty could wear gold and silver materials and purple silk.

The clothes of the poor were, by contrast, drab and dull in colour. They were crudely made from coarse cloth, which was woven by peasant women from hand-spun wool or linen.

Wool was a major part of the economy in medieval England, as all manors farmed sheep. It was the job of a man called a fuller to stamp on wool and pound it in a trough of urine all day, in order to soften and whiten so that it could be woven into clothes.

Source 9 This painting by Pieter Brueghel the Elder, *Children's Games* (*c.* 1560), shows a wide range of games played by children in medieval Europe.

Source 10 An artist's impression of a range of garments worn by people in eleventh-century England – the top panel shows the types of clothing worn by common people and soldiers, while the bottom panel shows clothing typically worn by the rich, including the king.

Hygiene

Only the wealthy could afford the luxury of a long, hot bath. This was called a 'stew'. Scented oils, rose petals or herbs such as rosemary and spearmint were added to the water.

For the poor, personal hygiene was very basic. Peasants washed in a dish of cold water. Wood was a scarce and valuable resource for the poor, so it was not wasted on heating water for washing.

Source 11 An artist's impression of a wealthy medieval man enjoying a 'stew'

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 11.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What does it make you wonder?

Quiz me!

A quick quiz on daily life in medieval Europe

8.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** one way in which an eleventh-century noblewoman might 'advertise' that she was wealthy by the way she dressed.

2 What did 'having a stew' mean in medieval times? What social group might engage in this activity? Why?

3 a Read Source 8 and **summarise** the king's point of view.

b What do you think the point of view of the peasant class would be towards this king? **Explain** your answer.

Analyse

4 With a partner, **examine** Source 9 and identify as many medieval games and activities as you can. Create a table and sort the activities into those you recognise and those that seem strange to you.

Apply

5 a **Distinguish** between the diets of the rich and poor by writing a short paragraph on the differences between them.

b Which diet do you think was healthier? Give reasons for your opinion.

6 Refer to Source 10 and **investigate** further on the internet in order to design two separate outfits:

- one for a peasant man or peasant woman in medieval England
- one for a nobleman or noblewoman in medieval England.

Sketch and colour your finished garments, ensuring that they follow the established rules and laws of medieval England (in terms of colours, materials and styles).

8.6 Housing for the rich and poor

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

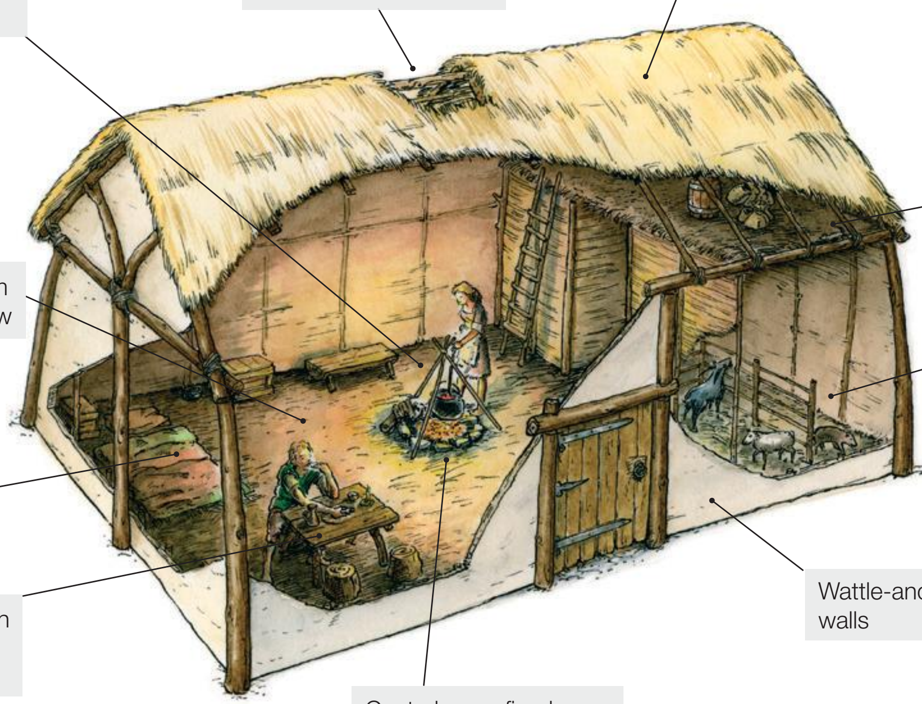
» compare the daily lives of the rich and the poor in medieval Europe by examining their living conditions.

In addition to food, entertainment, fashion and hygiene, there were also marked differences between rich and poor in terms of living conditions.

Living conditions for the poor

Living conditions for the poor were not very comfortable. Peasant farmers often lived in a one- or two-roomed hut, shared with domestic animals such as chickens and pigs (see Source 12). This was often one of a number of similar huts on manor lands (see Source 6 on page 230). These huts were usually dirty, sooty, smelly and dark. Walls were mostly a mixture of mud, manure and sticks (called 'wattle and daub'). They might be painted white with lime. Roofs were made from thatch (straw). Windows were narrow openings that could be boarded up in winter. The toilet was a hole in the ground outside.

Peasants who worked as servants in manor houses and castles lived in more secure and pleasant surroundings; however, their daily lives were hard like those of other peasants, with few personal comforts.



Source 12 An artist's impression of a medieval peasant's hut

Living conditions for the rich

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on housing for the rich and poor

When not fighting wars, the wealthy led mostly comfortable lives, often in manor houses and castles (see Source 17 on page 238). The Church also had great wealth, and certain members lived very comfortably, despite their vow of poverty.

Source 13 A replica of a noble's medieval bathroom

The noble family would wash in tubs (often with the help of servants) and dress. They would also visit the garderobe (a medieval toilet), which was a small, cold room with a seat that opened directly onto a stinking pit or **moat** below. A chamber pot kept in the bedroom was typically used for toilet visits during the night. Strips of torn fabric were used as toilet paper.

After breakfast, the lord and lady would usually visit their private chapel. The lord's tasks for a day might then include making decisions about the manor, receiving rents, presiding over a manor court of law, and planning to visit another castle he owned. At night, there might be a feast for an important guest (perhaps the king) or to celebrate something special, such as the end of a **tournament** (see page 258).

moat
a wide band of water surrounding a built structure such as a castle; it provided some protection in in the event of attack

tournament
a public event held in medieval Europe, similar to a fair or carnival; tournaments featured organised battles and a series of jousts between knights on horseback

Source 14 The restored bedroom of the sixteenth-century French King Henri III in the Château de Blois in France (left) – often, the beds of the wealthy had blankets, sheets, feather pillows, fur covers and linen curtains. Tapestries (right) covered up draughty cracks in the stone walls of castles.

Source 15 This modern-day re-enactment of a medieval tournament shows two knights on horseback, jousting.

Evidence in oral histories

Nursery rhymes, common phrases and sayings have been passed down through generations of storytelling. Historians call this 'oral history'. Oral histories are hard to date back to a specific time, place or event because they do not come from written evidence. Because of this, their origins are contestable (questionable) in nature.

Historians believe that many kings and queens are represented in nursery rhymes. Humpty Dumpty, for example, is believed to represent King Richard III (see Skills in Context task 8B on page 250), who died in battle in 1485 after falling from his horse. Events such as the Black Death and military attacks have been connected to 'Ring a Ring o' Roses' and 'London Bridge is Falling Down', but without more primary evidence, their origins are a source of continued debate.

Some examples of phrases that historians believe may have originated from living conditions during medieval society include:

- 'dirt poor' – referring to the dirt floor of peasants' huts
- 'raining cats and dogs' – referring to the theory that cats and dogs would rest on the thatched roofs of peasants' huts for warmth, but fall off when it rained and became slippery
- 'upper crust' – referring to the fact that peasants were given the burnt bottom half of the loaf, while the wealthy enjoyed the well-cooked upper crust.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Source 16 A bronze statue of Humpty Dumpty in Coral Springs, Florida

8.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** a typical day for a lord in medieval Europe.

Analyse

2 Suggest why there was a high risk of fires in medieval towns.

3 **Compare** Sources 12 and 14. What are the similarities and what are the differences?

Apply

4 **Investigate** the history of two or three nursery rhymes or phrases, and outline the suggested theories as to their origin.

For each rhyme or phrase:

- investigate any factual event, person, or place mentioned in each theory.
- explain your own opinion as to how likely the origin of this rhyme or phrase is.
- present your findings as a report or poster, including images.

Remember to include references to show where you found your information.

8.7 The medieval castle

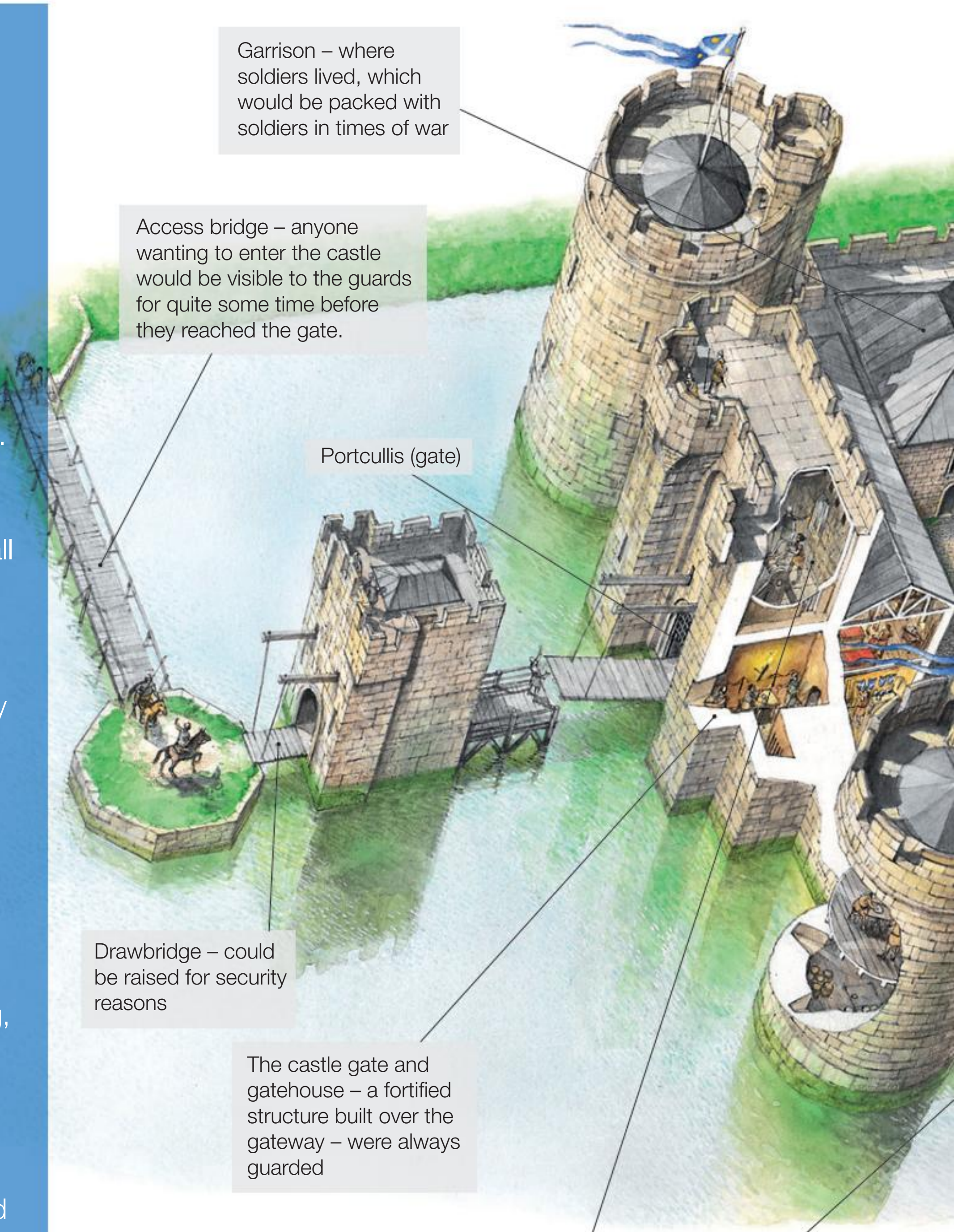
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the features of castles in medieval Europe.

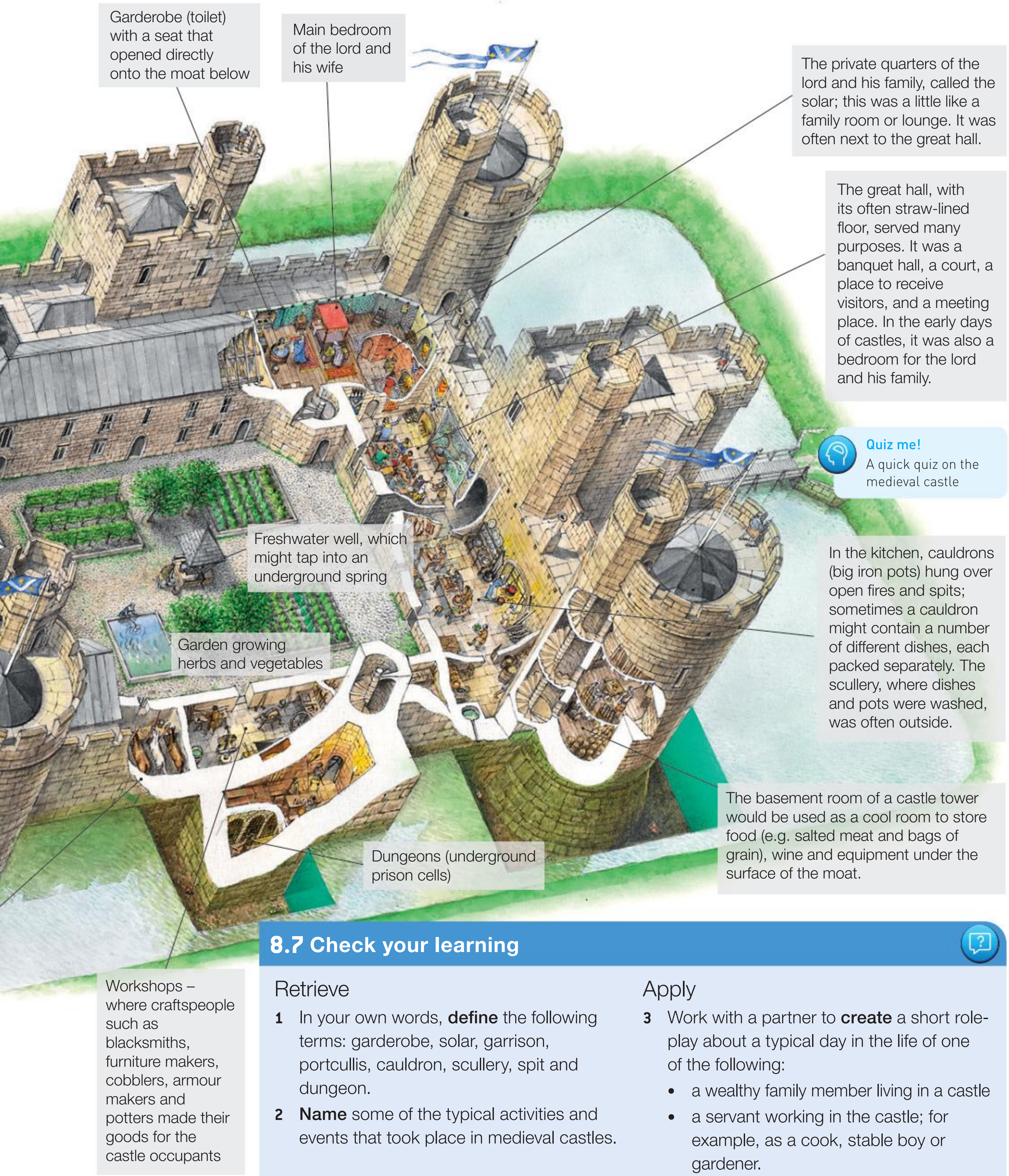
The richest and most powerful families in medieval Europe lived in castles that were scattered across the countryside. Within the castle walls lived not just the extended family, but a whole community able to serve all the needs of the family. A typical day in the castle began when the sun rose.

By then, servants were already preparing meals and had lit the fires in the kitchen and great hall. In times of peace, castles were the settings for feasts, workshops, markets, romance, raising and entertaining children, crafts and music. They were also the focal point for military training, the day-to-day running of the realm, and administering justice. The medieval period saw the development of some distinct castle designs; these are covered in topic 8.13 on page 258.



Interactive A medieval castle

Source 17 A modern artist's impression of 'home sweet home' for many wealthy and powerful families in medieval Europe



Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the medieval castle

8.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the following terms: garderobe, solar, garrison, portcullis, cauldron, scullery, spit and dungeon.

2 **Name** some of the typical activities and events that took place in medieval castles.

Apply

3 Work with a partner to **create** a short role-play about a typical day in the life of one of the following:

- a wealthy family member living in a castle
- a servant working in the castle; for example, as a cook, stable boy or gardener.

8A

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The achievements of medieval women

In medieval Europe, both noble and peasant women were expected to work in the family home until they were married. After marriage, they had to run their husband's household and raise children. Typically, they received very little education and had few rights. Every woman was required to obey her father or husband in all matters and was not able to make decisions for herself.

Despite these challenges and restrictions, some women in medieval Europe became very influential and their stories live on to this day.

Source 18 A 1901 painting by Edmund Leighton, believed to be of Eleanor of Aquitaine

Eleanor of Aquitaine (1122–1204)

Eleanor was born in France in 1122. She was the daughter of the Duke of Aquitaine and heir to his land. When her father died, however, the land became the property of Louis VI, the French king. When she was 15, Eleanor married the king's son. He later became King Louis VII, and Eleanor became Queen of France. She took part in the Second Crusade (Holy War) alongside her husband, taking 300 women with her to fight and help care for the wounded.

Eleanor was unhappy with Louis, and the marriage was annulled (declared non-existent) in 1152. In 1154 she married the Duke of Normandy, who later became King Henry II of England.

Eleanor supported her sons when they revolted against Henry in 1173, and she was imprisoned for 16 years. When Henry died in 1189 she was released, and helped rule England with – and for – her eldest son, King Richard I, known as Richard the Lionheart.

Source 19 An 1855 painting of Joan of Arc, by Jean-Auguste-Dominique Ingres

Joan of Arc (1412–1431)

Joan of Arc was born in 1412 in a small French village called Domrémy. As the daughter of a peasant farmer, she received no education apart from the lessons of the Church. When she was 13, Joan believed she began to see visions and hear the voices of saints. The voices told her that she would help the French defeat the English – who sought to put an Englishman on the French throne – and so secure the coronation of Charles VII, who was then crown prince of France.

Aged 18, Joan travelled in men's clothing to see Charles. Her faith inspired many nobles and common people. She helped lead the French to victory, and in 1429 Charles was crowned King Charles VII of France.

Less than a year later, Joan was captured and imprisoned by the English. Wanting to discredit the new French king, they accused her of heresy (that is, of doing something in serious conflict with the teachings of the Church). Because she refused to confess that she did not hear the voices of saints she was burned at the stake in 1431.

Christine de Pizan (1363–*c.* 1430)

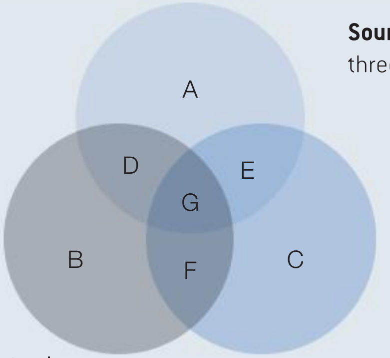
Christine de Pizan was born in Venice in 1363. Her father was Tomasso de Pizzano, a respected physician who made sure she received a good education. She grew up at the court of King Charles V of France.

At 14, Christine married Etienne du Castel, a court secretary, and they had three children. Her husband died in 1389. By this time, her father and King Charles were also dead, and Christine decided to support her family by writing. Over the next 50 years, she wrote many poems, essays and books. As well as entertaining stories and love poems, she wrote serious works about the place of women in society, defending women against those who dismissed them as ignorant and worthless.

Source 20 A fifteenth-century artist's impression of Christine de Pizan, from *The Book of the Queen*, a collection of her work

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Using Venn diagrams to compare information from a range of sources



Source 21 A Venn diagram comparing three things

Venn diagrams are simple diagrammatic tools that help you organise your thinking. They can help you to quickly identify the similarities and differences between two or more things. These 'things' can be anything – people, events, political systems and so on. Venn diagrams are a useful tool to compare information you have gathered from a range of sources.

To complete a Venn diagram comparing three things, like the one in Source 21, follow these steps:

Step 1 Think about how each of the three things you are comparing are different. Record these individual features in the non-overlapping sections (A, B and C).

Step 2 Then think about how two of the things are similar or share common features. Write any features that are common to A and B in section D, features common to A and C in section E, and features common to B and C in section F.

Step 3 Finally, think about the features that all three things have in common. Record these common features in section G.

Practise the skill

1 Draw a large Venn diagram – like the one in Source 21 – in your notebook, and arrange features from the written information and visual sources about the three women discussed in this Skills in Context task to show what they had in common and what was different about them.

Consider the following topics:

- family connections
- education
- type and extent of influence.

Extend your understanding

1 Consider the place of women in Australian society today. Create a table to **compare** the ways in which women's social positions are similar to and different from the social positions of women in medieval Europe.

Investigate the following areas using the internet:

- home life
- legal rights
- family
- work and roles performed
- access to education.

2 Which do you think is the most effective way to compare information: Venn diagrams or tables? **Explain** your answer.

8.8 A period of great change

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain significant changes in medieval Europe as new empires, kingdoms and rulers asserted their power.

Danelaw
an area in north-west England that the then King of Wessex, Alfred, gave to the Vikings in exchange for their stopping raids of the region

Anglo-Saxon
a Germanic people who settled in Britain in the 400s CE; they drove the local Celtic people to the land's extremities

The medieval period in Europe was a time of great change. New groups of people moved across the region and settled in different places; new ideas and beliefs spread throughout the population; and important events such as wars, famines and plagues brought about changes at all levels of society.

Throughout this period, new empires, kingdoms and rulers were also established. Some of these are outlined in Source 1.

Source 1 Empires, kingdoms and rulers in medieval Europe

THE FRANKS (EIGHTH AND NINTH CENTURIES CE)

- dominated Western Europe (modern-day France, Belgium and Germany)
- commanded a powerful military force
- had a close relationship with the Catholic Church.
- brought stability to the region by uniting many tribal groups under Christianity to form the Holy Roman Empire
- were most powerful under Charles I (742–814 CE), also known as Charlemagne (pictured; and see topic 8.9 on page 244).

THE VIKINGS (NINTH AND TENTH CENTURIES CE)

- raided coastal settlements and monasteries in England, Ireland, Scotland and France in the ninth century CE
- came to control large areas of medieval Europe over time, setting up their own kingdoms (such as the *Danelaw* in England)
- under leadership of Viking leader Hrolf (pictured) defeated the Frankish king, Charles the Simple (a descendant of Charlemagne) in 911 CE. Hrolf forced Charles to pay a fief of a region of western France. This area became known as Normandy. In return for this land, Hrolf promised to stop raiding and convert to Christianity.

THE NORMANS (TENTH AND ELEVENTH CENTURIES CE)

- adopted and advanced some of the political and cultural practices of the Franks
- made further conquests in Europe and established a kingdom in southern Italy by the eleventh century BCE
- had long-standing interests in England. For example, Emma of Normandy (the sister of Richard II, Duke of Normandy) had married the English King Ethelred II. Their son, Edward the Confessor (pictured), became King of England in 1042. During his reign, many Normans became involved in English politics. From 1066, the Normans ruled England, ending the Anglo-Saxon period.

Battle of Hastings

When Edward the Confessor died without an heir in 1066, a number of people believed they had the right to rule England. One contender was Harold Godwinson, the powerful Earl of Wessex, who had himself crowned king that year. Harold claimed that Edward had promised him the throne on his deathbed.

Edward's cousin William, Duke of Normandy, was another contender for the throne. He also claimed that Edward had promised him the throne on his deathbed. Later that year, he invaded England to take the throne for himself. William's army defeated Harold's army at the Battle of Hastings.

The Battle of Hastings is one of the most significant battles in medieval Europe. It took place at Hastings in the south of England on 14 October 1066.

The forces of Harold, the newly crowned King of England, and William, Duke of Normandy, fought for the English throne. Harold was killed in the battle. William – who became known as William the Conqueror – was then crowned King William I of England.

This marked an end to Anglo-Saxon rule and the start of Norman rule in England. Norman rule changed England forever. There were changes to the government, the Church, language and everyday life.

From 1066, William and his Norman nobles began imposing their rule on the English. Many of the former Anglo-Saxon nobility fled to Denmark, Scotland and Wales. William claimed their lands, giving some to the Church and some as fiefs to his loyal followers and knights as a reward.

The Normans built castles in their new kingdom to protect their territory and enforce their rule. They also introduced the system of feudalism, which was already common across mainland Europe.

Source 2 A scene from the Bayeux Tapestry (an embroidery retelling of the Battle of Hastings, made in around 1080) showing the mounted soldiers of William, Duke of Normandy, attacking the Saxon foot soldiers of King Harold.

8.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** one significant achievement of the Franks.

2 Who was Hrolf? Why was he an important leader?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why this period in medieval Europe was a time of great political change. Use specific examples from this topic to support your answer.

4 **Summarise** why Harold Godwinson and William of Normandy both believed they were legitimate contenders for the English throne in 1066.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** the significance of the Battle of Hastings using the 5Rs of historical significance (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit').

Apply

6 The Bayeux Tapestry is a rich source of information about the Battle of Hastings. Collect images of the tapestry from the internet, and use them to **create** a flow chart showing the major events in the Norman invasion of England (including the Battle of Hastings). (Hint: Most websites that show the full tapestry will provide commentary about what is happening in each panel.)

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on a period of great change

8.9 Significant individual: Charlemagne

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand why Charlemagne was a significant figure of change in medieval Europe.

Charles I (742–814 CE), King of the Franks – more commonly known as Charlemagne (meaning Charles the Great) – was one of the most important kings in medieval Europe. He was part of the noble Carolingian Dynasty. Charlemagne and his brother Carloman both took the throne of the Frankish kingdom when their father, Pepin the Short, died in 768. After Carloman's death in 771, Charlemagne ruled in his own right.

Charlemagne was active in overseeing his kingdom, and regularly travelled around it. He also set up a network of messengers to report back to him on what was happening. Under his rule, his kingdom rose to dominate Western Europe (see Source 3).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Charlemagne

Leadership qualities

Over the course of his lifetime, Charlemagne fought many wars, and his victories expanded the territory under his control. He was helped by the armies of his supporters. Charlemagne had given many of these men grants of land, which encouraged their ongoing loyalty and support.

Charlemagne was also a leading thinker, introducing many political and social reforms. To encourage education, he set up a number of schools for nobles and peasants alike. Many of the cultural and artistic traditions of the Greeks and Romans were brought back to life during Charlemagne's rule. As a result, this period is often referred to as the 'Carolingian Renaissance' (from the French term meaning 'rebirth'). Charlemagne's leadership encouraged many new developments in literature, architecture and the arts.

EUROPE, *C.* 800 CE

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 3 This map shows the extent of the Frankish Empire under Charlemagne, *c.* 800 CE, when it was at its largest.

Charlemagne becomes an emperor

Charlemagne had always had a close relationship with the Catholic Church. In 799 CE, he came to the aid of Pope Leo III. The Pope, accused of adultery, had fled Rome.

His accusers had threatened to gouge out his eyes and cut out his tongue. Charlemagne escorted the Pope back to Rome and forced his reinstatement.

The Pope was understandably grateful to Charlemagne. On Christmas Day in 800, he crowned Charlemagne Emperor of the Romans. This endorsement strengthened both the Church and the empire. Rulers who followed Charlemagne were referred to as Holy Roman Emperors.

In late 813, Charlemagne crowned his son, Louis the Pious, co-emperor. Shortly afterwards, on 28 January 814, Charlemagne died. He had ruled for 47 years.

Interpreting a source

The key historical concept of perspective (see page 216 of 'The history toolkit') refers to the position from which people see and understand events around them.

Understanding a person's perspective gives insight into what a person values or prioritises in their life. The perspective a person has influences their point of view.

Look closely at Source 4. The annotations will help you interpret this source. What do you think Source 4 says about the artist's point of view on Charlemagne?

Practise the skill

Log onto your obook pro and complete the key skill worksheet 'Historical perspectives & interpretations: Interpreting a source'.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Interpreting a source

Source 4 An artist's impression of Charlemagne, who is pictured with children

8.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Study Source 3. Using the map at the back of this book, **identify** which modern European countries were originally ruled by Charlemagne.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** how giving grants of land to his closest supporters benefited Charlemagne.

Analyse

3 Suggest why the Pope decided to crown Charlemagne Emperor of the Romans.

Apply

4 **Discuss** three reasons why you think Charlemagne deserves to be considered a significant individual. Structure your answer in order of most important to least important.

8.10 The spread of Christianity

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- understand the dominance of the Catholic Church in medieval society
- identify the causes and effects of the Crusades.

Christianity became a very powerful and wealthy institution during medieval Europe. The Catholic Church (now referred to as the Roman Catholic Church) showed its dominance over many aspects of life, including the arts, medicine, education, architecture and even in wars.

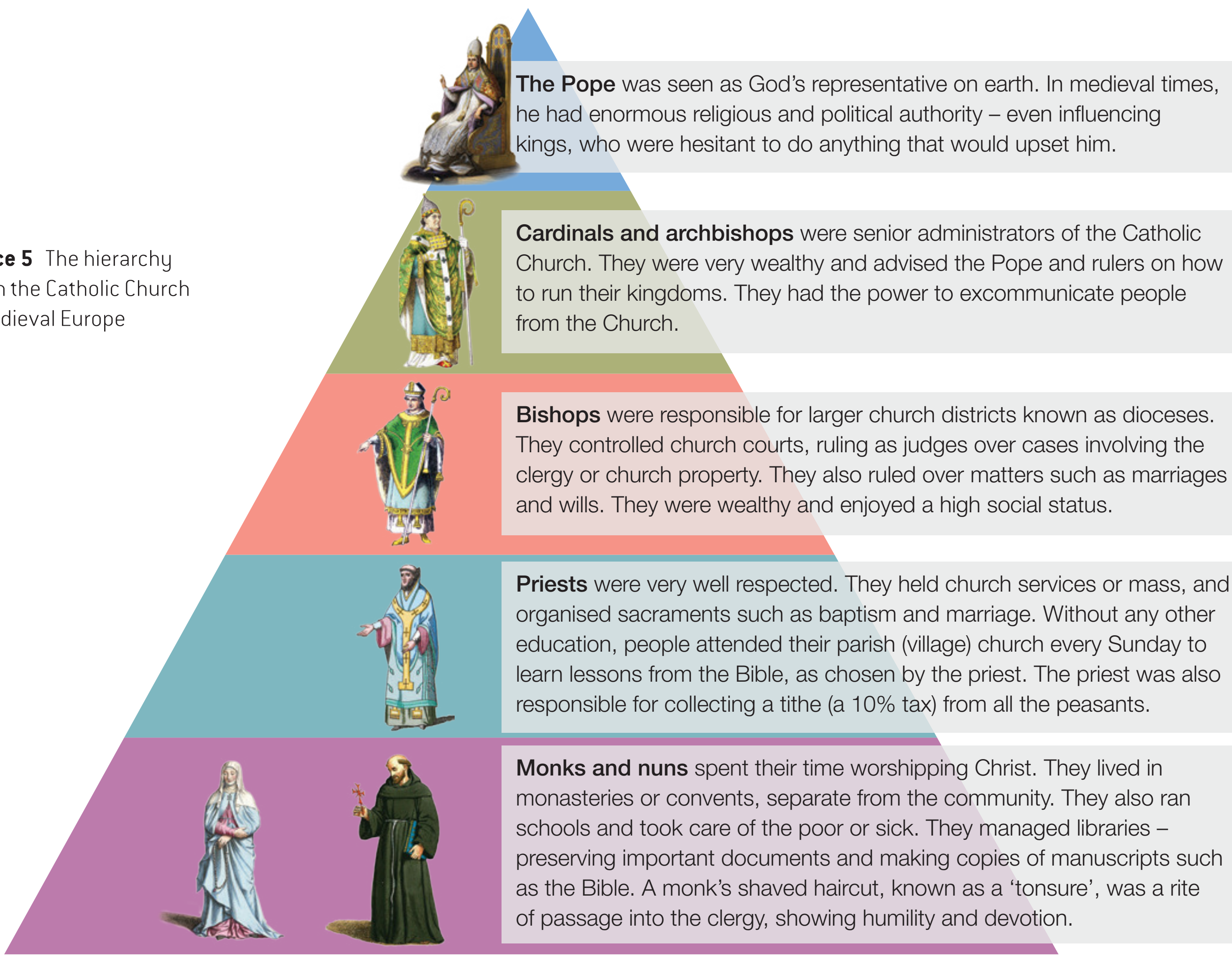
This powerful institution was headed by the Pope, who in many respects had more power than any ruler in medieval Europe. He was supported by a hierarchy of **clergy** (see Source 5). The clergy organised and advised society at all levels. Similar to feudalism, a person's rank within the clergy was determined by their family.

clergy
the priests or ministers of a religion, especially the Christian Church

mass
an act of worship in the Catholic Church

Christianity's influence over daily life

In a feudal society, people's lives typically revolved around the activities of the village or town church. Christians followed the guidance of the Catholic Church from birth to death, and attended **mass** every Sunday. They learnt from childhood how the Church expected them to behave and what they should believe. Obeying the Church's teachings helped to preserve the social order in medieval Europe, as it brought unity and stability. The Church also established religious festivals and holy days within the calendar for people to set aside to worship or honour saints.



Source 5 The hierarchy within the Catholic Church in medieval Europe

Heaven and hell

During medieval times, it was believed that a person's level of faith and devotion would affect their time both on Earth and in the afterlife. The act of paying penance, usually by a gift of money or food, was frequently required for a person to be forgiven for their sins. Following the rules of the Church would grant a person salvation (entry into heaven). The desire to enter heaven and the terrible fear of hell were strong motivations for people in medieval times to obey church rules.

Any Christian who did not follow the rules could be **excommunicated** by a bishop or the Pope. Being expelled from the Church was a terrifying punishment, as it meant a person could no longer attend church or receive sacraments (sacred rituals). Most importantly, it meant their soul was doomed to live in hell for eternity. Highly decorated illuminated manuscripts (see page 253) and illustrations portrayed in great detail the endless punishment and torture a sinner would experience in hell.

Source 6 *Hell*, an illustration created by Herrad of Landsberg in 1180; it has a border of rocks as hell was believed to be located under the Earth.

Holy pilgrimages

As Christianity spread across Western Europe, people of all social classes began to set out on journeys to places of religious importance (such as shrines and burial sites). These journeys, known as pilgrimages, were designed to prove Christians' loyal devotion to God. Each region of Europe had its own sites popular with pilgrims; however, the most sacred pilgrimage site for all Christians was the city of Jerusalem, in the Holy Land.

The Holy Land had been held by Muslim Arabs since 637 CE, but Christian pilgrims had been allowed to travel there freely. This changed in 1050, when a group known as the Seljuk Turks, who had recently converted to Islam, took control of Jerusalem. They began harassing pilgrims and refusing them entry to the city. These events led to the start of a series of religious wars known as the Crusades.

Source 7 A fifteenth-century illustration of Christian pilgrims travelling to a shrine at Canterbury Cathedral in England

Religious warfare – the Crusades

The Crusades were a series of religious wars between Christians and Muslims between 1096 and 1270 CE to gain control over key religious sites in and around the city of Jerusalem – an important spiritual and religious location for believers of both Christianity and Islam. Historians argue about the total number of wars that were fought, but most agree that eight major crusades took place (see Source 8). While initially the journey to the Holy Land was over land, subsequent crusades started to travel both over land and through the Mediterranean Sea (see Source 9).

excommunicated
being cut off from the church community (including participation in communion and confession); a religious punishment

The start of the Crusades

Following the takeover of Jerusalem by the Seljuk Turks in 1050 CE, Christian pilgrims and traders no longer felt safe in the region. Many believed that this new Islamic regime would also move to invade Constantinople, capital of the Byzantine Empire (formerly the Eastern Roman Empire), which was under Christian rule.

Watch it!
A video and quiz on The Crusaders

Source 8 The dates of the eight major Crusades

Date	Crusade
1096–1099	First Crusade
1147–1149	Second Crusade
1188–1192	Third Crusade
1202–1204	Fourth Crusade
1217–1222	Fifth Crusade
1228–1229	Sixth Crusade
1248–1254	Seventh Crusade
1270	Eighth Crusade

This growing threat caused the Byzantine emperor to ask for support from Pope Urban II in 1096. In response, the Pope rallied Christians all over Europe to fight for control of Jerusalem and to help defend other Christians in the Middle East against the Turkish invaders. This was the start of the First Crusade.

People from all walks of life – from kings to peasants – joined the Crusades. Young people were particularly caught up in the desire to fight in the name of Christianity. Many young peasants who took part in the Crusades were encouraged by their local parish priests to join the fight. The priests believed that young people, free from 'sin', would make more successful Crusaders than older people. St Bernard of Clairvaux wrote in 1140: 'Of mighty soldier, oh man of war, you now have something to fight for. If you win it will be glorious. If you die fighting for Jerusalem, you will win a place in heaven.'

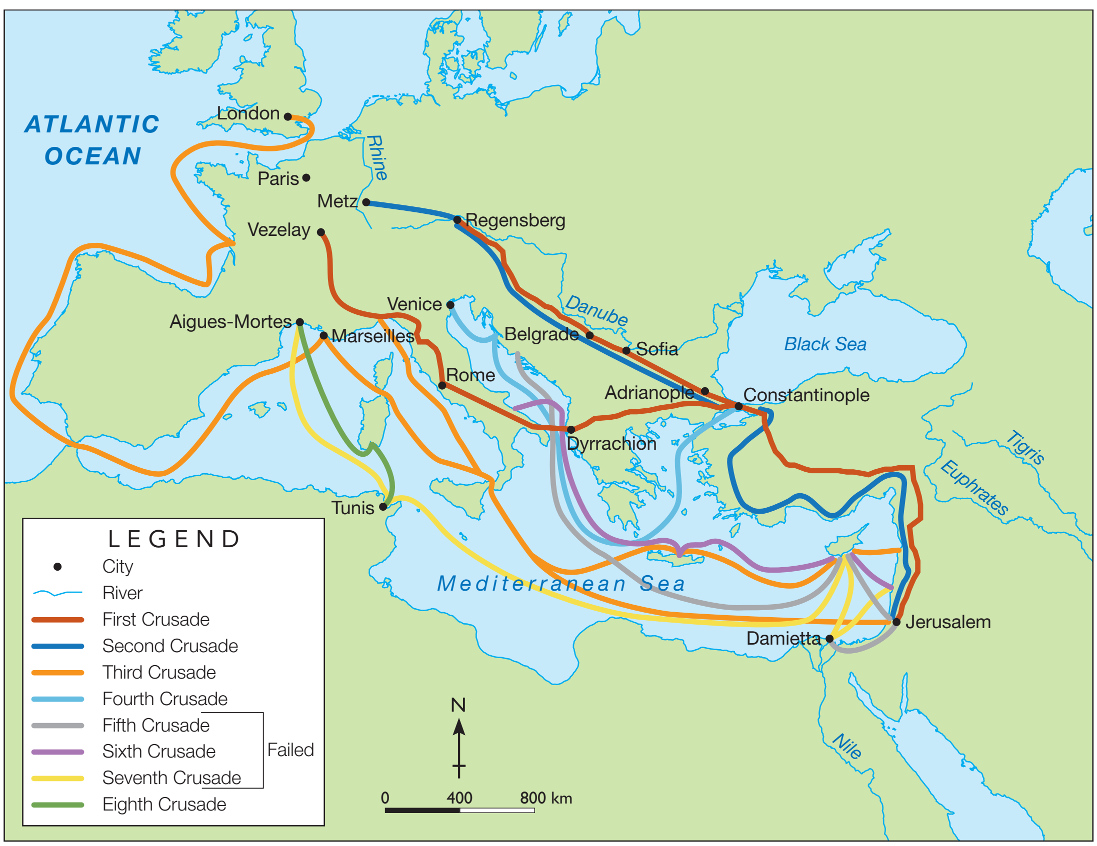
Although most people joined the Crusades to return control of the Holy Land to Christians, many went for other reasons. During this deeply religious time, most Christians believed that taking part in the Crusades would be a sure way of gaining entry into heaven when they died. Some were hoping to find wealth and fame. Others were looking for adventure.

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing events of the Crusades

The effects of the Crusades

The first Crusade in 1096 successfully brought Jerusalem under Christian control. The Crusaders ruled the city under Christianity until 1187. All the remaining Crusades were either designed to protect the gains made during the First Crusade or motivated by a desire for wealth and fame.

THE ROUTES OF THE CRUSADES



Source 9 Source: Oxford University Press

The Crusades had enormous effects on Europe and its people, including:

- the spread of new ideas, customs and products (such as food, spices and perfumes) as Crusaders returned home
- increased trade between the West and the East, as items from the **Silk Road** were found at the Holy Land and poured into Europe through trading ports in Italy
- the desire to explore and discover new ideas, which generated greater knowledge of science, medicine, mathematics and architecture.

The Crusades were also responsible for weakening the system of feudalism that had dominated Europe for centuries. Many lords had mortgaged or sold their estates before heading off on Crusades, and many more never returned at all.

All of these changes led to a move from a land-based economy to a money-based economy. They contributed to increased commerce in towns – causing them to grow into cities.

It is important to recognise the negative effects of the Crusades. Thousands of lives were lost in bloody battles (see Source 10), especially during the Siege of Jerusalem in 1099. One Christian **chronicle** reported after the First Crusade: 'The slaughter was so great that our men waded in blood up to their ankles.' Many soldiers died of injuries or disease, and others were sold as slaves, never to return home.

Source 10 An illustration of a battle during the First Crusade, painted by Sebastian Marmoret, *c.* 1490

Silk Road
a network of trade routes stretching west from China to the Mediterranean Sea; it was the main means by which silk was introduced to the West

chronicle
a detailed narrative on an event

8.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** a pilgrimage.

2 **Name** the event that caused Pope Urban II to call for people to go on the First Crusade.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the influence of the Catholic Church on medieval Europe. Consider the influence of the Church on social, economic and political parts of life.

4 Look closely at Source 9. **Explain** how the journey changed with each crusade.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** Source 6. What features of this image would cause the viewer to fear hell? What were some positives and negatives of medieval people fearing hell? Remember, when you analyse something, you must break it down into smaller arts and explain how they relate to each other.

Apply

6 In pairs, **create** a role-play or a comic strip that portrays a scenario. Use empathy (refer to page 217 of 'The history toolkit)' to get into the minds of your characters. Some options include:
- the daily life of a parish priest or a monk
- a person who wants their sins forgiven
- a peasant who decides to take part in the Crusades.

7 As a class, discuss the positive and negative effects of the Crusades.

8B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

King Richard III

Richard III was King of England from 1483 to 1485 CE. His family, the House of York, had ruled England since 1327. Richard took the throne after his brother, King Edward IV, died.

Edward's two young sons were actually next in line for the throne. Richard was nominated regent, meaning he was to rule until the young princes came of age. Within weeks, however, the young princes were imprisoned in the Tower of London and never seen again. Rumours spread quickly that Richard had organised for them both to be murdered.

Almost 200 years later, in 1674, construction works at the Tower of London led to the discovery of a chest containing two skeletons believed to be the remains of the princes. They were reburied in Westminster Abbey.

In April 2012, a major archaeological discovery occurred when Richard's skeleton was found buried under a carpark in Leicester. It had been buried after he died in battle on 22 August 1485 from a fatal blow to the head. The exact location was unknown, requiring extensive historical research. With access to Richard's bones, a DNA test could possibly confirm whether there is a genetic match to his nephews' bones, and solve this 550-year-old murder mystery. The remains of Richard III were reburied at Leicester Cathedral in 2015.

There are many sources that put forward their opinion of Richard III. One of the most famous is William Shakespeare's play *Richard III*, where Richard is portrayed as a villain who definitely killed his nephews (see Source 14).

Source 11 The skeleton of King Richard III showing the curvature of his spine; the discovery was referred to as 'the king in the carpark'. The death of King Richard III signified the end of the House of York dynasty.

Source 12

The Character of this Prince [Richard III] has been in general very severely treated by Historians, but as he was York, I am rather inclined to suppose him a very respectable Man. It has indeed been confidently asserted that he killed his two Nephews & his Wife, but it has also been declared that he did not kill his two Nephews, which I am inclined to believe true; & if this is the case, it may also be affirmed that he did not kill his Wife… Whether innocent or guilty, he did not reign long in peace, for Henry Tudor … as great a Villain as ever lived, made a great fuss about getting the Crown & having killed the King at the battle of Bosworth, he succeeded to it.

Extract from Jane Austen, *Juvenilia*, 1791; written when she was 16 years old

Source 13

[The young princes] were withdrawn into the inner apartments of the Tower proper, and day by day began to be seen more rarely behind the bars and windows, til at length they ceased to appear altogether. The Physician John Argentine … reported that the young kin, like a victim prepared for sacrifice, sought remission of his sins by daily confession and penance, because he believed that death was facing him …

I have seen many men burst into tears and lamentations when mention was made of him after his removal from men's sight; and already there is a suspicion that he had been done away with. Whether, However, he has been done away with, and by what manner of death, so far I have not yet at all discovered.

Extract from Dominic Mancini, The Usurpation of Richard III, December 1483; Mancini was an Italian who visited England in 1482–83 and witnessed events leading up to the coronation of Richard III.

Source 14

Have no delight to pass away the time, Unless to see my shadow in the sun And descant on mine own deformity. And therefore, since I cannot prove a lover, To entertain these fair well-spoken days, I am determined to prove a villain And hate the idle pleasures of these days.

Nay, do not pause; for I did kill King Henry— But 'twas thy beauty that provoked me. Nay, now dispatch; 'twas I that stabbed young Edward— But 'twas thy heavenly face that set me on.

Extracts from William Shakespeare, *Richard III*, 1592

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Drawing conclusions about the usefulness of sources

A useful source will add to your understanding of a historical period or event. The source needs to be reliable, and relevant to your research or inquiry. Ask yourself the following questions to determine the usefulness of a source:

- What type of source is it?
- Who created the source?
- Why was it created?
- Is it balanced or does it present only one point of view?
- Is it based on fact or opinion?
- Is there enough information and detail for the source to be of use to my research or inquiry?
- Does the information support and reinforce evidence from other sources?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

When examining a range of different sources, it is often helpful to gather your information into a table.

1 Copy the table below into your notebook and complete rows for Sources 12 to 14.

2 **Compare** the sources. In what ways are the three sources similar? In what ways are they different?

3 Based on your findings, which of the three sources do you think is the most useful? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** to find out more about King Richard III. As a class, hold a Socratic circle dialogue to discuss the following questions:
   - What is more important – possibly solving a murder or allowing a person's remains to rest in peace?
   - Is Richard guilty or not guilty of killing the princes in the tower?
   - Did Shakespeare tarnish Richard's reputation or was his portrayal accurate?

Additional resource
Socratic circle dialogue

Source number	Source type (primary/ secondary)	Date of creation	Who created the source?	Key questions to determine the usefulness of the source • Why was it created? • Is it balanced or does it present only one point of view? • Is it based on fact or opinion? • Is there enough information and detail for the source to be of use to my research or inquiry? • Does the information support and reinforce evidence from other sources?

8.11 Cultural developments in medieval Europe

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» recognise significant cultural developments that contributed to continuity and change in medieval Europe.

The medieval period in Europe lasted for about 1000 years. Over this time, there were many important developments that affected people's lives. Some were cultural (such as architecture, literature and music), some were social (such as law and commerce), and others were technological (such as weapons and warfare). These developments will be discussed over the course of this topic and topics 8.12 to 8.14.

Architecture

Architecture is a lasting example of the significant developments made in medieval Europe. Most European towns and cities settled during the medieval period still have buildings that date back almost 1000 years. These buildings include churches, monasteries, town halls, castles and cathedrals.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 2 Notre Dame in flames, April 2019 – the iconic spire collapsed just moments later.

Notre Dame

A major development in medieval architecture was the Gothic style. It originated in France during the twelfth century and became popular throughout Europe until the sixteenth century. The most famous example of Gothic architecture is the cathedral of Notre Dame in Paris. Construction began in 1163 CE and took almost 200 years to complete. Its interior is 130 metres long and 115 metres high. Notre Dame includes many staples of gothic architecture, such as stained glass windows, pointed arches, tall spires, ornate decorative stonemasonry – for example, statues and gargoyles – and flying buttresses.

In April 2019, fire ravaged Notre Dame's roof and damaged many 800-year-old relics. Its iconic spire collapsed. French President Emmanuel Macron captured its significance:

Source 1

> Notre Dame is our history, it's our literature, it's our imagery. It's the place where we live our greatest moments, from wars to pandemics to liberations. This history is ours. And it burns. It burns and I know the sadness so many of our fellow French feel.
>
> Quote from Emmanuel Macron, 2019

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Analyse this!
Illuminated manuscripts

Literature

Few people in medieval Europe could read or write. Those who could were often members of the clergy. All documents were written by hand until very late in the medieval period. This was a time-consuming process, with books taking years to produce.

Many medieval manuscripts related to religion, such as copies of the Christian Bible and prayer books. Monks also made copies of Greek and Roman works of literature.

It was rare for the common people to write anything, even diaries or letters. This means that our knowledge of how the poor lived in medieval Europe is greatly limited.

Illuminated manuscripts

Some medieval manuscripts were ornate works of art, known as illuminated manuscripts. They featured highly detailed illustrations decorated with gold and silver, often depicting scenes related to the text. The elaborate borders and grotesque art provided images for those who could not read.

Illuminated manuscripts were very expensive to make, with many materials and craftspeople needed to create them. They were generally written and illustrated on parchment or on vellum (a material made from the skin of sheep, goats or calves). Paints were made from charcoal, plants, ground-up semi-precious stones and spices to give them vibrancy – or sometimes even urine and ear wax!

Source 3 A page from an illuminated manuscript created in the fifteenth century, which records the New Testament Gospel of John

The invention of the printing press

When the printing press was invented in Germany by Johannes Gutenberg in around 1450, it revolutionised reading and writing across Europe. Books became quicker and cheaper to produce, which made them more readily available to common people. This increased the number of people who could read and write, and also meant that the Church no longer had control over the types of books that people could read.

Music

Music played an important role in medieval life. It marked the end of harvests, provided entertainment for people at all levels of society, and was an important part of religious life.

Most sources of music that survive are from formal settings, such as Gregorian chants. These smooth and slow melodic tunes became customary across all Catholic churches in medieval Europe. They were sung by a choir in unison, without any instruments. Gregorian chants led to the earliest notation system for writing down music using a set of parallel lines (a stave) and various dots and squiggles similar to the musical notes used today.

Source 4 An example of a Gregorian chant written in a hymn book from the fourteenth century

8.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** three areas of medieval life in which music was important.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why our knowledge of how common people lived in medieval Europe is limited.

3 **Explain** what an illuminated manuscript is. List some of the materials used when creating illuminated manuscripts.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of the printing press using the 5Rs of historical significance (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit').

Apply

5 **Investigate** the Gothic architectural features of Notre Dame. Create a collage or poster using images of the cathedral. Annotate the various features to show your understanding of this form of architecture.

8.12 Developments in crime and punishment

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the continuities and changes in crime and punishment in medieval Europe

» describe the impact of the Magna Carta.

Punishments for crimes were very harsh in medieval Europe. The ruling classes believed that common people would only learn how to behave properly by fearing what would happen to them if they broke the law. Even the smallest offences had serious punishments.

Who enforced the law?

Unlike today, there was no police force in medieval Europe. Maintaining order was a community responsibility. This was done in a few different ways:

- It was the duty of all members of a village or town to catch criminals. If a person witnessed a crime, they were to 'raise the hue and cry'; that is, they were to cry out so that any able-bodied men in the area could come rushing forward and stop the criminal from fleeing.
- All villagers or townspeople aged over 12 were grouped into a 'tithing' of 10 members. They had a shared responsibility. If one of them broke a law, the rest of the tithing was responsible for making sure the criminal among them attended court. Otherwise, all 10 of them would face the same punishment.
- A group of watchmen walked the streets at night, especially around taverns, to look out for criminal or drunken behaviour. If they witnessed criminal behaviour, they would raise the hue and cry.
- One man from the village or town was chosen to be the 'petty constable'. This meant he took on extra responsibility to enforce the law. The petty constables did this without any pay, weapons, training or uniform. Therefore they were often reluctant to work very hard.

Source 5 This medieval engraving shows a woman wearing a 'scold's bridle' being paraded through the streets by her husband. While wearing the mask, it was impossible to speak. Some scold's bridles had bells to draw even more attention to the woman.

Source 6 An artist's impression of the ducking stool commonly used for women accused of gossiping

Courts and trials

When a crime was committed, different courts dealt with different types of offences. Generally, punishments occurred in public, usually in the village square. This was designed to deter others from committing crimes. It also humiliated the offender. Minor matters, such as a woman gossiping or nagging her husband, were heard by village courts. If found guilty, such a woman – known as a scold – would be forced to wear a 'scold's bridle' or sit on a ducking stool and be dunked in water (see Sources 5 and 6). More serious matters, such as a peasant's son being educated without the lord's permission, were heard by manor courts. If found guilty, a peasant might be fined or put in the stocks or a pillory.

The most serious charges were dealt with in Church courts (for charges such as **heresy** and witchcraft) and the King's Court (for charges of **treason**). Confessions for such crimes were often obtained under torture (with the use of thumbscrews, the rack or an iron maiden). If found guilty, people could be executed by being burned alive, hanged, or 'drawn and quartered'.

heresy
The act of doing something in serious conflict with the teachings of the Church

treason
the act of betraying one's own country or ruler

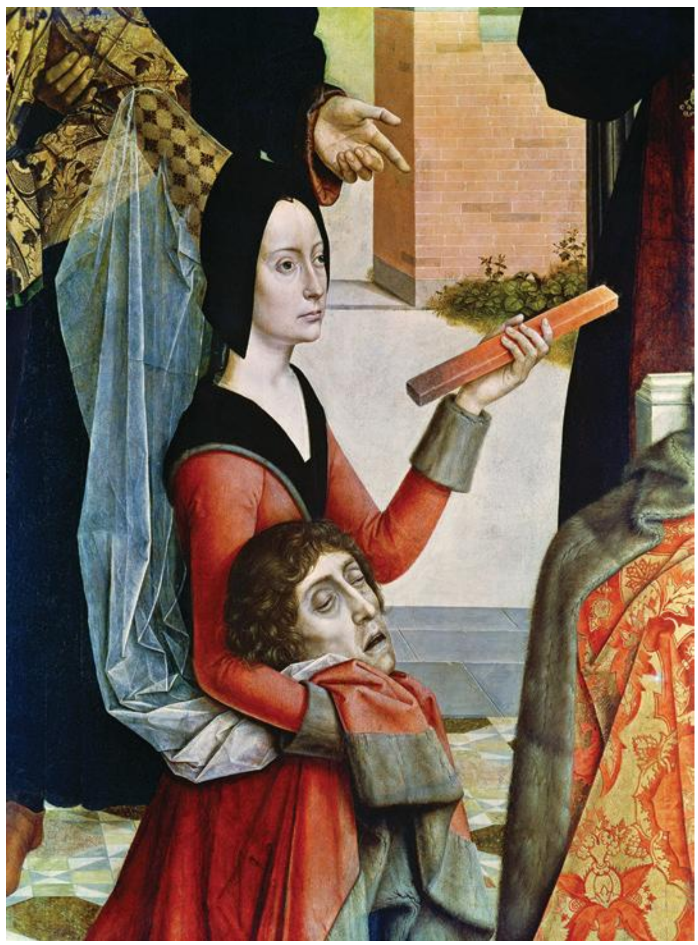
Source 7 Examples of the types of crimes, courts and punishment in Medieval Europe

The crime	The court	The punishment
A husband finds out his wife has been gossiping	Village courts, where minor criminal matters were heard	The wife would be paraded around the village by her husband
A lord discovers a peasant has their son educated without the lord's permission	Manor courts, where more serious matters were heard	The peasant would be fined or put in the stocks
A person is accused of heresy or witchcraft	Church court, where members of the clergy judged the accused	The person would be maimed (wounded), but never sentenced to death
A person is accused of murder or treason	King's court, where confessions were sometimes obtained through torture	The person would be hanged in public

Trial by ordeal

The legal system of early medieval Europe was based on the concept of 'guilty until proven innocent'. This is the opposite of our modern-day justice system, where a person is considered innocent until proven guilty. An accused person swore their innocence as an oath before God. Sometimes the oath of the accused was tested using trial by ordeal. There were three types of ordeal:

- *Ordeal by fire* – the accused held a red-hot iron, put an arm in a fire or walked across burning coals. If, after three days, the burn was not healing cleanly, they were seen to be guilty.
- *Ordeal by water* – the accused placed an arm in boiling water. As above, if the burn was not healing cleanly after three days, they were seen to be guilty. Ordeal by water could also involve the accused being bound and tossed into a river. If they floated, they were seen to be guilty. If they sank, they were seen to be innocent and were dragged out – hopefully before they drowned.
- *Ordeal by combat* – nobles who had been accused of a crime would fight their accuser. Sometimes a champion (such as a strong knight) fought on behalf of one or both of the parties. The winner (or whoever they represented) was seen to be innocent and the loser, if not already dead at the end of the fight, faced a violent punishment.



Source 8 This painting from 1471 shows an ordeal by fire. The woman is trying to prove her dead husband's innocence of a crime against the king by holding a red-hot iron bar. In her other hand, she holds her husband's head.

Source 9 A medieval painting of a court case with a trial by jury

Changes to the medieval justice system

In 1154, Henry II became King of England. While the various types of trial continued to exist during his reign, Henry wished all his subjects to have access to royal justice. He wanted to establish legal rulings based on evidence and analysis. He and his court (the King's Court) travelled around the land, hearing cases. At this time, judges also began writing down court decisions. Over the centuries, this initiative continued to be refined. It set the basis for today's 'common law', as practised in England and in Australia – where judges' decisions, and the penalties for them, are based on similar examples from the past.

Another initiative of Henry II was trial by **jury**, which required a number of free men (usually 12) and a judge to decide a person's guilt. This lowered the chances of being found guilty, and over time it replaced trial by ordeal. It, too, continues to this day as a key part of the Western justice system.

jury
a group of people who are required to decide on a 'guilty' or 'not guilty' verdict in a court case

Source 10 An artist's impression of King John of England reluctantly signing the Magna Carta

The Magna Carta

By the early thirteenth century, King John ruled England. He was unpopular because he raised taxes, fought a series of unsuccessful wars and upset the Pope. The Pope was so angry that he banned religious services in English churches.

The nobles decided to act. They attempted to negotiate with John, and then forced him to sign a **charter** known as the **Magna Carta** on 15 June 1215 (see Source 10). The Magna Carta was modified many times over the following centuries, but it marked a significant legal development in England because it required the monarch to be subject to the will of others, not just to God. No longer could a king rule exactly as he saw fit. Eventually,

charter
a formal document in which a person in authority states that certain rights or responsibilities are granted to others

Magna Carta
meaning 'Great Charter'; a document signed in 1215 by England's King John and his nobles – it outlined the rights of the people and meant that the king would thereafter be expected to rule according to the law

this came to be seen as one of the first steps towards the development of legal and political rights for 'the people' and the start of modern democracy. It has become the backbone to many human rights documents, such as the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and the US Declaration of Independence.

The Magna Carta also abolished trial by ordeal, and no more could people be condemned, tortured or killed on the grounds of suspicion or rumour. Source 11 outlines some of the changes laid down in the Magna Carta.

Some significant changes to medieval laws from the Magna Carta

- The king must not interfere with the Church
- When a lord inherits land, he should pay the king no more than £100
- The king cannot collect new taxes unless the lords and bishops agree
- No free man can be put in prison without a proper trial with a jury
- The king's men must not take anyone's goods without paying for them
- Justice will be given without delays or bribes
- Traders must be able to travel freely without having to pay tolls

Source 11 A summary of some of the 60 clauses in the Magna Carta

8.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** 'common law'.

2 What year was the Magna Carta signed?

Comprehend

3 **Describe** how the law was enforced in medieval Europe.

4 **Explain** what is meant by 'community responsibility'.

Analyse

5 **Analyse** Source 10. Remember, when you analyse something, you should break it down into smaller parts and explain how they connect to each other. What is the artist trying to say? What are the elements in this image that help them get their message across?

6 What does trial by ordeal suggest about the level of education among the common people?

7 a **Compare** who or what enforces the law, actions taken when a crime is committed and penalties and punishments in Medieval Europe and today by copying the following table into your notebook and completing it.

	Medieval Europe	Today
Who or what enforces the law		
Action taken when a crime is committed		
Penalties and punishments		

b Write a short paragraph that identifies the continuity and change between crime and punishment from medieval Europe to today.

Apply

8 **Investigate** various crimes during medieval Europe and their associated punishment method. Be sure to include a range of minor crimes (such as theft, nagging and vagrancy), as well as major crimes (such as treason, rebellion and heresy).

9 **Discuss** which was a more significant development in crime and punishment: the leadership of King Henry II or the signing of the Magna Carta. Justify (give reasons for) your answer.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on developments in crime and punishment

8.13 Developments in military and defence systems

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the continuities and changes in military and defence systems in medieval Europe.

Warfare was one of the chief ways a medieval kingdom in Europe could become powerful (either by fighting to expand its territory or by defending itself against invaders). The focus was often on capturing the enemy's stronghold, usually a castle. Castles were typically built in places that were easier to defend – on top of a cliff or hill, on an island, or jutting out into a lake.

Castle fortresses

In times of peace, castles were home to important rulers or wealthy feudal lords and their families, servants and vassals. At these times, only a small group of soldiers was needed to guard the castle. In times of war, however, castles became hives of military activity, as the ruler or lord called on his supporters to defend the castle by supplying him with foot soldiers, armour, weapons and often horses.

Knights and soldiers

In medieval Europe, knights were obliged to fight for their lord in times of war, as well as recruit others to fight for him. Some recruits were professional soldiers. These were men of the upper social class. They might be the younger sons of noble families, wanting to improve their standing through military service. Such soldiers were often called men-at-arms. Other fighting recruits were commoners or peasants. These men usually came straight from the fields or towns to fight. They often had no formal training and fought as foot soldiers because they could not afford horses. Their weapons and armour were much simpler than those of knights and men-at-arms.

Source 12 An illustration from a medieval manuscript showing a joust between Jean Chalons, an Englishman, and Loys de Beul, a Frenchman, in 1446

Military training

To stay fit and trained for war, knights fought jousts. Often these were public spectacles. Heavily armoured knights charged each other on horseback holding wooden lances ahead of them. Sometimes a long wooden fence, called a tilt, separated the charging horses. The idea was to knock the opponent off his horse.

Larger contests between hundreds of knights on horseback and soldiers on foot were also held during the medieval period. These events, known as tournaments, were mock battles – similar in principle to military training exercises today. By the thirteenth century, tournaments had become colourful spectacles (like carnivals) that created great excitement among medieval communities. A knight in the twelfth century once wrote: 'Eastertime was come, a great tournament proclaimed … and from every realm knights rode to break lance in honour of their lady.'

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Changing castle design

During the medieval period, certain elements of castle designs changed and developed, improving on weak features and strengthening those that worked. Three castle designs evolved over this period in Europe.

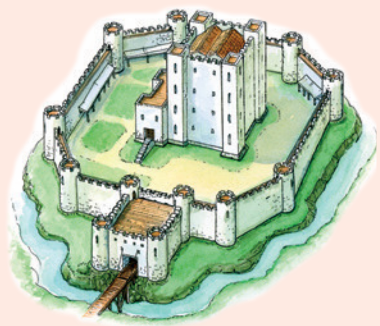
Motte-and-bailey castles

Early fortresses were called motte-and-bailey castles. The motte was a raised area (such as a hill) on which a wooden fortress was built. Below it was an open area called the bailey, where barns, workshops and stables were located. Both the motte and the bailey were encircled by a gated timber palisade (a fence-like barrier, made of logs), a bank of earth and a ditch (sometimes filled with water).

Source 13 A motte-and-bailey castle

Stone castles with keeps

By the late tenth century, stone structures (called keeps) were starting to replace the wooden fortress in the motte-and-bailey design. These keeps – which were usually rectangular and up to four storeys high – were fitted out to withstand a siege. Thick stone walls replaced the palisade, and a wide moat replaced the ditch. Access to the castle was via a drawbridge.

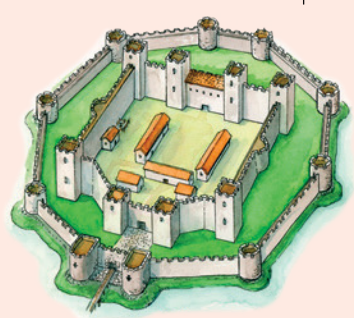


Source 14 A stone castle with a keep

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

Concentric castles

Two hundred years later, the concentric castle emerged. It was based on designs crusaders had seen in the Holy Land. This stone and/or brick castle had two outer walls – with battlements – to provide an extra barrier against attack. The outermost wall was often curved ('concentric' means one circular wall inside another). The wall closest to the centre was the highest. There was a greatly reinforced gatehouse, but no keep.



Source 15 A concentric castle

battlements
the top of the wall around a castle, with regular spaces, through which the people inside could shoot

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to the Tower of London

A lasting castle

The Tower of London has transformed through all three castle designs. It was erected by William the Conqueror in 1066 as a wooden fortress. In 1077, it was upgraded to a stone castle with a keep that still stands today. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, concentric walls and a moat were added.

The Tower of London has served many functions over the years. It has been a royal residence for kings and queens, as well as a prison for the most wanted criminals. It is now a major tourist attraction and home to the Crown Jewels. If only walls could talk – just imagine the conversations and events they have witnessed inside this castle!

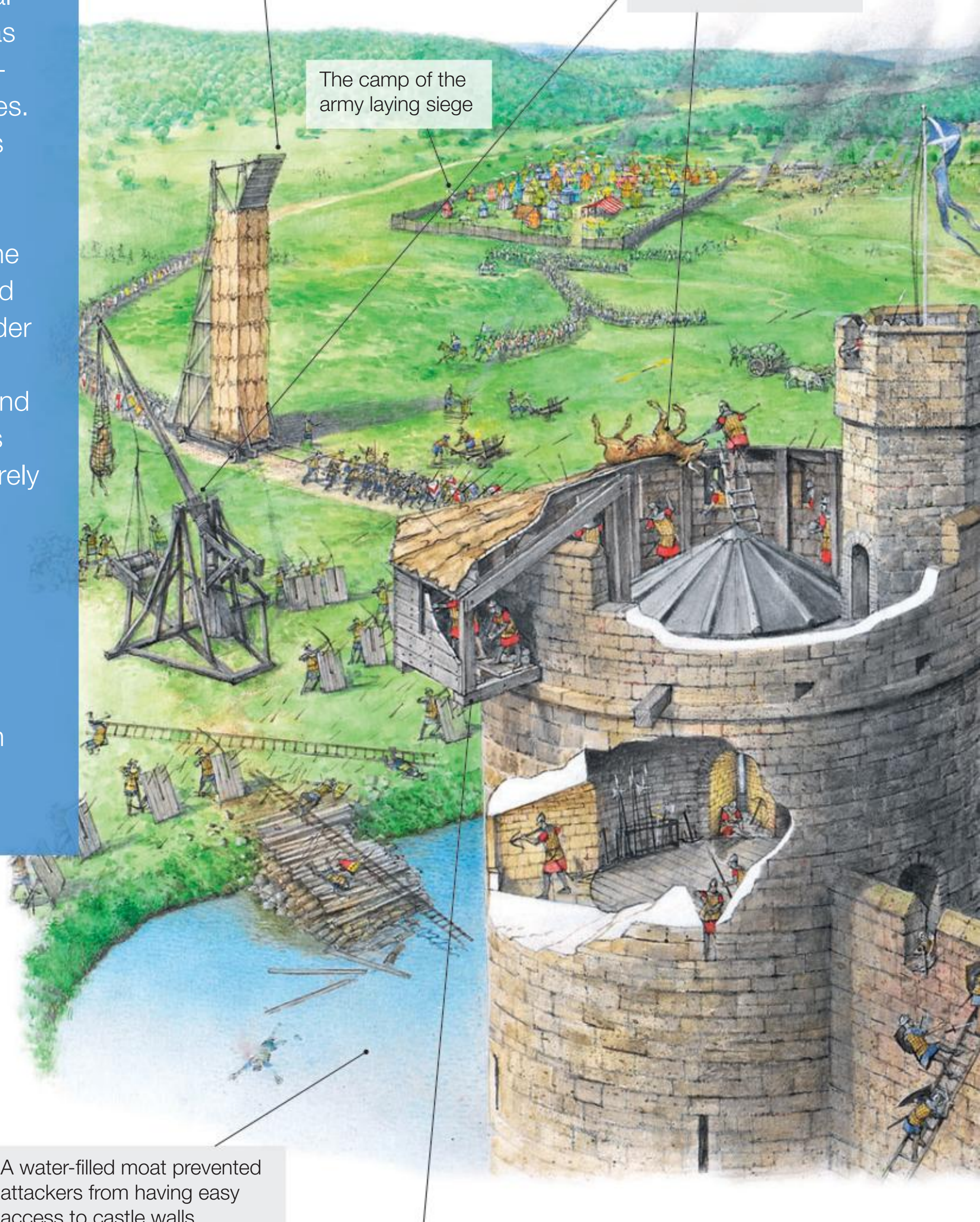
Source 16 The Tower of London, with Tower Bridge in the background

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

Castle siege

There were different ways of capturing castles in medieval times. The most obvious was to launch a surprise attack – smashing the castle defences. However, when the chances of victory from such a direct attack were low, armies would instead lay siege to the castle. Siege tactics included surrounding the castle in order to cut off its food supply, poisoning its water supply and digging under sections of its outer walls to gain entry. Rarely was a siege won quickly or easily.

Over the course of the medieval period, many advances in castle siege technologies were made. A variety of these are shown in Source 17.



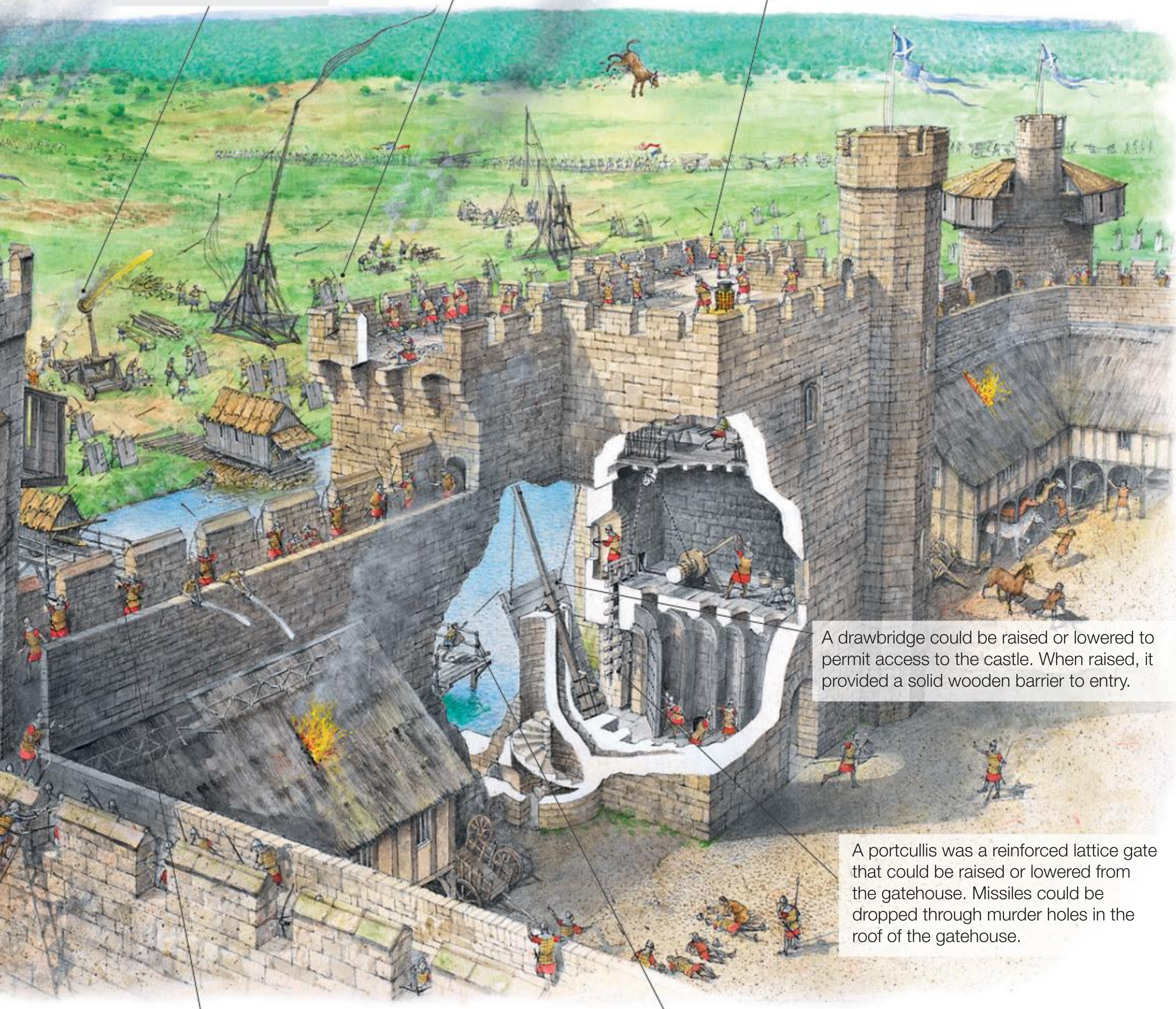
Source 17 An artist's impression of an attacking army laying siege to a castle

Interactive
Castle siege

Mangonels were like giant slingshots, flinging small rocks or burning wood. Sometimes the heads of captured enemies were flung back into the castle.

Skilled longbow archers could fire arrows great distances very quickly. They used mantlets (movable screens) as cover.

Battlements on top of the walls were crenellated, which meant the wall had a series of gaps to allow defenders to fire arrows or throw out objects.



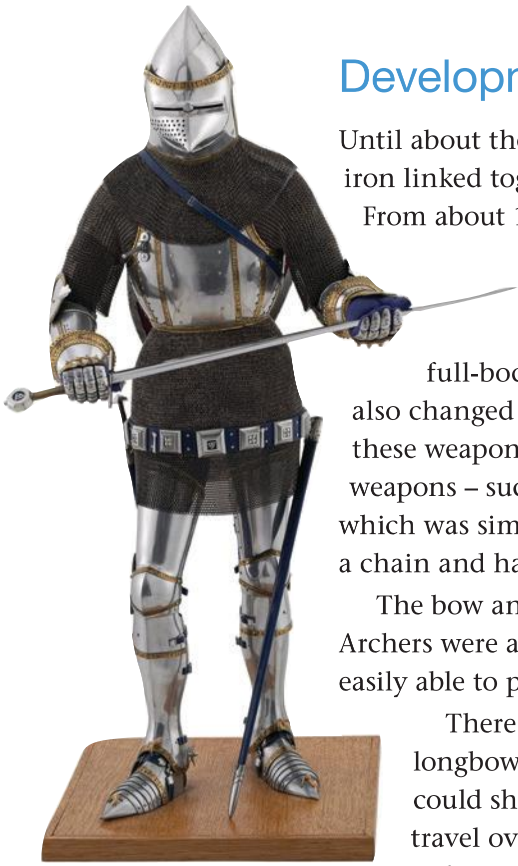
A drawbridge could be raised or lowered to permit access to the castle. When raised, it provided a solid wooden barrier to entry.

A portcullis was a reinforced lattice gate that could be raised or lowered from the gatehouse. Missiles could be dropped through murder holes in the roof of the gatehouse.

Thin arrow slits, wider on the inside, gave castle archers a wide field of fire but prevented entry of all but the most accurate of arrows.

A battering ram (large tree trunk, sharpened to a point) was wheeled up to a wall or gate, and used to repeatedly ram the gate or section of wall. Its operators could be protected by a wooden shelter lined with wet animal skins.

Developments in medieval warfare



Source 18 The type of armour worn by a man-at-arms in Italy in the late 1300s, including chain mail and metal plates

Until about the twelfth century, armour was made of chain mail (small hoops of iron linked together), which was fashioned into a knee-length tunic (see Source 18). From about 1300 onwards, however, metal plate armour became more common, eventually covering the whole body.

When using a shield, the fighter had only one hand for his sword, so early swords were light and made for one-handed use. However, full-body armour made shields less necessary. As such, the design of swords also changed – they became larger and heavier for two-handed use. The aim of these weapons was not so much to cut as to bash. Two free hands meant that other weapons – such as the mace (an iron club), spiked club (such as the morning star, which was similar in shape to a mace), flail (a metal ball, often spiked, attached to a chain and handle) and battleaxe – could be more easily used (see Source 19).

The bow and arrow was also a popular weapon during the medieval period. Archers were an important force used in medieval battles because their arrows were easily able to pierce through armour.

There were two main types of bow: the longbow and the crossbow. The longbow was a bow drawn by hand, which released an arrow. A skilled archer could shoot arrows very quickly, firing arrows every few seconds that would travel over long distances. The crossbow was a bow fixed across a wooden stock with a groove for the arrow. The crossbow required less skill to use as it had a mechanism for drawing and releasing the arrow.

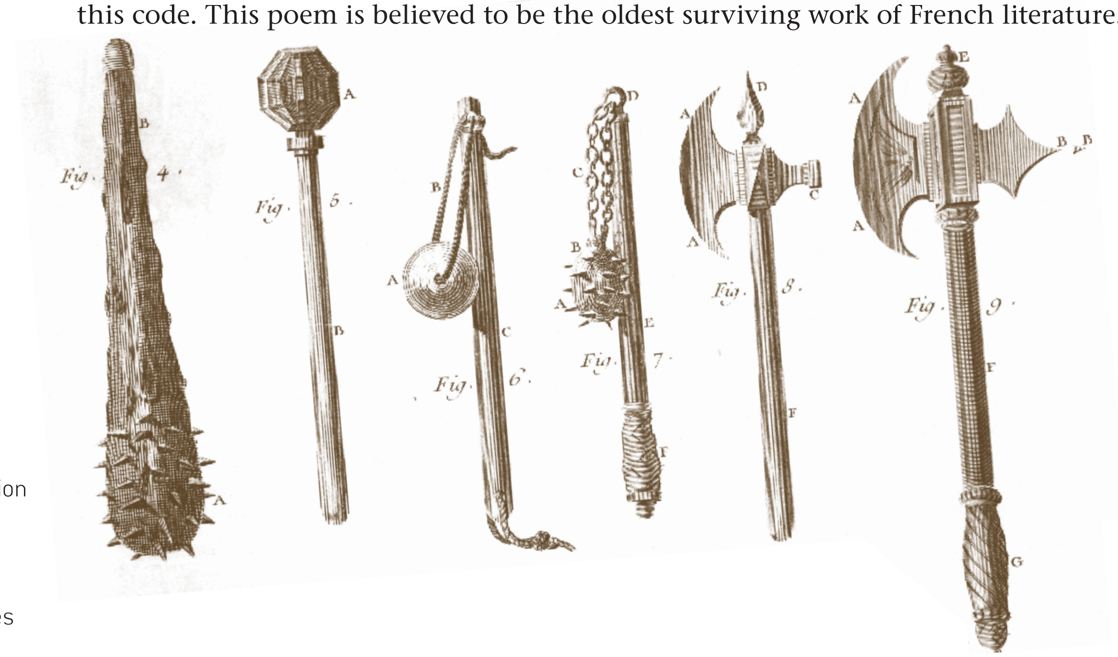
Code of Chivalry

Dressed in armour and carrying weapons, medieval knights often behaved as thugs. They recklessly **plundered** towns, causing mass **casualties**. As a result, the Church and nobles created a Code of **Chivalry** between 1170 and 1220 to set some ground rules for how a knight should behave. *The Song of Roland* – an eleventh-century French poem that described the duties of a knight (see Source 20) – was the basis of this code. This poem is believed to be the oldest surviving work of French literature.

plundered
stole from, often using violent force

casualties
people who are killed or injured in war or in an accident

chivalry
polite and kind behaviour that shows a sense of honour, especially by men towards women



Source 19 An illustration of a range of medieval weapons: (from left) a spiked club, mace, two flails and two battleaxes

The popular legend of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table strengthened the idea of chivalry, promoting the six key values of honour, honesty, valour, gallantry, loyalty and courtesy.

Gunpowder

Gunpowder reached Europe from China during the thirteenth or fourteenth centuries, where it had first been developed 400 to 500 years earlier. Gunpowder was another factor that helped to end Europe's feudal system. It did so by changing how wars were fought.

Gunpowder was first used effectively in Europe during the Hundred Years' War – a series of conflicts between France and England from 1337 to 1453. The use of weapons fired with gunpowder meant that castle walls could be more easily broken down.

Firearms increased the distance between fighting armies, and also meant that all soldiers in battle now required armour. This made it more expensive to equip and train an army. Kings, rather than nobles, had to take responsibility for this increased cost. As a result, the importance of knights began to diminish.

Source 20

- To fear God and maintain His Church
- To serve the lord in valour and faith
- To protect the weak and defenceless
- To give succour [help] to widows and orphans
- To refrain from the wanton [reckless] giving of offence
- To live by honour and for glory
- To despise pecuniary [monetary] reward
- To fight for the welfare of all
- To obey those placed in authority
- To guard the honour of fellow knights
- To eschew [avoid] unfairness, meanness and deceit
- To keep faith
- At all times to speak the truth
- To persevere to the end in any enterprise begun
- To respect the honour of women
- Never to refuse a challenge from an equal
- Never to turn the back upon a foe [enemy]

Translated extracts from *The Song of Roland*, *c.* eleventh century

8.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three locations where a castle might commonly be built (for security).

2 What two main purposes did castles serve in medieval Europe?

3 In your own words, **define** the six values outlined by the Code of Chivalry. Provide an example of what each value means in modern times.

Comprehend

4 Briefly **explain** how both castle design and armour design changed over time. Where relevant, explain what aspects of each continued (even if in another form).

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 17.

a The Italian historian Petrarch used the word 'cunning' to describe warfare. Define the term 'cunning'.

b List three cunning tactics or items used to defend a castle.

c Choose what you believe are the three most cunning tactics or items an attacking army might use to force the surrender of a castle. Explain why you chose them.

Apply

6 **Create** a flow chart to show some of the ways gunpowder changed medieval warfare, both in the short term and the long term.

7 **Investigate** the Tower of London or another medieval castle to find out some of its features, traditions and historical uses. Choose a way to present your information. Include a map and some images of the castle, annotating the defensive structures used. Remember to include references to show where you found your information.

8.14 Developments in towns, cities and commerce

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the continuities and changes in towns, cities and commerce during the medieval period.

By 1200 CE, there were about 600 cities in Europe – three times as many as there had been 50 years earlier. The growth of towns and cities in medieval Europe was fuelled by trade, which boomed during the Crusades. Towns and cities attracted peasants who could earn a living as skilled labourers. Many also had cathedrals, so they attracted Christian pilgrims as well as merchants.

Source 21 A fourteenth-century medieval European town with a central marketplace, painted by Italian artist Ambrogio Lorenzetti

The growth of businesses

Merchants in medieval Europe mainly sold their goods in the marketplace, which became a central gathering spot within the town, full of bustling activity and noise (see Source 21). With these new markets also came wandering 'salesmen'. They could make large profits from selling goods such as spices, oils and perfumes from faraway places.

Over time, permanent shops and businesses were built. Those who worked in the same craft (such as butchers or carpenters) banded together to discuss working conditions. These groups were known as **guilds**. Guilds were similar to modern-day workers' unions.

guilds
groups of people all working in the same trade (e.g. butchers, tailors, cobblers) who band together in support of their common interests

The growth of moneylending and banking

As commerce and trade continued to grow in towns and cities across Europe, the need grew for moneylending, banks and financial record-keeping. Merchants in the Holy Land had been acting as moneylenders for generations, so many of their practices were brought back to Europe by the crusaders in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Loans enabled more goods to be purchased and traded, and this boosted town economies.

Rights outlined in many town charters

- The ability to trade freely
- Freedom to enter and leave the town freely
- The right to establish town laws independently
- The ability to hold trials in town courts, rather than the lord's manor court

Source 22 Some of the rights sought by townspeople and included in town charters

The independence of towns

As the wealth of townspeople increased, so did their desire for independence. Noble lords who 'owned' the land where a town was located were still requesting that the people who lived there paid taxes. The townspeople came to resent this. They started to present petitions to these lords, demanding release from old feudal arrangements and a set of rights. In return for large payments, some towns were given what they asked for, and town charters were drawn up in writing to set out what had been agreed by the lord and the townspeople.

Living conditions

Even though medieval cities had no sophisticated sewerage system, some people emptied chamber pots out of the window. By the fifteenth century, people were fined for doing this. Some wealthy people even built garderobes that stuck out from the walls of their second-storey apartments, allowing human excrement to fall directly on the heads of passers-by below (see Source 23). Poor sanitation led to health problems and the spread of water-borne diseases, as human waste from the streets often contaminated drinking water.

Source 23 An example of a garderobe in London

Medieval streets

'The Shambles' is one of the oldest preserved medieval streets in Europe, making it a source of evidence you could walk down!

This twisting laneway is so narrow that in sections, one person can touch both sides at once. Located in York, England, The Shambles was originally a marketplace for butchers, as described in the Domesday Book in 1086.

Meat hooks, which can still be seen today, allowed butchers to hang dead carcasses in the shop window and out the front, where they attracted flies, rats and bacteria. Butchers disposed of blood and guts by throwing them into the small channel that ran down the middle of the street.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 24 The Shambles is now a tourist attraction with antique shops, boutiques and cafes. The runnels in the middle of the street are where butchers would dispose of parts of animals that were not fit to be eaten.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on developments in towns, cities and commerce

8.14 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** some opportunities that existed in towns and cities for peasants.

2 What were some of the problems faced in cities as they grew?

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the role of the marketplace in medieval towns and cities.

4 **Explain** how the Crusades contributed to the growth of medieval towns.

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 22. What does it tell us about the point of view of townspeople from medieval Europe?

6 French historian Philippe Contamine wrote that 'cities were mazes of twisting, tiny streets'. How do you think these small streets coped with the enormous amount of waste piled up in them?

Apply

7 Write a paragraph describing your journey down The Shambles in medieval York. Try to convey all five senses – sight, smell, sound, taste and touch.

8C

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

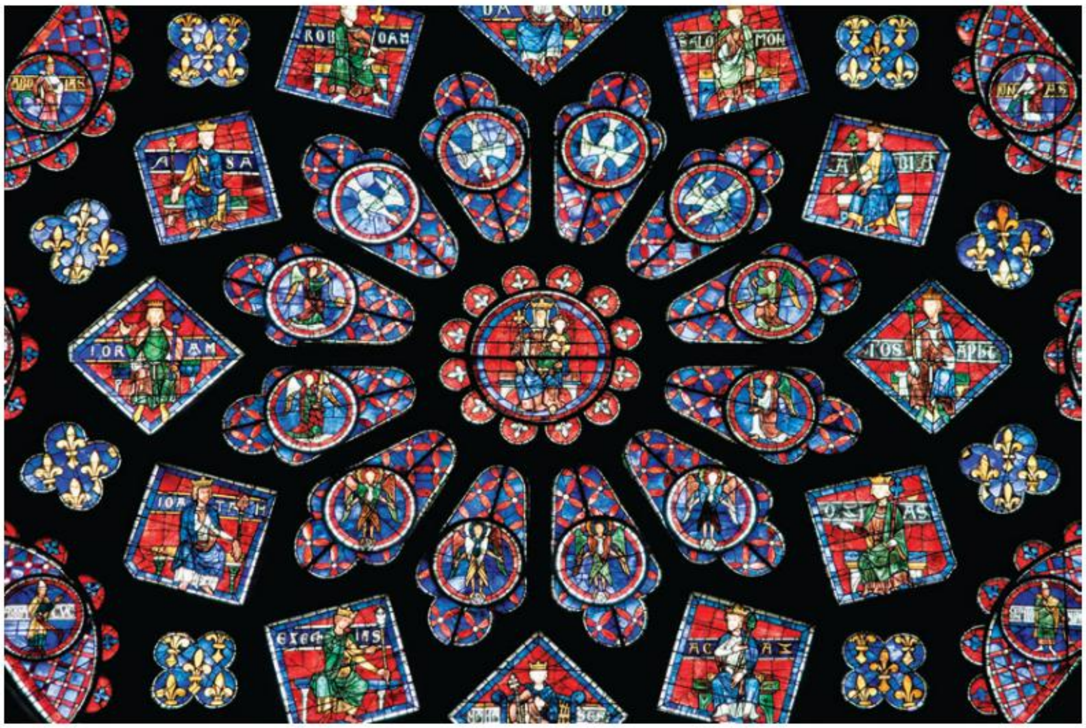
Stained glass windows

Another label given to the Medieval period is the 'Age of Faith'. This name refers to the dominance of the Church over all levels of society.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Some of the strongest remaining evidence of the Church's influence can be seen in medieval cathedrals and churches today. Until the fifteenth century, monks were usually the only people in society who could read and write. In order to form their own opinions and beliefs, common people had to rely on what they were told by village priests, what they heard and saw in religious plays, and what they saw in religious artworks, such as paintings and stained glass windows.

Source 25 Sainte-Chappelle in Paris is a royal chapel built in the Gothic style. It was completed in 1248.



Source 26 The north rose window at Chartres Cathedral in France was created around 1250–60, and is 10.15 metres in diameter. The cathedral's architect, Jean de Chelles, designed the window, and would have used skilled labourers to help construct it. The vibrant colours were created using molten glass, precious stones and paint. The theme of the window is Old Testament prophecies being fulfilled, with Mary as their instrument. Mary and Jesus as a child are at the centre.

Scenes in stained glass windows retold lessons and stories from the Bible, and also recounted important historical events. In this way, stained glass windows played an important part in educating people and ordering society by maintaining the power of the Church and the king.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Identifying the origin and purpose of primary sources

Stained glass windows can be very useful primary sources. Unlike the windows in everyday buildings and houses, the stained glass windows in medieval churches and cathedrals across Europe were created for specific reasons. To understand these reasons, historians need to ask a number of questions. Analysing sources by asking 'what', 'who', 'when' and 'why' questions will help you identify the origin and purpose of the sources.

Use the table in Source 28 to identify the origin and purpose of a primary source.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 205 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 28

Identifying the origin and purpose of primary and secondary sources	
What type of source is it?	• Was the source created at the time you are studying or afterwards? In other words, is it a primary or secondary source?
Who created the source?	• Is the creator's personal perspective obvious in the source? • Is the creator a member of a particular group, religion or organisation?
When was the source created?	• How old is the source? • Is it an eyewitness account or was it written/created by someone at a later date? • Is the source complete?
Why was the source created?	• Was it designed to entertain, persuade or argue a point of view? • Did the creator have anything to gain personally from the source? • What other events may have been happening at the time and might have influenced the creator or source?

Source 27 Sainte-Chappelle has 15 windows, each 15 metres high. The stained glass panes depict over 1100 scenes from the Bible.

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps in Source 28 to **identify** the origin and purpose of the stained glass windows at Chartres Cathedral in France (pictured in Source 26).

Extend your understanding

1 Use the internet to **investigate** Chartres Cathedral. Be sure to find multiple images of the cathedral from the outside.
   a Compare the size and appearance of Chartres Cathedral with the average peasant's home (see Source 12 in topic 8.6 on page 235). Describe how a peasant might have felt when viewing the windows in the cathedral.
   b Examine the position of the windows and how they were lit – to explain why they gave the viewer a sense of 'godliness' (awe and wonder).

2 Many of the windows make strong links between the Church and the king. **Explain** how links between the Church and the king in the Chartres Cathedral windows may have helped to maintain power over the peasants. In your explanation, refer to:
- the emotional reaction peasants would have had to the windows
- the way the feudal system functioned
- the benefits for the Church and nobility of these things being linked in the minds of the peasants.

8.15 The Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the causes and symptoms of the Black Death.

pandemic
a term used to describe the spread of an infectious disease across an entire country, a large region, or even the whole world

buboes
the blackened, swollen, pus-filled lymph nodes (part of the immune system) evident on the body of someone with the bubonic plague

bubonic plague
an infectious disease caused by bacteria (called *Yersinia pestis*), which are carried by fleas on rats and mice; it often quickly kills those who contract it; visible symptoms include buboes

The Black Death was a plague **pandemic** that broke out in parts of Asia, Africa and Europe between the early 1330s and the 1350s. This pandemic did not become known as the Black Death until many years later. It was given this name because of the large black lumps, or **buboes**, that appeared on the victims' skin.

Causes of the Black Death

There had been outbreaks of plague in previous centuries, but the Black Death was by far the deadliest. By the time it ran its course, it is estimated that more than a third of the population in Europe had died from it.

Source 1 *Yersinia pestis* – the bacteria that lived in the stomach of fleas and caused the Black Death

The Black Death is now believed to have been a combination of three types of plague: **bubonic plague**, pneumonic plague and septicemic plague. Bubonic plague was the most common form of the Black Death. It was transmitted by infected fleas that were carried by rats. Rats were very common in the dirty, crowded conditions of medieval Europe. When a rat carrying infected fleas died from the plague, the fleas would jump onto a person to feed from their blood. The person bitten by the fleas would then be infected.

Pneumonic plague was the second most common form of the Black Death. It attacked a person's respiratory system and was spread through the air by the victim's cough. It was far more contagious and deadly than the bubonic plague.

Source 2 The black rat helped spread the Black Death throughout medieval Asia, Africa and Europe.

Septicemic plague was the rarest and deadliest form of the Black Death. It was also spread by infected fleas, but moved directly into the bloodstream and became life-threatening even before buboes had time to form on the skin. Septicemic plague killed almost 100 per cent of victims.

Medieval societies were significantly changed by the Black Death. Town populations were devastated, trade virtually stopped, and many manor lands and businesses were ruined. Family and social relationships were also shattered, for both the rich and the poor.

Symptoms of the Black Death

For most sufferers, the first sign of the Black Death was the buboes that appeared on the skin – usually in the groin, in the armpits or on the neck. They were initially red in colour, before turning purple and then finally black. They would spread all over the body. The victim would also get a fever and headaches. Over the next few days, the victim would lose motor control (the ability to move voluntarily), so that they could not speak or walk properly. They would suffer much pain and vomiting, and become delirious (meaning they lost control of their emotions and were unable to think or speak clearly).

The average time of death was between three and seven days from the first symptom. It is believed that between 50 and 75 per cent of those who caught the Black Death died.

Source 3 A medieval artist's impression of merchants conducting their trade; many historians believe it was medieval traders who were responsible for spreading the Black Death (see page 270).

The Decameron

One of the most significant primary sources of evidence that gives an insight into how the Black Death affected societies in Europe is *The Decameron*. It was written in the 1350s by the Italian author Giovanni Boccaccio (1313–75). Although Boccaccio created it as entertainment (it consists of a hundred lively stories told by young people who fled Florence to escape the Black Death), it provides key information about life in plague-affected communities.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 4

It was not as it had been in the east, where nosebleeds had signalled that death was inevitable. Here the sickness began in both men and women with swelling in the groin and armpits. The lumps varied in size, some reaching the size of an ordinary apple and others that of an egg, and ... began to appear at random all over the body. After this point the disease started to alter in nature, with black or livid spots appearing on the arms, the thighs, everywhere ... These were a certain sign of impending death, but so was the swelling.

A translated extract from Giovanni Boccaccio, *The Decameron*, 1350s

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Analyse this!
The Decameron

8.15 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the term 'pandemic'.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why the disease became known as the Black Death.

3 Create a flow chart to **summarise** how the three different types of plague were transmitted.

Analyse

4 Draw a human body and illustrate the various symptoms experienced by a person suffering from the Black Death. Annotate your drawing.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the bacterium *Yersinia pestis*.
   a Identify who discovered it as the real cause of the Black Death, and when.
   b Identify who discovered the first effective treatment for the Black Death, and when.
   Write a short report to show your findings.

8.16 The spread of the Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the origin and spread of the Black Death from Asia through to Europe.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the spread of the Black Death

Between around 1330 and 1351, the Black Death swept through Asia, Europe, North Africa and the Middle East, killing an estimated 100 million people.

Origins of the Black Death

Most scientists and historians believe that an especially lethal strain of plague broke out in China in the early 1330s, following a devastating famine. This area was then known as the Yuan Empire (which covered most of present-day China and Mongolia). It had been under Mongol rule since 1279. Some think that the disease was first carried westwards by Mongols travelling along the Silk Road.

In 1346, the pandemic reached a trading city on the Black Sea called Kaffa, which was controlled by merchants from Genoa, Italy. At that time, Muslim Turks (called **Tatars**) were attacking Kaffa and were infected with the plague. A fourteenth-century Italian writer, Gabriele de' Mussi, described how the Tatars 'ordered dead corpses [of their men] to be placed in catapults and lobbed [thrown] into the city in the hope that the intolerable stench would kill everyone inside. What seemed like mountains of dead were thrown.' The Genoan merchants in Kaffa fled to their boats and headed back to Italy, through the Mediterranean Sea. Their decision to make this journey would lead to the rapid spread of the Black Death into Europe and Africa.

Tatars
members of an ethnic group whose members can be found today in countries such as Turkey (Türkiye), Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, Ukraine and Azerbaijan

Source 5 This fourteenth-century painting shows Venetian traders Niccolo and Maffeo Polo (the father and uncle of Marco Polo) crossing Asia to reach China in 1266, on what became known as the Silk Road. Around 50 years later, it is believed that the bubonic plague travelled the same route to the West.

The rapid spread of the Black Death

Once the Black Death reached the Mediterranean Sea in 1347, it spread quickly in all directions. It travelled northwards into Europe, reaching England and Norway by 1349 and Eastern Europe and Scandinavia by 1350 (see Source 6).

In Egypt, the death rate was so high that towns were abandoned, fishing almost stopped and the law courts were closed. Bodies littered the streets; they were eaten by wild animals or piled up in shops or mosques. A slave ship that had left Constantinople with 330 people on board arrived in Alexandria with only three survivors. Furthermore, the King of Yemen carried the disease back to his country in 1351, after he was released from a Cairo prison. Eventually, the whole of the Islamic world was affected, especially those living in towns or cities. Interestingly, **nomadic** Arabs were not struck down by the Black Death.

nomadic
a society of people who not live in a set place but move around, usually in search of food and shelter, and good pasture for their animals

ORIGINS AND SPREAD OF THE BLACK DEATH

1. The Black Death breaks out in China in the early 1300s.

2. As people and goods travel along the Silk Road, so does the Black Death.

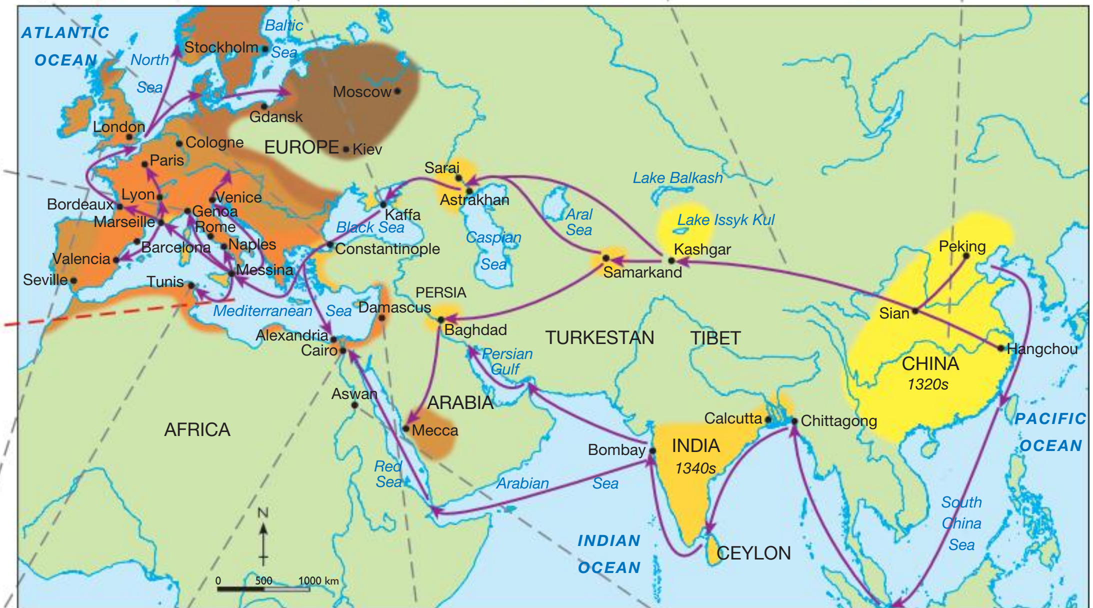
3. In 1346, Tatar troops become infected while attacking Kaffa, and spread the disease.

4. Genoan merchants flee from Kaffa in their ships back to Italy, docking at Constantinople on the way. They are carrying rats on board.

5. The merchant ships land in Genoa, spreading infection.

6. In 1347, infection rapidly spreads through the ports on the Mediterranean Sea.

7. In 1348–49, the Black Death spreads northwards across Western Europe, reaching England.



8. In April 1348, it reaches Tunis from Sicily and advances along the Northern African coastline.

9. In 1348, 1000 people are dying per day in Alexandria. In Cairo, 200 000 die – over a third of the population.

10. By April 1348, the Black Death reaches Palestine and Syria, killing 50 000 people in Damascus in one year around half of the population.

11. By 1349, the Black Death has travelled through the Nile Valley via boats to Aswan, 1000 km away.

LEGEND
- After 1350
- 1350
- 1349
- 1348
- 1347
- 1346
- Before 1346
- Direction and path
- City with recorded outbreak

Source 6

Source: Oxford University Press

8.16 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Which social group was heavily responsible for spreading the Black Death and why?

2 Using the map at the back of this book, **identify** which parts of Europe were not affected by the Black Death, according to Source 6.

Comprehend

3 Using the text and Source 6, **describe** the impact of the Black Death on Egypt.

4 Why do you think nomadic Arabs were able to escape the Black Death? **Explain** your answer.

Analyse

5 **Examine** Source 6.

- a Describe the speed and reach of the Black Death across Asia, Europe and Africa.
- b Explain why the disease travelled so far and so swiftly.
- c Identify the year in which the Black Death had the greatest impact.

Apply

6 **Create** a timeline that lists key events in the spread of the Black Death from east to west. Include key dates for Asia, the Middle East, Africa and Europe.

8.17 Medicine at the time of the Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how medieval medicine treated the Black Death.

Today, we know far more about many health conditions and diseases than medieval people did. Those suffering from the Black Death in the fourteenth century had no idea why they were dying. They knew nothing about germs or bacteria. The cause of the Black Death – the bacteria *Yersinia pestis* (see Source 1 in topic 8.15) – was not discovered until the late 1800s.

Beliefs about the causes of the Black Death

It may seem strange to us today, but there were two common beliefs about where the Black Death came from during medieval times:

- On 20 March 1345, the planets of Jupiter, Saturn and Mars were unusually aligned. It was widely believed that the four **humours** of the body became infected when this unusual event took place, thus causing widespread sickness among people.
- Bad smells were commonly thought to be the cause of disease. To counteract this, people carried small bunches of flowers and burned rosemary in their home to give off a fragrant smoke.

humours
four liquids – blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile – that were thought in the past to influence a person's health and character

Source 7 A nineteenth-century illustration of a typical plague doctor; plague doctors in medieval times were similarly dressed.

Medical care at the time of the Black Death

There were some university-trained doctors in medieval Europe, but only the wealthiest people could afford to visit them. Poor people received medical attention from monks or nuns, or healers in their community. Often, healers were older women, who were respected for their knowledge of illness and herbal treatments.

Plague doctors were specialist physicians hired by towns and cities to fight the Black Death, but they were not always well trained. Source 7 provides evidence of how plague physicians typically dressed. This was their form of personal protective equipment (PPE). Their heavy floor-length coats extended up the back of the head. They also wore a hat, and a bird-like beak, which was filled with strong-smelling items such as mint, garlic or vinegar. This was designed to protect them from contracting the plague.

Isolation and quarantine

Desperate measures were taken to separate the sick from the healthy, which today would be considered morally wrong. The houses of the sick were marked with a red cross on the door and the entire household was locked inside. In some cases, the doors and windows were bricked to stop people from leaving.

Cities in Italy introduced **quarantine**. The word 'quarantine' is derived from an Italian word meaning 40 days. Officials believed this number had religious significance, and so they made all incoming ships and traders isolate for 40 days before entering the city.

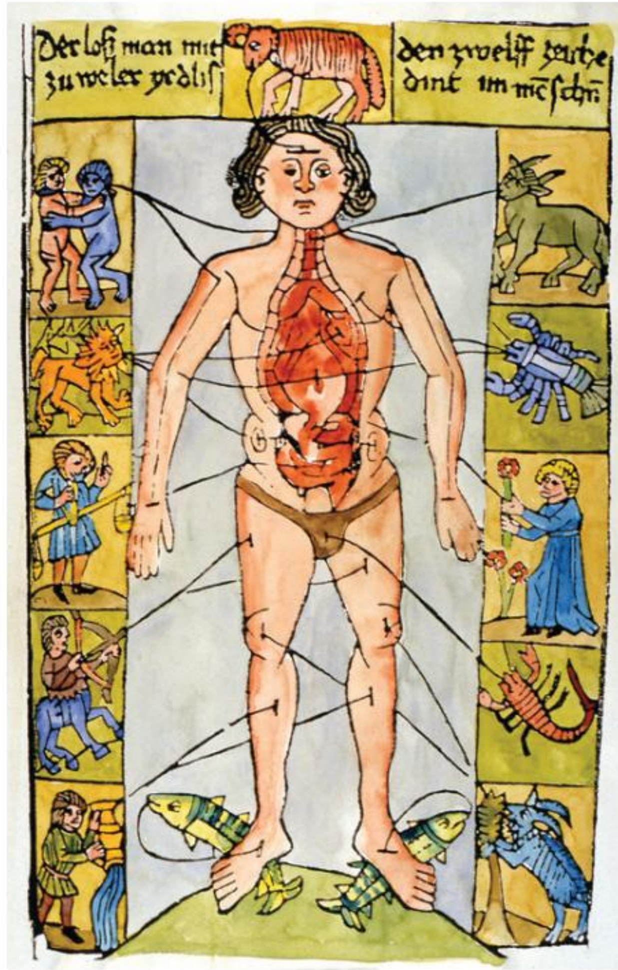
quarantine
a period of time when an animal or a person that has – or may have – a disease is kept away from others in order to prevent the disease from spreading

The city of Ragusa (in modern-day Croatia) was the first to pass laws requiring compulsory quarantine of all incoming travellers, ensuring that every visitor was completely disease-free before entering.

Medical treatments

There was a very limited understanding of human anatomy across medieval Europe, and surgical treatments were very crude. Surgeons often used the 'Zodiac Man' (see Source 8) to match up a patient's body parts with astrological signs, and guide their incisions and bloodletting. Bloodletting was a common treatment believed to cure illnesses and prevent diseases by removing 'dirty' blood. Leeches were sometimes used to suck out blood, or a person's vein was cut and a set amount of blood was collected in a dish. Often this procedure was done in a barber's shop – and the person who did it was the barber.

Other medical procedures included forcing a patient to vomit, or bringing on severe sweating or diarrhoea. Some doctors treated the buboes of plague victims by cutting them open to release blood. Then a mixture made from crushed dried toads and dried human excrement was spread over the open, pus-filled wound.



Source 8 This picture of the Zodiac Man is from a medical book used by medieval doctors.

Analyse this!
Zodiac Man

8.17 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** two causes of the Black Death, according to people at the time.

2 What methods were used to counteract (act against) bad smells?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how astrology (study of the planets and stars) influenced medicine during the Black Death. Use an example from this topic.

Analyse

4 With a partner, **apply** the concept of continuity and change to talk about isolation and quarantine measures in the time of the Black Death, and isolation and quarantine measures today. Share your discussion with the class.

5 **Compare** the isolation measures in the time of the Black Death with the quarantine measures used at that time. What were their similarities, and what were their differences? Show these on a Venn diagram.

Apply

6 Using the information you gathered for question 5, which method do you think would have been the most effective in preventing the spread of the disease? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

7 'Desperate times call for desperate measures.' How much do you agree with this statement – totally, somewhat or not at all? **Justify** your answer.

8.18 Religion at the time of the Black Death

Learning intention

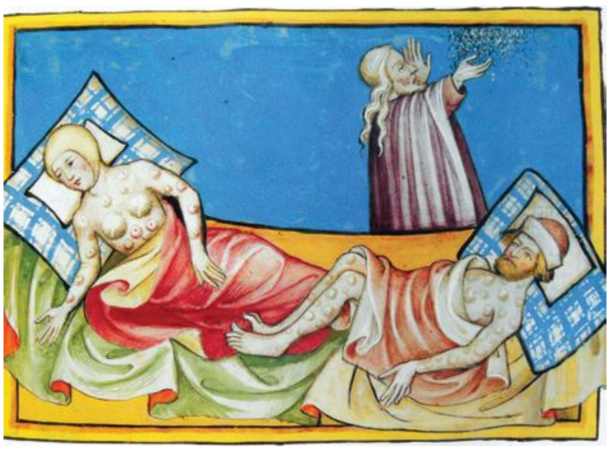
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the response to the Black Death by different religious groups.

Nobody in medieval times understood the real cause of the Black Death, but this did not stop them looking for reasons why this terrible disease was devastating their world.

The Muslim response

In contrast to the Christian response, which sought to blame, Muslim people believed they should accept the Black Death – seeing it as a divine act that was meant to happen. They did not try to solve the disease with violence or self-inflicted persecution. Historians suggest that 33 per cent of the population of the Middle East died during the Black Death.



Source 9 An illustration in a 1411 Bible from Toggenburg in Switzerland, showing a couple covered in buboes and a priest performing a holy ritual

The Christian response

Christians believed the Black Death was God's way of punishing them for their sins. They sought salvation from the Church through prayer and rituals. However, monks and nuns who helped the poor also became sick.

In this time of crisis, the Pope spent most of his time sitting in a chair between two raging bonfires believed to purify the air. He offered comfort to the people by claiming that all those repenting for their sins would be forgiven.

Persecution of the Jews

Jews formed only a small minority of the population in medieval Europe. Christians looked down on them, believing they were responsible for the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. With the spread of the Black Death, many people were looking for someone to blame for their suffering, and the Jews were a common target.

Massacres of Jews began in the spring and summer of 1348, starting in France. In Germany, Jewish persecution began in November 1348 and continued for the next nine months. Some Jews managed to escape to Poland and then moved on to Russia, where large Jewish communities were established.

The flagellants

The flagellants were groups of radical Christians who roamed through Europe, wearing red crosses on their clothing. Organised in groups of up to 300 people led by a master, flagellants would walk into towns and villages and flagellate (whip) themselves until they drew blood. They believed that this would help them gain God's forgiveness for their sins and stop the Black Death. The flagellants also believed that Jewish people were responsible for the Black Death, and encouraged attacks on the Jewish populations in the towns they visited.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on religion at the time of the Black Death

The sinners

Some people in medieval Europe became so depressed and disillusioned by what was happening during the Black Death that they gave up caring about religion entirely.

Without the strict moral guidance and teachings of the Church, some people began to show wild and careless behaviour. Spending all day drinking, laughing, singing and dancing took people's minds off their fear, and eased some of their pain. This mix of emotions (fear and celebration) is well captured in medieval artworks such as the *Danse Macabre* (see Source 11).

Source 10

[Some thought that moderate living and the avoidance of all superfluity [excesses] would preserve them from the epidemic … they shut themselves up in houses where there were no sick, eating the finest food and drinking the best wine very temperately [moderately], avoiding all excess, allowing no news or discussion of death and sickness … others thought just the opposite. They thought the sure cure for the plague was to drink and be merry, to go about singing and amusing themselves, satisfying every appetite they could, laughing and jesting [joking] …

… [B]rother abandoned brother, and the uncle his nephew, and the sister her brother, and very often the wife her husband. What is even worse and nearly incredible is that fathers and mothers refused to see and tend their children.

A translated extract from Giovanni Boccaccio, *The Decameron*, 1350s

Source 11 A section of a painting called *Danse Macabre* (or *Dance of Death*), painted in 1806; it is a copy of a destroyed wall painting from *c.* 1440.

8.18 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 a According to Muslims, what was the cause of the Black Death?

b According to Christians, what was the cause of the Black Death?

c How were these beliefs different?

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why and how Jewish people were persecuted during the time of the Black Death.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Sources 10 and 11.

a Are these primary or secondary sources? Explain your answer.

b Identify the evidence from these sources that reveals the mindset of medieval people at the time of the Black Death.

c Which source do you think is most helpful in understanding life at the time of the Black Death. Why do you think this?

Apply

4 To what extent do you believe the religious responses to the Black Death were morally wrong: totally wrong, somewhat wrong, or not wrong at all? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

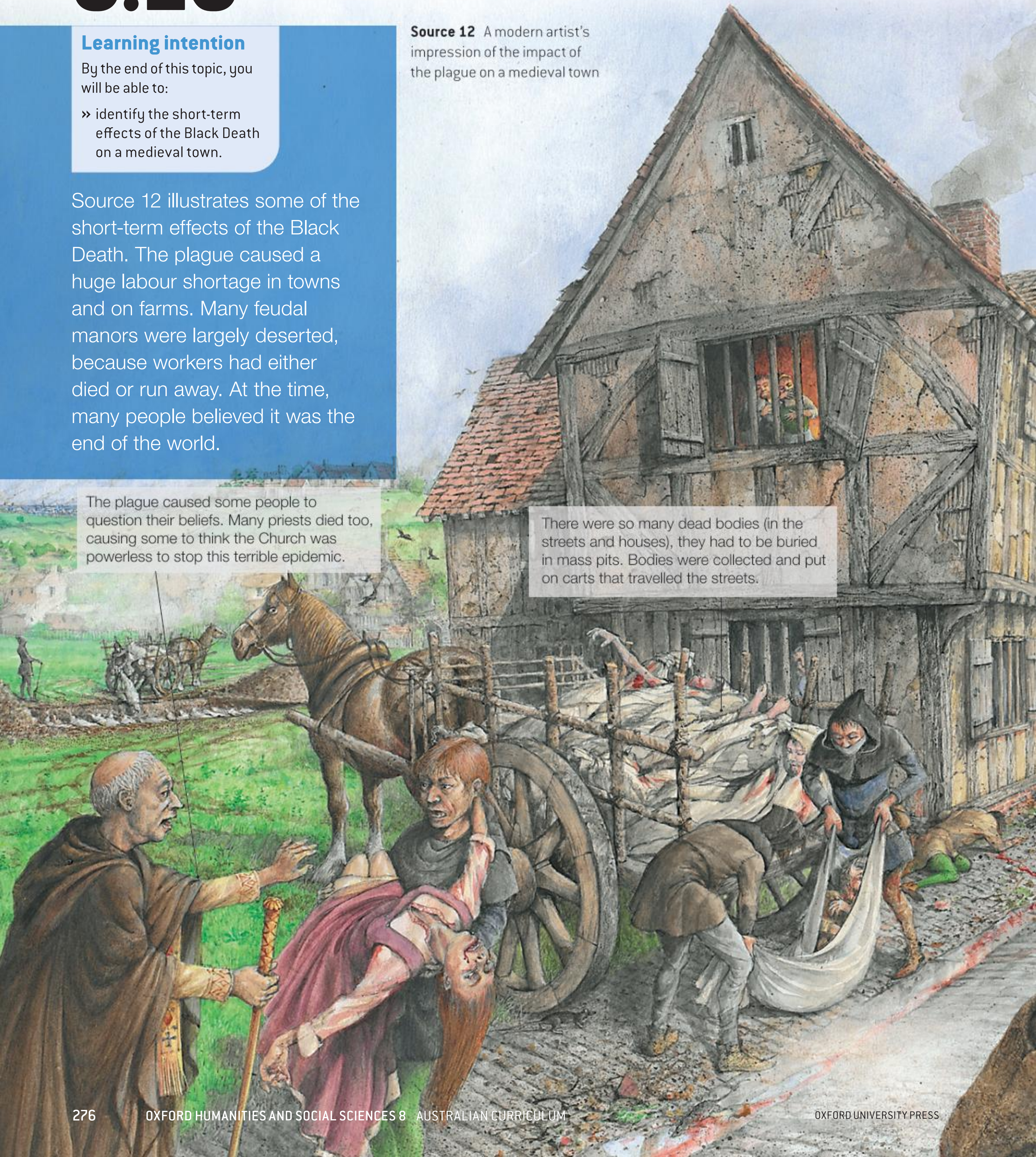
8.19 The end of the world

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the short-term effects of the Black Death on a medieval town.

Source 12 illustrates some of the short-term effects of the Black Death. The plague caused a huge labour shortage in towns and on farms. Many feudal manors were largely deserted, because workers had either died or run away. At the time, many people believed it was the end of the world.



Source 12 A modern artist's impression of the impact of the plague on a medieval town

8.19 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Using Source 12, **identify** five short-term effects of the Black Death that have hit this medieval town.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the end of the world

8.20 The short-term effects of the Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» analyse the short-term effects of the Black Death on populations, towns, religion and medicine.

Short-term effects are those that were felt by people during the Black Death, and immediately after. People from all walks of life and all trades and professions were affected, as were all types of families.

Depopulation

It is difficult to give an exact figure for the number of people who died from the Black Death, with most primary sources and church records proving unreliable. Even before the Black Death, the average life expectancy in medieval Europe was only between 30 and 35 years, with a high infant **mortality rate**.

mortality rate
a measure of the number of deaths in a particular population

The effects of the Black Death on Eastern societies are even less well understood. It is known that the plague spread into other regions of Asia besides China, including India and possibly the Khmer region.

The most recent estimates suggest the following approximate number of deaths as a result of the Black Death:

- 33 to 40 per cent of the population of Europe, with higher rates of death in rural areas
- 35 million people in China
- one-third of the population in the Middle East
- 40 per cent of Egypt's population.

The effect on towns

Rubbish and raw sewage in the streets of medieval towns were a common sight, even before the Black Death. Once the plague struck, this became even worse. Abandoned houses were left dirty and untended, and muck piled up in the streets. There were few people to tend to the disrepair, even if they had wanted to.

After the Black Death had passed, some towns and villages slowly began to set up local health boards to develop and enforce sanitation procedures. These remained very simple, but included such moves as regulations to restrict the dumping of waste and the employment of street sweepers (see Source 13). Unfortunately, London experienced outbreaks of more diseases in the next few centuries, which suggests that these regulations were not enforced.

Source 13

Almost all the floors are made of clay and rushes from the marshes, so carelessly removed that the bottom layers sometimes remain for 20 years, keeping there below spittle and vomit and urine of dogs and men, beer that has been thrown down, leftovers of fishes and filth unimaginable ... It would help also if people made the council keep the streets less dirty from filth and urine.

A letter from the Dutch scholar Erasmus to an English doctor in 1524, with his ideas to stop plagues

The effect on religion

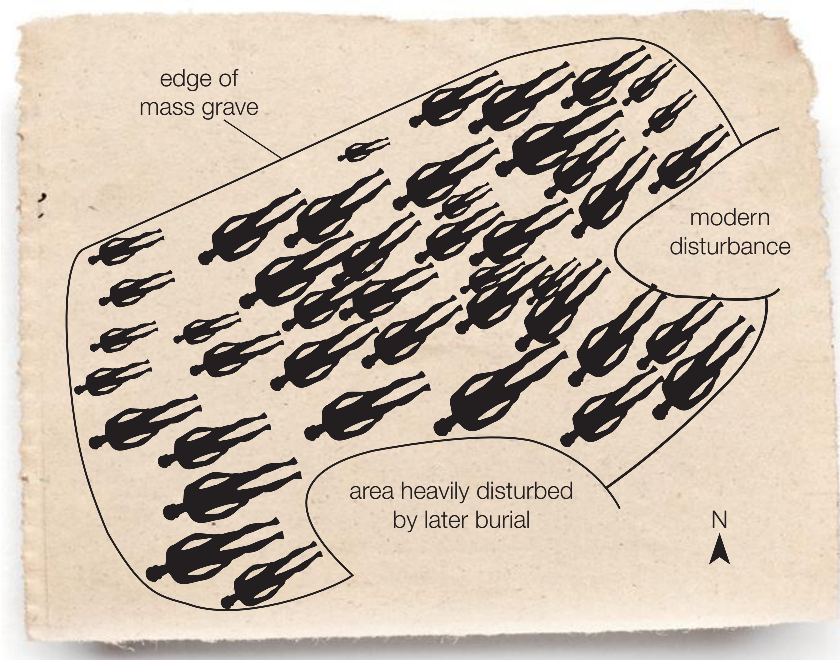
Many monks, nuns and priests died as a result of the Black Death. Some common people saw this as proof that the lifestyles of these religious people had displeased God. A few religious centres, such as monasteries, were accused of improper conduct and greed. Some priests and other religious figures fled – abandoning their parishioners because they feared becoming infected. Those who replaced them were often poorly trained. Some did not even live in the parishes they were meant to oversee. This added to the disappointment and anger of many ordinary people towards the Church and weakened its position in society.

Source 14 A manuscript illustration of a bishop blessing infected monks, *c.* 1360

Changes to burial practices

At the time of the Black Death, people were dying so quickly, and in such large numbers, that there was no time for proper burials or religious ceremonies. In fact, some Christian priests began refusing to bury victims for fear of contracting the disease. As a result, mass burials became common in towns, with groups of people buried in large graves.

In 2020 an excavation of Thornton Abbey in Lincolnshire, northern England uncovered the remains of over 48 people who had been buried in a mass grave (see Sources 15 and 16). Radiocarbon dating was used to determine that these deaths took place in the fourteenth century. A bone analysis positively identified the *Yersinia pestis* bacteria, linking these bodies to the Black Death.



Source 15 This illustration of the layout of the skeletons in the mass grave in Thornton Abbey shows how they were carefully arranged and organised – presumably by family members of the dead.

Source 16 This photograph shows how the rows of skeletons overlap.

The effect on medicine

The failure of medieval medicine to cure or prevent the spread of the Black Death led to changes in medical practices immediately following the plague. Frustrated with diagnoses and treatments that revolved around astrology and superstition, doctors and scholars began focusing more on clinical medicine and seeking to increase their knowledge of the physical world.

This approach led to an increase in **autopsies** and dissections of human corpses in a desire to learn more about anatomy. This in turn led to a greater understanding of the workings of the human body, and new medical texts and treatments. Hospitals developed into places of treatment, rather than being places where the sick were sent to die.

autopsies
examinations of bodies to discover – or find out more about – the cause of death

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the short-term effects of the Black Death

Source 17 This card was carried as a lucky charm, in the hope of warding off the Black Death.

8.20 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why is it difficult to give an exact figure for the number of people who died from the Black Death?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the state of towns in medieval Europe after the Black Death.

3 **Explain** how the Black Death led to a loss of confidence in the Church for some medieval Christians.

Analyse

4 What does Source 13 tell us about sanitation and hygiene in London in the centuries that followed the Black Death?

5 **Analyse** the short-term effects of the Black Death on medieval Europe.

Remember, when you analyse something you should break it down into smaller parts and talk about how they relate to each other. For example, think about how the lack of religious burial might have contributed to a loss of faith in the Church. Be sure to use examples from this topic to support your answer.

Apply

6 Working in small groups, imagine you are in charge of cleaning up the medieval streets of London. What are some strategies you could employ to make this happen? Present your findings to the class, and then hold a class vote to decide the best ideas.

8.21 The long-term effects of the Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the long-term effects of the Black Death feudalism, farming and the Church.

Long-term effects are those that become clear over time. For example, looking back on the Black Death, we can see that it reduced populations across Europe. In some cases, the populations of whole towns were wiped out, leaving the countryside empty. Europe would not recover until the 1500s.

Weakening of feudalism

This massive drop in population drastically affected trade, manufacturing, and the production of food from the land. Skilled labourers and craftspeople were now in short supply. Survivors who had been trained in different trades were highly valued by employers. They now had more bargaining power and more social status.

Analyse this! Life on the manor

In time, this situation helped to break down the already weakened system of feudalism. Instead of providing their labour free in return for a lord's protection and support, knights and manor workers could now demand money for their services. In towns, workers could demand higher wages.

Source 18 A painting showing life on a manor, soon after the Black Death ended

The wealth available to survivors of the Black Death is believed to have been at least five times more than it was before the plague struck. Spending increased in towns and cities, increasing the power and social position of surviving skilled workers. Prices also began to increase in some areas.

Peasant unrest

Concerned by the increase in wages being demanded, some rulers tried to introduce new laws to keep wages low. They also tried to stop the rising cost of food, which was then being forced up by black market (illegal) trading and piracy (attacking and robbing ships at sea).

In England, the Statute of Labourers was introduced in 1351. This law made it illegal for employers to increase wages to attract new workers. It also made it illegal for workers to travel to other areas for better wages. This law upset many peasant workers. Indeed, it created some of the unrest that led to the Peasants' Revolt of 1381.

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

The Peasants' Revolt

By 1381, the Black Death had caused the population across Europe to drop significantly. One of the major effects of this was the increased value that peasant workers, such as farmers and craftspeople, now had in society.

Source 19 An illustration of Wat Tyler being killed during the Peasants' Revolt

At this time, peasants were still required to pay taxes to support the king. When some refused to pay, they were fined or put in the stocks as punishment. When the Statute of Labourers was passed in 1351, it stopped workers from asking for better employment terms (such as higher wages or freedom to travel) despite their increased value in society.

Peasants all over the country felt disgruntled by this. In 1381, an uprising now known as 'The Peasants' Revolt' swelled across England. The leader of the uprising, Wat Tyler, was killed by the Mayor of London in June of the same year.

The Peasants' Revolt has its own significant effects, one of which was the end of feudalism in England. Although this did not happen immediately, the revolt caused the upper classes to realise that they could not rule over the lower classes in the same ways they had in the past. They also realised that large groups of workers could be a significant political force to reckon with, and that changes had to be made.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 212 of 'The history toolkit'.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the long-term effects of the Black Death

Weakening of the Church

The fact that religious leaders were not able to limit the terrible effects of the Black Death – as well as the deaths of so many monks, nuns and priests – led to a lessening of many people's faith in the Church. In the aftermath of the plague, people began to question the influence and power that the Church had over society and to openly criticise some of its practices.

In time this would lead to a strengthening of power of the state over the Church and to movements, such as the **Reformation**, that would see the establishment of alternative Christian faiths.

Reformation
a movement that began in Europe in the sixteenth century when the scholar-monk Martin Luther publicly challenged the Catholic Church; it shifted the balance of power in Europe away from dominant control by the Church

The start of the slave trade

Another effect of the Black Death that had long-term implications was the start of the slave trade. The first African people brought to Europe as slaves were done so to boost Europe's greatly reduced labour force.

This group of people had been taken captive by Portuguese captains Antão Gonçalves and Nuno Tristão in Cabo Branco (modern-day Mauritania) in 1441. After this, the Portuguese established a steady trade in African slaves. Just over 10 years later, the Spanish also entered the slave trade.

The slave trade was initially established to provide labour in Europe. However, as European nations began to establish colonies from the sixteenth century onwards, the slave trade increased.

Foundations of the Renaissance

After the Black Death had passed, many wealthy survivors in Europe chose to invest in art or literature as a means of expressing their gratitude for being left alive. Some funded talented individuals to create paintings, build public buildings, or write literature. Others encouraged scientific research, hoping that answers might one day be found to the question of what caused the Black Death. These developments added to the cultural rebirth in Europe at the time, which would later become known as the Renaissance.

Source 20 *The Mona Lisa*, which is arguably the most famous painting of all time, was painted by Leonardo Da Vinci during the Renaissance.

8.21 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How did the population drop caused by the Black Death help to weaken feudalism?

2 When was the Statute of Labourers introduced?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how some survivors of the Black Death helped the spread of Renaissance thinking in Europe.

4 Using a flow chart, **explain** how the weakening of the feudal system eventually led to the Peasants' Revolt.

Apply

5 In small groups, **create** a role-play for the class of a conversation between survivors of the Black Death and either their former lord of the manor or their former employer in a medieval town. Your role-play should focus on how things have changed (for all parties concerned) and should reflect the values and knowledge of the times.

6 In pairs, brainstorm ideas and then **create** a concept map titled 'The effects of the Black Death'. Use colours to categorise the connections. Look back over this chapter to add more knowledge and expand your concept map.

8D
SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Morals, ethics and the spread of disease

When it comes to how we treat each other, some important terms to understand are 'morals' and 'ethics'. The term 'morals' relates to the judgment of right and wrong behaviour; whereas the term 'ethics' refers to the rules and conduct required to uphold morals. Historians are interested in studying the morals and ethics of a period so that they can understand what life was like at the time.

Source 21 An artist's impression of Jewish people being burned alive during the Black Death in the *Nuremberg Chronicle* (1493)

Source 22

It was thought that the people … having seen the extermination of their neighbours and of all the nations of the world … would become better, humble and virtuous and catholic, avoiding iniquities and sins and overflowing with love and charity for one another … The opposite happened. Men, finding themselves few and rich by inheritances and successions of earthly things, forgetting the past as if it never was, gave themselves to more disordered and sordid [corrupt] behaviour than ever before.

Observations written in the fourteenth century by the Italian chronicler Matteo Villani, son of a respected merchant family in Florence

As you studied the Black Death, you may have felt many emotions about the treatment of various groups in society, including sick people and Jewish people. Perhaps more important is understanding how morals and ethics developed after this period. After such a devastating pandemic, did survivors change their views about how they treated each other? In Source 22, an Italian writer raises this very question.

Today, we are in a unique position, as we have experienced what it is like to live during a pandemic. The spread of COVID-19 (beginning in 2020) shaped our thinking with regard to what we value about life, and in some cases may have even changed our sense of what is important. There may have been elements of life during the Black Death that you compared with your own experience. For example, you may have felt great empathy for those quarantining in Italy, for the sick people locked in their houses, or for those suffering the devastating economic impact of the plague. You may also have felt a new appreciation for the importance of science, medicine and protective equipment.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Source 23 A student delivering a speech

Preparing a speech

You will often be asked to deliver an oral presentation, or speech. The main role of a speech is to persuade your audience. A speech should always be presented in a formal manner, and show off your knowledge about the subject on which you are speaking.

There are six main steps to preparing a speech.

Step 1 Reflect on what you have learnt so far. For example, try comparing your life today to life during the Black Death. Is there one specific aspect of life during the Black Death that has really captured your attention?

Step 2 Using your reflection from step 1, pick a topic for your speech. The most persuasive speeches will be those you make on topics that interest you. Perhaps something about the Black Death shocked you, evoked feelings of empathy in you, or left you wanting to know more. For example, your topic might be 'Religion during the Black Death'.

Step 3 Use your thoughts from steps 2 and 3 to devise a main argument for your speech. For example, if your topic is 'Religion during the Black Death', your main argument might be: 'The Black Death loosened the strong grip that that the Catholic Church had held over medieval Europe.'

Step 4 Write your speech. Your speech should have an introduction, a main section with supporting evidence, and a conclusion. You can also share your own opinion during a speech – tell the audience what you think about these arguments, or what parts of your research have challenged your thinking.

Step 5 Rehearse your speech so that you feel comfortable presenting it in front of an audience.

Step 6 Present your speech to your audience. Stand confidently, make eye contact with your audience and be sure to pause and take a breath at times!

Practise the skill

1 Write a speech to **compare** something you have learnt while studying the Black Death to something from the modern day, such as COVID-19. Once you have picked a topic and devised your main argument, use the following dot points to help write your speech.
   - Address the concept of continuity and change.
   - Discuss the similarities or differences in the actions and opinions of society then and now.
   - Where possible, include your thoughts and feelings about the moral and ethical issues raised throughout your speech.

Extend your understanding:

1 **Propose** (put forward) reasons why ethics has become a fundamental part of scientific and medical research.

2 Write a reflective piece to **discuss** how society has developed with regard to the treatment of others since medieval times. In what areas could we improve further in Australia?

8 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine the sources below and answer the questions that follow.

A peasant's life

Look at Sources 24 to 26.

Source 24 A manuscript illustration of the life of a peasant, representing the 12 months of the year (from left to right, top row to bottom row)

Source 25

In the following autumn no one could get a reaper [person who cuts grain with a sickle or scythe] for less than 8d … a mower for than 12d, with his food … sheep and cattle went wandering over fields and through crops and there was no one to look after them … many crops perished in the fields for want of someone to gather them.

Extract from Henry Knighton, a priest, written in the fourteenth century, after the Black Death

Rules for peasants on manors

- Work the lord's land as required
- Pay taxes to the lord, usually in the form of crops
- Ask permission to leave the manor or move house
- Ask approval from the lord to allow their daughters to marry or their sons to be educated
- Be punished or fined for breaking manor rules
- Pay fees to the lord for basic privileges (e.g. for grinding their grain in his mill)

Source 26 Some rules for peasants working on feudal manors

1. **Identify** whether each source is a primary or secondary source. (3 marks)
2. Using Source 26, **explain** how feudalism kept peasants powerless for centuries. (3 marks)
3. Suggest why a peasant's life in medieval Europe was hard. Refer to any of the three sources to support your answer. (3 marks)
4. Using Sources 25 and 26, **propose** how a peasant's life may have changed after the Black Death. Support your answer with background knowledge and examples. (6 marks)
5. Write a paragraph reflecting on the treatment of medieval peasants according to your moral and ethical views. In your reflection, **compare** your perspective to the perspectives of social groups at the time. (5 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain how the collapse of the Roman Empire led to the development of the feudal system.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.2, page 226.
Describe the structure of feudal society in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.3, page 228.
Explain the roles and relationships of different groups on a feudal manor.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.4, page 230.
Compare the daily lives of the rich and the poor in medieval Europe by examining food, entertainment, fashion and hygiene.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.5, page 232.
Compare the daily lives of the rich and the poor in medieval Europe by examining their living conditions	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.6, page 235.
Describe the features of castles in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.7, page 238.
Explain significant changes in medieval Europe as new empires, kingdoms and rulers asserted their power.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.8, page 242.
Understand why Charlemagne was a significant figure of change in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.9, page 244.
Understand the dominance of the Catholic Church in medieval society. Identify the causes and effects of the Crusades.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.10, page 246.
Recognise significant cultural developments that contributed to continuity and change in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.11, page 252.
Explain the continuities and changes in crime and punishment in medieval Europe. Describe the impact of the Magna Carta.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.12, page 254.
Explain the continuities and changes in military and defence systems in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.13, page 258.
Explain the continuities and changes in towns, cities and commerce in medieval Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.14, page 264.
Describe the causes and symptoms of the Black Death.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.15, page 268.
Understand the origin and spread of the Black Death from Asia through to Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.16, page 270.
Explain how medieval medicine treated the Black Death.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.17, page 272.
Summarise the response to the Black Death by different religious groups.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.18, page 274.
Identify the short-term effects of the Black Death on a medieval town.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.19, page 276.
Analyse the short-term effects of the Black Death on populations, towns, religion and medicine.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.20, page 278.
Describe the long-term effects of the Black Death on feudalism, farming and the Church.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 8.21, page 281.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 8

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 8

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Medieval Europe.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 8

obook pro

CHAPTER 9

The Renaissance

The Renaissance was a period of great change that began in Italy around 1400. The term ‘renaissance’ comes from a French word meaning ‘rebirth’. Over time, it came to describe a historical period that promoted a culture of learning.

The work of ancient philosophers, poets and writers from Greece and Rome inspired thinkers during the Renaissance period. Renaissance scholars studied these ideas and gave them new life by applying them to their own world. They also developed exciting new theories and inventions that changed our approach to art, music, architecture, science, politics, literature, religion and technology. These new theories and inventions had one common theme: the belief that humans were the centre of the universe. Although the Renaissance period began in Italy, over time these new ideas spread across Europe and the world.

By around 1600, the Renaissance period was coming to an end and the modern world was born.

Source 1 Festivals and pageantry in Florence are still important traditions, originating from the time when this cultural capital was the heart of the Renaissance.

obook only chapter
Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

9A
Why did the Renaissance develop?

9B
How was society organised during the Renaissance in Italy?

9C
What were the greatest achievements of the Renaissance and how did they influence the rest of Europe?

9.1 Renaissance Italy: a timeline

Andreas Vesalius, considered to be the founder of modern anatomy

1397
Giovanni de Medici moves to Florence. He becomes involved in Florentine public life and begins supporting the arts, laying the groundwork for the Medici family's rise to power.

1413
Filippo Brunelleschi develops the geometrical theory of 'perspective', changing the nature of art dramatically.

1434
The Medici family – a powerful family of bankers, politicians, monarchs and religious figures – gain control of the ruling council in the Republic of Florence.

1436
The dome of Florence Cathedral is completed; it is designed by one of the most important architects and engineers of the Renaissance, Filippo Brunelleschi.

1450
Johannes Gutenberg, a German goldsmith, invents the printing press. It allows information to be spread to a wide population.

1452
Leonardo da Vinci, a renowned intellectual in many fields – including painting, engineering, music, anatomy, biology and sculpture – is born near Florence.

1455
The Italian League is formed between the five big city-states, providing protection and peace for 40 years.

The *Mona Lisa*, believed to have been painted between 1503 and 1506

Source 1 A timeline of some key events during the Renaissance

Sequence this!
Key events in Renaissance Italy

1500 | 1510 | 1520 | 1540 | 1550 | 1590 | 1610 CE

1498
The Medici family flee Florence after losing their power. They will return in 1512, and their dynasty will continue until the eighteenth century.

1501
The city of Florence commissions Michelangelo's sculpture of David. It is completed in 1504.

1508
Commissioned by Pope Julius II, Michelangelo starts painting the walls and ceilings of the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican. His work is completed in 1512.

1513
Italian historian, philosopher and politician Niccolò Machiavelli writes *The Prince*. Desiderius Erasmus, a Dutch theologian and priest, publishes 'In Praise of Folly', an essay criticising established religion.

1517
Martin Luther publishes his 95 theses.

1519
Leonardo da Vinci dies. He leaves behind paintings such as the *Mona Lisa* and *The Last Supper*.

1527
The imperial army attacks the city of Rome after Pope Clement VII refuses to pay a ransom. The city is taken in just over 12 hours in what would become known as the 'sack of Rome'. This symbolises the beginning of the decline of Renaissance Italy.

1528
Baldassare Castiglione publishes *The Book of the Courtier.*

1540
Nicolas Copernicus, a mathematician and astronomer from the kingdom of Poland, publishes a book outlining his radical theory that the Sun is the centre of the universe, not the Earth. Andreas Vesalius, a Belgian anatomist and physician, publishes *On the Structure of the Human Body.*

1558
Elizabeth I becomes Queen of England.

1590
Shakespeare writes his first play, *The Two Gentlemen of Verona.*

A painting of Galileo explaining his observations about the moon

1610
Italian physicist and astronomer Galileo Galilei develops the first telescope capable of observing the moon and planets. In 1632, he goes on to publish a book confirming Copernicus' theory that the Earth revolves around the sun.

Desiderius Erasmus, a Dutch theologian, was critical of established religions.

9.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** who commissioned Michelangelo to paint the Sistine Chapel.

2 Who were the Medici family and why were they important?

Analyse

3 **Examine** the painting of the *Mona Lisa*. What do you think it shows about the subject's nature and personality? Refer to features of the painting in your answer.

Apply

4 Copernicus' theory that the Sun, rather than the Earth, was the centre of the universe caused him to be criticised and ridiculed. As a class, brainstorm why he received this response.

9.2 What was the Renaissance?

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the social, economic and political changes that caused the Renaissance.

The **Renaissance** was a complex movement that began in the late Middle Ages. It was a time of great change and progress, and a number of Italian thinkers in the late fourteenth century declared it a new age of learning, literature, art and culture. Historians now think the Renaissance began as early as 1340, though it was not acknowledged as a historical period until the eighteenth century.

The Renaissance did not develop from a single cause, but its many developments all shared a common theme – that humans were the centre of the universe. This was a shift away from the beliefs of Christianity that dominated during the medieval period.

Renaissance
a period in Europe's history between the late twelfth and sixteenth centuries that saw a revival of culture and learning; a French term meaning 'rebirth'

Crusades
a series of wars fought by Christians and Muslims between 1096 and 1291 CE over control of the Holy Land

secular
not connected to religious or spiritual matters

manuscripts
in the medieval sense, documents written by hand (usually by monks)

The revival of trade and the growth of towns

During the Middle Ages (also known as the medieval period), people in Europe did not know much about the world around them. However, the **Crusades** in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries introduced Europeans to Asian and Middle-Eastern products, including spices, silks, perfumes and pottery. Improved land and sea routes to the East were opened up, better and stronger ships were built, and skills in navigation improved. These influences led to a great increase in trade.

It was not only new products that were brought to Europe, but also new ideas. Trading centres in Italy flourished and a merchant class grew, making their money from transporting and selling goods. More people began to move into towns, where they could share skills and ideas. These changes paved the way for other social and cultural changes, as the Renaissance unfolded.

The Black Death

In 1347, a plague known as the Black Death reached Europe, killing up to one-third of the population. The disease was spread by fleas carried by rats, and it was probably brought from the East on trading ships. The Black Death had a devastating effect on the population in rural areas, leading to a decline in food supplies. Many of those who survived the plague moved to the developing towns. The death and suffering experienced during the Black Death also led some people to question the teachings of the Catholic Church. This contributed to the more **secular** approach to life that developed during the Renaissance.

Source 2 This manuscript image was drawn in 1349, during the Black Death. It shows people carrying coffins of those who had died.

The printing press

In the Middle Ages, monks were among the few people who could read and write. Monasteries housed rare **manuscripts** that monks had copied by hand. Most of the manuscripts – written in Latin – were religious. Learning was mostly controlled by the Church.

This changed in 1450 when a German goldsmith, Johannes Gutenberg, invented the printing press. Now, new and classical texts could be mass-produced. The invention of printing was probably the most important factor contributing to the spread of Renaissance culture and ideas across Europe. Printed books encouraged people to learn to read and gain more knowledge.

The fall of Constantinople

In 1453, the city of Constantinople in modern-day Türkiye was invaded by the Ottoman Empire. Greek scholars – who had kept classical learning alive in Constantinople during the Middle Ages – fled to Italy, taking with them documents and manuscripts from ancient Greece and Rome. These scholars contributed to the revival of interest in classical learning that influenced much of the culture of the Renaissance.

All of these influences led to the development of the vibrant and creative period known as the Renaissance. As the movement spread, the ideas and inventions inspired more and more expression and development.

Source 3 An artist's impression of Johannes Gutenberg in his workshop showing his first sheet of printed text

Source 4 The Piccolomini Library at the Cathedral of Siena houses a wide range of books and manuscripts. It was a Renaissance ideal to have a library attached to a place of worship that promoted learning and artistic expression.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Renaissance

9.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'Renaissance'.

2 How did the fall of Constantinople lead to a revival of classical learning?

3 How did the Black Death come to Europe?

Comprehend

4 **Explain** the changing views about religion that fuelled Renaissance thinking.

5 **Summarise** why the invention of the printing press was so important to the Renaissance.

Apply

6 Examine all of the influences on the emergence of the Renaissance covered in this topic. List them in order of importance, and write a short paragraph to **justify** (give reasons for) your choice of the most important one.

* **See, think, wonder**

Look at Source 4.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

9.3 City-states of Renaissance Italy

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the political organisation of Renaissance Italy into city-states

» describe the economic growth and cultural development of city-states in Renaissance Italy.

mercantile connected with trade, merchants and commercial or business affairs

Quiz me! A quick quiz on city-states of Renaissance Italy

Italy became a powerful trading nation due to its central location within the Mediterranean Sea. Surrounded by coastline, its location in the south-east of Europe made it close to three distinct regions: the Middle East, Asia and northern Africa. This meant that many ports could be used for the transport of goods by sea to and from a vast range of places.

As trade opportunities grew, **mercantile** cities became powerful enough to separate themselves from towns under the Holy Roman Empire.

The growth of city-states

Renaissance Italy was not a united country, but rather a group of over 30 city-states (the main ones are shown in Source 5). A city-state is a city and surrounding area that is self-governed. Some city-states were led by the Pope, some were led by kings, and others were influential republics (governed by elected officials) where wealthy families were in charge. Each city-state had the right to:

- form its own laws
- maintain an army
- manage its economy
- devise its own foreign policy.

MAIN CITY-STATES OF RENAISSANCE ITALY

Duchy of Milan (ruled by dukes): the city of Milan was situated at a crossroads on the main trade routes joining port cities on the coast to other parts of Europe. It prospered from both the silk trade and the wool trade.

Republic of Genoa (governed by an elected council and led by the *doge* – a chief elected ruler): it was on a major trade route and grew its wealth from its strong banks. It was the birthplace of Christopher Columbus. Genoa and Venice had a bitter rivalry.

Republic of Siena (governed by influential families): Siena thrived from its banking, having the oldest bank in the world. It had a rivalry with neighbouring Florence.

Republic of Venice (ruled by an elected council led by the *doge*; this council was dominated by influential merchants): Venice was an important link between Western Europe and Eastern trade ports, attracting traders from around the world. It was the birthplace of Marco Polo.

Republic of Florence (governed by an elected council, the *signoria*, which was dominated by influential families): the cloth-making industry and banking were important to its economy. The city of Florence was the cultural centre of Renaissance Italy, bustling with artists. Its population reached over 80 000.

The Papal States (territories around the city of Rome, governed by the Pope, who was also head of the Church): with the Vatican City at their heart, these territories became a hub for artists and scholars wishing to study the ancient classics. The concept of humanism flourished in the Papal States.

Kingdom of Naples (the only city-state to officially have a king): it had one of the world's oldest universities, and attracted scholars of the Renaissance. The kingdom split and reunified with Sicily for brief periods.

Source 5

Source: Oxford University Press

Influence of the Crusades

Most city-states were in northern and central Italy. The coastal towns in this region had developed as important trade and transport hubs during the Crusades. Soldiers travelling from Western Europe would seek accommodation there, and pay for travel by ship to the **Holy Land**. The towns also benefited from new ideas, produce and processes brought by soldiers as they returned from the East.

With exposure to the mathematical knowledge of the Middle East, northern Italy became a highly numerate (mathematically competent) society. Many city-states developed strong accounting practices to strengthen trade there. By the thirteenth century, the region was also one of the most literate societies in the world, with one-third of the population's men (and a small number of women) being able to read.

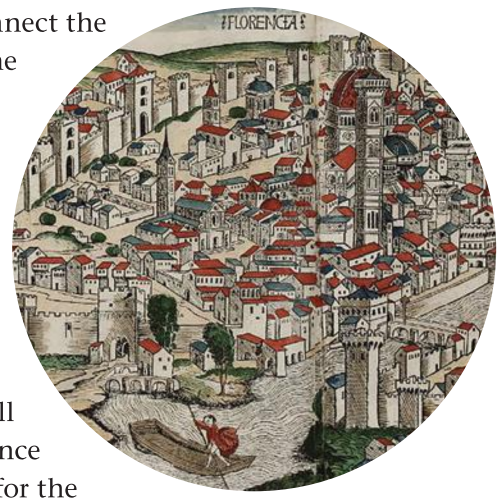
Holy Land
territory in the Middle East (now mostly made up of Israel and Palestine) that is important to the Christian, Jewish and Muslim religions

Silk Road
a network of trade routes stretching west from China to the Mediterranean Sea; it was the main means by which silk was introduced to the West

Trade

Italian port cities on the Mediterranean Sea were in the best position to connect the **Silk Road** to the rest of Europe. As a result, city-states such as Venice became rich and powerful. For a time, they had an almost exclusive trade of silk.

Trade rivalries, conflicts and even wars occurred between city-states as they competed for control over certain trading posts throughout the Mediterranean region. As a result, smaller city-states were sometimes overthrown by their larger neighbours.



Source 6 A 1494 woodcut by Hartmann Schedel of Florence, a major city-state during the Renaissance

Culture

Each city-state had its own character and culture. Those in the north-west were known for banking and their wool industry (Milan, for example, is still seen as a fashion capital of the world). In central Italy, the Republic of Florence became the hub for art and commerce. The Papal States were a destination for the growing interest in the humanities and the ancient classics found in Rome.

In the south, the Kingdom of Naples welcomed open debate and scholars to the imperial court. In 1224, a university was opened there. It became an important hub for knowledge, science and technological innovation.

9.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** 'city-state'.
2. **Identify** three elements of control that a city-state had over its territory.

Comprehend

3. **Explain** the significance of the geography of the Italian peninsula in establishing the city-states.
4. Which aspect of society in city-states do you think was most important: the influence of the Crusades, trade or culture? Give reasons for your answer.

Apply

5. Trace the map in Source 5. **Investigate** further and add the following:
   a. the location of the main city in each city-state
   b. three additional annotations to show particular points of interest in Renaissance Italy (such as universities or Vatican City).
6. **Create** a concept map that shows the growth of the city-states. Include branches of each city-state's specialty trade products and cultural developments. Create a network by thinking about connections between various branches.

9A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Italian League

In Renaissance Italy, certain city-states became major political and economic powers. As such intense rivalries, competition and even wars occurred between city-states, ongoing conflict made the formation of treaties and alliances necessary.

In 1454, Milan and Venice entered into the Treaty of Lodi to end a costly war and agree on their boundaries. Following this, three more city-states decided to unite in peace under the Treaty of Lodi, to form an agreement called the Italian League. This agreement stated that if one league member attacked another, the other city-states would provide military aid to fight the attacking city-state. This support was also required if a city-state was attacked by an outside force.

The creation of the Italian League brought 40 years of peace to Italy. In 1494, however, the terms of the league were broken when the Kingdom of Naples prepared to attack the Duchy of Milan. In response, Milan invited the French king to launch his troops against Naples. Venice and the Papal States persuaded the Spanish King Ferdinand to help resist the French, and Italy fell into war once again.

Source 7 A view of modern-day Venice

Republic of Venice | Republic of Florence | Duchy of Milan | Papal States (Rome) | Kingdom of Naples

Source 8 The coats of arms for the five main city-states in Renaissance Italy

Source 9 A view of Venice painted by Gaspar van Wittel in 1697, showing the famous Grand Canal

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Creating and delivering an audiovisual presentation

Audiovisual presentations are a good way to communicate the findings of your research, using visual and audio sources to engage your audience. Follow these steps:

Step 1 Develop a key inquiry question (or questions) to explore. Make a list of points you will need to cover. If it is a group presentation, make sure that the workload is shared evenly.

Step 2 Gather your research. Find and collect a range of reliable primary and secondary sources that will help you answer your question. Make sure you record the reference details.

Step 3 Plan and create your presentation to address the key inquiry questions. Decide on the format; for example, PowerPoint, Prezi, a short film, a website or a talk supported by a poster.

If you are developing a slideshow, aim for a few short dot points of key information on each slide, which you will elaborate on by speaking. Make sure your slides are readable in terms of colour, backgrounds and font size.

Step 4 Deliver your presentation.

- Rehearse your presentation so that you can deliver it with confidence. Point to features within images, or explain maps and graphs in detail, before moving on to the next topic.
- Engage your audience by speaking slowly and clearly, and making eye contact. Pause for 10–20 seconds to allow the audience time to read your information and look carefully at images.
- Prepare for the worst by having a back-up plan in case technology lets you down.
- Finish strongly. Your presentation should finish on a high note.
- Encourage your audience to comment or ask questions at the end of the presentation.

Practise the skill

Follow the steps above to develop an audiovisual presentation on the significance of one of the five main Renaissance city-states, and the way of life there.

1 Develop a series of inquiry questions to guide your research. Some ideas to start from include:
   - geographical information – size, location, population, map
   - political framework – type of government, its structure, key rulers, legal matters, policies
   - interactions with other city-states – alliances, rivalries, agreements, wars
   - economy and society – produce traded, cultural developments, work, education

2 **Investigate** and collect a range of information from a variety of sources (such as pictures, music, videos, interviews and short quotes).

3 Rehearse your presentation and present your finished product to the class.

Extend your understanding

1 Work with other students who are studying the same city-state as you, and **create** a tourism marketing campaign. This is a great way to highlight the most significant features of a historical place and time. Explain why a tourist during this period should visit your city-state. Create a slogan or jingle that you think captures the essence of the city-state.

   Take a vote after the presentations to see which city-state would be the most popular destination.

2 Imagine what it would have been like to live in one of the city-states. Write a diary entry or letter to capture aspects of daily life and features of the city-state.

9.4 The social structure of Renaissance Italy

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the roles and relationships of different groups in Renaissance Italy

» identify the similarities and differences of daily life between the *popolo minuto* and *popolo grasso*.

In Renaissance Italy, people's experience of everyday life varied greatly. Wealth, gender and whether they lived in a town or the countryside all influenced the way that people lived.

Life for the wealthy in Renaissance Italy

People of noble birth were at the top of the social scale and originally ruled the city-states. They were known as the *grandi* (great men). However, wealthy merchants and bankers also enjoyed great power and status – especially in the republics, where they too could govern the city-state. This allowed them to live well, explore new ideas and participate in the general revival of interest in ancient Greece and Rome. In some cases, merchants and bankers implemented their own absolute, hereditary leadership – keeping the power within the family, just as the nobles had before them. Rich merchants and **artisans** were known as *popolo grasso* (fat people).

artisans
skilled workers in a specialised trade or craft

Nobles and great merchants such as the famous Medici family (see page 9.16) lived in luxury. They owned beautiful and elaborate palaces known as palazzos, where artistic and cultural gatherings were held.

Source 1

[Palazzos] are heavenly rather than earthly things, and everyone is agreed that this house is the most finished and ornate that the world has had or may ever have, that it is without comparison. In sum, it is believed by everybody that there is no other earthly paradise.

Comments of a foreign visitor after a tour in the 1450s of Cosimo de Medici's palazzo in Florence, in Professor F. W. Kent, '"A Paradise Inhabited by Devils": Florence in Fra Angelico's Day' in *Readings: Renaissance Florence*, HTAV, 1998, p. 49

Source 2 Palazzos often had extravagant ceilings with detailed paintings and gold trimmings.

The fifteenth century was a time of palace-building, and many were constructed in the hope of challenging or outdoing the extravagance of rival families. The construction of massive palazzo in the heart of a city such as Florence, for instance, was a demonstration of a family's power.

Most wealthy families also had luxurious villas in the countryside, where they entertained guests at great feasts, with music and poetry.

Life for the middle classes

Skilled workers – such as bakers, carpenters, blacksmiths, tanners (leather workers), masons, armour-makers and shop-keepers – occupied the middle rung of society in Italian city-states. Their homes were smaller and their streets narrower than those of the wealthy, but many of them lived in reasonable comfort.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the social structure of Renaissance Italy

Life for the lower classes

Unskilled and semi-skilled workers lived in the poorer parts of Italian cities, where the streets were narrow and the air unhealthy. Workplaces such as dye works, tanneries and slaughterhouses were situated in areas where unskilled workers both lived and worked. Children of the poor would work alongside their parents, or go out to work themselves from the age of seven or eight.

This section of the population was known as *popolo minuto* (little people). They were also sometimes referred to as *ciompi*, after the wooden shoes that they wore. They had no political rights, but on several occasions they rioted in protest at their bad living and working conditions. In Florence, the Ciompi Revolt in 1378 achieved some rights for workers, but only for a few years. The revolt was crushed by the *popolo grasso* in 1381.

Source 3 This illustration by Tancredi Scarpelli (1866–1937) shows wool worker Michele di Lando, one of the leaders of the Ciompi Revolt.

Life for the rural peasants

Peasants working on the land provided food for the cities and towns. They produced grains, meat, fruit and vegetables, cheese and wine. They also raised sheep to provide the fleeces that made Florence such an important centre in the wool trade.

The living circumstances of peasants varied. Some were no better off than workers in the cities. They lived mostly in tiny cottages, which they shared with their animals. However, most peasants had access to better food and cleaner air, and often they had a stronger sense of community.

All members of a peasant family worked side by side. Children would start work as soon as they were strong and skilled enough.

Source 4 This 1565 painting by Pieter Bruegel shows haymaking in July, as part of a series depicting the 12 months of the year on a farm.

9.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. In your own words, **define** the terms *popolo grasso* and *popolo minuto*.
2. **Identify** which social group each of the following would belong to: a butcher, a farmer, a shop-keeper, a wool merchant and a noble.
3. What role did peasants play in the social and economic organisation of Renaissance Italy?

Analyse

4. **Analyse** Source 1 by answering these questions:
   - a. Is this a primary or secondary source? How can you tell?
   - b. What does this source tell you about the values of people in Renaissance Italy?
   - c. How many opinions does this source include?

Apply

5. **Create** a labelled pyramid diagram that shows the different levels of power, occupation and status in Renaissance Italy.

9.5 Women and children in Renaissance Italy

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the roles of women and children in Renaissance Italy
» recognise the importance of key women in Renaissance society.

apprentices
young people who work for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn the particular skills needed in their job

The lifestyles of women and children in Renaissance Italy varied enormously, depending on wealth, class and where they lived. For example, the jobs available to a woman depended on whether she lived in the town or country and what her social status was (see Source 5).

Jobs for women in Renaissance Italy

- **Lower-class women**
  - In the countryside, they herded animals and worked alongside the men in the fields.
  - In towns and cities, they worked as seamstresses, dyers and food processors.
  - A highly respected and well-rewarded occupation for women anywhere was that of a midwife.
- **Upper-class women**
  - They did not hold paid jobs.
  - Once they were married, they were expected to run the household and manage the servants.

Source 5 The jobs women held in Renaissance Italy varied greatly depending on their social status and location.

Education

Sons of craftsmen or skilled workers could become **apprentices** – learning a craft or trade from a master craftsman. Boys were also educated at church-run cathedral schools, or at grammar schools established by town councils. Boys of the nobility were often educated by a tutor at home.

Girls from wealthy families were educated in convent schools or by private tutors. They learnt reading and writing, singing, needlework and often a musical instrument. However, there was no expectation that their education would be used in public life.

Both male and female children of peasants rarely received a formal education, and most were illiterate.

Source 6 Isabella d'Este is an example of a Renaissance woman who challenged traditional female roles. She was well educated and enjoyed her power and influence, acting as a regent (temporary ruler) for her son and becoming a patron of the arts.

Marriage

Nobles and merchants aimed to marry their daughters into suitable families. The daughters themselves had little say in the matter, and by the age of 16, girls were often married to considerably older men. A dowry of money and/or property would be paid to the husband's family upon marriage.

Boys from wealthy families were urged to marry girls from the same social class and their marriages were usually arranged. Marriage was about creating good alliances for the family that would hopefully improve their social status, rather than love.

It was a woman's duty to produce many children – especially a male heir – to ensure the family **lineage** was maintained. A family-centred ideology was promoted in Florence to build a strong and prosperous society. After Florence lost 80 000 citizens during the Black Death, its government encouraged women to have many children to boost the population. The average number of children born to a woman was between five and seven. Up to half of all babies died at or before birth, and up to 10 per cent of women died in childbirth.

lineage
the series of families that a person comes from

Lucrezia Borgia (1480–1519)

Lucrezia Borgia came from a powerful family. The Borgia family became infamous as scandals of adultery, theft, bribery and murder followed them during the Renaissance.

Throughout history, Lucrezia's story has been contested (disputed). There are many rumours about her involvement with murderous acts – for example, that she plotted murder with her family or that she wore a hollow ring to hold poison.

However, historians debate the extent to which this is true. While rumours about a beautiful but dangerous woman make for good storytelling, there is no evidence to prove any criminal behaviour by Lucrezia.

Even what Lucrezia looked like is debated! While the painting in Source 7 on the top is a popular one, only the one on the bottom is a confirmed portrait of her (when she was the Duchess of Ferrara).

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 7 To this day, people continue to debate about Lucrezia's appearance.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on women and children in Renaissance Italy

Additional resource
Sources on women

9.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** how the lives of upper-class women were different from the lives of middle- and lower-class women in Renaissance Italy.

2 **State** three ways the education of boys and girls was different.

Comprehend

3 Historians have commented that women did not experience the same Renaissance that men did. Use evidence from this topic to **explain** whether you agree or disagree with this statement.

Analyse

4 **Infer** (suggest) why the job of midwife was seen as an important one. Give two reasons to support your answer.

5 Portraits were often commissioned to present a symbolic image of a person – portraying certain character traits through the pose, facial expression, background scenery, clothing and items being held. **Compare** the two portraits of Lucrezia Borgia in Source 7. What impression does each portrait create, and how do they do this? Remember, when you compare two things, you must talk about how they are similar and how they are different.

Apply

6 **Investigate** the life of Lucrezia Borgia. Write a biography of her life, including her achievements.

7 As a class, **discuss** the opinions surrounding women in Renaissance Italy. There are additional sources on your obook pro to help get this discussion started.

9.6 Society in Renaissance Florence

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the influence of the Medici family in Florence as bankers and merchants

» analyse primary sources to understand authority in Florence.

Florence was one of the most prosperous and successful city-states in Renaissance Italy.

Commerce

It was a centre of commerce, where merchants traded woollen cloth, jewellery and metalwork for luxury goods from Asia, including spices, dyes, silks, pearls and precious metals.

All Florentine goods were crafted to a very high standard. This is in part because of the **guilds**, which were associations for the different types of merchants, artists and craftspeople. Their role was to educate apprentices, and make sure that goods and services were of a high standard and quality.

As merchants became more prosperous, they began to lend money to other traders, shipowners and business people. This led to Florence becoming the financial centre of Europe in the fifteenth century. The currency of Florence was the gold florin.

Source 8 The front and back of a thirteenth-century gold florin

guilds
groups of people all working in the same trade (e.g. butchers, tailors, cobblers) who band together in support of their common interests

patrons
people who devote some of their wealth, time and interest to developing the skills of others (usually in the arts)

Culture

Florence was also the cultural centre of Renaissance Italy with a very literate society. It was full of civic and religious rituals that unified the people. Budding artists, sculptors, writers and philosophers flocked to the city. There, they sought wealthy nobles to become their **patrons**. Famous artists such as Leonardo da Vinci and Michelangelo were based in Florence. Elaborate palazzos, grand cathedrals and public buildings sprung up around the city, funded by wealthy patrons.

Patriotism

The people of Florence were very patriotic, which means they loved their unique city-state. In fact, many suffered from 'Florentinitis', an obsession with all things Florentine! After completing a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, Florentine goldsmith Marco Rustichi wrote: 'On returning to my native city of Florence … after having seen and known many provinces and cities that are all over the world, I feel as if I had returned to paradise.'

Source 9 A view of modern-day Florence; the majority of buildings date from the Renaissance period. The skyline is dominated by the Florence Cathedral (*Duomo di Firenze*), designed by Brunelleschi, and the Palazzo Vecchio, which housed the *signoria*.

How power was distributed

Political power in Florence was held by wealthy wool merchants and bankers. Even though the city-state was a republic, several families dominated political life and influenced important decisions. These families included the Medici, the Strozzi and the Pazzi. Over the years, there were tensions and conflicts among these families (see page 9.16).

The political structure

The governing body of Florence was known as the *signoria*. It had nine members, called the *priori*, who were each elected for terms of two months. To be elected as *priori*, there were strict conditions. A person had to be:

- male and over 30 years of age
- part of the *popolo grasso* social class
- a member of a craft guild
- not in debt
- not related to other members of current *signoria*.

Out of all the men who met these conditions, a secretary called an *accoppiatori* would select a small percentage and place their names into a leather bag. The first eight names drawn out were chosen as *priori*. The ninth member was elected as the leader – or *gonfalonerie* – of the *signoria*. This position usually went to a member of a powerful family, often one of the Medici.

There were two other councils made up of bankers, merchants and landowners, and in times of war or famine, extra councils could be elected.

Although it seemed to be a democratic system, most of the population was excluded from the *signoria*. As one of the requirements to be elected was to be a member of the *popolo grasso* social class, the government was controlled by the richest merchant families. The *popolo minuto* and the *grandi* could not vote.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to the Palazzo Vecchio

The statue of David

Michelangelo's statue of David is one of the most significant works of art from the Renaissance period.

Taking on the project at the age of 26, Michelangelo spent two years sculpting the 5-metre-tall masterpiece out of one piece of marble. He used innovative techniques that had never been attempted before.

The statue of David was originally meant to stand on the roof of Florence Cathedral; however, the *signoria* and a committee of notable artists agreed it was too perfect to be placed so high. They voted for its location to be at the political heart of Florence, the Palazzo Vecchio.

It took four days to move the 5660-kilogram statue to the palazzo, and 40 men to slide it on wooden beams up some steps. Italian painter Giorgio Vasari captured its perfection, stating: 'This work has surpassed all other statues … no other artwork is equal to it in any respect, with such just proportion, beauty and excellence did Michelangelo finish it.'

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

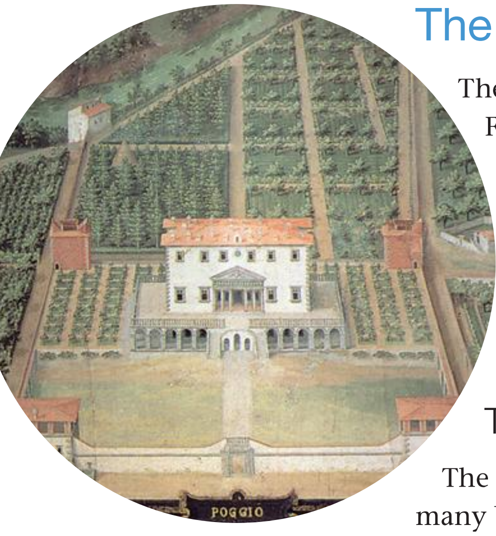
KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 10 The entrance to the Palazzo Vecchio now has a copy of the statue of David, which was placed there in 1910.

The Medici family

The Medici family were bankers and merchants who had great influence in Florence during the Renaissance. At times, the Medici were considered the wealthiest family in Europe. Starting in 1434, they wielded power over the *signoria* for almost 300 years.

The Medici rose to power around the time of Giovanni de Medici (1360–1429). In 1397, he began the Medici Bank, which became the largest bank in Europe. His son Cosimo continued the family's rise to power by becoming the *gran maestro* (leader) of Florence.



Source 11 A painting of the Medici Villa of Poggio a Caiano in Tuscany by Giusto Utens; the villa was commissioned by Lorenzo de Medici in 1485.

Taking control of Florence

The Medici were devoted patrons of the arts. Cosimo funded the construction of many buildings such as libraries, churches and academies and oversaw the Treaty of Lodi in 1454.

This is also how the Medici spread their influence. By helping others financially, they formed many connections throughout the city. Using the art of persuasion (and pressure) on their neighbours, relatives, friends and even friends of friends, they had remarkable access to members of Florentine society.

Family connections

The Medici formed alliances with other prosperous families through marriage. For example, Catherine Medici became Queen of France in 1549 after marrying a French prince. All three of her sons became kings. As their mother, she was one of the most powerful people in Europe during the sixteenth century. The Medici also wielded power within the Catholic Church, with four members of the family becoming Popes.

exiled
expelled from one's place of birth, usually for political reasons

Source 12 The Medici family commissioned *Adoration of the Magi* by Botticelli (1476) to show them as part of the nativity scene, making them appear as holy figures, with Cosimo de Medici almost touching the feet of Christ. It was a symbolic way for the Medici to promote their power.

Enemies

The Medici had many enemies, including the Pazzis. In 1478, members of the Pazzi family tried to kill Lorenzo and Guiliano de Medici. The Pazzi, together with the Archbishop of Pisa and the Pope, wanted to see the Medici removed from power in Florence.

Guiliano was killed, but Lorenzo survived. The Medici and their loyal supporters crushed the Pazzi family. They were banished from Florence and their wealth was confiscated.

The decline of the Medici family

In the late fifteenth century, the Medici were **exiled** from Florence after signing an unfavourable treaty with France. However, they still had influence in the region until the eighteenth century.

Significant individual: Lorenzo de Medici

Lorenzo de Medici (sometimes called Lorenzo the Magnificent) was the grandson of Cosimo de Medici. He ruled Florence through the peak of the Renaissance, from 1469 until his death in 1492. He is often regarded as the most brilliant of the Medici, and was seen as a generous leader while maintaining all power over Florence.

Lorenzo loved to embrace the festivities of Florence. He supported many artists, including Michelangelo and Leonardo da Vinci. He was a well-liked statesman, a skilled businessman and a talented poet. His interests covered all areas of Renaissance thinking, including philosophy, classic literature and science. As such, he was considered a 'Renaissance man'. This label captured the idea that the ideal man can do all things – physically, socially, politically and culturally.

Source 13 A portrait of Lorenzo de Medici by Agnolo de Cosimo, *c.* fifteenth century

Source 14

> In peaceful times [Lorenzo] often entertained the people with various festivities, such as jousts, feats of arms, and representations of triumphs of olden times. He aimed to maintain abundance in the city, to keep the people united and the nobility honoured. He had the greatest love and admiration for all who excelled in any art, and was a great patron of learning and of literary men … Lorenzo took the greatest delight in architecture, music and poetry; and many of his own poetic compositions, enriched with commentaries, appeared in print. And for the purpose of enabling the Florentine youths to devote themselves to the study of letters, he established a university in the city of Pisa.

Extract from *History of Florence and of the Affairs of Italy*, written in 1521 by Niccoló Machiavelli, a famous writer of the Renaissance era; this book was dedicated to Pope Clement VII.

9.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the main sources of Florence's wealth.

2 **Name** two famous artists who worked in Florence.

3 Why did people suffer from 'Florentinitis'?

Comprehend

4 A new *signoria* was elected every two months.

- a How do you think this might have affected the stability of Florence?
- b Use a flowchart to **explain** the process involved when electing a new member of the *signoria*.
- c **Summarise** how the Medici family gained political control of the *signoria*.

Analyse

5 Using the 5Rs, **analyse** the significance of the statue of David. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts, and talk about how those parts relate to each other.

6 **Examine** Source 14.

- a Use the 'DAMMIT U' acronym (see page 208 of 'The history toolkit') to structure your response.
- b Describe the atmosphere created under the leadership of Lorenzo de Medici in Florence.
- c Based on what you have read, what do you believe was Lorenzo de Medici's greatest achievement or development?

Apply

7 Research one member of the Medici family and write a 200-word biography that explains who they were and when they lived. **Evaluate** the impact they had on Florence, the Renaissance and/or their family.

9B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

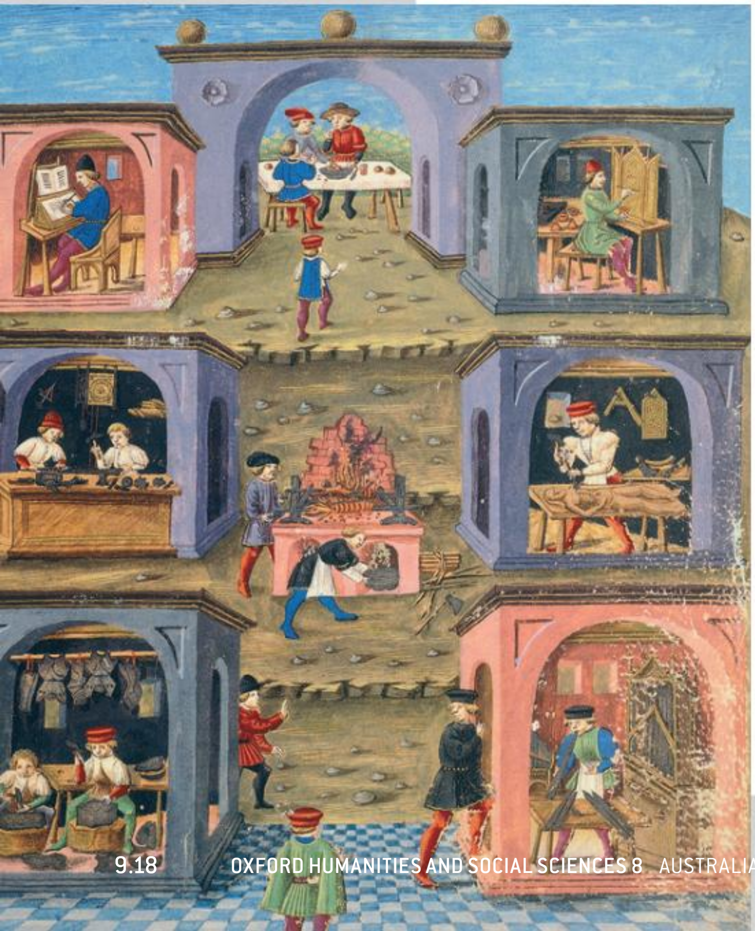
Renaissance society

Age, gender, wealth, geography, education and experiences all had an effect on the way people lived in Renaissance Italy.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

There are many primary sources from the Renaissance period, both written and visual. These sources have helped historians to develop a rich understanding of Italian society during the Renaissance. However, they must be examined carefully.

Source 16 *Care of the Sick* by Domenico di Bartolo; this fresco (wall painting) in the Santa Maria della Scala Museum, Siena, dates from the early fifteenth century. It shows wealthy and well-dressed men visiting and tending the sick.



Source 15 *The Professions*, an illustration from a manuscript, *c.* 1470; it shows (clockwise from top left) a scribe, a painter, a sculptor, an organ maker, an armourer and a clockmaker. In the centre are a cook and a man serving food.

Source 17

> By what mortals was this outstanding city founded? Recognize, men of Florence, recognize your race and your forbears. Consider that you are, of all races, the most renowned. For other people have as forbears refugees or those banished from their fathers' homes … But your founder is the Roman people – the lord and conqueror of the entire world. Immortal God you have conferred so many good things on this one city, so that everything … seems to rebound to Florence's benefit.
>
> Extract from Leonardo Bruni, *Panegyric to the City of Florence*, 1402

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing primary sources

Primary sources are records produced during the period being studied. They may be written documents, such as letters, or visual sources, including paintings and buildings. The primary sources that historians use to understand Renaissance life tell a range of stories. It is the job of historians to examine these sources and come to conclusions about their usefulness and reliability.

It is important to identify, if possible, who created each source and the reason why it was created. For example, a struggling artist may write in glowing terms about a local nobleman. In reality, the nobleman might be a ruthless tyrant; but the struggling artist, hoping for patronage, may ignore the negative aspects of his character.

Step 1 **Evaluating reliability:** To determine the reliability of a source, you need to identify whether it presents a balanced view of events. Some sources may ignore or leave out important information. In order to get a more accurate picture of an event or era, historians must identify how reliable a source is by recognising what is missing. They can then seek out the gaps in information to create a more balanced interpretation of history.

To evaluate the reliability of a source, ask the following questions:

- Who created the source and when?
- Why was the source created?
- What opinions does the source convey?
- What message does the source convey?
- What is included and what is excluded?
- What can the source tell me about life at the time that it was created?

Step 2 **Evaluating usefulness:** To evaluate the usefulness of a source you should ask the following questions:

- What question am I investigating?
- Does this source present a reliable interpretation of events?
- What messages is the source conveying – both explicit and implicit?
- What is the source saying or showing that will assist me to answer my historical question?
- What additional information would I like that would help me to answer my question?

For more information on this skill, see page 207 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Examine Sources 15 to 17 and **identify** the key ideas that each is conveying. How are these ideas conveyed?

2 Which source seems to you to be the most reliable? **Explain** why you think this.

3 Which source do you believe would have had the greatest impact at the time? **Explain** why you think this.

4 Whose voices have *not* been heard in this collection of sources? **Explain** why you think this is.

5 Using the internet or the library, locate another written and visual source that reflect additional aspects of life in Renaissance Italy. **Explain** how they add to your understanding of life in this period.

Extend your understanding

Choose one of the Italian city-states not dealt with by these sources; for example, the Papal States, Venice, Milan or Naples.

1 Select three primary sources that will help to give an impression of life in the city-state you have chosen.

2 For each source, **identify** one feature that helps you to understand an aspect of the city-state (for example, an image of St Peter's Basilica indicates the importance of Rome as the centre of the Catholic Church).

3 Of the sources that you have chosen, **explain** which you believe to be the most reliable and why. Support your answer with reference to the source itself, and who produced it, when, and for what audience.

9.7 Humanism

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » describe the influences and contributions of key humanist thinkers on Renaissance society
- » identify the influence of ancient Greek and Rome on Renaissance philosophy.

New and creative approaches to philosophy, art, architecture, literature and science flourished during the Renaissance. A strong influence on this new creativity came from the revival of ancient Greek and Roman ideas.

One of the most significant influences on Renaissance culture was **humanism**. From the early years of Christianity, most writing and art was based on religion. Science was almost non-existent. Anything that could not be explained was regarded as the work of God.

As the Renaissance developed, there was an increasing emphasis on the role of human beings in the shaping of the world. Humanism emphasised the value of human abilities and achievements, particularly the ability to use reason and logic. Renaissance humanists still believed in God. However, they no longer accepted that the Church was all-powerful.

Key humanist thinkers

Key humanist thinkers analysed the behaviours and motivations of humans based on their observations.

Francesco Petrarch

Source 1 Francesco Petrarch was a leading humanist scholar.

Francesco Petrarch (1304–74) was a poet and scholar who had considerable influence on the development of the Renaissance in Italy. He believed that the rediscovery of ancient Greek and Roman ideas was going to provide a light to help people emerge from the 'Dark Age' of medieval society.

Baldassare Castiglione

Baldassare Castiglione (1478–1529) wrote *The Book of the Courtier* in 1528. It described the behaviour of the ideal courtier (who is most often a noble person who attends a royal court). The talents of the ideal courtier included knowledge, artistic talents and practical skills. He could speak well, sing, recite poetry, talk about classical literature, and paint. He was also an excellent sportsman, and aware of how to behave socially.

In *The Book of the Courtier*, Castiglione condemned people's ruder social habits, such as spitting on the floor, eating without utensils and wiping one's nose on a sleeve. According to him, the ideal courtier was confident, but modest, detached and calm. He was an excellent example of a 'Renaissance man'.

Source 2 A portrait of Baldassare Castiglione by Raphael

humanism
a group of philosophies centred on the importance of human beings, values and evidence, rather than religion, gods and supernatural matters

Niccoló Machiavelli

Niccoló Machiavelli (1469–1527) was a politician and writer in Florence. In 1513, he wrote *The Prince* – an instruction manual for men wanting to become rulers or leaders.

Machiavelli based his writings on the Medici family and other rulers of the time. The central message of *The Prince* was that a ruler needed to use deceit, cruelty and even murder his opponents to make sure he could keep his position of power. Machiavelli argued that if people feared their ruler, they were more likely to respect them. He recommended that a ruler use any means necessary to achieve what was good for his community.

Since the publication of *The Prince*, there has been disagreement about Machiavelli's intention in writing the text. Many leaders have followed his message. This has led to the term 'Machiavellian' being used to describe cunning and manipulative people. Others have suggested that Machiavelli actually believed the exact opposite of the advice he gave – that he was trying to expose the oppressive and ruthless ways of many of the Renaissance rulers.

Source 3 Niccoló Machiavelli

Source 4 An extract from *The Prince*

> Everyone realises how praiseworthy it is for a prince to honour his word and to be straightforward rather than crafty in his dealings; [but] experience shows that princes who have achieved great things have been those who have given their word lightly, who have known how to trick men with their cunning, and who, in the end, have overcome those abiding by honest principles.
>
> Niccoló Machiavelli, *The Prince*, George Bull (trans.), Penguin Books, 1961, pp. 100–1.

Analyse this!
The Prince

9.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the key beliefs of humanism.

2 **Recall** Petrarch's beliefs about the revival of the Greek and Roman ideas.

Comprehend

3 Why do you think the emergence of humanist thinking may have led to a questioning of faith in the Church? **Explain** your answer.

Apply

4 Imagine that you are a novelist and you want to **create** a Renaissance courtier as one of your characters. Using the information about the ideal courtier in this topic:
- write a description of your courtier who fulfils all the qualities identified by Castiglione
- give your courtier a name
- describe his appearance (research 'dress of a Renaissance courtier')
- discuss his role in society.

5 Consider the two explanations for Machiavelli's views. Using the extract from *The Prince* (Source 4), state which explanation you support. **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

6 In pairs, **discuss** the term 'Machiavellian'. Do you think it would be good if a leader was described in this way? Remember, when you discuss a topic, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research.

9.8 Renaissance art

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify symbolic representations of Renaissance learning in architecture, sculpture and painting
- explain the significance of art to the expansion of wealth and power during Renaissance Italy.

One of the features of the Renaissance was the beginning of new styles of painting, sculpture and architecture. During the Italian Renaissance, artists tried new approaches in terms of techniques, materials and subject matter. Many Renaissance artists already had expertise in painting, sculpture and architecture. This meant that developments in one area influenced the others.

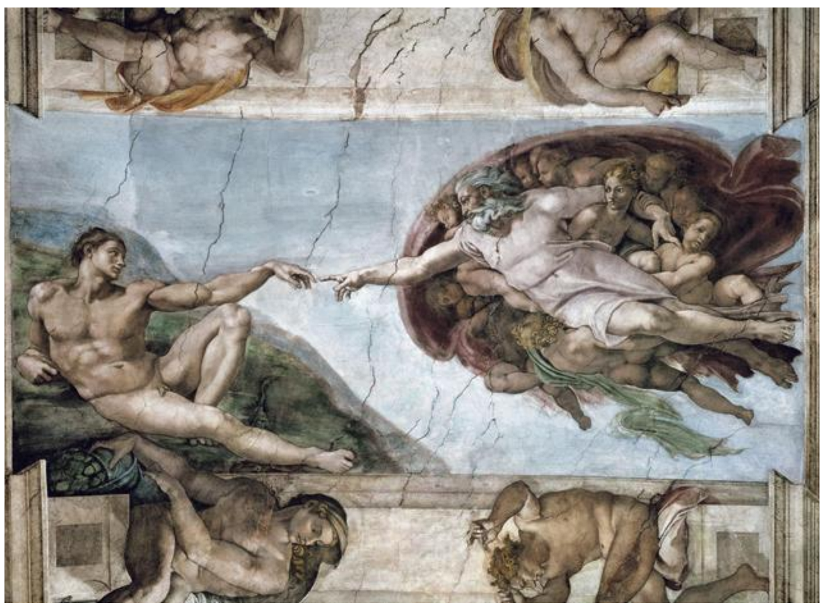
The changing role of the artist

Before the Renaissance, many artists and sculptors in Europe were little more than stonemasons, plasterers or craftspeople. They performed tasks such as painting furniture or making jewellery. Medieval art was mainly for religious purposes and was found in cathedrals, churches, monasteries and convents. But as wealth increased through trade, successful people became patrons of the arts. They gave money to artists so they could paint or sculpt artwork for them – a process called **commissioning**.

commissioning
ordering and paying for the creation of a work of art, building, etc.

Many works of art were grand and imposing, demanding great skill and talent. Artists earned public respect and admiration. They began to sign their work and to create self-portraits. Often artists would include images of their patrons in paintings and sculptures, even in religious works (see, for example, Source 12 on page 9.16). The more confident artists also included themselves in the paintings they created.

Source 5 The dome of Florence Cathedral (*Duomo di Firenze*) was designed by Filippo Brunelleschi and completed in 1436. It is still an important landmark in Florence.



Source 6 *The Creation of Adam* – a detail from Michelangelo's painting on the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican

The leading painters and sculptors of Renaissance Italy established workshops. In these workshops, paintings or monuments were crafted, materials were made and stored, and apprentices were trained. Often, a master painter would complete the most important parts of a work and let his students finish less important features.

New approaches to art

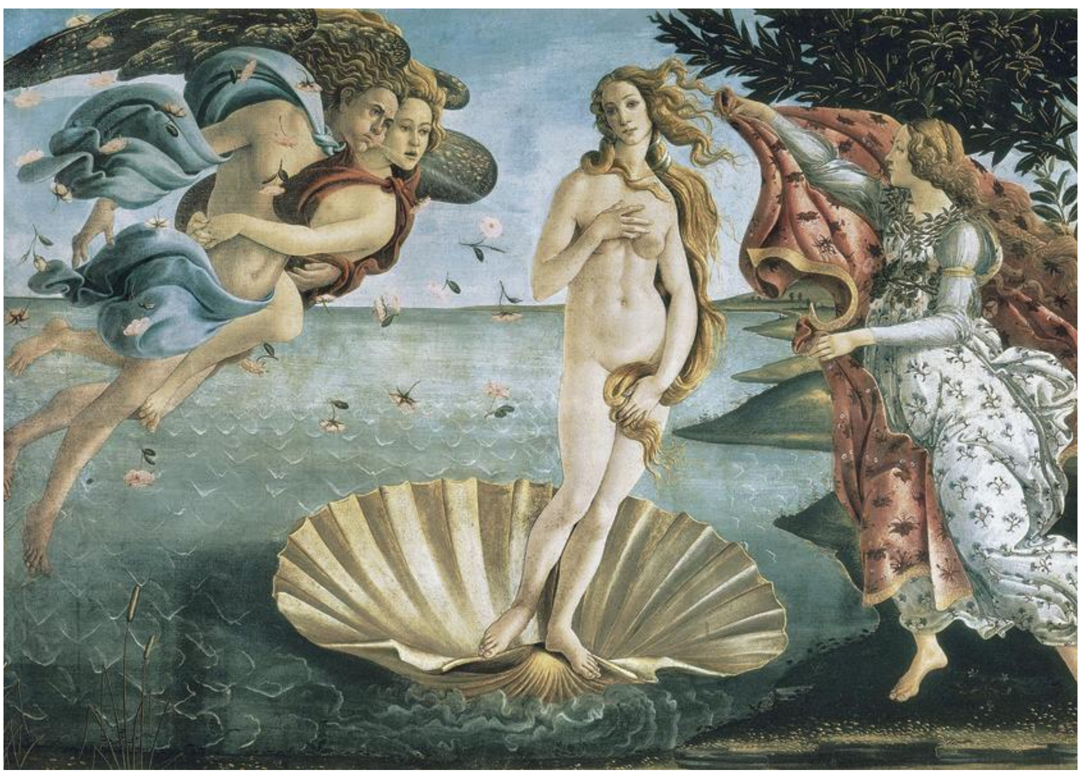
During the Renaissance, religious art continued to be popular, but works on different subjects also began to appear. Artistic styles and techniques were also influenced by the classical works of the ancient Greeks and Romans.

Source 7 Characteristics of Renaissance art

Realism	Focused on portraying the human figure in its most realistic and accurate form to show emotion, gesture and thought
Perspective	Created a 3D appearance, with parallel lines moving towards a focal point in the horizon to create depth
Secularism	Preferred to depict daily life and emotions in portraits, with less focus on Biblical or church settings
Classicism	Were influenced by Roman and Greek classics, including lifelike art and representations of pagan beliefs, especially nature worship
Humanism	Placed humans at the centre of the universe; individuals were often depicted, rather than groups or crowds
Depth	Used light and shadow to create depth, as well as a blue background, often sky
Symmetry	Focused on balance and proportion, particularly in the representation of human anatomy
Naturalism	Preferred to depict real objects, settings and landscapes with as little distortion as possible

pagan
a term sometimes used by people of Christian, Muslim and Jewish faiths to describe those who do not share their beliefs

One feature of Renaissance art was realism – an attempt to represent the human body as accurately as possible. Renaissance sculptors studied the human body (often dissecting corpses) in order to show bone structure, muscles and sinews accurately. They also believed in depicting the body unclothed or semi-naked. Sandro Botticelli was the first Renaissance artist to paint a full-length female nude (see Source 8).



Source 8 Botticelli's *Birth of Venus*

perspective
a new approach to painting developed during the Renaissance, which involved making objects larger in the foreground and smaller in the background to suggest distance

Renaissance artists also used new techniques to show people and other objects in **perspective**. This meant they could paint things to look near to or far from the viewer, even if they were on the same canvas. The scenes that they painted looked realistic in terms of size and proportion. They also depicted the landscapes that existed around them, rather than the biblical settings of medieval paintings.

Source 9 Leonardo da Vinci's *The Last Supper* displays the elements of Renaissance painting – a religious theme, perspective and a view of the landscape in the background.

Analyse this!
The Last Supper

The importance of patrons

Patrons played a very significant role in artists' lives. Wealthy merchants and bankers commissioned monuments or works of art to beautify and glorify their towns and cities, and to enhance their reputations. They also often gave an artist or sculptor a place to live, and the necessary money, time and encouragement to travel, study and explore.

Powerful families, such as the Medici family, had their grand palazzos and country villas decorated with art. They also commissioned works of art to celebrate important occasions in family life, such as weddings, births and deaths.

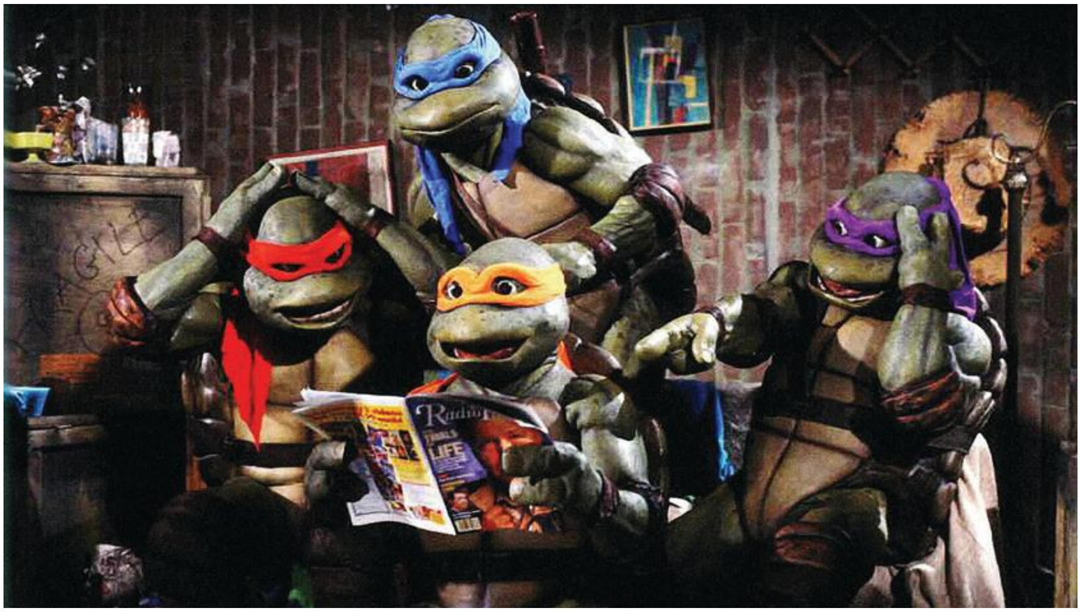
A painter would often flatter his patron by including the patron's family crest or even an image of his whole family in the work that had been commissioned.

Guilds and government bodies also commissioned artists to create works of art to beautify government buildings or rooms. For example, the statue of David by Michelangelo (see page 9.15) was commissioned by the city of Florence in 1501.

The Church as a patron

The Roman Catholic Church was by far the greatest patron of the arts in Renaissance Italy. The Church funded the building of cathedrals and churches, and commissioned statues and paintings for their interiors. Popes commissioned decorations for their homes, their own portraits, and even sculptures for their own elaborate tombs.

Michelangelo's most famous Church commission was the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican (see Source 6), painted between 1508 and 1512 for Pope Julius II. He also created the *Pieta* – a statue of Mary holding Jesus after he had been taken down from the cross. This statue, carved from a single block of Carrera marble, is regarded as one of the most beautiful and sensitive pieces of Renaissance art (see Source 11).



Source 10 The Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtles were named after four of the most famed Renaissance artists – Raphael, Leonardo, Michelangelo and Donatello.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the influence of art from Renaissance Italy and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

9.8 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 What sorts of people acted as patrons of the arts in Renaissance Italy?

2 **Describe** the ways artists would sometimes flatter their wealthy patrons.

3 **Summarise** three ways in which art in the Renaissance was different from earlier art.

Analyse

4 Examine Michelangelo's *Pieta* in Source 11 – one of the most loved and admired pieces of Renaissance art. **Infer** (suggest) reasons why this statue is so revered (admired).

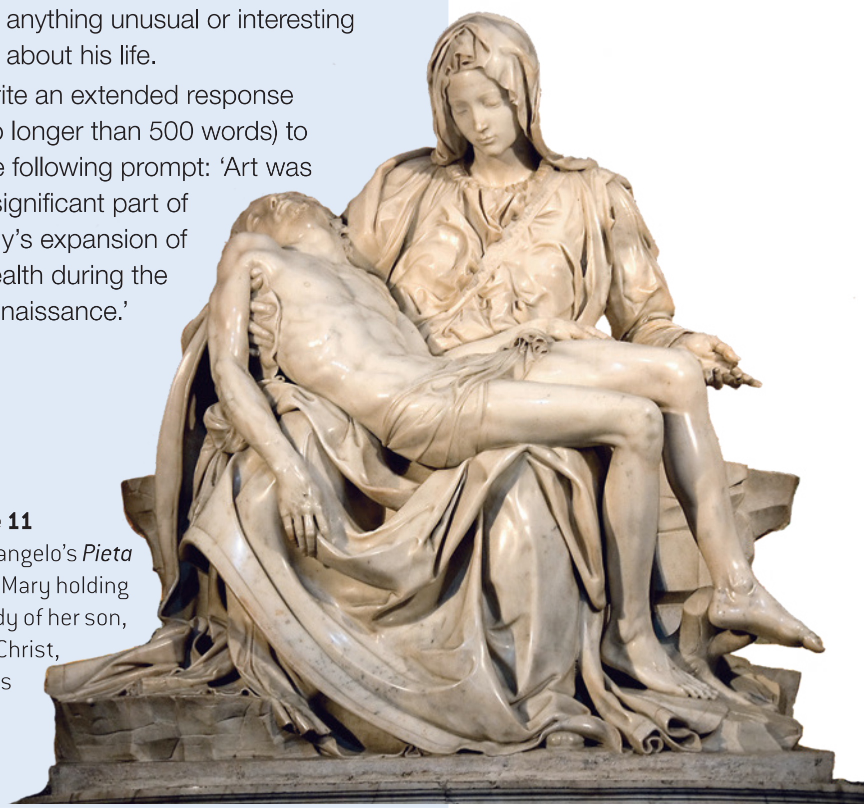
5 **Examine** the photo of the Florence Cathedral (*Duomo di Firenze*) in Source 5. What do you notice about the cathedral in relation to the surrounding buildings? What can you learn from this about attitudes and values in Renaissance Florence?

Apply

6 Imagine that you were a close friend of Leonardo da Vinci and you have been asked to deliver a eulogy (a writing or speech that is a tribute to someone who has died) at his funeral. Conduct some research and **create** a eulogy that covers:

- the main dates and details of his life
- his artistic career, patron, artistic style, famous artworks, etc.
- anything unusual or interesting about his life.

7 Write an extended response (no longer than 500 words) to the following prompt: 'Art was a significant part of Italy's expansion of wealth during the Renaissance.'



Source 11 Michelangelo's *Pieta* shows Mary holding the body of her son, Jesus Christ, after his death.

9.9 Renaissance science and technology

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the influences and contributions of key scientific thinkers on Renaissance society.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Renaissance science and technology

During the Renaissance, many advances were made in science. Renaissance scholars were influenced by the humanist idea that people could make their own discoveries. They applied ancient Greek and Roman methods of reasoning to explain the natural world. This led to new theories, which conflicted with ideas promoted by the Church.

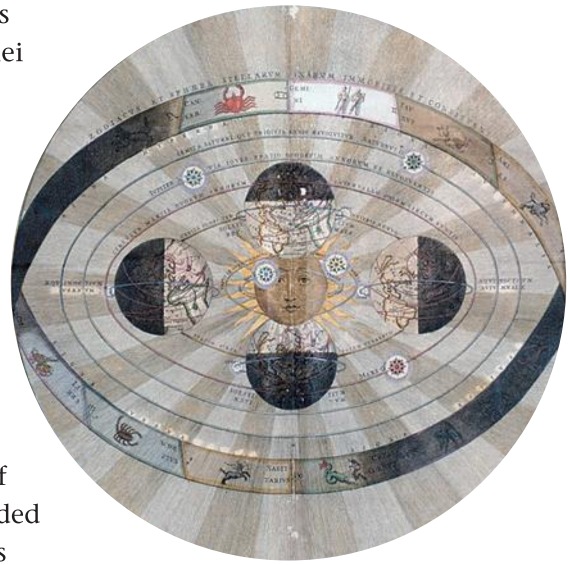
Key scientific thinkers

The work of four men in particular had a lasting effect on science and medicine. They were Nicolas Copernicus, Andreas Vesalius, Galileo Galilei and Leonardo da Vinci.

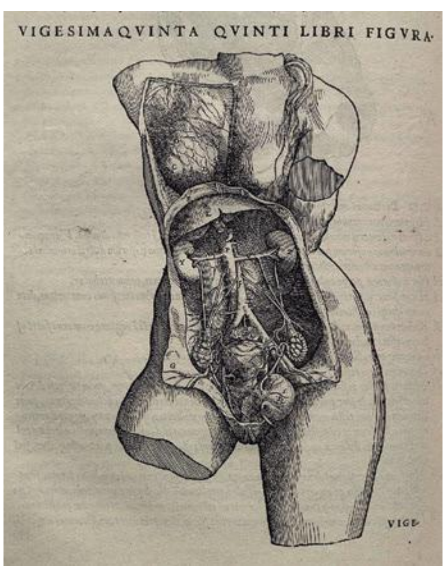
Nicolas Copernicus

Nicolas Copernicus (1473–1543) was a Polish astronomer who studied the movement of stars and planets. He developed the theory that the sun was the centre of the universe, with the Earth, moon and planets revolving around it. Copernicus clashed with Church leaders who believed that the Earth was the centre of the universe. Any other suggestion was regarded as **heresy**. Because of the controversy over his theories, Copernicus delayed the publication of his book *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres* until a few hours before he died, in 1543.

heresy
doing or saying something regarded by the medieval Catholic Church (and by some other faiths) as being in serious conflict with its teachings



Source 12 A Copernican view of the solar system, showing the Earth and other planets revolving around the Sun.



Source 13 An anatomical diagram of a man's abdominal cavity, with the intestines removed to illustrate the organs; from Vesalius' *On the Fabric of the Human Body*

Andreas Vesalius

Andreas Vesalius (1514–64) is regarded as the founder of modern human anatomy – the study of the human body. He wanted to experiment on human corpses, but the Church did not approve. However, with the help of a local judge, he was able to obtain the corpses of criminals who had been executed. In 1543, Vesalius published a book on the structure of the human body that changed the course of anatomical studies: *On the Fabric of the Human Body.*

Galileo Galilei

Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) was born in Pisa. In 1608, the first practical telescope had been invented in Holland. Galileo worked to improve the magnifying power of the telescope, and two years later he was able to observe the Moon and planets.

Galileo discovered stars and four satellites of Jupiter, which he named after members of the Medici family. In return, Cosimo de Medici II appointed Galileo as professor of philosophy and mathematics in 1610.

Galileo's discoveries proved that Copernicus' theory about the Earth and the sun was correct. Like Copernicus, Galileo was accused of heresy. He was convicted in 1633 and placed under house arrest for the rest of his life. Still, he continued to work on problems of physics and mechanics. His controversial book *Two New Sciences*, which was put on the Church's 'List of Forbidden Books', was published in Holland in 1638.

Galileo's legacy is remarkable. His achievements in astronomy changed the way we understand the universe. He also helped to free the study of science from the restrictions of religion. This was a major development in human thought.

Source 14 Galileo standing trial before the Church for his beliefs, which went against the teachings of the Church

Leonardo da Vinci

Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519) was the classic 'Renaissance man'. He was an accomplished painter and sculptor, a scientist, an engineer and an inventor. As a successful artist, he was given permission to dissect corpses in hospitals. This enabled him to study the human form and make detailed drawings of bones, muscles and internal organs. Leonardo was also fascinated by flight. He studied the flight of birds and tried to invent a machine called an 'air screw' that would enable humans to fly (see Source 15).

Source 15 A drawing of an 'air screw' in one of Leonardo's notebooks

9.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** four significant scientific figures of the Renaissance period.

Comprehend

2 What do you see as the most significant scientific discovery of the Renaissance period? **Explain** your answer.

3 **Summarise** why new scientific experiments and theories led scientists into conflict with the Church. Give a specific example of when new ideas conflicted with the Church's teachings.

Apply

4 Examine Source 14. **Create** a thought bubble for each of the four characters in the painting.

5 You are on a panel that is to award the title 'Most significant Renaissance scientist'. The names on the short list are Copernicus, Vesalius, Galileo and Leonardo. Choose the scientist you think should win, conduct some research and create a biography of them. Include their main achievements and **justify** (give reasons for) why your scientist should receive the award.

9.10 The Northern Renaissance and the Reformation

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the causes and effects of the Reformation in Europe.

Reformation
a movement that began in Europe in the sixteenth century when the scholar-monk Martin Luther publicly challenged the Catholic Church; it shifted the balance of power in Europe away from the Church

By the sixteenth century, many of the themes, ideas and techniques of Renaissance culture had spread north into Germany, Austria, France and Holland. This became known as the Northern Renaissance.

More people began to question the authority and extreme wealth of the Catholic Church. Countries of Northern and Western Europe had never been as strongly tied to the Church as the Italians. Increasingly, they challenged the institution, and this ultimately led to a movement known as the **Reformation**.

Corruption in the Church

In the centuries leading up to the Renaissance, many people had become aware of the corruption in the Church. Renaissance Popes, in particular, are often referred to as 'Princes of the Church'. This is because they led lives of luxury and spent a great deal of money on grand monuments and palaces. Some Popes gave family members high positions as archbishops and cardinals.

THE EFFECT OF THE REFORMATION ON RELIGIOUS BELIEF IN EUROPE

Note: This map shows the modern-day borders of some countries

Source 16 Source: Oxford University Press

Challengers to the Church

A great number of Christians believed that Church leaders were failing to live according to their own teachings. Many people – including some members of the Church – demanded reform.

Desiderius Erasmus

One of the most influential reformers was the Dutch priest Desiderius Erasmus (1466–1536). His essay *The Praise of Folly* made fun of the way many Church people behaved. It became a bestseller because it played on people's anger about corruption in the Church. Still, Erasmus did not suggest that the basic teachings of the Church were wrong – only that its leaders needed to change their behaviour.

Martin Luther

Martin Luther (1483–1546) was a German monk and professor of theology (religious study) who also wanted to reform the Church. He criticised Church officials who used their positions to make themselves wealthy. Like Erasmus, Luther believed a person's faith in God was the key to salvation.

Luther launched an attack on the Church in 1517, following a scandal in relation to what he described as 'the selling of **indulgences**'. The Church taught that most people did not go straight to heaven, even if they had led good lives. They first had to spend some time in **purgatory**. However, time in purgatory could be shortened or even wiped away if a person earned an indulgence. Indulgences were initially earned through prayer and good works but, during the Renaissance, they could be bought through donations to the Church.

Source 17 Martin Luther posting his *Ninety-five Theses*, painted by Julius Hübner, *c.* nineteenth century

Unlike Erasmus, who wanted to work *with* the Church on reform, Luther called for a break from the Church. In 1517, he nailed a list of objections to the Catholic Church – called the *Ninety-five Theses* – to the door of a church in Wittenberg, Germany (see Source 17). Pope Leo X ordered him to withdraw the list but he refused. Luther went on to break from the Church of Rome and establish the Lutheran Church.

Other members of the Catholic Church gradually broke away from Rome and established new Christian religions. The people who supported these religions became known as Protestants, because their churches were founded on 'protest' against the established Church.

indulgences
ways that Catholics could shorten their time in purgatory and gain quicker entry to heaven

purgatory
a place where Catholics believed their souls had to suffer for a time, before they were cleansed and pure enough to enter heaven

9.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Identify** three examples of corrupt practices that caused people to become disappointed with the Church.

Analyse

2. **Distinguish** between the attitudes of Luther and Erasmus to corruption in the Church. Remember, when you distinguish between two things you need to explain how they are different.
3. **Analyse** Source 17 by answering these questions:
   a. What does the painting show?
   b. Examine the faces and attitudes of the people watching Luther. What attitude do you think they have towards Luther's actions? What features of the painting create this impression?
4. **Examine** Source 16.
   a. List which modern countries became largely Lutheran countries following the Reformation.
   b. Do you think this map helps us understand the concept of cause and effect? Why or why not?

Apply

5. In pairs, conduct further research on why indulgences became controversial during the Reformation. **Create** a dialogue between Martin Luther and Pope Leo X on the sale of indulgences. Each speaker should put forward two arguments to explain their view on the issue.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Northern Renaissance and the Reformation

9.11 The culture of the Northern Renaissance

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how the cultural developments of the Renaissance spread throughout the rest of Europe, including England.

Many of the great works of art from Northern Europe by those who came after the Italian Renaissance show its influence. Rembrandt (1606–69), Rubens (1577–1640) and Albrecht Dürer (1471–1528) were among the many who followed Italian techniques. They used ideas from the painters and sculptors of the Italian Renaissance, such as perspective and the realistic depiction of the human body.

However, there were differences. Much of the art and architecture of the Renaissance in Italy was funded by the Church. As the challenge to the Roman Catholic Church grew in northern Europe, art became more separated from religion.

The French King Francis I (1494–1547) encouraged many artists, including Leonardo da Vinci, to move to France. The influence of Renaissance Italy on France can be seen mainly through architecture. The magnificent Chateau de Fontainebleau (see Source 18), outside Paris, and the Louvre Museum are fine examples of the use of Italian Renaissance ideas in France.

Source 18 The design of the Chateau de Fontainebleau in France was influenced by the Italian Renaissance.

The English Renaissance

By the early sixteenth century, Renaissance ideas had spread to England, where they became very popular. The most significant advances there could be seen in poetry, music and drama.

King Henry VIII

King Henry VIII (1491–1547) was a true 'Renaissance prince'. Well educated in the humanities, he also excelled at sport, wrote poetry, and composed and played music.

Henry clashed with the Roman Catholic Church when he wanted to divorce his first wife, Catherine of Aragon, to marry Anne Boleyn. As this was against the teachings of the Church at the time, Henry left the Roman Catholic Church, and made himself head of the 'Church of England'. However, there was little change in the way that religion was practised.

Queen Elizabeth I

Henry's daughter, Elizabeth I, who became queen in 1558, was tutored by a Renaissance scholar. Her successful reign was known as the English Renaissance, as it was a time of great stability and economic development. It was during the reign of Elizabeth that the Church of England was properly established as a separate religion.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Exploring the English Renaissance

Elizabeth was a strong supporter of the arts, and many members of the aristocracy acted as patrons for artists, musicians, dramatists and poets. One of the most significant patrons of the time was Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the culture of the Northern Renaissance

William Shakespeare

The most famous dramatist of the period was William Shakespeare. Shakespeare wrote up to 38 plays and numerous poems. He often wrote about English and Scottish history, and explored themes such as love, revenge, politics and family dysfunction.

A number of Shakespeare's plays were set in Italy, such as *Romeo and Juliet*, *The Merchant of Venice* and *Much Ado About Nothing*. They reflected the influence of the Italian Renaissance. By choosing Italy as a setting, Shakespeare was also able to express himself politically, without fear of censorship or imprisonment. His plays drew huge audiences at the Globe Theatre in London. A replica of the original Globe opened in London in 1997, and Shakespeare's plays are performed there regularly.

Source 19 Henry VIII, a true 'Renaissance prince', painted by Hans Holbein, 1540

Source 20 Queen Elizabeth I had a very distinctive and elaborate fashion sense, which aimed to communicate the confidence, wealth and status of England.

Source 21 William Shakespeare's plays were often set in Renaissance Italy.

9.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** how Renaissance Italy influenced France and England.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** how the writings and actions of people such as Martin Luther and Desiderius Erasmus may have paved the way for Henry VIII's break with the Roman Catholic Church.

3 Using Sources 19 to 21, **describe** how these portraits convey the strength of England. Look at the facial expressions, stance, objects being held and what the subjects are wearing.

Apply

4 Henry VIII has been described as a 'Renaissance prince'. Conduct some further research into the term and into Henry's life and achievements. In groups, **discuss** whether he deserves that title, considering the different evidence you have found. Remember, when you discuss a topic, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research.

5 **Investigate** one of Shakespeare's plays that is set in Renaissance Italy. Using your research, discuss how certain Renaissance values (for example, humanism) are present in the play.

9C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

> **Test me!**
> Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The evolving Renaissance

Historians often recognise the Renaissance as one of the most significant periods of change in human history. This change is further classified into three stages, based on when various cultural developments and humanist thinking were reached.

Source 22 Time periods of the Renaissance

The time period	The main features
The Early Renaissance (1400–90)	• Cultural developments occurred mostly in Florence, sponsored by the Medici family. • Artists focused on humanism, naturalism and perspective in their works. • Musical works became more lively and shorter.
The High Renaissance (1490–1527)	• Cultural developments reached their peak. • Artists including Leonardo da Vinci, Raphael and Michelangelo created new artworks in Rome for the Pope. • A new understanding of science, anatomy and architecture developed.
The Late Renaissance (1520–1600)	• Cultural developments included literature from Machiavelli and Shakespeare. • A scientific revolution began, with works produced by Copernicus, Vesalius and Galileo. • Reformation gained support during this time as people questioned the practices of the Catholic Church.

The spirit of change, inventiveness and discovery that the Renaissance created inspired a new era known as the Age of Exploration. From the fifteenth century, Europeans began to expand their horizons – in particular, Prince Henry the Navigator, Christopher Columbus and Ferdinand Magellan. Developments in shipbuilding and navigation meant that longer journeys of discovery were now possible.

Source 23 Construction of St Peter's Basilica in the Vatican started in 1506, during the High Renaissance. Michelangelo was the chief architect. Look at its enormous columns when compared to the size of the visitors!

Source 24 *Orpheus Playing Among the Animals*, by Jacopo da Sellaio *c.* 1480, captures naturalism and a return to classic pagan beliefs in the Early Renaissance.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Plotting events on a timeline

Timelines are a very important tool for historians. They allow the reader to quickly identify what happened when, and how much time went by between events.

Follow these steps when creating a timeline:

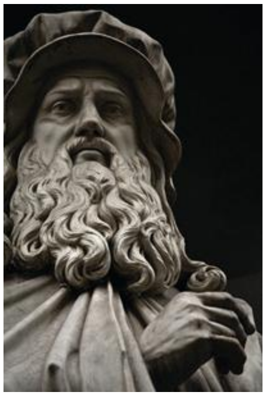
Step 1 Determine the type of timeline required; that is, horizontal or vertical.

Step 2 Establish the total time span you need to cover with your timeline and divide it into equal portions of time. Consider:
- the starting date of the timeline
- the end date of the timeline.

Step 3 Enter the most significant dates on the timeline, and provide key facts and information about the events that took place on each date. Be sure your written text is clear and concise.

Step 4 Make sure each event date is entered chronologically (in order) from left to right (for horizontal timelines) or top to bottom (for vertical timelines).

For more information on this skill, see page 211 of 'The history toolkit'.



Source 25 A statue of Leonardo da Vinci

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps provided to **create** a timeline of the three periods of the Renaissance (see Source 22). Represent each period using different coloured bars above the timeline and label them accordingly.

2 Add significant dates to your timeline for achievements such as artworks, books, policies and buildings. Be sure to provide a short description for each achievement. The table in Source 26 may help you to cover a wide array of people whose achievements could be included.

Source 26 Significant Renaissance figures

Artists	Sculptors/architects	Writers/ philosophers
Leonardo da Vinci Raphael Sandro Botticelli	Michelangelo Donatello Filippo Brunelleschi	Niccoló Machiavelli Francesco Petrarch Desiderius Erasmus William Shakespeare Martin Luther
Scientists	**Bankers**	**Women**
Galileo Galilei Nicolas Copernicus Andreas Vesalius	Cosimo de Medici Lorenzo de Medici	Isabelle D'Este Catherine de Medici Lucrezia Borgia

3 Add a few relevant images to your timeline and give it a suitable title.

4 **Describe** the distribution of dates in regards to the three periods. In which period of the Renaissance is there the most achievements? Why?

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** one individual who made a significant contribution during the Renaissance era and create a pamphlet about them, including:
- the 5Ws and H of history (who, what, when, where, why and how)
- their significance at the time and their legacy today
- your decision on whether they were a true 'Renaissance man' or 'Renaissance woman'.

2 In the classroom, hold a special gathering for Renaissance figures. Perhaps imagine you are at a party being held by the Medici family for the patrons and artists of Florence. As you meet and greet other Renaissance figures, share a few copies of your pamphlet and enjoy conversation about Renaissance topics, such as humanism, the Reformation, the city-states and the arts from the perspective of your character.

9 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine the sources and answer the questions that follow.

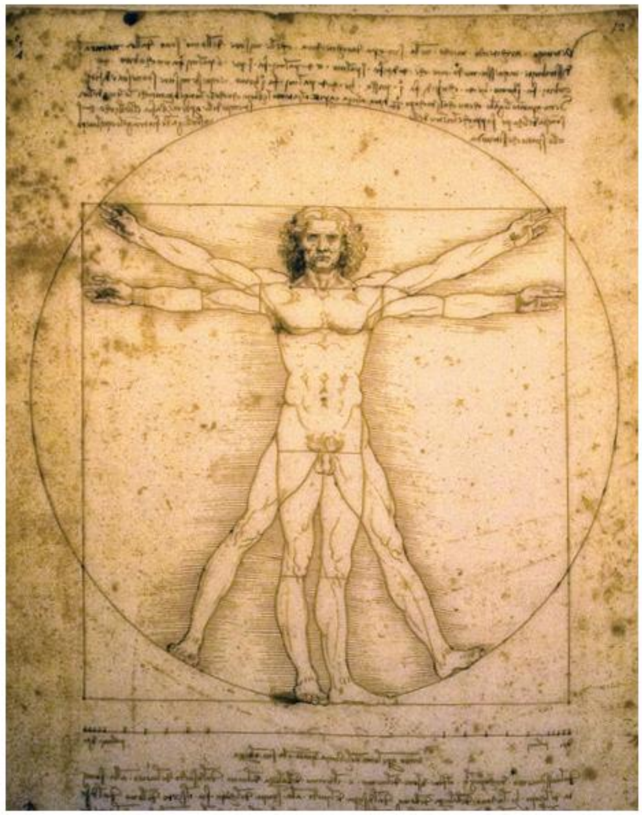
Humanism

Source 27

Man who provides generally for all things, both living and lifeless, is a kind of god. Certainly he is the god of the animals, for he makes use of them all, rules them all, and instructs many of them. It is also obvious that he is the god of the elements for he inhabits and cultivates all of them.

Finally, he is the god of all materials for he handles, changes and shapes all of them. He who governs the body in so many and so important ways, and is the vicar of the immortal God, he is no doubt immortal.

Extract from Marsilio Ficino,
The Soul of Man, c. 1474

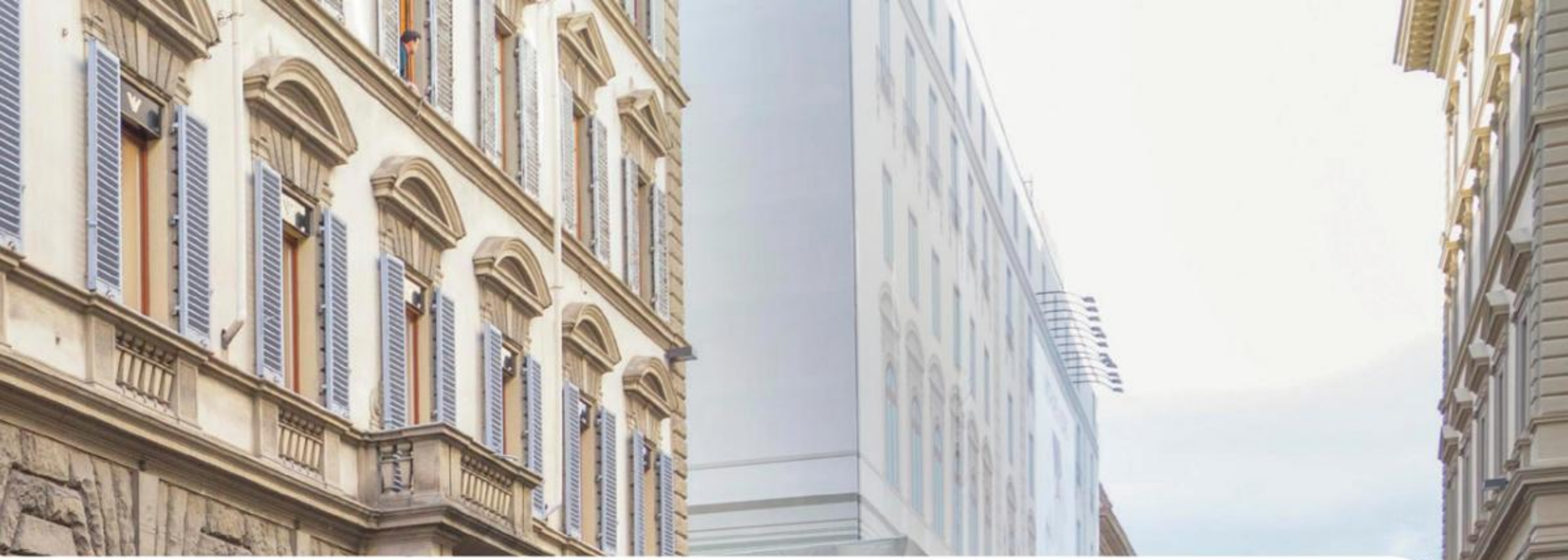


Source 28 *Vitruvian Man* by Leonardo da Vinci, *c.* 1485

1. **Explain** how Leonardo da Vinci's work in Source 28 demonstrates that he was a 'Renaissance man'. (3 marks)
2. In Source 27, **explain** what is meant by the phrase 'god of all materials'. Provide an example based on your understanding of Renaissance society. (3 marks)
3. **Describe** the overall message and tone used in Source 27. (2 marks)
4. **Summarise** the characteristics of Renaissance art that you can see in Source 28. (2 marks)
5. Which change during the Renaissance had the greatest impact on society:
   - the challenges placed on the Church by science and humanism, or
   - the cultural developments that inspired human progress.

   Evaluate both of these points to decide which one you think had the greatest impact. Remember to talk about the strengths and weaknesses in each point. Use Sources 27 and 28 to support your response. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)



Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Understand the social, economic and political changes that caused the Renaissance.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.2, page 9.4.
Explain the political organisation of Renaissance Italy into city-states. Describe the economic growth and cultural development of city-states in Renaissance Italy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.3, page 9.6.
Describe the roles and relationships of different groups in Renaissance Italy. Identify the similarities and differences of daily life between the *popolo minuto* and *popolo grasso*.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.4, page 9.10.
Understand the roles of women and children in Renaissance Italy. Recognise the importance of key women in Renaissance society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.5, page 9.12.
Explain the influence of the Medici family in Florence as bankers and merchants. Analyse primary sources to understand authority in Florence.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.6, page 9.14.
Describe the influences and contributions of key humanist thinkers on Renaissance society. Identify the influence of ancient Greek and Rome on Renaissance philosophy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.7, page 9.20.
Identify symbolic representations of Renaissance learning in architecture, sculpture and painting. Explain the significance of art to the expansion of wealth and power during Renaissance Italy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.8, page 9.22.
Describe the influences and contributions of key scientific thinkers on Renaissance society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.9, page 9.26.
Understand the causes and effects of the Reformation in Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.10, page 9.28.
Explain how the cultural developments of the Renaissance spread throughout the rest of Europe, including England.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 9.11, page 9.30.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 9

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 9

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The Renaissance.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 9

CHAPTER 10

The emergence of the modern world

The period between *c.* 1500 CE and 1650 CE marks the emergence of the modern world. As the ancient world came to an end, the modern world began to take shape. During this period political, cultural and religious beliefs, as well as traditional ideas about society and economics, were challenged and changed. The spread of religion and ideas had a significant impact in shaping what would become the modern world. Key people and developments, such as the Scientific Revolution and the Enlightenment – also known as the Age of Reason – significantly contributed to the emergence of the modern world.

Source 1 A modern stained-glass window in a Lutheran church in Germany, shows a spiral galaxy. In the 1500s, German monk Martin Luther broke with the Catholic Church and established the Lutheran Church; his work contributed to a shift in the balance of power in Europe away from the Church. During the Scientific Revolution in Europe, the work of thinkers such as Nicolaus Copernicus, Galileo Galilei and Johannes Kepler (whose names appear elsewhere in this window) helped overturn existing views on the motion of planets, conflicting with the Church's belief that Earth was the centre of the universe.

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

10A
How did the modern world emerge?

10B
What influenced the development of the modern world?

10C
Who contributed to the development of the modern world?

10.1 The modern world: A timeline

Replica of Johannes Gutenberg's printing press

c. 1450
Johannes Gutenberg invents the movable-type printing press, allowing texts to be produced quickly and in high quantities.

1400 CE

1453
Constantinople, the capital of the Christian Byzantine Empire (also known as the Eastern Roman Empire) is conquered by the Ottoman Empire, marking the spread of Islam in the east.

1478
The Catholic monarchs of Spain—Isabella I of Castille and Ferdinand II of Aragon—instigate the beginning of the Spanish Inquisition, using torture and execution to combat heresy.

An illustration of the execution of prisoners during the Spanish Inquisition. Those who were found guilty of heresy were burnt at the stake.

1485
Henry Tudor defeats Richard III at the Battle of Bosworth and becomes King of England, marking the beginning of the Tudor Dynasty.

1492
Isabella I of Castille and Ferdinand II of Aragon fund Christopher Columbus' journey to find a new route to Asia.

Christopher Columbus encounters Caribbean islands and, in further voyages, an uncharted continent. These events lead to the colonisation of the Americas.

1500

1517
Martin Luther makes public his *Ninety-Five Theses*, a collection of complaints against the corruption of the Catholic Church.

1533
King Henry VIII of England divorces his wife, Queen Catherine of Aragon, breaking from the Catholic Church in the process.

Catherine of Aragon, first wife of King Henry VIII of England. Catherine was first married to Henry's older brother, Prince Arthur, who died at a young age. Henry sought to divorce Catherine after years of marriage, leading to his break from the pope and the Catholic Church.

1543
Astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus publishes his text *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres*, which states that the Earth is not the centre of the universe.

1558
Elizabeth I becomes Queen of England. She presided over a golden age in England in politics, exploration and the arts.

1

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in the emergence of the modern world

Sequence this!
Events in the emergence of the modern world

Sir Isaac Newton is widely considered one of the most important contributors to development of scientific thought during the Enlightenment.

1648
The Treaty of Westphalia ends the 'Wars of Religion' over which authority could dictate religion. It outlines that each state is sovereign and free to choose its own form of Christian worship.

1687
Isaac Newton publishes his *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica* which details the laws of motion and gravity.

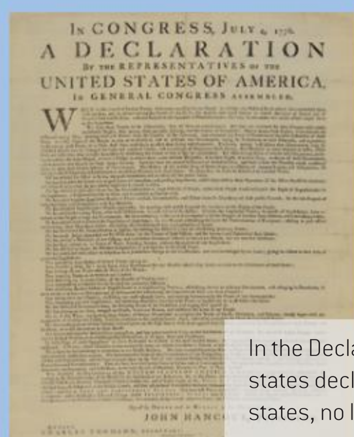
1688
King James II of England and VII of Scotland is deposed during the Glorious Revolution and replaced by his daughter, Mary II, and her husband, William III of Orange. The Glorious Revolution marks the beginning of the parliamentary democracy still seen in England today.

Queen Marie Antoinette of France was executed by guillotine during the French Revolution.

1789
The beginning of the French Revolution, during which the aristocratic regime was overthrown, and the monarchy was replaced by a republic.

600 — 1700 — 1800 CE

1632
Astronomer Galileo Galilei publishes his *Dialogue Concerning the Two Chief World Systems* in support of Copernicus' theory that the Earth revolves around the Sun.


IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.
A DECLARATION
By the REPRESENTATIVES of the
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,
In GENERAL CONGRESS assembled.

In the Declaration of Independence, the 13 existing states declared themselves independent sovereign states, no longer under British rule.

1775
The American War of Independence begins, during which the American colonists known as Patriots sought independence from British rule. They were supported by various European kingdoms.

10.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Who funded Christopher Columbus' famous journey that led to the European discovery of America?

2 **Recall** one ground-breaking invention of this period.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** what the Treaty of Westphalia was and why it was so significant.

Analyse

4 Consider the events on the timeline. **Identify** a powerful group or individual that was not a monarch.

5 There is a pattern in the way governments changed during this period. With a partner, **reflect on** what might have caused these changes.

10.2 The decline of empires

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand how the decline of ancient empires shaped the early modern world.

During the height of its power, the Roman Empire covered a great deal of territory. It reached Britain in the west, the northern coast of Africa in the south, and across to the Middle East. While this territory contained diverse language and cultural groups, all territories were subject to Roman law. This meant that when the empire went into decline, there were many places left without stability and guidance.

The division of the Roman Empire

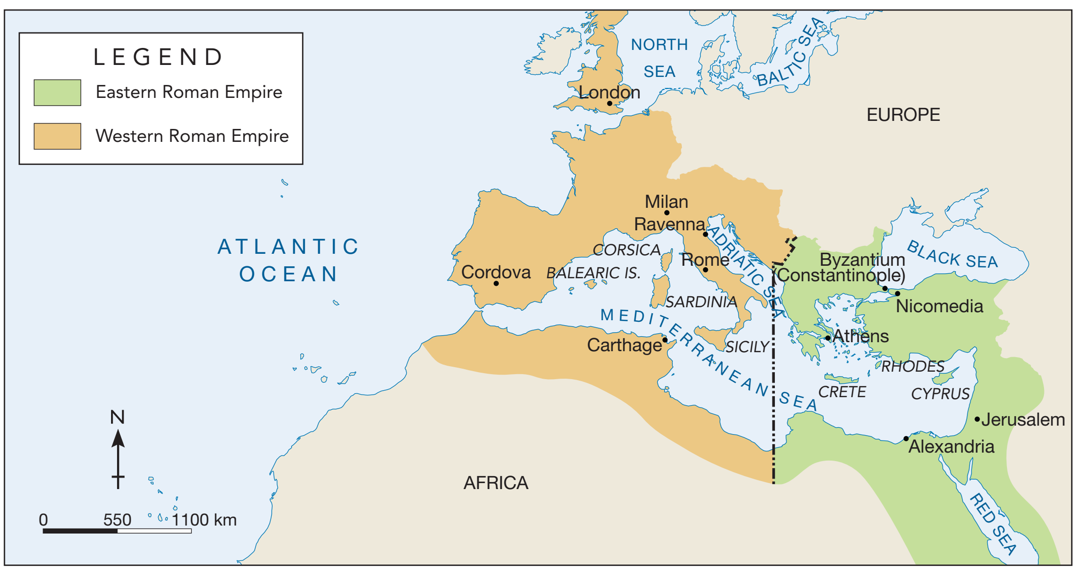
conversion
taking on the beliefs and practices of a religion and excluding all others

The Roman Empire was divided into East and West under Diocletian in 285 CE. After Diocletian died, Emperor Constantine ruled both empires. He was famous for encouraging religious freedom and his **conversion** to Christianity in 312 CE. He also established Constantinople (now modern-day Istanbul), the capital city of the empire during his reign. Following his death, control of different regions of the empire was left to three of his sons. After a series of conflicts, each empire was ruled by its own emperor (although both territories remained known as the Roman Empire). The Western Roman Empire covered most of Western Europe. Constantinople ruled Eastern Roman Empire, also known as the Byzantine Empire.

Following the split with the Byzantine Empire, the Western Roman Empire experienced a series of natural and political challenges, including wars, poor leadership, food shortages and disease. The Western Roman Empire fell in 476 CE following a series of invasions by Germanic tribes, with the empire unable to control and defend its own territory. The most famous of these was the 410 CE invasion, led by Alaric I of the Visigoths.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the decline of empires

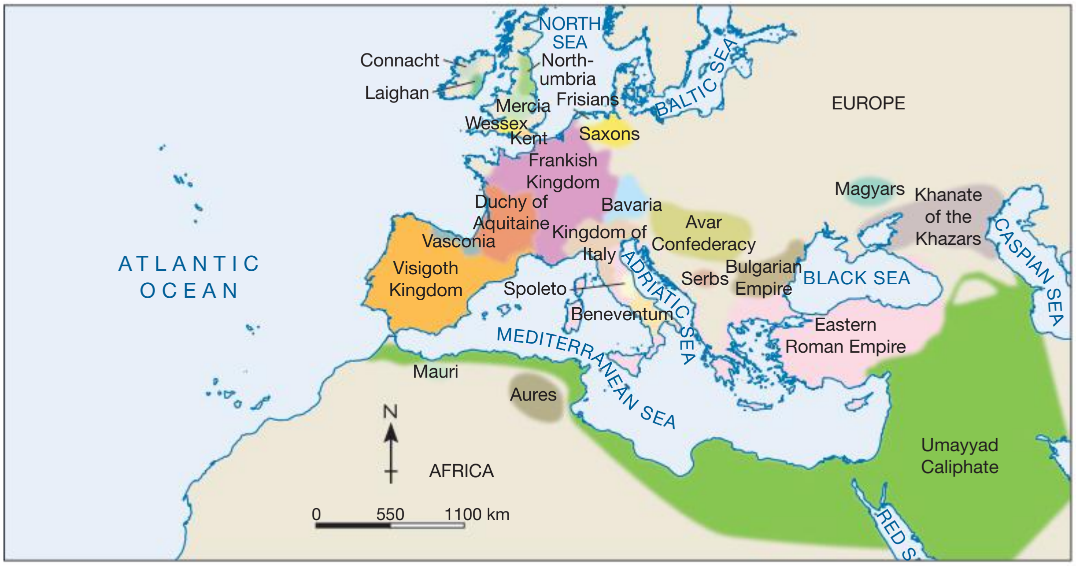
THE WESTERN AND EASTERN ROMAN EMPIRES, *C.* 400 CE



Source 2 Source: Oxford University Press

After the fall of the Western Roman Empire, Western Europe quickly broke apart into many small regions ruled by individual tribes. Some of these small tribes gradually combined their territories into larger regions. This was sometimes peaceful, but more often tribes violently conquered surrounding areas. Without the unifying control of the Roman Empire, Europe was made up of hundreds of small regions and kingdoms with unique languages, religions and cultures, and who governed themselves (see Source 3).

EUROPE IN 700 CE



Source 3 Source: Oxford University Press

Feudal Europe

Rulers conquering new regions often brought the systems and beliefs of their homeland. For example, the Norman invasion of 1066 brought the feudal system to England when William the Conqueror won the Battle of Hastings and declared himself King of England. The feudal system was a political and social order used in mainland Europe, and it changed English society. Eventually, divided regions turned into large kingdoms as lords and knights swore allegiance (loyalty) to kings with more power and wealth.

As law and order was slowly re-established, people traveled and traded more freely. This led to the growth of large cities and towns near ports and crossroads. Kingdoms grew stronger as Europe moved into the early medieval period.

10.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 When did the Western Roman Empire fall?

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why Europe was so divided in the early medieval period.

Analyse

3 **Compare** Sources 2 and 3. What do you notice about the Eastern Roman Empire between 400 CE and 700 CE?

10.3 The spread of religion

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the spread of Christianity in Europe.

A defining feature of the medieval period in Europe was the spread of religion.

Spread of Christianity

Most regions under the Roman Empire worshipped many local deities (gods and spirits) and had their own religious practices. Christianity gradually gained popularity throughout the Roman Empire. When Christianity became the official religion of the Roman Empire in the fourth century, many tribes that were settled in or near Roman territory converted to Christianity. By the time the Western Roman Empire collapsed, a large portion of Europe was Christian. Christianity then spread north to Germanic tribes and other regions through trade and conquest. The people who still worshipped multiple gods were known as pagans.

During the early medieval period, small towns and villages developed around the manors of local lords. The church was the centre of these towns, and would organise feast days, provide education and carry out charitable works in the community. Soon, pagan practices that had lingered in remote regions faded away as the Church and Christianity became a dominant factor in daily life.

Source 4
Janus was one of the gods worshipped in Roman religion before Christianity became dominant. Janus was usually shown with two faces. He was associated with beginnings, times of transitions, and doorways.

Influence of the Church

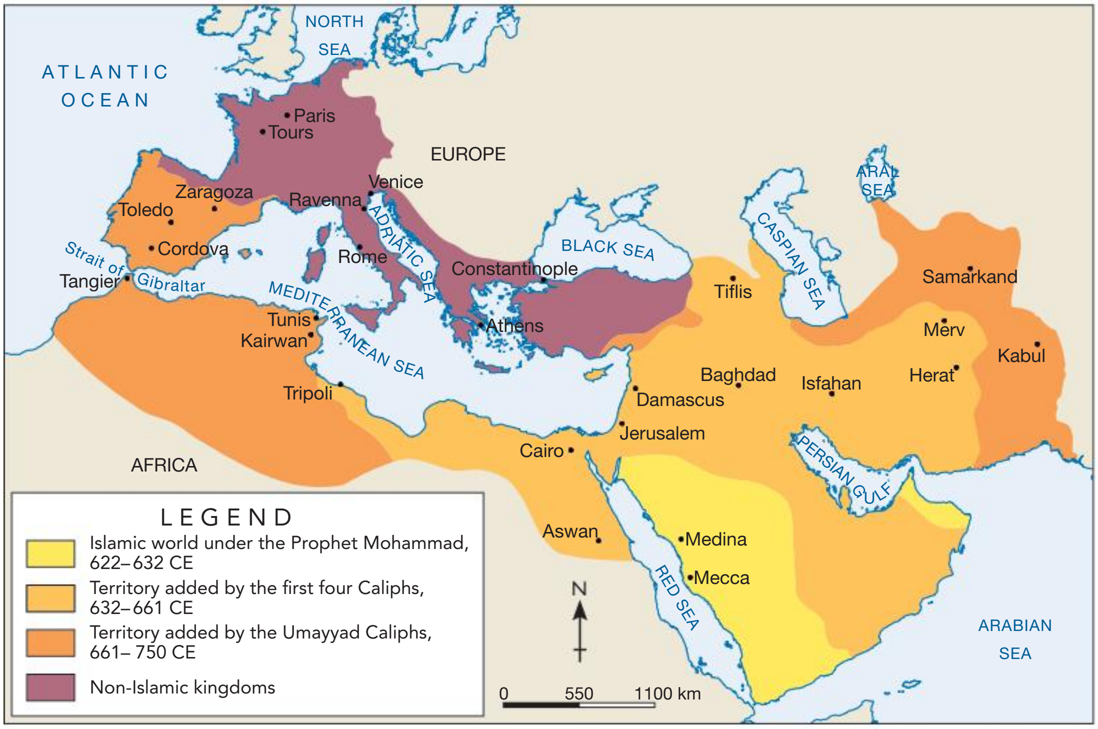
Most people during the early medieval period could not read or write. If they received education, it was usually from their local priests, who were often the only literate people in their village. Due to the tithes (taxes) paid to the church, the village church was often the only building – apart from the local lord's manor – built in stone.

As the wealth and influence of the church grew, the head of the Catholic Church (the pope) became one of the most influential figures in Europe. The pope controlled the vast lands owned by the Catholic Church, known as the Papal States. He also had the final say in all religious disputes and could issue forgiveness for even the most severe sins. Kings and queens would write to the pope, asking him for advice, permission or support in situations such as marriage, war and peace treaties. This made the position of pope one of the most powerful in Europe.

Spread of Islam

During the sixth century, a religious, social and political leader known as the Prophet Mohammad united the tribes of the city of Medina (in modern-day Saudi Arabia) and went on to conquer the city of Mecca. At the time of his death, shortly after the conquest of Mecca, the separate tribes were united into a single empire. By then, most of the Christian, Jewish and pagan people in the Arabian Peninsula had converted to Islam.

THE SPREAD OF ISLAM, 622–750 CE



Source 5 Source: Oxford University Press

Religious conflict

As Christianity and Islam spread, there were several significant conflicts between Christian and Islamic powers, as each feared conquest by the other. Beginning in 1096 CE, a series of wars called the Crusades were fought over who controlled Jerusalem, a city considered holy in Judaism, Christianity and Islam.

Another key conflict between Christian and Islamic powers was the fall of Constantinople. On 29 May 1453, after a 53-day siege, the city of Constantinople (capital of the Christian Byzantine Empire) fell to the Ottomans. The Muslim Ottoman Empire, which began its rise in the 1300s, controlled Islamic territory in North Africa and the Arabian Peninsula, a large region between the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf. It quickly began expanding towards the Mediterranean, eventually taking over what is modern-day Greece and central Europe.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the spread of religion

10.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the event that marked the beginning of the spread of Islam.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the spread of Christianity in Europe.

Analyse

3 **Compare** the position of pope to that of a king. What gave the pope influence over rulers?

Apply

4 Consider what daily life might have been like in Europe after the fall of the Roman Empire. **Decide** on two factors that you think people would have found appealing about converting to Christianity.

5 Considering both positive and negative points, **evaluate** the impact that spreading religions had during the period.

10.4 Emerging ideas

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe new ideas spread by the Enlightenment and the Scientific Revolution.

Europe was dominated in the early medieval period by the combined power of monarchs who held absolute power (known as **absolutism**) and the teachings of the Church. However, new ideas surfaced later in the medieval period and spread quickly thanks to the invention of the printing press. Some of these ideas shaped our modern world.

The Enlightenment

Beginning in the 1600s, a philosophical movement known as the **Enlightenment**, which was rooted in the medieval philosophy of **humanism**, swept through Europe. Philosophers and intellectuals of the Enlightenment believed in the value of human happiness. They encouraged changes to society that would improve all people's lives.

The ideas of the Enlightenment, which included reason, tolerance and liberty, had far-reaching effects on society. Enlightenment thinkers believed that the Church and the government should be separate, because a country should be run using reason and tolerance rather than religion. This significantly limited the reach and power of the Church in Europe. Writings on democracy from ancient Greek and Roman philosophers became popular, and these ideas encouraged people to question the social hierarchy and the power of kings. Elected parliaments became common and some countries instituted a **constitution**. Magna Carta, originally written in 1215, is an early ancestor of a constitution. It outlines a set of rules and rights that even the king had to obey.

Source 6 An image from an illuminated manuscript depicting King John of England hunting a stag. King John was forced to sign Magna Carta to end a rebellion, but the contract was later declared invalid.

absolutism
a system of government in which the monarch has complete power; their authority is not restrained by a parliament or other organisation

Enlightenment
a school of French-inspired thinking that spread through Europe in the eighteenth century; the belief was that reason, tolerance and equality should replace superstition, cruelty and injustice

humanism
a group of philosophies centred on the importance of human beings, values and evidence, rather than religion, gods and supernatural matters

constitution
the political principles on which a country or society is based and that guide its government; also, a written document that outlines these principles

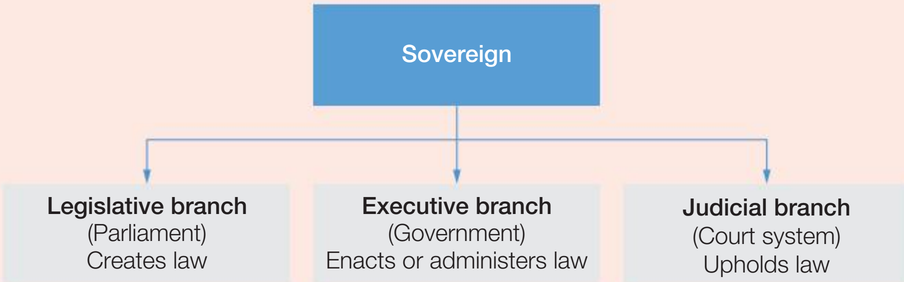
KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The Westminster system

During the medieval period, most countries were ruled by an absolute monarchy in which the sovereign made all decisions. The development of the **Westminster system** (named after the Palace of Westminster in England, where it was introduced) is significant as it reflects the political changes of the time.

Under the Westminster system, the government is formed by elected representatives from the parliament. The three powers of a government (creating laws, administering laws, and upholding laws) are given to separate groups, while the sovereign oversees the government to ensure they govern effectively.

The Westminster system was developed over hundreds of years in England, and forms the basis of many modern governments, including Australia's.



Source 7 The basic structure of the Westminster system of government; under this system, the sovereign does not govern directly, but is responsible for ensuring that elected officials govern the country properly.

Westminster system
a system of government that includes a head of state, an elected parliament and a government formed by the political party with the majority support in the lower house of Parliament

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on emerging ideas

The Scientific Revolution

Encouraged by the rediscovery of mathematical works from the ancient world, the late medieval period saw an explosion of scientific thought and discovery. The **Scientific Revolution** occurred around the same time as the Enlightenment, and scientists began to use evidence they could gather using their senses to understand the world around them, rather than rely on the teachings of the Church.

The Inquisition

During the medieval period, the Catholic Church introduced a court process to investigate people suspected of **heresy**. The pope gave permission to cardinals or bishops to open a court in their home city, where they would arrest people and put them on trial. The office of the Church that handled these courts was known as the Inquisition. The Inquisition used torture to encourage people to admit to their heretical beliefs. Many key thinkers of the Scientific Revolution came into conflict with the Church for publishing findings that contradicted religious beliefs.

Scientific Revolution
a change in thinking among sixteenth- and seventeenth-century European scholars (academics) that placed a new focus on the laws of science and the natural world rather than the spiritual world

heresy
doing or saying something regarded by the medieval Catholic Church (and by some other faiths) as being in serious conflict with its teachings

10.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Recall** two significant political changes that occurred during the medieval period.

2 **Identify** one way in which the Westminster system differs from an absolute monarchy.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the power of the Church began to decline during the late medieval period.

4 **Describe** the purpose of a constitution.

Analyse

5 In the modern world, scientific advances are mostly celebrated. **Examine** the reasons why this was not the case in the medieval period.

Apply

6 **Discuss** the reaction that regular people might have had to the ideas of the Enlightenment. Would they have been for or against them? Refer to at least one specific idea or change in your discussion.

10A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Evidence of emerging ideas

Written in 1215, Magna Carta (meaning 'The Great Charter') is a famous political document. Magna Carta is one of the earliest written records of an attempt to restrict the rights of a sovereign in medieval Europe.

While the intention of creating Magna Carta was political change, the original document had little impact on King John's power. Many historians believe Magna Carta is symbolic of people revolting against the absolute power of their sovereign, rather than an example of significant political change. Magna Carta inspired the creation of many important documents, including the US Bill of Rights.

Source 8 A copy of the 1215 version of Magna Carta, an important document from the early medieval period that limited the powers of the king and outlined some rights of the people

Source 9

Magna Carta was written by a group of 13th-century barons to protect their rights and property against a tyrannical king. It is concerned with many practical matters and specific grievances relevant to the feudal system under which they lived. The interests of the common man were hardly apparent in the minds of the men who brokered the agreement. But there are two principles expressed in Magna Carta that resonate to this day:

> "No freeman shall be taken, imprisoned, disseised, outlawed, banished, or in any way destroyed, nor will We proceed against or prosecute him, except by the lawful judgment of his peers or by the law of the land."
>
> "To no one will We sell, to no one will We deny or delay, right or justice."

An extract from the National Archives online exhibit relating to Magna Carta

Source 10

This clause gave all free men the right to justice and a fair trial. However, 'free men' comprised only a small proportion of the population in medieval England. The majority of the people were unfree peasants known as 'villeins', who could seek justice only through the courts of their own lords.

Extract from the British Library article *Magna Carta: an introduction,* written by Claire Breay and Julian Harrison

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Evaluating the usefulness of a historical source

Evaluating the usefulness of a historical source is an important skill when conducting a historical inquiry. The usefulness of a historical source will vary depending on the context in which it is used. For example, the diary of a soldier who fought during World War I might be a very useful source for investigating trench warfare, but not for assessing the impact that the war was having on the soldier's family at home. Evaluating the usefulness of a source helps historians identify which sources will be the most helpful in their inquiry so that they can support their work with relevant and well-balanced evidence. To evaluate the usefulness of a source, follow these steps.

Step 1 Determining relevance. To determine the relevance of a source, you need to identify whether it contains information that relates to your historical inquiry. To determine relevance, ask yourself the following questions:

- What question am I investigating?
- What is the source about?

Step 2 Establishing accuracy. Once you have determined the source's relevance to your historical inquiry, you should establish the accuracy of information in the source. To establish accuracy, consider the following questions:

- Who created the source and when?
- What is included and what is excluded?
- Whose experience or perspective is shown in the source?

Step 3 Evaluating usefulness. Once you have found a source that is relevant and accurate, you can evaluate its usefulness in your research or historical inquiry. To evaluate this, ask the following questions:

- What is the source saying or showing that will assist me to answer my historical inquiry?
- What additional information would I like that would help me to answer my historical inquiry question?

Practise the skill

1. **Examine** Sources 9 and 10. Whose concerns are mostly represented in Magna Carta?
2. Look closely at the copy of Magna Carta shown in Source 8. Why might there might be limited useful written evidence available from this period in history?
3. Based on the excerpts provided in the sources, **discuss** how Magna Carta can help us learn about the challenges faced by people living under the reign of King John.
4. **Identify** two emerging ideas that are represented by Magna Carta.

Extend your understanding

1. Write down a list of five questions you have about early medieval Europe and swap lists with a partner.
2. Using the internet, select three historical sources of evidence that will help you answer the questions on your partner's list.
3. Write a brief summary that outlines the usefulness of each source. Be sure to include the limitations of each source.
4. Swap lists back with your partner. **Analyse** the sources and read the summaries they provided. Annotate the sources and summaries with any questions you still have or any additional information you have found in the sources.

10.5 Key scientific developments

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

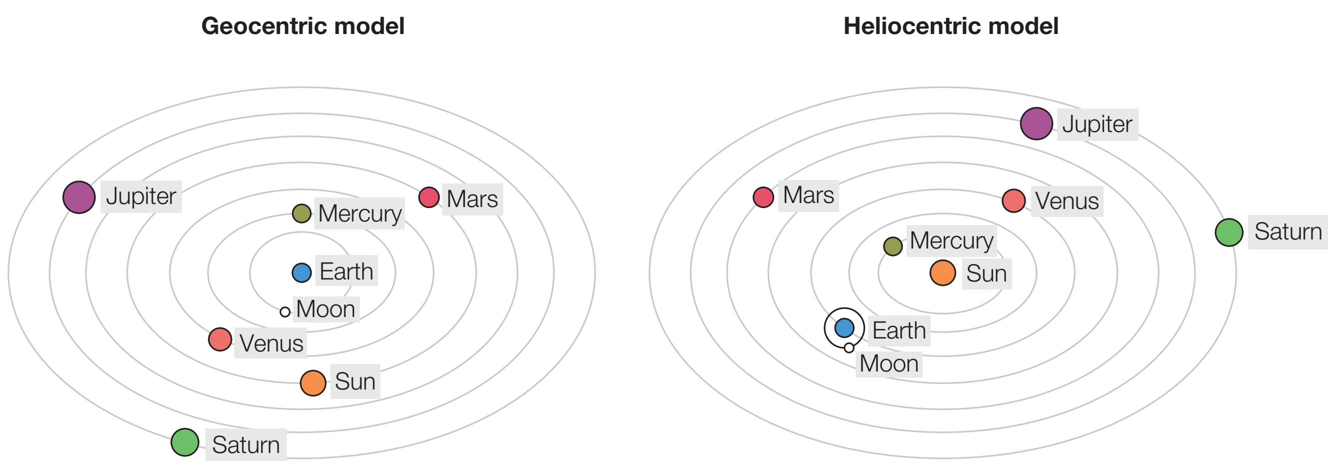
» describe the important scientific theories and contributions of Copernicus, Galileo and Newton.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on key scientific developments

The Scientific Revolution was a period of drastic progress and development. The methods developed for scientific inquiry and experimentation that we use today were developed during the Scientific Revolution. Of the numerous developments made during the period, the discoveries of Nicolaus Copernicus, Galileo Galilei and Isaac Newton are considered among the most significant in changing the way we understand the universe.

Nicolaus Copernicus' *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres*

Copernicus studied astronomy at the Jagiellonian University in Krakow and the University of Bologna. Early in his studies, he realised that the movements of the planets did not match the geocentric model of the solar system. He began to work on his heliocentric model, placing the Sun at the centre of the solar system, orbited by the planets. His book, *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres*, was the first serious challenge to the church's geocentric model, which claimed that the Earth was the centre of the solar system. His text is mainly concerned with attempting to calculate the movements of the planets around the Sun.



Source 1 The geocentric model (left) and heliocentric model (right) of the solar system. Uranus and Neptune are not included as they were only discovered in 1781 and 1846, respectively.

Copernicus' theory is significant because it replaced traditional astronomy and revolutionised understandings of the solar system. His discoveries allowed for a better understanding of the natural world. His methods changed the way mathematics and physics were used to understand the universe.

Source 2 A 1566 copy of Copernicus' *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres*, first printed in 1543

Galileo Galilei's *Dialogue Concerning the Two Chief World Systems*

Galileo Galilei was a supporter of Copernicus' theories of the solar system. To prove heliocentrism, Galileo refined the basic refracting telescope until it provided up to 20× magnification. He was able to track the moons of Jupiter, discover sunspots and observe a supernova through the telescope. In 1610 he observed the phases of Venus, proving Copernicus' theory of a heliocentric solar system. In 1632 he published his *Dialogue Concerning the Two Chief World Systems*. In this text, three characters debate the merits of the heliocentric and geocentric systems and point out the flaws in the geocentric model. It was a very important scientific text and was banned by the Church until the 1800s.

Galileo also made several practical inventions. His model of the sector, a tool used for measuring distances in combat and surveying, was more accurate than earlier compasses. In 1593 he invented a thermometer, using air bubbles trapped in glass spheres that rose and fell in a tube of liquid as the temperature changed. By modifying the telescope that he used to observe the planets, Galileo also developed his own version of a microscope.

Though his inventions and theories are numerous, Galileo's development of the scientific method is one of the reasons he is referred to as the 'father of modern science'. The experiment he designed to measure the speed of light using lanterns and shutters is an example of his idea of using controlled experiments to test hypotheses.

Source 3 Galileo's telescope, made from his design, which he used to observe the planets and prove both his and Copernicus' theories

Isaac Newton's *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*

Source 4 Engraving showing Sir Isaac Newton examining the nature of light with the aid of a prism

Written and published originally in Latin, Newton's *Principia* details his discovery of the laws of gravity and motion. Newton stated that the universe is held together by the gravitational pull that objects and planets have on each other. The text also explores Newton's three laws of motion:

- that an object will not change its motion unless acted upon by force
- that the force of an object is equal to its mass multiplied by its acceleration
- that every action in nature has an equal and opposite reaction.

These laws form the basis of classical mechanics, a field of physics. The theories in the text were groundbreaking. The method of inquiry shown in his work is still the standard today. Additionally, Newton invented the field of calculus and was a pioneer in the field of optics, proving that white light was made up of primary colours.

Source 5

The famous book of *Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy* marked the epoch [time that begins a new period] of a great revolution in physics. The method followed by its illustrious author Sir Newton ... spread the light of mathematics on a science which up to then had remained in the darkness of conjectures and hypotheses.

Mathematical physicist Alexis Clairaut in 1747, speaking on the importance of the *Principia*

10.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Define** the terms 'geocentric' and 'heliocentric'.
2. Sketch a simple diagram of each of Newton's three laws of motion.

Comprehend

3. **Explain** why it took 67 years to prove Copernicus' theory of a heliocentric solar system.

Analyse

4. Read Source 5. **Explain** what physicist Alexis Clairaut thought was so important about Newton's *Principia*.

Apply

5. **Discuss** why Galileo's development of the scientific method is so significant.
6. Copernicus considered not publishing his work. **Propose** the impact that would have had on the Scientific Revolution.
7. Using the internet or a library, **investigate** three other significant discoveries of the Scientific Revolution. Write a summary of each discovery in your notebook.
8. Make a list of what you judge to be the three most significant discoveries or inventions of the last 100 years. Write a sentence **justifying** each of your choices.

10.6 New technologies and economic developments

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the economic and social changes caused by new technologies
- explain the meaning of 'commodities'.

In medieval Europe, most of the economy was based on agriculture under the manor system (which formed the basis of feudalism). Under the manor system, a landowner (usually the local lord) would use the local peasants as cheap labour on his land and earn money selling the food they produced at markets and to towns and cities. As the medieval period moved into the early modern period (*c.* 1450–1800), this social and economic system began to break down.

Decline of the manor system

After the Black Death swept through Europe, the population drastically decreased. As the peasant population was smaller and there were not as many labourers available, wages increased quickly. The quality of life for peasants improved because they could afford better food, clothing and other material comforts. Landowners had another problem: the smaller population meant there was less demand for food, so the price of their agricultural produce began to drop. As lords encountered higher costs of labour and lower incomes, the manor system began to collapse.

Many landowners solved this problem by dividing up their large estates into smaller farms and renting these out for a fixed monthly fee. Some families became quite wealthy and purchased more land, giving rise to a new economic class known as the gentry. The gentry had high social status and were often connected to nobility through marriage.

Source 6 A thirteenth-century illustration showing the three main classes in society before the rise of the gentry and merchant classes: the cleric (minister of the church), knight and peasant

Advances in shipbuilding

A desire to compete with other nations and access new commodities and resources led to shipbuilding becoming a major industry in Europe. Improvements to shipbuilding techniques increased prosperity as more vessels could cross the oceans in search of new lands and commodities. These advances in shipbuilding fueled what is known as the 'Age of Exploration'. During this period – from the fifteenth to the seventeenth centuries – European nations explored the world and discovered new routes to India, China and the Americas. Many of the regions that were explored had valuable natural resources. These regions often had less advanced weaponry and infrastructure than their European counterparts. European nations quickly began taking control of these regions from their native populations, stripping natural resources and forcing the indigenous peoples of these regions to follow European law. Establishing control over another region and its people is called **colonisation**. Many European powers preferred colonisation to trade, because they did not have to offer up anything in return for the resources they took.

colonisation
when a country, kingdom or empire sets up an outpost in another land, often for social, economic or military reasons

European nations worked hard during this period to develop strong naval forces and increase their control over these regions and any precious resources (such as gold) that might be found there.

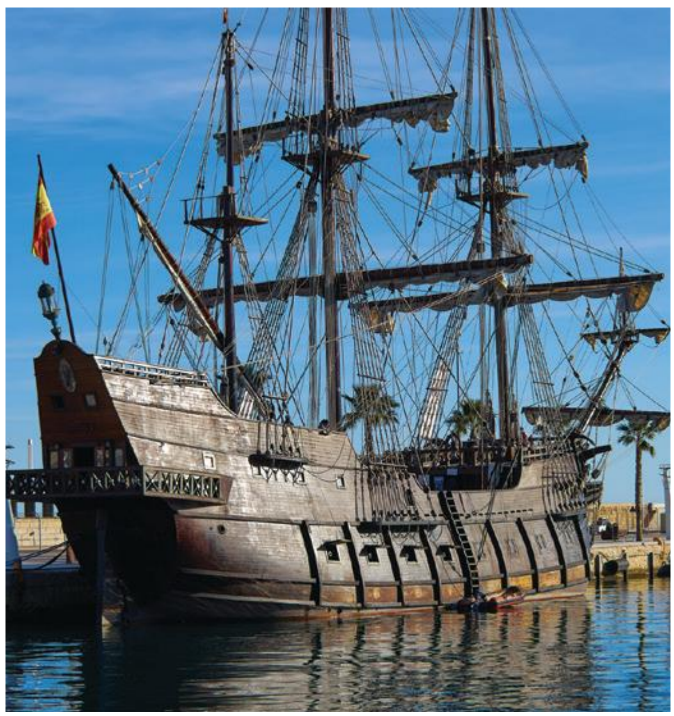
Developments in methods and design

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on new technologies and economics developments

The carvel method of shipbuilding, in which the planks of the hull (body of the ship) are laid next to each other rather than overlapping, allowed a larger hull space in ships. Carvel-built ships could therefore transport more supplies (which meant longer journeys), or transport more goods for trade.

Three main developments were made in the design and construction of ships during this period. The single-masted ship known as the cog was the first carvel-built boat used in large numbers for trade. The cog was left behind in favour of the carrack (see Source 7): a large ship with three or four masts, which dominated European maritime design until it was replaced by the galleon in the sixteenth century (see Source 8). The galleon design was even longer than the carrack, but because it sat lower in the water it had better balance and less wind resistance, allowing it to travel faster and transport more cargo.

Source 7 A large Portuguese carrack, possibly the *Santa Catarina Do Monte Sinai*, painted in 1540



Source 8 Replica of a sixteenth-century Spanish galleon

New commodities

European exploration and colonisation of new lands introduced a range of new **commodities** to Europe. Goods from the Americas, such as sugar and tobacco, started to gain popularity throughout Europe. This added to the already high demand for spices from Asia. Elephant ivory brought over from Africa became a popular material among the wealthier classes in Europe, replacing the more common and affordable walrus ivory. The merchant class (traders and businessmen) grew from importing luxury items such as spices, silks, cotton and other materials.

As the cost of basic foods fell and the working class was receiving higher wages, demand for these goods and materials increased. However, bringing goods through Europe over land was risky and inefficient, which led to more demand for merchant ships. When Christopher Columbus began his famous journey, his original purpose was to find a sea route to India so that Spain could have better access to the spice trade. Popular spices during the period included pepper, ginger, cloves, nutmeg, mace, cinnamon, saffron, anise, zedoary, cumin and cloves.

Soon Europe's economy was based on exporting goods gained through colonisation, and the influence of landowning nobility decreased.

commodities
products or raw materials that can be traded, bought, or sold; examples of commodities from the early modern world include spices, precious metals and coffee

*** I used to think, now I think**

Reflect on your learning about the relationship between European colonisation and changes to Europe's economy, and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

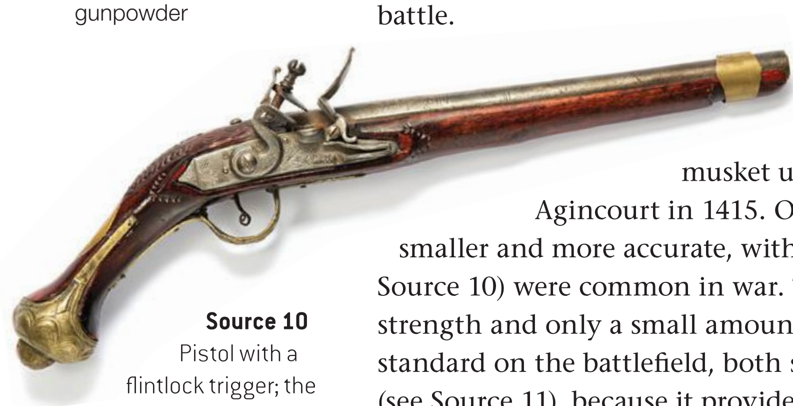
What has changed in your understanding?

Source 9 Illustration of merchants trading cloth, jewellery, plates and other goods, *c*. 1401–1500

Tools and armaments

armaments
military weapons or equipment, such as muskets, cannonballs or gunpowder

As European nations were in direct competition for new lands and resources, conflicts were common, and many wars were fought. The early modern period saw some significant developments in **armaments** that moved away from the medieval style of battle.



Source 10 Pistol with a flintlock trigger; the flint would be cocked back, then when the trigger was pulled the flint would strike the barrel of the pistol, creating a spark that would ignite the gunpowder and fire the musket ball.

The development of gunpowder weapons, such as cannons and muskets, changed the nature of warfare. The first instance of a single-person musket used in battle was the arquebus, at the Battle of Agincourt in 1415. Over the next 250 years, these weapons became smaller and more accurate, with a longer range. By 1690, flintlock muskets (see Source 10) were common in war. They were simple to use, requiring no special strength and only a small amount of training. As gunpowder weapons became standard on the battlefield, both soldiers and officers stopped wearing plate armour (see Source 11), because it provided very little protection against projectiles and greatly reduced the wearer's mobility.

Cannons also became more powerful and accurate. This ended the trend of building towns and castles with fortified walls, because they were no match for the improved artillery. Soon, cannons were used more often for open battle in fields rather than bringing down fortified walls.

Source 11 A suit of plate armour from the medieval period; this type of armour was phased out as gunpowder weapons became more common in battle.

10.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** and describe the two new social classes that appeared during the early modern period.
2 Outline the factors that led to the end of the manor system in Europe.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** the difference between exploration and colonisation.
4 **Summarise** the economic changes in Europe during the early modern period.

Analyse

5 **Reflect on** the link between conflict in Europe and the colonisation of regions such as the Americas.
6 **Consider** the social structure of Europe. Which group lost the most power and influence during the early modern period?

Apply

7 **Discuss** the motivations for the Age of Exploration. Why was there a sudden need for exploration?
8 **Propose** some of the risks involved with trading goods by ship.

10.7 New political ideas

Learning intentions

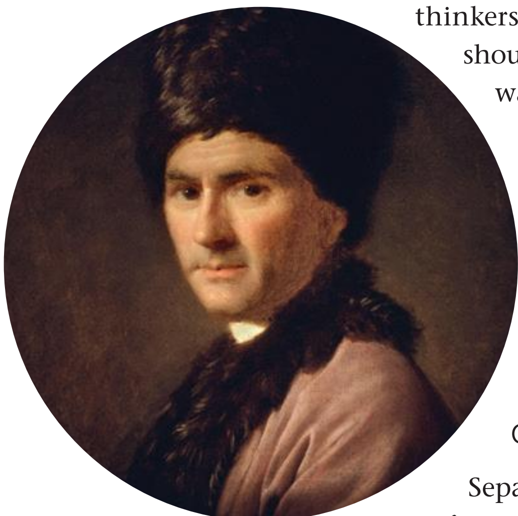
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the meaning of separation of Church and state
- describe how new ideas led to changes in the political orders of England and France.

Monarchies in Europe derived their power from divine right; the people believed that the sovereign had been chosen by God to rule. Therefore, opposing the monarch was opposing the will of God. This belief was enforced by the Church. Priests would give sermons in support of the sovereign. As most people in medieval Europe were illiterate and uneducated, they had no reason to question the teachings of the Church.

Impact of the Enlightenment

The Enlightenment brought with it new ideas about government and political systems. Many of the key thinkers of the Enlightenment were concerned with improving government. They wanted to create a society based on reason and logic, where people could advance based on merit, not their birth status. Enlightenment thinkers did not believe that political power came from God or that any one person should have unlimited power. They believed that the purpose of a government was to protect the nation and to secure the individual rights and freedoms of its people. In his book *The Social Contract,* Swiss philosopher Jean-Jacques Rousseau suggested that there was an unwritten contract between a government and its people. The government is allowed to rule by the people's consent, and in return it must protect the rights and welfare of the people.

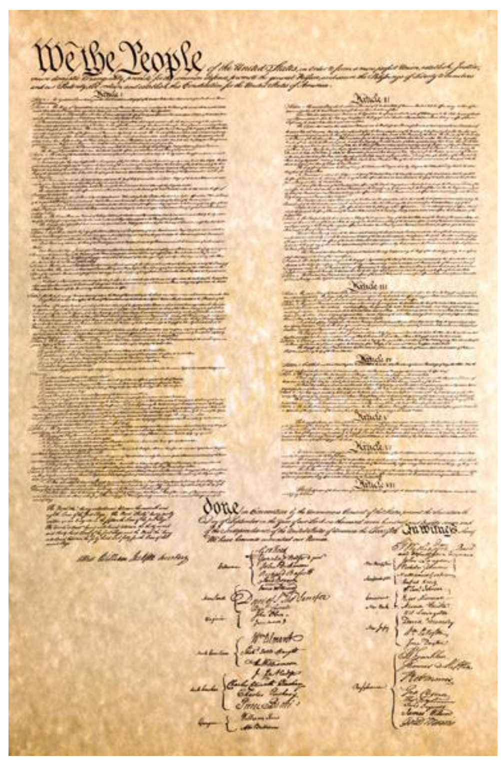


Source 12 Jean-Jaques Rousseau (1712–1778), Enlightenment thinker and author of *The Social Contract*

Separation of Church and state, and constitutional government

Separation of Church and state refers to the idea of maintaining distance between religious organisations and the government. It is based on the Enlightenment theory that countries should be governed according to logic and reason, not by religious beliefs. These ideas significantly diminished the Church's role in governments around Europe.

The idea that a government should not have unlimited power led to the development of constitutional government. A constitution is a document that outlines the rules by which a country is to be run. It limits the ability of a government to make decisions that are not supported by the people.



Source 13 The Constitution of the United States famously outlines the purpose and powers of the United States government.

Changes in France

revolution
a period of rapid change or development

The Ancien Régime, or Old Order, was the political system of the Kingdom of France from around 1500 until the French **Revolution** in 1789. The Ancien Régime is a good example of an absolute monarchy, because the king could issue orders to override the law.

Centralisation of the monarch's power

During the early modern period, the Kingdom of France underwent changes as the king sought to centralise power. While the king was always in control of the kingdom, the nobility mostly controlled the regions around their estates as they had under the feudal system. Taxes were paid directly to the nobles and the peasants would fight in their lord's personal army. This made it difficult for the king to raise money and armies quickly, because he had to approach his nobles, who were often reluctant to give up money and men.

centralisation
the process of bringing a region under the control of an individual person or small group; the power to make and uphold laws is not shared by many but held by this individual or small group

To solve these problems, the Kingdom of France began a process of **centralisation**, beginning during the reign of Henry IV and lasting around 125 years. The kingdom was split into provinces (regions). A representative of the king, known as an intendant, was appointed to manage each province. Intendants managed all administrative aspects of their provinces, including centralising the courts and collecting taxes on behalf of the monarchy. This gave the king direct control of the population and taxes. The nobles lost much of their power and were now even more reliant on the monarch for wealth and status. Many nobles resented their loss of influence and opposed these changes. The king created new nobles from the wealthy middle class who, grateful for their new status, would remain loyal. Many of these new nobles were appointed to important positions as judges and royal counselors.

The spread of centralisation

clergy
the priests or ministers of a religion, especially the Christian Church

The concept of a centralised government spread across Europe. Other countries soon developed institutions and systems that brought the outer regions of their kingdoms under the direct control of the government, reducing the influence of the nobility.

Source 14 A depiction of the Three Estates: the clergy (left), nobles (centre) and commoners (right)

The Three Estates

Under the Ancien Régime, the rights and status of each person were determined by which class, or Estate, they belonged to:

- the First Estate consisted of the **clergy**
- the Second Estate was made up of the nobility
- the Third Estate was made up of the peasantry, middle class and anyone else who did not fit into the Church or aristocracy.

The Third Estate included most of France's population. The economy relied heavily on the peasants, workers and businessmen of the Third Estate. Some of France's wealthiest people were members of the Third Estate. Despite the size and importance of this Estate, members of the Third Estate had no role in government and were not allowed to hold influential positions. The frustration of the Third Estate would be the driving force behind the French Revolution.

The French Revolution

While the people's demands for increased involvement in government were recognised in some areas of Europe and elements of democracy started to take hold, there was also a lot of resistance. A famous example of this drastic shift in power occurred in 1789, with the beginning of the French Revolution.

Following years of war and hardship, the people of France's Third Estate made demands for a constitutional monarchy and a more meaningful role in government. The king failed to meet their demands. After months of suffering and unrest, the Third Estate rose up to overthrow the Ancien Régime, and France become a **republic**.

republic
a system of government in which the power lies with a group of elected officials rather than a king or queen

King Louis XVI and Queen Marie Antoinette were executed by guillotine in 1793. Though years of unrest and bloodshed followed, the Enlightenment ideals of the French Revolution – liberty, equality, fraternity – inspired further revolutions around Europe. These ideals also contributed to the abolition of slavery and universal suffrage (giving women the right to vote).

Source 15 Jean-Pierre Houël's 1789 painting *The Storming of the Bastille*, an event during which regular Parisians took control of the Bastille, the state armoury and political prison. The event marked the beginning of the French Revolution and is a symbol of the people's victory over an oppressive king.

Changes in England

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on new political ideas

Britain became a constitutional monarchy in 1689, when Queen Mary and King William accepted a Bill of Rights proposed by parliament. Queen Mary's father, James II, had faced significant opposition to his rule. To crush opposition, he suspended the legal rights of dissenters, allowing them to be arrested without cause and held for a long time without trial. James was deposed (removed from power) during a conflict called the Glorious Revolution of 1688, and he fled to France. The British Parliament offered the crown to his daughter Mary II, and her husband William III, Prince of Orange, on the condition that the new monarchs accepted a Bill of Rights. The document outlines the rights of citizens that neither parliament nor the monarch can take away. Mary and William agreed to the conditions, and Britain became a constitutional monarchy, with limited sovereign powers.

Source 16 Engraving of William III, Prince of Orange, accepting the Bill of Rights

10.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why was the Ancien Régime a good example of an absolute monarchy?

2 Draw a diagram that illustrates the relationship between the Three Estates of the Ancien Régime.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the process of centralisation that took place in France during the early modern period.

4 **Summarise** the impact of Enlightenment ideals on the political systems of Europe.

Analyse

5 **Compare** the responses of France and Britain to the spread of Enlightenment ideas and political change.

Apply

6 **Discuss** the role of centralisation in changing the balance of power in Europe.

7 Work with a partner to **create** your own Bill of Rights based on the ideas of the Enlightenment.

8 Some Enlightenment thinkers believed that an absolute monarchy was necessary to protect the individual rights of the people. Outline an argument to **justify** this opinion.

10.8 The growth of cities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the make-up and powers of the bourgeoisie and peasant classes.

During the late medieval period, cities and towns grew as people were less tied to the land for survival.

Increased urbanisation

Importing goods and manufacturing tools and ships provided new employment opportunities for peasants. With their wages, peasants could afford to buy food and live in towns. As the medieval period moved into the early modern period, cities and towns became centres of law and business. People travelled from surrounding areas to live and work in these densely populated areas.

Rise of the middle class

bourgeois
a person belonging to the middle class who became wealthy from business and trade; in the early modern world, this class was wealthier than the working class, but often looked down on by the nobility

The late medieval period saw many social changes that would shift the balance of power in European society. The rise of the merchant class and the gentry reduced the political influence of the nobility, who had been the leading class in society under the feudal system. The nobility controlled less wealth than they had previously. Wealthier merchants and members of the gentry could afford the luxuries and privileges that used to be reserved for nobility. These wealthy businessmen and traders became known as **bourgeois**. Although the term is French, this class was evident all over Europe.

Source 17 A medieval house in the town of St Albans, England; this house was built in the half-timbered style that was popular at the end of the medieval period because it was easier and cheaper than building with stone.

Source 18 An 1880 engraving depicting members of the wealthy German middle class; they are shown wearing expensive clothing in the height of sixteenth-century German fashion.

KEY CONCEPT
Perspectives

The bourgeoisie

The influence of this new middle class grew quickly due to their wealth. Members of the middle class took up positions of power in cities and towns. They acted as magistrates, judges and advisors, and even married into noble families who had lost their wealth. In this arrangement, the middle-class family would gain higher social status (as they were closely connected to the upper class), and the noble family would use the money from the dowry or marriage contract to pay off debts or support their large estates. This wealthy middle class was disliked by both the peasantry and the nobility. The peasantry resented the middle-class success and lavish living, believing that middle-class business owners were taking advantage of the lower classes. The nobility thought the bourgeoisie had stepped above their rightful place in society. As they were disliked by other classes, the bourgeoisie gained a reputation for being materialistic and greedy.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 216 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 19 An illustration of Monsieur Jordain, the protagonist in French playwright Molière's 1670 play *Le Bourgeois gentilhomme*, about the social-climbing bourgeoisie. The character is depicted wearing luxury fabrics, jewels and other expensive items, as it was considered typical of the bourgeoisie to flaunt their wealth.

Power to the people

As members of the middle class took on more key roles in the running of towns and cities, the influence of the nobility fell even further. Towns were mostly populated by peasants and the bourgeoisie. The nobility were seen as distant figures collecting taxes and enforcing a social hierarchy. The growing distance between the lower classes and the nobility was a significant change from the feudal system. Under the feudal system, peasants worked and lived around the lord's manor, and each lord was directly responsible for the welfare of the community in his charge. However, the increasing distance between the peasants and nobility led to feelings of resentment among the lower classes. They felt that while they were still treated like feudal serfs, they were not cared for in any way. These feelings would become even stronger during times of hardship, such as when war or famine caused food scarcity in towns.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the growth of cities

Tensions between the classes increased over the early modern period after Johannes Gutenberg invented his printing press. Ideas about equality and political change spread through towns and cities. Pamphlets about equality and democratic government encouraged the lower classes to organise themselves and demand political change. Assemblies, parliaments and councils developed around Europe, as members of the lower classes demanded a more active role in government. While parliaments and assemblies were still mostly composed of the wealthy middle class, they aimed to represent the needs of the lower classes. These changes demonstrate the growing political influence of the lower classes.

Source 20 An engraving of the British House of Commons from *c.* 1640; the House is made up of elected representatives and, together with the House of Lords, forms the British parliament.

10.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two factors that lead to the growth of cities and towns during the early modern period.

2 **Recall** why new ideas spread through the lower classes during the early modern period.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the nobility had less political influence in the early modern period than during the medieval period.

Analyse

4 **Consider** the perspectives of the nobility and peasantry and explain why the bourgeoisie were disliked.

5 **Compare** early modern society to early medieval society under the feudal system in Europe. Identify any features that stayed consistent throughout both periods.

6 Create a table in your notebook and **categorise** the changes that occurred during the early modern period as either positive or negative. Consider the impact that each change had on all groups and classes while making your judgements.

Apply

7 Using your completed table from question 6, write an evaluation of the changes in society by identifying whether society changed for better or worse. Refer to specific examples to support your answer.

10B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The impact of the printing press

Before the invention of the printing press, all text was copied out by hand and sometimes beautifully decorated or 'illuminated'. The process of copying and binding texts by hand was long and expensive. In Europe, it was mostly done by monks and priests, so it was more common for religious texts to be reproduced. Only the very wealthy could afford access to books.

Johannes Gutenberg's printing press drastically changed European society. Once the letters were organised in the printing press, a text could be produced quickly and easily as many times as needed. Books became much more affordable, and more people in different social classes learnt to read. People could learn about religion, mathematics, science or politics by reading and the sudden spread of information lead directly to the Renaissance and the Age of Enlightenment.

Source 21 A copy of the Gutenberg Bible (printed in the 1450s) on display in the Morgan Library and Museum in New York. The Gutenberg Bible was the first book to be mass-produced by a printing press and is named after its printer, Johannes Gutenberg.

Source 22 A page from an illuminated manuscript *c*. 1405, showing the Virgin Mary (an important Christian figure) and an angel. The detailed artwork of illuminated manuscripts was considered just as valuable as the text.

Source 23

In our time, thanks to the talent and industry of those from the Rhine [region of modern-day Germany], books have emerged in lavish numbers. A book that once would've belonged only to the rich -- nay, to a king -- can now be seen under a modest roof. ... There is nothing nowadays that our children ... fail to know.

Sebastian Brant, a German philosopher and writer, wrote about the impact of the printing industry in 1500.

INDEX
LIBRORVM
PROHIBITORVM, CVM
REGVLIS CONFECTIS PER
Patres à Tridentina Synodo delectos, auctoritate Sanctiss.
D.N.Pij IIII. Pont.
Max. comprobatus.

BENEDICES CORONAE ANNI BENIGNITATIS TVAE PSAL. 64

COLONIAE,
Apud Maternum Cholinum.
M. D. LXIIII.

Source 24 A 1564 copy of the *Index of Prohibited Books*, published by the Catholic Church. The *Index* was reprinted numerous times as new texts were added to the list of banned books.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Understanding motive in historical sources

Understanding motive in a historical source means understanding why the author produced the source. Motive is different from purpose. The purpose of a source refers to what the source is trying to do, while the motive is the reason for doing it. For example, the purpose of an advertisement might be to encourage people to buy a product, but the motive for producing an advertisement is to increase profits. Sometimes evidence of motive is not obvious in the source itself, so historians collect information on the context of a source to better understand the motivations of the author.

To collect information about the context of a source, follow these steps:

Step 1 Start by recording the origin of each historical source; when and where was the source created? Record information about the author or creator in a separate column so that you can provide any relevant information about their life that might help you understand their motive. If details about a source's origins have been lost, record where the source was found and its estimated age.

Step 2 Write a brief description of the source. For example, is it a painting or a book? Identify key details about what it is made from and what it looks like.

Step 3 In dot points, summarise the key information contained in the source. Think about these questions when looking for key information: What event is shown or discussed? Who is shown or spoken about? What is the message of the source?

Step 4 Using the combined information from the sources, write a brief summary of your understanding on the topic.

	Origin of source	Information on author/ creator of source	Description of source	Key information
Source 21				
Source 22				
Source 23				
Source 24				

Practise the skill

1 Copy and complete the table by filling it in with the key information about Sources 21–24.

2 Consider Sources 21 and 22. Both sources are religious texts, but they were produced in very different ways. **Explain** why the motive of Johannes Gutenberg when mass-producing his Bible might be different to those creating illuminated manuscripts by hand.

3 **Consider** Source 23. What contextual information from your table might explain why he is speaking in support of the printing industry?

4 The purpose of Source 24 was to ban certain books across Europe. What possible motive would the Church have for banning certain books during the early modern period?

Extend your understanding

1 In pairs, brainstorm a list of inventions that have created significant change in society.

2 Select an invention that you think had a significant impact on society. Conduct research about the invention and create a summary in your notebook which includes the following information:
   - motive of the inventor
   - purpose of the invention
   - how it changed society
   - new skills or education resulting from the invention
   - any major events or movements it started.

10.9 Significant scientific thinkers

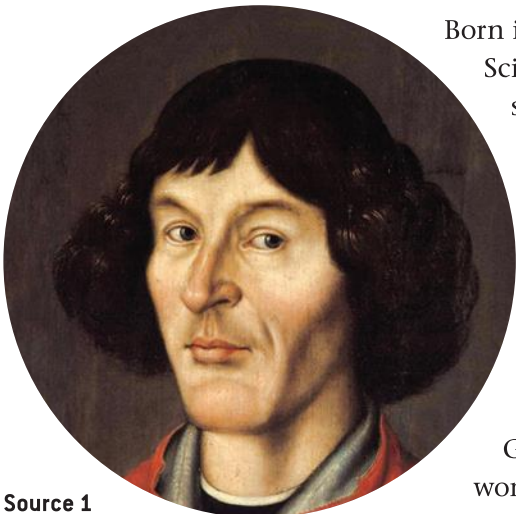
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how the work of scientific thinkers challenged the power of the Church.

During the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the Scientific Revolution drastically changed the way people understood the universe. It was no longer commonly accepted that the universe functioned according to God's will. Scientists, astronomers and mathematicians worked with the idea that something could only be true if it was proved using the senses.

Nicolaus Copernicus

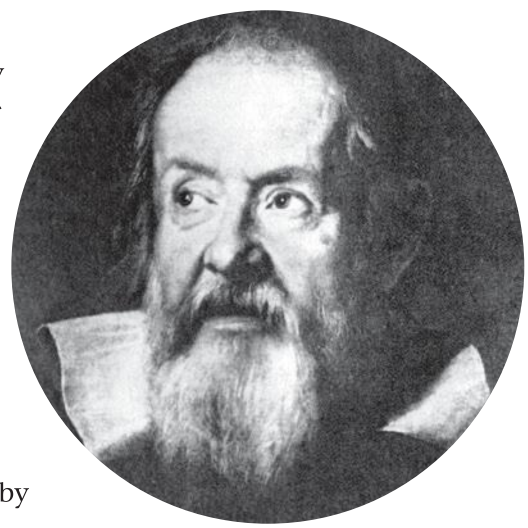


Source 1 The *Torun Portrait*, a painting of Copernicus by an unknown artist from *c.* 1580

Born in Poland in 1473, Nicolaus Copernicus was a key figure of the Scientific Revolution. In 1543 he published a model of the heliocentric solar system which showed the planets revolving around the Sun. In addition to his accomplishments in astronomy, mathematics and languages, Copernicus was a religious man. He held a doctorate in canon (church) law. Due to his church position, Copernicus chose not to publish his book, *On the Revolutions of the Celestial Spheres*, until shortly before his death. The publication of his book caused an uproar in the Church as it directly contradicted the Church's teachings that the Earth was the centre of the universe. Placing the Sun at the centre of the universe seemed to challenge the status of God and the importance of mankind as God's creation. Copernicus' work was vital to the Scientific Revolution and contributed to other great works.

Galileo Galilei

Galileo Galilei was an Italian physicist, astronomer and engineer born in the Duchy of Florence in 1564. He was a firm supporter of Copernicus' heliocentric model, which he proved in 1610 when he observed the phases of Venus. In 1632 Galileo received permission from the Inquisition to publish his *Dialogue Concerning the Two Chief World Systems,* comparing Copernicus' heliocentric system with the geocentric system. After the book was published, the Inquisition labelled Galileo a suspect of heresy and the book was banned by the Church.



Source 2 Artwork of Galileo Galilei at 72 years old, *c.* 1636

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on significant scientific thinkers

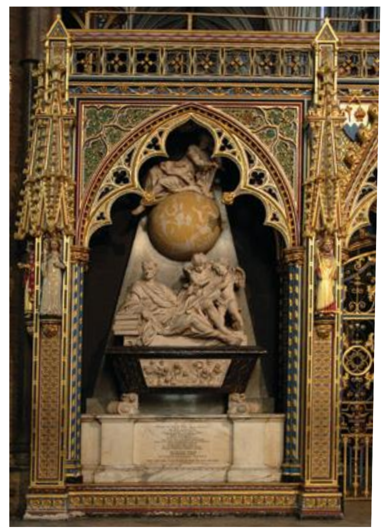
Johannes Kepler

Source 3 1869 engraving of Johannes Kepler (1571–1630)

German astronomer and mathematician Johannes Kepler was born in December 1571. He published several works during his lifetime, including the *Epitome Astronomiae Copernicanae*, published around 1618. Kepler's work builds on Copernicus' heliocentric model of the solar system, and he is best known for his three laws of planetary motion. While Galileo was able to prove that the planets revolve around the Sun by observing Venus, Kepler determined that they did not orbit in a circular pattern, but instead in an elliptical (oval) trajectory.

Kepler's formulations were able to match the timing of the orbits, proving a heliocentric solar system mathematically. Amazingly, Kepler's formulae still form the basis for all types of astronomical calculations, including the calculations necessary to send spacecraft to the moon and to other planets.

Sir Isaac Newton



Source 4 Sir Isaac Newton's elaborate tomb in Westminster Abbey

Born in 1642, Sir Isaac Newton was an English mathematician and widely considered the last scientific genius of the Scientific Revolution. Newton built on the work of his predecessors to make groundbreaking discoveries. His text, *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, published in 1687, established some of the most significant scientific theories of the age. The book outlined Newton's laws of motion, theories that were based on some of Galileo's earlier work, allowing people to calculate the speed and trajectory of moving objects. Most famously, the book established Newton's law of universal gravitation. In 1687, Newton also demonstrated that Johannes Kepler's laws of planetary motion exist as a result of the laws of motion and universal gravitation.

Newton was knighted by Queen Anne for his accomplishments. When he died in 1727, he was buried in Westminster Abbey. Westminster Abbey is a traditional burial place for the monarchs of England and Newton's burial there is a tribute to his contributions to science.

10.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** why the Church was opposed to the heliocentric model of the universe.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** Copernicus' decision to wait until shortly before his death to publish his work.

3 **Explain** why the Church often opposed the work of scientists, even those who were religious.

4 **Summarise** how people explained the natural world before the discoveries of the Scientific Revolution.

Analyse

5 **Identify** the links between the theories of Copernicus, Galileo, Kepler and Newton.

Apply

6 **Discuss** the Inquisition's reaction to Galileo's book. Why do you think it was such a serious concern?

7 Describe the reactions to the works of Copernicus and Newton and **propose** a possible explanation for the contrasting treatment of the two men and their accomplishments.

8 **Predict** what might have happened if the Church had been more supportive of scientific discovery.

10.10 Significant political and religious leaders

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the significance of Martin Luther, Henry VIII, Elizabeth I and Oliver Cromwell.

Protestant
a member of one of the new Christian churches that developed during the Reformation

Reformation
a movement that began in Europe in the sixteenth century when the scholar-monk Martin Luther publicly challenged the Catholic Church; it shifted the balance of power in Europe away from dominant control by the Church

indulgences
ways in which Catholics could shorten their time in purgatory and gain quicker entry to heaven

excommunicated
being cut off from the Church community (including participation in communion and confession); a religious punishment

The early modern period was a time of transition as the political and religious systems of medieval Europe evolved. Some people played such significant roles in the changes that they are still considered influential leaders, and the foundations of religious and political systems they formed are still in place today.

Martin Luther

Martin Luther, born in 1483, was a German priest who started the **Protestant Reformation**. In 1510 Luther travelled to Rome. There, he was shocked by the corruption and troubled by the sale of **indulgences** (which allowed people to pay for forgiveness of sins) and other abuses of the Church. On his return from Rome, he campaigned for reform in the church. In 1517 he distributed copies of his *Ninety-Five Theses* to his friends and the archbishop of Mainz. This document called for reform and questioned certain Catholic teachings. He was **excommunicated** by the pope in 1521 for his writings. Luther also translated the Bible into German, going against the Church belief that the Bible should only be read in Latin.

Source 5 According to popular legend, Martin Luther nailed his *Ninety-Five Theses* to the door of All Saints' Church in Wittenberg, Germany. Although there is no evidence to suggest that this actually happened, it is an enduring image of the Protestant Reformation.

Luther's work led to the founding of the Lutheran Church, where personal faith (rather than forgiveness from a priest) is key to salvation and the Bible is the only authority. Luther's break from the Catholic Church sparked the Protestant Reformation, during which a range of Christian denominations developed in Europe, weakening the hold of the Catholic Church and the authority of the pope.

Henry VIII

Henry VIII was King of England from 1509 until his death in 1547. When Henry ascended to the throne, England, like most of Europe, followed the Catholic faith. By the end of his reign, England had undergone a drastic religious reformation.

Henry became frustrated with his wife, Catherine of Aragon, as she failed to produce a male heir who lived past infancy. The pair had a daughter, Princess Mary, but Henry insisted that he could not leave England to a girl. In 1525, Henry became interested in 25-year-old Anne Boleyn, a lady-in-waiting in the Queen's service. Driven by the need for a son and his love for Anne, Henry petitioned Pope Clement VII to annul (declare invalid) his marriage to Catherine of Aragon, who was now 40 and unlikely to have any more children.

Pope Clement denied Henry's petition. To divorce Catherine and marry Anne, Henry initiated the English Reformation. Henry appointed himself Supreme Head of the Church in England. He closed the Catholic monasteries and convents in England and added their wealth and land to the Privy Purse (the sovereign's private income). This changed the way of life in England, as village life had been centred around the activities of the Church and the calendar of holy days. The clergy was made to renounce the authority of the pope and Catholic practices were abandoned, sparking a period of religious upheaval in England. The English Reformation was part of the wider Protestant Reformation that was taking place all over Europe.

Henry and Anne had a daughter, Elizabeth, before Anne was executed for treason. Henry went on to have a son, Edward, with his third wife Jane Seymour, who died due to complications from childbirth. Henry married a total of six times before his death. All his children sat on the throne of England.

Source 6 Portrait of King Henry VIII copied in 1537 from an earlier portrait painted by Hans Holbein the Younger, the official court artist

Source 7 The six wives of Henry VIII, in order of marriage; top row, left to right: Young Catherine of Aragon, who Henry VIII divorced; Anne Boleyn, who was beheaded for treason; Jane Seymour, who died in childbirth; bottom row, left to right: Anne of Cleves, who Henry VIII divorced; Katherine Howard, who was beheaded for treason after having an affair; Katherine Parr, who outlived Henry VIII and went on to remarry

Elizabeth I

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on significant political and religious leaders

The 45-year reign of Elizabeth I, known as the Elizabethan era, is commonly considered to be a golden age in English history. The daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn, Elizabeth had a turbulent childhood and path to the throne. For a time, she was declared illegitimate and lost her title of princess. She spent time imprisoned in the Tower of London, suspected of plotting against her Catholic half-sister Queen Mary.

Mary was reluctant to leave the throne to her Protestant half-sister, but since she had no children, Elizabeth was next in line. Mary had spent her reign trying to undo her father's church reforms. She had brutally persecuted Protestants, burning many at the stake for heresy. After taking the crown, Elizabeth re-established the Protestant reforms lost during Mary's reign and introduced an updated *Common Book of Prayer*. She also passed the *Thirty-Nine Articles*, which formally outlined the core beliefs and practices of the Church of England that make it recognisable to Anglicans today.

She was a determined leader and shrewd politician. One of the biggest accomplishments of her reign was unifying England and defeating the Spanish Armada (fleet of warships), sent by the Catholic King Phillip of Spain in 1588. English exploration and colonisation of the Americas occurred under her rule. Elizabeth I encouraged patronage of the arts and the Elizabethan era was the height of the English Renaissance. Poets and playwrights such as William Shakespeare created some of the most iconic works of English literature during this period.

Elizabeth is also remembered for her controversial decision to rule England without a husband. She passed away at the age of 69 without having married.

Source 8 Portrait showing Queen Elizabeth I resting her hand on a globe, surrounded by the symbols of royal authority, *c*. 1588; the destruction of the Spanish Armada can be seen in the background.

Oliver Cromwell

Born in April 1599, Oliver Cromwell was a political and military leader in England. In 1628, Cromwell was elected to the House of Commons, where he fought against what he believed to be corruption and superstition in the Church of England. In the English Civil War that began in 1642, Cromwell raised an army on behalf of the parliament to fight against the supporters of King Charles I, known as the Royalists. When the parliamentary forces eventually defeated the Royalists, Cromwell was considered a hero. Following the end of the war, King Charles I was executed in January of 1649. Britain briefly became a republic.

Cromwell's reputation and influence led to his position of first chairman on the newly formed Council of State. Cromwell also fought campaigns in Scotland and Ireland. His methods were brutal, and in Ireland his army killed thousands of civilians.

In December of 1653, Cromwell led a coup, using military force to take over the government. He was given full power and the title of Lord Protector of the British Republic. Cromwell's government played a significant role in the development of the Westminster system of government by:

- introducing the separation of powers between the executive, legislative and judicial branches of government
- promoting the development of political parties.

Cromwell also used his power to implement several key legal reforms, including:

- religious tolerance
- improvements to education
- expanding voting rights to more citizens.

As Cromwell's health declined, the position of Lord Protector was made hereditary. In 1658, after Cromwell died of pneumonia, the position passed to his son Richard. Richard renounced his position nine months later. In 1660, Charles Stuart, son of Charles I, returned to England and was crowned King Charles II in what is known as the Stuart Restoration. During this time, Oliver Cromwell's body was dug up and publicly hanged as symbolic punishment.

Source 9 Painting of Oliver Cromwell, Lord Protector from 1653 until his death in 1658

10.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two reasons why the reign of Elizabeth I is called a 'golden age'.

2 **Recall** two concerns that Martin Luther had about the Catholic Church.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** Oliver Cromwell's involvement in the development of the Westminster system of government.

4 **Summarise** Henry VIII's reasons for breaking with the Catholic Church.

Analyse

5 **Explain** why the execution of King Charles I was a significant event.

6 Brainstorm the different impacts of Martin Luther's *Ninety-Five Theses*. **Classify** each as positive or negative, using dot points to justify each choice.

Apply

7 Examine the career of Oliver Cromwell. Why do you think he is considered a divisive figure in history?

10C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Rewriting the Enlightenment

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

While the Age of Enlightenment was responsible for many changes in society, not every historian has a positive interpretation of the movement and its key thinkers. It has become clear that many traditional interpretations of the Enlightenment are 'Eurocentric', meaning they focus only on European culture and history, in a mostly positive way.

Many Enlightenment works – and evaluations by historians in later years – exclude the contributions of other cultures, such as the advancements made during the Islamic Golden Age. They also minimised the impact the Enlightenment had on other cultures and peoples during the colonial period. While many Enlightenment works encouraged revolution, freedom and equality in European countries, many also justified the oppression of women and non-European peoples.

Source 10

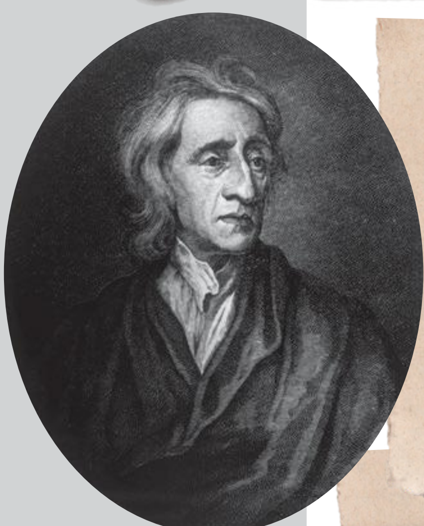
It is striking how unenlightened many of the Enlightenment's celebrated thinkers are concerning issues of race and of gender ... For all the public concern with the allegedly universal 'rights of man' in the Enlightenment, the rights of women and of non-white people are generally overlooked in the period ... When Enlightenment thinkers do turn their attention to the social standing of women or of non-white people, they tend to spout unreasoned prejudice.

Author and Associate Professor of Philosophy William F. Bristow on the Enlightenment, *Stanford Encyclopaedia of Philosophy*, 2017.

Source 11

God, who hath [has] given the world to men in common, hath [has] also given them reason to make use of it to the best advantage of life and convenience. The earth and all that is therein [in that place] is given to men for the support and comfort of their being. And though all the fruits it naturally produces, and beasts it feeds, belong to mankind in common, as they are produced by the spontaneous hand of Nature ... being given for the use of men, there must of necessity [necessarily] be a means to appropriate them some way or other before they can be of any use, or at all beneficial, to any particular men.

Enlightenment thinker John Locke writing on private property in *The Second Treatise on Government*, 1690.



Source 13
John Locke (1632–1704) was one of the most influential thinkers of the Enlightenment, and is known as the father of liberalism.

Source 12

Man being born ... with a title to perfect freedom, and an uncontrolled enjoyment of all the rights and privileges of the law of Nature ... hath [has] by nature a power ... to preserve his property – that is, his life, liberty and estate.

John Locke, writing on civil society in *The Second Treatise of Government*, 1690.

Source 14

It is instructive that icons of Enlightenment rationality were rarely at the forefront of movements for practical racial equality. In England, the campaign against slavery was not led by a posse [group] of religiously sceptical philosophers, but by Quakers, Methodists, and Evangelicals.

Excerpt from an ABC article in 2020 by Peter Harrison, author and Director of the Institute for Advanced Studies in the Humanities at the University of Queensland.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Comparing historical perspectives

Historical events are often recorded from multiple perspectives. The beliefs, values, and experiences of historians can affect the way they record an event or discuss an individual. For example, the Roman historian Tacitus used a lot of negative phrasing when he wrote about Queen Boudicca of the British Iceni tribe. Before trusting his account, it is important to know that Boudicca was fighting against the Romans, and that in Roman society women were not allowed to hold positions of power. It is likely that as a Roman historian, Tacitus' own beliefs affected the way he wrote about Boudicca's rebellion. To get the best understanding of an event, it is important to read multiple accounts and understand the factors that influenced how each account was written. To do this, follow the steps below.

Step 1 Identify the author of the source and gather relevant information on their background.

Step 2 Identify any opinions or evidence of bias in the source. This may include emotive language painting a person or event in a positive or negative light.

Step 3 Compare the information in the source to other sources from other authors. Identify which pieces of information stay consistent across different sources, and which differ.

Step 4 Write a summary of the event or individual you are studying and explain why there are multiple interpretations.

Practise the skill

1. **Identify** the authors of Sources 10, 11, 12 and 14 and the date that each source was created.
2. **Categorise** each source as having either a positive or negative view of the Enlightenment. What factors do you think shaped each author's view of the Enlightenment?
3. **Compare** the two quotes from John Locke (in Sources 11 and 12). Explain why it can be difficult to determine someone's beliefs and values.
4. **Discuss** why perspectives on Enlightenment thinkers might have changed over time.
5. Referring to Sources 10, 11, 12 and 14, **discuss** why it is important to look at multiple interpretations and perspectives in history.

Extend your understanding

1. Select another historical event that you believe might have more than one perspective, such as the European exploration and colonisation of the Americas. Write a brief outline of each perspective.
2. Use the internet or a library to find evidence (such as quotes or images) to support each perspective.

10 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine the sources below and answer the questions that follow.

Scientific discoveries

Galileo Galilei came into conflict with the Catholic Church in 1610 when he began publishing works that proved Copernicus' heliocentric model of the solar system. In 1616 the Church declared heliocentrism heretical, but Galileo was not deterred. His 1632 publication that outlined the evidence of heliocentrism was very popular. In 1633 he was charged with heresy and was ordered to stand trial by the Inquisition in Rome. Galileo was forced to retract his claims that the Earth revolved around the Sun, because it opposed the Church's teaching that the Earth was the centre of the universe. Galileo's whole struggle with the Church is known as the Galileo Affair.

1 **Identify** whether each source is a primary or secondary source. (2 marks)

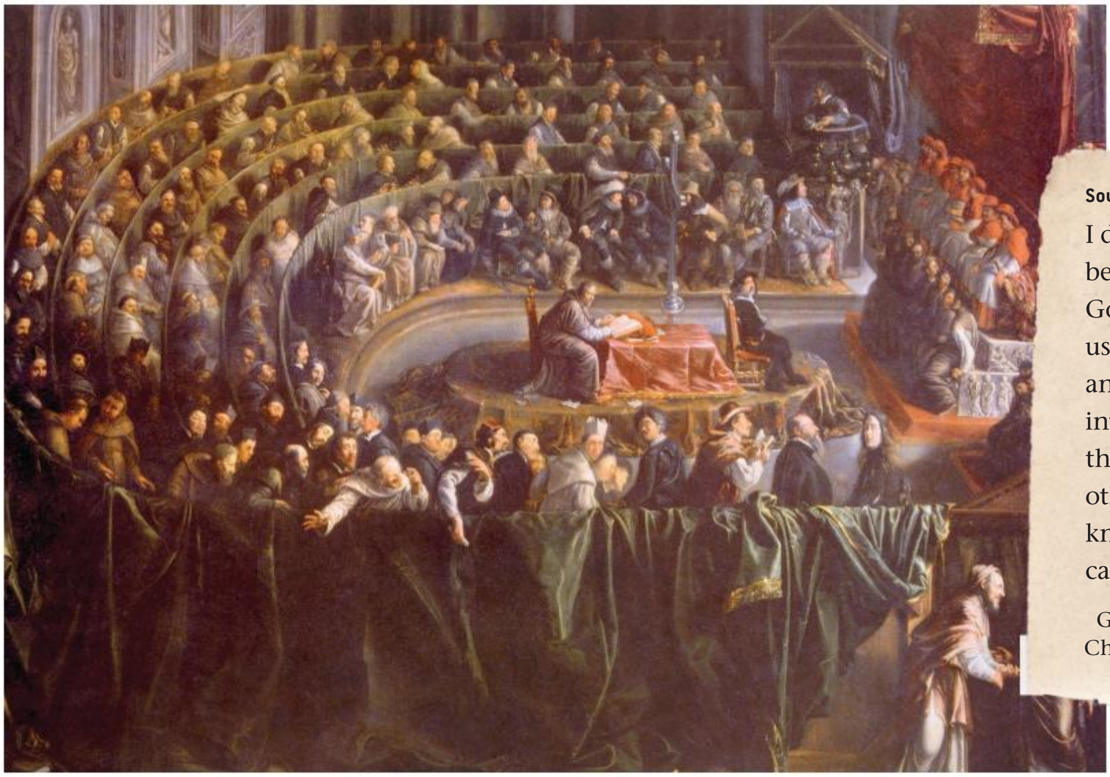
2 **Identify** the message of Source 17 and **explain** how it reflects the ideals of the Scientific Revolution. (4 marks)

3 Many scientific thinkers of the Scientific Revolution were religious. Referring to the sources, **reflect on** how Galileo's religious beliefs encouraged his work. (5 marks)

4 **Explain** why the pioneers of the Scientific Revolution often came into conflict with the Church. (3 marks)

5 **Discuss** how the discoveries of the Scientific Revolution challenged social conventions and the balance of power in Europe. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

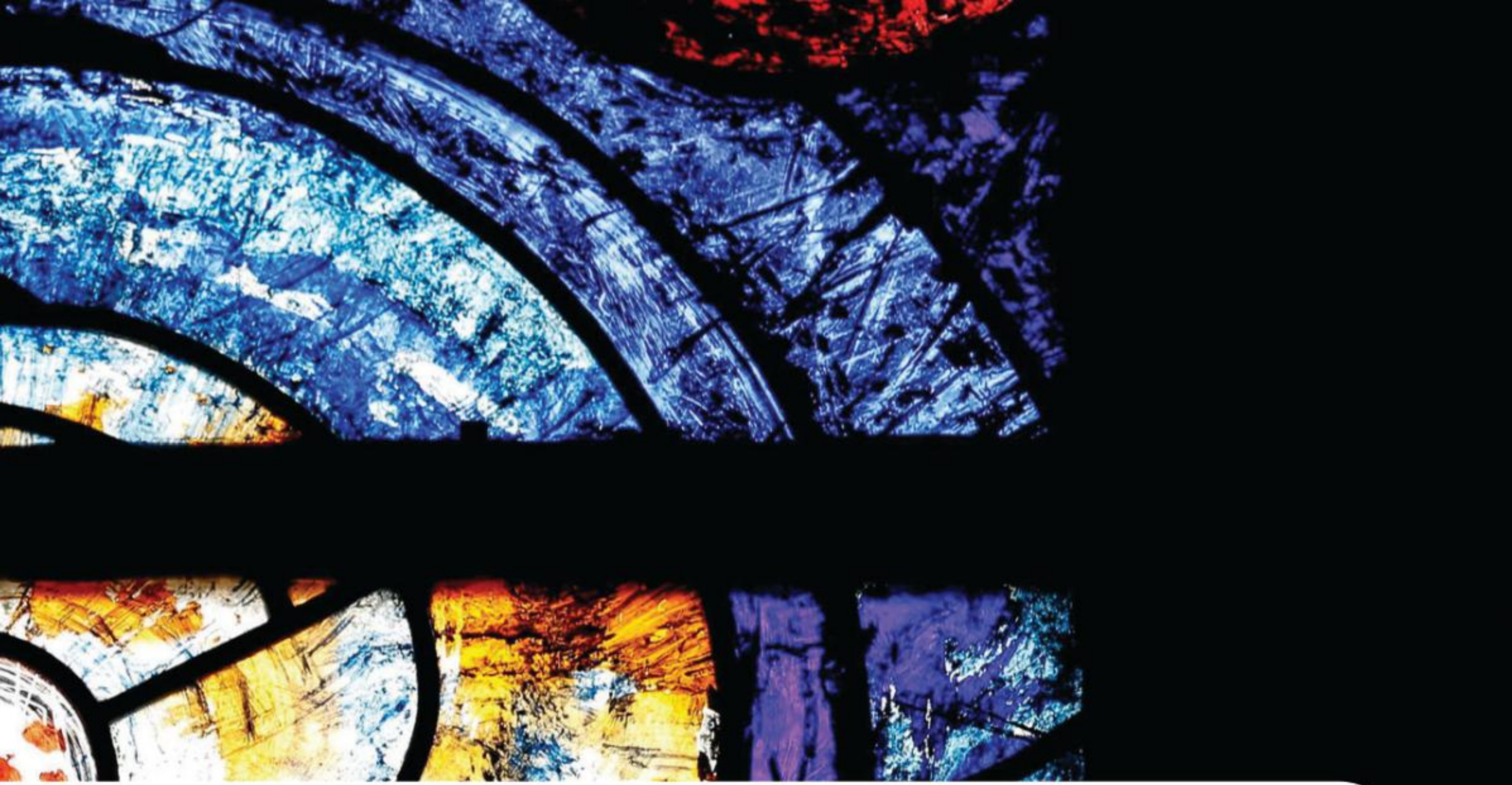


Source 16 A painting from 1633 titled *The Trial of Galileo in Rome*

Source 17

I do not feel obliged to believe that the same God who has endowed us with senses, reason, and intellect has intended us to forego their use and by some other means to give us knowledge which we can attain by them.

Galileo Galilei in a letter to Christina, Grand Duchess of Tuscany, in 1615



Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Understand how the decline of ancient empires shaped the early modern world.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.2, page 10.4.
Summarise the spread of Christianity in Europe.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.3, page 10.6.
Describe new ideas spread by the Enlightenment and the Scientific Revolution.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.4, page 10.8.
Describe the important scientific theories and contributions of Copernicus, Galileo and Newton.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.5, page 10.12.
Summarise the economic and social changes caused by new technologies. Explain the meaning of 'commodities'.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.6, page 10.15.
Explain the meaning of separation of Church and state. Describe how new ideas led to changes in the political orders of England and France.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.7, page 10.19.
Describe the make-up and powers of the bourgeoisie and peasant classes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.8, page 10.23.
Explain how the work of scientific thinkers challenged the power of the Church.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.9, page 10.28.
Explain the significance of Martin Luther, Henry VIII, Elizabeth I and Oliver Cromwell.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 10.10, page 10.30.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 10

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 10

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The emergence of the modern world.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 10

CHAPTER 11

The Spanish conquest of the Americas

Towards the end of the fifteenth century, a period of exploration began in Europe. Driven by a desire for wealth, power and territories, countries such as Spain sent explorers known as conquistadors (conquerors) in search of new lands and trade routes.

In 1492, navigator and explorer Christopher Columbus – an Italian hired by the Spanish royal family – found the islands now known as the Bahamas. This marked the beginning the Spanish conquest of the Americas.

When the Spanish arrived, there were two dominant empires in the Americas: the Aztec Empire and the Inca Empire. The Spanish saw these indigenous peoples as primitive, godless 'savages'; they enslaved them, and devastated their cultures.

Source 1 An artist's impression of the capital city of the Aztec Empire, Tenochtitlan, before the arrival of the Spanish in 1519; at this time, Tenochtitlan was home to around 200 000 people. By 1521, two years after Spanish arrival, the Aztec Empire had collapsed and Tenochtitlan had been destroyed.

11A
How were societies organised in the Americas before the arrival of the Spanish?

11B
Why did the Spanish colonise the Americas? How were they able to do so?

11C
What were the effects of Spanish conquest in the Americas and around the world?

11.1 The Spanish conquest of the Americas: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events during the Spanish conquest of the Americas

1428
A triple alliance is forged between the cities of Tenochtitlan, Texcoco and Tlacopan. This cements the power of the Aztec Empire.

1492
Christopher Columbus arrives in the Americas, landing in the Bahamas, Cuba and Hispaniola in the Caribbean.

1494
The Treaty of Tordesillas is signed. In it, Pope Alexander VI grants all lands to the west of a line drawn through the Atlantic Ocean to Spain, and all lands to the east of the line to Portugal.

1502
Montezuma becomes the Aztec ruler.

1507
'America' is first named by the cartographer Martin Waldseemüller, in honour of the explorer Amerigo Vespucci.

1420 CE | 1490 | 1500 | 1510

Source 1 A timeline of some key events during the Spanish conquest of the Americas

An artist's impression of the arrival of Columbus in the Americas

An artist's impression of Cortés meeting Montezuma

The siege of Tenochtitlan

1517
Hernandez de Cordaba begins to explore the Yucatan Peninsula and Mexico's east coast.

1519
Hernán Cortés arrives in the Aztec Empire and enters the capital city, Tenochtitlan.

1520
Aztecs in Tecnochtitlan are massacred by the Spanish, and Montezuma dies. The Spanish are driven out of the city a few months later. A smallpox epidemic sweeps through the region in the same year, killing thousands.

1521
The Aztecs are defeated and Tenochtitlan is destroyed after a three-month siege by the Spanish and their allies.

1530
Francisco Pizarro makes contact with the Inca Empire.

1532
Pizarro returns with a small force and captures the Inca ruler. The Inca capital of Cuzco falls to the Spanish in the following year.

1572
The last Inca Empire is defeated by the Spanish, ending all resistance to Spanish colonisation in South America.

1520 | 1530 | 1570 | 1580 CE

11.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Identify** who the Aztec leader was when Hernán Cortés entered the Aztec Empire.
2. **Name** the Spanish and other Europeans mentioned in the timeline and identify the key events in which they were involved.
3. What does the abbreviation 'CE' stand for? Why is it used? (See page 210 of 'The history toolkit'.)

Comprehend

4. **Describe** the purpose of the two zig-zag lines used on the timeline. (See page 211 of 'The history toolkit'.)

Analyse

5. Use the timeline to calculate the length of the period between:
   a. the arrival of Cortés in the Aztec Empire and the capture of its capital, Tenochtitlan
   b. the arrival of Pizarro in the Inca Empire and the capture of its capital, Cuzco.

Apply

6. Select an individual from the timeline. **Investigate** the person and write a paragraph that explains their significance in the Spanish conquest of the Americas.

11.2 The major civilisations of the Maya, Inca and Aztec

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe significant features of the Maya, Inca and Aztec civilisations.

'Out of Africa'
one model in the theory of how modern humans spread around the world; it hypothesises that modern humans developed in Africa before migrating outwards

ice age
a cooler period in the Earth's history when ice covered much of the northern hemisphere and sea levels were much lower than they are today

According to the **'Out of Africa'** hypothesis, modern humans evolved in Africa and first left the continent around 200 000 years ago to find new hunting areas. They settled in the Middle East, followed by areas in Europe and Asia, as these locations were the closest.

Eventually, humans arrived in the Americas (see Source 2) after migrating from the Eurasian land mass eastwards, sometime between 40 000 and 15 000 years ago, during the last great **ice age**. They journeyed on a land bridge between Asia and North America that existed when sea levels were lower than they are now. Some people moved eastwards and settled across the northern parts of North America. Others moved further south, into the most southern regions of North America and into Central America and South America. The three main civilisations in this region were the Maya, the Inca and the Aztec (see Source 3). Only two of these civilisations remained by the fifteenth century. These were the Aztec (in the region that is now Mexico) and the Inca (in the region that is now Peru).

THE AMERICAS

Source 2 Source: Oxford University Press

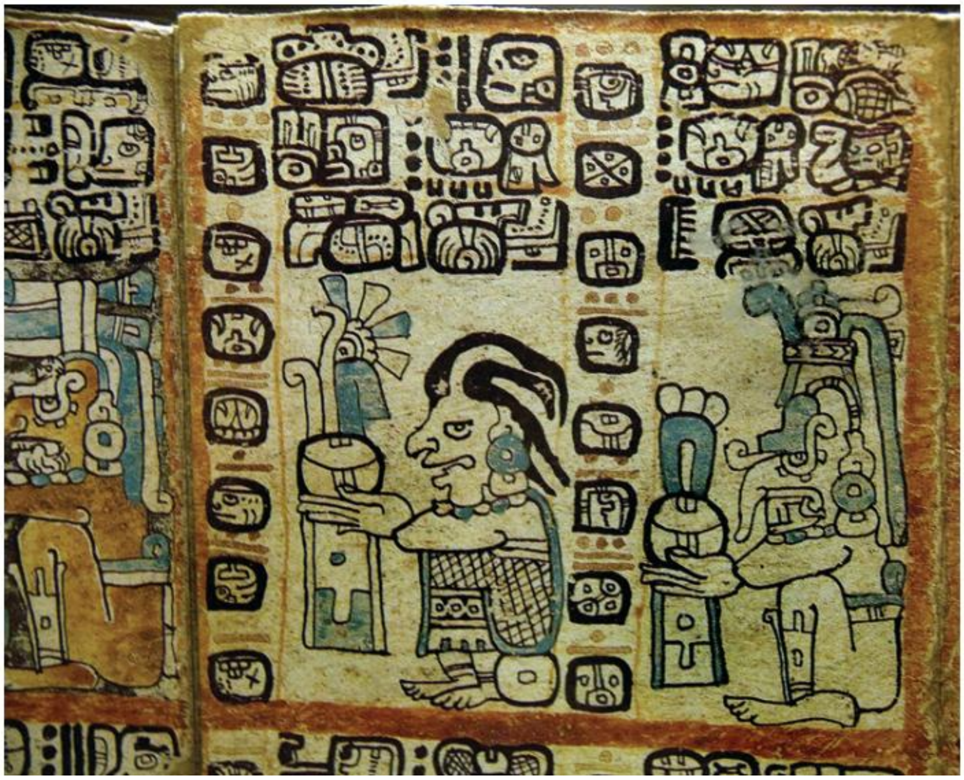
AZTEC, MAYA AND INCA CIVILISATIONS

Source 3 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 4 The ruins known as Mundo Perdido (which is Spanish for 'Lost World') in the ancient Mayan city of Tikal (in modern-day Guatemala)

The Maya

The Maya civilisation was the oldest of the three. It was at the height of its power between 250 and 900 CE, when the Maya ruled a large area of southern modern-day Mexico and northern Central America, centred around the Yucatán Peninsula. The Mayan people did not have one sole leader or capital city. Each of their cities had its own ruler, who governed independently. The Maya were skilled in arithmetic and astronomy, and had their own form of hieroglyphic writing, known as glyphs.



Source 5 An example of Mayan glyphs from the *Madrid Codex*, dating between about 900 and 1521 CE (from the Museo de América, Madrid); a codex is a bound ancient manuscript, similar to a book.

The Inca

Source 6 An example of an Inca *tumi* – an ornate ceremonial tool, with a distinctive curved blade, which could be used for sacrifices

The Inca were originally one of many tribes in the Andes Mountains of South America, in modern-day Peru. They conquered other tribes, and by 1493 CE the Inca Empire had become the most powerful in the Americas, with the city of Cuzco as its capital. Their territories extended for 4000 kilometres on the western coast of South America (see Source 3), including parts of modern-day Chile, Ecuador, Peru and Bolivia. To govern their empire, the Inca developed an efficient administrative system, an extensive network of roads, and strategically built stone fortresses. They excelled in working metals, such as silver, copper and gold.

The Inca built intricate cities and temples. One of the most famous examples of this is Machu Picchu, perched high on the top of a mountain (see Source 7).

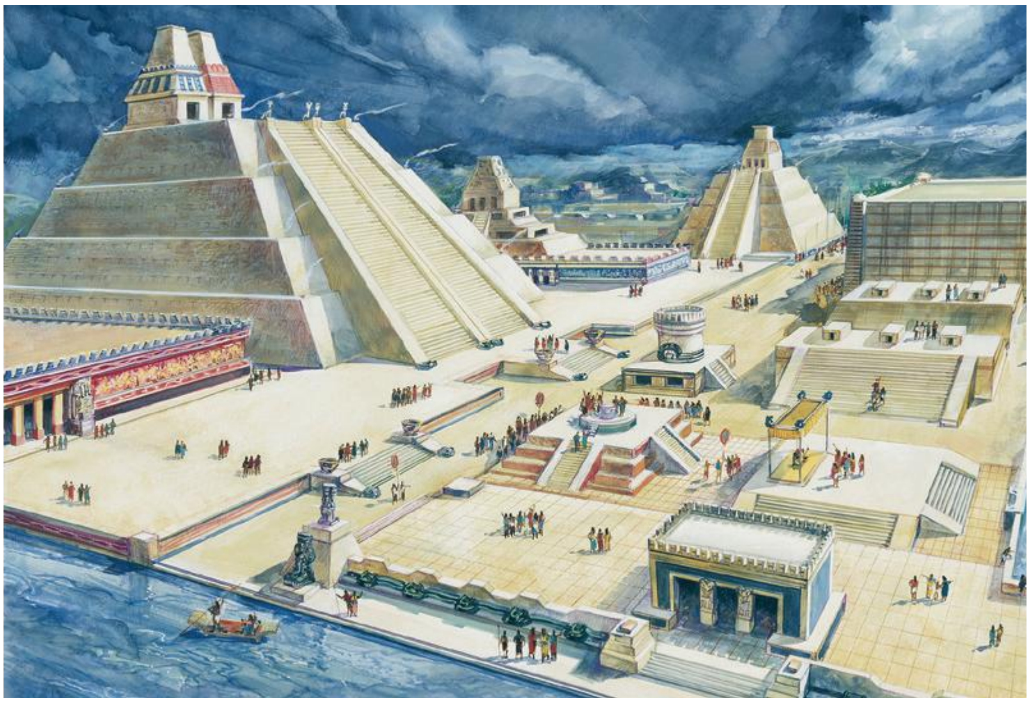
Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Machu Picchu

Source 7 The restored remains of Machu Picchu

The Aztecs

The Aztecs were a group that originated in the north of modern-day Mexico. Note that the word 'Aztec' can refer to the civilisation itself, the people, or just the ruling classes. The Aztecs were self-sufficient and highly skilled. By conquering rival tribes, they created an empire that stretched between the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico (see Source 3). When the Spanish **conquistador** Hernán Cortés arrived in 1519, there were around 489 **city-states** in the Aztec Empire, ruled by the powerful ruler Montezuma II (also known as Moctezuma). The centre of Aztec civilisation was the capital Tenochtitlan, a city built on swampy islands in the middle of Lake Texcoco.

Source 8 The Aztec 'calendar stone', also known as the 'sun stone', was discovered in Mexico City in 1790. This massive circular monolith, with the Aztec sun god at its centre, dates from the early sixteenth century. Its hieroglyphics relate the mythology of the Aztec world.



Source 9 A modern artist's impression of the city of Tenochtitlan

conquistador
(pronounced con-kees-ta-dor) a Spanish word for a soldier or conqueror

city-states
independent settlements made up of an inner fortified city surrounded by houses; this built centre was surrounded by farmland that supported (e.g. with food) the urban centre

11.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the modern-day countries where the Maya, Inca and Aztec civilisations were located. (Hint: Refer to the map at the back of this textbook to help.)

2 **Name** three achievements of the Inca.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the journey that humans took to occupy the Americas.

4 **Explain** why the land bridge connecting Europe and North America no longer exists today.

Analyse

5 **Distinguish** between the ways the Maya and Aztec civilisations were governed. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you need to talk about how they are different.

6 **Examine** Source 7 and think about what type of skills would have been required to build the city of Machu Picchu. List these skills based on your observation, and explain how you came up with each one.

Apply

7 **Investigate** the geographical features of one of the three civilisations discussed in this topic. How did the environment influence daily life in this civilisation?

11.3 Key groups in Aztec society

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the social organisation of the Aztecs.

Source 10 The Aztec emperor Montezuma

Aztec society was organised according to a strict **hierarchy**, and each person had a particular place and role to fulfil. There were five major social classes – the emperor, nobles, warriors, commoners and slaves – and there was little opportunity to move out of the class into which you were born. Older people were highly respected in Aztec society.

hierarchy
a social structure that organises people with the most important group on top and others ranked beneath in decreasing order of importance

emperor
someone who rules an empire; an empire is a group of countries or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

absolute ruler
an individual who governs with supreme authority, unrestricted by laws

tributes
something given as a mark of respect to someone important

Emperor

At the top of the hierarchy was the **emperor**. The emperor was an **absolute ruler**, who was selected as leader by a council of nobles. He was regarded by the people as a god, and was called the 'Great Speaker'. The emperor lived in a highly decorated palace and enjoyed a luxurious lifestyle. He ruled with the help of his noble officials, counsellors, judges and military leaders.

Source 11 An example of the long, feather headdress worn by an Aztec noble

Nobles

The nobility included high-level priests, military leaders, landowners, judges and heads of government. These ruling groups were privileged, and lived well compared to the ordinary people. Nobles could receive **tributes** from commoners.

Noble status was passed down from parents to children. Nobles lived on their own estates, and were the only class other than the emperor allowed to wear decorated capes and jewellery. The wealthy and those who were heroes of war dressed elaborately, with intricate headdresses (often made of feathers), necklaces, earrings and bangles made of gold, silver, copper and precious stones. Their body art included ornaments worn in holes in the ears and in split bottom lips. The nobility would show their wealth and dominance through extravagant feasts and expensive gifts to each other.

Warriors

Warriors were highly respected in Aztec society. Most males in Tenochtitlan were trained to be warriors, and left their families at puberty to go and live in the local warrior house. Women could not be warriors.

Warriors were expected to be very brave, and were taught that it was an honour to die in battle. There was a formal hierarchy within the warrior group based on how many live captives (who were later sacrificed to the gods) a warrior had taken in battle. Successful warriors could expect to receive gifts and riches, but for most it was a part-time profession. The majority of warriors had to practise another trade to support themselves.

Analyse this!
Aztec warriors

Source 12 A sixteenth-century illustration of Aztec warriors from the *Codex Mendoza*; the warriors carry wooden weapons and shields made from feathers, agave paper (made from a type of succulent), leather and reed.

Commoners

All commoners were grouped into **clans**. Members of each clan owned and farmed their land, and they were responsible for maintaining their local temples and schools, which every child attended. Commoners included farmers, craftspeople, merchants and low-level priests. They were expected to pay tribute to the nobles who owned the ***calpulli*** (neighbourhoods) that they lived in.

Commoners usually ate basic foods, including domestic animals such as turkeys, dogs and guinea pigs, and lived in simple homes. They were not allowed to wear cotton, wear cloaks longer than the knee, or wear sandals in the presence of people of higher rank. Commoners could sometimes become nobles through marriage or in recognition of their bravery in war.

clans
groups of people linked and united in their aims and behaviours by the knowledge (or a belief) that they share common ancestors

calpulli
in Aztec society, a neighbourhood within a city-state

Source 13 An illustration from the sixteenth-century *Florentine Codex* (see page 330) showing an Aztec commoner threshing amaranth grain (a food used by Aztecs in their religious ceremonies)

Slaves

Slaves were owned by nobles or wealthy merchants, and had few rights. Typically, people became slaves if they were criminals, could not pay their debts or had been captured in war. Slaves could marry with their master's permission and could also buy their freedom. Slave status was not passed down to children; the children of slaves were born free.

The role of men and women in Aztec society

An Aztec family was made up of a man, his chief wife, his other wives, his children and other relatives such as his parents. Marriages were arranged with help from priests, who would consult the stars to check for suitable matches. Girls married at around 16 years of age and men at around 20. Both boys and girls went to school, although they were destined for very different lives. Women were expected to care for children, cook and weave cloth. They helped to tend home gardens and any other plots of land the family was given to work. They had almost no public role. Men, on the other hand, were expected to become warriors and seek glory by taking enemy captives.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Aztec discipline of children

When looking at pieces of primary evidence, historians use empathy to recognise how people in the past felt. By using empathy, historians can develop an understanding of how certain issues, events or relationships affected people.

For Aztec children, discipline was very strict, both at home and at school. Punishments included being speared with the sharp spines of a cactus, being left bound and naked in the dark in a cold puddle, or being bound and held over a fire to inhale smoke from burning chillies (see Source 14).

Source 14 Illustrations from the sixteenth-century *Codex Mendoza* (see page 330) give details of the Aztec discipline of children. Here, a boy is being forced to inhale dried chilli smoke for disobeying his parents.

Girls were awakened in the middle of the night to sweep the house, and had their fingers cut if they made a mistake in tasks, such as weaving. Historians suggest that the Spanish may have exaggerated these stories, but evidence tells us that discipline was definitely physical.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 15 More illustrations from the *Codex Mendoza* show that typical jobs for children in the Aztec Empire included fishing and weaving. Children also ground maize (corn) to make tortillas (bread).

11.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the groups of people who helped the emperor rule.

2 How did people become slaves?

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the roles and responsibilities of the warrior class.

Analyse

4 **Distinguish** between a noble and a commoner. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

5 **Examine** Source 14.

a Describe what the source is showing. Refer to specific parts of the source and use evidence to support your answer.

b Identify whether this is a primary or secondary source. Use evidence to give reasons for your response.

c How reliable do you think this source is? Use evidence to explain your answer.

Apply

6 a Imagine that you are an Aztec child from a family of commoners. **Create** a diary entry about your daily life and the discipline you face. You could include information about housing, food, clothing, reasons for discipline and types of discipline.

b How does your diary entry use empathy to help imagine what life was like for the Aztecs?

11.4 Religious beliefs in Aztec society

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the key religious beliefs of the Aztecs.

polytheistic
relating to the belief in or worship of more than one god

Religion was a central part of Aztec society and dominated almost every aspect of daily life. The Aztecs were **polytheistic**, and worshipped many gods who they believed were responsible for things such as the sun, war, rain, crops, harvests, fire and the dead (see Source 16). Aztec gods were believed to be demanding, and had to be calmed through bloody offerings.

Source 16 The gods who were most important to the Aztecs

Huitzilopochtli	God of the sun and of war
Tlaloc	God of rain, agricultural fertility and water
Xipe Totec	God of springtime and new crops
Quetzalcoatl	God of nature, earth and air
Tezcatlipoca	God of the night sky; giver and taker of all life on Earth
Mictlantecuhtli	God of the dead
Xiuhtecuhtli	God of fire

Source 17 A drawing of the god Quetzalcoatl, the 'feathered serpent god', from the *Codex Borbonicus*

The Aztecs believed that their gods gave them life. For example, they believed that Huitzilopochtli battled with the forces of darkness every night so that the sun would come up the next morning. If ever he grew weak, the sun would not rise and the universe would come to an end, so people had to provide nourishment for him in the form of blood sacrifice. The Aztecs welcomed Tlaloc as a god who gave life and sustenance, but also feared him for his ability to send hail, thunder and lightning.

The Aztecs built temples to worship their gods. They were steep pyramid-shaped structures, with lots of steps to reach the top. The Aztecs believed the process of ascending the stairs was part of preparing oneself to please the gods.

Life after death

The Aztecs believed in life after death. They believed that the way someone died, rather than the way they lived, determined what would happen to them in the afterlife. If a person died a normal death, his or her soul would pass through the nine levels of the underworld before reaching Mictlan, the realm of the death god Mictlantecuhtli. However, warriors who died in battle and women who died in childbirth joined Huitzilopochtli. The dead were buried with goods of all descriptions for use in the afterlife.

Source 18 An Aztec *chacmool*

Analyse this!
An Aztec *chacmool*

Human sacrifices

Human sacrifices were performed in honour of the gods of the sun, rain and earth. The most common form of sacrifice among the Aztecs involved stretching the victim over a sacrificial stone. Four priests held the limbs of the victim, while another priest cut open the chest and took out the heart. The heart was placed in a ***chacmool*** (see Source 18) and the victim was then thrown down the steep temple steps. The body was picked up and part of it, such as the thigh, was given as a reward to the victim's captor to eat. Those who were sacrificed were considered to be fortunate, since they were guaranteed a place in the highest heaven reserved for warriors who died in battle.

Mass sacrifices

Sacrificial ceremonies could involve just one victim or many thousands at once. For example, when the Temple of Huitzilopochtli was completed in Tenochtitlan, up to 20 000 people were sacrificed. The victims were prisoners from a group called the Huastecs, from the north-eastern part of what is now Mexico. In 1487, they had tried to revolt against the Aztec Empire but had been unsuccessful. As punishment, the Aztec warriors marched

chacmool
in Aztec society, a sculpture of a reclining human figure with a tray on its lap, used to hold sacrificial offerings

Source 19 A knife used by Aztec priests for human sacrifices

Source 20 An illustration of a ritual killing from the *Codex Magliabechiano*, showing victims being sacrificed on the steps of a temple

them back to Tenochtitlan, roped together by cords which ran through a hole in their nose or around their neck.

As they arrived, they were greeted by priests who informed them that they had the privilege of dying as offerings at the Great Temple, or *Templo Mayor*. There were four lines of prisoners that stretched the full length of the streets leading up to the temple. The victims were men, women and children, who cried and wailed as they walked to their deaths. They climbed, stumbled or were dragged up the steps of the pyramid.

When they reached the top, they were sacrificed by the priests. One body after another – after the heart was cut out – rolled down the steep steps of the pyramid. The priests became drenched in blood, and eventually the blood ran in rivers down the steps.

Source 21 This image shows the Road of Death leading to the Pyramid of the Moon, Teotihuacan (in modern-day Mexico). Life in the Americas before colonisation was so advanced that, by the time of the Aztecs, this ancient city was already abandoned and in ruins.

Analysing historical significance

History is full of so many important events, people and discoveries that we could never study them all. Instead, we need to make a judgment about which ones are worthy of study. To do this, we must analyse how significant they are.

The 5Rs (see Source 22) are an easy way for us to remember what to look for and what questions to ask when analysing the historical significance of aspects of the past. They stand for remarkable, resulted in change, revealing, resonates and remembered. The table in Source 22 contains some guiding questions that we can use when distinguishing between each of the 5Rs.

For more information on significance, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Using what you have learnt about the importance of human sacrifice in Aztec religious beliefs, **analyse** the historical significance of this practice by working through each of the 5Rs (as outlined in Source 22).

Source 22

5Rs of significance	Guiding questions
Remarkable	What was the most notable thing about the event/ individual/group of people?
Resulted in change	What happened as an immediate result of the event or the actions of the individual/group of people (i.e. what were the short-term impacts)?
Revealing	What does the event/ individual/group of people tell us about the time period?
Resonates	How has the event/ individual/group of people had an effect on future generations (i.e. what were the long-term impacts)?
Remembered	How is the event/ individual/group of people remembered today? What evidence still exists?

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

11.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'polytheism'.
2 What did the Aztecs believe would happen if sacrifices were not made to Huitzilopochtli?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the way Aztecs died was considered important.
4 **Describe** the purpose of a *chacmool*.
5 **Summarise** the relationship that the Aztecs had with their gods. Why do you think they felt the way they did?

Apply

6 **Create** a diary entry reflecting on the sacrifice of the Huastec people, from the perspective of either a priest or one of the Aztec nobles watching the ritual. (See page 216 of 'The history toolkit' for more on the key concept of perspectives.)
7 The historical concept of cause and effect relates to why something happened, and what positive and negative effects it created. In pairs, **discuss** the cause and effect of human sacrifice on:
   a the Aztecs
   b the Huastecs and other civilisations.

11.5 Life in Tenochtitlan

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe life in the capital city of Tenochtitlan.

Tenochtitlan was the capital of the Aztec Empire. It was founded around 1325 CE in the Valley of Mexico, now the site of modern-day Mexico City.

By 1519, Tenochtitlan was home to 200 000 inhabitants on an island of about 8 square kilometres. This was at a time when Spain's largest city, Seville, had a population of 70 000. Source 23 is an account from the Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés. It shows us his first impressions of Tenochtitlan on his arrival that year.

Source 23

> When we saw all those cities and villages built in the water … we were astounded … These great towns and pyramids and buildings rising from the water, all made of stone, seemed like an enchanted vision.
>
> Extract from a letter from Hernán Cortés, describing his arrival in Tenochtitlan

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on life in Tenochtitlan

The shape of the city

As the power of the Aztec Empire grew, the entire urban area of Tenochtitlan was carefully rebuilt in the fifteenth century. It was laid out on a grid pattern, with 'roads' running from north to south and from east to west. In Aztec mythology each of the four main points of the compass had important religious significance, with its own gods, rituals and colours. Because it mirrored the path of the sun, the east–west axis was the most important one.

chinampas
in Aztec society, human-made floating islands used for agriculture

The city was divided into four districts. Each district was composed of neighbourhoods called *calpulli*, inhabited by commoners such as craftspeople and farmers. It was possible to travel virtually anywhere in the city by boat. Many of Tenochtitlan's 'roads' were in fact canals, or waterway channels. Six major canals – and many smaller ones – criss-crossed the city.

As Tenochtitlan was built on a lake, the Aztecs living there had no real access to farmland. To fix this, they constructed human-made islands called ***chinampas***. A shallow part of the lake was fenced off and filled with mud until it rose above water level. This provided a bed on which to grow crops, such as maize (corn), tomatoes, potatoes, beans, chillies, peanuts, limes and avocadoes. Canoes took sewage from the city's public toilets to be used as fertiliser on the *chinampas*.

Source 24 An illustration taken from a manuscript shows the *chinampa* system used by the Aztecs to construct the floating gardens for the city of Tenochtitlan.

Source 25 An artist's impression of the marketplace in Tenochtitlan, with the *Templo Mayor* in the background

Creating *chinampas*

Over time, some things stay the same, while others change. Historians refer to aspects of the past that have remained the same over time as 'continuities', whereas aspects of the past that do not stay the same are referred to as 'changes'.

A *chinampa* is a historical technique that has continued. *Chinampas* are a good example of sustainable farming, and still exist today in Mexico City. They are sustainable because they grow plants while conserving water, and they do not use large areas of land.

Some eco-friendly companies have used elements of the Aztecs' methods for constructing *chinampas* to create new farming innovations.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Source 26 Organic vegetable crops are grown on a *chinampa* in Mexico City today.

Commerce and tributes

In Tenochtitlan, the centre of commerce was the huge market square, where 60 000 people came each day to buy and sell. There was also a sacred precinct in the centre of the city, surrounded by a wall. Within this precinct were temples, public buildings, palaces and plazas. The Great Temple, or *Templo Mayor*, loomed over everything (see Source 27). The blood on its steps from human sacrifices was visible even from a great distance.

The Valley of Mexico did not have all the geographical requirements needed to keep a city the size of Tenochtitlan running. For example, there was very little land in the valley that could be farmed. Cotton could not be grown in the valley; nor could most food. For Tenochtitlan to survive, it relied on supplies from villages and societies outside the city. Some of the supplies were purchased through trade, but much of the city's wealth and many of its goods were brought in from other parts of the empire through the tribute system.

The populations that surrounded Tenochtitlan were forced to pay taxes as tributes. Each year, Tenochtitlan received 7000 tonnes of corn, 4000 tonnes of beans, 4000 tonnes of amaranth grain and 2 million cotton cloaks. Tributes also included huge amounts of feathers, precious stones and metals, cacao beans (the seed pod from which cocoa is made), tobacco and chocolate.

Source 27 The ruins of the *Templo Mayor*, the main temple in the great city of Tenochtitlan

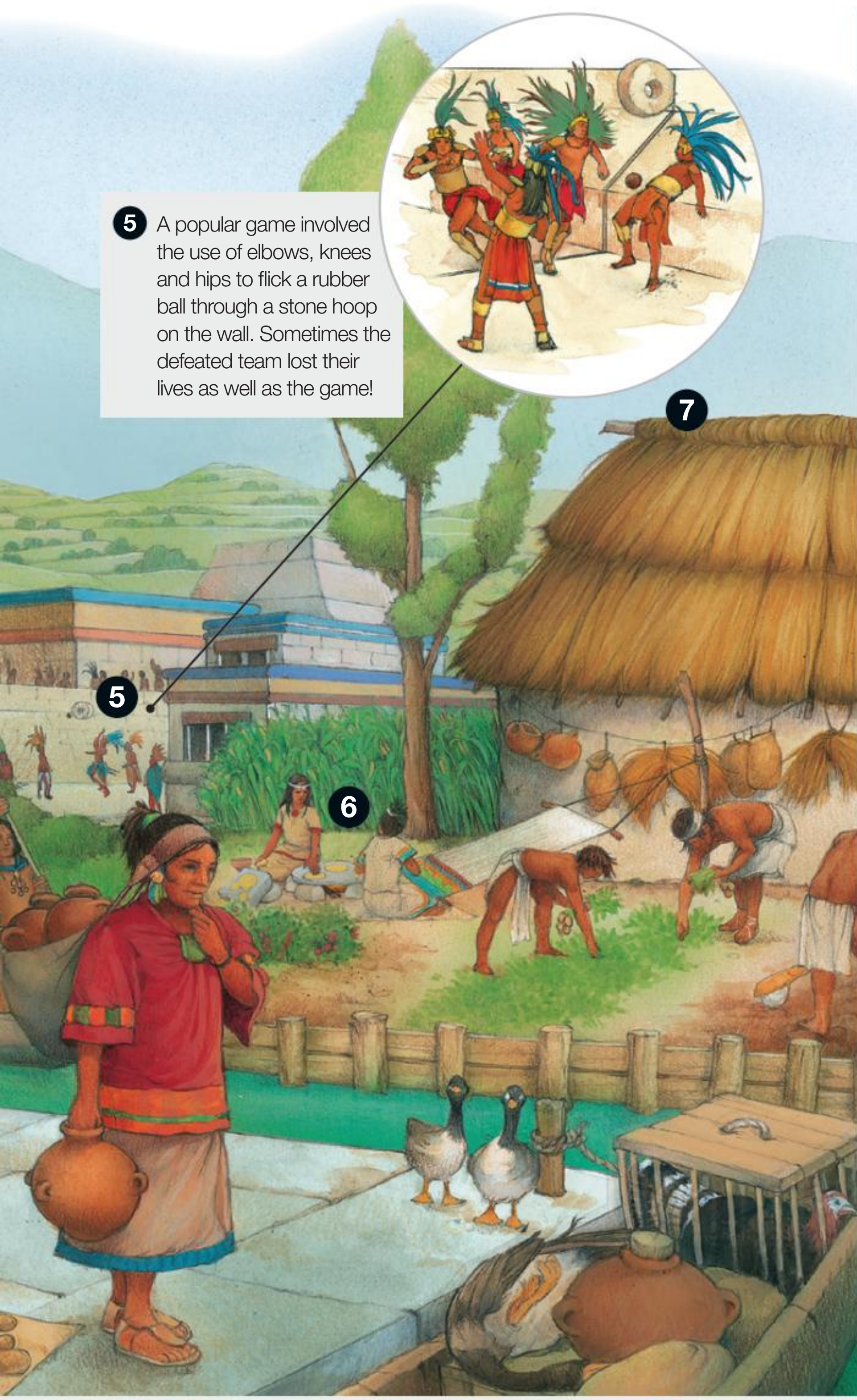
Interactive
Daily life in Tenochtitlan

Daily life in Tenochtitlan

Tenochtitlan was the bustling capital of Aztec society. According to legend, the Aztecs decided to settle here because they saw an eagle land on a cactus plant with a snake in its mouth. They believed this was a sign from their god, Huitzilopochtli. The city was built on five marshy islands in the middle of Lake Texcoco.

Source 28 An artist's impression of daily life in Tenochtitlan

1. When children were young, they were educated at home by their parents. By law, all Aztec children were required to attend school when they became teenagers. This included slaves and girls, which was unlike many other civilisations at the time. Boys and girls attended separate schools. Boys typically learned a trade, such as pottery or farming, whereas girls learned about religion.
2. The markets were the lively centre of the city. Merchants travelled great distances to the markets, by foot or canoe, to sell goods such as feathers, rubber, animal skins and foodstuffs.
3. The *Templo Mayor* (Great Temple) dominated the city. Huge numbers of people – and sometimes animals – were sacrificed at an altar on top of this pyramid to please the gods.



5 A popular game involved the use of elbows, knees and hips to flick a rubber ball through a stone hoop on the wall. Sometimes the defeated team lost their lives as well as the game!

4 Nobles dressed elaborately, with colourful clothing, jewellery and headdresses. They also wore masks during rituals for the Aztec gods. Clothing was important to nobles because they could trade it for a slave. For commoners, clothing for men was typically a length of plain cloth wrapped around the body and knotted on one shoulder. This assisted them in carrying goods. Women wrapped a piece of cloth around their hips and legs (much like a skirt), and added a loose top.

6 Maize (corn), the staple food of the Aztecs, was ground into a coarse flour to make tortillas (flat bread) to wrap around vegetables and meat.

7 A poor farming family's home on a *chinampa* (artificial island) was made of mud brick, and its roof was made of reeds.

11.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Where was Tenochtitlan located?

2 What was Tenochtitlan's population in 1519? How did this compare to Spain's largest city?

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the geographical limitations of the Valley of Mexico.

4 **Explain** why the tribute system was necessary for Tenochtitlan's survival, and suggest what would happen if a group did not pay its tributes.

Analyse

5 **Distinguish** between the clothing worn by commoners and the clothing worn by nobles. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you need to talk about how they are different.

Apply

6 **Investigate** how the Aztec built *chinampas*.

  a How have elements of the original Aztec *chinampa* method continued to exist today? What elements of this method have changed?

  b Present the results of your research as a step-by-step guide to constructing a *chinampa*. Include labelled and annotated images.

  c **Compare** the use of *chinampas* to the typical agricultural techniques used in Australia today. You may need to do some additional research to help you with this. Remember, you when compare things you must talk about how they are the same and different.

11A

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

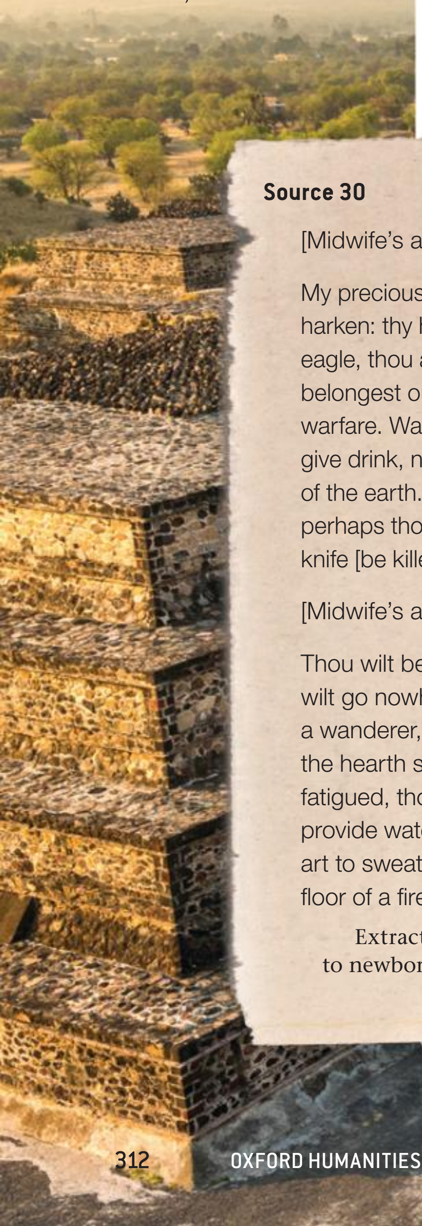
Life in the Aztec Empire

In the sixteenth century, Spanish conquistadors created many illustrated accounts of daily life in the Aztec Empire so that people at home in Spain could gain a better understanding of traditional Aztec culture. Each of these accounts was bound together to make a special kind of book known as a codex (plural codices). These codices – including the *Florentine Codex*, *Codex Mendoza* and *Codex Magliabecchiano* – have provided valuable information to historians about how the Aztec people lived.

The *Florentine Codex* is a 12-volume work that was completed over the course of three decades, from 1549 to 1579. It was compiled by a Spanish priest, along with indigenous writers and illustrators. It includes more than 2000 painted illustrations, and documents the culture and religious practices of the Aztecs at the time of the Spanish conquests.

The *Codex Mendoza* was commissioned by Spanish rulers in 1541 to create a record of the Aztec Empire. Illustrations were drawn by indigenous artists, with explanations written by Spanish priests. The *Codex Magliabecchiano* (see Source 20 on page 306) was created as a religious document in the mid-sixteenth century.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.



Source 29 A view of the pyramids of Teotihuacan located in the Valley of Mexico, near of Mexico

Source 30

[Midwife's address to newborn boys:]

My precious son, my youngest one … heed, harken: thy home is not here, for thou art an eagle, thou art an ocelotl [a jaguar] … Thou belongest out there … Thou hast been sent into warfare. War is thy desert, thy task. Thou shalt give drink, nourishment, food to the sun, the lord of the earth. Perhaps thou wilt receive the gift, perhaps thou wilt merit death by the obsidian knife [be killed as a sacrifice to the gods].

[Midwife's address to newborn girls:]

Thou wilt be in the heart of the home, thou wilt go nowhere, thou wilt nowhere become a wanderer, thou becomest the banked fire, the hearth stones … And thou wilt become fatigued, thou wilt become tired; thou art to provide water, to grind maize, to drudge; thou art to sweat by the ashes, by the hearth [the floor of a fireplace].

Extracts from addresses given by midwives to newborn boys and girls, as described in the *Florentine Codex*

Source 31 Illustrations from the *Codex Mendoza* show punishments for children who disregarded instructions from a parent – being forced to inhale dry chilli smoke, and being forced to lie on damp ground with bound hands and feet.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Determining the usefulness and reliability of sources

Primary sources are records produced during the period that is being studied or by someone with first-hand knowledge. They may be written documents such as letters, visual sources such as paintings or artefacts such as building remains. Historians examine these sources as evidence to help them determine what happened during a particular period of time. In doing so, they need to draw conclusions about their usefulness and reliability.

When determining if a source is reliable and useful, you should remember the following:

- Your opening sentence should answer the question by stating if the source is 'reliable and useful', is 'not reliable and useful', or is 'somewhat reliable and useful'. However, if you are saying that the source is 'somewhat reliable and useful', you must have one argument for and against this.
- Using explicit evidence (information that is clearly stated; not just suggested or implied) from the source is the most important thing to do when you are completing a source analysis. This could be a visual observation, a quote from the source (if it is written) or a caption.

Step 1 **Evaluate reliability:** When you are asked to determine if a source is reliable, your response should refer to one or both of the following:

- Is the source primary or secondary? Look at the year the source was created. Was it during the time period or by someone with first-hand knowledge?
- Is the source biased? Look at who created the source and why it might have been created.

Step 2 **Evaluate usefulness:** When you are asked to determine if a source is useful, your response should refer to one or more of the following:

- Is the source reliable?
- Is the source primary or secondary? Look at the year the source was created. Was it during the time period or by someone with first-hand knowledge?
- Is the source biased? Look at who created the source and why it might have been created.
- What is the source saying or showing that will assist me to answer the historical question?
- What additional information would I like that will help me to answer the historical question?

For more information on this skill, refer to page 207 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

Determine the usefulness of Sources 30 and 31 by answering the following questions for each one.

1. **Identify** the type of source (for example, illustration, diary entry, artefact).
2. **Identify** if this is a primary or secondary source and explain why.
3. **Describe** what the source tells you. Use specific evidence (for example, a quote or visual observation) to support your response.
4. Is the source reliable? Use specific evidence to **explain** your answer.
5. Is the source useful? Use specific evidence to **explain** your answer.

Extend your understanding

1. Choose a civilisation in the Americas, other than the Aztec, and **investigate** to find three primary sources for that civilisation.
   a. For each source, identify one feature that helps you to understand an aspect of the civilisation.
   b. Explain which source you believe to be the most reliable and why. Support your answer with reference to the source itself, who produced it, when it was produced and for what audience.

11.6 The Age of Exploration begins

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the reasons for the Spanish voyages of exploration and conquest
- understand the role of Christopher Columbus in the expansion of the Spanish empire.

Towards the end of the fifteenth century, great voyages of exploration were being undertaken by the Portuguese and the Spanish, as they sought new sea routes between Europe and Asia. This period became known as the 'Age of Exploration'. While the Portuguese sailed southwards, towards the tip of Africa, the Spanish looked to the west, across the Atlantic Ocean.

At this time, much of the world beyond Europe and Asia was unknown to Europeans, and navigating through unknown oceans was incredibly dangerous. Sailors could use the sun and stars to tell their latitude (how far north or south they were), but there were no reliable ways to establish longitude (how far east or west they were).

Nevertheless, the promise of wealth and riches from finding a new trading route to Asia was strong enough to outweigh the danger. European powers were seeking to expand their empires and establish foreign territories. They did this to gain wealth, power and religious converts. The explorers were attracted by the prospect of material wealth, and the adventure that new lands promised.

Source 1 This painting is called *First Landing of Columbus on the Shores of the New World – At San Salvador, West Indies, October 12, 1492*. Spanish painter Dioscoro Teofilo Puebla Tolin completed this work in 1892.

Analyse this!
First Landing of Columbus on the Shores of the New World – At San Salvador, West Indies, October 12, 1492

The voyages of Christopher Columbus

Spain's rulers, desperate to be more powerful than their European neighbours, were prepared to fund a risky voyage led by an Italian explorer, Christopher Columbus. On 3 August 1492, Columbus set sail from Palos, Spain, with three ships – the *Niña*, the *Pinta* and the *Santa Maria* – hoping to find a shortcut to the 'spice islands' of the East Indies (South Asia) and to reach the fabled lands of Cathay (China) and Cipango (Japan).

In October 1492, however, he landed in the Caribbean islands that are the present-day Bahamas, Cuba and Haiti. He thought that Cuba was Cipango (Japan) or perhaps part of the mainland of Asia. In further voyages, between 1493 and 1504, he landed on other islands in the Caribbean, and searched the Orinoco River in South America for a passage into the Pacific Ocean. Having failed to find one, he returned home in poor health. He died in 1506, still believing that he had achieved his aim of discovering a western route to Asia.

Explorers and conquistadors

Columbus was not the first European to arrive in the Americas. However, his voyage is significant because he started the process of colonisation and conquest that would transform the Americas and eventually go on to destroy the established civilisations there, including the Aztec and Inca Empires. The term 'pre-Columbian' is used to describe the period before the arrival of Europeans in the Americas.

After the journeys of Columbus, more than 200 ships brought more explorers and wealth-seekers from Spain to the Caribbean. Conquistadors such as Hernán Cortés and Francisco Pizarro took huge risks to explore unfamiliar territories in the hope of enormous reward.

Source 2 Spanish exploration and conquests – key events

1492	Columbus establishes a settlement at Hispaniola (now Haiti and the Dominican Republic), which becomes a launching ground for subsequent Spanish expeditions.
1508–10	Puerto Rico and Jamaica are captured. The first stable settlement on the continent is established in Panama in 1510, governed by Vasco Núez de Balboa.
1511	Cuba is invaded by Diego Velázquez.
1513	Florida, on the northern coast of the Caribbean, is discovered but not colonised by Juan Ponce de Leon.
1515	Balboa becomes the first European to see the Pacific Ocean after ascending a mountain on the Isthmus of Panama (the narrow strip of land that links North and South America).
1517–18	The Yucatán Peninsula – the lands of the Maya – are discovered by Hernández de Cordóba. Mexico's east coast is explored by Juan de Grijalva, who brings back gold trinkets and stories of rich tribes in the interior.
1518–21	An expedition led by Hernán Cortés reaches the Aztec capital, Tenochtitlan. His soldiers are driven out of the city in 1521, but with the help of Aztec allies, the Spanish capture and destroy the city. This marks the end of the Aztec Empire.
1522	Colonies are established in Venezuela ('little Venice'), in South America.
1528	The Inca coastline of South America is explored by Francisco Pizarro.
1530–33	Francisco Pizarro sails from Panama with a force of 180 men to conquer the Inca lands. Pizarro's forces capture the Inca ruler and gain control of the Incas' largest city, Cuzco. Resistance to the Spanish invaders finally ends in 1572.

Source 3 This magnificent replica of Columbus' flagship, the *Santa Maria*, was built in 1997–98.

Reasons for Spanish exploration and conquest

Spain's government and its people were motivated to explore and conquer new territories in the America's for a number of reasons (see Source 4). Historians often sum up these reasons as 'Gold, God and Glory'.

The quest for gold

Many explorers went in search of wealth, both for the Spanish Empire and for themselves. They hoped to find complex civilisations with great wealth that they could then conquer and **plunder**. Their earliest encounters in the Caribbean, however, did not promise such wealth. Nevertheless, some expeditions had seen tempting glimpses of great civilisations and artefacts made of gold and precious stones.

plunder
to steal from, often using violent force

Source 4 Reasons for Spanish exploration and conquest

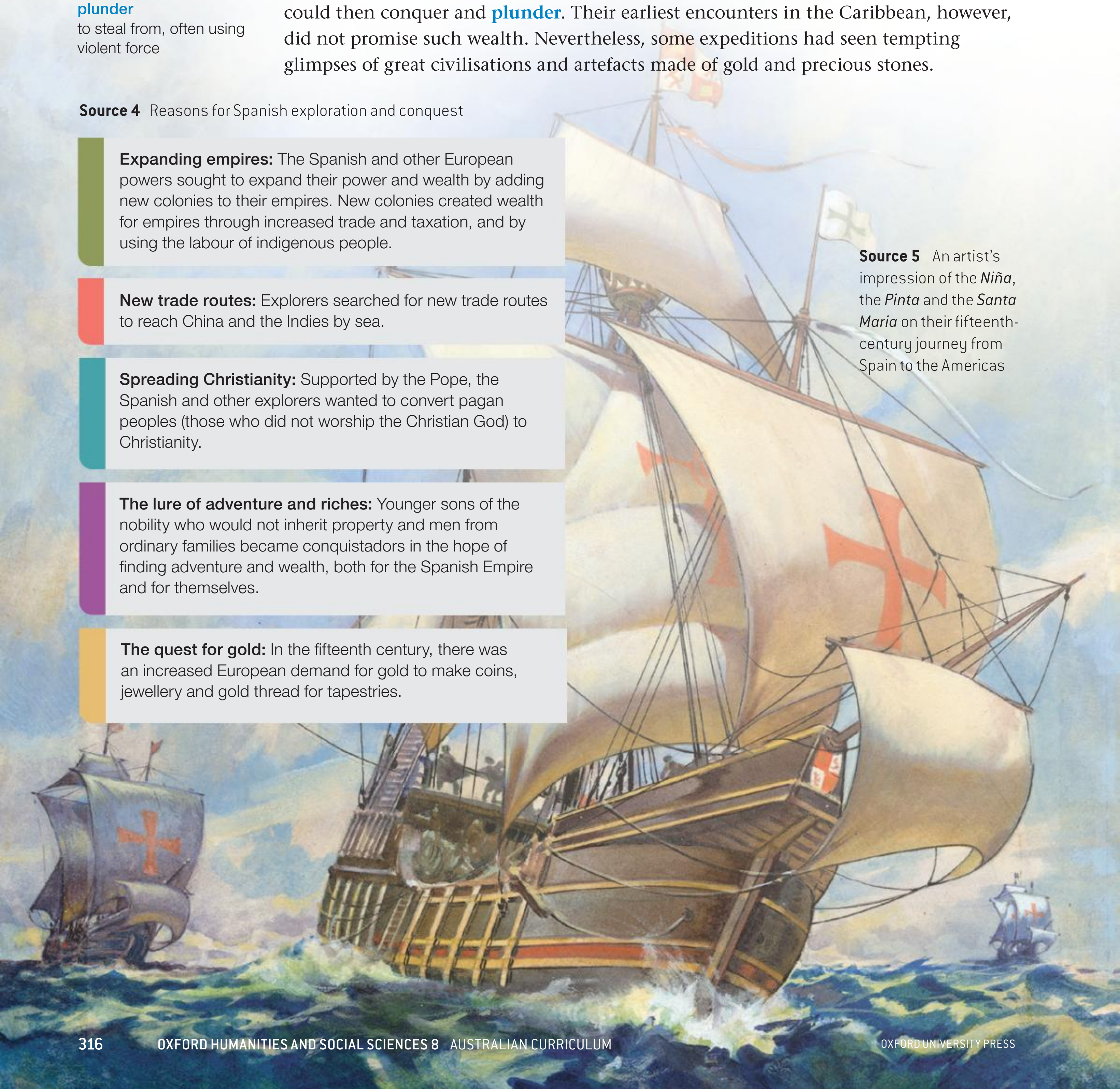
Expanding empires: The Spanish and other European powers sought to expand their power and wealth by adding new colonies to their empires. New colonies created wealth for empires through increased trade and taxation, and by using the labour of indigenous people.

New trade routes: Explorers searched for new trade routes to reach China and the Indies by sea.

Spreading Christianity: Supported by the Pope, the Spanish and other explorers wanted to convert pagan peoples (those who did not worship the Christian God) to Christianity.

The lure of adventure and riches: Younger sons of the nobility who would not inherit property and men from ordinary families became conquistadors in the hope of finding adventure and wealth, both for the Spanish Empire and for themselves.

The quest for gold: In the fifteenth century, there was an increased European demand for gold to make coins, jewellery and gold thread for tapestries.



Source 5 An artist's impression of the *Niña*, the *Pinta* and the *Santa Maria* on their fifteenth-century journey from Spain to the Americas

This encouraged a wave of further exploration and, in both Aztec and Inca territory, the Spanish plundered the wealth and treasures of the empires. Very few gold or silver artefacts have survived because most of the precious metals were melted down to create jewellery or other valuable items back in Spain.

Source 6 Aztec gold jewellery found in Tehuantepec in the 1870s, now held in the British Museum; the Spanish took vast quantities of gold and other precious metals from the empires they conquered in the Americas.

Wealth through tax and slavery

Conquest and colonisation also allowed the Spanish to gain further wealth through taxes. By colonising the Americas, the Spanish could continue to make money by taxing the local population. The Spanish collected the tribute lists from the Aztecs and continued to collect tributes. They also continued the Inca system of *mit'a* (compulsory labour), forcing men to work in the gold and silver mines.

Spanish settlers (usually conquistadors, soldiers or officials) were given responsibility for a certain number of indigenous people. In theory, they were supposed to protect these people, teach them Spanish and convert them to Catholicism. However, under a system called the *encomienda* (labour in exchange for benefits), the indigenous people were usually just kept as slaves.

New territories were also an important source of crops for Spain and for Europe. Many basic and exotic crops that had never been seen in Europe were brought back from the Americas. These included chocolate, tobacco, potatoes, tomatoes, bananas, chillies, corn, turkey, pumpkin, rubber, avocado, peanuts, vanilla and pineapple. Some of these crops, such as tobacco, were extremely valuable in monetary terms.

Spreading Christianity

An important motivation for colonisation, besides wealth, was the desire to spread Christianity to non-Christian peoples. The **Catholic Church** sent missionaries to the Americas to live in the newly established colonies. In fact, there were Catholic priests on some of the initial exploration missions.

Catholic Church the only Christian Church in Europe until the Protestants started breaking away from Rome in the sixteenth century

11.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the name of the island that Columbus thought was Japan?

2 **Define** the term 'pre-Columbian'.

3 How did the Spanish use taxes to gain wealth?

Comprehend

4 **Explain** what historians mean by the phrase 'Gold, God and Glory'.

5 **Explain** why the gold and silver artefacts found in the Americas did not remain intact.

6 Pick three reasons for the Spanish conquest of the Americas. Rank them in order of importance and **explain** why you have prioritised them this way.

Analyse

7 Choose one of the 5Rs (see page 305 and page 219 of 'The history toolkit') and use it to **analyse** the historical significance of Christopher Columbus.

8 **Examine** Source 1.

a Is this a primary or secondary source? Use evidence to explain your answer.

b How useful is this source? Use evidence to explain your answer.

Apply

9 **Create** a timeline that represents the key events during the Spanish exploration and conquests shown in Source 2. Ensure that the events are sequenced in chronological order, include an even scale, and accurately apply timeline features and terminology.

11.7 The Spanish conquest of the Aztecs

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- identify key events in the Spanish conquest of the Aztecs
- describe encounters between Cortés and the Aztecs.

Sequence this!
The Spanish conquest of the Aztecs

Hernán Cortés was a Spanish conquistador chosen by the governor of Cuba to lead an expedition to the mainland of South America. Like many others, Cortés had come to the Caribbean to escape the poverty of his hometown in Spain and to seek fame and fortune.

In 1519, Cortés set sail with 11 ships and 530 conquistadors. He also took 16 horses and several large fighting dogs. Cortés intended to conquer and colonise on behalf of the king of Spain and in the name of Christianity. He also intended to find the strait that separated the 'island' of Yucatán from the 'mainland', in the hope of finding a route to Asia, as it was still believed that China and India were close by.

First contacts, first conflicts

When the conquistadors landed on the eastern coast of Mexico, they heard tales of the powerful Aztec king called Montezuma, who ruled from his capital at Tenochtitlan, several days' march from the coast.

Cortés' first contact with the indigenous peoples of the Americas was with the Totonac people, who were subjects of the Aztecs. The Totonacs promised to support Cortés in the overthrow of their Aztec masters. The support of indigenous groups who resented the domination of the Aztecs was an important aspect of Spanish conquest.

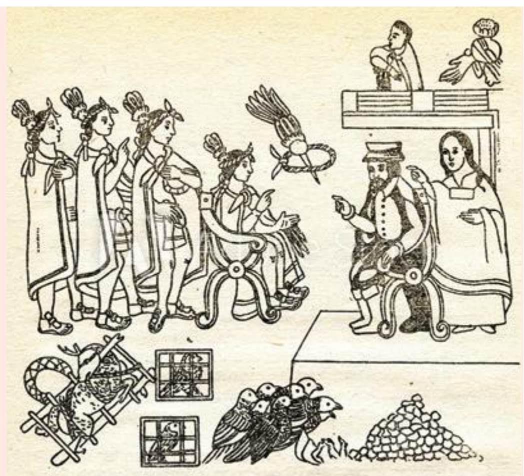
KEY CONCEPT
Significance

La Malinche

La Malinche was an individual who played an important role in the Spanish conquest of the Americas. Her father was the leader of an Aztec clan, which meant that she received an education and could speak multiple languages. When her father died, her mother sold her to slave traders, and eventually she became a slave of the Totonacs.

In 1519, Cortés and the Spanish had their first encounter with the Totonacs. La Malinche was one of the slaves given to the Spanish when the Totonacs and the Spanish formed their alliance. She became Cortés' interpreter and was the mother of his first son, who was the first person of European and indigenous parentage.

Today, there is historical debate on whether La Malinche was a hero or a traitor. This is because while she is believed to have prevented Cortés from taking the lives of more indigenous people, she also relayed messages that led to much devastation.



Source 7 Cortés and La Malinche with Montezuma in Tenochtitlan, 1519

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Cortés set out for Tenochtitlan in August 1519, having added 800 Totonacs to his force of conquistadors. They encountered and fought the Tlaxcalans, an indigenous people whose territories lay midway between the coast and Tenochtitlan. After being defeated, the Tlaxcalans agreed to become allies and march to Tenochtitlan. Cortés then reached Cholula, a town close to the high mountains, where he stayed for several days. The Cholulans were allies of the Aztecs, and were planning to ambush and capture the conquistadors on the road. Cortés learnt of the plan and summoned the Cholulan leaders. They arrived unarmed to the temple courtyard, where they were slaughtered by the Spanish conquistadors.

Source 8 An artist's impression of conquistadors slaughtering the local population at Cholula, in what is now central Mexico

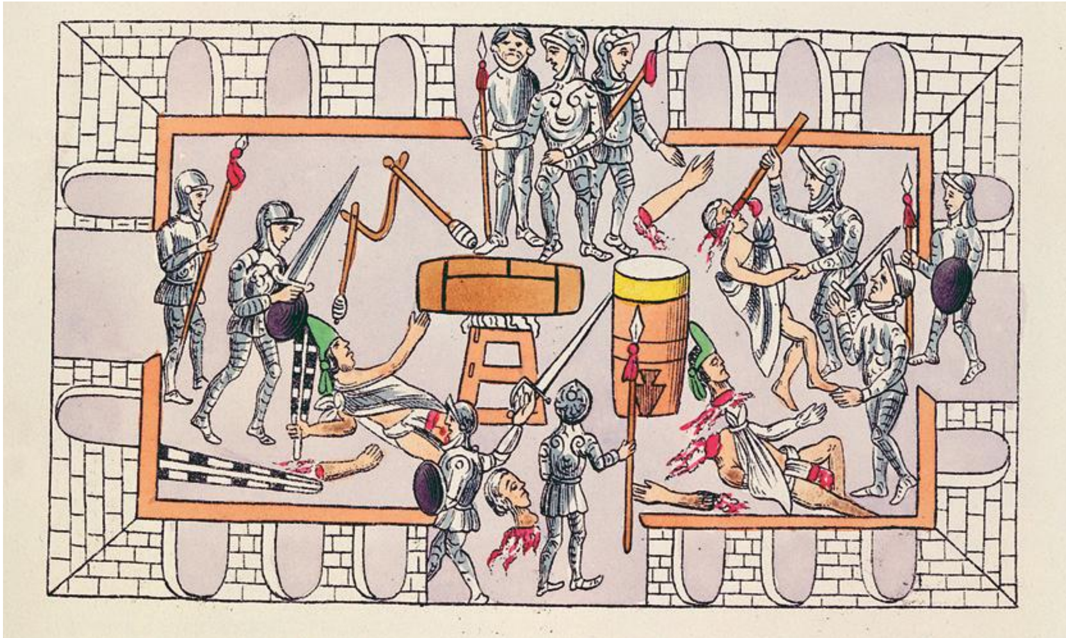
The first allies of Cortés, the Totonacs, returned to their homes laden with gifts from the Spanish, and Cortés left Cholula with a force of around 1000 Tlaxcalans. He chose to cross the mountains over the most difficult pass (now known as Paso Cortés) to surprise the Aztecs.

The conquistadors in Tenochtitlan

The conquistadors reached Tenochtitlan in November 1519. Montezuma met Cortés on the causeway (a raised path) leading into the city. At first, Montezuma believed that Cortés had been sent by the god Quetzalcoatl, but he soon realised that the Spanish were actually after land and treasure. As relations became less friendly, Cortés took Montezuma as a hostage and sent expeditions into the countryside in search of gold, while he continued to collect any treasure he could find in Tenochtitlan.

In May 1520, while Cortés was out of Tenochtitlan, the Spanish massacred a group of Aztec nobles during a festival. This led to an uprising of the city's inhabitants, and Cortés returned to find that the conquistadors had lost control of Tenochtitlan. Montezuma is thought to have been killed by the crowds at this time. In July 1520, the Spanish tried to quietly withdraw from Tenochtitlan in the middle of the night. However, they were discovered and their withdrawal

Source 9 A coloured lithograph created in 1892, showing the fateful first meeting of Cortés and Montezuma



Source 10 An illustration of the massacre of Aztec nobles during a festival, from the *Codex Ixtlilxochitl*, an early seventeenth-century codex fragment

became a desperate fight to escape. Cortés managed to get away unharmed, but hundreds of Spanish soldiers and Tlaxcalans were killed.

The Aztecs believed the Spanish threat was over after they had driven the invaders out of Tenochtitlan; but smallpox had arrived with the Spanish conquistadors, and soon killed around a quarter of the Aztec population of Mexico.

After escaping from the city, the Spanish retreated to the territory of their Tlaxcalan allies. Cortés rested his army for 20 days, and then set off on a campaign to conquer the Aztecs' allies in the surrounding regions. This was the most brutal campaign conducted by Cortés. He won over half of the Aztec territories, with the indigenous people being forced to support the conquistadors. An estimated 15 000 to 20 000 people died in battle; women and children were enslaved, and some captives were given to the Tlaxcalans for human sacrifice and to cannibalise. Other tribes joined the Spanish willingly, to help end the rule of the Aztecs.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the factors that led to the conquistadors taking Tenochtitlan and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

The destruction of Tenochtitlan

In May 1521, Cortés returned to Tenochtitlan and laid **siege** to the city with a force of 550 Spanish soldiers and 10 000 Tlaxcalans. As well as carrying out daily attacks, he used boats to cut off supplies of food, and destroyed the **aqueduct** that brought fresh water into the city.

The Aztecs, who were already vulnerable after the smallpox epidemic, were finally overcome after a three-month siege. Cortés had originally intended to preserve Tenochtitlan and offer it to the Spanish king as a prize. However, after months of bombardment by Spanish cannons, the once-great city lay in ruins.

The Spanish built a new city on top of the ruins of Tenochtitlan. Stones from the temples, pyramids and palaces were used to build churches and government buildings. The canals that had criss-crossed Tenochtitlan were filled in.

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

aqueduct
a construction – such as a series of pipes or canals – that carries water from a source to a destination further away

Reasons for Spanish success

Historians estimate that around 100 000 Aztecs were killed during the three months that Cortés laid siege to Tenochtitlan. Tens of thousands of Aztecs and other peoples had also been killed as a result of Cortés' military campaigns. In contrast, the Spanish lost fewer than 1000 of the 1800 conquistadors who came to Mexico between 1519 and 1521.

Source 11 Spanish advantages over the Aztecs in battle

	Spanish	Aztec
Weapons	• used steel for their armour and weapons • used gunpowder with powerful cannons and firearms • used horses in battle; before the Spanish came, the Aztecs had never seen horses and were initially frightened of them	• fought with wooden clubs and swords made of obsidian (a hard but brittle form of volcanic rock), which broke against the armour and swords of the conquistadors
Battle tactics	• were well trained in disciplined military manoeuvres; a smaller Spanish force could defeat a larger Aztec force as long as they could maintain their energy	• had a tradition of running at their enemies head on; this meant that only the front ranks could fight, to be replaced by rear ranks as they were cut down
Fighting traditions	• killed enemies from a distance with cannons and guns, retreated when battles were being lost, and attacked villages at night when the inhabitants were asleep	• believed that killing from a distance was not honourable; Aztec battles were highly organised and fought hand-to-hand • were used to only wounding their opponents rather than killing (to capture them for sacrifice); this would often give the Spanish a chance to escape from battle to return to fight another day

11.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the purpose of the expedition led by Hernán Cortés in 1519?

2 **Identify** the tribes that were allies of the Spanish.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the incident that caused the Aztecs in Tenochtitlan to rise up against the conquistadors in 1520.

4 **Describe** the tactics Cortés used in his successful siege of Tenochtitlan.

Analyse

5 Choose one of the 5Rs (see page 305 and page 219 of 'The history toolkit') and use it to **analyse** the historical significance of La Malinche.

6 **Examine** Source 9.

a Identify the type of source that is shown.

b Describe the scene shown in the source. Give specific detail and evidence to support your response.

c Is this source primary or secondary? Use evidence to explain your response.

d Is this an accurate source? Use evidence to explain your answer.

Apply

7 'The Aztecs never stood a chance at defeating the Spanish.' To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a 200-word paragraph explaining your position. You should refer to Source 11 and include two reasons to **justify** (give reasons for) your response.

8 Imagine that you are an Aztec survivor of the siege of Tenochtitlan. Write an account of what you experienced. Draw on the evidence from this topic to help write an account that has a beginning, middle and end.

11B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Why the Spanish won

Historians have considered a number of reasons why the Spanish were able to cause the downfall of the Aztec Empire with a relatively small force of conquistadors, compared to the huge indigenous population.

The Spanish had superior weapons and benefited from the way in which the Aztec warriors fought. Although Aztec warriors were fiercely courageous, they were on foot and only had wooden clubs, bows and arrows with which to fight. By comparison, the Spanish had horses, steel swords, crossbows, rifles and cannons. In addition, it was so important to Aztec warriors to take live captives that they often ended up fighting the Spanish twice – conquistadors who were captured were rescued, and could then fight again.

The Spanish were impressed with the courage of the Aztec warriors, but they could also not understand why they did not surrender when Spanish victory became clear. However, the Aztecs would never have surrendered. They saw the conquistadors as unpredictable, cowardly and unwilling to follow the rules of battle. Such people were not to be negotiated with.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 12 An Aztec depiction of a battle with the Spanish, from *History of Tlaxcala*, a sixteenth-century codex

Source 13

On the second day [of the festival] they began to sing again, but without warning they were all put to death. The dancers and singers were completely unarmed. They brought only their embroidered cloaks … their necklaces, their clusters of heron feathers, their trinkets made of deer hooves … The Spaniards attacked the musicians first, slashing at their hands and faces until they had killed all of them. The singers – and even the spectators – were also killed. This slaughter in the Sacred Patio went on for three hours … The king Motecuhzoma [Montezuma] … protested: 'Our lords, that is enough! What are you doing? These people are not carrying shields or macanas [wooden clubs]. Our lords, they are completely unarmed!'… [The massacre took place] on the twentieth day after the captain [Cortés] left for the coast. We allowed the Captain to return to the city in peace. But on the following day we attacked him with all our might, and that was the beginning of the war.

Extract from an Aztec account of the slaughter of warriors during a festival in May 1520

Source 14

[The Aztec ruler Cuauhtemoc] would prefer to die where he was rather than on any account appear before me … The people of the city had to walk upon their dead while others swam or drowned in the waters of that wide lake where they had their canoes; indeed, so great was their suffering that it was beyond our understanding how they could endure it. Countless numbers of men, women and children came out toward us, and in their eagerness to escape many were pushed into the water where they drowned amid that multitude of corpses; and it seemed that more than fifty thousand had perished from the salt water they had drunk, their hunger and the vile stench. So that we should not discover the plight which they were in, they dared neither throw these bodies into the water … nor throw them [out of the city] where the soldiers might see them; and so in those streets where they were, they came across such piles of the dead that we were forced to walk upon them …

Extract from a letter by Hernan Cortés, describing the end of the siege of Tenochtitlan, in Anthony Pagden (ed.), Anthony Pagden (trans.), *Letters from Mexico*, Yale University Press, 1986, pp. 263–4

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Generating historical inquiry questions

One of the first and most important steps in conducting a historical inquiry is to generate or pose key questions. These questions will frame and direct the research you then undertake. Usually, historians generate one broad question for their inquiry such as: 'What were the reasons for the Spanish victory in the siege of Tenochtitlan?'

After that, you need to generate more specific questions that are related to your overall inquiry question. You can use the following steps to help you develop questions to guide your historical inquiry.

Step 1 Think about what you already know about the topic. Use this knowledge as a springboard for questions that will help you to understand the topic in more depth. Brainstorm everything you know.

Step 2 List, in point form, all the things that you already know about the topic.

Step 3 List, in point form, all the things that you would like/need to know about the topic.

Step 4 Use these two lists to develop a series of questions that will aid your research. You will need to generate three types of questions:

- simple or closed questions, such as 'How did the siege of Tenochtitlan begin?'
- open or probing questions, such as 'How important was the impact of the smallpox epidemic in the downfall of Tenochtitlan?'
- questions that relate to the process of historical inquiry, such as 'What evidence is there that Aztec weapons and tactics gave the advantage to the Spanish conquistadors?'

For more information on this skill, refer to page 201 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Use the process described above to generate one overarching question about the reasons for Spanish success in their conquest of the Aztec Empire. Then develop at least six questions that will help you to address this 'big' question. Make sure that you use at least one of each of the three different types of questions (simple or closed questions, open or probing questions, or questions that relate to the process of historical inquiry).

You should use the material in this unit and the additional sources provided in this Skills in Context task.

Extend your understanding

1 Break into groups of three with your classmates. In your groups, **create** a role-play that includes the three main groups of the Siege of Tenochtitlan. Instead of fighting, you will speak to each other and explain your motivations.

a Between you, decide who will play which role:
- the Aztecs
- the Spanish
- the Tlaxcalans.

b Locate relevant information in this textbook, and go online to find any extra information you need.

c Write some dot points to take into your role-play. You might want to refer to them, but don't rely on them – remember, it should be a conversation between all three groups!

11.8 The Spanish colonisation of Mexico

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the short- and long-term effects of the Spanish conquest

» describe the impact of the Spanish conquest on the indigenous populations of the Americas.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Spanish colonisation of Mexico

New Spain
claimed Spanish territory during the colonisation of the Americas (1521–1821), including parts of North and South America, as well as some Pacific Islands

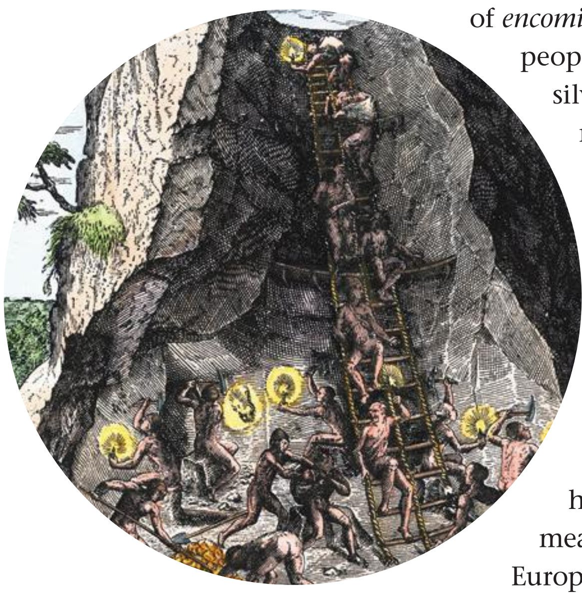
The defeat of the Aztecs by Hernán Cortés encouraged other conquistadors in their dreams of conquest and wealth. By the mid-sixteenth century, Spain controlled territories more than 10 times the size of Spain itself. The Spanish Empire became one of the greatest trading empires of the early modern world, and lasted until the end of the nineteenth century.

The destruction of Tenochtitlan by Cortés was the beginning of 300 years of Spanish rule in the former Aztec Empire. From Tenochtitlan, Cortés sent expeditions out in all directions to expand Spanish settlement. Territories were divided up and ruled by Cortés, his Spanish companions and even a few Aztecs who had become Christians, such as the son and daughter of Montezuma. Each town was governed by a conquistador, who was meant to ensure that the indigenous peoples under his protection became Christians and good subjects of the Spanish king. In return, the conquistador required their payment of a tribute and their services.

Treatment of the conquered Aztecs

A remarkable characteristic of Spanish settlement was the part played by indigenous peoples, including the Tlaxcalans and Aztecs. Their leaders were permitted to ride horses and dress as the Spanish did, and they played an important role in bringing outlying tribes under the rule of **New Spain**. In two to three generations, their descendants became indistinguishable in habits and speech from the grandchildren of conquistadors.

In contrast to the way some of the indigenous leaders were treated, however, the Spanish treated the ordinary indigenous peoples very badly. The system of *encomienda*, which had been put in place to protect the indigenous peoples, in practice enslaved them. The Spanish, greedy for gold and silver, forced the indigenous peoples to work in the gold and silver mines of the Americas, where they were brutally treated and sometimes worked to death.



Source 1 An illustration of one of the large silver mines established by the Spanish

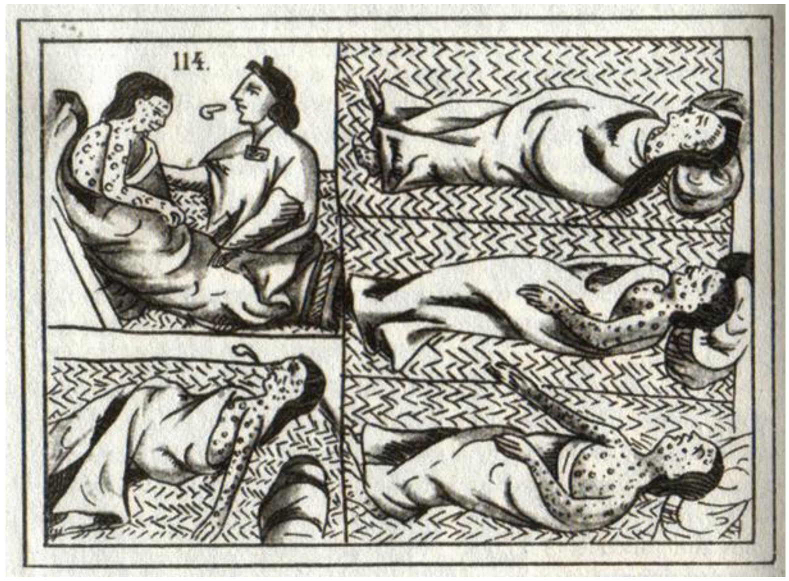
Short-term effects of Spanish colonisation

The spread of European diseases in the Americas

Before the arrival of the Spanish, civilisations in the Americas had never been exposed to people from beyond their region. This meant that they had no immunity to diseases that were common in Europe. The Spanish, in contrast, came from a continent that had been devastated by epidemics for hundreds of years. Most Europeans had some immunity to diseases such as smallpox, measles and influenza.

When these diseases accompanied the conquistadors to the Americas, however, outbreaks among indigenous peoples severely reduced their populations.

There were major outbreaks of smallpox in the 1520s, a measles outbreak from 1531 to 1532, and influenza outbreaks in 1545 and 1576. Plague, whooping cough and mumps also spread. It has been estimated that the indigenous populations in the Spanish colonies dropped by around 75 per cent between 1518 and the 1560s. Some have argued that the effect of these diseases in the Caribbean and South America was worse than that of the **Black Death**. It has been claimed that 90 per cent of the inhabitants of the Inca Empire died from introduced diseases.



Source 2 This drawing from the *Florentine Codex* – by Bernardino de Sahagún, a sixteenth-century Spanish missionary – shows an indigenous man infected with smallpox.

The spread of Christianity

After the Spanish conquest, priests came to set up the Catholic Church in Mexico and other colonies, and carried out thousands of conversions to Christianity. The rapidity of conversion was remarkable, with hundreds of thousands of indigenous people becoming Catholic. Spanish colonies were soon covered in a network of **monasteries**, churches, shrines and parishes. Out of sight of the priests, many indigenous people continued to worship their old gods, but without the element of human sacrifice.

Black Death
a deadly plague that spread across Asia, Europe and Africa during the fourteenth century

monasteries
places where monks live, worship and work

Agriculture and food

From 1522, Cortés brought in European domestic animals – such as cattle, pigs, sheep, goats and mules – from the Caribbean to the mainland of the Americas, and introduced horses to the local populations. He also imported sugar cane, mulberry trees for silkworms, vines, olives and wheat.

European learning and technologies

The conquered peoples adapted quickly to the new European ways – learning Latin script and how to use the wheel and pulley, employing wax candles for light, and working with mules and oxen. They also learnt the advantages of metal nails and screws.

Source 3 The Spanish introduced domestic horses to the Americas as a result of Cortés' expedition.

Long-term effects of Spanish colonisation

Think, pair, share

- Think about the short-term and long-term effects of Spanish colonisation in the Americas. Are there any other effects you can think of that have not been discussed here?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

The colonisation of the New World

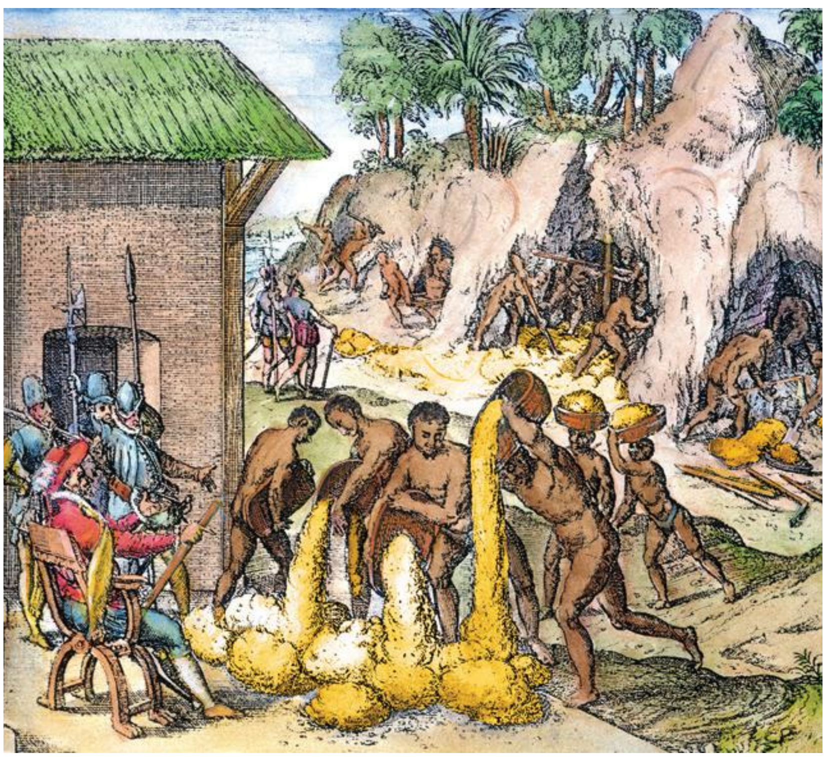
Explorers from other countries were motivated by Spain's success in finding wealth and new land in the Americas. The initial voyage of Christopher Columbus started a wave of exploration in North and South America by the British, French and Dutch. Spain's great rival, Portugal, also set up colonies in the Americas. Eventually the entire continents came under the control of colonial powers.

Population change, language and religion

Spanish colonisation dramatically changed the ethnic make-up of the Americas. First, many of the indigenous populations were killed by disease. Then, many Spanish people migrated to the Americas after colonisation began. Approximately 240 000 moved to the Americas in the sixteenth century, and another 500 000 in the following century.

One of the legacies of the conquistadors was the spread of the Spanish language, which is by far the most common language in Latin America now. In fact, it is the second most widely spoken language in the world, after Mandarin. However, Brazil's main language is Portuguese. This can be traced back to the Treaty of Tordesillas of 1494. This stated that all lands discovered west of a line drawn from the North Pole to the South Pole through the Atlantic Ocean – and including part of South America – should belong to Spain, and all to the east of the line to Portugal.

The Catholic Church also expanded its worldwide influence after Spanish conquest, spreading to distant regions in South America, Africa and the Philippines.



Source 4 African slaves at work in the mines of Hispaniola (now Haiti and the Dominican Republic); Africans were first brought to the Caribbean as slaves to replace the indigenous Taino people, many of whom had died from disease and overwork.

African slave trade

In the Caribbean, the brutal treatment of the local populations meant that most of them died or were not fit to work on the plantations established by the Spanish. To solve this problem, the Spanish brought shiploads of African slaves to work in the Caribbean and other parts of the Americas in the mid-sixteenth century. This led to an additional change in the ethnic make-up of the population, as outlined above, so that the majority were no longer indigenous but European and African.

A wider impact was the growth of the African slave trade, which became the reason behind one of the great movements of people during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. It is estimated that around 12 million

Africans were captured and brought to the Caribbean, South America and Britain's North American colonies before the trade in humans was finally abolished in the nineteenth century.

The Columbian Exchange

The most significant changes resulting from the Spanish colonisation of the Americas in other parts of the world related to the introduction of new crops to Europe and Asia. Imagine Ireland without potatoes, Italy without tomatoes, Switzerland without chocolate, or Thailand without chillies. All these foods were unknown outside the Americas before the Spanish arrived, but became very important to the diets of these countries.

The 'Columbian Exchange' is the term used for the widespread transfer of crops, livestock, people and disease between the Americas and the rest of the world after Columbus arrived in the Americas.

The foods that were brought from the Americas became important sources of nutrition for European populations. Crops such as potatoes and peanuts allowed for more efficient farming, as they could yield more calories per acre than previously grown crops. In addition, foods such as tomatoes and chillies were rich sources of vitamins. In the Mediterranean, such foods enriched diets and improved the health of the population. These improvements in health and nutrition helped to trigger population growth in Europe and other regions.

Source 5 Chillies and maize (corn) are two examples of foods that were unknown outside the Americas before the travels of Columbus.

11.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the diseases that the Europeans introduced to the Americas and identify how many people are estimated to have died from them.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how colonisation changed the population in the Americas.

3 **Summarise** why the new food crops from the Americas were so important to the rest of the world.

Analyse

4 **Compare** the way the Spanish treated the indigenous leaders of the Americas and the ordinary people. Remember, when you compare two things, you must talk about how they are similar and different.

5 **Analyse** the effects of the Spanish conquest on either Aztec or European society. Did it lead to progress or decline in your chosen society? Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts and talk about how they relate to each other.

Apply

6 'The Spanish conquest of the Americas led to the progress of Aztec society.' To what extent do you agree with this? A lot (strongly), a little bit (somewhat) or not at all? Write a 200-word paragraph answering this question, including at least two reasons to **justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

7 **Investigate** the wider impact of one of the following aspects of Spanish conquest in the Americas:
- the introduction of European diseases
- forced labour and slavery in the service of Spanish colonisers
- the spread of Christianity
- the introduction of European crops and livestock
- the introduction of European culture and technologies.

Present your findings in a way that would help other students understand the impact of the Spanish conquest on the indigenous peoples of the Americas.

11C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Impact of the Spanish conquest of the Americas

This chapter has concentrated on the Aztec Empire, but the treatment of the Aztecs was typical of the way indigenous populations in the Americas were treated by European colonisers.

Huge numbers of indigenous people in the Americas died through disease, warfare and brutal working conditions under Spanish rule. Some historians think that the Aztec population declined from 25 million in 1520 to 2.6 million by 1570, and that the Inca population declined from 3.3 million in 1520 to 1.3 million by 1570.

Local religious, cultural and social institutions were dismantled by the colonisers. It took hundreds of years for indigenous populations in the Americas to recover from the effects of colonisation, and some historians suggest they never did.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 6 A sixteenth-century illustration depicting the arrival of Hernán Cortés and his conquistadors in the Aztec Empire

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing a historical discussion

Historical discussions present different opinions about particular historical questions or issues. Follow these steps to research and write your own historical discussion.

Step 1 Consider evidence from a range of sources, and outline different possible interpretations of that evidence.

- Consider relevant primary sources.
- Consider the ideas of other historians, presented in secondary sources such as textbooks and websites.
- Record the sources of all of your information.

Step 2 Make a decision about your view on the issue. Decide what arguments you are going to make, and how you will support them.

Step 3 Write up your discussion. Your discussion should include all the elements listed in Source 7.

Source 7 Elements of a historical discussion

Introduction	Introduce the topic and the questions or issues to be explored.
Main body	The main body of your discussion is a series of paragraphs that outline different arguments related to the questions or issues. Each point should be supported with evidence.
Conclusion	Sum up the material and give your opinion. Do not say 'I'; instead, say something like 'the evidence suggests …'
Involvement of sources in your writing	In addition to referencing all of your sources, you should indicate the sources of some of your information as part of your discussion.
Bibliography	All written and internet sources must be acknowledged. See page 203 of 'The history toolkit' for more on how to reference.

Practise the skill

1 Read the following statement. Write an extended response about whether you agree or disagree with the statement. Follow the steps and elements listed on page 328 to help you.

> 'In the end, the people of the Americas gained more than they lost by the Spanish conquests.'
>
> Extract from Tim Stanley, 'Two cheers for the conquistadors', *History Today* website, 2011

Extend your understanding

1 **Examine** Source 8 and describe the activities presented in the mural.
   - **a** What do you think the artist is saying about the Spanish conquest of the Americas?
   - **b** Create a photo montage or artwork that represents your own depiction of the events and impact of the Spanish conquest of the Americas.

Source 8 This 1951 mural by Mexican painter Diego Rivera, titled *The Conquest or Arrival of Hernán Cortés in Veracruz*, shows details of Spain's colonial domination of the indigenous peoples of Mexico.

11 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the paragraphs below and respond to the questions that follow.

The *Codex Mendoza*

The *Codex Mendoza* was created approximately 20 years after the Spanish conquest of the Americas. It includes a history of Aztec rulers, as well as a description of daily life in Aztec society before the arrival of the Spanish. The Codex gives us an insight into the lives of the Aztecs and is one of best remaining sources about the Aztec Empire.

The Codex is named after Don Antonio de Mendoza, a Spanish official who governed in New Spain for 15 years. In around 1540, he ordered that the Codex be created so that Charles V, the King of Spain, could see what life was like in Aztec society. The Codex was created on European paper and bound in the European style, but the illustrations were drawn in the style of the Aztec peoples.

The cover page, pictured in Source 9, depicts the great city of Tenochtitlan. The city is divided into four parts by blue-green lines that historians believe represent the city's canals.

At the bottom of the image, there are two scenes of military conquest. The Aztec warriors are depicted as strong warriors, towering over the men that they are fighting.

In the centre of the page, you can see an eagle on a cactus. This comes from the Aztec myth of how Tenochtitlan was founded.

Source 9 The cover page of the *Codex Mendoza*, created around 1541 on the orders of Spanish settler Don Antonio de Mendoza

1 **Identify** whether Source 9 is a primary or secondary source. (1 mark)

2 **Explain** your answer to question 1. (3 marks)

3 **Summarise** the purpose of the *Codex Mendoza*. (3 marks)

4 **Summarise** how the *Codex Mendoza* was named. (2 marks)

5 **Identify** one symbol or illustration that represents each of the following elements in Source 9:
- religion and rituals
- war and military
- geography and landscape. (3 marks)

6 Using Source 9 and your knowledge of Tenochtitlan, **describe** the geography of the city. (2 marks)

7 Look closely at Source 9 to answer the following questions about the Aztec's military power.
   a **Identify** and **describe** the section of the source that shows military power. (3 marks)
   b Although the Codex was commissioned (ordered) by the Spaniard Don Antonio de Mendoza, the illustrations were created by Aztec people. Suggest how this might influence the reliability of the depiction of Aztecs as warriors. (3 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe significant features of the Maya, Inca and Aztec civilisations.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.2, page 296.
Describe the social organisation of the Aztecs.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.3, page 300.
Describe the key religious beliefs of the Aztecs.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.4, page 304.
Describe life in the capital city of Tenochtitlan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.5, page 308.
Explain the reasons for the Spanish voyages of exploration and conquest. Understand the role of Christopher Columbus in the expansion of the Spanish empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.6, page 314.
Identify key events in the Spanish conquest of the Aztecs. Describe encounters between Cortés and the Aztecs.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.7, page 318.
Explain the short- and long-term effects of the Spanish conquest. Describe the impact of the Spanish conquest on the indigenous populations of the Americas.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 11.8, page 324.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 11

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 11

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on the Spanish conquest of the Americas.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 11

CHAPTER 12

The Vikings

Norse people (that is, people from the North) came from the region we now know as Denmark, Sweden and Norway. In the late eighth century CE, the Norse people began to voyage by sea from their homelands, beginning an era of raids (surprise attacks) and violence. For the next 200 years – a period known as the Viking Age – they were feared by people across Europe as fierce plunderers. Monasteries and towns were ransacked, and many people were killed or taken prisoner. This behaviour earned Norse people the title *Vikingr*, which probably meant 'pirate' in early Scandinavian languages.

By around 1000 CE, however, Vikings began settling in many of the places they had formerly raided. Some Viking leaders were given areas of land or money by foreign rulers in exchange for promises to stop the raids. Around this time, most Vikings stopped worshipping Norse gods and became Christians.

Source 1 A replica of a Viking longship in a national park in Norway; longships were used to raid and settle new territories.

12A
How was Viking society organised?

12B
What developments led to Viking expansion?

12C
How did Viking conquests change societies?

12.1 The Vikings: a timeline

Sequence this!
Events in the history of the Vikings

The remains of the monastery at Lindisfarne, in north-east England

1 CE — 700 — 800

787
The first Viking attack on England takes place.

793
Vikings raid St Cuthbert's monastery on the island of Lindisfarne in England.

795
Viking raids begin in Ireland.

799
Viking raids begin in France.

867
Viking raiders (from modern-day Denmark) settle in northern England.

870
The first Viking settlement is set up in Ireland.

878
Alfred the Great (King of Wessex) makes a treaty with Danish Vikings. They are given control of an area of east England in which to settle and trade (known as the *Danelaw*).

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in the history of the Vikings

An artist's impression of Viking raiders arriving in longships on the French coast

A modern statue of the explorer Leif Ericson, in Greenland

The Bayeux Tapestry, a medieval embroidery, shows the events leading up to and including the victory of the Normans over the English at the Battle of Hastings.

900 — 1000 — 1100 CE

911
The King of France makes a treaty with invading Vikings led by Rollo. The Vikings are given a tract of land, which later becomes known as Normandy.

930
The first *Althing* (Viking parliament) is held in Iceland.

***c.* 985**
Erik the Red is banished from Iceland for three years for murder. He sails west and discovers Greenland.

991
In a bid to stop Viking invasions in England, the English King, Ethelred, pays Danish Vikings the first of many tax payments, known as the *Danegeld* (Danes' gold).

***c.* 1001**
Leif Ericson, son of Erik the Red, sails east from Greenland to reach Labrador in North America. A small settlement is set up there, but is abandoned by 1015.

1015
Danish Prince Cnut invades England. He becomes King of England in 1016 (and later of Denmark and Norway).

1066
In England, King Edward dies and Harold Godwinson becomes king. Another contender to the throne, William of Normandy, defeats King Harold at the Battle of Hastings and becomes King of England. He becomes known as William the Conqueror.

12.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 The monastery on the island of Lindisfarne, off the north-east coast of England, was attacked by Vikings. Which year did this take place?

2 Using your own words, **define** *Danelaw* and state the year it was created.

Analyse

3 Using the timeline, calculate the number of years between the first *Danegeld* payment and when the first (Danish) Viking became a king of England.

Apply

4 Use the internet and other resources to **investigate** some other well-known Viking raids.

a Identify the year they took place and add them to a new timeline in your notebook.

b Evaluate the significance of each raid by considering how people's lives changed as a result of the raid. This could be a short-term or long-term change. Be sure to give your overall opinion.

12.2 Social classes and roles in Viking society

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the main social classes in Viking society
- describe the way of life of the Vikings, including the role of gender.

plundering stealing, often using violent force

Numerous factors influenced the organisation of Viking society and lifestyle. Like many societies, social classes determined who controlled wealth and power, and who did the hard work. Social roles also determined what people did from day to day. Most men worked as farmers – when they were not away **plundering** – but many were also merchants, shipbuilders, weavers and blacksmiths, to name just a few.

The main role of Viking women was to look after children and manage the home, but some were warriors as well. Little is known, however, about the daily lives of Viking warrior women, and historians are currently debating whether they were common in the Viking armies (see the review activity at the end of this chapter on page 368: 'Did shield-maidens exist?').

Viking society and lifestyle were also influenced by a set of laws, an economic system and a set of beliefs and values.

Social classes

In the early history of the Vikings, society was made up of several independent tribal communities. Often, the title *konungr* (king) was given to the chief of each community. This title did not mean the same thing as 'king' does today, though. There were many different kings. Some ruled over small regions (rather than whole nations), while others ruled over people (rather than land).

Within each tribal community, there were three social classes (see Source 3). Each king depended on the support of the most important members of the community: the *jarls*.

Source 2 A reconstruction of a typical Viking village in Denmark

Source 3 Social classes in Viking society

Social class	Description
Jarls	• They were powerful noblemen (the heads of influential families, which were often joined through marriage). • *Jarls* were wealthy, and generally wore fine clothes and intricate jewellery. • They often lived in large, well-appointed longhouses. • The king depended on their support in order to rule.
Karls	• They were farmers, merchants and craftsmen (such as silversmiths and shipbuilders). • *Karls* were the largest group in Viking communities. • They were 'free' people who were loyal to the king or a jarl and paid taxes to them directly. • Many karls took part in raids.
Thralls	• This class consisted of slaves, prisoners of war and criminals – the poorest of the poor. • *Thralls* performed most of the hard work (e.g. farm labour, cutting wood and stone). • They had no rights under the law, but most were treated well.

Social roles

Despite some clear differences between them, Viking social classes were not as strict as other medieval societies in Europe at the time. It was possible to move between the classes, especially if a person came into a lot of money.

Women and children

A woman's main role was to look after children and manage the home. Common tasks for all but the wealthiest (who might have the help of slaves) included spinning and weaving, collecting firewood and preparing food stores for the winter.

Viking women who were not warriors were left behind when their men went raiding or trading. This meant they had to keep things running on their own – taking on farm chores, tending to and butchering animals, and overseeing slaves, as well as continuing to care for children and the home. As a result, Viking women were very independent. For example, they could choose husbands for themselves, decide to divorce their husbands, and buy land. This was unusual compared with many other societies in Europe at this time.

What little education there was took place in the home, as there were no schools. Daughters helped their mothers in the home, and sons helped their fathers on the farm or in workshops. For boys, it was important to learn to stay fit, ice-skate, wrestle, use swords and ride horses, especially during the Viking Age (from the late eighth to the mid-eleventh centuries CE), when such skills were necessary for taking part in raids.

Source 4 An important role for Viking women was to manage the home. Here, a modern woman in Viking dress prepares vegetables at a Viking festival in the United States.

The *karls*

The largest single group in Viking society was the *karls*, a kind of middle class. These men performed several roles in society – mainly those of farmers, merchants and craftsmen. Many also took part in raids whenever required, often leaving their wives and families to fend for themselves. Some of the different social roles performed by *karls* in Viking society are introduced in Sources 5 to 8.

HRODGEIR THE LUCKY

I'm Hrodgeir the Lucky – a merchant. I've spent my life trading, as my father did. I have sailed many times across what you call the Mediterranean Sea and the Baltic Sea, and down many rivers in Europe. My ships carry out goods to trade, such as jewellery, combs made from deer antlers, decorated swords, furs, and sometimes slaves. The things I bring back include wheat, salt, silver and gold, and spices.

Source 5 A Viking merchant

GUDRUN, HRODGEIR'S WIFE

I'm Gudrun, Hrodgeir's wife. I'm often on my own while Hrodgeir travels and works, as you would expect. When not looking after the children, cooking or chopping wood, I'm spinning and weaving wool. Sometimes Hrodgeir brings me back a piece of silk, and I use it to make my underwear. I also make dresses, aprons, jackets and hats, sometimes decorated with animal fur.

Source 6 A Viking merchant's wife

INGVAR THE OLD

I'm Ingvar the Old, a shipbuilder – I've been a shipbuilder all my life. My sons help me when they are not away plundering. We use iron axes and adzes (another wood-shaping tool) to make keels from single tree trunks. We use freshly cut green wood to make the oak planks of the hull, and curved branches or roots for curved sections. A carved figurehead on the prow (front) and stern (back), often of a dragon, is the finishing touch.

Source 7 A Viking craftsman

OLAF THE TALL

I'm Olaf the Tall. When I'm not raiding foreign lands, I'm a farmer. You can see me here in both of my roles. On the left, I hold my prized sword and shield. I also have an iron-headed axe. I want these weapons buried with me when I die. We Vikings don't wear uniforms when we fight. I have a chain-mail tunic and iron helmet only because I'm wealthy. On the right, you see me in my fields, ready to harvest my crop of rye. I am holding my trusty sickle.

Source 8 A Viking raider/farmer

12.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** which social class captured prisoners of war might have belonged to. Why do you think this?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** what daily life would have been like for the Viking women and children who did not go raiding with the men.

3 **Explain** why Viking women were typically very independent.

4 Draw a labelled diagram to **summarise** how Viking society was organised.

Apply

5 Use the internet to **investigate** typical clothing worn by Viking men or women. Design a 'very best' outfit for either a Viking man or woman.

6 Select any three characters profiled on these pages. With two classmates, **create** a short dialogue they might have upon meeting in the marketplace. Your dialogue should reflect their different social classes and roles. Your teacher may ask you to perform it for the class.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on social classes and roles in Viking society

12.3 Viking home life and work

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the types of homes Vikings lived in
- explain how the environment influenced the activities of Viking society.

Viking villages were often located in rural areas near water – on a coastline or beside a river – making it easier to load and unload ships. Among the cluster of **longhouses** were barns to house animals and smoke fish, workshops of village craftsmen, perhaps a sauna, and an open area where markets were held.

longhouses
Viking houses, characterised by their long shape, often built into mounds of earth; they sheltered the extended family and their animals

Homes

The biggest longhouse belonged to the king or most important *jarl*. *Karls* tended to live in smaller longhouses of two or three buildings, which were not as grand. Less is known about where the *thralls* lived, but as slaves they might have lived on their owners' property. However, they did have the right to own their own property if they were able to pay for it.

Longhouses were rectangular buildings with rounded ends and thatched roofs. They were generally 15–25 metres long and 5 metres wide. There was a dirt floor and no windows. There was a small hole in the roof to let some smoke out from a fireplace, located directly under it. The fireplace provided warmth, light and a means to cook, but also made the longhouse very smoky.

Longhouses were dark, smelly places. Odours of smoke, sweat, sour milk and cooking mingled together and lingered. There was also often a stink of animal manure from the animal pens. Toilets were holes in the ground outside.

The longhouses of most Vikings did not contain much furniture. Often there was only a roughly made table and some benches. Low platforms, built along the sides, doubled as beds and places to sit. These benches were typically covered in animal skins, furs or cloth bags filled with down (duck or goose feathers). In fact, the word 'doona' comes from the Norse word *dunn* – meaning feather down.

Source 9 Longhouses like this one – which was built around 980 CE – were home to the Vikings. Sometimes earth was piled along the walls and over the roof to insulate longhouses. Viewed from the front, such a longhouse would look like a grassy hill with a door built into it.

Source 10 The interior of a reconstructed longhouse

Food and diet

The foods Vikings ate were very simple and reflected their traditions of fishing and farming. Meat (from the cattle, sheep, pigs and hens they kept) and fish formed the basis of most meals. Meat and fish were smoked, dried and salted during the summer months and kept in storage, so that there was enough to last through the long winter months. The Vikings also harvested grains (such as wheat, barley and rye) to make into bread, and vegetables (such as onions, leeks, peas and cabbage) for use in stews. They also collected fruits and berries from nearby forests and hunted wild boar, seabirds, hare and elk for meat.

Work

The Vikings were not only fierce warriors, but also accomplished farmers and craftspeople. For most Vikings, farming was their main occupation. The whole family would take part in the various seasonal jobs involved in running the farm. Crops would be grown during the summer, harvested in autumn and stored for the long winter.

Source 11 An example of the typical, simple Viking diet

> **Quiz me!**
> A quick quiz on Viking home life and work

Viking crafts

Viking craftspeople were essential to everyday life. The less skilled metalworkers produced farming tools, while the most skilled would specialise in making the finest weapons, such as swords.

As well as making weapons for battle, metalworkers also made armour, such as the helmet shown in Source 12. Helmets like these were worn by Viking warrior chieftains or wealthy *jarls*. Poorer fighters wore leather caps, or hats lined with fur. Wealthy Viking warriors also wore chain-mail tunics, while poorer warriors wore leather vests or padded jackets.

Viking craftspeople also made fine jewellery and other luxury items. Jewellery was another way in which Vikings demonstrated their social standing and wealth. Gold and silver jewellery was worn by those with the most wealth and power in the village. Those of less importance wore bronze or pewter jewellery. Sometimes the silver coins and candlesticks seized on raids were melted down to make jewellery, such as the silver bracelet shown in Source 12. The distinctive Viking style is shown here – with plaited strands ending in animal-like creatures. Jewellery tended to be highly decorative and used symbols taken from Viking mythology and religion.

Source 12 Viking metal workers were skilled craftsmen, able to produce items ranging from farming tools and weapons through to the finest decorative jewellery. This helmet and bracelet show the detail and skill obvious in many Viking **artefacts**.

artefacts
any objects, small or large, that have been made or changed by humans

> **I used to think, now I think**
> Reflect on your learning about Vikings as skilled craftspeople, and complete the following sentences.
> - I used to think …
> - Now I think …
>
> What has changed in your understanding?

12.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the role of craftspeople in Viking society?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the inside of the typical Viking longhouse.

3 **Explain** the connection between the doona on your bed and a Viking longhouse.

4 **Explain** how the environment influenced Viking society.

Analyse

5 **Compare** the metal bracelet shown in Source 12 with modern jewellery in terms of its design and craftsmanship. What are some similarities and differences?

Apply

6 **Create** a labelled sketch showing a modification (or improvement) you would make to the longhouse shown in Source 10 to make its interior more suitable for a very wealthy *jarl*.

12.4 Viking laws and economy

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the laws of Viking society and how they influenced Viking behaviour

» describe evidence of Viking trade between Russia, Ukraine and the east.

When people today think of Vikings, many of them imagine hordes of lawless warriors. However, the Vikings had a system of strict laws that guided behaviour in their communities. They also traded with many other societies.

Laws

In the early history of the Vikings, different areas were ruled by tribal communities. Each community had what was known as a ***thing***, which acted like a parliament and court in one. *Things* were held once a year in every Viking community. Their main purpose was to make and change laws, and to judge when they had been broken. Only those people who owned land could attend and speak.

Until the twelfth century, Viking laws were not written down. Instead, they were preserved in the memory of a 'law speaker'. It was his job to remember all laws and recite them loudly at each *thing*.

thing
in Viking society, a gathering or assembly that determined laws

Activities carried out at *things*

- Existing laws were recited by the law speaker so that all could hear
- New laws were made (or old laws changed) after discussion and general agreement
- Disputes were resolved, sometimes even by conducting fights to the death
- Rulings were made on whether or not a law had been broken
- Social proceedings, such as marriages and divorces, were carried out

Source 13 Some typical activities conducted at *things*

The Vikings respected their laws. This is partly because individuals valued their own honour and reputation, but also because some punishments were very harsh. For example, if an individual was found guilty of breaking a law at a *thing*, the punishment could be death. Another harsh punishment was to be made a full outlaw. This meant being banished (sent away) for life, with a large bounty (reward) on one's head.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Viking laws and economy

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

The *Althing*

Iceland was the only Viking society to have a national *thing*, known as the *Althing*. It was the first parliament in the world. The *Althing* met for the first time on the Plains of Thingvellir in 930 CE; and, like other *things*, it was held once a year. People from different communities travelled long distances to get there, setting up temporary camps. The most important part of the *Althing* was the *Lögberg* ('law rock'), where the law speaker stood to proclaim the laws.

Today, the *Lögberg* is a grassy mound, changed over time by natural forces.

Since that first meeting, there have been changes to the *Althing*, and it was even abandoned for a time. But today, the *Althing* is the name of Iceland's parliament. Icelanders continue to gather at the *Lögberg* on 17 June each year to commemorate the *Althing* decision (in 1944) to create the Republic of Iceland.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 14 The Icelandic flag flying near the site of the *Lögberg*, where the first *Althing* was held in 930 CE

Economy

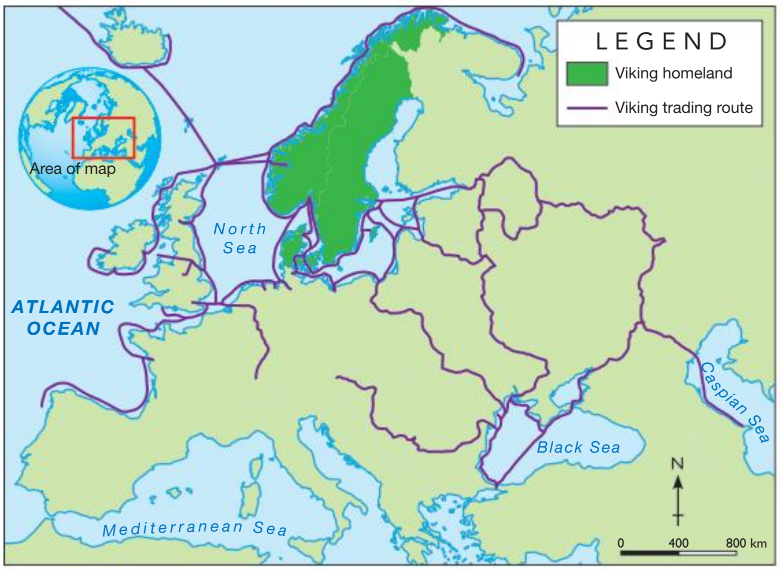
In early times, the Viking economy was based mainly on farming. However, as Viking societies grew larger, good farming land became difficult to find. Much of the landscape of Scandinavia is mountainous or thickly forested, and winters can be harsh. This made clearing and preparing the land for farming impossible in many places. Trade helped to meet the needs of the growing population.

Trade

Viking merchants traded in ships across seas and down rivers. Stashes of foreign coins found in Sweden are evidence that the Vikings were trading in parts of modern-day Russia, Ukraine and central Asia. Viking tools and artefacts, such as an amulet decorated with Thor's hammer, have also been found at former trading sites in Russia. The Vikings reached as far east as Constantinople and Jerusalem, in order to meet with traders who had travelled the **Silk Road**.

Silk Road
a network of trade routes stretching west from China to the Mediterranean Sea; it was the main means by which silk was introduced to the West

MAJOR VIKING TRADE ROUTES



Source 15

Source: Oxford University Press

Items the Vikings carried for trade included timber, leather shoes and bags, smoked fish, fur, jewellery and slaves. These were exchanged for goods such as wheat, iron, silverware, wine, spices, silks, salt, weapons and glassware.

At first, trade was conducted through a process of **bartering**. Later, goods were bought and sold with coins. Many towns the Vikings later colonised – such as York (England), Kiev (Ukraine) and Dublin (Ireland) – became busy centres of trade.

bartering
the exchanging of goods or services between people (typical of trade before the use of money), where both parties agreed that what was exchanged was of roughly equal value

12.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the term *thing* in the context of Viking society. Give two examples of how *things* influenced the lives of Vikings.

2 **Name** three goods that Viking traders exported and three goods they imported.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the evidence that suggests Vikings traded with Russia.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 15 and the world map in the back of this book to identify five modern-day countries that Vikings traded with.

Apply

5 In a paragraph, **discuss** why the *Althing* is an example of continuity and change in the history of Iceland.

12.5 Viking beliefs and mythology

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

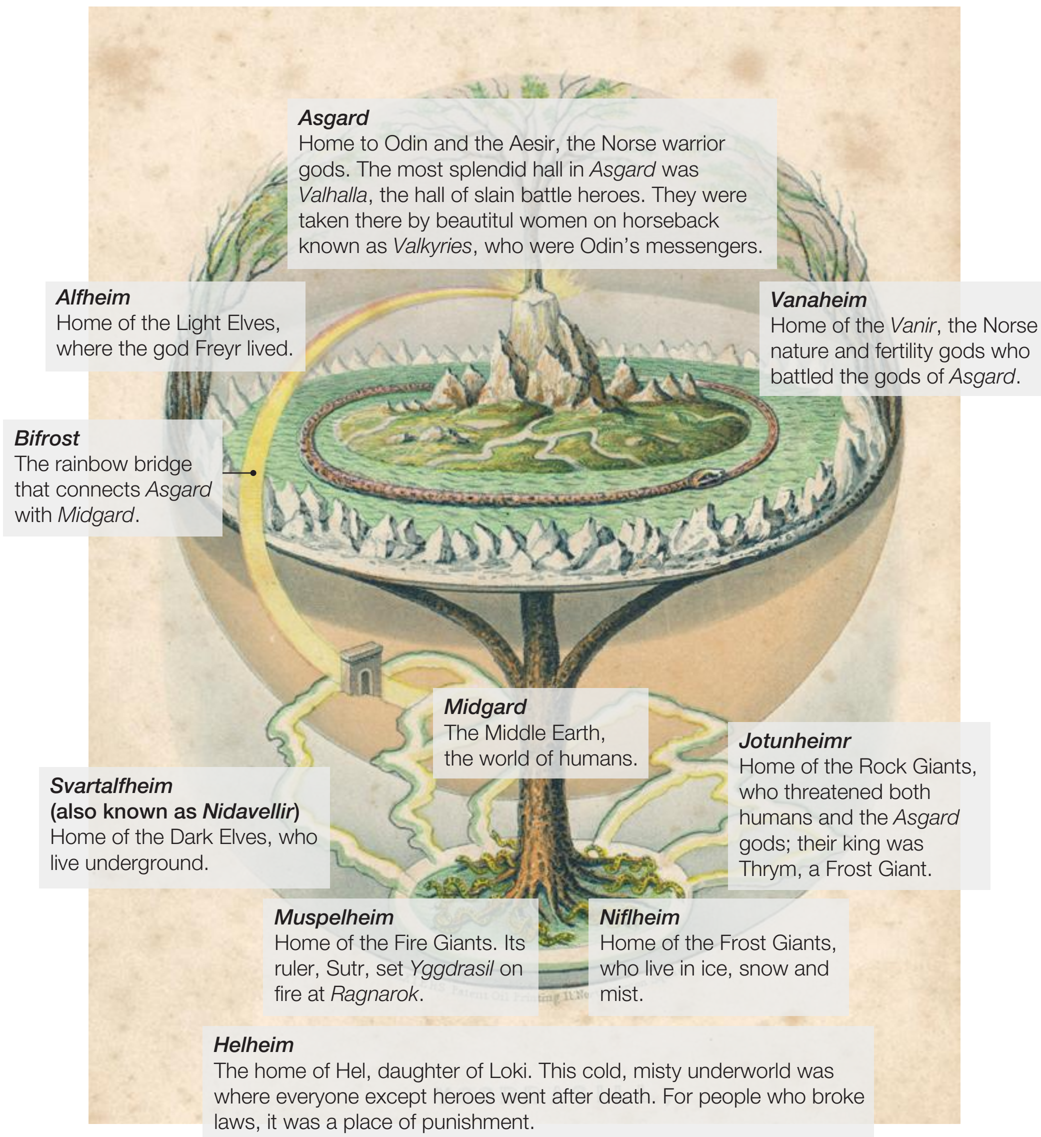
- describe Viking mythology and Viking beliefs of the afterlife
- explain the role of gods such as Odin, Thor and Frigga in Viking religion.

sagas
long stories (sometimes mixed with poetry) about heroes who achieved great things and fought noble battles; often a mix of real events, legends and myths

Compared with many other civilisations, we know very little about the traditional beliefs and religious practices of Vikings. We do know that they had their own religion, and worshipped many different gods early in their history, but these old beliefs died out once they started to convert to Christianity.

Viking mythology

The traditional stories Vikings told about gods, giants and monsters are known as Viking mythology. Many of these stories tell of the creation of the world, and were recorded in a collection of stories known as the Viking **sagas**. In traditional Viking mythology, there were 'nine worlds'. Each was connected to the other by the branches of the 'world tree' known as *Yggdrasil* (see Source 16).



Source 16 The 'nine worlds' of Viking mythology were connected by *Yggdrasil*, a 'world tree'.

Source 17 In Viking mythology, a rainbow bridge known as the *Bifrost* connected *Asgard* with *Midgard*.

When people died, their bodies were cremated (burned) and the remains were buried along with a few items that were important to them during their life. It was believed that they could take these items into the next world. Some Viking chieftains were given ship burials, where they were buried in a grave with their ship, along with treasure and weapons. Often, their favourite dogs and horses were killed and buried with them. Sometimes, chieftains were even buried with human sacrifices.

Like the ancient Greeks, the Vikings did not have either a positive or a negative view of the afterlife. Many believed that the dead travelled to a place called *Helheim*, which lay underground. *Helheim* was ruled by the goddess Hel – half beautiful woman and half rotting corpse. Hel is the origin of the modern word 'hell'. *Helheim* was thought of as a cold and damp place where the spirits of the dead continued to live in a dreamlike form – a kind of eternal sleep.

Vikings who were killed in battle were believed to travel to *Asgard* after they died. A beautiful hall there, known as *Valhalla* ('Hall of the Slain'), was where warriors would spend the afterlife feasting.

Viking gods

According to Viking beliefs, gods were responsible for different areas of daily life. There were gods that watched over harvests, love, family and fertility. Others watched over success in battle and wars.

Source 18 According to Viking mythology, thunder was the sound of Thor's chariot rumbling across the sky, pulled by two goats. Lightning was the path his hammer took when he tossed it. His belt gave him the strength of 10 men. Many of us know Thor as portrayed by Chris Hemsworth in the Marvel Cinematic Universe.

Source 19 Some important Viking gods

Odin	*King of the gods in Viking mythology*	Odin (also known as Wodin) was the god of magic, poetry and war.
Freya	*Goddess of beauty and love*	Freya rode a chariot drawn by two cats.
Loki	*A shape-changing trickster god*	Loki was both friend and foe of the gods. He was the father of Hel, as well as the monsters Jormungand and Fenris.
Freyr	*God of fertility, peace and harvests*	Freyr was the twin brother of Freya.
Frigga	*Goddess of women and the home*	Frigga (also known as Frigg) was the wife of Odin.
Thor	*God of storms and thunder*	Thor rode a chariot across the skies, creating the sound of thunder. He also caused lightning with his magic hammer.

Source 20 In Viking mythology, Odin watched over the universe while travelling on an eight-legged horse, called Sleipnir. He was protected by two wolves, Geri and Freki. His two ravens, Huginn and Muninn, flew all over the world to bring him information. His name gave us the word 'Wednesday'.

Days of the week

In English, many of the names of the days of the week have their roots in Norse and Old English culture (see Source 21). (Old English, also known as Anglo-Saxon, is the earliest recorded form of English.) Tuesday, for example, is named after the Norse god of war, Tiwes. His day was *Tiwesdæg*, which became Tuesday. Similarly, Wednesday was named after Odin (or Wodin). His day was *Wodnesdæg*, which became Wednesday. Thursday was named after the god Thor, and Friday was named after Frigga (Odin's wife).

Source 21 English and Norse words for the days of the week

English	Norse	Meaning
Sunday	*Sunnandæg*	Sun's day
Monday	*Monandæg*	Moon's day
Tuesday	*Tiwesdæg*	Tiwes' day
Wednesday	*Wodnesdæg*	Wodin's day
Thursday	*Ðunresdæg*	Thor's day
Friday	*Frigedæg*	Frigga's day
Saturday	*Sæterdæg*	Saturn's day

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Viking beliefs and mythology

12.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How many worlds were there in traditional Viking mythology? How were they believed to be connected?

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the role of gods in Viking society. Give examples of four gods mentioned in this topic.

3 **Summarise** what happened to warriors after they died, according to Viking beliefs.

4 **Explain** why Viking people might have been reassured by the sound of thunder.

5 In pairs, read the key concept box 'Days of the week'. **Explain** how the days of the week demonstrate the concept of continuity and change.

Analyse

6 **Compare** Viking myths with any other creation stories or beliefs that you have studied. What are the similarities and differences between Viking myths and other creation stories?

Apply

7 Many of us know about Viking mythology, including the figures of Odin, Thor and Loki, from the popular Marvel films. While the events of these films are fictional, they help keep the stories of Viking mythology alive today. As a class, **discuss** the concept of significance (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit') and what the *Thor* movies tell us about the significance of Viking mythology.

12A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Brutal barbarians … or not?

When most people hear the word 'Vikings', they immediately imagine hordes of bloodied warriors terrorising innocent villagers and plundering monasteries. Although this was true, there was also another side to the Vikings. In addition to being 'brutal barbarians', they were also skilled craftspeople, poets, wood and ivory carvers, weavers and musicians.

As with any historical inquiry, the truth of who the Vikings were lies hidden among a range of different primary sources.

Source 22

Winter he would spend at home on Gairsay, where he entertained some 80 men at his own expense … In the spring he had … a great deal of seed to sow … Then when that job was done he would go off plundering in the Hebrides [islands off the west coast of Scotland] and in Ireland … then back home just after mid summer, where he stayed until the cornfields had been reaped [harvested] and the grain was safely in. After that he would go off raiding again, and never came back till the first month of winter was ended.

A translated extract from the *Orkneyinga Saga*, an Icelandic saga written in the 1100s; it provides a perspective on a Viking named Svein Asleifarson, who lived on one of the Orkney Islands (off the north coast of Scotland).

Source 23

[The Vikings] came to the church of Lindisfarne [an island off the north-east coast of England], laid everything to waste with grievous plundering, trampled the holy places with polluted steps, dug up the altars and seized all the treasures of the holy church. They killed some of the brothers [monks], took some away with them in chains, many they drove out naked and loaded with insults, some they drowned in the sea…

A translated extract from *Historia Regum*, written by an English monk, Simeon of Durham, in the twelfth century

Source 24 A wooden game board thought to have been used by the Vikings to play a strategic game similar to chess, known as *hnefatafl*

Source 25 An exact copy of a carefully carved metal container made by a Viking craftsman; the heads of birds and animals decorate the lid.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing primary sources

The primary sources that historians use to understand the Viking way of life tell different stories. It is the job of historians to examine these sources and come to a conclusion about their usefulness and reliability. It is important to identify who created each source and the reason why it was created. That way you can identify any potential bias.

Historians use questions to help guide their investigations. Questions you might ask yourself include:

- What did the person creating the source want their audience to think?
- Why might they have wanted people to think this?

The table in Source 26 contains a number of questions that you can ask yourself when analysing any primary source. Although some of them are worded specifically about the Vikings, you can modify them to help you when studying any period of history.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 205 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Sources 22 to 25 carefully, and complete a copy of the table in Source 26 in your notebook.

2 Once you have completed the table, use the information you have gathered to write a short paragraph to discuss the topic 'The Vikings: Brutal barbarians or cultured artists?'

Source 26

Questions to guide your source analysis	Source 22	Source 23	Source 24	Source 25
Who wrote or created the source?				
How might the source's creator be biased?				
Why was the source created?				
Was the source intended to be used by non-Vikings? Why or why not?				
What does the source suggest about the Vikings?				
What evidence does the source provide that the Vikings were brutal barbarians?				
What evidence does the source provide that the Vikings were civilised and cultured people?				
Do you think the source is true and reliable? Why or why not?				

Extend your understanding

Imagine you are a writer and poet living in England during a period of Viking raids. You have been asked by one of the king's officials to write a book about the Vikings. You will be paid generously for your work. The king has ordered that your book should be designed to convince your fellow citizens that the Vikings are brutal barbarians. In order to do this, it will be an advantage to present a biased (or one-sided) view of the Vikings.

1 Of the four primary sources, Sources 22 to 25, **determine** (decide) which two you would choose to put in your book. Why?

2 Write the caption (description) that you would put underneath each source to **explain** what it shows. Remember, your aim is to make your readers believe that all Vikings are brutal barbarians.

3 Now that you have some experience of presenting a biased point of view, **identify** at least two hints or clues you should look for in primary sources to identify bias.

4 Is the fact that you were paid money to write your book proof that your point of view is biased? **Explain** why or why not.

12.6 Viking skills and achievements

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the construction of longships and their role in exploration
- describe Viking craftsmanship of weapons and armour.

The Vikings were highly skilled craftspeople. They built seagoing ships and made their own weapons and armour. These skills increased their success in trade and, later, in the search for and conquest of new lands.

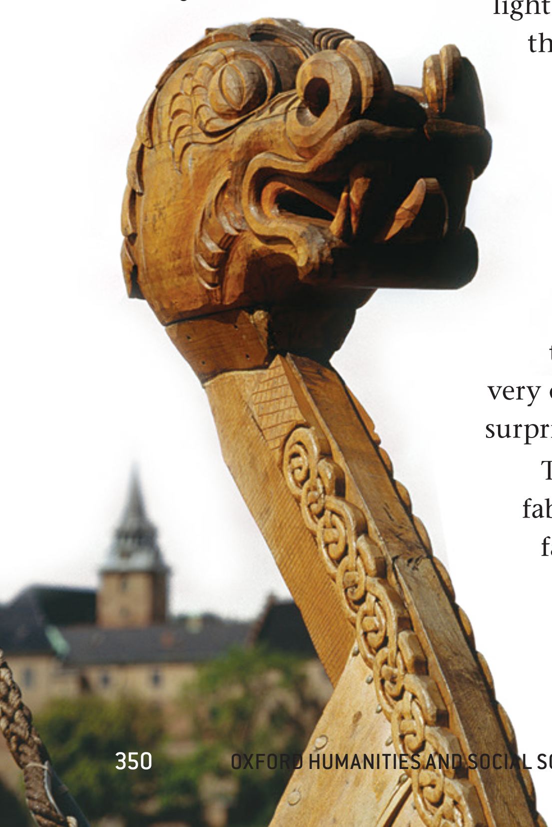
Shipbuilding

The Vikings were expert shipbuilders, with easy access to the timber of Scandinavia's forests. They built trade ships, ferries, rowing boats, fishing vessels and **longships**.

longships
types of ships used by the Vikings to transport warriors on attack-and-raid missions; longships had shallow hulls, making them speedy and easy to manoeuvre, and they were often decorated with mythical creatures

By the end of the eighth century CE, Vikings had been sailing as merchants for some time. They were skilled at navigating – using the sun and stars, weather patterns, bird-flight trails and coastal features as guides. In other words, they were well placed to be either sea traders or sea pirates. Their strong navigational and shipbuilding skills gave them all the expertise they needed to make and sail efficient warships. These included the longships they used for lightning raids. The Vikings called them *drakkar*, meaning 'dragons'.

Source 1 The Oseberg ship, a ninth century Viking ship that was discovered in a large burial mound in Norway in 1904.

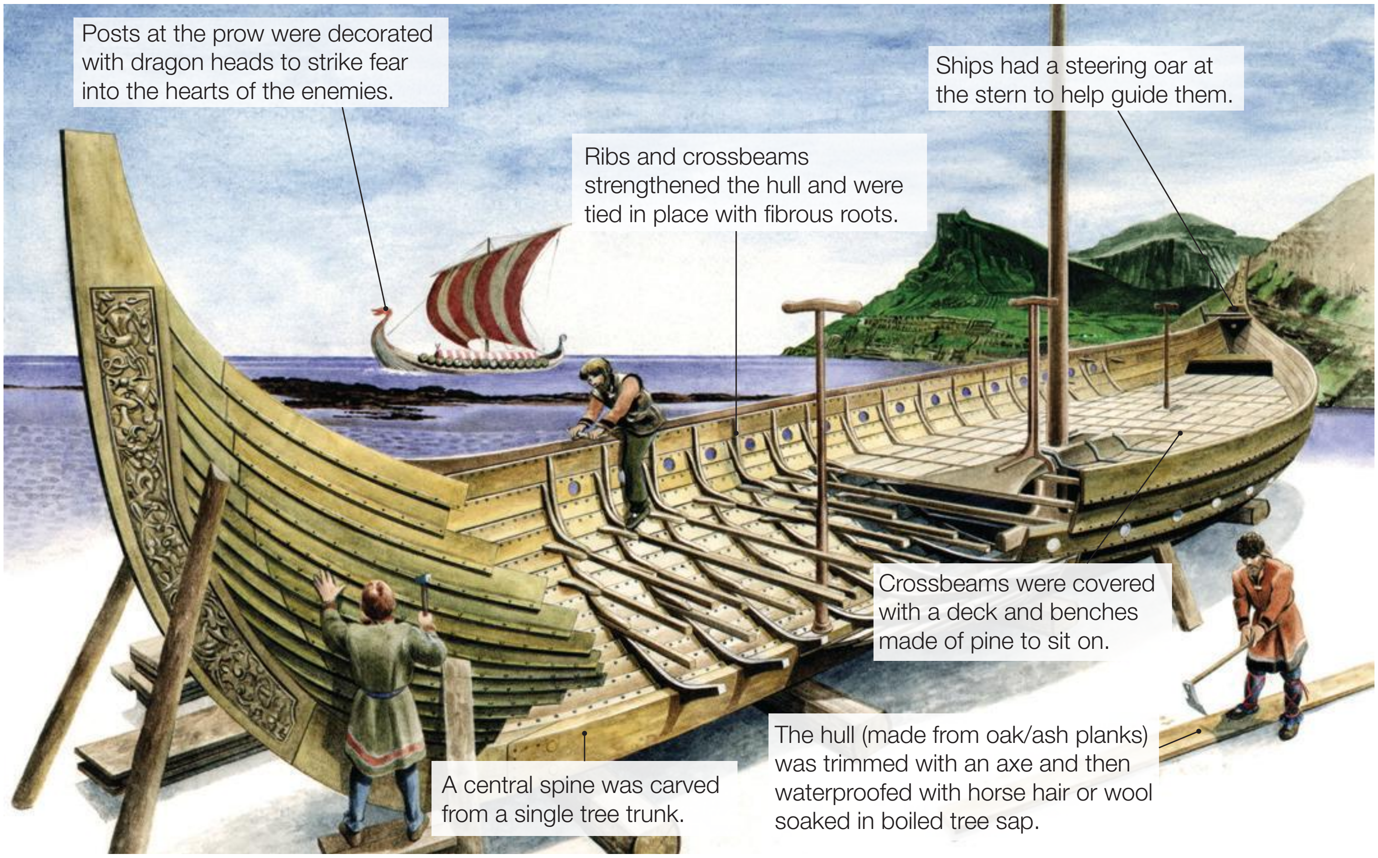


Source 2 A dragon head on the prow (front) of a replica Viking longship in Norway

Longships

Longships were up to twice as long as trade ships (up to about 37 metres in length). They also had a thinner, lighter hull, and could carry 100 warriors (68 of whom were oarsmen – 34 on each side). Being so light, longships were easily carried overland when necessary. They were wide and shallow, helping them to stay upright in rough seas and meaning they could be taken into shallow water. Because longships could be sailed very close to shore, Viking raiders were able to wade in very quickly for a surprise attack.

The huge square sail of a longship (made from pieces of woollen or linen fabric, stitched together) was commonly dyed blood red and coated in animal fat to make it more water-resistant. In strong winds, the sail provided for a fast sea or ocean crossing. Longships were also equipped with oars. If there was no wind, then the sail could be lowered and the men could row the longship instead. Rowing was also necessary to navigate rivers.



Source 3 An artist's impression of Viking shipbuilders constructing a longship

The blood-red sail, together with a dragon head at the prow and dragon tail at the stern, helped to heighten the terror for raid victims. Vikings also believed that the dragons would frighten away any evil spirits or monsters during sea crossings.

Weapons and armour

Weapons were very important to the Vikings. For a start, they were essential for hunting animals for food. They were also traditional symbols of wealth and power. For example, the swords of rich men and warriors often featured hilts (handles) decorated with silver, copper or bronze (see Source 5). Swords were the most valued weapons. The Viking sagas tell of some weapons (particularly swords) being so highly valued by their owners that they were given 'pet' names (see Source 4). A warrior's sword was usually buried with them when they died.

Source 4 A selection of 'pet' names used to describe weapons, recorded in the Viking sagas

Weapon	'Pet' name	Translation
Sword	*Fótbítr*	Foot biter
	Gunnlogi	Battle flame
	Leggbítr	Leg biter
	Saetarspillar	Peace breaker
Axe	*Himintelgja*	Heaven scraper
	Rimmugýgr	Battle hag
Coat of chain mail	*Full-trúi*	Old faithful

Source 5 Viking weapons

Source 6
Reproductions of authentic Viking armour, including helmets, on show at a battle re-enactment in Iceland

By the start of the Viking Age, the Vikings were highly skilled metalworkers. As a result, Viking warriors were heavily armed. As time passed and raids became more a part of Viking culture and tradition, weapon makers were kept busy forging arrows, spears and axe heads from iron. They also became skilled at sharpening the steel edges of swords until they were razor sharp.

Wealthy Vikings could afford metal armour, including helmets with nose bridges, and chain mail (see Source 6). By the time William the Conqueror (whose ancestors were Vikings) fought in the Battle of Hastings in 1066 (see Source 8), chain mail was worn by the majority of soldiers.

Most other Vikings fought with a shield and either a spear or an axe. Spears were up to a few metres long, and were made from wood with an iron spearhead at the end. Axes had thick, rounded blades, which were strong enough to cut through armour. They were light to use and extremely effective. Shields were generally made of wood and reinforced with either leather or iron. They were the main form of defence for Viking warriors.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Horned helmets

Many people today think that the helmets of Viking warriors had large horns on either side – mainly because Vikings are often shown this way in popular culture. In the nineteenth century, costume designers working on operas such as Wagner's *The Ring Cycle* often dressed Viking characters in horned helmets. Movies, comics, books, games and even the mascots of popular sporting teams continue to perpetuate this image, even though there is no evidence to support it at all. Think about it – horns on helmets would have made them easier to grab or knock off, leaving Viking warriors defenceless against blows to the head from swords or axes!

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 7 Vikings are often shown in popular culture wearing horned helmets – like these characters from the 2010 animated film *How to Train Your Dragon* – even though this is historically incorrect.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Viking skills and achievements

Source 8 A scene from the Bayeux Tapestry shows the army of William, Duke of Normandy, crossing the English Channel to attack England. William was a descendant of Vikings who left their homeland to settle in northern France.

12.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the Norse word used by Vikings to describe their longships. What is the meaning of this word in English?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the features of Viking longships that made them suited to long sea voyages and raiding.

3 **Describe** the main features of swords, spears, axes and shields that were made by Viking craftspeople.

4 **Describe** how some Vikings displayed their wealth and social position through their weapons and armour.

5 **Explain** why the Vikings' skills as shipbuilders and sailors meant they could be effective sea pirates.

Analyse

6 **Analyse** the significance of shipbuilding in Viking society. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down and explain how the concepts relate to each other. In this case, think about what impact shipbuilding had on Viking society.

Apply

7 Use Source 4 as inspiration to **create** Norse names for the items displayed in Source 5.

8 Use the internet to **investigate** the Battle of Hastings in 1066. Look for information about (and images of) the Bayeux Tapestry – a medieval embroidery that retells the events leading up to the battle. Source 8 is an example of an image from this tapestry. Start at the beginning of the tapestry and click through, scene by scene. Locate the section where William the Conqueror's warriors are loading up their ships to invade England. Study it carefully. How do they transport chain-mail tunics?

Weblink
The Bayeux Tapestry

12.7 Viking raids

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain reasons for Viking raids, including attacks on monasteries.

Viking society changed significantly in the late eighth century CE. Up until this time, the Vikings were known as honest traders outside their homelands. After this time, however, the Vikings became feared, as they pushed outwards from their homelands to expand their territory. For the next 200 years, they terrorised villages, towns and monasteries in the surrounding lands with a series of brutal raids.

Raids were often planned and timed to take victims by surprise. Many were launched just before dawn, as unsuspecting villagers slept. The raids were carried out quickly – hence the description 'lightning raids'. Part of the terror for victims was that Viking communities also continued to trade normally during this time. If Viking longships were spotted off the coast, those on shore often could not tell whether the Vikings were coming to trade peacefully or to attack.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Viking raids

Possible reasons for Viking raids

Historians still argue today about what motivated the Vikings to change from honest traders into violent raiders. Several reasons have been put forward to explain this.

Survival

Resorting to raids may have been necessary for the survival of some Viking communities living in a harsh land with an unforgiving climate. There was only limited coastal farming land in the Viking homeland (see Source 9). As the population grew, the pressure on such land would have increased. Also, in Scandinavia winter is long and can be severe, especially in areas further north. Summer brings long hours of daylight but is quite short, so the growing season for crops is short too.

Source 9 A common landscape in many parts of Scandinavia – note the relatively small area of coastal flatland suitable for farming.

Local knowledge

The knowledge the Vikings had built up through years of trade with neighbouring countries is another possible explanation for the beginning of their raids. A combination of local experience and reports passed on by Viking merchants helped them piece together an accurate picture of the surrounding regions – especially the riches that were held in the towns and monasteries there. By the eighth century CE, their shipbuilding abilities and navigational skills were highly advanced, making such raids a viable alternative to trade. Some scholars have suggested that the Vikings were also taking advantage of what they saw as weak and divided rule in surrounding regions at the time.

Source 10
Medieval churches and monasteries were attractive targets for plundering Vikings, containing treasures such as the Lindisfarne Gospels, an eighth-century manuscript bound in silver and jewels. The original jewelled cover was lost during the Viking raid on the Lindisfarne monastery in 793 CE. This replacement was made in 1852.

Desire for honour and wealth

Some contend that the desire for honour, glory and adventure was a reason for the Viking raids. For example, a man's reputation was very important to a Viking. To lose honour or respect was a disgrace. Raids may have been a way for some dishonoured Vikings to redeem themselves, returning as warriors who had fought bravely. Viking warriors also believed that they would go straight to *Valhalla* if they died fighting bravely in battle.

Historians also argue that the change in Viking behaviour was linked to the desire for quick and easy wealth. Important Vikings, such as kings or influential *jarls*, could use the stolen riches to reward their men and build their support base in the community. This would then strengthen their influence and power at home.

Revenge

Another possible reason why Vikings may have started to carry out raids on nearby lands was a desire for revenge. Charlemagne (*c*. 742–814 CE), King of the Franks and later the Holy Roman Emperor, fought for about 40 years to bring most of Western and Central Europe under his control. As part of his military efforts, he ordered those he regarded as **pagans** (including many Vikings) to become Christians. Any who refused were killed. Early Viking raids on Europe took place during the later years of Charlemagne's reign, and the raiders may have been motivated by a desire to take revenge on Christians, as well as by greed.

pagans
a term sometimes used by people of Christian, Muslim and Jewish faiths to describe people who do not share their beliefs

12.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the major change that happened in Viking society in the late eighth century CE?

2 What were two ways that wealth gained from raids benefited Viking rulers?

Comprehend

3 **Describe** some of the tales merchants told of churches and monasteries that may have tempted some Viking tribal rulers to raid such places.

4 **Explain** the significance of honour to Viking warriors. Why was it important to them?

5 Imagine you are a Viking farmer in the coastal region in Source 9. The population of your village is growing. Why might you want to leave your homeland?

Apply

6 **Create** a concept map that explains how and why you think societies that encountered the Vikings might have changed. Compare your finished concept map with that of a partner.

7 **Discuss** why some historians take the view that early Viking raids on Europe were revenge missions. What evidence would you look for to help confirm this view?

12B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Viking *berserkers*

During the Viking Age, people across Western Europe most feared a group of Viking warriors known as the *berserkers*. This group fought in a frenzy, while clad in the skins of bears or wolves. In fact, the word *berserker* means 'bear coats'. *Berserkers* seemed not to fear death, injury or pain. Today, one legacy of the Vikings is the English word 'berserk', which is used to describe a violent rage.

Source 11

> [A] demonical frenzy suddenly took [a *berserker*]; he furiously bit and devoured the edges of his shield; he kept gulping down fiery coals; he snatched live embers in his mouth and let them pass down into his entrails; he rushed through the perils of crackling fires … he had raved through every sort of madness …

An extract from a 1905 translation of *The Nine Books of the Danish History* by the twelfth-century Danish historian, Saxo Grammaticus

Source 12

> Blades and weapons glanced off him [a *berserker*] and he brought down both men and horses in King Hjorvard's forces, and everything which came in his path, he crushed to death with his teeth …

An extract from *Erik the Red and Other Icelandic Sagas*, Gwyn Jones (ed.), Oxford University Press, 1961, p. 313

Source 13 These twelfth-century chess pieces show Viking *berserkers* biting their shields.

Source 14 This sixth-century stone carving from Sweden shows one man with a helmet adorned with the heads of birds and another with the head of a wolf or bear. Bear skins were typically worn by *berserkers*.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Integrating evidence into your explanations

As a student of history, you need to be able to explain how or why something happened. Source 15 shows the structure of a historical explanation.

The best explanations use evidence from a variety of sources to support the point they are making.

It can be difficult to work out how to use supporting evidence in a way that does not disrupt the flow of your own writing. You should avoid simply dropping in quotes or references without introducing them in your own words first. Instead, integrate (combine) the evidence into your own writing by making a smooth transition from your own words to a piece of evidence.

Source 16 contains some key phrases that you can use to integrate evidence into your explanations. This will let your reader know that you are using sources and evidence to support your own ideas.

For more information on this skill, refer to page 220 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 15 How to structure an explanation

Introduction	» Clearly state your main idea or argument. » Briefly outline the reasons why an event occurred and its effects.
Body	» Each idea you put forward should be supported by evidence. There should also be some analysis of the evidence to explain its significance or importance. » Avoid personal opinions (e.g. 'I' or 'my').
Conclusion (optional)	» The conclusion provides a short overview of the main ideas you have presented. » Make a conclusion based on the evidence you have used.

Source 16 Phrases to help integrate evidence into an explanation

Written sources
» '**According** to the twelfth-century Danish historian Saxo Grammaticus …' » 'The Icelandic saga *Erik the Red* **suggests that** …' » 'An extract from a 1905 translation of *The Nine Books of the Danish History* **tells us** …'
Visual sources
» 'The depiction of warriors in the sixth-century Swedish stone carving **shows that** …' » 'The twelfth-century Viking chess pieces **demonstrate how** …' » 'The sixth-century Swedish stone carving **reveals that** …'

Practise the skill

1 **Explain** how the *berserkers* may have contributed to the idea that Vikings were a group of lawless warriors, referring to at least two of the sources in this section (Sources 11 to 14) as evidence to support your ideas.

Extend your understanding

Today, many modern conflicts have become infamous (meaning they were widely known for negative reasons) because of their use of 'terror tactics'. These tactics sometimes include the use of 'shock troops' – elite units of soldiers who lead the attack, and often endure heavy casualties.

1 In pairs, further **investigate** Viking *berserkers* and modern shock troops. Create a table that compares the types of tactics used by Viking *berserkers* and twentieth-century shock troops. Consider how the tactics used by both groups might affect:

- the morale (spirit) of the people and fighters on their side
- the morale of the people and fighters against them
- the individual *berserker* or soldier in a shock troop.

12.8 Changes within the Viking homeland

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the political, economic and religious changes in Viking society caused by expansion.

The Viking Age was a period in which many Vikings set sail to foreign lands in order to raid and plunder. The riches they brought back to the Viking homelands changed the political and economic systems that had been in place there for hundreds of years. Over time, many Vikings left their homelands to settle in the places they, or their ancestors, had once raided. Others set out to discover new lands.

Political changes

Warriors returned 'home' from their raids with large stores of plundered **loot** (including prisoners taken as slaves). This started a process of great change in the Viking homelands. In time, this loot made some local Viking rulers very wealthy. Some became so powerful and influential that they no longer needed the support of *jarls* in order to rule. Smaller local tribes began to join under the protection of one ruler, forming larger **kingdoms**. These kingdoms covered the areas we now know as Norway, Sweden and Denmark (see Source 1).

loot
stolen property taken during a violent event

kingdoms
regions ruled by a king or queen

THE KINGDOMS OF NORWAY, SWEDEN AND DENMARK

Source 1 Source: Oxford University Press

Christianity and the Vikings

In addition to political and economic changes, one of the most important things that changed life in the Viking homelands was the introduction of a new belief system called Christianity.

During the Viking Age, many of the towns, villages and monasteries that were raided belonged to Christians. A large number of the places in which the Vikings later settled were also Christian lands. In addition to this, in around 1000 CE, Christian missionaries travelled to parts of the Viking homelands to convert as many Vikings as they could. Over many generations, these factors combined to cause the Viking people to change their beliefs. This affected many aspects of Viking behaviour – especially the ways in which people were dealt with after death.

Source 3 is an account of a traditional Viking funeral that was common before the Vikings converted to Christianity.

After converting to Christianity, Vikings adopted similar burial practices to those followed in Christian countries to this day.

Source 2 This is an artist's impression of a Viking cremation before the adoption of Christian beliefs. A boat would be filled with goods and slaughtered animals – even sacrificed slaves – and set on fire. It was then covered with a mound of earth. Stones with **runes** on them might be erected at the site.

Source 3

> The dead chieftain was put in a temporary grave that was covered for ten days until new clothes were prepared for him. They asked which of his *thrall* women wanted to join him in the afterlife and one of the girls volunteered … When the time had arrived for cremation, his longship was pulled ashore and put on a platform of wood. On the ship, a bed was made for the dead chieftain. Soon after, an old woman named the 'angel of death' put cushions on the bed. She was an old witch, stocky and dark. She would be responsible for the ritual and would be the one to kill the *thrall girl*.
>
> An extract from an account of a human sacrifice at a Viking funeral, by the Arab traveller Ibn Fadlan

Many other changes also took place as a result of the shift to Christianity:

- Attacks on Christian communities stopped altogether.
- Human sacrifice ended.
- Many Christian churches were built.
- Many Vikings granted slaves their freedom.
- New Christian festivals were celebrated, such as Christmas; although in some cases, Christian rituals were mixed with elements of traditional Viking beliefs.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 212 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

runes
symbols with mysterious or magical significance, sometimes used for protection, luck or to foretell the future

Source 4 Viking treasure found in a field in Yorkshire, England, in 2007; this stash, which had been buried for over 1000 years, included 617 coins.

Economic changes

After they began raiding, the Vikings developed an economy based on exchanging goods for the value and weight of different precious metals. Silver was most commonly used. Much of this silver was brought back to the Viking homeland as loot. Silver items would be broken into smaller pieces until they matched the weights needed to buy other goods, such as cloth, grain and even slaves.

The Vikings also collected taxes (often as coins) from villagers in the places they colonised. In Ireland, the penalty for not paying taxes to the Viking rulers during the eighth century CE was to have your nostrils slit with a knife. This is where the saying 'to pay through the nose' comes from.

Over time, the Vikings developed an economy based on money – that is, one where a particular coin had a particular value. This is comparable to the way our currency works today. Most of the places the Vikings raided and colonised had similar economies. In many cases, Vikings even copied the designs of coins used in the regions they colonised. By the late tenth century, the kings of the emerging kingdoms of Sweden, Norway and Denmark were all issuing their own currencies.

Analyse this!
Viking treasure

12.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What was the Viking Age?

2 In your own words, **define** 'loot' and give two examples of plundered loot.

Comprehend

3 Where did the expression 'to pay through the nose' come from? **Explain** what it means.

4 Working in pairs, **explain** the effects of plundering and expansion on Viking society back home. Copy and complete the following table, identifying as many effects as you can:

Political effects	Economic effects

5 **Summarise** in a short paragraph how conversion to Christianity changed the traditional burial practices of the Vikings.

Analyse

6 **Analyse** Source 3 by answering the following questions:
 a Is it a primary or secondary source?
 b Who wrote this source and why do you think they wrote it?
 c What does this source tell you about Viking society?
 d Do you think this source is biased? Explain your answer.

Apply

7 Use the internet to **investigate** Viking runes. Draw the runes for the following words:
 - water or ocean
 - man
 - protection or defence.

8 Large Viking kingdoms formed in areas we now know as Norway, Sweden and Denmark. In small groups, **discuss** the potential strengths and weaknesses of large Viking kingdoms (rather than smaller local tribes).

12.9 Changes in other societies

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the Viking raids on Britain, including the attack on Lindisfarne.

Viking societies were not the only ones that changed as a result of the raids. The societies that Vikings encountered also experienced many changes. Deals were struck between Viking leaders and the rulers of places they raided. Some of these deals involved payments of money, while others involved grants of land. In time, the language, customs and beliefs of Viking settlers mixed with those of the local people, changing both societies.

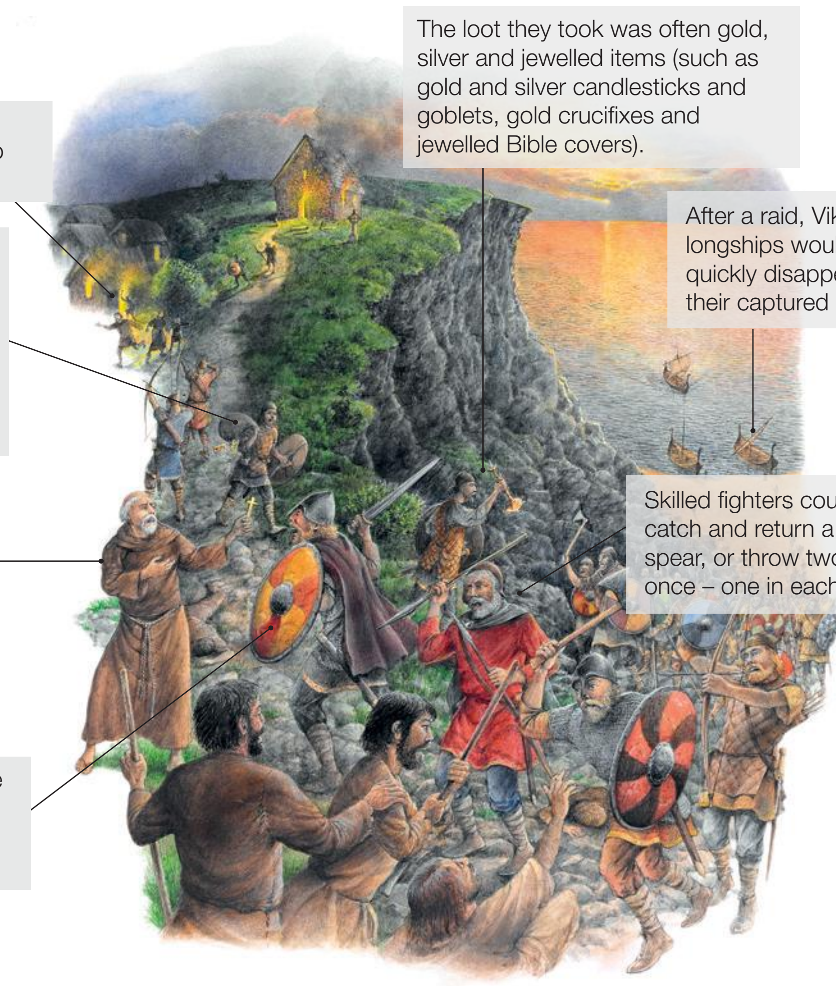
The first Viking raids

Anglo-Saxons
a Germanic people who settled in Britain in the 400s CE; they drove the local Celtic people to the land's extremities

The *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, a collection of records kept by the **Anglo-Saxons**, lists 787 CE as the year of the first Viking attack on England. Three Danish Viking ships came ashore in the south of the country. They were met by a royal official who assumed they were merchants. The official intended to escort them to the king's town, so that they could pay the required taxes. Instead, they murdered him.

Six years later, Vikings attacked the Christian monastery at Lindisfarne, an island off the coast of north-east England. This was one of Britain's most sacred sites. The attack was the beginning of 200 years of uncertainty and terror for many monasteries and settlements in lands around the Viking homelands.

Source 5 An artist's impression of a Viking raid on an English monastery; raids like these brought about many changes in societies across Europe.



Source 6

> [I]t is nearly 350 years that we and our fathers have inhabited this most lovely land, and never before has such terror appeared in Britain as we have now suffered from a pagan race … Behold, the church of St Cuthbert spattered with the blood of the priests of God …

A letter from Alcuin, a scholar, to Ethelred, King of Northumbria, 793 CE

Source 7

> The number of ships grows: the endless flood of Vikings never ceases to grow. Everywhere Christ's people are the victims of massacres, burnings and plunderings. The Vikings conquer all in their path and nothing resists them.

A translation from the writing of the Frankish monk Ermentarius of Noirmoutier, 860 CE

Many written accounts describe the fear and terror of the people subject to Viking raids: see, for example, Sources 6 and 7.

As illustrated in Source 5 on the previous page, the first Viking raids were hit-and-run affairs, timed and designed to cause maximum panic. There was no long-term plan behind them – the aim was just to plunder. Over time, though, Viking attacks along rivers pushed deeper into Europe and Asia. The Vikings also extended their plundering missions into modern-day Wales, Scotland and Ireland.

The end of Viking raids in Britain

In 865 CE, Britain was invaded by a huge Viking army from Denmark. This time, the motive was conquest, not plunder. Within a year, Vikings controlled the Northumbrian city of Jorvik (now known as York). By 870 CE, they controlled every Anglo-Saxon kingdom in England except Wessex.

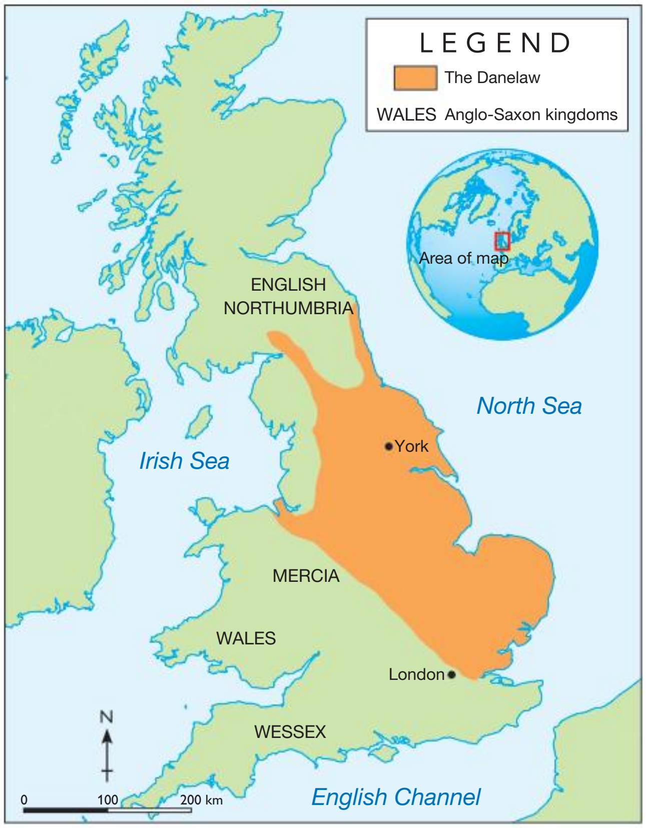
From 871 to 899 CE, a man called Alfred (later Alfred the Great) was the King of Wessex. King Alfred fiercely resisted Viking attacks. By 878 CE, he had forced the Viking leader, Guthrum, to accept a truce – and to convert to Christianity. As part of the peace treaty the two men drew up, King Alfred agreed that the Danish Vikings could take an area in England as their own. This agreement and the area of land that came under it became known as the ***Danelaw*** – meaning 'the area where the law of the Danes is enforced' (see Source 8). Over the next 100 years or so, Viking traditions, beliefs and language took hold in the former Anglo-Saxon community, influencing the history and society of England.

Danelaw
an area in north-west England (which includes the city of York) that the King of Wessex gave to the Vikings in exchange for their stopping raids of the region

Viking raids continued, on and off, after King Alfred's rule. Instead of fighting the invaders, some English kings preferred to pay the Vikings to leave them in peace. In 991 CE, King Ethelred became the first English king to make these kinds of payments to the Vikings. They became known as *Danegeld* (meaning Danes' money). In 1007 CE alone, the English paid *Danegeld* of nearly 13 500 kilograms of silver. The payments put a crushing weight on the English economy.

In 1016, the council that appointed English kings asked the then King of Denmark, Cnut, to become England's king. King Cnut ruled England wisely and well until his death in 1035. His reign largely ended the era of Viking raids in England. They stopped altogether with William the Conqueror's victory at the Battle of Hastings in 1066.

THE AREA OF THE *DANELAW*, 878 CE



Source 8 Source: Oxford University Press

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in other societies

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the Vikings in Britain and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

12.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. When did the first-ever recorded Viking attack on Britain take place?
2. In your own words, **define** '*Danelaw*'.

Comprehend

3. What was *Danegeld*? **Explain** how it was supposed to help keep the English safe from Viking raids.
4. Use the information in Source 5 to **explain** how Vikings gained wealth by raiding.

Analyse

5. **Analyse** Source 6 by answering the following questions:
   a. Is it a primary or secondary source?
   b. Who wrote this source and why do you think they wrote it?
   c. What does this source tell you about how life changed for people in Britain before and after the Viking raids?
   d. Can you identify any bias in this source? Explain your answer.
6. **Analyse** Source 7 by answering the following questions:
   a. Is it a primary or secondary source?
   b. Who wrote this source and why do you think they wrote it?
   c. What does this source reveal about how some people felt about Viking attacks?
   d. Can you identify any bias in this source? Explain your answer.

Apply

7. Imagine that you are a monk or villager living in Lindisfarne at the time of the Viking attack. Think about how this event might have changed your lifestyle. Write a paragraph describing how you felt and how you reacted.
8. Sources 6 and 7 give us insight into the points of view of the people who were raided by the Vikings. As a class, **discuss** why it is important to look at different points of view.

12.10 Significant individual: Leif Ericson

Learning intention

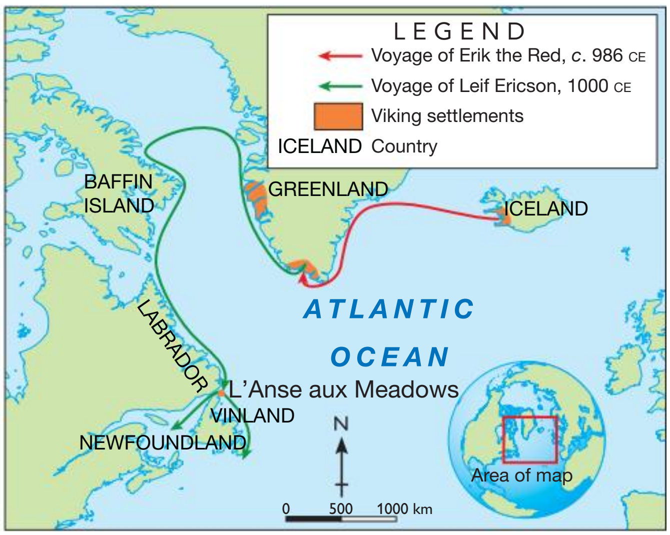
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the life and achievements of Leif Ericson.

The first European explorer to find the North American continent was a Viking by the name of Leif Ericson. In fact, Vikings were already living in North America 500 years before Christopher Columbus even came close to its shores.

Leif and his crew landed in what is now Canada. This significant event was recognised in 1964, when the US president declared 9 October as 'Leif Ericson Day'.

THE VOYAGES OF ERIK THE RED AND HIS SON LEIF ERICSON



Source 9 Source: Oxford University Press

Leif's early life

Leif was the second son of the Viking explorer Erik the Red; he was born in Iceland around 970 CE. In 982 CE, when Leif was about 12 years old, his father was banished from Iceland for killing a man. Erik and his family then set out in a boat with slaves and supplies, heading west. He called the land he found Greenland. There he settled, later encouraging other Icelanders to join him.

Finding North America

Different accounts (known as sagas) have been written about Leif finding North America. As a result, there is some debate among historians as to how he did so. According to *Eiríks Saga* (thought to have been written in the thirteenth century), Leif visited Norway in 999 CE with gifts for the king. He stayed for a year and converted to Christianity. He then returned to Greenland with the intention of carrying out the king's request to convert Greenlanders to Christianity. However, he was blown off course, ending up probably in what is today known as Newfoundland on the Canadian east coast.

Source 10 A statue of Leif Ericson in the capital of Iceland, Reykjavik

Another account, *Groenlendinga Saga*, is generally considered to provide more reliable evidence, even though – like *Eiríks Saga* – it was written more than 200 years after the events occurred. It states that Leif's finding of North America was far from accidental. In 986 CE, Bjarni Herjólfsson, a Norwegian explorer, arrived in Greenland looking for his father (who had recently emigrated from Iceland with Erik the Red). Along the way, Bjarni got lost. He reported to Leif that he had seen a wooded, hilly land to the west of Greenland, but it was more than a decade before Leif Ericson acted on this news.

Leif bought Bjarni's boat and, in around 1000 CE, set off with a crew of about 35 people to find the unknown land Bjarni had spoken of. One year later, after making two landings – first in a place he named Helluland (Flat Rock Land, thought to be on what is now Baffin Island) and second in a place he named Markland

(Wood Land, believed to be on the Labrador coast) – he settled in a grassy place he called Vinland Wine Land) (see Source 11). He and his crew built shelters and spent the winter there, before returning to Greenland.

Where Leif settled

Historians cannot say exactly where Leif Ericson's expedition landed in North America, but most agree it was probably somewhere on the east coast of Canada – possibly Newfoundland. In 1963, archaeologists discovered the remains of a Viking settlement in a place now called L'Anse aux Meadows in Newfoundland (see Source 12). Radiocarbon dating of charcoal found at the site indicates it was used in around 1000 CE.

Later visits

After Leif returned to Greenland, his brother and other family members made trips to the settlement he had established. Leif never returned though, and he died in 1020 CE. The new Viking settlement remained for a few years, but faced attack from the indigenous people of North America. Eventually, these attacks forced the Vikings to abandon the settlement and return to Greenland.

Source 11 An artist's impression of Leif Ericson and his crew landing in Vinland in 1001 CE

Source 12 The heritage-listed site of L'Anse aux Meadows in Newfoundland, Canada, with its reconstructed dwellings

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Leif Ericson

12.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What eventually forced the Vikings to abandon their settlement in North America?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how and why Leif Ericson ended up in Greenland.

3 How reliable are Viking sagas that were written over 200 years after the events took place? **Explain** your answer.

Apply

4 How do you think Leif's finding of North America affected the Viking society in Greenland? **Justify** (give reasons for) your opinion.

5 Use Source 9, together with Google Earth and images collected from the internet, to **create** a travel diary describing what Leif might have seen on his journey from Greenland to Vinland.

6 In pairs, **investigate** the life of Leif further. Construct a timeline plotting important events in his life, using data from *Groenlendinga Saga*.

12C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Viking legacy

The Viking festival known as Yule dates back thousands of years, and was celebrated long before Christianity arrived in the Viking homelands. Yule was a winter celebration held for 12 days in December to celebrate the winter solstice (the shortest day and longest night of the year). During Yule, Vikings would sacrifice animals to honour the gods, feast, dance and decorate trees. They even gave presents.

If you have ever wondered where many Christmas traditions come from, the following sources may help.

Source 13

> It was ancient custom that when sacrifice was to be made, all farmers were to come to the temple and bring along with them the food they needed while the feast lasted. At this feast all were to take part of the drinking of ale. Also all kinds of livestock were killed in connection with it … the meat of the animals was to be boiled and served as food at the banquet.

A description of Yule celebrations by Snorri Sturluson, *c.* 1230, in *Heimskringla: History of the Kings of Norway*, trans. M Lee Hollander, University of Texas Press, 2007

Source 14 During Yule celebrations, Vikings would cut down a large tree and carve the trunk with special runes to honour the gods. They would burn the log over the 12 days of the Yule celebration. Today, in many countries around the world, families celebrate Christmas by eating a cake known as a yule log.

Source 16 The tradition of Christmas trees dates back to pre-Christian times. During Yule, Vikings decorated evergreen trees with pieces of food and clothes, small statues of the gods, and carved runes.

Source 15 A comparison of modern Christmas traditions and practices of Vikings

Christmas celebrations or Christian traditions	Yule celebrations or Viking traditions
Santa Claus rides a flying sleigh pulled by magic reindeer.	The Viking god Thor rode a flying chariot pulled by magic goats.
There are 12 days of Christmas.	Celebrations of Yule lasted for 12 days.
Christmas trees are decorated.	Vikings decorated evergreen trees with clothing, food and other ornaments.
Father Christmas (Santa Claus) brings gifts.	The Viking god Odin was thought to visit families in secret during winter and leave gifts.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Extracting information to answer research questions

Presenting a series of historical arguments in writing is an important skill for all historians. It is particularly useful when convincing others of your point of view.

When developing a written historical argument, follow these steps:

Step 1 Create a key question to guide your research. This is the question that you want to 'answer' through research. For this exercise, your question might be something like: 'How much have Viking practices influenced our Christmas traditions?'

Step 2 Look closely at each source to find evidence. To do this, you might read your textbook, research online or visit the library.

Step 3 Extract information from the sources. Be sure to find a good spread of information to avoid a biased (one-sided) historical argument. To help extract information from your sources, you could create a table like the one in Source 17.

Research question: How much have Viking practices influenced our Christmas traditions?				
	Source 13	Source 14	Source 15	Source 16
Links to our Christmas traditions today				
Does not link to our Christmas traditions today				

Source 17 An example of how to extract information from sources in order to develop a written argument

Step 4 Work out which sources agree with each other and which do not. Do these sources give you a clear answer to your question, or are they at odds with each other?

Step 5 Write your argument in one or more paragraphs, using the sources as evidence. You should explain why particular sources support your argument, and give reasons why the sources that disagree with you are not as important or valid. For more information on how to include evidence from sources in a written explanation, see page 220.

Step 6 Acknowledge your sources by referencing them (see page 203 of 'The history toolkit).

Practise the skill

1 Look closely at Sources 13 to 16.

2 Using the steps outlined above, **create** your own research question about the Vikings and Christmas traditions. Extract the information from each source using the table like the one provided in Source 17.

3 Write your own historical explanation in response to this prompt: 'Many Christmas traditions today began with the Vikings.'

Extend your understanding

1 **Discuss** with your classmates why you think Christians would have included so many non-Christian traditions in their celebrations of Christmas.

2 Now, imagine you are important members of the Catholic Church, trying to bring Christianity to the Vikings. Stage a debate about whether to include local customs in your Christmas celebrations, or whether to stay true to the religious story and ignore local non-Christian customs.

12 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the following paragraphs and answer the questions below.

Did shield-maidens exist?

Viking mythology often included stories of shield-maidens (female warriors). By contrast, there are few references to shield-maidens in artefacts, drawings and runes. As a result, historians have traditionally believed these stories to be nothing more than myths.

In the 1870s, archaeologists excavated the gravesite of a Viking warrior they assumed was a man in Birka, Sweden. In the grave, they found a human skeleton, the skeletons of two horses, a sword, an axe, a shield, a bow with arrows, and a board game similar to chess. Historians believe that the board game might indicate that the warrior was a general.

But in 2017, DNA testing found the body in the grave was a woman. Since then, historians have been debating the historical significance of this. Some historians believe the warrior is proof that shield-maidens not only existed, but also could be generals. Some historians believe that the warrior is probably the only woman among mainly male warriors, and others believe that there is too little evidence to make a conclusion.

1 Where did the archaeologists find the warrior's grave? (1 mark)

2 **Name** three items that would indicate that it was a warrior's grave. (3 marks)

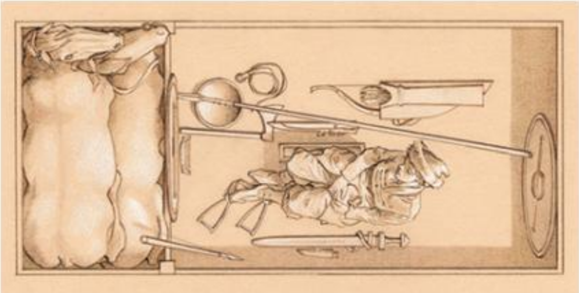
3 **Explain** why historians would have previously thought it was a male person's grave. (3 marks)

4 Using your knowledge of the Vikings, **explain** the significance of the two horses in the grave. (3 marks)

5 Write a paragraph evaluating the historical significance of this gravesite. In your paragraph, address the following points:
   - Why is this gravesite historically significant? (2 marks)
   - What might different historians conclude about which Vikings could be warriors? (3 marks)
   - What might the DNA testing conducted in 2017 mean for future (and previous) discoveries of Viking warrior gravesites? (5 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Source 18 An artist's drawing of the shield-maiden



Source 19 An artist's drawing of the burial chamber

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Summarise the main social classes in Viking society. Describe the way of life of the Vikings, including the role of gender.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.2, page 336.
Describe the types of homes Vikings lived in. Explain how the environment influenced the activities of Viking society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.3, page 340.
Describe the laws of Viking society and how they influenced Viking behaviour. Describe evidence of Viking trade between Russia, Ukraine and the east.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.4, page 343.
Describe Viking mythology and Viking beliefs of the afterlife. Explain the role of gods such as Odin, Thor and Frigga in Viking religion.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.5, page 345.
Describe the construction of longships and their role in exploration. Describe Viking craftsmanship of weapons and armour.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.6, page 350.
Explain reasons for Viking raids, including attacks on monasteries.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.7, page 354.
Explain the political, economic and religious changes in Viking society caused by expansion.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.8, page 358.
Describe the Viking raids on Britain, including the attack on Lindisfarne.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.9, page 361.
Describe the life and achievements of Leif Ericson.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 12.10, page 364.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 12

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 12

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The Vikings.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 12

obook pro

CHAPTER 13

The Mongol Empire

The Mongol Empire began as small tribes of nomadic animal herders on the vast grasslands of northern Asia. Around 1206 CE, a number of these tribal groups united to form a great army that began to invade and conquer neighbouring lands. The Mongol Empire only lasted for about 150 years, but it became one of the largest and most powerful empires the world has ever known.

Although they were feared as violent and merciless warriors, the Mongols also made many positive contributions. They allowed religious freedom across their empire and introduced many inspired policies and laws. They were also responsible for establishing vital trading routes between the East and West.

Source 1 A sand statue of Mongol Emperor Genghis Khan in the Badain Jaran Desert, inner Mongolia, China

obook pro

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

13A
How was Mongol society organised?

13B
Why did the Mongols expand their territory?

13C
What were the consequences of Mongol expansion?

13.1 Mongol expansion: a timeline

An artist's impression of Temujin (Genghis Khan)

1150 CE — 1200 — 1250

1185
Temujin (later known as Genghis Khan) becomes leader of his Mongol tribe at the age of 18.

1206
Genghis Khan unites all Mongol and Tatar tribes, marking the beginning of the Mongol Empire.

1215
Mongol forces invade and conquer Beijing.

1218
Northern China is conquered and the Mongols spread towards Turkestan, Persia and Russia.

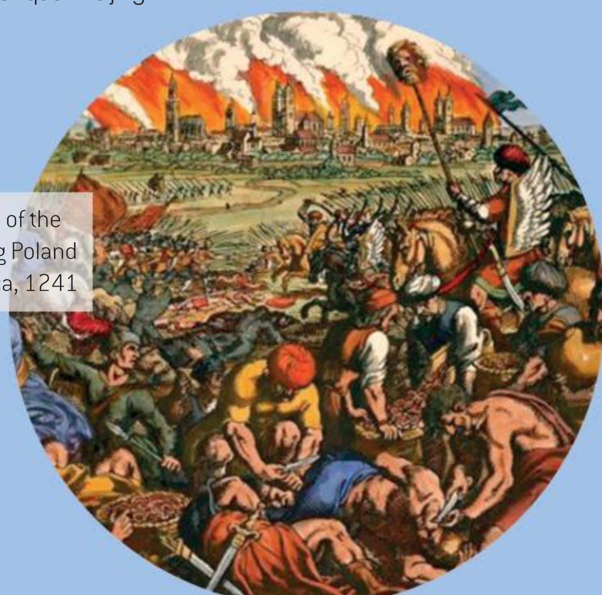
1227
Genghis Khan dies.

1229
Ogodei, Genghis Khan's third son, becomes Great Khan.

1235
Karakorum is established as the capital city of the Mongol Empire.

1241
Mongol forces invade Poland (Battle of Legnica) and Hungary (Battle of Mohi). In the same year, the Great Khan Ogodei dies.

1251
Mongke Khan becomes Great Khan.



An artist's impression of the Mongol army invading Poland at the Battle of Legnica, 1241

Sequence this!
Key events in Mongol expansion

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in Mongol expansion

An artist's impression of Marco Polo meeting Kublai Khan

A Japanese illustration showing samurai defending Japan against Mongolian invaders

1264
Kublai Khan's rule begins.

1271
Kublai Khan establishes the Yuan Dynasty, claiming the title Great Khan and Emperor of China.

1274
An attempted Mongol invasion of Japan fails because of a typhoon.

1276
The merchant traveller Marco Polo arrives in Dadu, the capital of the Yuan Dynasty (now Beijing).

1281
A second attempted invasion of Japan fails.

1294
Kublai Khan dies. The Mongol Empire begins to break apart.

1300

1353
There is an outbreak of disease in China (probably bubonic plague), killing huge numbers of people. Mongol control over China is weakened.

1350

1368
The Mongols are driven out of Beijing, marking an end to the Yuan Dynasty and the Mongol Empire.

1400 CE

13.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the year Temujin became leader of his tribe.

2 **Identify** when the Mongols conquered Beijing.

Comprehend

3 Using the timeline, calculate which khan ruled for a longer period – Genghis Khan or Kublai Khan?

Apply

4 **Investigate** some other significant Mongol invasions and conquests of European countries. Create a timeline using these dates.

5 On an outline map (there is one on your obook pro), colour all the modern-day countries listed on this timeline that the Mongol Empire attacked. What does this tell you about the strength of the empire?

Outline map
Asia

13.2 Traditional Mongol culture and society

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the daily life and culture of early Mongol society
- understand the nomadic nature of Mongol life.

The Mongol Empire had humble beginnings on the vast grasslands and plains of northern Asia. These grasslands are part of a region known today as the Eurasian **Steppe**. The steppe is known for its severe climate and extreme temperatures. In the spring there is plenty of food for horses and sheep, but spring is short. In summer, the sun beats down and temperatures can reach 40°C, turning the grass to straw. In winter, the ground is covered with a thick blanket of snow, and raging winds sweep across the plains, pushing temperatures as low as –40°C. Short, hot summers and long, cold winters made life hard for the Mongols and had a major influence on the way in which their society evolved and was organised.

steppe
a large stretch of grassland (without trees), typically found in places such as Siberia and Mongolia

clans
groups of people linked and united in their aims and behaviours by the knowledge (or a belief) that they share common ancestors

nomadic
a society of people who do not live in a set place but move around, usually in search of food and shelter, and good pasture for their animals

yurts
Mongolian circular tents, with wooden frames and felt walls

The nomadic way of life

The Mongols lived in tribal groups, and each tribe was led by a chief. The tribe was divided into **clans** along family lines, and each clan had its own leader. The clans lived as independent groups but would occasionally join together for security in the event of an outside threat.

Because of the harsh environment in which they lived, the Mongols were **nomadic**. They were an adaptable and versatile people who moved in their tribes from one location to another across a wide region, taking their homes and families with them. They responded to the seasons – taking their animals (such as sheep and horses) to the plains to graze in the summer months, and then into the valleys to take shelter during the bitter winter months. They tamed and rode the wild horses native to the region, hunted wild game, and traded with more settled societies in the south for foods and materials they could not source themselves (such as grain, and metals for their weapons).

Shelter and transportation

The Mongols lived in large, portable, circular tents called **yurts**. A yurt consisted of a circular wooden frame covered in felt made from sheep's wool. The felt coverings were often colourfully decorated. Yurts were designed so that they could be easily transported and reassembled (see Source 4) – an important feature for nomads.

Source 2 Traditional yurts on the Eurasian Steppe

Inside each yurt, carpets covered the floor. A hole (which could be covered over in bad weather) was left at the top to let smoke escape from the fires used for cooking and heating.

The animals they kept provided for most of the Mongols' needs. Horses were used for transport and enabled the Mongols to hunt. Female horses also provided milk. Milk was the Mongols' main source of nutrition, and from it they also made yoghurt and cheese. Sheep provided skin and wool for clothing; bones for arrowheads; wool to make felt for yurts; meat, milk and cheese; and dung to burn for cooking and heating. Less important, but still essential to life and trade on the steppe, were camels and oxen. These were transport animals used to pull carts full of goods as the Mongols travelled across the vast areas of the steppe.

MONGOL HOMELANDS

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 3 The Mongol homelands, showing the position of Karakorum – the Mongol capital between 1235 and 1260 – and modern-day country borders

Source 4 The construction of a yurt at a new campsite; illustration by Wayne Reynolds

Source 5 A Mongolian herder wearing a *deel*

deels
pieces of traditional Mongolian clothing, usually made of cotton, wool or silk

Food

The traditional Mongol diet consisted of 'white' and 'brown' foods – essentially, dairy products and meat products. Cheeses and yoghurts were an important staple in Mongol diets during summer months, when meat was rarely eaten. In the winter, however, meat was the main food. Sheep from their herds, as well as some wild game animals, such as birds and rabbits, provided the bulk of the Mongols' meat intake.

Horses provided milk for a fermented (and mildly alcoholic) drink called *kumis*. *Kumis* was produced by churning the milk inside a bag made of animal skin. The churning process involved moving the bag regularly. This could be accomplished by hanging it on the saddle of a horse or near the entrance of a yurt, so that every person who entered would churn the mixture as they passed through.

Clothing

Everyday clothing for both men and women were long robes called ***deels***. For most Mongols, these were long woollen coats that were buttoned on the side and belted around the middle. Wealthy members of Mongol society might have colourful *deels* made of brocade (a very delicate and decorative woven fabric) or silk with fur trims. Clothing had to be warm, but also layered so that some could be removed when the temperatures soared. Furthermore, it had to be unrestrictive to enable frequent horse-riding. Men wore trousers under their *deels*, and women wore either trousers or skirts. Both men and women wore leather boots.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

The symbolism of clothing

Living as nomads restricted the number of possessions Mongols could have. Therefore, clothing was an important family asset – often given as gifts or as part of a bride's dowry. Men often exchanged their leather belts, and khans (leaders) would give extravagant *deels* to the senior members of their court. During ceremonies and before prayers, Mongols removed all belts and hats to demonstrate their obedience to religion.

Clothing was also a symbol of wealth and power, as it showed how skilled a person was at hunting, or the amount of livestock they owned. This is because the materials used to make clothing came from animals – felt was made from the wool of sheep, while goats were herded as the main source of leather. Hunting foxes, monkeys, rabbits, squirrels and wolves provided furs, with the fur of snow leopards and lynx reserved for the elite. Silk was also available through trade with China.

Despite the significance of clothing in Mongolian culture, Mongols were often considered 'dirty' by foreigners. Mongols would wipe their hands on their clothes after eating and animal fat was used to help keep clothes windproof and waterproof. Their nomadic life and the weather meant that they did not wash their clothes often.

Headwear was also important to the Mongols. There are over 400 different shapes of traditional Mongolian headwear, which are both functional and decorative. The diversity in headwear was significant in distinguishing members of society as young or old, male or female, and married or single, as well as distinguishing the season or special events.

For example, the *boqta* was a type of tall headwear worn by women. It was significant as it helped to differentiate men and women from a distance, as there was no distinct difference in their clothing. The Venetian explorer Marco Polo is believed to have returned to Europe by 1269 with a *boqta* after travelling to Mongolia. It is possible that the shape of the *boqta* inspired the tall, cone-shaped headdress that became popular with medieval women in Europe, which was called a hennin.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 6 Mongolian women wearing *boqta* (left) and women in medieval Europe wearing hennins (right)

Religion

The religious beliefs and practices of the Mongols were based on a system known as shamanism. The practice of shamanism involves interaction between the spirit world and a shaman – a holy person with special powers to communicate with and interpret the spirits. Spirits included not only 'human' entities, such as ancestors, but also the natural world of animals and the environment. The shaman's role was to speak with the spirits on behalf of people, bless the herds and young children, and predict the future.

Shamans, who could be male or female, also provided medical care. Because of their knowledge of the natural world, they were able to create medicines from local plants. That practical knowledge, combined with their spiritual gifts, gave shamans an important role and a certain amount of power in Mongol society.

Source 7 A Mongolian shaman performing a traditional shamanistic ritual, with smoke and a drum

The Mongol people were not limited to shamanism in their spiritual beliefs. They were also willing to embrace other religious teachings and traditions they encountered as their empire expanded. Some adopted Islam from Persia, while others adopted Buddhism from Tibet. Some Mongol tribes even followed an early branch of eastern Christianity, called Nestorianism.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on traditional Mongol culture and society

13.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the word 'nomadic'.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the role of a shaman.

3 **Summarise** how the climate influenced the Mongol way of life.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 5. Why do you think traditional Mongolian clothing was designed this way?

Apply

5 **Investigate** traditional Mongolian clothing. Create a sketch of the headwear, clothing and boots you would wear for this season of the year.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the different uses of animals in traditional Mongol society. Which animals do you think were most important to daily life? Is it possible to rank them?
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

13.3 Social roles in Mongol society

Learning intention

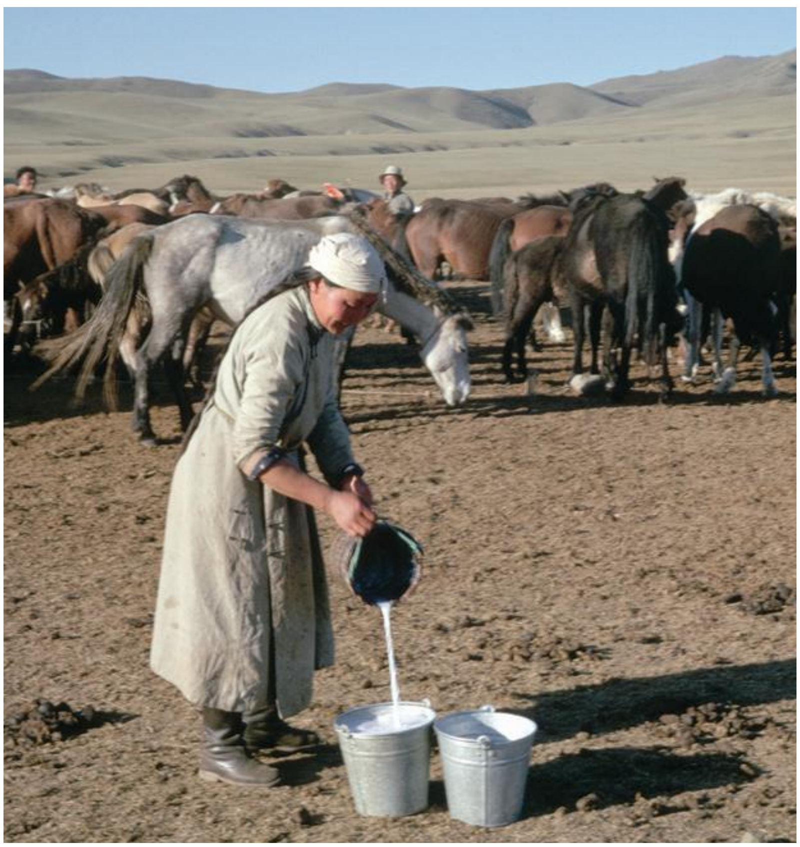
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the social organisation of early Mongol society.

khans
the title given to leaders of Mongolian communities (and, during the thirteenth century, to the head of the Mongol Empire)

Like many tribal nomadic societies, early Mongol society was clan-based. Within each clan, there was a head man who led the group and was responsible for it. Before the unification of the Mongols under Genghis Khan (formerly known as Temujin), there was no single great leader. As a result, wars between clans were common. Tribal warfare was therefore a part of life for Mongol men. They were skilled horsemen and fighters – skills that would help the Mongols to become a great power in their time. As the Mongol Empire grew and unified, senior leadership in the form of **khans** emerged.

Each Mongol man was the head of his own family, which could consist of several wives and many children. Because men spent a great deal of their time fighting wars between the clans, women were responsible for day-to-day outdoor work. This included the management of livestock, milking the animals, the making of felt for yurts, and breaking down and rebuilding the yurts whenever a move to a new territory was necessary. Women were also responsible for household chores, such as cooking and sewing.


Source 8 A Mongolian woman pouring horse's milk into buckets for fermenting

Although men were regarded as the natural leaders in Mongol society, Mongol women held a strong social position as well. Women were seen to possess wisdom, so it was common for men to have older wives to advise and guide them. It was considered 'unmanly' if a husband did not listen to his wife. It was not uncommon for women to receive military training, and at times to fight beside the men in battle. Mongol women could also be shamans. This meant that they too could have great influence in their clans.

Genghis Khan – the founder and first Great Khan of the Mongol Empire – is said to have listened carefully to his wife, Yesui. When she advised him to choose a successor in case he was injured or killed in battle, he is reported to have said: 'Even though she is only a woman, what Yesui says is quite right.' His mother also had great influence over him. His career and leadership were inspired by her.

Strengths and abilities of Mongol women

At times, women in the Mongol Empire exercised great political power and strength. Evidence shows that they not only took part in hunting and heavy labour, but also assumed leadership roles – usually because a male leader was absent or unavailable.

From 1227 until 1260, when Ogodei was Great Khan, his wife Toregene gradually assumed power. This was necessary because Ogodei Khan is rumoured to have spent much of his time drunk. On Ogodei Khan's death, Toregene became regent, meaning she ruled in place of their son, Guyuk, because he was too young to assume power. She appointed her own ministers, including a woman called Fatima who was her close confidante.

Other powerful women who ruled Mongolia included Sorghaghtani, the widow of Genghis Khan's son Tolui, who ruled northern China and eastern Mongolia; and Ebuskun, the widow of Genghis Khan's son Chaghatai, who ruled Turkestan. Both these women were Mongol only by marriage.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 9

> [Genghis Khan] ordered women accompanying the troops to do the work and perform the duties of the men, while the latter were absent fighting.

Extract from *The Mongols and Russia* by Russian historian George Vernadsky, 1953

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on social roles in Mongol society

Source 10

> [Mongol girls] and women ride and gallop as skilfully as men. We even saw them carrying quivers and bows, and the women can ride horses for as long as the men; they have shorter stirrups, handle horses very well, and mind all the property. The women make everything: skin clothes, shoes, leggings, and everything made of leather. They drive carts and repair them, they load camels, and are quick and vigorous in all their tasks. They all wear trousers, and some of them shoot just like men.

A description of Mongol women's skills by Giovanni di Plano Carpini (1182–1252), a European who lived for a time at the court of Great Khan Ogodei, in *The Story of the Mongols Whom We Call the Tartars*, 1245

Source 11 Female archers from Mongolia taking part in a traditional games festival called Naadam, which involves wrestling, horse racing and archery; Mongolian women participate in all contests except for wrestling.

13.3 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the main roles of men in Mongol society.

2 **Explain** which roles and daily jobs performed by women were most influential in Mongol society.

3 It was considered 'unmanly' for Mongol men to ignore the advice of their wives. Why was this the case?

Analyse

4 **Analyse** Source 10. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts, and talk about how those parts relate to each other.

Apply

5 In pairs or small groups, **discuss** how continuity and change applies to gender roles in traditional Mongol society and in modern-day society. Use your discussion points to fill in a table like this one.

Continuity in roles of men and women	Changes in roles of men and women

Remember, when you discuss a topic, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research.

13.4 Significant individual: Temujin (Genghis Khan)

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the rise and achievements of Genghis Khan.

Genghis Khan is regarded as the first great leader, or Great Khan, of the Mongol Empire. Given the name Temujin at the time of his birth around 1162, he was the eldest of five sons. His father, Yesugei, was a minor Mongol clan leader who was poisoned by a neighbouring **Tatar** tribe when Temujin was only nine years old. The Tatars were a rival ethnic group who also lived on the steppe. Despite his young age, Temujin took up his father's position as clan leader because he was the eldest son. The other members of the clan did not want such a young leader so they deserted Temujin, leaving him alone with his mother, Ho'elun, and younger siblings. For protection, the family was forced to move to the upper reaches of a river between the plain and the steppe, where they survived on berries and roots, as well as small wild animals.

Tatar
a member of an ethnic group whose members can be found today in countries such as Türkiye, Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, Ukraine and Azerbaijan

As Temujin grew to become a teenager, other Mongol clans feared his potential. One Mongol clan decided to capture him. Temujin was placed in a cage with a large wooden collar around his neck. He was unable to feed himself, as his hands were tied. One of the clan members took pity on him, and eventually helped Temujin escape by removing the wooden collar and giving him a horse so that he could return to his family.

Sequence this!
Events in Temujin's life

Temujin becomes the khan

Temujin believed that he had survived his misfortunes because he was destined for greatness. Influential shamans supported him. A shaman named Kokuchu, the son of Yesugei's old servant, claimed that he had ascended into heaven in a trance and had been given the message that Temujin and his sons would one day rule the whole world.

Source 12 An artist's impression of Genghis Khan

In 1185, when Temujin was about 18, he was chosen as the khan of his tribe. He immediately began to organise and train an army, making them into a strong fighting force.

He also created alliances with other clans and tribal groups to increase his power. One such group was known as the Kerait. Their khan, Toghrul, had been a **blood brother** of Temujin's father, Yesugei, and was happy to support Temujin. Together, they launched attacks on groups of Tatars. Temujin's attacks on the Tatars were also helped by a change in the attitude held by the Jin **Dynasty** – a powerful Manchurian tribe that had conquered northern China a century before. The Jin had been allies with the Tatars in the past, but now feared their growing strength. As a result, in 1196 the Jin formed an alliance with Temujin and Toghrul to defeat the Tatars.

blood brother
two or more men not related by birth who have sworn loyalty to each other; the Mongols used the term *anda*

dynasty
a period of rule by successive members of one extended family

Defeat of the Tatars

In 1202, Temujin's well-trained and disciplined army defeated the Tatars, even though his forces were outnumbered. They killed and captured thousands. The days that followed were bloody and brutal. Tatar women and young boys were taken into slavery, and any Tatar boy who stood taller than a wagon axle was put to death.

Source 13 A painting of Genghis Khan ascending the throne in 1206 near the Onan River region with his sons to the left, *c.* fourteenth century

The rise of Genghis Khan

In the summer of 1204, Temujin entered into a battle with the Naiman tribe (one of the 13 remaining tribes who resisted forming an alliance with him). At the battle of Chakirma'ut, Temujin's forces were once more heavily outnumbered, but again the superior organisation of his army brought him success. A childhood friend and blood brother of Temujin, called Jamuka, fought against him at the battle. Jamuka escaped from the battlefield with a few followers and hid in the mountains. A year later he was betrayed by a supporter and executed by Temujin.

Temujin also fell out with Toghrul, his father's old blood brother, who felt threatened by Temujin's rise. When Temujin attacked his camp, the older man fled. The way now lay open for Temujin to assume control of all the Mongol tribes.

When he was about 40 years old, Temujin became the undisputed leader of Central Asia. In 1206, a tribal council was summoned and tens of thousands of Mongols attended. They selected Temujin as their khan. As part of this ceremony, the Mongols gave Temujin a new title – Genghis Khan, meaning 'ruler of the world'.

With this, the Mongol Empire was born. Genghis Khan was now the ruler of about 1 million people in an area roughly the size of Western Europe. Not content with this, however, he soon began the real expansion of his empire.

13.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Who was Temujin? **State** the name by which he is more commonly known today.

2 **Identify** the year in which Temujin was born.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the Jin Dynasty stopped supporting the Tatars and began to support Temujin instead.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** Source 13 by answering the following:

- a Which features in the source align with the traditional Mongol lifestyle?
- b Which techniques and features has the artist used to show the importance of Genghis Khan and his crowning ceremony?

Apply

5 Using the life of Genghis Khan as a model, **discuss** the following questions in small groups. Remember, when you discuss a topic, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research.

- a What qualities does a person need to become a powerful leader in a society?
- b What conditions within a society allow one person to become powerful enough to take control of it?

13.5 The Mongol army

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify the unique features of the Mongol army

» explain the role of Genghis Khan in the organisation of the Mongol army.

For the Mongols, herding, hunting, foraging and migrating were vital skills they used during times of both peace and war. As such, their nomadic lifestyle prepared all members of Mongol society for conflict. The Mongols did not have a separate word to define a soldier, as they did not differentiate between civilians and soldiers. The army was considered the society, and collectively they all maintained an aggressive warrior culture (see Source 14).

Source 14

> It is an army after the fashion of a peasantry … it is also a peasantry in the guise of an army, all of them, great and small, noble and base, in time of battle becoming swordsmen, archers, lancers and advancing in whatever manner the occasion requires.
>
> Extract from Persian historian Ata-Malik Juvaini, *The History of the World Conqueror*, *c.* thirteenth century

Under Genghis Khan's leadership, the Mongol Empire expanded rapidly, eventually growing to cover an area larger than that of the Roman Empire, centuries earlier. In order to survive and thrive, the empire needed organisation and stability – in other words, the traditional nomadic lifestyle of the Mongols would need to change. To achieve this, Genghis Khan immediately introduced a series of new measures, many of which centred on the organisation of the Mongol army.

plunder
to steal, often using violent force

Organising the Mongol army

The Mongols had traditionally always been warriors, and Genghis Khan chose to use this to his advantage. He was determined to break the old tribal loyalties. He did this by emphasising each soldier's loyalty to his military unit. Beyond that, loyalty was to the house of the khan himself. To enforce this, he set about organising Mongol warriors from different tribes into one unified fighting group, based on the decimal system.

The decimal system meant that all Mongol warriors were organised into groups by multiples of 10:

- The whole army was made up of large fighting units known as *tumen* (which each had 10 000 members).
- Each *tumen* was then broken into *minghan* (which each had 1000 members).
- Each *minghan* was then broken into *zuut* (which each had 100 members).
- Finally, each *zuut* was broken into *arav* (which each had 10 members).

Alongside each *tumen* of soldiers was possibly another 30 000 assistants, including suppliers, merchants, servants and campers. Furthermore, 600 000 animals ensured a stable food supply for the entire *tumen*. Towards the end of Genghis Khan's rule, the Mongol army was believed to have around 125 000 soldiers. They did not receive payment, but instead had to pay their commanders a charge known as a *qubchur*. This payment was usually based on what they could **plunder** during their conquests.

Without a fixed income, soldiers could collect a booty of fortunes and keep most for themselves, making the *qubchur* a preferred method of payment (see Source 15).

In addition to organising the army in this way, Genghis Khan created an imperial guard known as the *keshig*. At first, this was made up of his original and most faithful supporters. By 1206, however, the imperial guard was 10 000 strong. Recruits came from all tribes, and membership was regarded as a supreme honour. The imperial guard also provided Genghis Khan with people he could trust to organise and administer his empire. Later, members of the *keshig* became the basis of the Mongol Empire's ruling class.

Source 15

When swiftly pursuing many foes,
If you get booty [valuable stolen goods],
What you get you shall take away.
When in a battue [hunt],
You slaughter wild beasts,
What you slaughter you shall take away.

Quote from Genghis Khan, in *The Secret History of the Mongols*, c. thirteenth century, translated by Igor de Rachewiltz

Analyse this!
Quote from Genghis Khan

Mongol weapons and fighting tactics

Each group within the Mongol army had specific tasks and functions that they were responsible for in battle, such as carrying messages or scouting enemy movements. Regardless of which group they belonged to, all Mongol warriors were trained to ride and fight on horseback. Genghis Khan divided these horsemen into light and heavy cavalry.

The light cavalry consisted mainly of archers. Each archer carried two bows and two quivers (containers) of arrows. Mongol archers could string and fire their arrows while riding at full gallop – timing their release so precisely that the jolt of galloping hooves did not affect their aim. Each man in the light cavalry also carried two or three javelins.

Source 16 A scene from the 2007 film *Mongol: The Rise of Genghis Khan*, showing the Mongol cavalry (soldiers mounted on horseback)

The heavy cavalry consisted of soldiers carrying battleaxes or hooked lances. Many members of the heavy cavalry also carried a sword and a wooden shield covered in leather. Some also carried lassos.

In battle, the light cavalry galloped back and forth in front of the enemy, showering them with arrows. After this, the light cavalry withdrew, leaving the heavy cavalry to charge. A favourite tactic of the Mongol army was to attack, then pretend to retreat. This would draw the enemy forward into a line of waiting archers.

As well as the cavalry, the Mongol army also had soldiers who would fight on foot. Often, these soldiers were recruited from areas the Mongols conquered, such as China. They were assigned to a Mongol soldier on horseback and would move across the battlefield ensuring any wounded enemy soldiers were killed. Even in victory, the Mongol army often slaughtered entire cities full of civilians and enemy troops. During the rule of the Mongol Empire, it is estimated that between 80 and 150 million people were killed in wars.

Source 17

> They have such a number of horses and mares that I do not believe there are so many in the rest of the world … the horse the [Mongols] ride on one day they do not mount again for the next three or four days, consequently they do not mind if they tire them out seeing they have such a great number of such animals.
>
> John of Plano Carpini, a European traveller to the Mongol court in the thirteenth century

Horsemanship and horses

Mongol horsemen were renowned for their riding skills. So central to their lives was horse-riding that children began riding at three or four years of age (and still do so today).

Mongol horsemen wore baggy trousers, long coats (fur-lined in winter), high leather boots, and caps with thick fur brims. Every horseman carried a large waterproof saddlebag,

Source 18 Herding Mongolian horses on the Eurasian Steppe

which could be inflated and used as a flotation device for crossing rivers (similar to a modern-day life jacket).

Mongol horsemen used much shorter stirrups than European horsemen at the time (similar to those used by professional jockeys today). This helped them to balance better on a galloping horse, and to stand in the saddle to shoot their arrows.

The breed of horses used by the Mongols are known as *takhi*. Over the course of centuries, *takhi* horses were bred to be tough enough to withstand the harsh environmental conditions of Central Asia, with its long, cold winters and short, hot summers. The lives of these horses were made much more difficult by the Mongols – they were a vital part of battles and were often pushed to their limits, being ridden huge distances each day. A rider and his horse could cover about 130 kilometres per day.

While Mongols were known for moving at rapid speeds, they had to be organised to ensure their horses were not exhausted before reaching the battlefield. Therefore, they would plan multiple strategic locations, routes and arrival times for various troops, ensuring they could maintain their strength for the impending fight.

Horses also played an important role in the diet of the Mongols and sometimes, when riding long distances without food, Mongol warriors would make a small cut on the vein in the neck of their horse and drink the vitamin-rich blood. Despite this, horses were never killed for their meat. Those that outlived their usefulness were often put out to pasture to spend the rest of their days grazing.

Source 19 A man falls from a fast-moving horse while playing a traditional nomadic game, in Gurvanbulag, Mongolia.

Source 20 An artist's impression of the Mongol Army on horseback, *c.* fourteenth century

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Interpreting sources

Historical sources always reflect the perspective of their creator. It is therefore important to consider a range of evidence when trying to interpret the accuracy and reliability of a source. Whether is it a visual or written source, there are key features that help us to understand the tone, values and point of view portrayed.

Source 21 is written by a Persian poet, Amir Khusrow, who lost his father and was held captive during a Mongol invasion in the thirteenth century. His opinion differs greatly from that of the creator of the painting in Source 23, which depicts some Mongol warriors.

When interpreting sources, it is important to ask questions about who created the source and why. Think about the context (situation) of when the source was produced, the opinions (point of view) expressed in the source and what messages are inferred (suggested) by the source.

Read Source 21 carefully. The annotations provide guidance on how to interpret a source.

For more information on this skill, see page 216 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Source 23. Look for the opinion and inference given by the creator.
2 **Distinguish** between the opinions about Mongol warriors in Sources 21 and 23. How are the opinions expressed and the inferences suggested different?

Source 21 Extract from Persian poet Amir Khusrow, *c.* thirteenth century

Opinion: Vivid descriptions, exaggerations and comparisons show the strong opinion of the author.

Their [Mongol] chests, in color half-black, half-white, were covered with lice which looked like sesame growing on a bad soil. Their bodies, indeed, were covered with these insects, and their skins were as rough-grained as shagreen [rough, untanned leather], fit only to be converted into shoes.

Inference: By relating the Mongol warriors to soil, insects and shoes, the author suggests they are dirty, disgusting or even pests.

Source 22 This statue of Genghis Khan stands 40 metres tall. It is situated in the Mongolian capital, Ulan Batar.

1 Powerful postures suggest that the warriors are fearless and strong.

2 Facial expressions are fierce and commanding, conveying power.

3 Horses are depicted as being powerful and agile.

4 Dust swept up and flags blowing high suggest menacing speed.

5 Elaborate uniforms and armour suggest wealth and high status, perhaps imperial leaders.

6 A variety of weapons, shields and horses indicate the versatility of the warriors.

Source 23 A modern artist's impression of Mongol warriors

13.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** the word 'cavalry'.

2 **Recall** how Genghis Khan broke down the old tribal loyalties in his new empire.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the main message conveyed in Source 14.

4 **Explain** the significance of horses in Mongol society. Refer to Sources 17 and 20 in your answer.

Analyse

5 **Compare** the tone and point of view of Sources 21 and 23. Provide specific examples from both sources to help you talk about their similarities and differences.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** three changes made to the army by Genghis Khan by ranking their effectiveness. In your response, explain your rankings.

7 **Create** a table listing the main characteristics of the heavy cavalry and the light cavalry.

13A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Oaths, loyalty and rivalry

In Mongol society, kinship and family loyalty were very important in maintaining the strength of the clan. A common practice between clans was to form alliances through becoming blood brothers, known as *anda*. This oath was meant to secure a bond between current or future khans and prevent any future rivalries. However, it was not always upheld.

Genghis Khan made many oaths, but as his power increased, these bonds broke. His childhood *anda*, Jamuka, continually betrayed him by launching many rebellions. After defeating Jamuka, Genghis Khan offered to reconcile with him, but Jamuka refused. Genghis Khan was reluctant to order Jamuka's death, but to be perceived as a strong leader, he had to remove the enemy. He ensured that the customs of an honourable death were followed for his blood brother.

Sources 24 to 26 outline the relationships formed by Genghis Khan, and the conflicts he had with his own sons.

Source 24

When he came to Toghrul, Temujin said, 'Since in earlier days you and my father declared yourselves sworn friends you are, indeed, like a father to me' … Thereupon, he gave him the black sable coat. Toghrul was very pleased. He said, 'In return for the black sable coat, I shall bring together for you your divided people; In return for the sable coat, I shall unite for you your scattered people.'

Extract from *The Secret History of the Mongols*, *c.* thirteenth century, translated by Igor de Rachewiltz

Source 25

They declared themselves *anda* a second time. So Temujin and Jamuka said to each other: 'We've heard the elders say, "When two men become *anda* their lives become one. One will never desert the other and will always defend him." This is the way we'll act from now on. We'll renew our old pledge and love each other forever.'

Temujin took the golden belt he'd received … and placed it around Anda Jamuka's waist … Jamuka took the golden belt he'd received … and placed it around the waist of Anda Temujin … they pledged their friendship and promised to love one another.

Extract from *The Secret History of the Mongols*, *c.* thirteenth century, translated by Francis Woodman Cleaves

Source 26

When Jochi, Chagadai, and Ogodei [Genghis Khan's sons] took the city of Gurganj they divided the city's people three ways and didn't leave a part for Genghis Khan … [he] yelled at the three of them, and for three days he wouldn't see them. Then his three commanders … petitioned him, saying: … 'Just when our wealth has grown like Heaven and Earth, when the Moslems are forced to bow at our feet, when our armies are rich and happy, why has the Khan grown angry? Your sons know what they've done wrong but now they're afraid of your anger. If you continue this way you may break their spirits. Let them come see you face to face.'

This pacified Genghis somewhat and he allowed his three sons, Jochi, Chagadai, and Ogodei, to present themselves … yelling at them till their feet sank into the Earth where they stood, till the sweat on their foreheads soaked thru to their feet, and still he continued to censure them.

Extract from *The Secret History of the Mongols*, *c.* thirteenth century, translated by Francis Woodman Cleaves

Note: These sources all come from *The Secret History of the Mongols*, which is the oldest surviving medieval text written in Mongolian.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing an extended response

Historians assess sources and weigh up the evidence presented to them. They can then form their own opinion and make a judgment as to what they believe happened in the past. This is known as an evaluation. Communicating how you have evaluated information and formed your own opinion is an important skill. You should always acknowledge the various viewpoints or both sides of the debate in your writing before providing an overall opinion. A formal response should be written in the third person.

Below is a suggested approach to structuring an extended response answer.

Step 1 Think about the evidence: You need to assess the information and form your opinion before writing in order to plan your response accurately. Have a discussion with a partner to help you clarify your thoughts.

Step 2 Set the scene: Write a short introductory paragraph identifying your key arguments and outline what points will be used in the body of the essay to support your argument/s.

Step 3 First argument: The first body paragraph should discuss one side of the argument or viewpoint. Follow the TEEL paragraph structure (see page 221 of 'The history toolkit') to help you.

Step 4 Alternative argument: The second body paragraph will raise the other side of the argument or alternative viewpoint. To highlight this change in the direction of the argument, start your paragraph with a linking phrase such as 'however', 'despite this' or 'alternatively'.

Step 5 Communicate your opinion: In your conclusion, you must explain which argument you believe is stronger and why. How did you prioritise one viewpoint over another? What factors did you consider more important when making a decision? Sometimes your opinion will be based on a mix of both sides, though usually your opinion will – even if only slightly – lean more to one side.

For more information on this skill, see page 220 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Using empathy, **discuss** with a partner how Genghis Khan may have felt throughout his life in regard to his relationships with family and friends.

2 'Tragedy, betrayal and disappointment from loved ones turned Genghis Khan into a ruthless Mongol warrior.' **To what extent** do you agree? Write an extended response debating this statement. Use examples and refer to Sources 24 to 26 in your response. Consider breaking down the question further by asking: was Genghis Khan a ruthless warrior and what evidence is there to support this? What evidence is there of tragedy, betrayal and disappointment in his life?

Extend your understanding

1 According to Sources 25 and 27, what common practice occurred during an oath?

2 In small groups, **create** a role-play. Choose either Source 24, 25 or 26 and conduct some extra research on the event or people described. Write a script depicting the various points of view of those involved, and present it to the class.

Source 27
Mongolian belts with elaborate brasswork were swapped between blood brothers.

13.6 Expansion of the Mongol Empire under Genghis Khan

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » summarise the events of Mongol expansion in Asia under Genghis Khan
- » analyse the effects of Mongol expansion in Asia.

Sequence this!
Expansion of the Mongol Empire under Genghis Khan

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 1.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The Mongol Empire expanded for a number of reasons. Living conditions in the Mongol homelands in the eastern part of the Eurasian Steppe were very harsh – even in good seasons. From around 1180 to 1220, the steppe experienced unusually cold weather. As a result, there was less grass available, which meant that the Mongols needed to find alternative ways of providing for themselves and their animals. This was a strong motivating factor for expanding their territory.

Another key factor for expansion was the will of Genghis Khan. Only a few years after becoming Mongol leader, he began a policy of conquest that would eventually see him control a vast empire that stretched over much of Central Asia and Eastern Europe.

Conquests in China

One of Genghis Khan's first concerns as Mongol leader was to invade and conquer territory in China. China at this time had been a divided country for many years. The Jin Dynasty ruled in the north, the Xia Dynasty in the north-west, and the Song Dynasty in the south.

Source 1 The remains of a 'Chinese pyramid' tomb in the Western Xia mausoleums, Yinchuan, China

Traditionally, the Mongols had traded with these dynasties for the items that they needed but could not produce themselves (such as grain, metals and fabrics). This made the Mongols heavily dependent on the Chinese, and gave the Chinese a great deal of power over the Mongols. In the early thirteenth century, the Chinese tried to limit trade with the Mongols. At first, the Mongols issued threats and launched raids against the Chinese. Soon, though, Genghis Khan launched a full-scale attack.

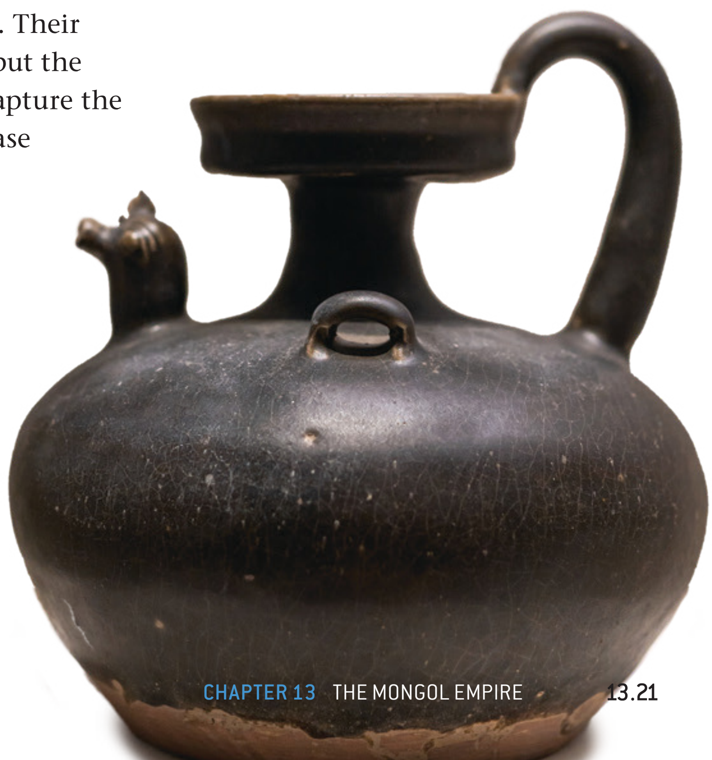
In 1209, the Mongol army attacked a Chinese tribal group known as the Tanguts, which was under the rule of the Xia Dynasty. The Tanguts commanded a strong army and were protected by walled cities. These types of defences were still quite new to the Mongols and it took them time to develop ways to defeat them.

Source 2 The Great Wall of China was built by the Chinese to keep out Mongol invaders, led by Genghis Khan.

Initially, Mongol forces simply laid **siege** to these cities – waiting outside the walls until the starving citizens surrendered. Over the course of the conflict with the Tanguts, though, the Mongols learned many new warfare tactics, including how to invade fortified towns using ramps.

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

Around 1215, Genghis Khan attacked the Jin Dynasty. Their territory was protected behind the Great Wall of China, but the Mongol army was able to break through its defences to capture the Jin capital, Beijing. Genghis Khan was then able to increase his army with many Chinese recruits, who brought with them knowledge of new weapons and explosives, siege engines (devices to break down city walls) and ships. More importantly, the Mongols now had access to all of the goods they had once had to trade for. The expansion of the empire had begun in earnest.



Source 3 A Jin Dynasty porcelain jug with a spout shaped like a chicken head; it was discovered at Zhenjiang, China, in 1969.

Conquests in Central Asia and Russia

Next, Genghis Khan set his sights on the Khwarezm Empire – a large territory in western Central Asia. Initially, Genghis Khan was interested in becoming trading partners with Khwarezm, so in 1218 he sent a group of Mongol merchants to establish trading ties. However, the governor of Khwarezm became suspicious and attacked the group. Genghis Khan was deeply insulted and immediately moved to take revenge. He planned one of his largest invasion campaigns to date, gathering over 200 000 soldiers and leading them into Khwarezm. The Mongol conquest of Khwarezm was brutal. A large percentage of the population was massacred.

Genghis Khan then moved towards Persia in 1219. Northern India and Afghanistan were also brought into the Mongol Empire. The Rus (early ancestors of modern-day Russians) and the Bulgars (early ancestors of modern-day Bulgarians) challenged the Mongols, but both of these armies were defeated.

At the time of Genghis Khan's death in 1227, the Mongol Empire stretched almost 3000 kilometres from east to west (see Source 6).

Source 4 A copper coin from the Khanate of the Golden Horde

Source 5 The ruins of Ayaz-Kala, a Khwarezm fortress in the Kyzylkum Desert, Uzbekistan

THE EXPANSION OF THE MONGOL EMPIRE

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 6 A map showing the expansion of the Mongol Empire, including the positions of the Mongol capitals: Karakorum (1235–60) and Dadu (from 1272; Dadu is modern-day Beijing)

Enlarged map
The expansion of the Mongol Empire

Outline map
Asia

13.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** why invading and conquering China became one of Genghis Khan's main concerns as the Mongol leader.

2 **Identify** why the Mongols initially found it difficult to conquer the Tanguts. What was the main reason?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why Genghis Khan invaded Khwarezm. What was his primary motivation?

Apply

4 On an outline map (there is one on your obook pro), show the extent of Mongol Empire in the thirteenth century. Using the world map at the back of this book, label all the modern-day countries that were part of the empire. Add any distinct physical features, such as mountains, deserts, rivers and seas. Create a suitable legend for the map.

5 **Investigate** developments in Mongol weaponry during the Mongol Empire's period of expansion. Discuss how these developments contributed to the Mongols' success in expanding their empire.

13.7 Expansion under Ogodei and his heirs

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the political changes made by Mongol leaders as they assumed control of settlements across Europe and Asia.

Sequence this!
Expansion under Ogodei and his heirs

Before his death, Genghis Khan divided the Mongol Empire into four parts. Three were given to his sons Ogodei, Chagatai and Tolui. The fourth part was given to the wives and family of his eldest son, Jochi, who had died shortly before Genghis Khan. On Genghis Khan's death, Ogodei – the third son – became Great Khan. He soon set about expanding the empire once more.

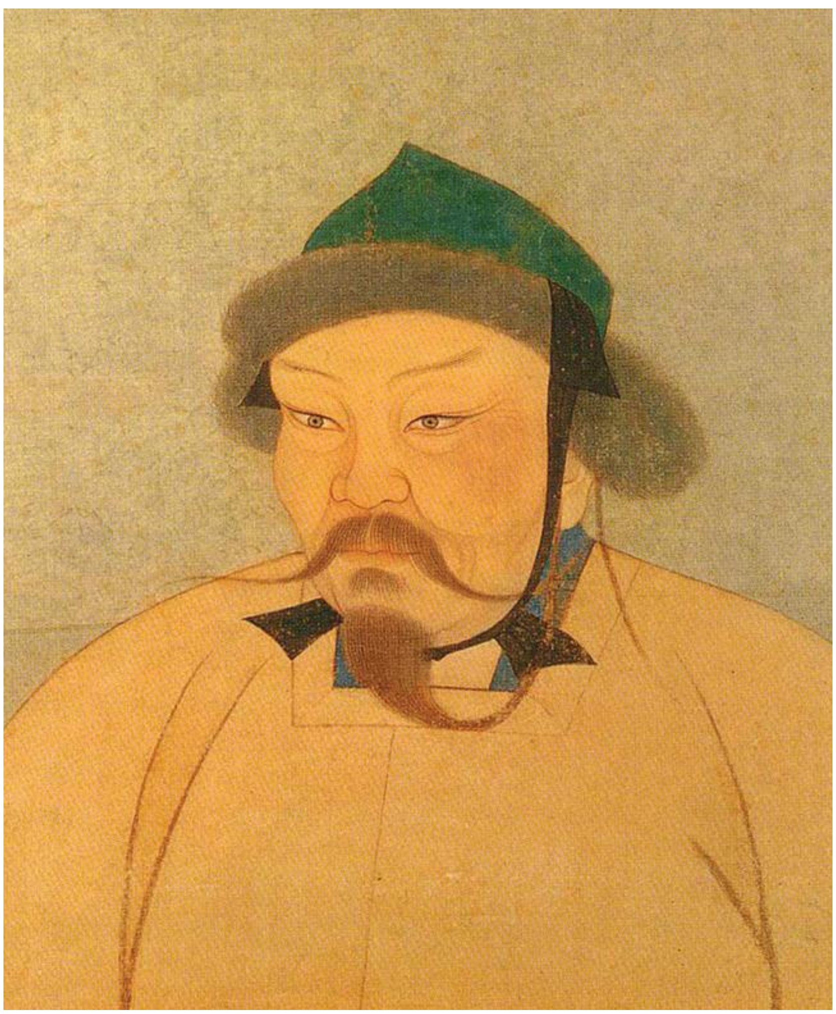
Ogodei Khan

Ogodei was confirmed as Great Khan in 1229. The main achievements of his reign were:

- the invasion of Russia and Eastern Europe
- the establishment of the Golden Horde – a vast Mongol territory that stretched from the Danube River, across the top of the Black and Caspian Seas, into Siberia (see Source 11 in topic 13.8)
- the completion of the conquest of the Jin Dynasty in northern China and Manchuria.

Ogodei Khan turned the settlement of Karakorum into the first Mongol capital, building a large city wall around it in 1235. By European standards of the time, Karakorum was not impressive; this is not surprising when you consider that the Mongols were not natural city-dwellers.

Under the rule of Ogodei Khan, new regulations were introduced across the empire to encourage and develop trade. These included the standardisation of weights and measures, and the introduction of paper money (an idea borrowed from the Chinese). Paper money was easier to carry on long journeys than gold and silver.



Source 7 An artist's impression of the Great Khan Ogodei

Renewed expansion of the empire

Under Ogodei Khan's leadership, the Mongol Empire continued to grow. In 1235, after conquering the Jin Dynasty, Ogodei Khan decided to expand his empire westwards. The first stage of the assault, in 1237, was directed against the Bulgars on the Volga River (see Source 6 in topic 13.6). A series of campaigns against the Russians followed between 1237 and 1240, under the leadership of Batu Khan, Ogodei's nephew.

The Mongols then invaded eastern Europe in 1241 in a two-pronged attack. A smaller force attacked through Poland and headed towards eastern Germany. It defeated a combined European army of Poles, Czechs and Germans in 1241 at Legnica in Poland. The larger Mongol force attacked Hungary and crushed its army at Mohi, two days after the victory at Legnica. Hungary was occupied and seemed destined to become part of the empire. The Mongols continued their advance to the west, as far as Austria. At this point they seemed on the verge of conquering all of Western Europe.

However, in December 1241, Ogodei Khan died. In response to this, the Mongol forces withdrew from Europe and returned to their homelands to decide on the next leader.

Think, pair, share

- Think about what contributed to the success of the Mongol Empire's expansion into Western Europe.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Power struggles

When Ogodei Khan died in 1241, there was much disagreement about who should be appointed Great Khan. At this time, there were signs that the empire was starting to break up into different regions – based largely on areas that certain khans had conquered and controlled. These khans could not agree on a single leader to become Great Khan. After a five-year stalemate, in 1246 Guyuk (Ogodei's son) was appointed leader. He died only two years later, and his mother Toregene then became **regent** for a few years. In 1251, Guyuk's cousin Mongke (Genghis Khan's grandson) was elected as Great Khan.

regent
a person who rules in place of a monarch who is temporarily absent from the country (e.g. fighting a war) or who is too young or sick to rule

Source 8 An illustration from a 1353 **manuscript** showing the Battle of Legnica in 1241, in which the Mongols defeated the combined forces of Poles, Czechs and Germans

manuscript
in the medieval sense, a document written or illustrated by hand (usually by monks)

Mongke Khan

Mongke Khan quickly carried out a series of important reforms (see Source 9) and military campaigns. Under his leadership, the Mongol Empire became powerful once more. Mongke Khan sent his brother Kublai to take the city of Dali (in south-west China) in 1254. He also sent other generals to attack Annam (in Vietnam) and the area surrounding it. He continued to push into Tibet, India and parts of the Middle East – eventually reaching the Egyptian border.

Mongke Khan appointed another brother, Hulagu, to take charge of Persia. In the 1250s, the Mongol army attacked and conquered the city of Baghdad. It then moved into Palestine.

At this time, Mongke Khan was still fixated on conquering the remainder of China. Kublai was ordered to supervise northern China, while Mongke Khan renewed his assault on the Song Dynasty in southern China. Mongke Khan took personal command of the army and attacked the province of Sichuan in 1258. However, he died in August 1259, during a siege.

Some of Mongke Khan's reforms

- Ordered a census of households, fighting men, fields, livestock, vineyards and orchards to help establish a fixed tax
- Continued to exempt religious leaders from taxation, and allowed his people religious freedom
- Appointed or confirmed leadership positions in the Buddhist and Taoist religions, and intervened to resolve religious disputes
- Established a department of monetary affairs that controlled the issue of paper money

Source 9 Some of the reforms implemented by Mongke Khan

13.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Recall** when Genghis Khan's son Ogodei was elected as Great Khan.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** two of Ogodei Khan's main achievements as Great Khan.

Analyse

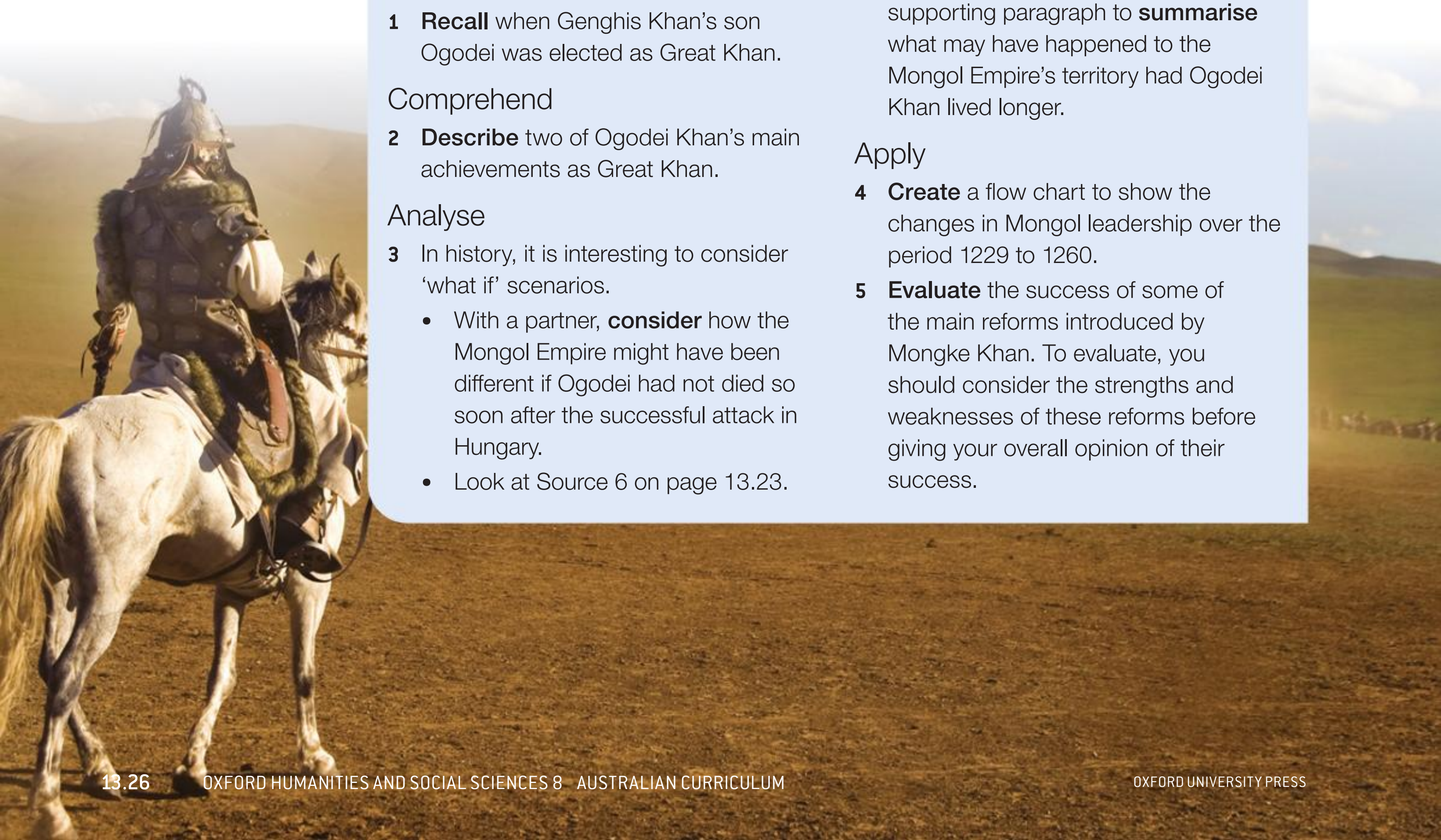
3 In history, it is interesting to consider 'what if' scenarios.
- With a partner, **consider** how the Mongol Empire might have been different if Ogodei had not died so soon after the successful attack in Hungary.
- Look at Source 6 on page 13.23.

Form a hypothesis and write a supporting paragraph to **summarise** what may have happened to the Mongol Empire's territory had Ogodei Khan lived longer.

Apply

4 **Create** a flow chart to show the changes in Mongol leadership over the period 1229 to 1260.

5 **Evaluate** the success of some of the main reforms introduced by Mongke Khan. To evaluate, you should consider the strengths and weaknesses of these reforms before giving your overall opinion of their success.



13.8 Kublai Khan and conquests in Asia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the rise and reign of Kublai Khan as the first Mongol emperor of China.

After Mongke Khan's death, there was once again a power struggle to decide who would become the next Great Khan. This carried on for years and eventually resulted in a civil war.

An empire divided

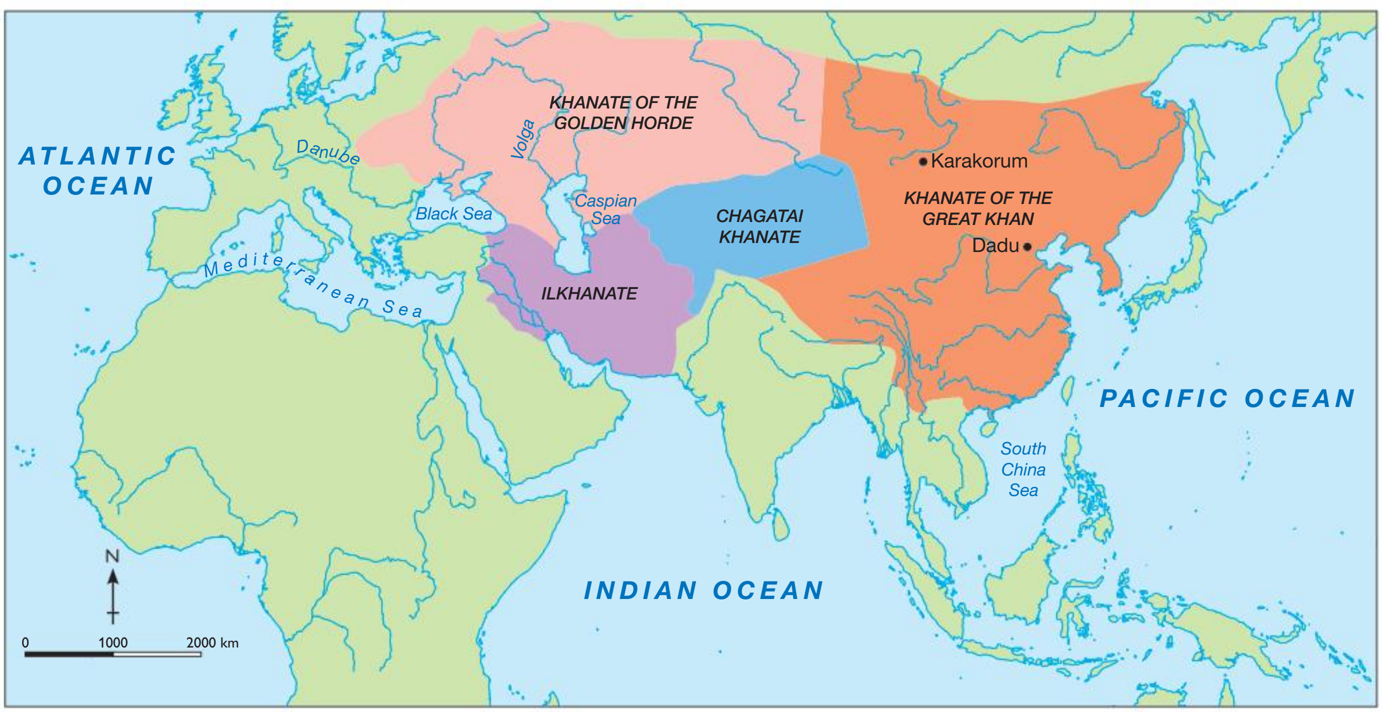
By 1263, the result was an empire split into four regions known as **khanates**. Each khanate was administered and controlled by a different khan (see Sources 10 and 11). Over time, each khanate began to take on its own characteristics and adopt different traditions from the region, such as religions and languages.

khanates
regions (similar to a state or territory) of the Mongol Empire; the Mongol Empire eventually split into four khanates, each administered by a different khan

Source 10 The four khanates of the Mongol Empire

Khanate of the Great Khan	• Led by Kublai Khan (1215–94) • Covered parts of China during the Yuan Dynasty • Mongols in the region adopted many Chinese customs
Khanate of the Golden Horde	• Controlled by Batu Khan (1207–55) • Covered regions of Central Asia and Russia • Mongols in the region adopted many Russian customs • Internal fighting among Mongol leaders in the region resulted in loss of Mongol control
Ilkhanate	• Controlled by Hulagu Khan (1217–65) • Covered parts of the Middle East • Mongols in the region converted to Islam • Turkish became the common language
Chagatai Khanate	• Administered by Chagatai Khan (*c*. 1185–1242) • Covered parts of modern-day Mongolia

THE MONGOL EMPIRE AND ITS FOUR KHANATES



Source 11 Source: Oxford University Press

The rise of Kublai Khan

Analyse this!
The coronation of Kublai Khan

From around 1264, after many battles, Kublai gradually became accepted unofficially as Great Khan. The brother of Mongke and the grandson of Genghis, Kublai Khan would go on to rule for 30 years. Throughout his rule there were many attempts to rebel against his leadership – mainly from his relatives.

Source 12 This engraving of the coronation of Kublai Khan first appeared in the thirteenth-century French book *La Fleur des Histoires de la Terre d'Orient*, and shows a very European interpretation of the event.

The conquest of southern China

Almost immediately after taking power, Kublai Khan continued the conquest of the Song Dynasty in southern China, which Mongke had begun before his death. Kublai Khan's army took the Song capital, Hangzhou, in 1276, and wiped out the remains of any resistance by 1279. Kublai Khan now controlled northern and southern China, where he founded a new imperial dynasty, known as the Yuan Dynasty – China's first foreign-led dynasty. At this time, Kublai Khan also declared himself the **emperor** of the Yuan Dynasty. He renamed his base in China Dadu (meaning 'great capital'). From these roots grew the city we know today as Beijing.

emperor
someone who rules an empire; namely a group of countries and/or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

Governing China

Kublai Khan understood the importance of agriculture and appreciated both architecture and city life. As a result, the destruction of homes and temples across southern China was kept to a minimum – this was very unlike the way earlier khans had treated cities they conquered in China's north. In the south, landowners who surrendered to Mongol rule were allowed to keep their estates. This move helped to ensure their loyalty to the new regime.

The Mongols adopted any institution and employed any servant (including foreigners) who would provide effective government, as long as nothing was done to endanger Mongol military power. The large amounts of money the Mongols earned from taxes suggest that this policy worked.

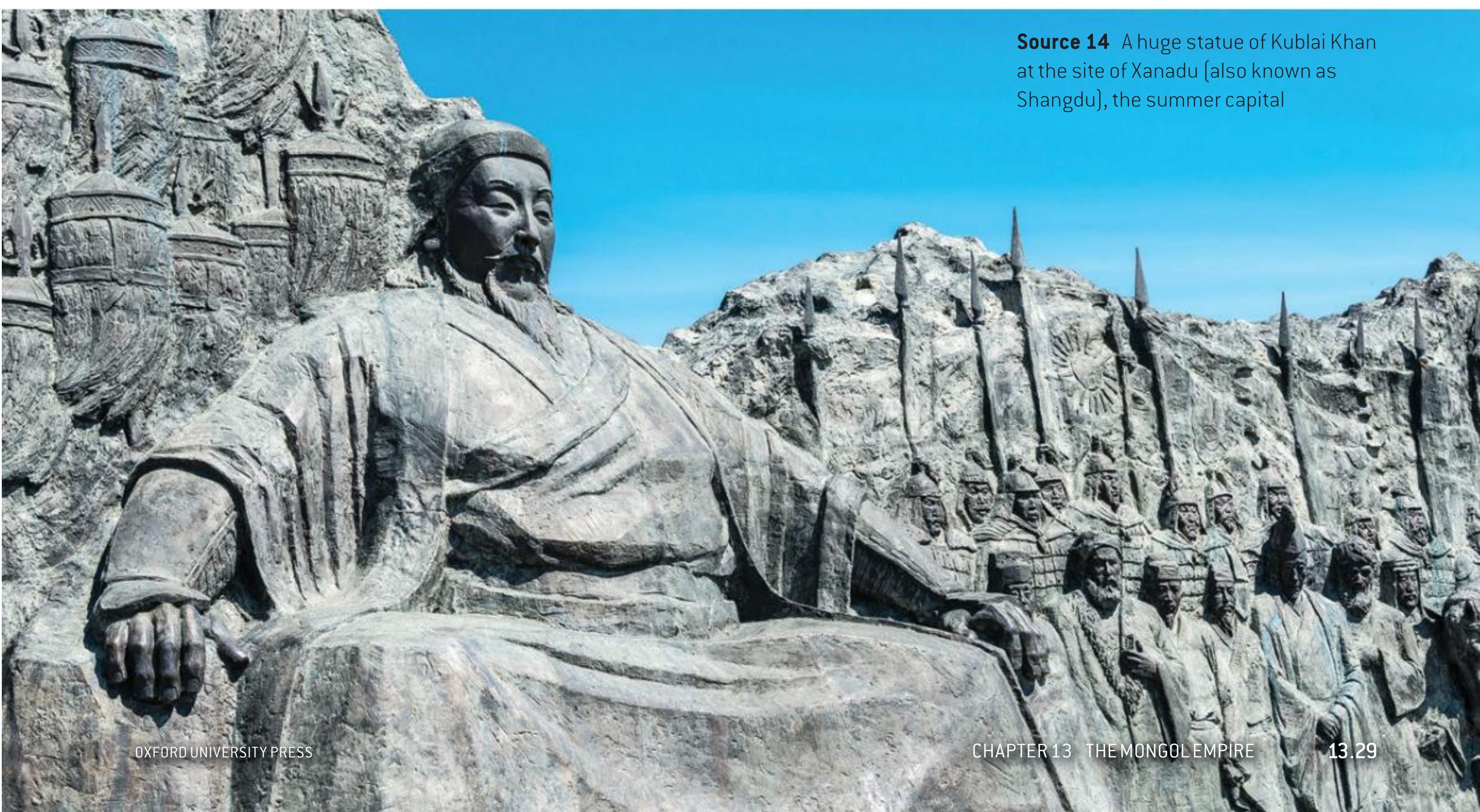
Chinese junior civil servants were allowed to keep their positions. However, Kublai Khan preferred to appoint administrators from other parts of the Mongol Empire for the highest offices. For example, he put a Muslim governor from the west in charge of Yunnan in the east, and a Tibetan officer from the far west in charge of temple renovation in Hangzhou on the east coast. He also gave a number of official posts to the European traveller and writer Marco Polo.

Source 13

The Great Khan chose 12 barons to whom he entrusted all the necessary affairs of 34 provinces of Cathay [China]. These 12 barons reside all together in a very rich and handsome palace, which is inside the city of Cambaluc [Beijing] ... To every province is assigned a judge and several clerks; and all reside in this palace … But the power of those 12 barons is so great that they choose the governors for all those 34 great provinces. Only after they have chosen do they inform the emperor of their choice. This he confirms, and grants to the person nominated a tablet of gold such as is appropriate to the rank of his government.

Those 12 barons also have such authority that they can send the armed forces wherever and in whatever strength they please. This is done of course with the emperor's awareness … They are called 'The Supreme Court', as is the palace where they abide.

Extract written by Marco Polo regarding the leadership of Kublai Khan, *c.* thirteenth century, from *The Book of Ser Marco Polo: The Venetian Concerning Kingdoms and Marvels of the East*, Vols 1 and 2, translated and edited by Colonel Sir Henry Yule, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1903



Source 14 A huge statue of Kublai Khan at the site of Xanadu (also known as Shangdu), the summer capital

Crushing opposition

warlords
people who both rule a society (or community) and head up its military operations

Despite many laws and new policies introduced to govern China and protect his power, Kublai Khan still faced opposition – both from the Chinese and from rival Mongol khans and **warlords** keen to overthrow him.

In 1287, a Mongol warlord and prince by the name of Nayan rose up against Kublai Khan in a great battle known as the Rebellion of Nayan. The battle was fought on the grasslands of Mongolia in north-eastern China. Nayan ruled an administrative region within the Mongol Empire. He challenged Kublai Khan, and demanded greater independence from the laws and bureaucracy governing the empire.

Kublai Khan, now in his seventies, personally led his troops into battle against Nayan. He was so overweight that he was no longer able to ride. Instead, he travelled in a mobile fort carried by four elephants, known as a palanquin.

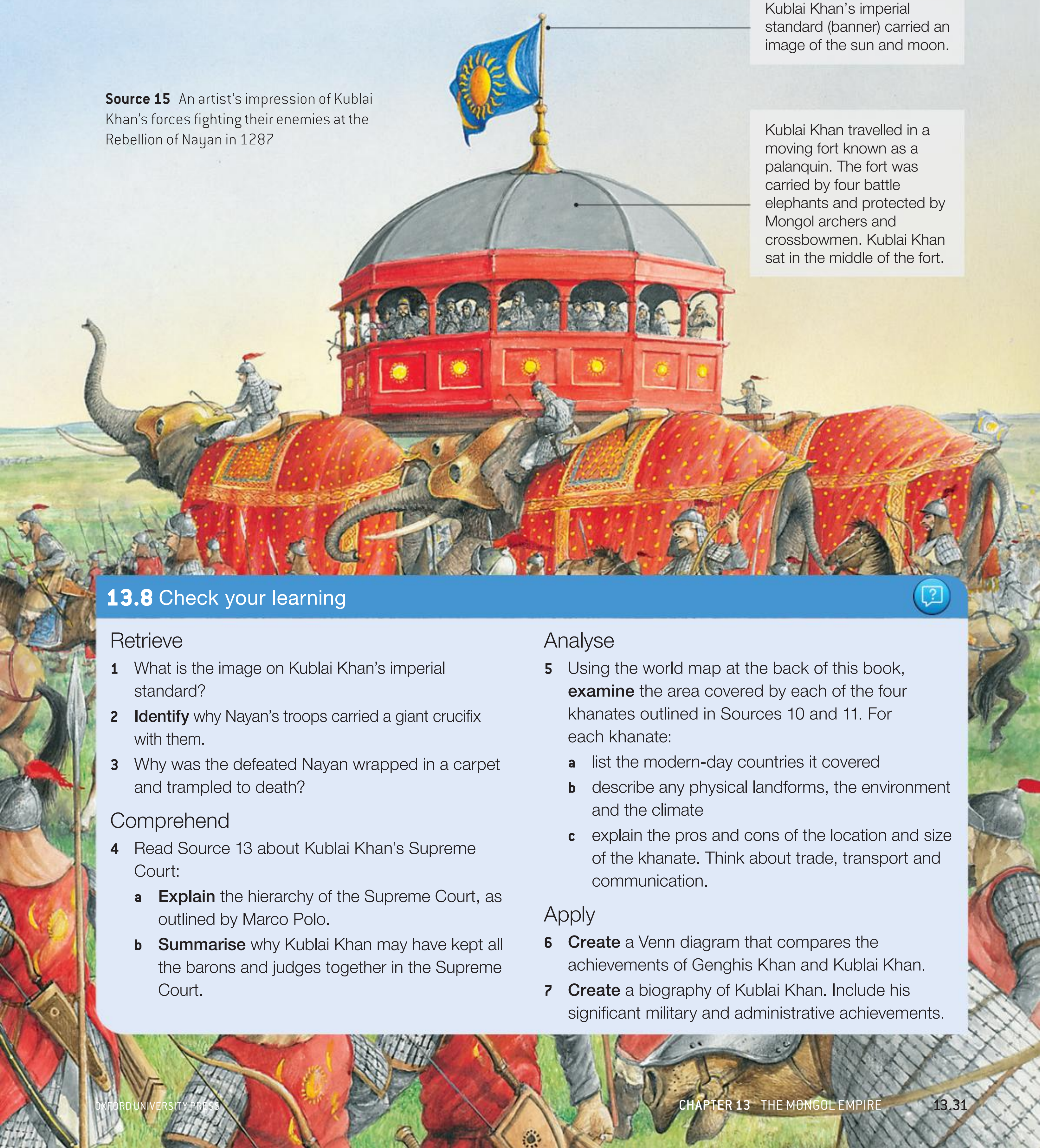
Both armies were made up of Mongol horsemen and Chinese foot soldiers. Marco Polo accompanied Kublai Khan and his army and wrote about what he saw. According to his records, hundreds of thousands of troops fought on both sides.

Nayan's army was defeated and Nayan was captured. According to Mongol law, it was illegal for the blood of a Mongol prince to touch the ground. In accordance with this law, Nayan was wrapped in a carpet and trampled to death.

Nayan was a member of the Nestorian Church (a tradition of eastern Christianity) and his troops carried a large cross in the belief that the Christian God would come to his aid.

Both armies consisted of Mongol horsemen and Chinese foot soldiers.

Mongol soldiers were well equipped. They carried curved swords, lances, two bows with arrows that could pierce armour, a helmet and a shield. A soldier's greatest asset, though, was his horse.



Source 15 An artist's impression of Kublai Khan's forces fighting their enemies at the Rebellion of Nayan in 1287

13.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. What is the image on Kublai Khan's imperial standard?
2. **Identify** why Nayan's troops carried a giant crucifix with them.
3. Why was the defeated Nayan wrapped in a carpet and trampled to death?

Comprehend

4. Read Source 13 about Kublai Khan's Supreme Court:
   a. **Explain** the hierarchy of the Supreme Court, as outlined by Marco Polo.
   b. **Summarise** why Kublai Khan may have kept all the barons and judges together in the Supreme Court.

Analyse

5. Using the world map at the back of this book, **examine** the area covered by each of the four khanates outlined in Sources 10 and 11. For each khanate:
   a. list the modern-day countries it covered
   b. describe any physical landforms, the environment and the climate
   c. explain the pros and cons of the location and size of the khanate. Think about trade, transport and communication.

Apply

6. **Create** a Venn diagram that compares the achievements of Genghis Khan and Kublai Khan.
7. **Create** a biography of Kublai Khan. Include his significant military and administrative achievements.

13.9 End of Mongol rule in Asia

Source 16 This portrait of Kublai Khan was created by Nepalese artist Anige in 1294, shortly after Kublai Khan's death. It is painted using a Chinese portrait style popular at the time.

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » identify the reasons for the decline of the Mongol Empire
- » analyse the usefulness of primary sources in understanding the Mongol Empire.

One of the effects of shifting the Mongol centre of power from the old capital of Karakorum to the new capital in Dadu, China, was that regions of Central Asia became more difficult to oversee. These areas gradually slipped from Kublai Khan's direct control. At this time, he was more intent on spreading Mongol influence further into South-East Asia, with hopes of even controlling the wealthy trading island Java (a part of modern-day Indonesia); however, this was not to be.

Failed expansion into Japan

Kublai's campaigns against the Song Dynasty had introduced him to ships. Now with ships of their own, the Mongols launched two attacks on Japan, one in 1274 and another larger one in 1281. Both attempts to conquer Japan were disastrous, largely because of bad storms at sea. The Japanese named the stormy typhoon winds that ended the larger Mongol invasion of 1281 the *kamikaze* ('divine winds'), because they believed the gods had sent these winds to protect and defend them.

Source 17 A thirteenth-century Japanese painting showing Japanese warriors boarding a Mongol ship in 1281

bubonic plague
an infectious disease caused by bacteria (called *Yersinia pestis*), which are carried by fleas on rats and mice; it often quickly kills those who contract it

Black Death
a deadly plague that spread across Asia, Europe and Africa during the fourteenth century

End of Mongol rule in China

Kublai Khan died in 1294. After his death, Mongol control over China weakened. A series of natural disasters contributed to the problems facing the Mongols in China, including extensive flooding of the Yellow River and outbreaks of disease. In fact, the outbreak of disease in 1353–54, which killed huge numbers of people in the region, was probably the **bubonic plague**. Many scholars believe Mongol traders then carried this disease across Asia into parts of Africa and Europe, leading to the deadly pandemic known as the **Black Death**.

The writings of William of Rubruck and Marco Polo

Much of what Western historians know about the Mongol Empire and some of its significant people comes from evidence provided by two written works:

- a journal written by William of Rubruck
- a book written by Marco Polo called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

William of Rubruck (*c.* 1210–70) was a Franciscan monk. He had heard about the Mongols while fighting with King Louis IX of France in the Crusades (a series of wars fought by Christians and Muslims between 1096 and 1291 CE over control of the Holy Land). He wanted to gain the support of the Mongols against the Muslims in the Holy Land, so he undertook a three-year journey to the Mongol capital of Karakorum, travelling through the lands of the Golden Horde to get there. His account provides information not only about the lands he crossed, but also great detail about the people and customs of the regions he visited and the layout of the cities in which he stayed.

Marco Polo (1254–1324) was a Venetian traveller and merchant. At 17 years of age, he accompanied his father and uncle on a trip through Asia. He returned 24 years later. Five years after leaving Venice he was in Dadu, where he met Kublai Khan in 1276. He described what he saw and did (including the diplomatic duties he carried out for Kublai Khan) in his book, *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

Both of these historical sources provide a great deal of information and evidence about the Mongol Empire and the ways in which their society functioned. Much of what we know today has been attributed to them.

Unlike the work of William of Rubruck, the accuracy of Marco Polo's accounts is being questioned by some historians today. For example, English historian Frances Wood argues that the lack of detail about Chinese culture and customs in Marco Polo's book indicates that he never even reached China – instead using information from merchants and travellers he met closer to home.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Watch it!
A video and quiz on Marco Polo

Source 18 An artist's impression of Marco Polo (along with his father and uncle) meeting Kublai Khan

13.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** two of the primary sources of evidence that Western historians have relating to the life and times of Kublai Khan.

Analyse

2 Kublai Khan and Marco Polo came from different cultures. **Compare** the lives of these two men by talking about their similarities and differences.

Apply

3 **Create** a concept map that shows some of the factors that helped to end Mongol rule in China.

4 **Discuss** the cause and effect of environmental factors on the development and decline of the Mongol Empire. How important were these environmental factors?

5 Examine the images of Kublai Khan in Source 12 on page 13.28 and Sources 16 and 18 in this topic.

- a **Describe** the different ways in which Kublai Khan is presented in each of the artworks.
- b How accurate do you think each of these portrayals of Kublai Khan is? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.
- c **Evaluate** how useful each of these primary sources is to historians. What are their strengths and weaknesses? What is your overall opinion of them as useful sources?

13B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Mongol warfare

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Mongols created their empire by invading and conquering the peoples and lands surrounding their traditional homelands.

The speed, skill and discipline of the Mongol army, along with the way in which they treated the enemies they defeated, made them a truly terrifying force. Their traditional tactics and weapons, however, were not always effective against the armies and fortified cities they encountered as they ventured south and west. The Mongols' ability to adapt their fighting methods to new challenges and technologies was a significant factor in their success.

The introduction of the catapult to siege warfare has sparked historical debate. This weapon could hurl large objects over walls, like a giant slingshot. Accounts regarding the Siege of Saianfu (also called the Battle of Xiangyang), which lasted from 1267 to 1273, suggest different parties introduced the catapult as a siege weapon during the time of Kublai Khan. Some historians believe such weapons were used earlier than this, by Genghis Khan.

Source 19

As the Mongols chalked up victory after victory, they readily adapted any weapon or method of attack which was an improvement on their own. The catapult and the cataphract [a heavily armoured catapult] are two examples of this. The use of flaming naphtha [a flammable liquid] hurled into a walled city is another.

The art of the siege was unknown to the Mongols when Genghis Khan was forming his empire. His warriors quickly learned it when they invaded China.

Extract from Robert Webb, *Genghis Khan: Conqueror of the Medieval World*, Franklin Watts, 1967

Source 20

Saianfu is a very great and noble city … [It] held out against the Great Kaan [Khan] for three years …

Marco said: 'We could find you a way of forcing the city to surrender speedily … we have with us among our followers men who are able to construct catapults which shall cast such great stones that the garrison will never be able to stand them …'

The Kaan bade them with all his heart have such catapults made as speedily as possible … for I tell you that in all those parts they know nothing of catapults …; and they were so far from being accustomed to employ them in their wars that they had never even seen them, nor knew what they were.

Extract from Marco Polo, *The Travels of Marco Polo*, written in the thirteenth century; Marco Polo arrived in Asia in 1271

Source 21 This manuscript illustration, from the 1307 *World History of Compendium of Chronicles* by Rashid al-Din, shows the Mongols besieging a city using a catapult. The script on this page states that Muslim engineers introduced it: 'Before that there had not been any large Frankish catapult in Cathay [China], but Talib, a catapult-maker from this land … and his sons Abubakr, Ibrahim, and Muhammad, and his employees made seven large catapults and set out to conquer the city, [Saianfu, modern-day Xiangyang].'

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing a source using DAMMIT U

When presented with a historical source to analyse, the use of an acronym such as 'DAMMIT U' can make it easier to analyse and structure your response.

When structuring a written response, 'DAM' can be summarised in one to three sentences, whereas 'MIT' should provide examples from the source to support your analysis. Examples may be in the form of a short quotation (three to seven words is adequate) in which you explain its meaning. For a visual source, you can refer to a feature or symbol in the source and explain why it is relevant.

Overall, a historical source analysis covering 'DAMMIT' would form a paragraph of eight to ten sentences. Discussing the 'U' or usefulness often requires its own paragraph. It can also include examples and should always discuss at least one strength or weakness.

For more information on this skill, see page 208 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 22 The 'DAMMIT U' acronym.

Acronym	The questions you should ask when looking at sources
Date	When was the source created? Is it a primary or secondary source? A primary source may show attitudes, whereas a secondary source is often a factual interpretation.
Author	Who is the author of the source? Think about their gender, age, and profession. For example, they could be a historian, an aristocrat, or a prisoner.
Material	Is the source written, oral or visual? It could be a newspaper, letter, diary, photograph, textbook or tweet, or even a graph or map.
Motive	Why did the author produce this source? Was it for official government use, the media or personal reasons? A historian tries to establish the context of the source to help understand the perspective of the person who created it.
Intended audience	Who was the source produced for? Was it for academics or the general public? Was it intended to be viewed, or was it meant to be private?
Tone	How is the information in the source expressed? How does it make you feel? Words to describe tone can include 'persuasive', 'critical', 'questioning', 'funny' or 'reflective'. Often, primary sources are more emotional than secondary sources, which tend to be factual as they are written in hindsight.
Usefulness	What are the strengths and weaknesses of the source as piece of evidence? Sources can be factual and objective, or they can be exaggerated and contain bias. They may have the detail of an eyewitness, or the advantage of hindsight. A source may be an oral history, or it may be written down. All of these can affect how useful the source is.

Practise the skill

1 Complete a source analysis on Sources 19 to 21 using the 'DAMMIT U' acronym to help structure your response.

2 Which source is the most reliable in this debate? **Evaluate** each source by listing their strengths and weaknesses, and giving your overall opinion on the debate.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** the contestability of the travel accounts written by Marco Polo. As a class, have a debate – with various groups supporting the different arguments presented by historians. Use this catapult case study as an example.

13.10 The impact of expansion on traditional Mongol life

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how political and economic developments made by the Mongol Empire affected society

» describe the governing policies of Genghis Khan.

The expansion of the Mongol Empire brought about massive changes – not only to the societies that it conquered, but also to Mongol society itself. The traditional nomadic lives of many Mongol people changed significantly as the empire grew, cities were established and government regulations (in the form of laws and taxes) were introduced.

Genghis Khan is remembered for several great innovations in society, discussed below.

Source 1 An example of the 'square script' commissioned by Kublai Khan, on an official pass from the Yuan Dynasty (1271–1368)

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 1.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

The introduction of a written language

In 1204 Genghis Khan ordered the development of a written language, which was based on a regional script used within part of the empire. Under Kublai Khan, a written language known as the 'square script' (see Source 1) was commissioned, to replace the many languages used across the empire. It was completed in 1269 and used mainly for official purposes.

The creation of a single legal system

Before Genghis Khan united the Mongol clans and formed the empire, there was no single set of laws. To resolve this, Genghis created a legal system that would apply across all the lands he controlled. This system was known as the *Yasa*. Some of the laws imposed under his rule can be seen in Source 2.

Laws under the rule of Genghis Khan

- All children were considered legitimate, whether born to a wife or a concubine (mistress)
- It was illegal to buy or sell a woman, or kidnap a woman to marry
- No Mongol could enslave another Mongol
- Hunting was forbidden during the animal breeding season (March to October)
- Livestock theft was punishable by death
- Hunters could kill only what was needed for food

Source 2 Some of the laws imposed under Genghis Khan's rule

The introduction of the census

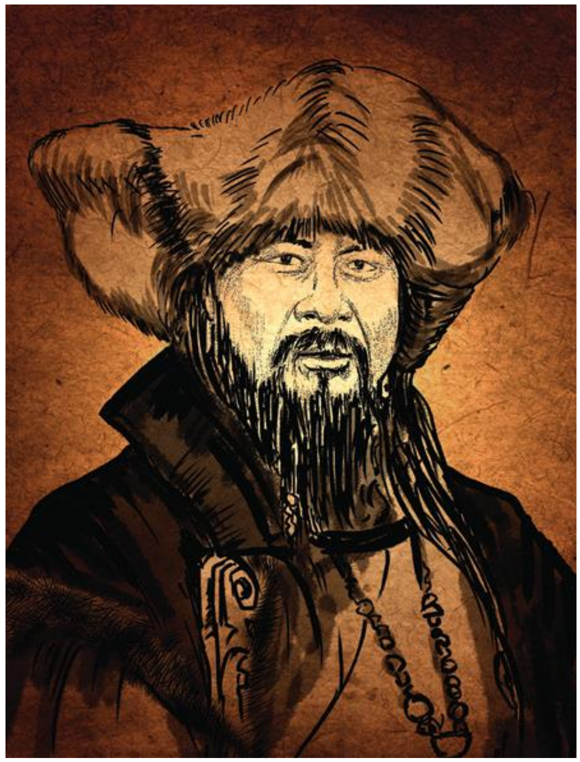
With the creation of the Mongol Empire came the **census**. All existing and new territories had to submit to a census in order to provide the administration with an idea of the size and number of people living in various parts of the empire. This ensured that the khan knew details of the population and value of his empire. For an empire with a strong army, it was important to know where the money and other important holdings were if they had to be secured quickly for the defence of the state.

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

The introduction of taxation

After his defeat of the Jin Dynasty in China, Genghis Khan selected a former Jin minister, Yelu Chucai, as one of his key advisers. Yelu Chucai created an effective and efficient administration system that included a taxation scheme for everyone living in the empire.

Whenever new territory was taken over, a *darugha* was appointed. The *darugha* was in charge of taxes and administration of a province within the Mongol Empire. He had authority over any previous local rulers, and could charge taxes as he saw fit. A *darugha* would usually impose taxes of 1 per cent on herds, and up to 5 per cent on commercial transactions. Before the formation of the Mongol Empire, no members of Mongol tribal groups were required to pay taxes to the khan, so this was a significant change to traditional society.



Source 3 A modern artist's impression of Yelu Chucai

Religious tolerance in the Mongol Empire

The acceptance of different religions during the Mongol Empire's expansion is an interesting topic to think about in terms of cause and effect. As you read the information below, think about the events you consider to be causes, and those you consider to be effects.

When Mongol forces conquered and invaded new territories, Mongol rulers encouraged religious freedom. Kublai Khan, for instance, never proclaimed his belief in any one religion. Such an approach helped to ensure the support of many different religious groups in his empire.

In addition, many of the invading Mongols themselves adopted the religious beliefs and practices of the people they conquered. For instance, Buddhism flourished in the eastern khanates, while Islam became the dominant religion in the western khanates.

For more information on this key concept, see page 212 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the impact of expansion on traditional Mongol life

The introduction of a communication system

yam
a communication system that covered all regions of the Mongol Empire; stations were set up to provide food, shelter and horses to messengers in this system

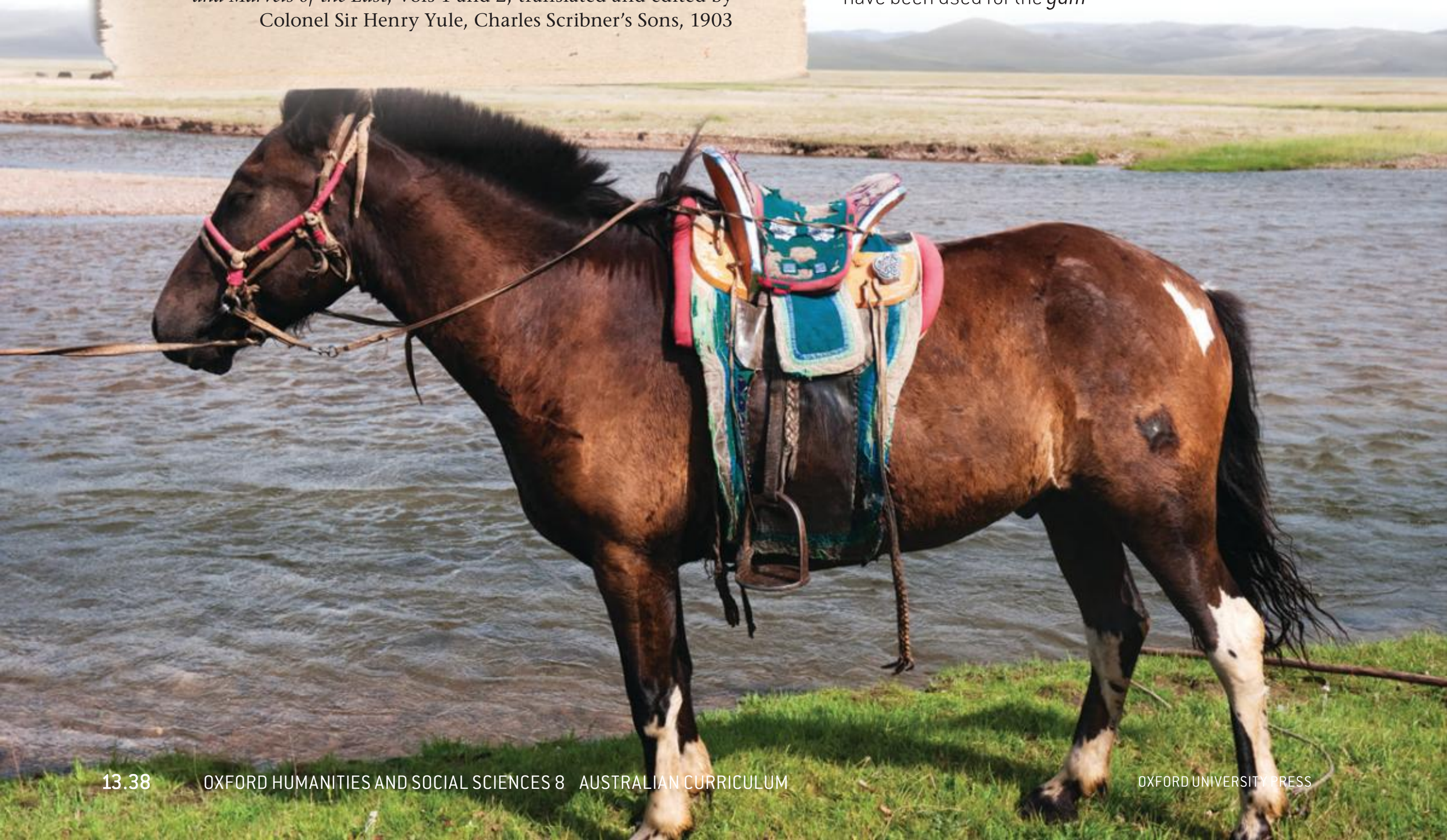
Genghis Khan and the rulers who followed him developed a complex communications system that covered the whole Mongol Empire. It was known as the ***yam***. The *yam* operated by setting up a series of staging posts (designated places where people could stop during a long journey) across the empire. Each was 40 kilometres from the next – the distance a good horse could cover at a gallop without needing to stop. Every post was guarded by at least 10 men and contained food, shelter and horses. The *yam* was capable of carrying messages from one side of the empire to the other at the rate of nearly 200 kilometres a day.

The army was responsible for ensuring the security of the *yam* and its messengers. Over time, the guarded paths of the khan's couriers became commercial routes for travelling merchants, and the staging posts became safe overnight shelters. When the first European ambassadors and merchants travelled to the east to the court of the khan, they reported that unescorted travellers were safer in the Mongol Empire than in any other kingdom on Earth.

Source 4

The traveling messengers of the emperor find at every 25 miles of the journey a station called a 'Horse Post-House'. At each of those stations used by the messengers, there is a large and handsome building for them to stay at, in which they find all the rooms furnished with fine beds and all other necessary articles in silk ... At some of these stations, there are some 400 horses standing ready for the use of the messengers ... And this is done on the greatest scale of magnificence that ever was seen. It is a fact that if all these posts are taken together there are more than 300 000 horses kept up specially for the use of the messengers. And the great buildings are over 10 000 in number, all richly furnished.

Extract written by Marco Polo, *c.* thirteenth century, from *The Book of Ser Marco Polo: The Venetian Concerning Kingdoms and Marvels of the East*, Vols 1 and 2, translated and edited by Colonel Sir Henry Yule, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1903



Source 5 A Mongolian horse, like those that would have been used for the *yam*

Naadam – 'three manly games'

Naadam provides a good exploration of continuity and change in Mongolian culture. Each summer across Mongolia, the festival of Naadam (meaning 'three manly games') is celebrated. These 'three manly games' are wrestling, archery and horse racing.

The tradition of Naadam started in the thirteenth century, when Genghis Khan used it as a form of celebration at the end of successful military campaigns.

Source 6 An archer competing at Naadam

Warriors returned from battle and, along with feasting, had the opportunity to show off their 'manly skills'. The festivals were particularly important during the time of expansion, as they helped to train young men.

Since the Mongolian Revolution in 1921, when revolutionaries founded the Mongolian People's Republic, Naadam has been officially celebrated as a national holiday every year. Teams from all over the country compete for a place at the finals, which are held in Ulan Batar (the capital of Mongolia).

Naadam today follows many historic traditions. Competitors wear traditional costumes to compete in. For example, wrestlers are dressed in leather boots, open-front jackets and briefs, all embroidered with traditional patterns. Archers compete in the traditional Mongolian silk robe. Before each race, child jockeys, aged seven to twelve, gather on horseback to sing folk songs to their horses to encourage them to run well.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Source 7 A wrestling match at Naadam

13.10 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** why the *yam* was significant to the Mongol Empire. Did the *yam* contribute to the development or decline of the Mongol Empire?

Analyse

2 **Analyse** Source 4, using the 'DAMMIT U' acronym (see page 13.35) to help structure your analysis.

3 **Examine** Source 2. Suggest how each of these laws would have helped secure peace and security in Mongolia.

Apply

4 In the Mongol Empire, religious leaders (of all faiths) were exempt from taxation and did not have to carry out any public service. Successive khans allowed places of worship to be built for many different religions. Do you think this religious tolerance benefited the Mongolian Empire? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

5 Rank all the developments made to Mongol society during the Mongol Empire, according to their importance in maintaining a strong empire. **Justify** (give reasons for) each ranking.

13.11 The impact of Mongol expansion

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the role of the Mongols in forging connections between Europe and Asia through conquest, settlement and trade.

One significant impact of Mongol expansion was the creation of new dynasties. Genghis Khan and his successors founded dynasties in several other parts of the world. Kublai Khan's Yuan Dynasty in China lasted for a hundred years.

Impact on China

The initial consequences of Mongol expansion on China were negative. Mongols raided Chinese settlements, plundering and murdering as they went. Chinese soldiers were sent off to die in Mongol wars, and citizens had to submit to foreign officials. There were, however, positive impacts of Mongol expansion into China. Perhaps the most positive was the reunification of northern and southern China under the Yuan Dynasty of Kublai Khan, during the 1270s.

The Mongols also brought enriching ideas and technologies from Arabia, western Asia and Mongolia into China. For example, Mongols understood the importance of trade. As such, merchants were held in higher regard than they had been previously in China. Kublai Khan also valued and admired the skills of artisans. Under his rule, they enjoyed a higher social status and their taxes were reduced. The distinctive style of blue-and-white porcelain came from the Yuan Dynasty period.

Source 8 This example of Yuan porcelain is typical of the delicate work produced during the rule of Kublai Khan.

Impact on Russia

Between the ninth and thirteenth centuries, there was a region in Eastern Europe known as Rus. It covered western parts of modern-day Russia, Ukraine and Belarus. In numerous raids during the 1230s, the Mongols defeated individual princes of Rus, causing many negative changes in Rus society. But this resulted in a united territory ruled by regional administrators.

After the fall of the Mongol Empire, the rulers in Rus continued to conduct a census every two to three years. This would not be introduced in other parts of Europe for another 120 years. A regular census strengthened the idea of firm and strong central government in Rus. The Mongols' efficient communication system (the *yam*) also continued, and later developed into a postal system.

Rise of Moscow

The rise of Moscow was one of the greatest effects of the Mongols being in Rus. The Moscovite (person from Moscow) princes cooperated with the Mongols, even helping to prevent an uprising against the Mongol army in 1327. As a reward, Moscow was given the right to raise and collect taxes for the khan, which lifted the city's wealth and power. As Mongol rule declined, the power of Moscow grew and spread over neighbouring cities and principalities. About 250 years after Rus was conquered, it was able to overthrow Mongol control. Rus, like China, became a more unified country, with a strong political and administrative centre.

Analyse this!
A painting of a *darugha*

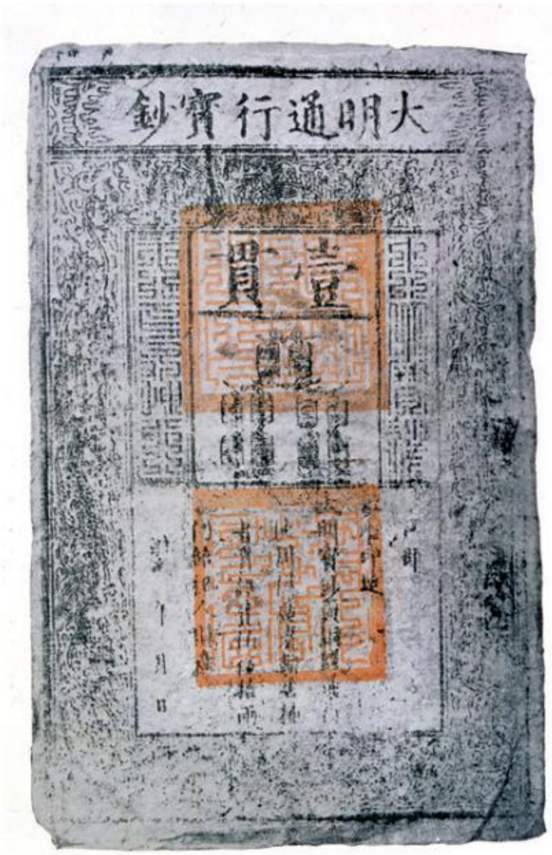
Source 9 A painting of a *darugha* (a Mongol tax collector) in a Russian city, created by Sergey Ivanov (1864–1910)

Impact on Europe

Interaction with the growing Mongol Empire brought Europe out of its isolated view of the world. Travellers such as Marco Polo and William of Rubruck developed an interest in the learning and wealth of the East. The safety of the trade routes established by the Mongols attracted Europeans to build trade and political contacts. Europe's knowledge of the world was greatly increased by the information brought back by ambassadors and merchants.

The development of paper currency came about in Europe because of the influence of the Mongols. Paper money was used by merchants to lighten their load on their long travels along trade routes such as the **Silk Road**.

Silk Road
a network of trade routes stretching west from China to the Mediterranean Sea; it was the main means by which silk was introduced to the West



Impact on trade

The Mongols established, enhanced and protected trade routes stretching from the Chinese coast to the fringes of Europe. They encouraged trade, which helped to spread knowledge in the medieval world.

As their empire expanded, the Mongols developed many trade and political contacts. Trade grew rapidly – particularly due to the tight controls that the Mongols had introduced to create safe and profitable trading routes.

Under the rule of Genghis Khan, all traders were assured of their safety while on the road. Genghis Khan valued them as sources of information from outside the empire. He also used some as diplomats.

Source 10 A copy of a banknote first issued by Kublai Khan in China

Enlarged map
Mongol trade routes

MONGOL TRADE ROUTES

Source 11 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 12 An artist's impression of Marco Polo, with his father and uncle, travelling the Silk Road to reach Mongolia; taken from the *Catalan Atlas* of 1375

The Black Death

An unfortunate legacy of the Mongol Empire for the rest of the known world was the spreading of the bubonic plague. Many historians believe that it originated in the Gobi Desert and spread through China, India and then into Europe and the Middle East along the established trade routes of the Mongol Empire. The Black Death was carried by fleas and the rats on which they fed. It severely reduced the populations of all societies with which it came into contact. In Europe alone, about one-third of the population died.

13.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** some of the benefits from Mongol rule in China for the Chinese.

2 **Identify** why Moscow grew in importance under the Mongols.

Comprehend

3 Interaction with the growing Mongol Empire brought Europe out of its isolated view of the world. **Explain** why this was the case, using examples.

4 **Explain** how the Mongols influenced how artisans and craftspeople lived in China.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the development of paper money. Summarise how the Mongol adoption of paper money in China affected the rest of the world.

6 Research the origins of the Black Death and **create** a flow chart to show the spread of the Black Death. Consider how developments in the Mongol Empire may have contributed to the spread of the Black Death.

13C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Life in China under Mongol rule

As you have learnt, the Mongols had a big influence on the regions they ruled, and did much more for the countries they conquered than simply plunder and destroy. But what sort of rulers were the Mongols really? What were the positives for those living under Mongol rule and what were the negatives? Much can be learnt about this by looking at Mongol rule in China.

Mongols created their own hierarchy in China, with themselves at the top as the rulers. The hierarchy was as follows:

- First were the Mongols, who held onto their own culture fiercely and took many steps to preserve the rituals and ceremonies of traditional Mongol life.
- Second were other foreigners – mostly Muslims – who were brought to China by the Mongols to help them rule.
- Next were the northern Chinese people.
- Finally, at the very bottom were the southern Chinese people.

Source 13 A Yuan Dynasty watercolour of peasants harvesting rice

Changes in China

The Mongols were tolerant of different religious beliefs, and people were free to practise the religion of their choice. They also loved culture, with textiles and theatre flourishing under their rule.

Under the Chinese, peasants, merchants and artisans all had low status in society. However, the Mongols saw their contributions to society as valuable and gave them a higher status. They also brought in changes to encourage these groups in their enterprises:

- The Mongols encouraged peasants to organise themselves into cooperative rural groups comprising of about 50 households under a village leader. Peasants were also expected to pay a fixed tax rate, which meant that they would know how much of their crops they would have left to live on.
- For merchants, the Mongols increased the availability of paper money and reduced some of the taxes, helping boost trade.
- The Mongols reduced taxes for artisans and made them exempt from any obligations to provide labour.

Despite these improvements, the Chinese were given few rights under the Mongols and were punished harshly if they did not fulfil their obligations to the Mongol rulers. One such obligation was to provide free labour for public works projects, such as building a new capital city in Dadu. Most of this labour was provided by the peasant class, and this was deeply resented by them.

Additionally, many north and south Chinese people who previously held positions of power no longer did so, as Mongols and other foreigners took those responsibilities on instead.

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Using the internet to find relevant, credible and reliable sources

Being able to locate relevant primary and secondary sources using the internet is an important historical skill. However, you need to keep in mind that not all information you find on the internet is necessarily true, accurate, reliable or useful. So, in addition to being able to find material online, you need to be able to evaluate its reliability, credibility and usefulness.

Use the following steps to apply this skill:

Step 1 Identify key words related to your topic and type these into a search engine, such as Google. (Use only these key words; do not type in whole sentences or questions.)

Step 2 Add further relevant key words to refine your search if you cannot find what you want on your first attempts.

Step 3 Look beyond the first page of results. The best results do not always appear first.

Step 4 Assess the reliability of each site by asking yourself the following questions:

- Who is the author or creator? If it is an individual, do they have their credentials listed (for example, a degree or a title)? If it is an organisation, is it a reputable organisation, such as a government or university department?
- What is the purpose of the website? Is it trying to inform, persuade or sell?
- Is the site objective? Is the author's point of view biased?
- Is the information accurate? Can the information be verified if you cross-check it with other sources of information?
- Does the site contain spelling mistakes or grammatical errors? (If so, this is usually an indication that the site is not particularly reliable.)
- Is the information current? Can you find evidence of recent updates?

For more information on this skill, see page 202 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Conduct** internet research to find relevant, credible and reliable source material about Mongol rule in Yuan China using the steps outlined above.

2 From the credible sources you have found, prepare a table like the one below and **summarise** the pros (positives) and cons (negatives) of living under Mongol rule in Yuan China. Remember to record the URLs of the sites you have found in the fourth column of the table.

Extend your understanding

1 From the information you have gathered in this exercise, **evaluate** the pros and cons of Mongol rule and give your opinion on whether Mongol rule was positive or negative for China overall. Write a short essay explaining your response. Use the TEEL paragraph structure on page 221 of 'The history toolkit' to help you structure your essay.

Positives and negatives of Mongol rule in China

Pros	Cons	Neither positive or negative	Information source

13 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Examine Sources 14 and 15 and answer the questions that follow.

The life of an emperor

Source 14

Whenever the Great Khan [Kublai Khan] sits at the table on any great court occasion, his table is elevated a good deal above the others. Outside the hall are more than 40 000 people; for there is always a great crowd of folk bringing presents to the Lord …

On the buffet are placed all the Lord's drinking vessels, among which are certain pitchers [jugs] of the finest gold, which are big enough to hold drink for eight or ten persons. In fact, the Great Khan has such a quantity of this kind of plate, and of gold and silver in other shapes, as no one ever before saw or heard tell of, or could believe.

Those who wait upon the Great Khan with his dishes and his drink are some of the great barons. They have the mouth and nose muffled with fine napkins of silk and gold … And when the emperor is going to drink, all the musical instruments, of which he has vast stores of every kind, begin to play. When he takes the cup, all the barons and the rest of the company drop on their knees and make the deepest bow before him. Then the emperor drinks. Each time he does so the whole ceremony is repeated.

When all have dined and the tables have been removed, then come in a great number of jugglers and players, skilled at every sort of wonderful feat … so that everybody is full of laughter and enjoyment.

Extract written by Marco Polo, *c.* thirteenth century, from *The Book of Ser Marco Polo: The Venetian Concerning Kingdoms and Marvels of the East*, Vols 1 and 2, translated and edited by Colonel Sir Henry Yule, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1903

Source 15 A manuscript illustration of Kublai Khan and the Polo brothers on a hunting expedition, *c.* fifteenth century

1. Source 14 provides a strong example of one of the five historical concepts (chronology, continuity and change, significance, cause and effect, evidence). **Identify** which historical concept is strongly demonstrated in this source, and **summarise** why you have chosen this concept. (2 marks)
2. Based on the information gathered from this source, **describe** the atmosphere of the feast. (2 marks)
3. **Describe** what is happening in the scene shown in Source 15. (2 marks)
4. How useful are Sources 14 and 15 in portraying life in the Mongol Empire? Do you think these sources are accurate? For each source, **justify** (give reasons for) your answer. (12 marks)
5. For each source, **identify** a feature that highlights the status of Kublai Khan as an emperor. (2 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe the daily life and culture of early Mongol society. Understand the nomadic nature of Mongol life.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.2, page 13.4.
Explain the social organisation of early Mongol society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.3, page 13.8.
Summarise the rise and achievements of Genghis Khan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.4, page 13.10.
Identify the unique features of the Mongol army. Explain the role of Genghis Khan in the organisation of the Mongol army.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.5, page 13.12.
Summarise the events of Mongol expansion in Asia under Genghis Khan. Analyse the effects of Mongol expansion in Asia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.6, page 13.20.
Describe the political changes made by Mongol leaders as they assumed control of settlements across Europe and Asia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.7, page 13.24.
Describe the rise and reign of Kublai Khan as the first Mongol emperor of China.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.8, page 13.27.
Identify the reasons for the decline of the Mongol Empire. Analyse the usefulness of primary sources in understanding the Mongol Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.9, page 13.32.
Explain how political and economic developments made by the Mongol Empire affected society. Describe the governing policies of Genghis Khan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.10, page 13.36.
Explain the role of the Mongols in forging connections between Europe and Asia through conquest, settlement and trade.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 13.11, page 13.40.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 13

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 13

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The Mongol Empire.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 13

CHAPTER 14

The Ottoman Empire

The Ottoman Empire ruled for over 600 years, from the Middle Ages to the start of the twentieth century. This chapter focuses on the period from 1299, when the Ottoman Empire formed, to 1683, when it was at its peak.

The location of their territories meant the Ottomans controlled the most important trade routes for gold, spices and other goods between Europe, Asia and Africa. This brought them great wealth, which they used to build powerful navies and armies. The Ottomans introduced Islamic faith, law and culture to the lands they conquered, but they also supported religious diversity and a level of self-government in their territories.

Source 1 The Sultan Ahmed Mosque (the Blue Mosque) in Istanbul

obook pro

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

14A

How was society organised during the Ottoman Empire?

14B

What were the most significant achievements of the Ottoman Empire?

14C

What challenges and developments influenced the Ottoman Empire?

14.1 The Ottoman Empire: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events during the Ottoman Empire

A portrait of Mehmed II

1299
Osman I declares independence from the Turkish tribes in Anatolia.

1307
Osman I expands his territory, conquering parts of Anatolia. His tribal group become known as the Osmanli Turks (or 'Ottoman' in English).

1326
Osman I's son Orhan conquers the Byzantine city of Bursa, which becomes the first Ottoman capital.

1347
The Black Death reaches Constantinople.

1355
The Gallipoli peninsula is captured. This allows expansion into Europe.

1361
The Ottomans capture Adrianople, in north-west Turkey (Türkiye); it becomes their next capital.

1389
Ottoman forces defeat the Serbs at the Battle of Kosovo. Bayezid I becomes sultan of the Ottoman Empire.

1250 CE | 1300 | 1350 | 1400

A view of Bursa as it looks today

Source 1 A timeline of some key events for the Ottoman Empire

1451
Mehmed II (the Conqueror) rules the Ottoman Empire until 1481.

1453
The Ottomans capture Constantinople and rename it Istanbul. This marks the end of the Byzantine Empire. Istanbul becomes the final capital of the Ottoman Empire.

1465
The Topkapi Palace is completed in Istanbul and remains the primary residence of the sultans for nearly 400 years.

1492
The Spanish king and queen order all Jews to leave the kingdom of Spain. Sultan Bayezid II sends his navy to Spain to collect Jews forced from their homeland.

1512
Selim I (the Grim) rules the Ottoman Empire until 1520.

1517
The Ottomans win military campaigns in Persia and Egypt. The holy cities of Mecca, Medina and Jerusalem become part of the empire. Sultan Selim I becomes caliph (leader of the Muslim faith).

1520
Suleiman I (the Magnificent) rules the empire until his death in 1566.

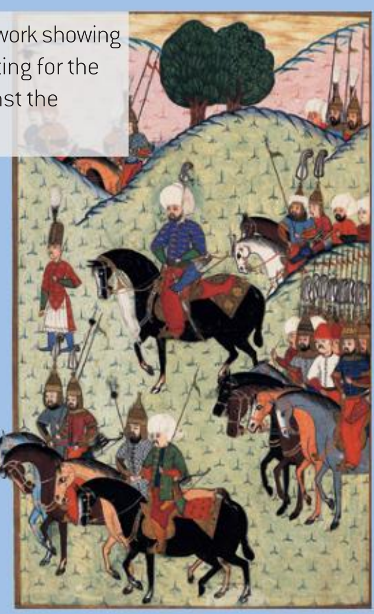
1526
Hungary is defeated at the Battle of Mohacs.

1529
Vienna is besieged by Suleiman I, but the attack fails.

1683
The second Ottoman attack on Vienna fails, marking the end of the Ottoman Empire's expansion.

1450 | 1500 | 1550 | 1650 | 1683 CE

A portrait of Suleiman I



A sixteenth-century artwork showing Ottoman troops departing for the Battle of Mohacs against the Hungarians in 1526

14.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In chronological order, list the different cities that functioned as the capital of the Ottoman Empire.

2 **Identify** where Ottoman sultans lived for 400 years.

Comprehend

3 How many times did Ottoman armies attempt to capture Vienna? **Summarise** what this tells you about how the Ottomans viewed Vienna.

Apply

4 **Create** a timeline of all the sultans who ruled the Ottoman Empire from 1299 until 1683. For each sultan, include the years of their reign and one major achievement or event during that time.

14.2 The origins of the Ottoman Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the origins and development of the Ottoman Empire.

The birthplace of the Ottoman Empire was a small area in north-west Anatolia, near the city of Ankara, the capital of present-day Turkey (Türkiye). By 1000 CE, Anatolia had been part of the Roman Empire, and its **successor** state, the Byzantine Empire, for over a thousand years. The Byzantine emperors ruled their territories from the city of Constantinople. During the eleventh century, Turkish tribes began to move into Anatolia from the east.

The Turks were a **nomadic** people, who were migrating from their ancestral lands in central Asia in search of new farmland. They had converted to Islam and, as a result, the population of Anatolia changed from primarily Greek-speaking Christians to Turkish-speaking Muslims.

successor
a person or thing that comes after another

nomadic
a society of people who do not live in a set place but wander around, usually in search of food and shelter, and good pasture for their animals

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the origins of the Ottoman Empire

The first Ottoman

In 1299, the Turkish tribal leader Osman I declared himself independent from other neighbouring Turkish tribes. More Turkish migrations from Asia into Anatolia started to put pressure on the population, and so the Ottomans continued to look further west for land.

Osman's lands bordered those of the Byzantine Empire, and he began to wage a religious war against the Christians of that empire. The war attracted followers from all over Muslim Anatolia.

Osman died in 1324 and was succeeded by his son, Orhan I (1324–62).

KEY CONCEPT Significance

Osman I

The name of the Ottoman Empire comes from its first ruler, Osman I, who ruled 1299–1324. Osman's followers called themselves Osmanli, which English scholars later recorded as 'Ottoman'.

Osman founded the empire in 1299 when he declared independence for his tribe. Up until this point, he had given his loyalty to the Seljuk Empire, which controlled most of Anatolia. But by the end of the thirteenth century, the Seljuk Empire was weak. Osman realised that the time was right for him to seize more land and power, so he broke away from the empire.

Osman's territory bordered poorly defended lands belonging to the Byzantine Empire. He used this to his advantage, declaring religious war against the Christian Byzantines. This attracted the support of Muslim warriors throughout the region and greatly increased his power. But Osman also fought other Muslim leaders.

By the end of his reign in 1324, Osman had considerably expanded his original possessions. He had also started a dynasty of rulers that would last for six centuries (a dynasty is a period of rule by successive members of one extended family).

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 2 A portrait of Osman I

The expanding empire

In 1326, Orhan captured the strategic city of Bursa from the Byzantine Empire (see Source 3), and this became the first capital of the Ottoman Empire. In 1354, the Ottomans crossed the Dardanelles, a long narrow body of water dividing Europe from Asia Minor (the most western part of Asia) along the Gallipoli peninsula. The following year, they captured Gallipoli itself. From here, the Ottomans had the perfect launching point for future attacks on Europe. They pushed on into the Balkans, capturing the major Byzantine city of Adrianople in 1361 and making it their new capital. In 1389, they marched on Kosovo, defeating the Serbian army.

From here, the empire expanded in three great waves under three different rulers:

- **Sultan** Mehmed II ruled from 1451 to 1481. He was most famous for capturing Constantinople (in 1453) and destroying the Byzantine Empire.
- Sultan Selim I ruled from 1512 to 1520. He gained control of Syria and Egypt, and the holy sites of Mecca, Medina and Jerusalem.
- Sultan Suleiman I ruled from 1520 to 1566. Suleiman took the Ottoman Empire to its largest size, ruling over much of south-eastern Europe, the Middle East and northern Africa.

Source 3 The Grand Mosque of Bursa was built between 1396 and 1399 by Ottomans following the city's capture in 1326.

sultan
the ultimate ruler of the Ottoman Empire; he exercised complete political, military, religious, judicial and social control

Enlarged map
The Ottoman Empire

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE

Source 4 The Ottoman Empire was at its peak in 1683.

Source: Oxford University Press

14.2 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Describe** how and when the Ottoman Empire began.
2. **Describe** where the name 'Ottoman' comes from.
3. **Explain** why the capture of Gallipoli was important to the Ottomans.

Analyse

4. **Examine** Source 4. Using this source and the world map at the back of the book, identify the present-day countries that had territories ruled by the Ottoman Empire at its peak, in 1683.

14.3 The rule of the sultan

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the power and responsibility of the sultan in Ottoman society.

Between 1299 and 1453, the Ottoman ruler was always one of a group of Turkish lords and princes. Other leaders in the region followed the Ottoman rulers because their growing success brought power and wealth to those associated with them.

The first Ottoman ruler to call himself 'sultan' was Bayezid I (who ruled from 1389 to 1403), the great-grandson of Osman I.

The sultan

Source 5 A fifteenth-century illustration of an Ottoman ruler and his court, *c.* 1330

In Ottoman society, the sultan had political, military, religious, legal and social authority and control. In the eyes of his subjects, he was responsible only to Allah (meaning 'God' in the Muslim world).

The concept of the sultan holding absolute power was introduced by Sultan Mehmed II. During his reign (1451–81), following the conquest of Constantinople in 1453, the status and power of the sultan increased enormously. He used this new status to strip away wealth and authority from other Turkish leaders. Mehmed also installed his own men in important positions in government and administration.

From that point, the sultan possessed total authority. In theory, he had life-and-death control over his military and all government administrators. In reality, however, the power of the sultan varied over time.

The high point in the power of the sultans was the period between 1453 and 1566. After the reign of Suleiman I (1520–66), the wars of conquest gradually slowed down, and then stopped altogether. As a result, people began to value administrative skills (rather than the skills of the warrior) in managing the empire. Power began passing from the sultan to other members of the royal household. Between the late sixteenth and mid-seventeenth centuries, the mothers and wives of the sultans also took more control over political matters, and wielded considerable power.

Source 6 A portrait of Mehmed II

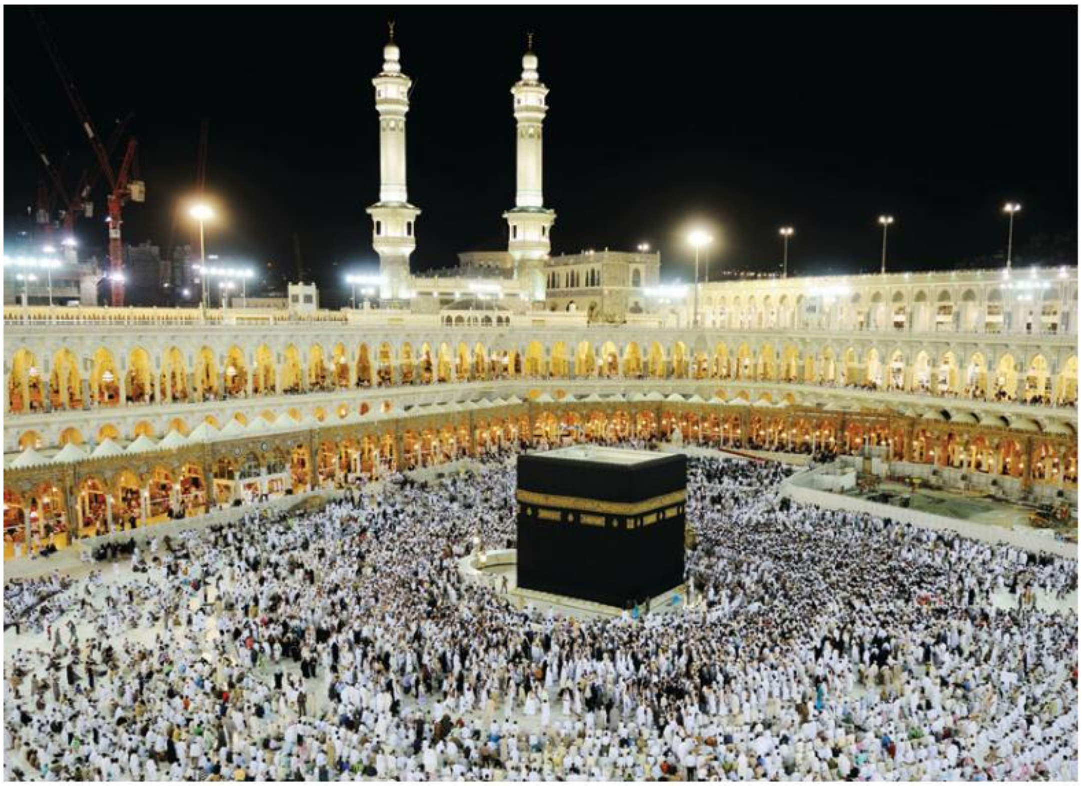
Caliph

From 1517 onwards, the Ottoman sultans claimed the title of **caliph**. The first Ottoman sultan to do so was Selim I. Selim took the title after conquering Egypt in 1517 and forcing the Egyptian caliph to sign power over to him. Selim also took control of the holy cities of Mecca and Medina. These places are sacred to Muslims as the birth and burial places of the Prophet Muhammad.

caliph
a historical title used for the religious and political leader of the Muslims; the caliph was regarded as the successor of Muhammad

Choosing a successor

A smooth transition from one sultan to the next was important. If there was no clear leader to take over when the sultan died, the empire could become unstable. The Ottomans tried several methods over the centuries of passing on power to the sultan's sons.



Source 7 Muslims flock to Mecca for the annual Islamic pilgrimage called the *Haj*.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the rule of the sultan

From the fourteenth through to the sixteenth century, succession depended on the survival of the fittest – and the fastest! The ruling sultan would send all his adult sons to the provinces to serve as military commanders and administrators. When he died, the first son to return home to the capital and win recognition by the court and the imperial troops became the new sultan.

Fratricide

After taking power, it was common for a new sultan to commit fratricide (kill his brothers), or at least to order their execution. By doing this, he could remove any possible challengers to his rule. Sultan Bayezid I began the practice in 1389, when he had his brother Yakub executed.

Although fratricide was against Islamic law, it was declared legal during the reign of Sultan Mehmed II. Mehmed argued for the practice to be allowed because Allah gave the sultanate to only one of his sons, and so that son should be entitled to kill his brothers for the sake of stability. Mehmed's view was accepted by religious leaders, and fratricide became legal. Mehmed then ordered the execution of all his brothers. The preferred method for these approved executions was strangulation by a thin cord.

Religious leaders justified the practice by saying it strengthened the empire. Accordingly, when Mehmed III became sultan in 1595, he 'strengthened the empire' by having his 19 brothers executed.

14.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the first sultan to gain absolute authority.
2 **Identify** when the Ottoman sultans first took on the title of caliph.
3 In your own words, **define** the term 'sultan' and **state** the power and responsibilities the sultan had.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** why the son of a sultan might be afraid of his brothers.
5 In your own words, **summarise** what happened after the death of a sultan during the period when fratricide was practised.

Apply

6 **Create** a diagram to show how the role of sultan changed over time. Include at least three major changes and outline why they were significant.

14.4 Roles in Ottoman society

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the social and political structure of the Ottoman Empire

» understand the role of women in society, and how it was different from women in other societies at the time.

Ottoman society was complex. At its largest, the empire spanned dozens of provinces in Asia, Europe and northern Africa. Within this enormous territory lived many different groups of people, each with their own customs, beliefs and history. To hold the empire together, the Ottomans developed unique political and social systems.

The empire followed the religion of Islam but it also promoted religious tolerance. Women had fewer rights than men. However, they had a lot of authority and power over their families, and at various times the women who lived in the sultan's palace had considerable political influence. Slavery was also an important feature of Ottoman society.

The structure of Ottoman society

At the absolute top of Ottoman society (see Source 9) was the sultan. The sultan could appoint or dismiss any official at his pleasure. Every decree or law came from him. In addition, the sultan was both the supreme military commander and the religious leader, responsible only to Allah.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on roles in Ottoman society

The grand vizier and the *divan*

Underneath the sultan, a group of officials known as the 'dignitaries of the pen' administered his territories from the capital city, Istanbul. The most important of these was the grand vizier, or chief minister. He was appointed by the sultan and could only be dismissed by him. He held the sultan's imperial seal – his 'signature', which had to appear on all official documents – and could instruct and give orders to the other officials. The grand vizier's office was in the Topkapi Palace, which was the sultans' home from the fifteenth century onwards (see Skills in Context on page 14.16). He worked with a council of officials, collectively called the *divan*, who were responsible for the day-to-day management and functioning of the empire.

Source 8 An eighteenth-century illustration of a grand vizier

Pashas and *beys*

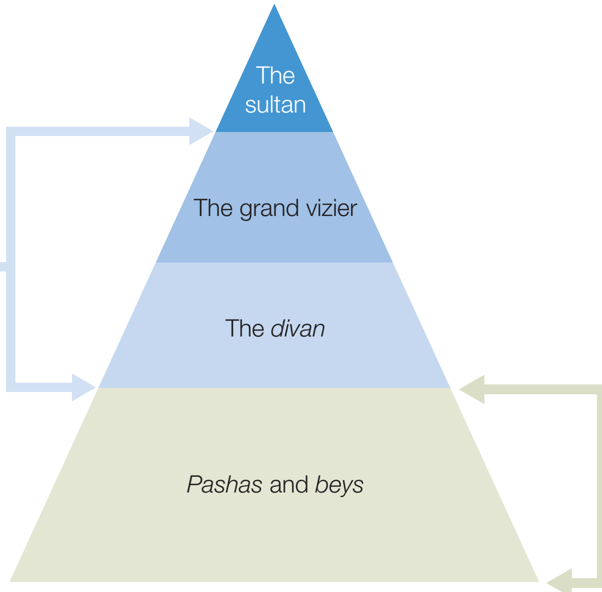
Further down in the political system were the 'dignitaries of the sword'. Known as *pashas* and *beys*, these were high-ranking military leaders, and the governors of the different provinces that made up the empire. The *pashas* and *beys* commanded the local military forces and oversaw law and order. They acted as judges in their provinces and collected taxes for the sultan.

Social advancement

The Ottoman political system allowed non-Muslim men to advance socially. Regardless of their position at birth, those who demonstrated skill and intelligence could climb through the ranks to achieve important positions. For example, many Christians took senior roles, such as grand vizier. However, the requirements for advancement were usually the acceptance of Islam, loyalty to the sultan and compliance with the standards of the court.

Dignitaries of the pen administered Ottoman territories from the capital, Istanbul.

They included:
- the grand vizier, or chief minister, who was appointed by the sultan and could only be dismissed by him. He held the sultan's imperial seal, which had to appear on all official documents, and he could instruct the other ministers.
- the *divan* was a council of officials who worked with the grand vizier; it was responsible for the day-to-day management and functioning of the empire.



Dignitaries of the sword were the governors of the different provinces that made up the empire.

Known as *pashas* and *beys*, they:
- commanded local military forces
- oversaw law and order
- acted as judges
- collected taxes for the sultan.

Source 9 An organisational diagram of the Ottoman civil administration

The *devsirme*

One Ottoman practice that divides modern historians was the *devsirme*. The *devsirme* was a system for training future government officials, engineers and soldiers. Children from the Christian villages of Anatolia and the Balkans were taken from their families and taught a craft or apprenticed to Turkish farmers. The most promising were sent to Istanbul, where they received the best education the state could provide, including religious training. The best students eventually became government officers and administrators. Many rose to become commanders and grand viziers, and played an important role in Ottoman history.

Only Christian boys were chosen for the *devsirme*. This was to prevent the development of a powerful Muslim upper class that could threaten the position of the sultan.

The *devsirme* offered great opportunities for males. It allowed peasant boys to rise to the highest military and administrative positions in the empire. On the other hand, Christian boys recruited to the *devsirme* were cut off from any further contact with their families, as the Ottomans believed that their loyalty should be to the sultan. They were also forced to convert to Islam.

So, was the *devsirme* good or bad? While some Christian families resisted the *devsirme*, others wanted their sons to be taken because they thought it would lead to a better life for them.

Some Muslims, however, resented the lack of similar opportunities available to them. Muslim families sometimes even asked their Christian neighbours to take and raise their children, hoping they might have a chance of being chosen for the *devsirme*.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 10 An illustration from a sixteenth-century manuscript showing boys being recruited for Sultan Suleiman I

Slaves

Slavery was an important part of Ottoman life. Slaves made up approximately one-fifth of the population of Istanbul. In the early centuries of the empire, most slaves were brought in from Africa; but as the empire expanded, slaves were taken from many other lands – often by being captured in battle.

Unlike their position in many other societies, Ottoman slaves could achieve great power and high status. Although they were technically slaves, some were given roles as servants and officers to the sultan. Many became involved in politics. Others held senior positions within the military or as guards of the sultan's **harem**. The sultan's elite fighting corps, the Janissaries, was made up of slaves and boys from the *devsirme*; and almost all of the government officials were trained slaves.

harem
during the Ottoman Empire, the separate part of a Muslim household reserved for wives, concubines and female servants

The Ottomans believed that slaves would be more loyal to the sultan as they had no family ties. They also thought slaves made better government officials as they came from outside the region they worked in, and so were less likely to favour one group over another or be open to bribery and corruption.

Women

Women in the Ottoman Empire had fewer rights than men, but they generally enjoyed more rights than women in many other countries at the time. Though it was normal for women to socialise separately from men, women actively participated in Ottoman society. Women had legal rights to property, and wealthier women often ran businesses or traded goods – using male agents to open shops or sail merchant ships on their behalf. Women from poorer families often worked as weavers or servants for wealthy businessmen or farmers.

concubines
women kept for the entertainment and pleasure of a ruler or emperor

Source 11 Anton Hickel's 1780 painting titled *Roxelana and the Sultan*

Most women married, but it was rare for an Ottoman woman to be able to choose her husband. Most marriages were arranged by women's parents, and often women would not even see the groom before the wedding. A man could legally take up to four wives, but was required to support them financially. He also had to pay each bride a dowry, or sum of money. If a husband failed to provide for his wife, she could apply to a judge for a divorce.

Women held considerable power within families. In the case of the royal family, the wives and mothers of the sultans became some of the most powerful people in the empire. They had unrivalled access to the ruler and helped him make political decisions.

Roxelana

One of the most powerful influences in the life of Sultan Suleiman I, who ruled from 1520 to 1577, was his wife Roxelana. The marriage shocked many at the Ottoman court because Roxelana was originally a foreign slave, who had been kidnapped and brought to Istanbul to be one of the sultan's **concubines**.

Suleiman was very much in love with Roxelana and their wedding was spectacular. They celebrated with music, jugglers and a procession of wild animals that included giraffes. Roxelana became deeply involved in court politics. Suleiman sought her advice on major decisions and relied on her for news when he was away from Istanbul fighting wars.

Source 12 A harem room in the Topkapi Palace

The sultan's harem

The word 'harem' means 'forbidden'. Harems were part of many Ottoman households. Other than the head of the household, men were forbidden to enter the harem.

The largest harem belonged to the sultan. It was located in the innermost section of the Topkapi Palace. This harem had dozens of richly decorated rooms, complete with mosaics and fountains. It was guarded by **eunuchs**. The sultan's mother, wives, concubines and daughters lived inside the harem.

The harem had its own complicated social structure. The mother of the sultan ruled over the other women. Next in the hierarchy was the wife who was the mother of the sultan's first-born son; then the sultan's other wives and concubines. The sons and daughters of the sultan were educated within the harem until they left the palace.

eunuchs
men who have been castrated by having their testicles removed; eunuchs had many responsibilities in the Ottoman Empire

Eunuchs

Eunuchs were the only people trusted by the sultan to enter the harem and guard the women who lived there. Eunuchs were mostly African men who were taken as slaves. The position of chief eunuch was a powerful position in the palace, as all the eunuchs who reported to him were in such close contact with the sultan and his family. Eunuchs supervised the education of the sultan's children and were in charge of the sultan's treasury. They also looked after the relics (important religious artefacts) of the Prophet Muhammad that were held in the Topkapi Palace.

14.4 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the responsibilities of the *pashas* and *beys*.

2 List the social groups in Ottoman society, by occupation.

3 In your own words, **describe** the social and political structure of the Ottoman Empire.

Analyse

4 Using a Venn diagram, **compare** the rights of women in the Ottoman Empire and the rights of women in Australia today.

5 Slaves often held important positions in Ottoman Government administration, the military and the sultan's household. **Identify** two reasons for this.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** the system of being chosen for the *devsirme*. Remember, when you evaluate something, you need to talk about its strengths and weaknesses.

7 **Create** a short biography of Roxelana. Include discussion of the type of relationship she had with Suleiman I and examples of her political influence.

14.5 Daily life in the Ottoman Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the way of life of people in the Ottoman Empire.

In Istanbul and other Ottoman cities, life for ordinary people was centred on the local community, known as *mahal*. Each *mahal* was made up of a particular religious or ethnic group living in a certain area. At the heart of the *mahal* was a religious building: a mosque, church or synagogue. Virtually every *mahal* also had its own school, drinking fountain and other public facilities.

In 1672, there were 253 Muslim and 24 non-Muslim *mahals* in Istanbul. These included Christian and Jewish *mahals*. Each *mahal* was responsible under Ottoman law for maintaining law and order within its own small territory, along with the correct payment of taxes.

Source 13 The Sultan Ahmed Mosque (or 'Blue Mosque'), an Ottoman-era mosque in Istanbul

Social institutions

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on daily life in the Ottoman Empire

The Ottoman Empire encouraged wealthy subjects to care for the less fortunate. Under Islamic law, giving a portion of your wealth to charity was considered a religious duty. This was done through special charitable foundations called *waqfs*, and through soup kitchens, known as *imarets*.

Waqfs

Islamic law had promoted *waqfs* since the seventh century CE to provide money for community purposes. Through *waqfs*, wealthy townspeople financed shops, public baths and bazaars. The sultan also regularly paid for the building of mosques, fountains and other buildings for public use.

A *waqf* was created when a wealthy person donated farming land or a shop so that its income could be used to benefit the community. Whatever was donated belonged to the *waqf* forever. Fields and pastures were the property of the state under Ottoman law, and so could be given only if the sultan agreed.

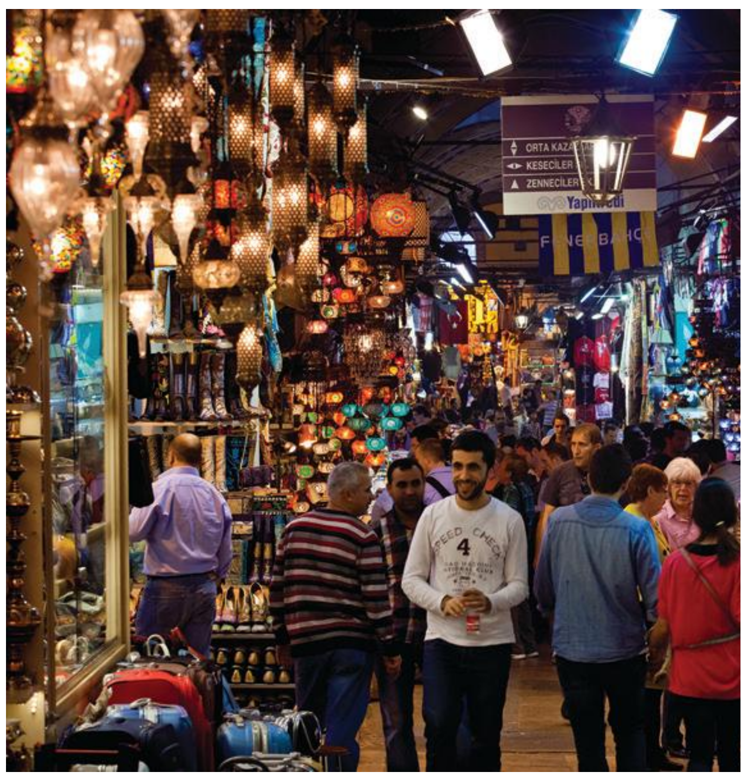
These *waqfs* came to play a vital role in the economic life of the Ottoman Empire. They provided for the maintenance of mosques, schools, soup kitchens, libraries and orphanages.

Imarets

Imarets were built in the major cities throughout the Ottoman Empire from the fourteenth century. They gave out free food to people such as travellers and the needy. *Imarets* reinforced Islamic teachings about the importance of charity. They also strengthened the position of the sultan, who was seen to be caring for the welfare of his people.

The bazaar

The bazaar was a place of public gathering and commerce. It was a huge marketplace that sold many different items. The Grand Bazaar of Istanbul was opened in 1461 and is still an active centre of trade today, making it one of the oldest covered markets in the world. It contains 58 covered streets with over 1200 shops and stalls selling all manner of goods, from jewellery to carpets. The spice bazaar, completed in 1660, became the centre of the spice trade in Istanbul.



Source 14 The Grand Bazaar of Istanbul still attracts thousands of visitors today.

Coffee houses

The Prophet Muhammad said that the drinking of alcohol was wrong because it interfered with the ability to worship Allah. It was seen as the devil's drink. Coffee was believed to be a better and more social drink.

Coffee came into the empire from Yemen, on the Red Sea, where it had been grown and drunk for many years. From the second half of the sixteenth century onwards, it was consumed both at home and in coffee houses throughout the Ottoman Empire. In coffee houses, men drank coffee, smoked, played cards, told stories, made music and played backgammon.

Source 15 A nineteenth-century European painting of a coffee house in Istanbul

Source 16 A Turkish coffee house today

In the seventeenth century, however, drinking coffee was frequently prohibited by sultans' decrees, forcing coffee houses to close. One reason for this was that coffee houses very quickly became meeting places. The sultans were worried that poorer men might gather there to discuss rebellion or revolt. Despite these prohibitions, the drinking of coffee became a typical feature of Ottoman and Middle Eastern culture.

Food

The Ottomans ate a wide range of foods. As the empire grew, new ingredients and recipes circulated throughout the major cities. The food eaten by the common people was simple. At the Topkapi Palace, however, hundreds of cooks sometimes worked in teams to prepare huge banquets.

Common foods

Common people normally ate a diet that included meat and vegetables local to their area. In Anatolia, a common dish was a thick porridge made up of whole wheat, berries and meat. Often the Ottoman diet was based more on vegetables than on meat. Falafel (fried balls of chickpeas and spices) were cooked and then wrapped in breads with sauces. People baked flat breads and ate them with spreads made from various grains and vegetables, such as hummus made from chickpeas. Many of these dips and spreads are common in Australia today.

Court foods

The Topkapi Palace had 10 kitchens and hundreds of cooks. By the seventeenth century, 1300 kitchen staff fed up to 10000 people a day! Specialist cooks used spices and recipes from all over the empire to develop special dishes, such as stuffed pigeon and stuffed melon. As Islamic law forbade drinking alcohol, the cooks carefully prepared alternative drinks such as sherbets (sweet, chilled drinks made from fruits or flower petals) and coffee.

Source 17 A selection of Turkish foods commonly eaten today, including a variety of dips typically eaten with flat breads

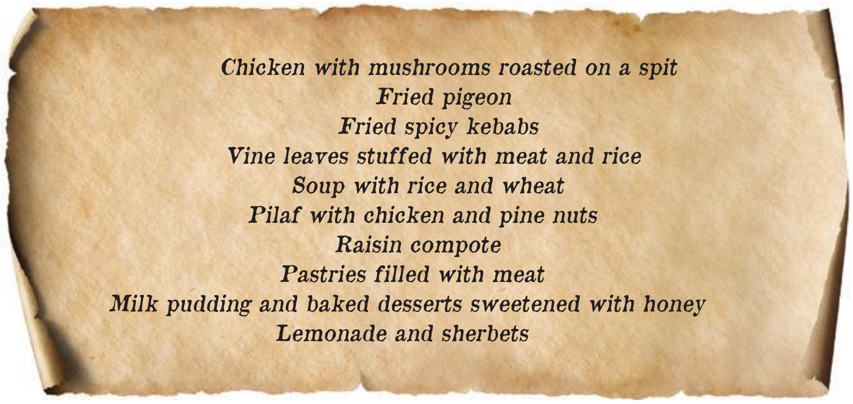
Sport

The favourite sports of the Ottoman Empire were those that prepared people for war. Archery and horse riding were extremely popular.

Jareed was an equestrian sport involving two teams of horsemen armed with rubber-tipped sticks. Teams were made up of six, eight or 12 riders. The riders started on opposite sides of a square; then they rode towards each other and threw their sticks, trying to hit one of the opposing players. A rider won if he hit an opponent or caught his stick. It was a fast and furious game, decided by the number of hits or catches at the end.

Another much-loved sport was oil wrestling. Strong men were selected, usually from groups of slaves. The wrestlers poured olive oil on their bodies before they began their fight. The sport was carried on throughout the empire, including during religious festivals. Oil-wrestling matches were even held on special evenings during Ramadan, the holy month of fasting.

Success as an oil wrestler brought rewards. A slave who was accepted into formal training as a wrestler had a chance of entering the sultan's elite infantry troops (foot soldiers), the Janissaries.



Chicken with mushrooms roasted on a spit
Fried pigeon
Fried spicy kebabs
Vine leaves stuffed with meat and rice
Soup with rice and wheat
Pilaf with chicken and pine nuts
Raisin compote
Pastries filled with meat
Milk pudding and baked desserts sweetened with honey
Lemonade and sherbets

Source 18 An Ottoman banquet menu from 1675

Source 19 Modern oil wrestling

14.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Define** a *mahal*. Why was it significant?
2. **Identify** the institutions that gave out free food to those who needed it.
3. What was the function of a bazaar?

Comprehend

4. **Explain** the *waqf* system and why it was an important part of Ottoman society.
5. Look closely at Sources 15 and 16. What do these images tell you about continuity and change in Turkish society since the time of the Ottoman Empire?
   a. List two things that have stayed the same and two things that have changed.
   b. **Explain** why this might be the case.
6. Why were sports such as archery, horse riding and oil wrestling popular in the Ottoman Empire?

Apply

7. Source 18 is a list of dishes served to foreign ambassadors at the Ottoman royal court in 1675. Think about what modern foods are equivalent to these dishes and **create** a menu for a modern Ottoman banquet.

14A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

A day at the Topkapi Palace

The Topkapi Palace was home to the sultans for almost 400 years, between the fifteenth and nineteenth centuries.

Sultan Mehmed II ordered the palace to be built after conquering Constantinople in 1453. He wanted his new home to display the power and glory of the Ottoman dynasty. The inner palace was completed by 1465 and contained lush parkland, fountains and highly decorated buildings. In the following centuries, successive sultans changed or added to the original buildings.

At the height of its use as a royal residence, the palace housed as many as 4000 residents. For ordinary people, however, it was mostly a forbidden city.

The palace was built around four main courtyards, set one inside the other. The general public could enter through the main gate into the first courtyard, but could go no further. Ministers, foreign ambassadors and those on official business passed into a second courtyard. Here the *divan* received them and considered their requests. The third courtyard was reserved for the sultan's royal household. Only the sultan's family, servants and invited guests were permitted to enter.

Source 20 The sultan's grilled window in the chamber of the divan

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 21 Sultan Selim III receiving visitors in front of the Gate of Felicity

The final courtyard was an area of private relaxation for the sultan and his family.

The grand vizier directed the government from a chamber in the second courtyard. The sultan listened to his ministers from behind a golden grille, or screen, set into the wall. From behind the grille he could hear everything but not be seen. Ministers never knew whether the sultan was listening or not. If he rapped on the grille, the meeting ended and the ministers had to report to the sultan in another room, one by one.

Accounts of the time describe the splendour of the palace and royal ceremonies. On special days, such as holidays, the sultan sat on a throne in front of the Gate of Felicity, which led to the third courtyard. Surrounded by eunuchs and Janissaries, he received foreign dignitaries and other guests. The sultan forbade anyone but himself from riding a horse on certain paths leading through the second courtyard. In the inner courtyards he was even stricter. Servants were prohibited from speaking in his presence, and had to communicate in sign language.

Today, the Topkapi Palace is listed as a World Heritage site along with other parts of the inner city of Istanbul. Since 1924, it has been a museum. Many tourists visit the Topkapi Palace each year to learn what daily life was like in the sultan's palace and to visit the treasury, kitchens and harem.

Practise the skill

1 Create a presentation titled 'A day at the Topkapi Palace'. Your presentation should **describe** life at the palace from the perspective of one of the following people:
- a servant or member of the kitchen staff
- the grand vizier or a member of the *divan*
- the sultan or a woman in his harem.

Use information and sources from the text and your own research. Your presentation could be an 'interview', a short story or a diary entry. Whatever format you choose, make sure you include descriptions that 'paint a picture' of the time and place.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing descriptions

The purpose of descriptions is to give clear information about people, places or objects at particular moments in time. They focus on the main characteristics or features of particular people or things. They 'paint a picture' in words for readers to increase their understanding.

Descriptions must be well planned. Different types of sources need to be used to ensure that they present a balanced view and are supported by reliable evidence. Descriptions must follow a set structure, and events must be organised in chronological order. Use the structure in Source 22 to guide you.

Source 22

Structure of a description	
Introduction	• Introduces the subject • States the name of the person or event • Outlines why the topic is important
Body	• Provides details about the person or event (including dates and important facts) • Information must be organised in paragraphs, with a new paragraph for each detail • Quotations and descriptive words should be used where relevant
Conclusion	• Revisits the most important details and provides a concluding statement

For more information on this skill, see page 220 of 'The history toolkit'.

Extend your understanding

1 Imagine you are a foreign ambassador visiting the Ottoman royal court in this period. Write a letter home to **describe** what you would have seen and experienced in the palace during your visit. For example, you might include in your letter an account of your audience with the sultan or an elaborate banquet.

14.6 Expansion of the Ottoman Empire

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the role of warfare in expanding Ottoman territory

» understand interpretations of the Fall of Constantinople in 1453 CE.

Between 1299 and 1683, the Ottoman territory grew from a tiny tribal kingdom to a vast empire. The Ottomans achieved their remarkable success because they had a powerful military with impressive, well-trained forces, both at sea and on land. For a long time, the Ottoman army was better disciplined and equipped than its European rivals.

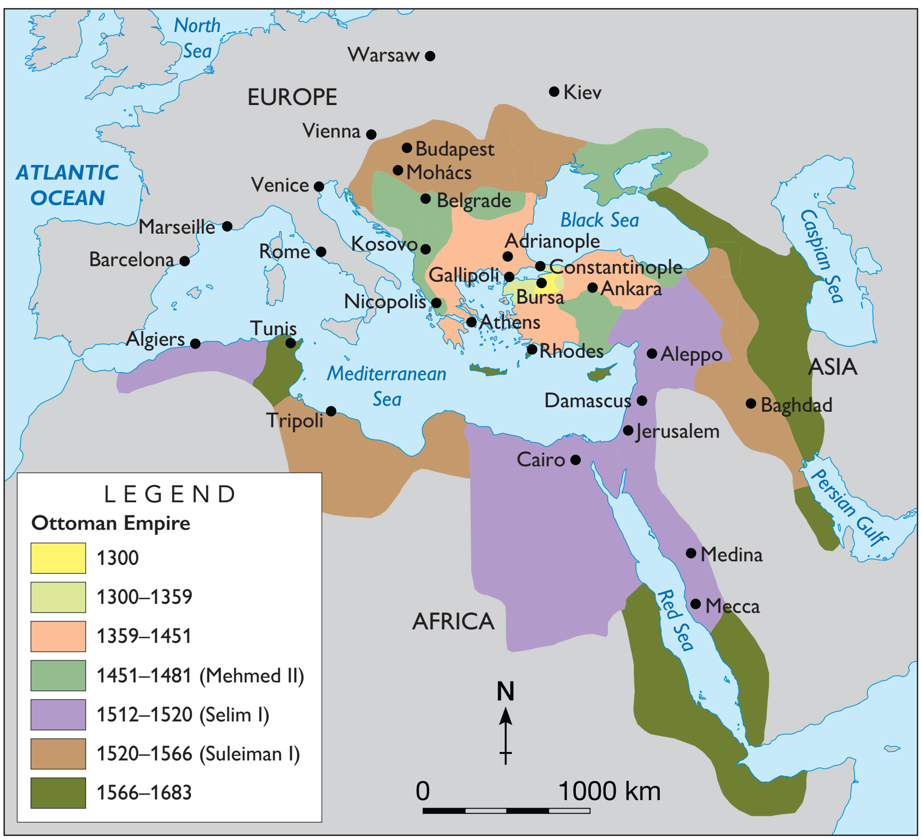
The Ottoman Empire expanded most under Sultans Mehmed II, Selim I and Suleiman I.

Events during the rule of Mehmed II (1451–81)

Mehmed II, also known as 'Mehmed the Conqueror', is most famous for capturing Constantinople in 1453, when he was only 21 years old. He renamed the city Istanbul and made it the capital of his empire. He also conquered many other lands during his reign, including Serbia, parts of Greece and most of the coast of the Black Sea. He built new forts along the empire's coasts to guard against enemy ships, and increased the size of the navy.

Source 1 An example of the headwear worn by a sultan

THE EXPANSION OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE, 1300–1683



Source 2 Source: Oxford University Press

Enlarged map
The expansion of the Ottoman Empire, 1300–1683

The conquest of Constantinople

By the mid-fifteenth century, Constantinople, the capital of the Byzantine Empire, was in decline. Yet it was still regarded as the centre of the Christian world. By then, the Ottomans had conquered all the surrounding land, and Mehmed sought to conquer Constantinople and make it less of a threat to Muslims – by turning it into a city for Muslims, Jews and Christians alike.

Analyse this!
Painting of Mehmed II's army approaching Constantinople

Source 3 A painting by Italian artist Fausto Zonaro in 1903 shows Mehmed II's army approaching Constantinople, dragging a cannon.

Mehmed's military forces vastly outnumbered those of the Byzantine Emperor Constantine XI. According to one estimate, the city had only 4983 soldiers, whereas the sultan's army consisted of 300 000 men. As well as greater numbers, Mehmed had the advantage of better cannons. The largest of these was so heavy, it took 60 oxen to move it. It could fire stones weighing over 250 kilograms, doing terrible damage to the city walls.

The attack began on 6 April 1453. Constantinople's defenders fought bravely, but after a battle of 53 days, the city's defences failed. Cannons blasted a hole in the city walls and the attackers rushed into the city. Mehmed allowed his men to **plunder** and kill for three days before ordering them to stop. Many Christians were captured as slaves.

plunder
to steal, often using violent force

After the city fell, Mehmed allowed some of the former inhabitants to return and regain their possessions. Others fled westwards to Christian lands.

Events during the rule of Selim I (1512–20)

Under Selim I, who was known as 'Selim the Grim', the Ottomans defeated their rivals in Persia, Syria and Egypt. Gaining control of Syria and Egypt – including the great trading cities of Aleppo and Cairo – added greatly to the Ottomans' wealth because it enabled them to increase trade with India and Asia. The Ottoman Empire doubled in size under Selim, and its Islamic population was strengthened by the addition of provinces on the Arabian Peninsula. The Ottomans also became the guardians of the holy sites of Mecca, Medina and Jerusalem.

Source 4 An ancient Ottoman coin

Events during the rule of Suleiman I (1520–66)

Probably the most famous of all Ottoman sultans was Suleiman I. Under his rule, the Ottomans fought almost constantly in Europe, the Middle East and across northern Africa. The territory under their control reached its greatest extent in this period. Suleiman was so successful in war that European rulers grew terrified he might conquer the whole continent.

In Europe, Suleiman captured Belgrade in 1521. He took the island of Rhodes in 1522, after a siege lasting five months. In 1526, he defeated Hungary at the Battle of Mohacs. Suleiman then marched further into Europe, laying siege to Vienna in 1529. But as winter set in, his army was forced to retreat. The Ottomans' advance into Europe had reached its limit.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Suleiman I

Suleiman I was known in Europe as 'Suleiman the Magnificent'. His subjects also knew him as 'Suleiman the Lawgiver' because he put together the empire's first complete set of laws. Among these laws were rules governing the fair collection of taxes and the ownership of property. Suleiman promoted meritocracy – that is, rule by the most talented, no matter what their birth – as the basis for promotion to high positions in government. He reduced the severity of some punishments for criminals. He also guaranteed some rights for Christians living in his empire. The system of laws he introduced became known as the Ottoman Laws and lasted into the nineteenth century.

Source 5 Suleiman I

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

14.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the three sultans who achieved the greatest expansion of the Ottoman Empire.

2 **Identify** the reasons that motivated Mehmed II's attack on Constantinople.

Comprehend

3 Identify and **describe** two key events that contributed to the expansion of the Ottoman Empire.

4 **Summarise** what happened to the inhabitants of Constantinople after the arrival of the Ottomans.

Analyse

5 **Examine** the system of laws that Suleiman I introduced. Why do you think they lasted so long?

Apply

6 Choose one of the three Ottoman sultans mentioned on these pages and write a brief biography of him, including his main achievements.

7 How important was securing Constantinople for the Ottomans? How might their empire have developed differently if they had not been able to do so? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

14.7 The Ottomans and the people they conquered

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise the *millet* system in place during the Ottoman Empire
- explain the tolerance of the Ottomans towards other religions, including Christians and Jews.

The Ottoman Empire came into contact with many other societies. It conquered the Byzantine Empire and took Christian lands in Greece, the Balkans and Hungary. It fought with other Muslim states in Egypt, Syria and Mesopotamia. For the rulers of these lands, conquest by the Ottomans meant humiliation at the very least, and possibly exile or death.

For ordinary people, however, Ottoman rule could be a good outcome economically. Ottoman officials seized land and money – that had fallen into the hands of local lords and monasteries – for the empire. The new Ottoman subjects often found themselves paying fewer taxes than they had to their former rulers.

Forced relocation

One of the ways that the Ottomans sought to integrate newly conquered peoples into their empire was through forced relocation. Conquered peoples would be forced to move to other parts of the empire, and others would be brought in to take their place. This was done to strengthen the Ottomans' hold on their new lands. With many of the original inhabitants gone, it was less likely that the new territory would try to revolt.

Source 6 A golden censer, used to burn incense during religious ceremonies

Source 7 The Fetiye Cami Mosque, Ioannina, Greece; Muslims settled in Christian lands such as Greece to strengthen the Ottomans' hold on their new territories.

Religious tolerance

Christian leaders in Europe described the Ottoman Empire as the 'cruellest enemy of Christ's name'. The Ottomans were, however, very tolerant of different religions. Under the laws of Islam a person could not be forced to convert to Islam, so the Ottomans did not usually attempt to make people do so (with the exception of the *devsirme*: see topic 14.4). When Sultan Suleiman I conquered Rhodes, he promised the Christian knights defending it that if they surrendered, 'I shall not require of you any tribute, or do anything … against your religion'.

Many different types of Muslims lived within the Ottoman lands, and the empire did not persecute those who were not of the sultan's sect, or branch of Islam. The two main branches of Islam were Sunni and Shi'a. The sultans were followers of Sunni Islam, but they took care to address the needs of their Shi'a Muslim subjects.

Source 8 There is still a strong Orthodox Christian Church in Istanbul.

Defeated peoples were integrated into Ottoman society and could gain wealth and a level of prestige. No attempt was made by the state to assimilate (absorb) the various religious and ethnic communities within its borders. As long as the empire's laws were followed, individuals and communities could carry out their customs and religious practices freely.

In particular, many Greek Orthodox subjects welcomed the Ottomans, as they allowed them to practise their faith. By contrast, the Roman Catholic Church, led by the Pope, had tried to stop them. In 1454, Sultan Mehmed II granted the leader of the Orthodox Church (known as the patriarch) total authority over his community in return for the payment of a special tax. He did the same for the Armenian Church. This became known as the ***millet* system**, and it allowed different religious groups to live side by side in relative peace.

***millet* system**
a special legal system in the Ottoman Empire that allowed non-Muslim communities to use their own laws and largely govern themselves

Millet system

Usually, the head of the *millet* was the leader of a significant religious group. For example, the Patriarch of Constantinople governed the Greek Orthodox Christians in the empire. There were four very strong *millets*: the Greek Orthodox, the Armenian, the Syrian Orthodox and the Jewish.

Officially, each *millet* was a separate legal court. The *millet* set and collected taxes for its members. It also applied laws, gave punishments and settled disputes within its religious community. The only exception was when a dispute involved someone from outside the *millet*. If the victim belonged to another religious community, its *millet* had the right to use its laws to settle the case. Islamic law was used whenever a Muslim was involved.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about religious tolerance in the Ottoman Empire and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

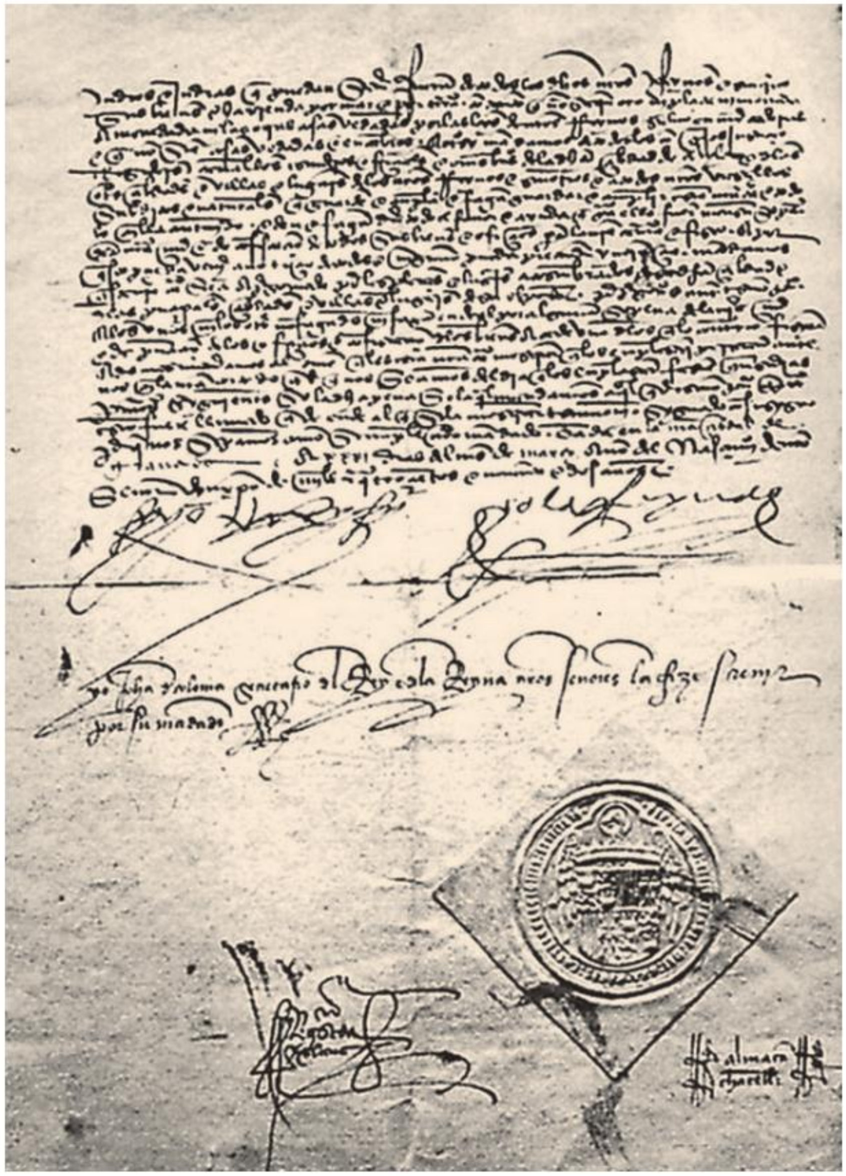
What has changed in your understanding?

The Spanish Inquisition

In the late fifteenth century, the Spanish Inquisition began. The Spanish king and queen set up tribunals of inquisitors (religious officials), who were ordered to convert or expel non-Catholics and to burn witches at the stake.

Thousands of Protestants, Jews and Moriscos (Muslim converts to Christianity) were tortured and killed. In 1492, the king and queen issued the Alhambra Decree, ordering all Jews to leave the kingdom of Spain (see Source 9).

On hearing of this order, Sultan Bayezid II sent ships to Spain. He offered the Jews resettlement within his empire and free practice of their religion under the *millet* system. Many Jews accepted his offer, settling in Istanbul, Salonika in Greece, Cairo and cities in coastal Arabia.



Source 9 The Alhambra Decree of 1492, ordering that the Jews be expelled from Spain

14.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **Define** 'forced relocation'.
2. What was the *millet* system? Which were the strongest *millets* under the Ottomans?
3. **Identify** which branch of Islam the sultans followed.

Comprehend

4. **Summarise** why many Spanish Jewish people moved to Muslim settlements in the fifteenth century.
5. **Explain** why you think many people would have been content under the rule of the Ottomans.
6. The Ottoman Empire was considered to be tolerant of other religions. **Explain** how the Ottomans practised this tolerance, using specific examples.

Apply

7. Imagine your school was structured under the *millet* system, where each class is a *millet*. **Propose** (put forward) at least two benefits and two drawbacks of using the system in your school.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Ottomans and the people they conquered

14.8 Ottoman architecture, literature and art

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe developments in Ottoman culture, such as architecture, literature and fine arts.

As they expanded their empire through conquest, the Ottomans increased their access to trade and opportunities to grow their wealth. Bringing such wealth into the empire gave Ottoman culture the chance to develop.

The period from about 1450 to 1680 is seen as a golden age for the arts in the Ottoman Empire. Architecture, literature and fine arts flourished.

Source 10 The Imperial School of Medicine was the first school of medicine in the Ottoman Empire. It still stands today, on the campus of Marmara University.

Source 11 The Kul-Sharif Mosque in Kazan Kremlin, Russia; Kazan Kremlin is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

Architecture

Sultans, princesses and grand viziers commissioned many mosques, palaces, religious schools, drinking fountains and alms houses (charitable housing for people in need). They spent significant sums of money on these buildings.

Following the conquest of Constantinople in 1453, Sultan Mehmed II began a great building program. He ordered the magnificent Topkapi Palace to be built in the Iranian style. He also employed the architect Atik Sinan to create a mosque and school buildings on the site of the former Byzantine Church of the Apostles.

Later, Sultan Suleiman I sought to turn Istanbul into the centre of Islamic civilisation by building bridges, mosques and palaces. In 1539, he ordered religious, educational and commercial buildings to be built in honour of his wife Roxelana. These included a mosque, a *madrasa* (religious school), a hospital and a hospice (where terminally ill patients were cared for). In fact, the first-ever hospital was built under Suleiman's rule. Up until that point, doctors visited and treated patients at home. In line with their tolerant ways, the Ottomans believed that all sick people should have access to treatment.

The greatest architect of these times was Mimar Sinan, who was responsible for over 300 monuments throughout the empire. Sinan's two masterpieces were the Suleymaniye and Selimiye Mosques. The Selimiye Mosque was completed in 1575, in Edirne, during the reign of Suleiman's son, Selim II. At its centre is a huge dome, surrounded by two mausoleums (buildings containing tombs), as well as baths, schools and soup kitchens.

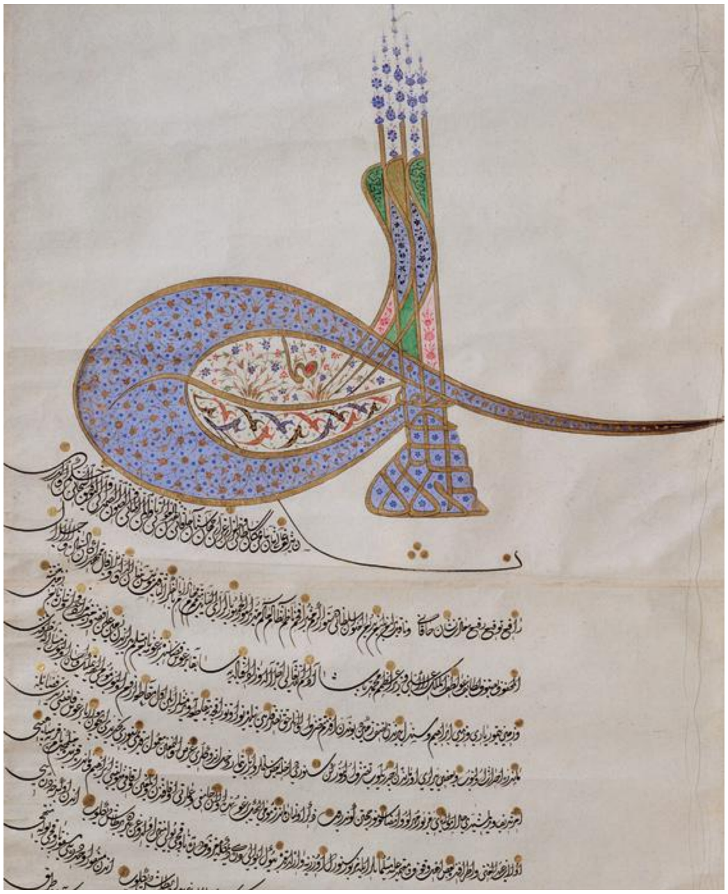
Geometric designs

Under the Ottomans, Islamic artists decorated the walls, floors and roofs of important buildings with geometric patterns. They blended lines, shapes, flowers and calligraphy into intricate designs. Artists mostly avoided depicting human figures, believing that it was Allah's privilege to do so and not theirs.

The patterns could be astonishingly complex. Artists tried to balance light and dark. Each part of the pattern was important and had its own meaning. For example, circles represented the beginning of the pattern and Allah himself, or the holy sites of Mecca, Medina and Jerusalem. Triangles, squares and hexagons symbolised human consciousness, physical experience and heaven, in that order.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Beyazit Mosque

Source 12 A geometric design on the ceiling of the Blue Mosque



Source 13 This monogram of Sultan Murat III is an example of calligraphy. A monogram is a decorative symbol made by combining two or more letters.

Literature

Literature, and especially poetry, was popular at the Ottoman court. The first Ottoman poet was Ali Asik Pasha (1271–1332), who moved to the empire from Persia (modern-day Iran). Sultans not only rewarded poets with money and gifts, but many of them also wrote poetry themselves. Common themes for poems at this time were love, heroism and death.

The kinds of poetry favoured at court were less popular among commoners. Instead, ordinary people preferred folk tales, which were spread by travelling storytellers and singers. Although the printing press was invented in Western Europe in the fifteenth century, printed books were rare. No books were printed in the Ottoman Empire until 1726. The art of calligraphy (decorative handwriting) was promoted instead.

Fine arts

The Ottomans also developed a flourishing culture of creative arts, including calligraphy and painting, that was highly regarded in other parts of the world.

Calligraphy

Calligraphy developed into high art under the Ottomans. The Muslim holy book, the Qur'an, was passed down to each new generation in carefully handwritten copies. Making these copies was one way of earning religious merit.

One of the reasons that the Ottomans preferred this method of copying to using a printing press was that any mistake by the copier only appeared once; while a printing press could duplicate a single mistake many times. Many Ottoman scholars were also concerned about the survival of calligraphy. They saw the arrival of ugly printed texts as a threat to the beauty of this artform.

Almost every Islamic building had some form of calligraphy inscribed on it. Often, this was a verse from the Qur'an or lines of poetry.

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 13.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Miniatures

Ottoman miniatures were tiny paintings executed with great skill. The most notable artists were Kinci Mahmut, Kara Memi and Nigari. Many artists would work together on a single miniature. A head painter drew the main outlines with thin brushes, and then his assistants filled in the parts. The design was usually symmetrical and illustrated important events from the empire's history (see Source 14).

Source 14 This Ottoman miniature depicts the Battle of Mohacs between the Ottomans and the Hungarians in 1526. The miniature is detailed enough to show the heavily armoured knights and horses of the Hungarian army and the artillery that was used. The miniature also shows the infantry and calvary of the armies.

14.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the two mosques that are considered to be architect Mimar Sinan's masterpieces.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why the period from 1450 to 1680 is seen as a golden age for the arts in the Ottoman Empire. Include some of the cultural developments that made this period so significant.

3 **Explain** why Islamic artists avoided depicting human figures in their work. What does this tell us about their relationship with Allah?

4 **Summarise** why Ottoman scholars preferred copying books by hand, rather than using printing presses.

Apply

5 Find some examples of Islamic geometric designs. **Create** your own geometric design that includes triangles, squares and hexagons.

6 **Investigate** Istanbul today to create an itinerary for a tour of the city. The tour should showcase the city's buildings, including its mosques and bazaars.

14B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Ottoman power on land and sea

Until the late seventeenth century, the Ottoman military forces rarely faced defeat in battle. A number of factors helped to make them so successful.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Unlike many European rulers at the time, the Ottoman leaders maintained a permanent paid army (from the early fourteenth century onwards). Paying soldiers to train as well as fight encouraged loyalty and discipline. Ottoman soldiers were also well armed, and were early users of gunpowder and firearms.

Source 15 A sixteenth-century illustration of Ottoman Janissaries

The military was also recruited from both Muslim and non-Muslim groups, which meant that the sultan could send his forces to any part of the empire without having to worry about their willingness to fight.

The most famous of the Ottoman fighting forces were the Janissaries, the sultan's elite infantry troops. They protected the sultan during battle, and acted as household troops and bodyguards during times of peace. For centuries, the Janissaries were the best-trained, best-armed fighting force in the Mediterranean world.

The six divisions of cavalry (soldiers mounted on horseback) were the other elite forces of the Ottoman Empire. They were known as the *sipahis*. Like European knights, they were landholders who, in return for their land, offered their military service to the sultan. They were made up of ethnic Turks, and acted as the sultan's mounted guard.

Tactics and the use of firearms

The sultan took personal command of his armies during battle. He commanded his forces from a safe position, guarded by gun-wagons and artillery (mounted guns). Janissaries armed with arquebuses (an early type of gun) surrounded him as his personal guard. The infantry stood in front of the artillery, and on each side were armoured cavalry. Reserve soldiers protected the baggage, which was carried at the rear.

Source 16 The Ottoman fleet depicted in the Battle of Lepanto, 1571

The *sipahis* had the job of drawing the enemy towards the infantry. The infantry were meant to take any initial attack, and then move aside so that the artillery and Janissaries could open fire. Once this had happened, the *sipahis* would surround the remaining enemy and defeat them.

Control of the seas

During the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, the Ottoman navy dominated the eastern Mediterranean and the Red Sea. The Ottomans used the wealth they gained from conquest and trade to build shipyards, which were scattered around their empire. Sultan Mehmed II led a navy of 126 ships against Constantinople when he conquered the city in 1453. By the mid-1500s, more than three times that number could be built by the Ottomans in any given year.

Cost was not an issue. After a naval defeat in 1571, the sultan asked his grand vizier whether it would cost much to replace the fleet. Grand Vizier Sokollu Mehmed Pasha replied: 'The might and wealth of our empire are such, that if we desired to equip the entire fleet with silver anchors, silken rigging, and satin sails, we could do it.'

Practise the skill

1 Working in groups, conduct further research and **create** a presentation on one of the following topics:
   - **a** **Explain** how Ottoman military tactics and the use of firearms allowed the Ottomans to expand their empire over the course of centuries.
   - **b** **Explain** how Ottoman naval power allowed them to dominate the Mediterranean for centuries, and give examples of their naval successes and exploits against European rivals.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** the Barbarossa brothers, who were renowned pirates. Create a presentation about their characters and activities, and the times and places in which they operated. Explain the impact of their activities on the Ottoman Empire.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Creating and presenting an audiovisual presentation

A popular way to present the findings of historical research is to create an audiovisual presentation. To prepare a successful presentation, follow these steps:

Step 1 Make sure you have collected everything that you have found out in your historical research. This will include a list of sources you have used and a range of relevant images. If working in a group, collate your research with the other members of your group.

Step 2 Decide on the best way to deliver your findings. You may choose to use Microsoft PowerPoint or Prezi. Or you may like to create a website or a short film. How you will present your findings may depend on the criteria set by your teacher.

Step 3 When delivering your presentation, keep the following in mind:

- Rehearse your presentation, especially if you are working in a group. Make sure each member of the group knows exactly what they have to do.
- Make a back-up copy of your presentation in case anything unexpected occurs, such as loss of data.
- Engage with your audience. Make eye contact, do not read from your notes, and prepare cue cards to help you remember your lines. Speak clearly, and make sure your text and layout is as visually appealing as possible.
- Make sure all your material is correct and contains no factual or spelling errors.
- Speak slowly, focus on the purpose of your presentation, and do not allow yourself to be distracted.
- Finish your presentation on a high note.

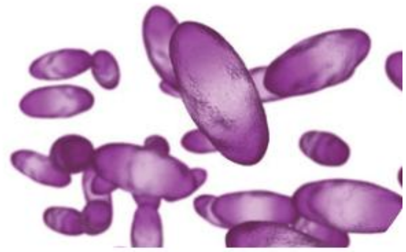
14.9 The Black Death

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand how the Black Death affected Europe, Asia and the Ottoman Empire.

The Black Death was a highly infectious **plague** that spread across Asia, Europe, North Africa and the Middle East from around 1330 to 1351, killing an estimated 100 million people. This represents an average of 30 per cent of the population in these areas.



Source 1 *Yersinia pestis* bacteria – the bacteria that lived in the stomach of fleas and caused the Black Death

Causes and symptoms

The disease became known as the Black Death because of the black lumps (known as buboes) that appeared on the skin of victims. It was transmitted by infected fleas carried by rats. Rats were very common in the dirty, crowded conditions of the towns in the medieval period. When a rat carrying fleas died from the Black Death, the fleas would jump onto a person to feed from their blood. The person bitten by the fleas would then be infected.

plague
a widespread disease with a high death rate

ORIGINS AND SPREAD OF THE BLACK DEATH

1. The Black Death breaks out in China in the early 1300s.

2. As people and goods travel along the Silk Road, so does the Black Death.

3. In 1346, Tatar troops become infected while attacking Kaffa, and spread the disease.

4. Genoan merchants flee from Kaffa in their ships back to Italy, docking at Constantinople on the way. They are carrying rats on board.

5. The merchant ships land in Genoa, spreading infection.

6. In 1347, infection rapidly spreads through the ports on the Mediterranean Sea.

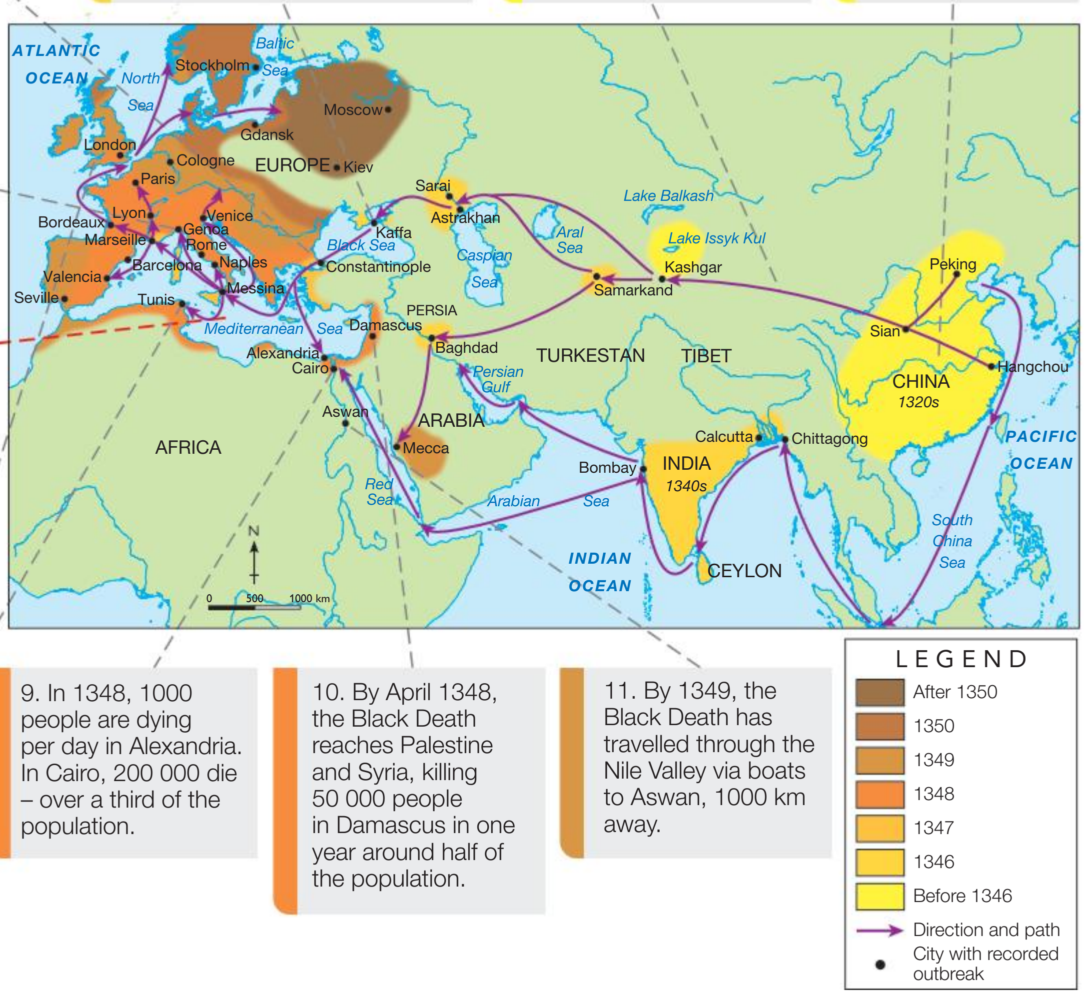
7. In 1348–49, the Black Death spreads northwards across Western Europe, reaching England.

8. In April 1348, it reaches Tunis from Sicily and advances along the Northern African coastline.

9. In 1348, 1000 people are dying per day in Alexandria. In Cairo, 200 000 die – over a third of the population.

10. By April 1348, the Black Death reaches Palestine and Syria, killing 50 000 people in Damascus in one year around half of the population.

11. By 1349, the Black Death has travelled through the Nile Valley via boats to Aswan, 1000 km away.



Source 2

Source: Oxford University Press

The buboes would spread all over the body. The victim would also get a fever and headaches. Over the following few days, the victim would lose motor control (the ability to move voluntarily), so that they could not speak or walk properly. They would suffer much pain and vomiting, and become delirious (meaning they lost control of their emotions and were unable to think or speak clearly).

The average time of death was between three and seven days from the first symptom. It is believed that between 50 and 75 per cent of those who caught the Black Death died.

Spread of the Black Death

The movement of people is thought to be mainly responsible for the Black Death's spread. The plague seemed to move along the important east–west trade routes that linked China with Europe through central Asia (see Sources 2 and 3). Increased trading along overland and sea routes – as well as a lack of medical knowledge, plus filthy living conditions, superstitions and fear – helped the disease to spread quickly.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the Black Death

TRADING ROUTES

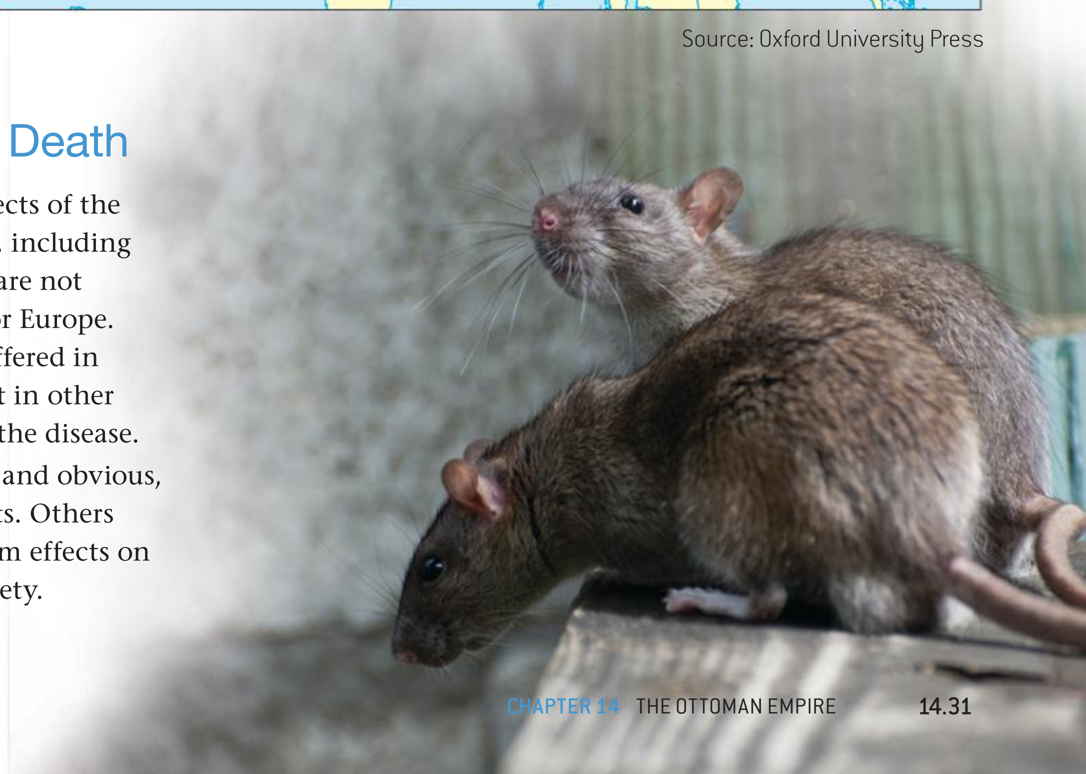
Source 3

Source: Oxford University Press

Effects of the Black Death

With no written records, the effects of the Black Death on Eastern societies, including the emerging Ottoman Empire, are not as well understood as they are for Europe. However, many of the effects suffered in Europe would also have been felt in other regions of the world affected by the disease.

Some effects were immediate and obvious, such as bodies lying in the streets. Others were slower, such as the long-term effects on the economy and politics of society.



Short-term effects

The Black Death caused a huge labour shortage in towns and on farms. Many workers had died or run away. Rubbish and raw sewage in the streets of medieval towns – common enough even before the plague – became worse. Abandoned houses were left dirty and untended, and muck in the streets piled up. There were few people to tend to the disrepair, even if they had wanted to. Tradespeople and craftspeople died along with cleaners, magistrates and officials.

People were dying so quickly, and in such large numbers, that there was no time for proper burials or religious ceremonies. Mass burials became common, with corpses shovelled into large pits and covered with earth.

Source 4 This detail from the *Isenheim Altarpiece* by Matthias Grünewald (*c.* 1480–1528), known as 'Suffering Man', illustrates why the Black Death caused such fear and horror.

Long-term effects

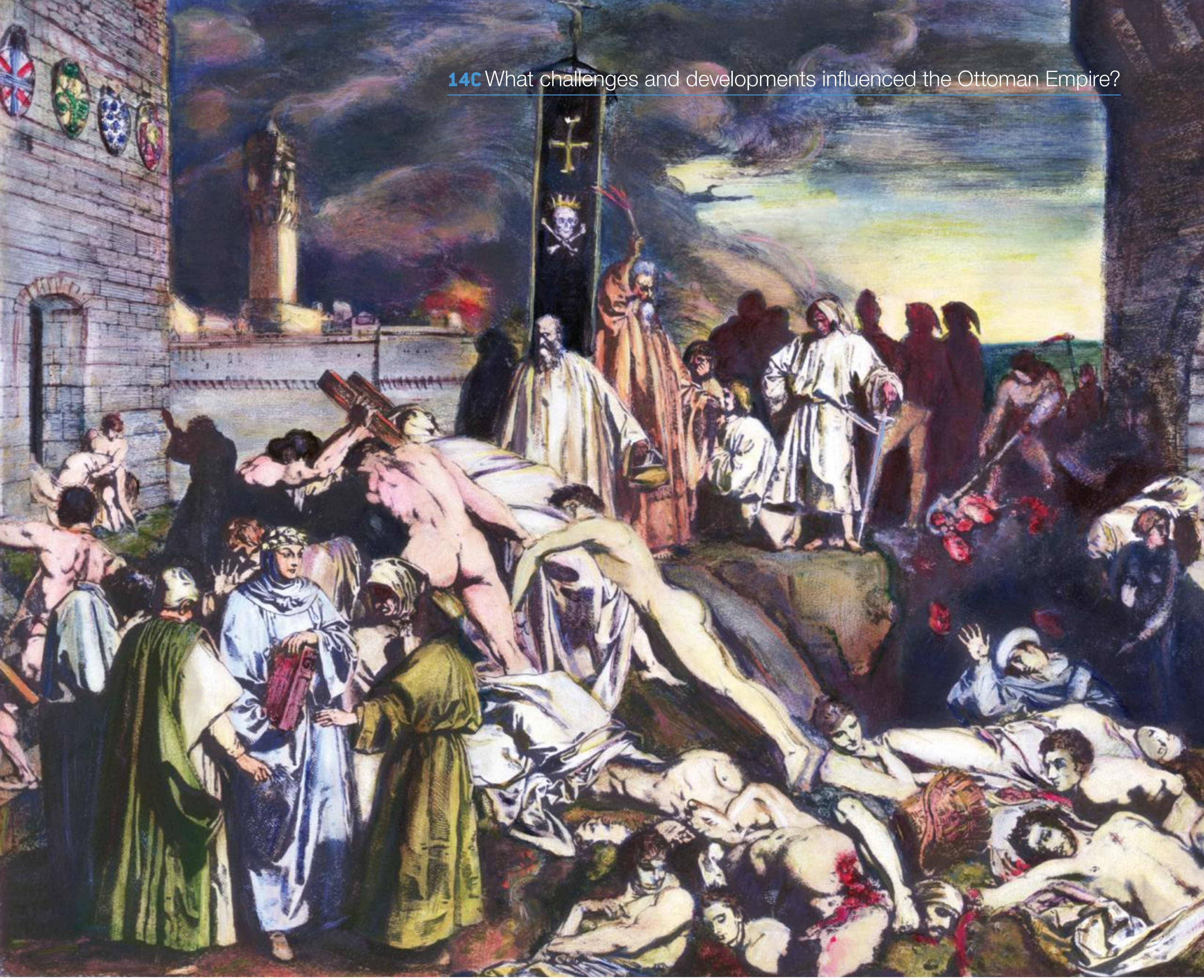
The massive drop in population drastically affected trade, manufacturing and the production of food on the land. Skilled labourers and craftspeople were now in short supply and therefore had more bargaining power with their employers. Consequently, their social status improved.

One long-term effect on African society was the start of the slave trade. Africans from the Sahara region began to be taken as slaves in the fourteenth century, to boost Europe's greatly reduced labour force.

Effects on the Ottoman Empire

Historians believe that the emerging Ottoman Empire was less affected by the Black Death, because at that stage the Ottomans were mostly nomadic groups that were constantly on the move. They still suffered casualties, but the plague seemed to affect cities and settled populations the most. To some extent, the Black Death even helped the Ottomans conquer new territories.

One example is the Ottoman push into neighbouring Byzantine territory. The Black Death reached the Byzantine Empire – including Constantinople – in 1347, killing a large proportion of the population. This catastrophe made them vulnerable to invasion. The Ottomans took advantage of this to steadily advance into Byzantine territory, eventually taking Constantinople in 1453.



Source 5 An eighteenth-century artist's impression of a mass burial during the Black Death in Florence, Italy

14.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why was the fourteenth-century plague called the Black Death?

2 **Identify** what caused the Black Death.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the main factors that contributed to the Black Death's rapid spread.

4 In a short paragraph, **describe** how the Black Death might have affected families and communities. Make sure you consider the economic and social implications.

5 **Explain** why historians believe that the Ottoman Empire was not as affected by the Black Death as other medieval societies.

Analyse

6 a Create a table that **summarises** the short- and long-term effects of the Black Death on medieval societies.

b **Analyse** these short- and long-term effects. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts and talk about how they relate to each other. Think about how the short-term effects led to long-term effects, and what this meant for societies at the time.

14C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

The consequences of population loss

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Black Death had complex and far-reaching effects around the world. One of the most obvious and immediate consequences was the massive loss of life, which affected all aspects of society, culture and the economy.

Source 6 describes just one way that people responded to the Black Death.

Source 6

It was thought that the people … having seen the extermination of their neighbours and of all the nations of the world … would become better, humble and virtuous and catholic, avoiding iniquities and sins and overflowing with love and charity for one another … The opposite happened. Men, finding themselves few and rich by inheritances and successions of earthly things, forgetting the past as if it never was, gave themselves to more disordered and sordid behaviour than ever before.

Observations written in the fourteenth century by the Italian chronicler Matteo Villani, son of a respected merchant family in Florence

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Creating a concept map

Graphic organisers are very useful tools for historians because they can help to compare a range of sources and identify connections between events. One of the simplest and most effective ways to explore connections between events is to create a concept map. Concept maps are very simple to create, and will help you organise your thoughts and more easily identify the causes and effects of different events.

To create a concept map, follow these steps:

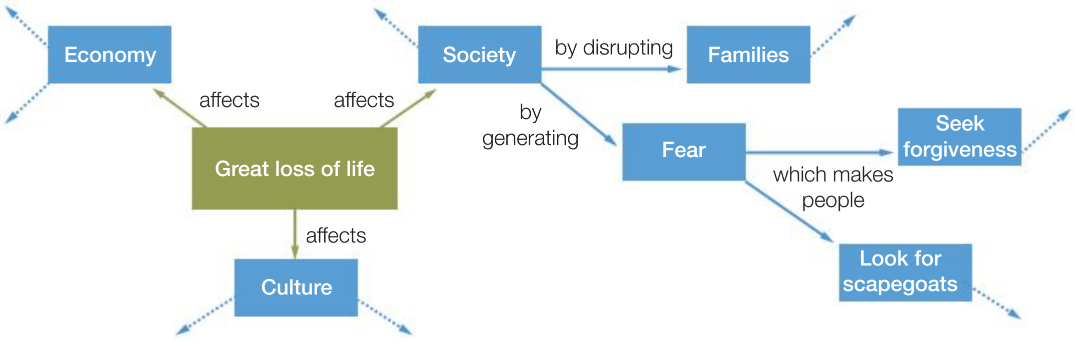
Step 1 Identify the topic or event that you are interested in exploring.

Step 2 In the centre of a large sheet of paper, write down this topic and draw a circle around it.

Step 3 Brainstorm the main ideas that relate to the topic and write them around the central idea. Draw circles around each of these ideas and connect them to the main topic. Keep the concepts as concise as possible.

Step 4 Continue to brainstorm more ideas, and connect them to relevant topics. More important ideas should be put nearer to the centre, and less important ones closer to the edges. Identify the relationship between the concept groups by using a range of different colours. You can also make different connections clearer by using arrows or dotted lines.

Step 5 After you have finished work on your concept map, look carefully at the way it is organised. Check to see that nothing is missing, and that each group of connected ideas is organised logically.



Source 7 An example of a concept map on the effects of population loss following the Black Death

Practise the skill

1 Copy the concept map that has been started for you in Source 7, on the consequences of population loss following the Black Death. Complete it in your notebook, or on a computer using a mind-mapping or drawing program. Make your concept map as big as you can.

To generate ideas, you will need to use your own knowledge, information from this chapter and some further research. As you construct your concept map:

- think of all the logical consequences of each idea
- as you draw an arrow to a new concept bubble, try putting words on the arrow that make a sentence (e.g. Great loss of life – *affects* – Society – *by generating* – Fear)
- draw arrows between concepts on different parts of the map if you see a link
- use colours to categorise your concept bubbles into sensible groupings once you finish
- create a key to explain what the colours mean.

When you have completed your concept map, **compare** it with a classmate's to see what further ideas you can add. Your final concept map will give you a clearer picture of the many effects of population loss.

Extend your understanding

The consequences of such a large proportion of the population dying were profound.

1 Imagine you are a medieval peasant who has survived the Black Death. Many in your village were not so lucky. The churchyard is full of new graves, houses are empty, and hungry animals roam the roads and fields. No one is working, and the crops need to be harvested or they will soon begin to rot. For the first time, you see how important you and your work are. Without your labour and farming knowledge, the lord and his family will not have food to eat.

Create a speech to deliver to your lord, requesting better conditions and pay. Consider the following:

- what you will ask for and why
- the evidence you will use to convince your lord to agree
- the tone you will use – for example, will you choose to present your demands reasonably, or use threats to get what you want?

Source 8 A painting showing farm workers on a manor, soon after the Black Death

14 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the paragraphs below and respond to the questions that follow.

The Istanbul Observatory

Similar to other Islamic cultures, the Ottoman Empire held education and learning in very high regard. The study of sciences in the *madrasas* (religious schools) led to discoveries and advances in medicine, mathematics, physics and astronomy (the study of outer space, planets, moons and stars).

One scholar, Taqi ad-Din Muhammad ibn Ma'ruf (1526–85), constructed mechanical clocks, a parallactic ruler (that calculated how high celestial bodies were in the sky) and an armillary sphere (a model of objects in outer space). He and his team at the Istanbul Observatory used these inventions to calculate the coordinates of the stars. Taqi ad-Din also studied European clocks, and constructed a clock that would tell prayer times precisely. Historians refer to him as a polymath (a person who has expert knowledge in many subjects).

Source 9 The Istanbul Observatory

1 **Define** polymath. (1 mark)

2 **Identify** two scientific instruments in Source 9. (2 marks)

3 In your own words, **explain** the use of each scientific instrument identified in question 2. (6 marks)

4 a **Explain** the significance of the clock that told prayer times. (3 marks)

  b **Consider** what this reveals about the connections between science and religion in the Ottoman Empire. (4 marks)

5 Using your knowledge of the Ottoman Empire, **analyse** the historical significance of Taqi ad-Din Muhammad ibn Ma'ruf's scientific achievements. (4 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe the origins and development of the Ottoman Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.2, page 14.4.
Explain the power and responsibility of the sultan in Ottoman society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.3, page 14.6.
Describe the social and political structure of the Ottoman Empire. Understand the role of women in society, and how it was different from women in other societies at the time.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.4, page 14.8.
Summarise the way of life of people in the Ottoman Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.5, page 14.12.
Explain the role of warfare in expanding Ottoman territory. Understand interpretations of the Fall of Constantinople in 1453 CE.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.6, page 14.18.
Summarise the *millet* system in place during the Ottoman Empire. Explain the tolerance of the Ottomans towards other religions, including Christians and Jews.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.7, page 14.21.
Describe developments in Ottoman culture, such as architecture, literature and fine arts.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.8, page 14.24.
Understand how the Black Death affected Europe, Asia and the Ottoman Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 14.9, page 14.30.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 14

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 14

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on The Ottoman Empire.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 14

CHAPTER 15

Japan under the shoguns

Japan first became united as a country under an emperor at the end of the sixth century CE. Ever since then, Japan has been ruled by a long line of emperors. However, for almost 700 years – from 1185 to 1868 – the emperor of Japan had no real power. Instead, Japan was controlled by a series of military leaders, known as shoguns. The word ‘shogun’ comes from the Japanese *sho* (meaning ‘commander’) and *gun* (meaning ‘troops’).

In 1868, the last shogun was overthrown and power was returned to the emperor. At this time, the capital was moved from Heian-Kyo (modern-day Kyoto) to a new location in Edo – now known as Tokyo.

Source 1 Toshogu Shrine in Nikko, Japan, is the burial place of Tokugawa Ieyasu. He was the founder and first shogun of the Tokugawa shogunate, which ruled Japan from 1603 to 1868.

15A
What led to the rise of the shoguns?

15B
How was Japanese society organised during the rule of the shoguns?

15C
How did Japan change during the rule of the shoguns?

15.1 Japan under the shoguns: a timeline

Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in Japan under the shoguns

An artist's impression of a samurai, a member of a warrior class that served lords known as *daimyo*

700 CE | 800 | 1100 | 1200 | 1300 | 1400

Nara period 710–794

Heian period 794–1185

Kamakura period 1185–1333

710
The first official capital of Japan is based in the city of Nara; the imperial family – led by a series of emperors or empresses – rules over Japan during this time.

794
Under orders from Emperor Kammu, the capital of Japan moves to the city of Heian-Kyo (modern-day Kyoto). It remains the official capital of Japan for the next 1000 years.

1185
The Minamoto clan seizes power from the emperor. Minamoto no Yoritomo becomes shogun and establishes his own capital city in Kamakura. With support from *daimyo* (lords) and samurai (warriors), a series of shoguns rules Japan for the next 700 years.

1274
The Mongol army launches an attack on Japan, landing on the island of Kyushu. A typhoon destroys many of their ships and the invasion fails.

1281
The Mongol army launches a second attack on Japan, landing once again on the island of Kyushu. For the second time a typhoon hits, destroying almost all Mongol ships, and the invasion fails.

1333
Emperor Go-Daigo overthrows the Kamakura shogunate and takes back power from the shogun for a brief period.

1336
Ashikaga Takauji seizes power from Emperor Go-Daigo to become the new shogun.

An artist's impression of Japanese fighters facing the Mongol army during the attempted invasion of Japan

Heijo Palace in the city of Nara was the Imperial Palace, and seat of power from 710 to 784.

Sequence this!
Events in Japan under the shoguns

A statue of Tokugawa Ieyasu, founder of the Tokugawa shogunate

1467
A period of civil war, known as the Warring States period, begins in Japan between rival warlords. It lasts for around 100 years.

1598
William Adams, a sailor and navigator, becomes the first Englishman to visit Japan. He befriends Tokugawa Ieyasu (a future shogun) and later becomes a key adviser to him.

1603
Tokugawa Ieyasu becomes shogun and establishes a base in the city of Edo (modern-day Tokyo). The Tokugawa shogunate rules Japan for the next 260 years.

1633
Tokugawa Iemitsu introduces a policy known as *sakoku* (meaning 'locked country'). Under the policy, no Japanese people are permitted to leave Japan and no foreigners are allowed to enter. The policy remains in effect until around 1853.

1853
Commodore Matthew Perry, a US naval officer, arrives in the city of Edo (modern-day Tokyo) to persuade the Japanese to open their borders to trade.

1868
The last shogun, Tokugawa Yoshinobu, steps down and hands power back to the imperial family under Emperor Meiji.

1500 1600 1700 1800 1900

Muromachi period
1336–1573

Azuchi-Momoyama period
1573–1603

Tokugawa (or Edo) period
1603–1868

1666
A policy is introduced to reduce logging and increase the planting of trees. Only the shogun and his *daimyo* are able to authorise the use of wood.

1724
Timber harvesting in Japan has now been reduced by 60 per cent. It remains at low levels for the next 30 years, allowing Japan's forests to recover.

1854
The Convention of Kanagawa puts an end to the policy of *sakoku*. Japan opens up trade with the United States.

15.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What year did the city of Heian-Kyo became the capital of Japan? What name is this city known by today?

2 **State** how many times the Mongol army attempted to invade Japan. Outline if these attempts were successful.

Comprehend

3 **a** **Explain** the policy of *sakoku*.

b Use the dates provided on the timeline to calculate how many years this policy was in place.

Apply

4 The timeline shows that the shoguns ruled Japan from around 1185 to 1868 CE. Many historians break this overall period into four further periods, commonly known as:

- the Kamakura period
- the Muromachi period
- the Azuchi-Momoyama period
- the Tokugawa (or Edo) period.

a Using the internet, **investigate** why each of these periods was given its name.

b For each period, write two inquiry questions that you would like to find the answers to. As you work your way through this chapter, check back on these questions and provide the answers to them when you can.

15.2 Life before the shoguns

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

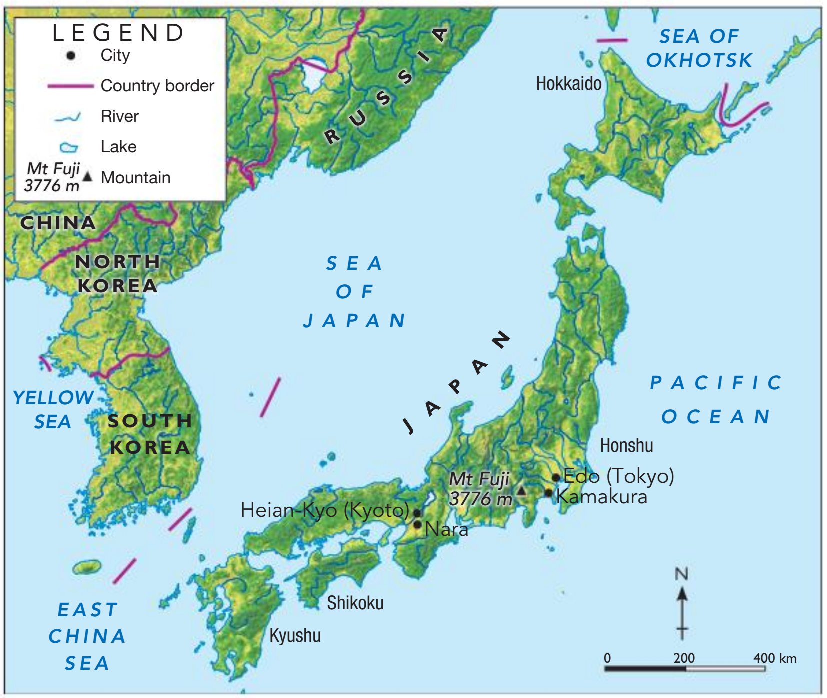
» explain how the environment influenced early life in Japan.

Archaeologists believe that Japan was initially settled by humans around 30 000 years ago. Over time, groups of settlers from the nearby mainland (particularly China and Korea) continued to arrive in Japan. The fact that Japan is made up of many islands, and that each island is very mountainous, meant that different groups of settlers formed isolated communities. Over time, these communities developed extremely diverse customs and traditions.

The influence of geography

Japan is a chain of islands in the Pacific Ocean formed by the peaks of underwater mountain ranges. More than 3000 islands are part of Japan today, but people have mostly always lived on the four largest. These are Honshu, Shikoku, Kyushu and Hokkaido (see Source 2).

JAPAN: PHYSICAL



Source 2

Source: Oxford University Press

Japan's rugged landscape means that only 15 per cent of the land can be farmed effectively. As a result, people tended to settle in the valleys and coastal regions that are flatter, and more suited to agriculture. The lack of suitable farming areas means there has always been fierce competition between people for fertile land. Commonly grown crops were rice, soya beans, wheat, barley and millet (a type of cereal grain), and these formed the basis of the traditional Japanese diet.

Japan is situated in an area of high volcanic and earthquake activity. It is also subject to regular tsunamis as a result of earthquakes.

The difficulty of living and farming in the mountains encouraged many people to earn their livelihoods from the ocean. Early settlers fished from coastal villages and, to this day, seafood remains an important part of the Japanese diet.

The sea surrounding Japan separated its people from the rest of Asia and, as a result, Japan developed its own unique religion, arts and social structures.

Key skill worksheet

Questioning & researching: Researching the earliest settlers in Japan

The earliest settlers

Archaeological evidence suggests that people travelled to the Japanese islands around 30 000 BCE. A second group of settlers followed around 14 000 BCE. Historians refer to these early people as *Jomon* (which translates roughly as 'cord patterned') because of the distinctive pottery with rope-like patterns that archaeologists have discovered from this era. Other artefacts – including tools, weapons and figurines – suggest that there were settled communities in the north of Japan at this time.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on life before the shoguns

The clan system

Over time, small, independent societies and states formed on the islands of Japan. Each of these states was made up of different **clans** – groups of families related by blood or marriage. Each clan honoured a range of different gods. Some were spirits of the trees, winds, rivers and mountains, while others were spirits of dead ancestors of clan members.

Each clan was led by a group of warrior chiefs, who protected the people in return for a share of the crops that were harvested each year. Local wars between rival clans broke out regularly, as they fought one another over access to resources such as fertile land.

clans
groups of people linked and united in their aims and behaviours by the knowledge (or a belief) that they share common ancestors

Shinto creation myth

Shinto is the oldest religion in Japan and has played a significant role in the way Japanese society has evolved. According to a Shinto creation myth, in the beginning there were two gods – Izanagi and his wife, Izanami – who were asked by the spirits to create a new land. They were given a spear, which they plunged into the ocean. As they pulled the spear from the ocean, drops fell from the tip, forming the first Japanese island. Izanagi and Izanami settled on this first island and gave birth to all of the islands that now form Japan. They also gave birth to a range of different gods to inhabit each of these islands.

While giving birth to the god of fire, Izanami died. Izanagi followed her to the Land of the Dead to bring her back, but she refused. He returned alone, but in doing so he brought many impurities back to Earth with him. These impurities cause human wrongdoing and suffering.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 3 A Shinto creation myth tells of gods Izanagi and Izanami plunging a spear into the ocean; drops from the tip of the spear formed the first island of Japan.

15.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the body of water that separates Japan from the Asian mainland.

2 What name have historians given to the first people to settle in Japan? Why are they called this?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** how the location of Japan affected the way societies there developed.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the impact of Japan's geographical features on the development of society there. Remember, when you analyse something, you must break it down into smaller parts and explain how they relate to each other.

Apply

5 **Create** a facts chart on what you have learnt in this section about the early settlement of Japan. As well as text, you could use pictures, diagrams and maps on your chart.

6 Draw a simple comic strip (using stick figures) to retell the Shinto creation myth of Izanagi and Izanami.

15.3 The rise of the emperor

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the changing political role of the emperor in Japan.

In the fifth century CE, one Japanese clan, known as the Yamato clan, became more powerful than all others. Under the rule of this clan, the organisation of Japanese society began to take shape. A type of centralised government was formed and a system of taxation was introduced, but the most significant change was the appointment of an **emperor** – a supreme ruler who was believed to communicate with the gods and possess magical powers.

emperor
someone who rules an empire; an empire is a group of countries or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

The Yamato rulers

The Yamato clan grew to control much of southern Japan from their territorial base on the central island of Honshu. They developed great military forces in order to protect this territory. While other clans across Japan still technically controlled their own territories, the leaders of these clans promised their loyalty to the Yamato chief, because they knew they could never defeat him in battle.

The Yamato chief's territory was divided into a series of provinces that were controlled by junior clan chiefs. Each of these chiefs ensured that the supreme leader was obeyed and that taxes were collected.

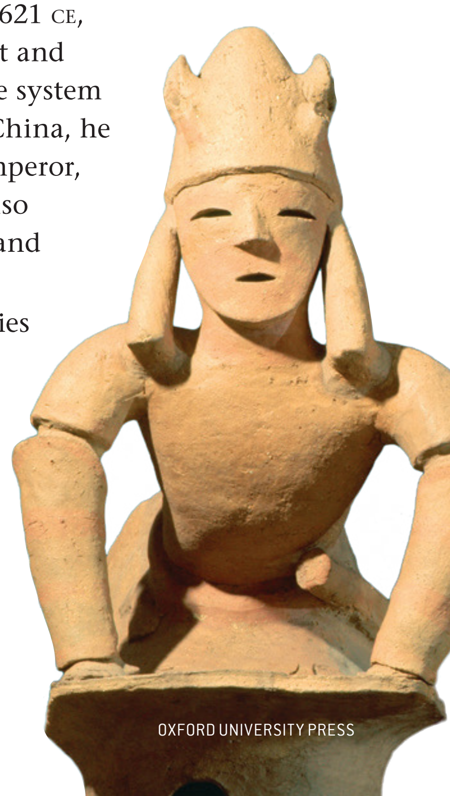
Even though Japan was ruled by a series of clan leaders, a system developed that recognised one Yamato chief as the supreme leader. From around the seventh century CE onwards, this leader eventually became known as emperor. The emperor was regarded as the spiritual and symbolic head of the country, and claimed to be descended from the Shinto sun goddess Amaterasu. Clan chiefs across Japan were required to show their respect to the emperor by acknowledging his superiority and making payments to him to show their loyalty.

A centralised government

Prince Shotoku, a Yamato prince who ruled from 593 to 621 CE, was a key figure in establishing a centralised government and strengthening the control of the Yamato clan. Basing the system of government on that of the neighbouring country of China, he created a new **constitution** that gave all power to the emperor, who had to be obeyed by all Japanese people. Shotoku also established a large bureaucracy with 12 different ranks, and introduced Buddhism and Confucianism to Japan.

constitution
the political principles on which a country or society is based and that guide its government; also, a written document that outlines these principles

After him, in 646 CE, Emperor Kotoku introduced a series of reforms that further strengthened the centralised government. From then on, all land in Japan was said to belong to the emperor. Peasants were made to pay taxes to the emperor either in goods (such as rice or cloth) or in labour (by working on building sites or



Source 4 A fired clay statue from the burial mound of a junior Yamato chief; it was made in the mid-sixth century BCE.

The emperor's ancestry

Yamato chiefs claimed that they were descended from the sun goddess Amaterasu, and therefore had a right to rule Japan. Japanese legend states that a Yamato leader named Jimmu was the grandson of Amaterasu and the first emperor of Japan – even though the word 'emperor' was not used in Japanese until a thousand years after he was supposed to have lived. Jimmu is thought to have united a series of clans under his reign from 660 to 585 BCE.

Some historians think that Jimmu is a mix of characters, both real and imagined, while others question whether or not he ever existed. Regardless of whether Emperor Jimmu is fact or fiction, his name is listed on the official family tree of the current ruling family of Japan, which traces its ancestry back to him.

The 13 emperors who came after Jimmu are known as 'legendary emperors', because their existence is also based on legend rather than solid historical evidence. The earliest recorded history in Japan begins after that, in about 300 CE.

Naruhito is the 126th Japanese emperor. He succeeded Emperor Akihito in 2019.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Source 5 US President Donald Trump with Emperor Naruhito in Tokyo in 2019

serving as soldiers). To administer this system of taxation, the country was divided into provinces, each overseen by a governor appointed by the emperor.

In 710 CE, the city of Nara was established as the first official capital of Japan and the emperor's palace was built there. From here, the new centralised government ruled Japan.

The Heian period (794–1185 CE)

In 794 CE, Emperor Kammu moved the capital from Nara to a new city he had constructed called Heian-Kyo (modern-day Kyoto): see Source 7 on the following page. Heian-Kyo remained the official capital of Japan for the next 1000 years. This move marked the start of a period in Japanese history known as the Heian period (794–1185 CE). The Heian period became known for Japanese arts and culture; but it was also at this time that the emperor began to lose control, and the eighth century CE marks the beginning of the feudal period of Japan, when society was organised in a system called **feudalism**.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the rise of the emperor

The Imperial Court

Although he was considered the supreme ruler of Japan, the emperor did not involve himself in the day-to-day running of his country. Special advisers and ministers were appointed to carry out these functions. The emperor was removed from his people, living in a beautiful isolated palace known as the Imperial Court. It was a place of luxury and privilege for a select few. The reality of life outside the palace did not intrude.

During the Heian period, the Imperial Court was dedicated to fine arts and learning, both of which flourished. Music and writing were encouraged, and poetry was a central part of life at court. Both men and women were encouraged to write. Women at court dressed in elegant **kimonos**, made from silk and often composed of up to 16 layers. Although men wore robes with fewer layers, they were still required to dress elegantly and according to tradition.

feudalism
a set of legal and military customs that served to organise the society of medieval Europe and Japan; under feudalism, a lord (in Japan, a *daimyo*) gave a fief (parcel of land) to a person (called a vassal) in exchange for service and loyalty

kimonos
long, loose Japanese robes with wide sleeves worn as an outer garment; they have a wide belt and are often elaborately decorated; 'kimono' means 'thing to wear'

Men who belonged to the court had little contact with the outside world unless they were appointed as the governor of a province; and at court, it was generally considered more important that a man be a good poet than a good administrator.

The court was often entertained with poetry or music contests, or through scrolls of picture stories. Physical activities included archery and *kemari* – a traditional game in which players kicked a leather ball to each other without letting it touch the ground.

Source 6 A portrait of a typical woman at the Imperial Court during the Heian period

The emperor's power weakens

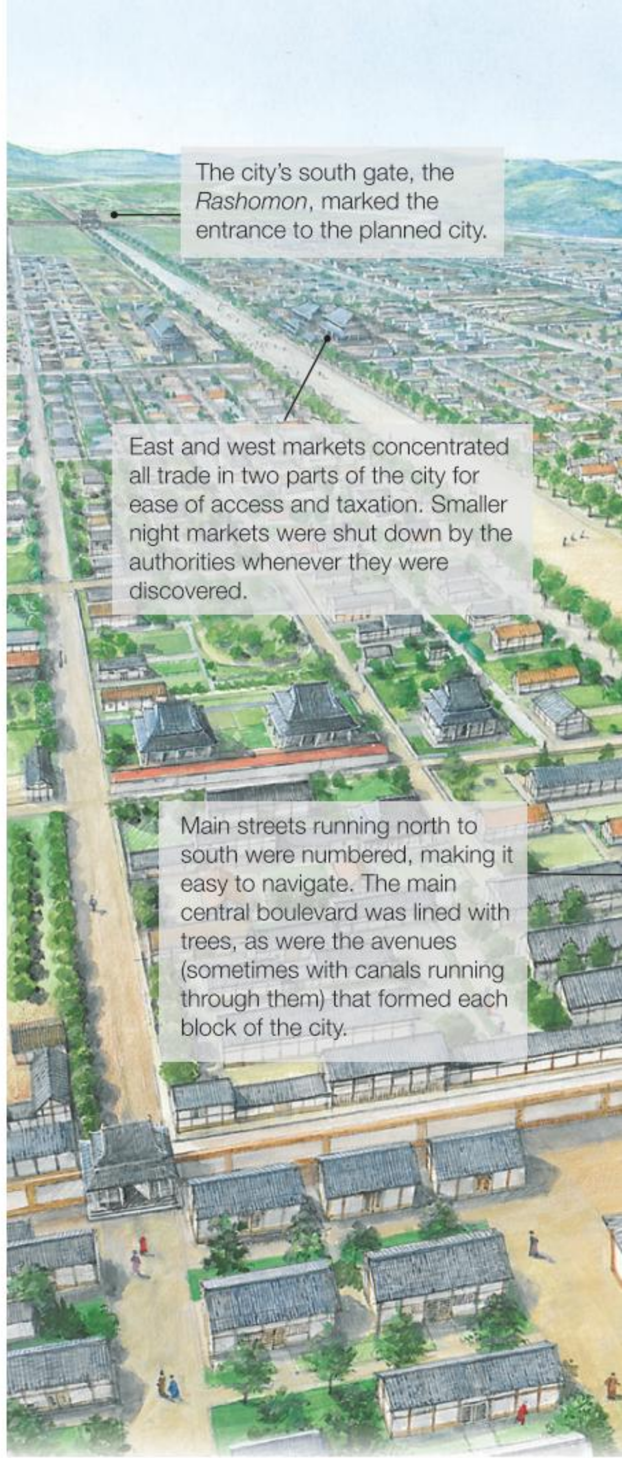
After the death of Emperor Kammu in 806 CE, a series of weaker emperors ruled over Japan. Their reigns resulted in the central government becoming increasingly removed from the daily governing of the provinces.

Outside the city of Heian-Kyo, the emperor's power and control grew weaker. Lords who had been granted permission by the emperor to own and administer large rural estates – called *shoen* – became more and more powerful. Originally, *shoen* were plots of land given to Buddhist monks to grow rice crops on, without paying tax to the emperor. Later on, emperors began granting *shoen* to nobles and officials as a reward for loyal service. Over time, the noble families who owned the *shoen* became increasingly wealthy and powerful, because they not only controlled the land (which was still tax free), but also collected taxes from the peasants living on it.

These noble families built up their own private armies in order to protect and police their *shoen*. The armies were led by generals known as **shoguns** and were made up of warriors called **samurai**. Eventually, the emperor began to depend on these private armies for support. This process marked the beginning of shogun rule in Japan.

shoguns
chief military commanders of Japan between the twelfth and nineteenth centuries; shoguns dictated how the country would be ruled; their positions became hereditary during the Ieyasu shogunate

samurai
a Japanese medieval warrior; the word 'samurai' means 'one who serves'



Source 7 The city of Heian-Kyo was built as the new capital of Japan by Emperor Kammu.

The city of Heian-Kyo

Heian-Kyo was a planned city (see Source 7), established in 794 CE by Emperor Kammu. It went on to serve as the official capital of Japan for the next 1000 years. Today it is known as Kyoto.

15.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the Japanese rulers mentioned in this topic and list them in chronological order.

2 In your own words, **define** a *shoen*.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the role of the Yamato supreme leader, and how people showed him their loyalty.

4 **Explain** how the Yamato clan changed the way Japanese society was organised.

5 **Summarise** why historians contest the existence of Emperor Jimmu.

6 **Explain** how the system of granting *shoen* to nobles eventually weakened the power of the emperor.

Analyse

7 **Examine** Source 7.

a List three activities that took place in the Imperial Palace.

b Identify where the nobles lived.

Apply

8 Prince Shotoku was a key figure in establishing a centralised government. Using the 5Rs (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit'), **evaluate** Shotoku's significance.

9 **Create** a flowchart showing how the death of Emperor Kammu led to the rise of the shoguns.

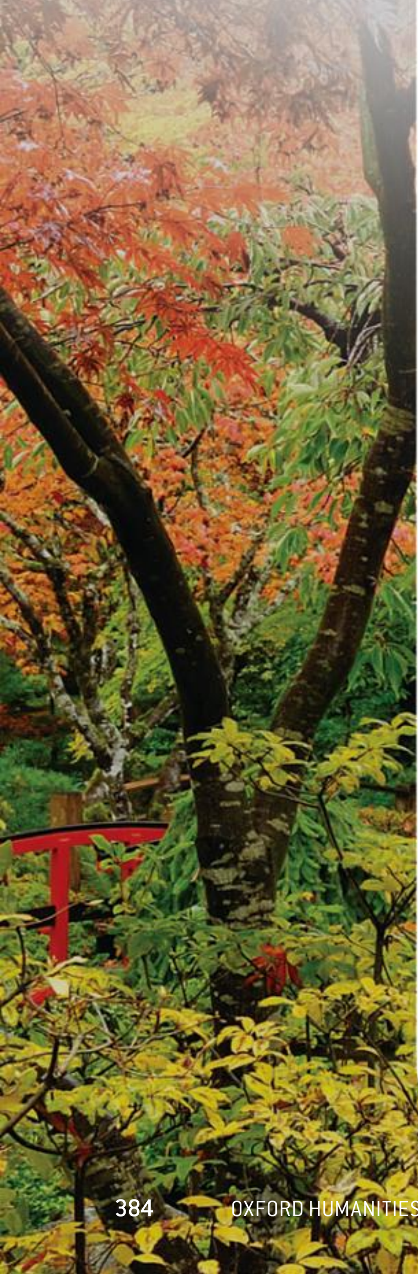
15A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Religious beliefs

Religion has long been an important part of life for Japanese people, and has had significant influence on the social and political structures of Japan.

Shinto is the oldest religion in Japan and was a part of early clan life. During the rule of the emperors, Buddhism and Confucianism were also introduced to Japanese society from neighbouring China. Prince Shotoku was a keen follower of Buddhism, and had many Buddhist temples built throughout Japan during his rule. As a result, Buddhism quickly became the religion of the ruling class. Today, Shinto and Buddhism are still the most significant belief systems in Japan.



Source 8 The Japanese garden at Melbourne Zoo

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Summarising your research

In history, you will often be asked to research a topic and summarise your findings. A summary is a short overview of key points that you gather from your research. By researching, you might look closely at sources, visit the library or search on the internet.

It can be difficult to work out which parts of your research are relevant or important. A good way to do this is to identify two or three key themes that each source has in common.

Follow the steps below when summarising important information from written sources:

Step 1 Conduct research on your topic. Make sure you look for a range of sources written by a variety of different people. This will help you avoid bias.

Step 2 Begin by reading one source. At this stage, do not annotate or highlight it – just read it to make sure you understand what is being said.

Step 3 Read the text again. In the margin, highlight and annotate some of the key themes that are being communicated by the writer.

Step 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each of the sources you have found in your research. Look for similar themes to those you found in the first source.

Step 5 From your annotations, pick the most important points that are required for the reader to gain a clear understanding of the topic you are researching.

Step 6 Write your summary. Use your own words to briefly outline the overall argument. Set yourself a word limit before writing your summary, and aim to stick to it.

Source 9 This text describes Shinto, one of the three different religions worshipped in feudal Japan. Some highlights and annotations are included to help guide you through step 3 of the process.

The roots of Japan's traditional Shinto religion (meaning 'the way of the gods') were laid down thousands of years ago. Followers of Shinto believe in a number of different gods and sacred ancestor spirits known as *kami*. Like many other ancient peoples, the early Japanese believed that all natural things were alive. *Kami* took the form of things and concepts important to life, such as the sun, hills, lakes, mountains, rivers, trees and fertility. The sun goddess, Amaterasu, was considered Shinto's most important *kami*. According to Shinto, people are also believed to become *kami* after they die. They are then worshipped by their families.

Shinto is a belief system that has a positive, uplifting view of life on Earth. People are considered to be basically good. Evil spirits are seen to be responsible for the bad things that happen. Consequently, many Shinto rituals are aimed at warding off evil spirits through purification, prayers and offerings to *kami*. Shrines for worshipping *kami* are found across Japan, and in some homes, small family altars hold offerings of *sake* (rice wine) and food.

Key theme: Origins and structure

Key theme: Beliefs

Key theme: Worship and ritual

Practise the skill

1 Follow the steps in the key skill box to **summarise** how Shinto religion was observed in feudal Japan. Try to keep to a limit of 100 words. Make sure you write the summary in your own words.

2 Share your summary with a partner and **discuss** the similarities and/or differences in what you both felt were the important points.

3 Log onto your obook pro. Two more texts are available for you to practise **summarising:** one on Confucianism and one on Buddhism. Follow steps 1 to 6 for each piece of text.

Extend your understanding

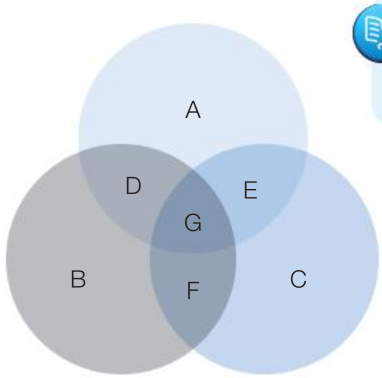
1 **Create** a Venn diagram with three circles (see Source 10) to compare the similarities and differences between the three belief systems of feudal Japan: Shinto, Buddhism and Confucianism.

2 **Investigate** the idea of Zen and how it has influenced the development of Japanese garden and interior design.

a Find an image of a Zen garden or a Zen room. Annotate the Zen features that make it a calm place to meditate.

b Design your own Zen garden or room. Perhaps you could design a Zen classroom!

Additional resource
Printable text on Confucianism and Buddhism



Source 10 A Venn diagram comparing three things

15.4 The shogunates

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain the change in political leadership under the shoguns
- explain the role of the *daimyo* in ending the Ashikaga Shogunate.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the shogunates

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Sequencing the rulers of Japan during the Shogunate era

As the power of the emperor and the Imperial Court began to weaken, the heads of Japan's noble families became increasingly powerful people. Because they were able to tax the peasants working on their *shoen* and sell the crops the peasants grew without paying tax to the emperor (see page 380), they also became extremely wealthy.

The emergence of a warrior class

Until the end of the twelfth century, Japan was ruled by the emperor and his government from the Imperial Palace in Kyoto. The decisions made by the emperor were very heavily influenced by members of the Fujiwara clan (who were trusted advisers at court). However, the emperor's government focused almost completely on life and affairs in the capital, and failed to pay attention to the rural provinces. Because of this, from about the tenth century onwards, a new warrior class emerged to provide order and control in the provinces that the emperor had neglected.

By the middle of the twelfth century, two powerful clans controlled most of Japan: the Taira and the Minamoto. These clans became particularly influential through supporting factions (interest groups) at the emperor's court. In addition to this, they controlled large armies of samurai. Over the next 25 years, the Taira and Minamoto clans fought for control over Heian-Kyo and the emperor. By 1185, the Minamoto clan had captured Kyoto and defeated the Taira.

After the defeat, the leader of the Minamoto clan, Minamoto no Yoritomo, allowed the emperor to retain his title, but stripped him of any authority to rule over the people of Japan. Japan was now to be ruled by a military dictator known as a shogun, and the government formed under the ruling family was called the **shogunate**. This event marked the beginning of about 700 years of shogun rule in Japan (see Source 1).

shogunate
the government controlled by the shogun

daimyo
a feudal lord of Japan who was a large landowner, and offered his loyalty and service to the shogun

seppuku
a form of ritual suicide common among Japanese samurai who felt they had been dishonoured; this involved self-disembowelling (cutting open the belly)

Source 1 The rulers of Japan during the Shogunate era

Ruling family	Time	Capital city	Period
Kamakura shogunate	1185 (officially recognised 1192) to 1333	Kamakura	Kamakura
Imperial family (the emperor briefly regains power)	1333 to 1336	Kyoto	Kemmu restoration
Ashikaga shogunate	1336 to 1573	Kyoto	Muromachi
Shogun Nobunaga	1573 to 1582	Azuchi	Azuchi–Momoyama
Shogun Hideyoshi	1582 to 1598	Kyoto	Azuchi–Momoyama
Tokugawa shogunate	1603 to 1868	Edo (Tokyo)	Tokugawa (or Edo)

Note: The Azuchi–Momoyama period takes its name from a combination of castle names: Azuchi Castle (Nobunaga's base) and Momoyama Castle (Hideyoshi's base).

MINAMOTO NO YORITOMO

I am Minamoto no Yoritomo. In 1185, I formed a military government in Kamakura. People thought it was temporary, but when the emperor died in 1192, I forced the Imperial Court to recognise my position as Seii Tai-shogun ('Barbarian-subduing great general'). I ruled on the emperor's behalf, and all nobles had to obey me.

I introduced a feudal system across Japan and appointed my key supporters as military governors of the provinces. These *daimyo* were granted land and were responsible for collecting taxes in their region. They, in turn, gave parts of this land to their samurai in return for their military support.

EMPEROR GO-DAIGO

In 1333, I, Emperor Go-Daigo, was able to gain the support of discontented samurai who felt their elders had not been rewarded properly for their service in defeating the Mongols. They overthrew the Kamakura shogunate, promising loyalty to me. Unfortunately my power was short-lived as Ashikaga Takauji, a once loyal general, seized power for himself.

ASHIKAGA TAKAUJI

I, Ashikaga Takauji, moved the capital back to Kyoto and built a new palace in the Muromachi district. Hence, this time is referred to as the 'Muromachi period'. There was a focus on the arts and theatre, and boosting the adoption of Zen Buddhism.

I expanded the authority of the *daimyo*. They now had responsibility for military decisions, policing, the law, and economic and taxation matters. At first, this decision increased the power of the Ashikaga shogunate, mainly because it had a number of strong leaders in charge. However, as weaker shoguns came to power, the Ashikaga shogunate lost control. For the next few decades, from 1467 to 1573, Japan fell into a permanent state of civil war called the 'Warring States period'. My shogunate's power diminished.

ODA NOBUNAGA

In 1573, after a century of civil war across Japan, it took a warrior like myself, Oda Nobunaga, to control Kyoto and become the new shogun. Ruling until 1582, I centralised political power in Kyoto again and removed any disloyal *daimyo*.

A military man, I reorganised the army into separate divisions of cavalry and foot soldiers, and equipped them all with guns. My army proved to be an undefeatable force against more traditional samurai armies, bringing one-third of Japan under my control. I committed *seppuku* in 1582, on the verge of defeat, after one of my generals rebelled against me.

TOYOTOMI HIDEYOSHI

I am Toyotomi Hideyoshi. In 1582 I became the new shogun and continued the process of reunification in Japan, gaining control of the islands Shikoku and Kyushu. Despite being the son of a peasant, I was a great believer in a strict class system, and forbade farmers from carrying swords and samurai from engaging in trade. I was killed in 1603 during a failed invasion of Korea.

Source 2 Some of the key shoguns and leaders during the Shogunate era

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

Mongol invasions of Japan

One of the most significant events during the Kamakura shogunate was Kublai Khan's attempted conquest of Japan. Having already conquered China and Korea, the Mongol leader Kublai Khan (grandson of Genghis Khan) planned an invasion of Japan. Kublai Khan wanted to bring Japan under his control in order to expand his empire and **plunder** their treasures.

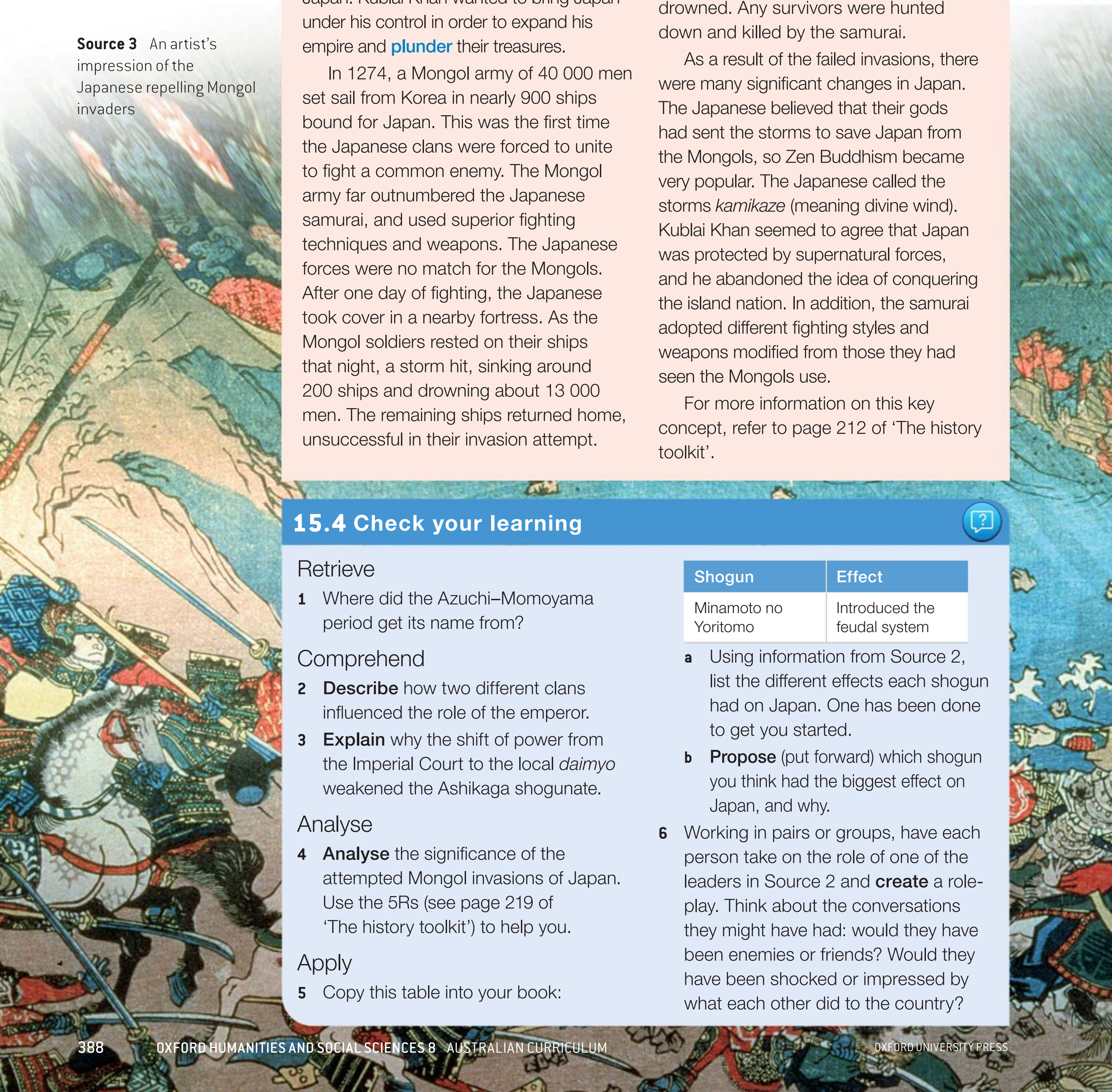
In 1274, a Mongol army of 40 000 men set sail from Korea in nearly 900 ships bound for Japan. This was the first time the Japanese clans were forced to unite to fight a common enemy. The Mongol army far outnumbered the Japanese samurai, and used superior fighting techniques and weapons. The Japanese forces were no match for the Mongols. After one day of fighting, the Japanese took cover in a nearby fortress. As the Mongol soldiers rested on their ships that night, a storm hit, sinking around 200 ships and drowning about 13 000 men. The remaining ships returned home, unsuccessful in their invasion attempt.

Seven years later, in 1281, a second Mongol fleet returned, determined to conquer Japan. It was much larger, with 4000 ships carrying approximately 140 000 soldiers. Once again, as Mongol soldiers prepared to attack the Japanese, a massive storm hit. It wrecked the Mongol ships, and most Mongol soldiers drowned. Any survivors were hunted down and killed by the samurai.

As a result of the failed invasions, there were many significant changes in Japan. The Japanese believed that their gods had sent the storms to save Japan from the Mongols, so Zen Buddhism became very popular. The Japanese called the storms *kamikaze* (meaning divine wind). Kublai Khan seemed to agree that Japan was protected by supernatural forces, and he abandoned the idea of conquering the island nation. In addition, the samurai adopted different fighting styles and weapons modified from those they had seen the Mongols use.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 212 of 'The history toolkit'.

plunder
to steal, often using violent force



Source 3 An artist's impression of the Japanese repelling Mongol invaders

15.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Where did the Azuchi–Momoyama period get its name from?

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how two different clans influenced the role of the emperor.

3 **Explain** why the shift of power from the Imperial Court to the local *daimyo* weakened the Ashikaga shogunate.

Analyse

4 **Analyse** the significance of the attempted Mongol invasions of Japan. Use the 5Rs (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit') to help you.

Apply

5 Copy this table into your book:

Shogun	Effect
Minamoto no Yoritomo	Introduced the feudal system

a Using information from Source 2, list the different effects each shogun had on Japan. One has been done to get you started.

b **Propose** (put forward) which shogun you think had the biggest effect on Japan, and why.

6 Working in pairs or groups, have each person take on the role of one of the leaders in Source 2 and **create** a role-play. Think about the conversations they might have had: would they have been enemies or friends? Would they have been shocked or impressed by what each other did to the country?

15.5 Significant individual: Tokugawa Ieyasu

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the role and achievements of Tokugawa Ieyasu
- summarise the legacy of Tokugawa Ieyasu.

Tokugawa Ieyasu (1542–1616) was the founder of the Tokugawa shogunate that lasted almost three centuries. His successful military career spanned six decades, and enabled him to enforce his control over all facets of life in Japan. After years of civil war, Ieyasu was declared the shogun in 1603. This brought stability, unification and peace to the country.

Early life

Ieyasu grew up during the Warring States period in Japan. This was a time of great upheaval and division throughout the country. He was separated from his mother when he was two years old, and at the age of five, his father – a *daimyo* – sent him away as a hostage to the powerful Imagawa clan. During the journey to this new family, Ieyasu was captured by another rival clan and held prisoner for two years. He was finally released to the Imagawa when he was seven, after his father was murdered by a close **vassal** in 1549.

vassal
a person who offered his loyalty and service to a lord in return for his protection and the granting of land

As a teenager, Ieyasu received extensive military training from the Imagawa. He became a lieutenant for the clan leader, Imagawa Yoshimoto. Ieyasu developed a love of falconry, was married and had the first of several sons. In 1560, Yoshimoto was killed, so Ieyasu returned to his hometown to assume control over the family castle.

Military career

As the head of his family, Ieyasu formed a strategic alliance with Shogun Oda Nobunaga. This meant that Ieyasu was able to guarantee the safety of his family's castle, while also building his own army. In time, he became an important *daimyo* (see Source 4). As an ally of the shogun, Ieyasu distanced himself from the civil war that was still ongoing in Japan. Instead, he devoted his time to formulating policies in administration, taxation and legal matters within his local domain.

Source 4 A woodblock print of Tokugawa Ieyasu as a warrior *daimyo*, *c.* seventeenth century

When Shogun Nobunaga died in 1582, he was succeeded by Toyotomi Hideyoshi, who saw Ieyasu as a major rival. To avoid conflict, Ieyasu vowed to be loyal to the new shogun. In 1589, he showed this loyalty by assisting Hideyoshi in defeating a major *daimyo* clan – the Hojo – who held a large territory on the coast. As a reward, Hideyoshi gave Ieyasu the former Hojo territory, and Ieyasu moved his large army there – to a small fishing village called Edo (modern-day Tokyo).

Avoiding further conflict, Ieyasu focused on strengthening and growing Edo (see Source 5). Notably, he undertook engineering projects, including developing a water supply system and improving food supplies for the army. Ieyasu imposed taxes on the people, and confiscated all weapons from peasants to avoid any revolts.

Source 5 An artist's impression of Edo Castle in the seventeenth century

Tokugawa Ieyasu's achievements as shogun
Introducing laws that limited the emperor's powers – these laws meant that the emperor had no power to make court appointments, and was restricted to focusing on poetry, scholarship and costumes of the imperial family
Establishing a feudal system – all *daimyo* had to swear allegiance to the shogun who redistributed their land; each *daimyo* managed their own *han* (feudal domain)
Imposing laws on all *daimyo* that required them to reside in Edo with their families and only retain one castle – this centralised power and reduced disputes over time
Controlling a quarter of the countryside and earning an income from a 40% tax on the harvests collected
Building the largest castle in the world in Edo, with a network of moats, stone walls, huge gatehouses, fireproof warehouses of rice and the *daimyo's* mansion; Edo became a busy town and port
Controlling an army of over 150 000 men and a navy with thousands of ships

Source 6 Ieyasu introduced many new laws and policies to ensure his position was strong, unchallenged and permanent.

When Shogun Hideyoshi died, Ieyasu's army was the strongest in Japan (at almost 89 000 men).

Hideyoshi's soldiers triumphed against the army of another *daimyo* at the Battle of Sekigahara in October 1600, which was one of the most important battles in the history of feudal Japan, and the last major internal conflict in the country.

Ieyasu stripped all land from *daimyo* who opposed him, and allocated it to his allies in return for their loyalty. In 1603, the emperor elevated Ieyasu to shogun.

Shogun of Japan

At the age of 60, Shogun Ieyasu introduced many new laws and policies to ensure his position was strong, unchallenged and permanent (see Source 6). After two years, he introduced the hereditary aspect of the position of shogun by retiring and passing the title to his son, Hidetada. However, he remained a key adviser (see Source 7) and was responsible for foreign affairs.

Source 7

The strong manly ones in life are those who understand the meaning of the word patience. Patience means restraining one's inclinations. There are seven emotions: joy, anger, anxiety, adoration, grief, fear, and hate, and if a man does not give way to these he can be called patient. I am not as strong as I might be, but I have long known and practised patience. And if my descendants wish to be as I am, they must study patience.

Quote from Ieyasu, who turned to scholarship as a retired shogun, providing great insight into leadership

Ieyasu welcomed trade with the Dutch, Portuguese and English. Through this trade, Edo acquired new goods and information. Christian missionaries had also asked to grow Christianity within Japan. However, by 1612 Ieyasu saw Christianity as a threat to the shogun's power and introduced laws to ban Christian worship.

Despite introducing so many laws, Ieyasu did not feel his family was secure. The son of the previous shogun, Hideyoshi, was growing up in a great castle at Osaka and becoming a threat. By 1614, Ieyasu was an old warrior, but he mobilised an army to attack Osaka and remove his last rival in Japan.

Source 8 A statue of Ieyasu at Toshogu Shrine, Nikko

Legacy

In 1616, Ieyasu fell ill and died. He left a strong family lineage and lasting peace in Japan. He accomplished the kind of leadership that warriors before him had been attempting for over a century. According to his wishes, he was honoured as a Buddhist deity at the Toshogu Shrine in Nikko. The shrine records his words of wisdom: 'One who treats difficulties as the normal state of affairs will never be discontented ... Harm will befall one who knows only success and has never experienced failure.'

The Tokugawa shogunate established by Ieyasu lasted until 1868 and is more commonly referred to as the Edo period. Historians describe it as a time of economic growth and strict social order, where arts and culture flourished. Perhaps most significantly, war and conflict were at a minimum.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Tokugawa Ieyasu

15.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Read Source 7. **Define** the meaning of 'patience', according to Tokugawa Ieyasu.

2 **Summarise** two strategies Tokugawa Ieyasu used to keep his power as *daimyo* under two different shoguns.

Comprehend

3 **Describe** the personality traits of Tokugawa Ieyasu. How do you think he was perceived by the population?

4 How do you think Ieyasu's childhood affected the rest of his life?

5 **Summarise** the legacy of Tokugawa Ieyasu.

Apply

6 **Examine** Source 4.

a Describe the features that highlight Tokugawa Ieyasu's status as a warrior lord.

b Research the clothing, accessories and symbols worn by shoguns and *daimyo* in Shogunate Japan. Design your own warrior outfit and annotate the features you include.

7 Read Source 6. With a partner, **discuss** how each of Ieyasu's achievements helped him to maintain the shogunate. Copy and complete the table below to rank them, from most important to least important. If you do not agree on the order, then debate your reasons.

Rank	Achievement	Reasons
1		
2		
3		

15.6 Social groups in Shogunate Japan

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the social structure in Shogunate Japan and the relationship between social classes.

hierarchy
a social structure that organises people with the most important group on top, and others ranked beneath in decreasing order of importance

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on social groups in Shogunate Japan

Interactive
Social groups in Shogunate Japan

Key skill worksheet
Using historical sources: Analysing a source on social order

Feudalism was a system for organising groups of people within society. Like the system in place across much of medieval Europe, feudalism in Japan classified social groups in order of importance. Each of these groups had certain rights (that is, things they could expect, such as protection) and responsibilities (that is, work they had to perform in return, such as military service or farming). A person's position in this **hierarchy** was determined at birth and was strictly defined. People knew what was expected of them and were not able to move between social classes. There were even restrictions on the levels of interaction allowed between certain groups.

Although feudalism was first introduced in Japan under the rule of Minamoto no Yoritomo, who was named the first shogun in 1192, it became stronger during the Tokugawa shogunate (1603–1868).

Source 9 The social structure of Shogunate Japan

The emperor
The emperor of Japan was regarded as the spiritual and symbolic head of the country and descended from the gods. From 1185 onwards, however, the emperor had no real power and his role was mainly ceremonial. He was still seen as the head of state and was expected to officially give the shogun his title and right to rule. The emperor lived in the Imperial Palace in Kyoto.

The shogun
The shogun was the emperor's leading general. Between 1185 and 1868, shoguns formed their own governments and controlled Japan. As well as commanding the military, shoguns ran the everyday affairs of the country and were responsible for collecting taxes.

Daimyo
Daimyo were regional landowners allowed to rule provinces in return for providing loyalty and military support to the shogun. While the shogun owned 25 per cent of the land, the rest of the land was divided into 275 regions ruled by different *daimyo*. The shogun's authority depended on the loyalty of these *daimyo*. Each *daimyo* controlled a private army made up of samurai warriors that were made available to the shogun when needed. Each *daimyo* depended on the loyalty of his samurai, together with the labour, taxes and military assistance of the peasants living in his province, in order to hold power.

Samurai
Samurai were warriors who swore allegiance and loyalty to their *daimyo*. They wore plain, dark clothes bearing a clan crest so they could be easily identified. Male samurai wore two swords denoting their warrior status. Female samurai would also train in martial arts such as archery. (More information on samurai is provided in the next topic.)

Peasants
Peasants were the largest single group in Japanese society, making up around 80 per cent of the population. Most peasants were farmers, but this group also included woodcutters, fishermen and mine workers. Unlike European peasants, peasants in Japan were given a higher rank than merchants and craftspeople, because it was believed that they performed an essential and important role in society – that is, producing food on which everyone depended. Despite this higher status, peasants lived a harsh life.

Craftspeople and merchants
Craftspeople were those who made goods and tools, including sword smiths, printers, boatbuilders and carpenters. Craftspeople received less official respect than peasants because, according to Confucian thought, people could live without the goods they made. Merchants lived by trading and transporting goods, lending money and running shops. They were given little respect because it was considered that they produced nothing useful themselves, only profited from the hard work of others. Merchants tended to live in the larger towns and cities and, despite their low status, they could be very wealthy.

Outcasts
At the bottom of the social ladder were two outcast groups – the *eta* and the *hinin*. The *eta* ('much filth') performed tasks such as butchery, leatherwork, or burials that involved the handling of dead people or animals. The *hinin* ('non-persons') were undesirables, such as street-cleaners, ex-convicts and actors.

15.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 In your own words, **describe** how the feudal system was organised in Japan.
2 **Describe** the rights that each *daimyo* received from the shogun, and what responsibilities he had in return.
3 **Explain** why Japanese craftspeople and merchants were seen as being lower on the social hierarchy than peasant farmers.

Apply

4 Imagine you had the opportunity to interview a person from each of the social groups described in this topic. Write three questions for a person in each social group that would help you to gather information about their lives and experiences as a member of that group.

15.7 Women in Shogunate Japan

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the role of women in feudal Japan.

Women were seen as less important than men in Shogunate Japan. They had few freedoms and were mainly responsible for the household.

Most historical sources are written by or about men, which means there is only limited information regarding the role of women in Shogunate Japan. There is, however, some evidence that they were allowed to inherit property and could move around freely under certain shoguns.

Marriage and everyday life for the higher classes

An upper-class girl's education involved learning domestic duties and some academic disciplines, such as reading, writing, history, counting and philosophy.

To increase a family's social status and wealth, it was common practice for daughters to be married into families of higher status. Women had no say in this arrangement and were expected to obey their husband and father-in-law once married. If a woman became a widow, she was not allowed to remarry.

Two women became empresses during the Edo period, but women have been legally excluded from the throne since 1869.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on women in Shogunate Japan

Source 10

> The five worst maladies that afflict the female mind are: indocility, discontent, slander, jealousy, and silliness. Without any doubt, these five maladies infest seven or eight out of every ten women, and it is from these that arises the inferiority of women to men. A woman should cure them by self-inspection and self-reproach.
>
> Extract from Confucian scholar Kaibara Ekken (1630–1714)

See, think, wonder *

Look at Source 11.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Source 11 A Japanese painting of a samurai woman defeating a man

Women of the warrior classes

Most women learnt some combat skills in order to defend their home during wartime. Some women could train to become an *onna-bugeisha* (female martial artist) or samurai. Samurai women were highly sought-after due to their bravery and loyalty. It was very rare for them to fight on the battlefield; instead, their role was to defend towns and villages in times of need.

Geisha culture

Geishas were performing artists who were trained in music and dance. Training began during childhood, when a young girl would live in an *okiya* (training house). There, she learnt musical instruments, traditional dances, poetry and the art of entertaining conversation.

geishas
Japanese women trained to entertain men with conversation, dancing and singing

Geishas provided light entertainment to guests. They were highly respected for their skills, femininity and wealth. They walked with the utmost elegance, wearing a draped kimono, platform shoes and striking make-up. This included a white powdered face, blackened teeth, small red lips, and red and black eye make-up.

A geisha was expected to continue training throughout her life. Geishas earned money, but it was often given back to their *okiya*.

Source 12 A staged photo portraying the type of peasant dress worn in Shogunate Japan, *c.* 1880

Peasant women

Women in the lower classes enjoyed greater freedoms in life. They would work on the farms, or as servants for the rich and look after their children. Wives of artisans or labourers could assist with their husband's business. These women were able to spend the money they earned more freely than other women, and they were also allowed more freedom to choose who they married.

Japanese tea ceremony

The ritual of tea-making was introduced during the twelfth century by a Buddhist monk who established a specific way to prepare tea, by mixing matcha – a powdered green tea – with hot water. Tea came to be seen as a status symbol among the male warrior class.

By the sixteenth century, drinking tea was so treasured that a ceremony evolved. Every tea ceremony included the principles of harmony, respect, purity and tranquillity.

During the Edo period, tea ceremonies were reserved for upper-class men.

However, after the Meiji restoration in 1868 (see topic 15.13), geishas underwent training in tea ceremonies. Young women were also expected to study it to be eligible for marriage. This was a significant change in the gender roles of tea-making, which continues today.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Source 13 A modern-day geisha performing a Japanese tea ceremony

15.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 How could marriage be used to advance a family's social status?

2 **Name** one way in which peasant women had more freedom than women from higher social classes.

Comprehend

3 Read Source 10 carefully.

- **a** Identify the intended audience for this extract. **Explain** why you think this is the case.
- **b** Identify the purpose of this extract. **Explain** why you think this is the case.
- **c** Identify the tone of the author. What values do you think they might hold? **Explain** why you think this.
- **d** In a paragraph, **summarise** how useful this extract is in understanding views on a woman's place in Shogunate Japan. Use your answers from questions 3a–c to help form your response.

Apply

4 **Evaluate** the freedom of women in Shogunate Japan. Remember, when you evaluate something you should talk about its strengths and weaknesses. Be sure to give your overall opinion. Think about the level of freedom women had in education, marriage and work.

5 **Investigate** a female Japanese samurai. Write a paragraph about her achievements. Include a description of the image and its portrayal of her.

15.8 The life of a samurai

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the way of life for a samurai living under the shoguns.

All *daimyo* had armies of samurai. The samurai played a key role in Japanese society during the Edo period (1603–1868).

Each samurai warrior was expected to live and die by a set of rules. During the Edo period, the training for every samurai began at the age of five. Young samurai learned fighting and military skills, as well as reading, writing, calligraphy, etiquette and public service. By the age of 15, the samurai had finished their training.

The *bushido* code

bushido
the code of behaviour of the Japanese samurai warrior that required honour, loyalty (even to death), good living, thrift and martial arts skills

Samurai lived under a strict code of behaviour known as ***bushido*** (meaning 'the way of the warrior'). This code was based on honour, loyalty, respect and discipline (see Source 14). During training, samurai were expected to withstand many physical challenges, such as walking barefoot through snow or going for long periods without food. According to *bushido*, every samurai's first duty was to honour and obey his master. If a samurai was defeated in battle, captured by the enemy, or dishonoured in any way, the code required him to commit ritual suicide – an act known as *seppuku*. It was believed that by taking his own life in this way, the samurai and his family would be spared public shame and disgrace.

Elements of the *bushido* code

- **Benevolence** – showing kindness towards others and those in need
- **Readiness** – mental and physical health; being ready for action
- **Organisation** – efficiency in all things
- **Respect** – to others, to parents, to their ancestors and lords
- **Fidelity** – always doing the right thing and following others

Source 14 The *bushido* code was based on honour, loyalty, respect and discipline.

Weapons and armour

Samurai armour was created by lacing together small pieces of leather and iron using silk thread. Together, these pieces were like fish scales – creating armour that was flexible and easy to fight in, and weighed as little as 10 kilograms. This armour was decorated so that others could identify the person wearing it.

Each samurai had both a long sword and a short sword. Swords became a symbol of honour and status during the Edo period, as no other groups in Japanese society (other than the shogun and *daimyo*) were allowed to carry them. If a samurai lost his sword, it was considered a great loss of honour. If the samurai was dishonoured, he was also expected to use the short sword to commit *seppuku*. Most samurai also carried bows and arrows.

Source 15 A samurai's sword became a symbol of his status and honour.

Warfare

In early samurai traditions, warfare took place in the open and there were strict rules governing how battles were fought. The opposing sides would agree where and when each battle was to take place. Once the armies were lined up facing each other, a single samurai would move forward from each side to issue a challenge. The pair talked of their strength and of the power of their ancestors. They then fired an arrow at each other. It was only then that the two samurai moved in to fight.

Each samurai would cut off the heads of those he killed on the battlefield and present them to the *daimyo*. In later wars, samurai stopped removing enemy heads and simply collected noses, as they were easier to carry.

During the Warring States period in the 1500s, the size of samurai armies increased from thousands to tens of thousands. Military tactics also developed during this period, with armies organised into troops. Samurai rode on horseback, but commoners could join the armies as foot soldiers. With the increased use of guns, the samurai began to adopt more European-style group warfare, as well as siege warfare.

The peaceful Edo period began in 1603, and meant the samurai had nobody to fight. As a result, the shogun began to reduce the number of samurai being trained, and many samurai took up administrative positions.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the life of the samurai

Writing a historical description

Historical descriptions pull out the main characteristics of a historical source and 'paint a picture' in words for the reader. Because of this, writing historical descriptions is an important skill for all historians to master.

Look at the two images in Source 16. Compare the samurai and the medieval knight, using the annotations to assist you in describing each painting.

Log onto your obook pro and complete the key skill worksheet 'Writing a historical description' to practise this skill.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Writing a historical description

Source 16 Paintings of a samurai (left) and a medieval knight (right); there were many similarities between the two warriors, but also some differences.

15.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the term *bushido*. List three qualities that were demanded under the *bushido* code.

2 What action was a samurai required to take if he was captured or defeated in battle?

Comprehend

3 In a short paragraph, **explain** the way of life for a samurai living under the shoguns.

Analyse

4 a **Compare** the images in Source 16. What are their similarities and differences?
b Which would be better in battle and why?

Apply

5 Using the information provided in this topic, together with information gathered on the internet, **create** a week-long training program for a young samurai who has recently been recruited at age five.

15.9 Towns and castles

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

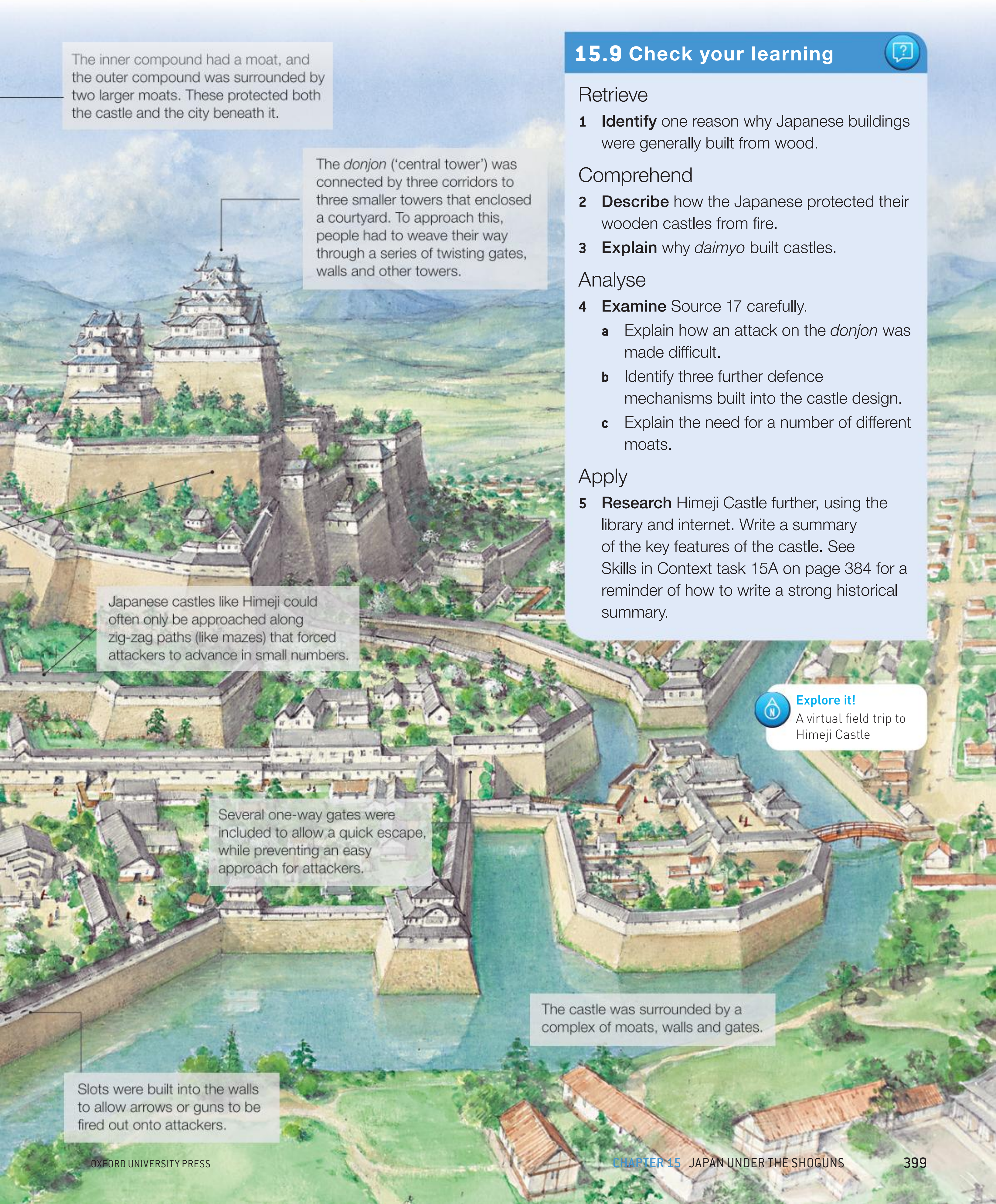
» understand the significance of castles in Shogunate Japan.

Most towns built across Japan during the rule of the shoguns were made from wood, as this was the most freely available material. Internal walls of buildings and houses were typically screens made of paper or light wood, and rooms were divided with sliding doors. Initially, towns and castles were surrounded by simple moats or wooden fences, but more complicated structures began to be built from the fourteenth century onwards.

By 1615, over 200 castles had been built all over Japan by *daimyo* who were eager to display their wealth and power. These castles were surrounded by homes belonging to the *daimyo,* his family, his samurai and other social groups. The *daimyo* and his samurai would often retreat to the castle tower when they were being attacked. When not under attack, many would live in the areas inside the outer walls in more comfortable homes.

Himeji Castle is located in the city of Himeji, 100 kilometres west of Osaka. Himeji Castle is often referred to as the 'White Heron Castle' because its bright white plaster walls and black woodwork resemble a bird taking flight. The castle sits at the top of a hill and its *donjon* (central tower) stands 46.4 metres above the ground. It has a complicated defence system, similar in many ways to a maze. When the castle was rebuilt in the seventeenth century, it incorporated the most up-to-date military technology of the period.

Source 17 An artist's impression of Himeji Castle



15.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** one reason why Japanese buildings were generally built from wood.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** how the Japanese protected their wooden castles from fire.

3 **Explain** why *daimyo* built castles.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 17 carefully.

a Explain how an attack on the *donjon* was made difficult.

b Identify three further defence mechanisms built into the castle design.

c Explain the need for a number of different moats.

Apply

5 **Research** Himeji Castle further, using the library and internet. Write a summary of the key features of the castle. See Skills in Context task 15A on page 384 for a reminder of how to write a strong historical summary.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Himeji Castle

15B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The Pillow Book

Sei Shonagon (*c.* 966–1017 CE) was a court lady during the Heian period. She kept a diary to express her thoughts and feelings. She called it her 'pillow book'.

This valuable source provides first-hand insights into life in the Imperial Court, which were not intended to be viewed by others. These include Shonagon's views about authorities, her descriptions of daily life, and her personal poems, ideas and essays.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Writing a source analysis

Source analysis is one of the most important skills that historians need to master. When presented with a source to analyse, begin by asking questions. The use of an acronym such as 'DAMMIT U' can make it easier to remember which questions to ask, and also how to structure your response.

Source 18 The 'DAMMIT U' acronym helps you to remember the questions you should ask yourself.

Feature	The questions you should ask when looking at sources
Date	When was the source created? Is it a primary or secondary source?
Author	Who is the author? Think about their gender, age, social status and profession. For example, they could be a historian, a leader, an aristocrat, a soldier or a prisoner.
Material	Is the source written, oral or visual? It could be a newspaper, letter, diary, photograph, textbook, online blog or tweet, or even statistics in the form of a graph or map.
Motive	Why did the author produce this source? What was its purpose? Was it for official government use, a religious affiliation, the media or personal reasons?
Intended audience	Who was the source produced for? Was it for academics or the general public? Was it intended to be viewed, or was it meant to be private?
Tone	How is the information in the source expressed? How does it make you feel?
Usefulness	What are the strengths and weaknesses of the source as a piece of evidence? Does it show a balanced opinion or a one-sided point of view?

Follow these steps to analyse a source:

Step 1 Look closely at the source and seek to answer the questions in Source 18.

Step 2 Begin writing your source analysis. The 'DAM' (date, author, material) can be summarised in about one to three sentences.

Step 3 Continue your source analysis by writing about the 'MIT' (motive, intended audience, tone) in a little more detail. You should provide examples from the source to support what you are saying in the 'MIT' section.

Step 4 Finish by talking about the 'U' (usefulness) of the source. Do this by discussing one strength or weakness of the source.

For more information on this skill, see page 208 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 19 An artist's impression of Sei Shonagon from the illustrated book *Collection of Pictures of Beauties*; historians believe this illustration was created around 1683.

Additional resource
Extracts from *The Pillow Book*

Source 20

> When I make myself imagine what it is like to be one of those women who live at home, faithfully serving their husbands – women who have not a single exciting prospect in life yet who believe that they are perfectly happy – I am filled with scorn … I cannot bear men who believe that women serving in the Palace are bound to be frivolous and wicked. Yet I suppose their prejudice is understandable. After all, women at Court do not spend their time hiding modestly behind fans and screens, but walk about, looking openly at people they chance to meet. Yet are the gentlemen themselves any less so? They are not exactly bashful when it comes to looking at the great people in the Palace. No, everyone at Court is much the same in this respect.
>
> Extract from *The Pillow Book*: On court life

Practise the skill

1. Copy the table from Source 18 into your book, but in place of the questions in column 2 write your observations and answers to them in response to Source 20.
2. Having now answered all of your questions, follow steps 2 to 4 to write a short paragraph **analysing** Source 20.
3. Log onto your obook pro to find more *The Pillow Book* extracts on which to practise. Follow steps 1 to 4.

Extend your understanding

1. **Describe** how a female living during Shogunate Japan may have felt about the regulations that authority figures imposed on them. Try to discuss both positive and negative aspects from their point of view. Present your description as your own *The Pillow Book* entry.
2. **Investigate** *The Pillow Book* on the internet. Find two extracts from *The Pillow Book* that you think are interesting. In small groups hold a discussion about *The Pillow Book*. Read each of your sources aloud and then explain why you chose them.

15.10 Changes to foreign policy

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain changes to foreign policy, including Japan's closure to foreigners under the Tokugawa Shogunate.

Under the rule of the shoguns, Japanese society, customs, arts and culture, and government policy changed in many ways. One of the most significant changes related to Japan's foreign policy.

Since the mid-1500s, Portuguese, Spanish, English and Dutch traders had been visiting Japan; however, during the Edo period (1603–1868), Japan's relationship with the outside world became strained. Although many *daimyo* wanted contact with foreigners – mainly to buy weapons and other products – the Tokugawa shoguns feared that the influence of the West would corrupt Japan. They put in place a policy to first limit, and then completely cut off contact between Japan and the West. This policy of isolation would bring about many changes in Japanese society.

Christian missionaries

The early Portuguese and Spanish traders brought missionaries with them who came to convert the Japanese to Christianity. Christianity spread rapidly in Japan, and by 1570 over 30 000 Japanese had become Christians.

Source 1 This painting by a Japanese artist shows Portuguese missionary Francis Xavier and his entourage arriving in Japan in 1547.

Though Christianity was allowed to grow until about 1620, Shogun Tokugawa Ieyasu soon began to see it as a real threat to the stability of the shogunate. It threatened Japanese society on several levels. For example, it called for loyalty and obedience to a foreign power – the Pope – before the shogun. Christian church congregations were also mixed, and allowed interaction between different social classes. This was frowned upon in Japanese society. Ieyasu eventually banned missionaries from Japan. Around 10 years later, another shogun by the name of Tokugawa Iemitsu took even stronger action. He began persecuting Christians from 1633 onwards, and finally outlawed Christianity altogether in 1637.

Foreign trade

Between 1603 and 1635, Ieyasu attempted to monitor and control trade with the outside world by putting a permit system in place. He issued 350 red-sealed permits for merchant ships. He then allocated these permits mainly to his favourite *daimyo* and to key merchants who were interested in foreign trade. Only 12 European and 11 China-based traders are known to have received permits; all other non-Japanese traders were refused. At this time, Japanese merchants mainly exported silver, copper, diamonds and swords, while Japan primarily imported silk from China, and sugar and deerskins from South-East Asia.

The shogun's red seal guaranteed the protection of the ships and allowed them to enter Japanese ports. Ieyasu vowed to pursue any pirate or nation that violated the seal.

The policy of isolation

When Shogun Tokugawa Iemitsu came to power in 1623, he wanted to limit contact between Japan and the outside world even further, because he believed that foreign influence was a threat to his rule. In 1633, he outlawed Western traders from stepping foot on mainland Japan, and also made it illegal for Japanese people to leave. Any Japanese person who did manage to leave and was then caught trying to return was sentenced to death. This policy was known as ***sakoku*** ('locked country'). It was an attempt to put a stop to Western influences (such as religion, philosophy and technology) on Japanese people. From 1633 until 1853, there was no trade with the outside world apart from some limited contact with China and the Netherlands through a small human-made island off the coast of mainland Japan called Dejima, which was heavily guarded.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes to foreign policy

sakoku
the name given to Japan's foreign policy during the Edo period that forbade any Japanese person from leaving Japan, or any foreigner from entering it; the penalty for disobeying was death

William Adams and the shogun

William Adams is a significant figure in the history of Japan. Adams was an Englishman who sailed with a Dutch fleet. In 1598, he anchored off the coast of the Japanese island of Kyushu. After a long and difficult voyage, only nine of his crew were fit enough to land. Following their arrival, Adams' crew were imprisoned because Portuguese missionaries on the island claimed they were pirates. Adams was questioned by the future shogun, Ieyasu, and struck up a relationship with him. In 1604, Adams was ordered by Ieyasu – who was now shogun – to help build Japan's first ship according to Western designs. The following year, a second ship was constructed.

By 1608, Adams was acting for Ieyasu, helping to establish relationships with traders in the Philippines. Over time, he became a personal adviser to Ieyasu.

Adams helped to establish a Dutch trading base in Hirado, Japan. He also encouraged the English in Indonesia to trade with Japan, helping establish the British East India Company in 1613. Thanks to Adams, the English gained a red seal that gave them the right to live, buy, sell and trade in Japan.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 2 In 1598, sailor and navigator William Adams (standing) was the first Englishman to visit Japan. He was initially imprisoned as a suspected pirate, but was freed after building two ships for Tokugawa Ieyasu (seated, second from left).

15.10 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why were many *daimyo* interested in trading with foreign countries?

Comprehend

2 By 1620, Christianity had come to be considered a threat to Japanese society. **Summarise** the steps that led to this.

3 **Explain** the significance of William Adams. What skills and technology did the Japanese learn from him?

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 2. What evidence does this source present that Adams was well treated and that the Japanese attitude towards outsiders was changing?

Apply

5 **Evaluate** the policy of *sakoku*. Remember, when you evaluate something you should talk about its strengths and weaknesses, and also give your overall opinion of it.

15.11 Changes to cities and the environment

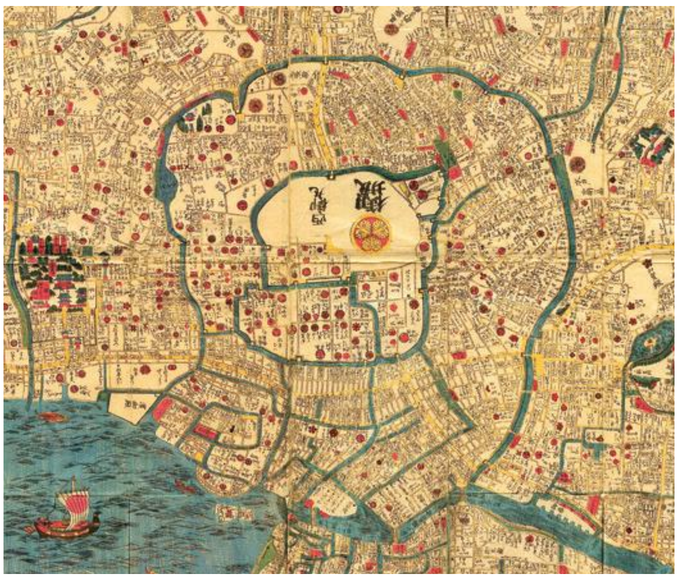
Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the impact of population expansion on natural resources.

When the Tokugawa shogunate began its rule in 1603, it ended the conflict of the previous four centuries. The Tokugawa (or Edo) period brought 250 years of stability to Japan. The shogun had national authority, and his *daimyo* had regional authority. In response to this stability and peace, Edo became an economic and cultural hub.

However, the expansion of the city of Edo started to push Japan to its ecological limits. With a booming population and limited resources, the people were required to develop a more sustainable way of life.



Source 3 A map of the city of Edo (with Edo Castle shown in the centre), drawn around 1844

Source 4 A satellite image of Edo Castle today

The development of Edo

After coming to power in 1603, Shogun Tokugawa Ieyasu began a period of rapid development in the city of Edo – particularly the building of Edo Castle. Canals were dug to deliver clean water and to drain marshland. During the peak period of Edo's development, there were over 150 kilometres of water pipes underneath the city, making it one of the largest water networks in the world. Extensive road networks were also built to support the constant travel of *daimyo* and their samurai to and from the new centre of Japanese society – even though Kyoto (where the emperor lived) was still officially the capital.

Towns and businesses grew along the roads. By 1721, the feudal town of Edo had become the largest city in the world, with over 1 million residents (see Source 3). Today, Edo is known as Tokyo and is still one of the largest cities in the world, with a population of more than 35 million.

Environmental management

In 1570, Japan's population reached 10 million. This spike in population led to unsustainable logging practices. Wood had always been a primary source of building material as well as fuel in Japan. It was used extensively in temples, shrines, castles, houses and shipbuilding. The huge growth in the size of cities led to increased demand for wood, which caused widespread **deforestation**.

In around 1666, the shogunate introduced an advanced forestry management policy called *Yamakawa Okite* to reduce logging and increase the planting of trees. From then on, only the shogun and *daimyo* could authorise the use of wood.

The Tokugawa shogunate also established a policy of planting Japanese cedar trees, and controlled who could own land in forest areas. The shogunate banned individual ownership of forested land, and limited access to forests by the *daimyo*. Communities were encouraged to plant trees on common land. Children would learn the phrase 'a mountain without trees is of little worth'.

By 1724, timber harvesting had declined by 60 per cent. It remained at low levels for the next 30 years, but many historians believe that Japan's forests did not fully recover until the early twentieth century.

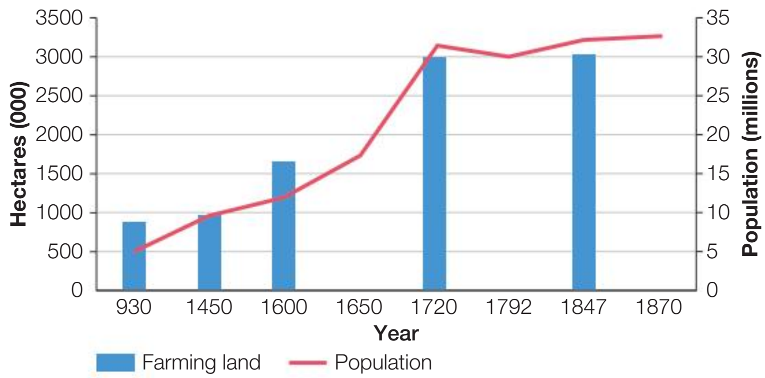
deforestation
the action of clearing a wide area of trees

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes to cities and the environment

The development of agriculture

In agricultural regions, *daimyo* looked at methods to increase productivity on their land in order to meet the growing demand for food production. More land became available for farming as water projects delivered more reliable water supplies for irrigation, and also provided solutions to control flooding. These improvements enabled rice production to move from subsistence levels (growing only enough to eat) to commercial levels (growing enough to eat and trade).

Sources 5 and 6 give more details on expansion during the Edo period.



Source 5 Population growth and farming land on the Kanto Plain surrounding Edo

Source 6 Number of major civil engineering projects in Japan

Time	Period	Number of projects
1467–1595	Pre-Edo period	once every nine years
1596–1672	Early Edo period	approx. twice every year
1673–1745	Mid-Edo period	once every three years
1746–1868	Late Edo period	once every five years

15.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** three key developments that took place in the city of Edo.

2 **State** three examples of how timber was used as an important resource in Shogunate Japan.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Sources 5 and 6.

a Describe the relationship between population growth and farming land in Source 5.

b Identify the period of most growth and development in Japan.

c *Yamakawa Okite* was introduced around 1666. What impact did it have on agricultural development in Japan?

4 After 1724, a common saying in Japan was 'one cyprus tree, one human head'. What do you think this tells us about the changing attitude towards using timber?

Apply

5 With a partner, look closely at Sources 3 and 4. **Determine** (decide) whether they demonstrate the historical concept of continuity and change and justify (give reasons for) your decision.

6 In small groups, **investigate** the current logging policy in Japan. In your groups, discuss any examples of continuity or change between Japanese forest management during the Edo period and today.

15.12 Changes in culture and the arts

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the cultural achievements under the Tokugawa shogunate.

During the Edo period (1603–1868), there was great cultural growth in Japan. The samurai educated themselves in areas such as literature, philosophy and the arts. They were expected to be as skilled in writing poems as they were in fighting. Townspeople also adopted a new focus on the arts, which they saw as expressions of learning and education.

Bonsai

During the Kamakura period (1185–1333), when Zen Buddhism was spreading into Japan, the practice of cultivating miniature trees in ceramic trays quickly became popular. In fact, the art of *bonsai* ('tray planting') remains popular to this day. The roots and branches of *bonsai* trees are continually trimmed to make them look as natural as possible. For example, a Japanese maple tree that might grow to 6 metres in the wild can be kept as small as 10 centimetres when grown according to *bonsai* methods. One of the oldest known living *bonsai* trees is a pine tree pruned by Shogun Tokugawa Iemitsu.

Source 7 This Japanese juniper tree has been grown using *bonsai* techniques.

Japanese poetry

Another art form that flourished during the rule of the shoguns was poetry. The Japanese created distinctive forms of poetry to capture the beauty of nature, and the joy and sadness of life.

Haiku poems became very popular in the seventeenth century. They are made up of 17 syllables (single sound units) divided into three parts – the first part has five syllables, the second has seven syllables and the third has five syllables. The most famous poet of the Edo period in Japan was Matsuo Basho. His *haiku* poems, such as the one in Source 8, captured the feeling of a scene in a few simple words.

Source 8 The most famous Japanese *haiku* is 'Old Pond' by Matsuo Basho.

In Japanese script	Pronounced in Japanese	Translates in English
古池や 蛙飛込む 水の音	fu-ru-i-ke ya (5) ka-wa-zu to-bi-ko-mu (7) mi-zu no o-to (5)	The old pond A frog leaps in … A sound of water splashing.

Doll-making

Doll-making is a Japanese tradition from ancient times. They were used in rituals, and often placed in shrines within the home. It was believed dolls could trap bad spirits, and offer protection.

Wealthy families began buying dolls as gifts, elevating them to a status symbol. As a result, trade was so competitive that regulations were placed on the materials used to make dolls. Since the late seventeenth century, a festival has been held each year on 3 March called *Hina Matsuri*. It is a celebration dedicated to girls, in which parents pray for the health and happiness of their daughters. Dolls are an important part of this festival; they were originally used as charms to ward off evil spirits.

Source 9 On *Hina Matsuri*, girls display their ornamental dolls dressed in traditional dress from the Heian period and dedicate peach blossom to them. According to superstitions, they must remove the dolls immediately on 4 March to avoid a late marriage.

Origami

The Japanese word '*origami*' is made up of two smaller words – *ori* ('to fold') and *kami* ('paper'). Japanese *origami* began in religious ceremonies after Buddhist monks carried paper from China to Japan during the sixth century.

During the Edo period *origami* became a popular form of entertainment for the merchant classes and the common people. It is now also a popular art form with children around the world.

Theatre

Japan is known for a stylised form of theatre called *Noh*, which began in the fourteenth century. *Noh* plays were performed on a bare stage. Men played all the parts, and wore masks and detailed costumes. *Kabuki* theatre developed during the Tokugawa era. *Kabuki* has spectacular scenery and costumes. It included female performers until they were banned in 1629.

Woodblock prints

Woodblock printing became popular during the Edo period as a means to mass-produce artwork. Images would be carved onto wooden blocks, and ink would be spread over the wood. The wood was then pressed onto the chosen surface, creating a copy of the image on the woodblock.

From the seventeenth century, woodblock prints began to capture the more extravagant aspects of the upper-class Japanese lifestyle in Edo. The art form became accepted as a genre called *ukiyo-e*, representing 'images of the floating world'.

Source 10 This woodblock print is called *Three Beauties of the Present Day* by Kitagawa Utamaro, *c.* 1793. It is an example of how *ukiyo-e* represented the bustling urban culture of Edo.

Martial arts

Followers of Zen Buddhism learnt to control their bodies through martial arts or combat sports.

Jujutsu

Jujutsu ('the gentle art') is used to train for close combat. The aim of *jujutsu* is to use the opponent's energy against them, rather than directly opposing it. This is achieved through holds and techniques to throw an opponent off balance.

Kenjutsu

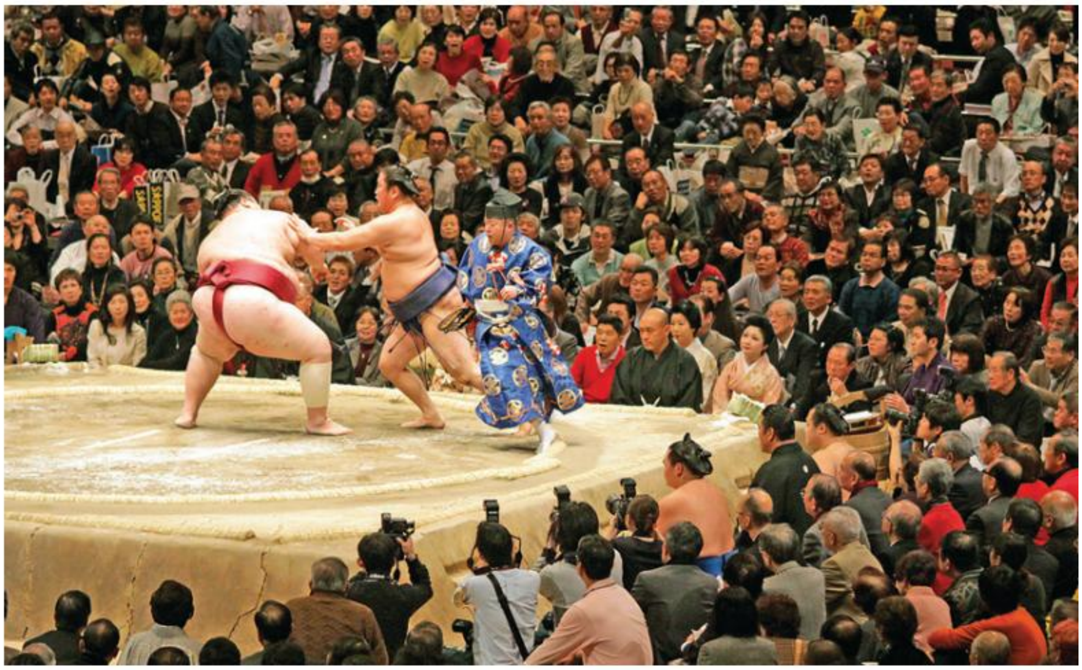
Kenjutsu ('the art of the sword') involves the practice of swordsmanship. During the Edo period, the development of the bamboo practice sword and protective armour allowed full sparring with reduced risk of harm. This came to be known as *kendo* ('the way of the sword').

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Identifying continuity and change in sumo wrestling

Sumo wrestling

Sumo wrestling, an ancient temple ritual, became a form of professional sporting entertainment during the Edo period. It is still a national sport today. A sumo tournament is lengthy, and can go on for 15 days. During that time, the sumo wrestler will carry out matches against opponents using many of the 70 possible categories of moves.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on changes in culture and the arts



Source 11 A sumo fighter is usually very big, with a large belly around which he wears a *mawashi* belt that indicates his rank. This sumo tournament is taking place in Tokyo.

15.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. What are two practices related to Zen Buddhism?
2. **Name** the festival held on 3 March each year involving Japanese dolls.

Comprehend

3. **Describe** the art of *bonsai*.

Analyse

4. **Distinguish** between *jujutsu* and *kenjutsu*. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you need to explain how they are different.

Apply

5. **Investigate** the woodblock print created by Hokusai titled *The Great Wave off Kanagawa*. Explain why and how it has become so significant to Japan. Use the 5Rs (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit') to help you.
6. Evaluate the most important cultural achievement that occurred during the Edo period. **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.
7. **Investigate** the steps and create a piece of *origami*. Share your artwork with your class.

15.13 The end of the shogunate

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the influence of foreign interaction on the development of Japan and decline of the Shogunate era.

In the mid-1800s, countries around the world began to push for Japan's restrictions on foreign trade to be lifted. One such country was the United States.

Japan opens up

On 8 July 1853, four black ships led by Commodore Matthew Perry of the US navy anchored at Edo Bay (now Tokyo Bay). Perry had arrived in Japan to persuade the Japanese to open their borders and trade with the United States. He carried with him a letter from the president to the emperor of Japan.

Because Japan had been closed to the outside world for so long, the Japanese had never seen steamships before. They thought the ships were 'giant dragons puffing smoke', and were shocked by the size of the ships and the number of guns they carried. In total, the four ships carried around 1000 men and 61 guns.

Perry was an experienced naval officer who, at the age of 60, had enjoyed a long and distinguished career. He knew that this mission to Japan would be one of his most significant assignments. After dropping anchor in Edo Bay, Perry waited. He refused to receive low-ranking diplomats, instead insisting on seeing only the most senior representatives of the emperor.

He refused demands to leave, and threatened the Japanese by fixing his weapons on the capital. The Japanese Government realised that the country was in no position to defend itself against a foreign power, and that Japan could not retain its policy of isolation without risking war.

On 31 March 1854, after weeks of diplomatic talks, Perry received what he had been working towards – a treaty with Japan, known as the Convention of Kanagawa. It was signed by Perry and the Tokugawa shogunate. In the years that followed, Japanese ports opened to American trade; and after more than 200 years of isolation, Japanese society began opening to the world.

Many Japanese people resented the increased power and position of the Westerners that followed Perry's arrival. The *daimyo* began to lose faith in the shogun who was supposed to suppress 'foreign barbarians'. There was talk of forcing his resignation. As a result, the power of the shogun decreased. In 1868, Shogun Tokugawa Yoshinobu handed back power to Emperor Meiji. This change of how Japan was governed was known as the **Meiji restoration**.

On 3 January 1869, Emperor Meiji formally declared the restoration of his power.

Source 12 A Japanese artist's impression of Commodore Matthew Perry, drawn in 1856


Source 13 A Japanese artist's impression of the black ships entering Edo Bay, created in 1853

Meiji restoration
a period in Japanese history from 1868 to 1912 when the last shogun was overthrown and the emperor regained control over Japan

The Meiji restoration

The handing over of power from the shogun to the emperor, and the moving of the Imperial Court from Kyoto to Edo, represented the return of imperial rule in Japan. Edo was renamed Tokyo (meaning 'Eastern capital'). Emperor Meiji quickly made his mark by establishing Shinto as the state religion. This reinforced his power, because under Shinto he was viewed as a living god.

In 1871, it was declared that all provinces were to be returned from the *daimyo* to the emperor. These 300 provinces were combined to form 75 larger areas known as prefectures. Each prefecture came under the control of a state-appointed governor.

smelters
places where metal is extracted from its ore by a process that involves heating and melting

Modernising and Westernising Japan

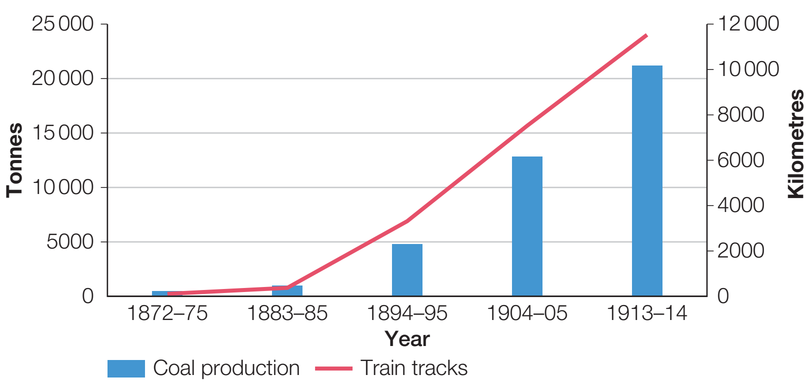
Source 14 An artist's impression of the Tokyo terminus of the new Tokyo–Yokohama railway, built in 1872 with the aid of foreign engineers

Emperor Meiji moved rapidly to modernise Japan. Western fashions and ideas were quickly adopted, often at the cost of traditional practices and beliefs. The military was strengthened, with the adoption of Western weapons and a modern navy. The government instituted nationwide military conscription (mandatory military service) in 1873, ordering that every man would serve for four years in the armed forces upon turning 21. Samurai were no longer allowed to walk about town bearing swords; instead, many became officers in the newly modernised army and navy.

A new constitution was written under the guidance of Prince Ito Hirobumi. It was adopted in 1889. A period of rapid development and industrialisation followed.

Japan began to aggressively expand overseas, winning wars with China in 1894–95 and with Russia in 1904–05. Japan gained the island of Taiwan from China in 1895, and annexed (took control of) Korea in 1910, becoming a powerful new force in the region.

The industrialisation of Japan required a huge increase in production capabilities. Shipyards, iron **smelters** and spinning mills were built. Coal was in great demand to power factories, trains and ships (see Source 14). Industrial centres grew quickly with the migration of workers from the countryside. A national railway system was also built to connect industrial regions with ports (see Source 14). Trade also developed rapidly, thanks to a series of treaties signed with Western nations.



Source 15 Industrialisation in Japan, 1872–1914

Analysing perspectives

The key historical concept of perspectives (see page 216 of 'The history toolkit') refers to the position from which people see and understand events around them. Analysing perspectives gives us an insight into what a person values or prioritises in their life. We can analyse perspectives from primary sources (that is, from people who were there at the time) or from secondary sources (that is, from historians writing about the past).

When reading sources, ask questions about who created the source and why. Think about the **context** (situation) of when the source was produced, the **opinions** expressed and what messages are **inferred** (suggested) in the source.

Source 16 shows you how to extract information on context, opinion and inference.

Log onto your obook pro to complete the key skill worksheet 'Analysing perspectives'.

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Key skill worksheet
Historical perspectives & interpretations: Analysing perspectives

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the end of the shogunate

Source 16 Proclamation of Empress Haruko, 1887

> Now we can no longer restrict ourselves to bowing from a kneeling position … Moreover, if we look at contemporary Western women's wear, we find that it combines a top or jacket and a skirt in the manner of our ancient Japanese system of dress.
>
> This is not only suitable for the formal standing bow but also convenient for action and movement and makes it only natural to adopt the Western method of sewing.

Inference: We will have more freedom to move

Context: Bowing suggests a royal context

Context: The West is more modern

Inference: There are similarities between the West and Japan

Opinion: These phrases aim to persuade the reader to agree with the point being made

15.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** two things Emperor Meiji did to quickly demonstrate his authority.

2 How did the role and status of the samurai change under Emperor Meiji?

3 Why did US Commodore Matthew Perry go to Japan?

Comprehend

4 Why do you think the Imperial Court moved from Kyoto to Edo? **Explain** your answer.

5 **Explain** why the power of the shogun decreased as the influence of the West increased.

6 **Explain** why coal became important in the industrialisation of Japan.

Analyse

7 **Examine** Source 15.

   a Why do you think the development of the rail system was important for trade?

   b Analyse the change over time. What does this tell you about industrialisation in Japan?

Apply

8 Read Source 16. What does this short extract reveal about the ways in which Japan began changing as a result of contact with the West?

9 Think about what you have learnt about the shogunate period of control in Japan. Overall, do you think it was a period that produced gains for Japan, or one that slowed down its development? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response.

15C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The fall of the shoguns

In 1868, the rule of the shoguns came to an end, and power was handed back to the emperor. After being somewhat sidelined for a significant part of Japan's history, it was the emperor who outlasted the shoguns and who has continued to hold power to the present day.

The fall of the shoguns was not something that happened overnight, but was rather the result of many internal and external changes in Japan at the time. It is useful to look at various aspects of life under the shoguns to decide when they were at their peak, and when the decline started.

Historians have the benefit of hindsight to evaluate the changes that occurred during this period. When evaluating a significant place, person or development, they must always consider its strengths and weaknesses. For example, it was in the Shogunate era that the current capital of Japan, Tokyo, was established. Historians would undoubtedly consider this as a strength of the Shogunate era in Japan.

Yet life under the shoguns also meant that Japan was unaware of the Industrial Revolution occurring in the Western world during the eighteenth century. The foreign policy of *sakoku* meant that there was no trade with the outside world, apart from some limited contact with China and the Netherlands. Historians may consider this a weakness, as it stopped any technology, philosophy or religion from the West influencing developments in Japanese society.

Source 17 contains some questions that can be used to begin your evaluation of the decline of the shoguns. Just as a historian would, discuss the questions with others to help form your own opinions about the rise and fall of the Shogunate era and its level of influence over time.

Has the Shogunate era heavily influenced the culture of modern-day Japan?

Did the samurai *bushido* code instill a code of conduct that is still present in Japanese culture today?

Was the social hierarchy beneficial for all people, or did it stop some people from reaching their full potential?

Did the problems caused by deforestation contribute to the decline in the power of the shoguns?

Did the *sakoku* foreign policy contribute to the decline of the shoguns, or did it help them to preserve Japanese traditions?

Source 17 This historian is thinking of key questions to help guide and evaluate their research.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Writing an evaluative essay

An evaluative essay is a formal written document that presents a series of reasoned arguments with supporting evidence. It may also be called an argumentative essay. It usually addresses a stimulus. A stimulus could be a question, quote, source, event or issue that you are presented with, and that you need to refer to throughout your written response.

In history, an evaluative essay is similar to participating in a debate. You may prefer one side of the argument, but it is important to acknowledge that there is another viewpoint to make sure you are providing a proper evaluation of the stimulus.

Follow these steps to start planning an evaluative essay:

Step 1 Read your essay prompt carefully. Are there any words, phrases or images you don't recognise? Take the time to find out what they mean.

Step 2 Decide on your viewpoint. In an essay, your viewpoint is known as your 'hypothesis'. This is a fancy term for your opinion, which you will maintain throughout the essay.

Step 3 Choose two strong arguments to support your hypothesis. You might already have some good examples in your notes from class. Otherwise, conduct some research.

Step 4 Choose one alternative argument that shows a different side to your hypothesis. By doing so, you will avoid bias and show your understanding that two sides to the debate exist.

Step 5 Decide on the order of your arguments. In history, your essay can follow the chronological order of events as they happened. Or you may prefer to discuss the arguments you support first, and then the counter-argument last.

Practise the skill

1 Read this essay prompt closely:
'The fall of the shoguns was caused by their failure to adapt to change.'
Follow steps 1 to 5 as outlined above to plan how you will respond to this prompt.

2 Now that you have finished planning, write an essay that responds to the prompt in question 1.
As a guide, try to keep your response to 750 words. Remember, there are detailed instructions on how to write paragraphs that include evidence on page 220 of 'The history toolkit'.

3 Following the instructions on page 203 of 'The history toolkit', provide a list of references for the evidence you used to write your response.

Extend your understanding

1 **Create** a timeline showing the events, leaders and developments that you believe caused the progress of Shogunate Japan to improve or decline.
- **a** Choose seven to ten dates to include on your timeline.
- **b** Present your timeline on a poster. Include some images relevant to any of the dates you have chosen.

2 Rank the events on your timeline from the most important to the least. How different is your ranking to the chronological order of events?

3 Display your posters around the classroom. **Compare** your posters with those of your classmates. Did you choose similar or different dates? Why do you think this is?

15 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read Source 18 and answer the following questions.

Laws for the Military Houses

Source 18 is a summary of some of the *Laws for the Military Houses* imposed on the warrior classes in 1615 by Shogun Tokugawa Ieyasu. These provided a code of conduct for honourable behaviour.

Source 18

- The samurai class should devote itself to pursuits appropriate to the warrior aristocracy, such as archery, swordsmanship, horsemanship, and classical literature.
- Amusements and entertainments are to be reasonable and expenses not excessive.
- The *han* (feudal domains) are not to harbour fugitives and outlaws.
- Domains must expel rebels and murderers from their service and from their lands.
- *Daimyo* are not to engage in social interactions with the people (neither samurai nor commoners) of other domains.
- Castles may be repaired, but such activity must be reported to the shogunate. Structural innovations and expansions are forbidden.
- The formation of cliques for scheming or conspiracy in neighbouring domains must be reported to the shogunate without delay, as must the expansion of defences, fortifications or military forces.
- Marriages among *daimyo* … must not be arranged privately.
- *Daimyo* must present themselves at Edo for service to the shogunate.
- Conventions regarding formal uniform must be followed.
- Samurai throughout the realm are to practise frugality.

Extract from *Laws for the Military Houses,* 1615

1 **Identify** what type of source this is (that is, primary or secondary). (1 mark)

2 Using empathy, **summarise** the perspectives of each of the following social groups towards this law:

   a a samurai living by the *bushido* code.

   b a *daimyo* and his family. (2 marks)

3 Choose two of the laws and **explain** how they helped to hold power in the Tokugawa shogunate. (6 marks)

4 **Compare** these laws to modern-day regulations, rules or laws within society – within the home, school, local area or nation. **Explain** the continuity and change in the laws presented above and how they may apply today. (7 marks)

5 **Analyse** the source using the 'DAMMIT U' acronym (see page 209 of 'The history toolkit') to structure your response. (4 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain how the environment influenced early life in Japan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.2, page 378.
Understand the changing political role of the emperor in Japan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.3, page 380.
Explain the change in political leadership under the shoguns. Explain the role of the *daimyo* in ending the Ashikaga Shogunate.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.4, page 386.
Describe the role and achievements of Tokugawa Ieyasu. Summarise the legacy of Tokugawa Ieyasu.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.5, page 389.
Describe the social structure in Shogunate Japan and the relationship between social classes.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.6, page 392.
Describe the role of women in feudal Japan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.7, page 394.
Explain the way of life for a samurai living under the shoguns.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.8, page 396.
Understand the significance of castles in Shogunate Japan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.9, page 398.
Explain changes to foreign policy, including Japan's closure to foreigners under the Tokugawa Shogunate.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.10, page 402.
Explain the impact of population expansion on natural resources.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.11, page 404.
Describe the cultural achievements under the Tokugawa shogunate.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.12, page 406.
Describe the influence of foreign interaction on the development of Japan and decline of the Shogunate era.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 15.13, page 409.

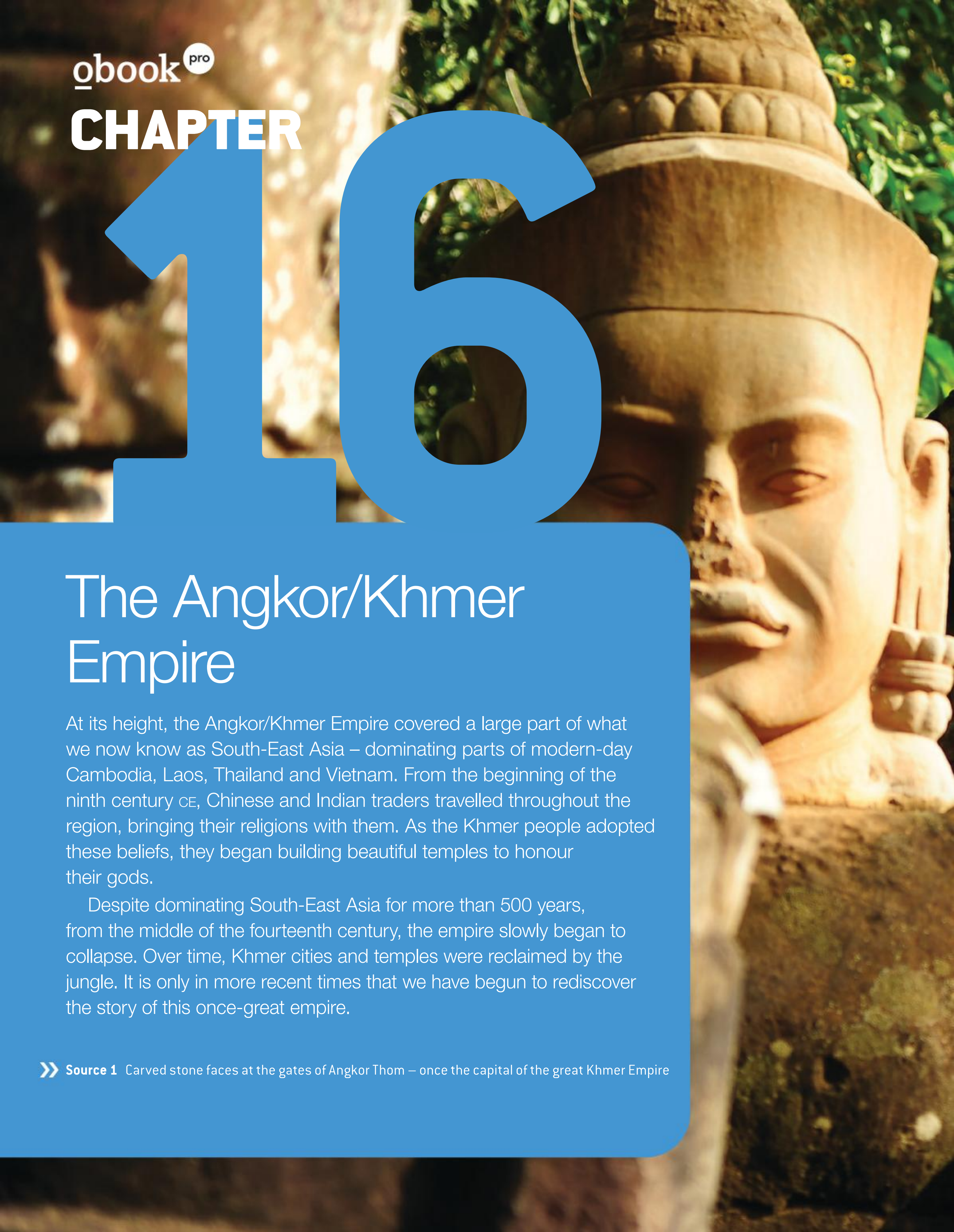
Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 15

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 15

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Japan under the shoguns.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 15



CHAPTER 16

The Angkor/Khmer Empire

At its height, the Angkor/Khmer Empire covered a large part of what we now know as South-East Asia – dominating parts of modern-day Cambodia, Laos, Thailand and Vietnam. From the beginning of the ninth century CE, Chinese and Indian traders travelled throughout the region, bringing their religions with them. As the Khmer people adopted these beliefs, they began building beautiful temples to honour their gods.

Despite dominating South-East Asia for more than 500 years, from the middle of the fourteenth century, the empire slowly began to collapse. Over time, Khmer cities and temples were reclaimed by the jungle. It is only in more recent times that we have begun to rediscover the story of this once-great empire.

Source 1 Carved stone faces at the gates of Angkor Thom – once the capital of the great Khmer Empire

obook pro

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

16A
How did the Khmer Empire rise to power?

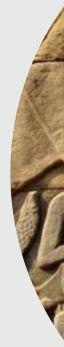
16B
How was society organised during the Khmer Empire?

16C
Why did the Khmer Empire come to an end?

16.1 The Khmer Empire: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events and developments in the Khmer Empire

Preah Ko temple in Hariharalaya



Source 1 A timeline of some key events and developments in the Khmer Empire

100 BCE | 500 CE | 700 | 800 | 900

***c.* 100 BCE – 500 CE**
Legends tell of the first Khmer kingdom, known as Funan, being founded in the Mekong River delta. Many Indian and Chinese customs and beliefs spread throughout the region as a result of contact through trade.

***c.* 500–700 CE**
The power and authority of Fanan declines and it is absorbed by a neighbouring kingdom to the north known as Chenla.

***c.* 700–800**
The power and authority of Chenla breaks down. Smaller kingdoms compete for power and control.

802
Jayavarman II forces a number of small Khmer kingdoms to unite, founding the Khmer Empire and building a capital. He then declares himself *Chakravartin* ('ruler of the world'). Hinduism becomes the official religion of the empire.

877
Jayavarman II's nephew, Indravarman I, becomes king and establishes his royal court at Hariharalaya. One of the first temples built during the Khmer Empire – Preah Ko – is built there. The East Baray (a reservoir designed to store water) is also built.

889
Yasovarman I becomes king and establishes the first official capital of the Khmer Empire, Yasodarapura.

96
Ja
Th
is
Hi

Source 2 Reference guide

Key term	Definition
Angkor	The first capital city of the Khmer Empire; this city was actually referred to as Yasodharapura by the Khmer people. Angkor – meaning 'city' – developed from a word in the ancient Indian language of Sanskrit. Many historians use the term 'Angkor' to refer to the first capital city, the Angkor region, or even the Khmer Empire itself. In this book, however, it is only used to describe the city.
Angkor region	A region within modern-day Cambodia that covers around 400 square kilometres and features over 1000 temples (including Angkor Wat and the Bayon Temple)
Angkor Thom	The last capital city of the Khmer Empire; Angkor Thom – meaning 'great city' – was a fortified city that contained the homes of priests, officials of the palace and members of the military, as well as buildings for administering the empire.
Angkor Wat	A temple complex located in the Angkor region built by Suryavarman II in the twelfth century; Angkor Wat – meaning 'city temple' – is the largest Hindu temple complex and the largest religious monument in the world. It covers an area of around 2 square kilometres.

Detail from the Bayon Temple wall at Angkor Thom showing fighters from Champa and the Khmer Empire in battle

A sculpture of Jayavarman VII

Henri Mouhot

1000 — 1100 — 1200 — 1400 — 1900 CE

1002
Civil war breaks out in Angkor as rival leaders compete for control of the Khmer Empire.

1006
Suryavarman I becomes king and expands the empire through several military conquests.

68
yavarman V becomes king. e temple of Banteay Srei constructed to honour the ndu god Shiva.

1113
Suryavarman II becomes king. Under his rule, Angkor Wat ('city temple') is built. It serves as a state temple and the capital city of the empire for a time.

1177
The kingdom of Champa (a civilisation to the east, now Vietnam) defeats the Khmer, plundering and burning parts of the Angkor region.

1181
Jayavarman VII becomes king. The Cham are defeated and driven out of Angkor. Under Jayavarman VII's rule, many temples and hospitals are built and the road system develops rapidly. Buddhism becomes the official religion of the empire.

c. 1200
A new capital city called Angkor Thom ('great city') is built by Jayavarman VII.

1296
A Chinese traveller and writer by the name of Zhou Daguan visits the Angkor region and records features of daily life there.

1432
The Angkor region is attacked by the kingdom of Ayutthaya (a civilisation to the west, now Thailand) and thousands are enslaved, causing Angkor Thom to be abandoned.

1860
French explorer and archaeologist Henri Mouhot visits ruins in the Angkor region and records his observations – leading many in the West to believe he has rediscovered a lost civilisation.

16.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **State** the year Jayavarman II became king and founded the Khmer Empire.
2. **Identify** how Chinese and Indian customs and beliefs spread throughout the Angkor region.
3. **Define** the term 'baray'. What is a baray used for?

Comprehend

4. Using Source 1, calculate how many years there were between the founding of the Khmer Empire and its abandonment after the invasion by the Ayutthaya.
5. **Summarise** the meaning of the Khmer term 'Angkor Thom'. Why is Angkor Thom called this?

Analyse

6. Think about why the word 'Angkor' has developed to have so many different meanings. **Consider** how this might have come about. Remember, when you consider something, you should think about it carefully before making a decision.

Apply

7. **Investigate** one of the rulers mentioned in this timeline. Present your information in a suitable and creative manner.

16.2 The importance of geography for the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how the physical environment influenced the development of the Khmer Empire.

monsoons
wind systems that bring seasonal heavy rainfall that affects the climate of a large area of Asia

Enlarged map
South-East Asia

Every society has features that are unique – that make one society stand apart from another. In the case of the Khmer Empire, these features were largely based on a range of geographical and environmental factors. Together with the hard work and initiative of the Khmer people, these features helped the Khmer Empire to become one of the wealthiest and most powerful empires in history. The Khmer dominated in areas of architecture, warfare, agriculture and art across South-East Asia for over 500 years.

The Khmer Empire grew out of a number of different societies living across a region of South-East Asia that is now part of modern-day Cambodia and Vietnam (see Source 3). This region has a tropical climate, meaning that it is very warm and humid all year round. Unlike Australia's climate, which has four seasons, Cambodia has a wet season and a dry season. The wet season (from May until October) brings heavy rains and **monsoons**, while the dry season (from November until April) brings little to no rain at all.

SOUTH-EAST ASIA

Source 3 This map shows the location of modern-day Cambodia

Source: Oxford University Press

During the time of the Khmer Empire, the people took full advantage of these weather patterns, as well as the natural geographical features in the area. In particular, the Khmer harnessed the Mekong River and Tonle Sap Lake in modern-day Cambodia to feed their people and grow their empire.

CAMBODIA

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 4 A map of modern-day Cambodia showing the Mekong River and Tonle Sap Lake

The Mekong River

The Mekong River not only provided water for drinking, it also helped the Khmer to irrigate rice crops and transport them. The fertile lands in the Mekong River **Delta** were ideal for growing crops, and inland areas to the north of the coast became used for large-scale rice production. The river also allowed the Khmer to travel and trade with societies both to the north and south of the Angkor region, and connected the empire to the outside world. The Mekong was a good natural defence for the Khmer because of its many **sand bars** and changing currents. Only the Khmer had the necessary local knowledge to navigate it.

delta
an area of flat, low land, where a river approaches the sea and empties into it

sand bars
long, narrow banks of sand, especially at the mouth of a river

Source 5 The Mekong River Delta creates a maze of sand bars, providing a strong defence from invading kingdoms.

Source 6 The flat flooded lands of the Mekong River Delta are ideal for rice farming.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Tonle Sap Lake

reservoir
a large body of water (such as a natural or artificial lake) that is used as a supply of fresh water

Tonle Sap Lake

Tonle Sap Lake was another important geographical feature for the Khmer people. During the Khmer Empire it acted as a giant **reservoir** for the Mekong River, and provided the growing population with a steady supply of fish.

During the dry season, Tonle Sap is a relatively small lake covering an area of around 2700 square kilometres, with an average depth of about 1 metre. During the wet season, however, melting snow from high in the Himalayas flows into the Mekong River, together with water from heavy monsoonal rainfalls. This water causes the Mekong River to flood and flow into Tonle Sap Lake. At this time of year, the lake expands to an area of around 10 000 square kilometres and its average depth increases to around 9 metres. The flooded areas surrounding Tonle Sap create the perfect growing conditions for rice and breeding environment for fish.

The lake was so important to the Khmer people's way of life that they even built floating houses and villages so they could live close to it. During the dry season, these houses rested on land; during the wet season, they floated.

Access to food and water was vital to the Khmer people, so they developed a complex network of canals and reservoirs to ensure they had a water supply all year round.

To this day, Tonle Sap is still the largest freshwater lake in South-East Asia and is of major importance to the people of Cambodia.

Source 7 Many floating houses and villages surrounding Tonle Sap Lake today are very similar to those that would have existed during the Khmer Empire.

16.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the lake that was so vital to the Khmer Empire. Outline two reasons why it was important.

2 **Identify** how the climate of South-East Asia influenced the development of Khmer society.

Analyse

3 **Distinguish** between Cambodia's climate and Australia's climate. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different.

4 List the environmental factors that cause Tonle Sap Lake to increase in size each year. How did these changes affect the way the Khmer people lived?

Apply

5 Look at Source 3 (an enlarged version is available on your obook pro). Assess the location of Cambodia within South-East Asia. **Determine** (decide) the advantages of its location for sustaining an empire, and also the disadvantages. (Some points may relate to both.)

16.3 Origins of the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the structure and political influence of kingdoms within the Khmer region.

kingdoms
regions ruled by a king or queen

Indianisation
the spread of culture, traditions and spiritual beliefs beyond their traditional home in India to other countries around the world

caste
a social group into which a person is born; castes are part of a social system known as the caste system, which is generally associated with the Hindu religion in India and is still used today

Before the Khmer Empire rose to power in around 802 CE, there were several groups of small Khmer **kingdoms** with settlements across the Angkor region. Most were located across the fertile Mekong River Delta and around Tonle Sap Lake. In addition to Khmer people, the region was also home to Malay people known as the Cham, who formed a kingdom to the east of Angkor called Champa.

From around 100 to 700 CE, two major Khmer kingdoms gained control over different parts of the Angkor region.

The kingdom of Funan

Records kept by ancient Chinese historians often refer to the first kingdom of Khmer people that settled in the Mekong River Delta as Funan. The name 'Funan' comes from the Khmer word *phnom*, meaning 'hill'. Unfortunately, no records exist to show what the Khmer people living there called themselves or their kingdom.

Source 8 shows the location of Funan based on Chinese records. It occupies an area that is now part of Vietnam and Cambodia.

There is evidence to suggest that the influence of Indian culture had a great impact on the Khmer people in Funan. At this time, India was a highly developed society and its merchants travelled great distances to trade. These merchants brought not only goods to trade with the Khmer, but also their culture, philosophies and religions. Over time, these beliefs and customs were adopted and mixed with the traditional beliefs and customs of the Khmer people. Historians refer to this process as **Indianisation**. Over time, the Khmer adopted Hinduism as their religion and introduced a modified version of the Indian **caste** system.

Funan's success and authority were mainly the result of two things:

- successful farming practices (based on water storage and management techniques) that produced large quantities of rice
- the location of its main trading settlement, Oc Eo, on the Mekong River, close to a key stop on the trade route between China and India.

PART OF SOUTH-EAST ASIA, SHOWING THE LOCATIONS OF CHAMPA, FUNAN AND CHENLA

Source 8 This map also shows the location of the main Funan trading settlement, Oc Eo.

Source: Oxford University Press

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the origins of the Khmer Empire

Source 9 A view of Angkor Wat, showing the type of geographical location in which the Khmer Empire formed

However, in the fourth century CE, Oc Eo's importance began to decline, as the Chinese developed other sea routes and established trading settlements in places such as Java (a part of modern-day Indonesia). Chinese ships no longer stopped at Oc Eo, so trade declined and the power of the kingdom decreased. Around the same time, a neighbouring kingdom to the north began to grow in importance and prosperity, and absorbed Funan in the sixth century CE. This kingdom is also only known to us by its Chinese name – Chenla.

The kingdom of Chenla

The kingdom of Chenla was based in the Angkor region close to Tonle Sap Lake. Although very few records from the time exist, historians today believe that Chenla was made up of at least two smaller kingdoms – one in the south, known as 'Water Chenla', and one in the north, known as 'Land Chenla'. Water Chenla occupied the coastal areas that had once been part of Funan. It continued to trade with the outside world. Land Chenla was more inward-looking, and based its economy on agriculture and the production of rice.

Historians believe the kingdom of Chenla broke down into a number of competing kingdoms in the eighth century CE, each fighting for control. It was not until around 790 CE that a local ruler by the name of Jayavarman II took control and forced these rival kingdoms to unite. In 802 CE, he had himself declared *chakravartin* ('ruler of the world'), and the Khmer Empire was born.

16.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the name ancient Chinese historians gave to the first Khmer kingdom.

2 **Define** *chakravartin*.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the power and authority of the first Khmer kingdom declined.

4 **Explain** the process of Indianisation and its effect on the Khmer people.

5 Look at Source 8 and locate Chenla, Java and Oc Eo. **Summarise** how changes in the routes taken by Chinese traders would have affected the people of Oc Eo and Funan.

Apply

6 Using Google Earth, locate Thoai Son District in An Giang Province in Vietnam, and then find Oc Eo. **Investigate** the features that you can see in the area and suggest how these features might have affected early Khmer settlements.

7 **Create** a poster or presentation outlining the key environmental features that allowed people to settle and thrive in the Angkor region.

16.4 Significant individual: Jayavarman II

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the role and achievements of Jayavarman II
- explain how Khmer kings were revered as *devaraja* and ruled over the empire with absolute authority.

Before Jayavarman II came to power in 802 CE, all the Khmer kingdoms in the lower Mekong River region had been in a state of conflict – both with each other and with nearby groups such as the Javanese and the Cham. The region was not unified under one ruler. Jayavarman was responsible for forcing all the Khmer kingdoms to unite and form the Khmer Empire. For this reason, he is regarded as the founder of the Khmer Empire and one of its most significant kings. In fact, the name Jayavarman comes from **Sanskrit** (the sacred language of Hinduism) – *jaya* means 'victorious' and *varman* means 'protector'.

Because no written documents exist from the time of Jayavarman, a lot of what we know is based on legends and records from later Khmer kings. For example, many stone inscriptions that mention him are from later periods. The best known of these is at the temple of Sdok Kok Thom.

Sanskrit
an ancient language of India and the language used in documenting the holy books of Hinduism

Early life

Evidence from the inscriptions at Sdok Kok Thom Temple (see Source 10) tells us that before Jayavarman became king, he had spent some years on the island of Java, possibly as a hostage or prisoner. There is some debate about when he returned to Cambodia from Java, but most agree it was around 790 CE. Upon his return, he quickly conquered some territory halfway up the Mekong River, setting up his first capital at a place called Indrapura. He then moved his base three more times. The reasons for the changes are uncertain, but may have been for better sources of food.

Source 10 Stone inscriptions found at the Sdok Kok Thom Temple (on the modern-day border between Cambodia and Thailand) tell us much of what we know about the rise of Jayavarman II to power in the ninth century CE.

The rise of Jayavarman II

After establishing the Khmer Empire, Jayavarman had himself declared *chakravartin* at a special religious ceremony. This effectively made him the king of all regional Khmer kings. At the same ceremony, Jayavarman declared that one Khmer god would become the king of all other gods. He also declared himself *devaraja* (meaning 'god-king'). Historians think that the Khmer kings who were *devaraja* were either worshipped as living gods or were seen as the intermediary (go-between) between the people and the gods, particularly the Hindu god Shiva.

With these declarations, Jayavarman created a system that ensured both political stability and religious stability, as it enabled him and future Khmer kings to rule over the empire with political and religious authority.

Source 11 An artist's impression of Jayavarman II, created in 2017

All minor Khmer kings, who controlled small parts of the empire, now served Jayavarman, the 'king of kings'. All minor Khmer gods who protected each of these kings now served the *devaraja*. Many historians refer to this system as the '*devaraja* cult'.

At the same ceremony, all previous pledges or oaths of loyalty between smaller Khmer kingdoms and their kings were overturned. Evidence of this ceremony is carved on the temple at Sdok Kok Thom. Jayavarman left no inscriptions himself.

Around this time, Jayavarman moved his capital once more – to Mount Mahendrapura near Tonle Sap Lake (now known as Phnom Kulen). Here, he built a large temple and carved images of Hindu gods into the river beds to bless the water flowing into Angkor.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

Primary sources on the Khmer Empire

One of the things that makes the history of the Khmer Empire so difficult for historians to understand and document is a lack of primary source material.

In many cases, primary sources from the time of the Khmer Empire – such as written records, buildings, tools and household objects (for example, pots and bowls) – have been completely lost. What remains are the stone temples and carvings that tell of the kings, events and beliefs of the Khmer Empire. The difficulty with these sources of evidence is that they provide an incomplete picture of the empire – one that many historians argue about.

There is only one written primary source from the Khmer Empire available to historians. This is provided by a Chinese ambassador and traveller called Zhou Daguan, who visited the Angkor region in 1296 and lived in Angkor for about a year. His journals provide another valuable source of evidence for historians, but it is one that cannot be fully verified as no other written sources have been found.

Despite these challenges, historians continue their study of the Khmer Empire. As new technologies develop and more evidence is uncovered, historians continue to generate new and interesting hypotheses as they strive for a greater understanding of the Khmer Empire.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 11.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Jayavarman II's achievements

In addition to founding the Khmer Empire, Jayavarman established a system of officials and courtiers (people who serve the king in administrative roles), who were rewarded with land and political positions for their work. This system helped maintain the political and religious stability of the Khmer Empire – it was tied closely to the temples and was designed to control peasant workers in the rice fields by establishing a strict social **hierarchy**.

Jayavarman is believed to have died in 850, at which point his son (Jayavarman III) became the next king, followed by his nephew (Indravarman I). How new kings were selected is unknown, but it was not necessarily by birth. More likely, it was the man's ability as a soldier that made him suitable as a leader.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Jayavarman II

hierarchy
a social structure that organises people with the most important group on top and others ranked beneath in decreasing order of importance

Source 12 An elephant statue at Mount Mahendrapura (now Phnom Kulen)

Source 13 These stone carvings at Mount Mahendrapura were once part of a temple built by Jayavarman II.

16.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** what the name Jayavarman means in Sanskrit. Why might he have been called this?

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why it is so difficult for historians to create a complete picture of how Jayavarman II came to power.

3 **Summarise** the motives of Jayavarman II in establishing a set of officials and courtiers.

4 In your own words, **describe** the *devaraja* cult and its importance to the formation and stability of the Khmer Empire. Include a few sentences to compare the power of Khmer kings who were revered as *devaraja* and the power of modern political leaders today.

Apply

5 'In some ways Jayavarman II was a dictator, yet his authority was also necessary for the Khmer people.' To what extent do you agree with this? Write a short paragraph **justifying** (giving reasons for) your position. You may need to conduct some further research.

6 Jayavarman VII was a king who ruled the Khmer Empire from 1181 to *c.* 1218 CE (see page 16.15). **Investigate** his life and write a biography, presented in the same way as this chapter on Jayavarman II (with subheadings on his early life, rise and achievements). Include:
- Jayavarman VII's influence in expanding the empire
- expelling the Chams
- successes of territorial expansion
- the construction program in Angkor during his reign.

16.5 Expansion of the empire

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise how the Khmer Empire expanded through trade and warfare
» explain the influence of various Khmer rulers in expanding the empire.

Khmer kings were determined to strengthen and expand the empire. While they enjoyed the relationships formed with other societies through trade, they were not afraid to instigate war in order to expand or defend their territory, and they built a well-equipped army and naval force.

Expansion of the empire through trade

A key achievement of the Khmer Empire was its ability to build strong trade links with societies across South-East Asia. Trade in rice and fish became a key part of the Khmer Empire's economy. Use of the Mekong River allowed the Khmer to trade in regions both north and south of the empire. As the empire grew and developed, its trading partners grew in number as well. By 1100, trade routes to the south Indian ports and Chinese ports were established, and inland routes across South-East Asia were also well developed. More resources were exported to these new destinations including elephants, ivory, feathers, spices and woods. The Khmer also imported goods from China, including gold, silver, ceramics, glassware and silk.

The economy of the Khmer Empire became stronger and better than that of its rivals in other parts of the region. To a large extent, it was trade that supported this economy and helped the Khmer build the wealth that enabled them to design and build the elaborate temple complexes that remain today.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the expansion of the empire

Source 14 A detail from a stone carving on the wall of the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom showing fish being traded at a busy market

Source 15 A stone carving showing the Khmer army with an elephant

Expansion of the empire through warfare

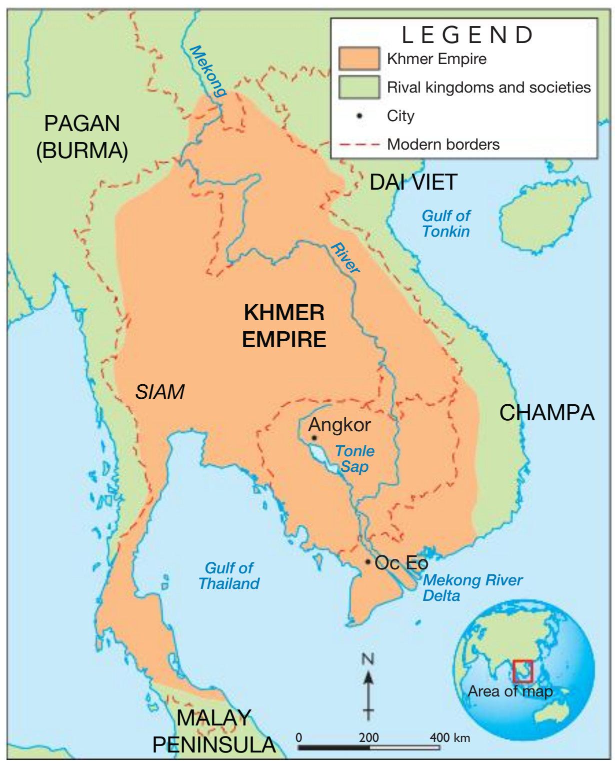
Enlarged map
The Khmer Empire at its greatest extent

Despite the willingness of Khmer kings to trade peacefully with societies across the region, at its heart the Khmer Empire was a warlike society. Hundreds of stone carvings on temples across the Angkor region depict great battles and feats of bravery. Throughout the empire's rule, the Khmer often clashed with the kingdom of Champa, their closest neighbour to the east (now part of Vietnam). Towards the end of the empire's rule, the Khmer were also in regular disputes with the kingdom of Ayutthaya, to the west (now part of modern-day Thailand and Laos).

Based on the evidence available, Khmer soldiers appear to have been very successful in battle. The way in which the army was organised and the military strategies they followed were loosely based on models brought from India.

In the early days of the empire, the army was organised into four divisions: the infantry (foot soldiers), the cavalry (soldiers on horseback), the charioteers (soldiers on horse-drawn chariots) and soldiers on elephants. Later, however, it appears that horses were no longer used by the army. As they were not local to South-East Asia, horses had to be imported at great expense. Horse-drawn chariots were also impractical, as they could not travel easily across waterlogged rice fields without becoming bogged down.

THE KHMER EMPIRE AT ITS GREATEST EXTENT, *C.* 1200 CE



Source 16 Source: Oxford University Press

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Martial arts in Cambodia

Another achievement of Khmer warfare was the development of a martial art, known as *bokator*, which roughly translates as 'pounding the lion'. Like many societies across Asia, the Khmer developed *bokator* in order to train soldiers for combat. *Bokator* drew its inspiration from nature by copying or imitating the movements of trees and animals. *Bokator* fighters used elbow and knee strikes, shin kicks, and weapons such as bamboo staffs and short sticks. References to *bokator* during the Khmer Empire can be seen carved into the walls of the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom (see Source 17).

This form of martial arts was closely linked to religious thought, and its rules were guided by this. The Khmer believed that the right hand represented the Hindu god Brahma and the left hand represented Buddha. Because Buddhism taught peaceful ways, it was the right hand that should be used to strike after blocking with the left hand at least three times.

The traditions of *bokator* in Cambodia were almost wiped out during the 1970s. At this time, Cambodia was ruled by a political party called the Khmer Rouge. The Khmer Rouge carried out the mass murders of many different groups within society, including those who practised traditional arts. Experts in *bokator* were killed, along with thousands of others.

Despite the efforts of the Khmer Rouge, this brutal period in Cambodia's history did not put an end to *bokator*. It has survived to this day. In fact, it is now Cambodia's national sport (see Source 18).

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 17 A stone carving of a *bokator* fighter at the Bayon Temple, Angkor Thom

Source 18 Modern-day *bokator* fighters in Cambodia, demonstrating a fighting technique

Khmer soldiers used a range of weapons in battle, such as spears, swords, shields, and bows and arrows. Some stone carvings also show Khmer forces using a type of **catapult** designed to fire arrows at the enemy. These catapults were often mounted on the backs of horses or elephants.

catapult
a weapon that worked like a giant slingshot

The Khmer were also famous as a strong naval force. Khmer soldiers often went into battle on large open boats, around 20 metres in length. These boats were powered by many oarsmen and featured detailed carvings, presumably to scare their enemies. Stone carvings show Khmer soldiers defeating their enemies and throwing them off the boats to be eaten by the crocodiles.

plundering
stealing, often using violent force

The most common reason why the Khmer went to war was to expand their empire. The kings who followed Jayavarman II continued to extend the territory of the empire, mostly by attacking and **plundering** rival kingdoms outside their borders:

- Suryavarman I (1002–50 CE) made several military conquests. He extended the empire west into Ayutthaya.
- Suryavarman II (1113–50) made further conquests west in the Mon kingdoms in modern-day Burma, and further south in the Malay Peninsula. He also invaded parts of Champa and modern-day Laos.
- Jayavarman VII (1181–1218) fought and defeated the Cham in 1203, taking much of their territory and adding it to the Khmer Empire. Before he came to power, the Cham had attacked Angkor and raided Khmer cities. Under Jayavarman VII's military leadership the Khmer Empire reached its greatest extent (see Source 16).

Source 19 This scene from a naval battle shows Cham boats being boarded by the Khmer. Below, drowned victims are shown entangled in the oars.

16.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. **State** two resources that the Khmer Empire exported.
2. **Name** two kingdoms that the Khmer Empire regularly went to war with. In which modern-day countries are these historical kingdoms located?

Comprehend

3. In your own words, briefly **summarise** the ways that trade strengthened the Khmer Empire. How did trade contribute to the legacy of the Khmer Empire?
4. **Explain** how the Khmer army was organised during the early days of the empire. How did this organisation change over time and why?

Analyse

5. **Examine** Source 15.
   a. How many divisions of the Khmer army can you identify?
   b. Make a few notes about the dress style of the fighters shown. What reason might there be to explain what they are wearing?
   c. What types of weapons can you identify?
   d. Draw your own 'stone carving' in the style of Source 15. In your 'stone carving', represent either the Khmer naval forces or the use of catapults by the Khmer army, as described in the text.

16.6 Achievements in temple building

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

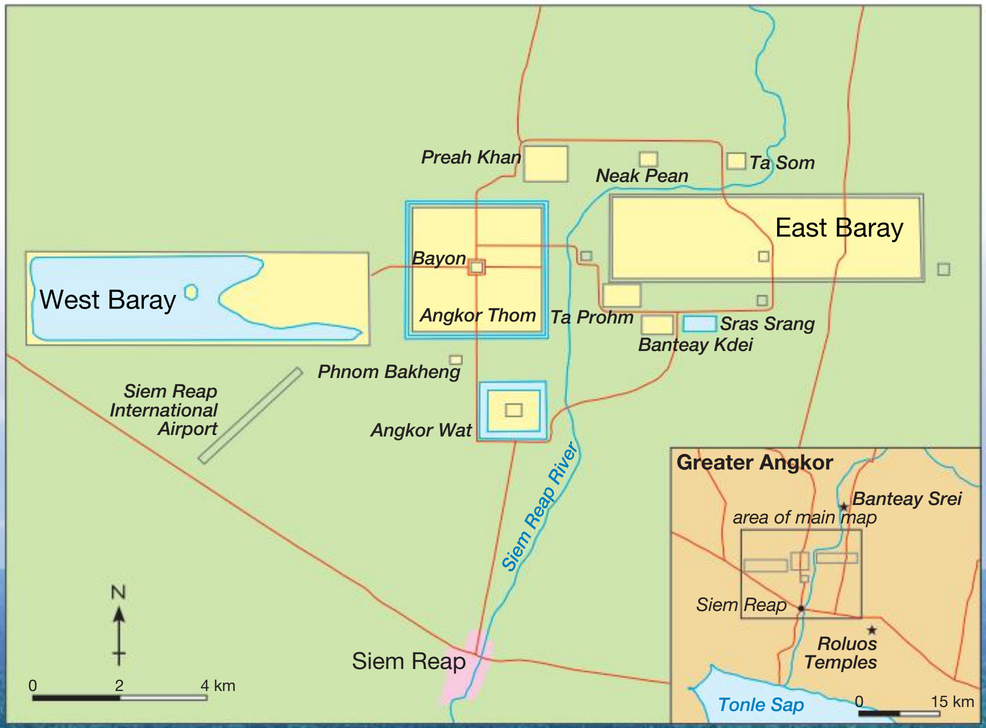
» describe the design and purpose of temple building in the Angkor region.

Temples are the last remaining sources of evidence of the great Khmer Empire, and many historians believe they represent the empire's greatest achievement. During the rule of the Khmer Empire, only temples and other religious buildings were constructed of stone. All other non-religious buildings, such as houses, were made out of perishable materials like wood and palm leaves, so none of these have survived.

There are hundreds of temples in the area north and east of modern-day Siem Reap, particularly around Tonle Sap Lake. Historians believe that the remains of temples that have been found dotted across the Angkor region represent only a fraction of the total number that once covered the empire (see Source 20).

Watch it! A video and quiz on Angkor Wat

MAIN TEMPLES IN THE ANGKOR REGION



Source 20 Source: Oxford University Press

Source 21 Angkor Wat Temple, Siem Reap, Cambodia

Purpose and layout of temples

Temples constructed during the Khmer Empire were dedicated to Hindu gods – most often Shiva and Vishnu. In the latter stages of the empire, a number of Khmer kings adopted Buddhism, so some temples were modified or built to honour Buddha. Khmer temples also often functioned as official state buildings (similar to parliament buildings today) and even cities. Each temple reflected the power and importance of the king who built it, reinforcing his authority as both a political and spiritual leader.

The Khmer believed that each temple functioned as a type of palace or home for the god it was built to honour. They believed that the spirit of this god inhabited the temple in the form of a stone statue or polished stone, known as a *linga*.

Large temples could be home to several gods, so these often featured many linked shrines, with the shrine at the centre dedicated to the most important god. Temples built in this style were designed to represent the universe surrounded by ocean. This type of temple building also featured 'temple-mountains', a famous feature of Khmer architecture. The central temple (*prasat*) represented Mount Meru, a sacred mountain for Hindus and Buddhists. It was surrounded by smaller mountains (additional buildings or temples) and oceans (rectangular moats). The further away from the main *prasat*, the less decorative the enclosures became.

Source 22 A sandstone statue of Vishnu from the ruins of the Prasat Rup Arak Temple, Cambodia

Source 23 A *linga* within the walls of Angkor Wat

Temple-building techniques

The main materials used to build temples throughout the Khmer Empire were brick, sandstone and a kind of clay called laterite (see Source 24). Timber was also used occasionally for roofs and ceilings.

Earlier temples tended to be built from brick – a simple product that was easy to make. Bricks were made of clay that had been fired at high temperatures to make them hard. When they were laid, they were held together with a kind of vegetable glue. This glue made the brickwork very strong. Sometimes the brick was carved, but more often any decoration was done in stucco – a kind of plaster that can be moulded and shaped.

Source 24
Laterite rocks in soil

Source 25 This gateway at Angkor Thom is an example of a corbel arch.

The use of sandstone increased over time, so it is seen more in temples built from the tenth century CE onwards. Much skill was needed to cut and decorate the sandstone, and it required many people to quarry (extract from a mine) and transport it. Sandstone blocks were stacked on top of each other without mortar or glue.

The advantage of sandstone was that it was a very easy material to carve and decorate. However, sandstone was far more expensive than brick, so only the most important temples were made entirely of it.

The other main building product, laterite, was a special kind of clay containing large amounts of iron. When it was formed into blocks and exposed to the air, it became very hard – without the need for firing. Like sandstone, laterite blocks were not joined together with any kind of mortar or glue. They tended to be used in foundations of buildings because they could not be carved or decorated easily.

Advances in building techniques and features

Khmer builders were skilled craftspeople and artists. Across the empire, they developed many building techniques and decorative features that have survived to this day. Like the Romans, the Khmer knew how to make arches. Unlike the Romans, however, the Khmer built corbel arches (rather than a very strong type of arch called a keystone arch). A corbel arch (see Source 25) is built by stacking two columns of stone on either side of an opening. Once the desired height is reached, each new layer of stone on either side is offset so that it juts out a little more than the last one, until the whole structure meets in the middle. Without mortar, it is not an especially strong arch, but it allowed the Khmer to achieve stunning architectural feats with their buildings.

Other significant features that can be found in Khmer temples include decorative lintels (horizontal stone beams over doorways) and pediments (triangular stone shapes above lintels), as shown in Source 26.

It is clear from the sources in this chapter that Khmer temples were often covered with intricate and complex stone-carvings honouring important gods and Khmer kings. What is less commonly known, however, is that these temples were originally also brightly painted. As a result of detailed investigations, historians have uncovered traces of these paints at Angkor Wat and a number of other temples. What we now see as plain stone once may have been very colourful.

Think, pair, share

- Think about how the Khmer craftspeople were able to develop their temple-building techniques.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Source 26 Decorative columns, lintels and pediments found at Angkor Wat show traces of the brightly coloured paints that once covered many Khmer temples.

16.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** three materials used to construct temples during the Khmer Empire.

2 **Identify** the purpose of temples built during the Khmer Empire.

Comprehend

3 What is Mount Meru? **Describe** how Mount Meru has influenced the design and construction of many Khmer temples.

4 **Explain** why temples are the most valuable source of evidence relating to the Khmer Empire.

5 **Summarise** how temples symbolise the values and perspectives of the Khmer Empire.

Apply

6 Using the information provided in this topic and your own research, **create** either a labelled diagram showing the basic layout of a typical Khmer temple, or a flow chart of the changes to temple building materials over time (include a reason for the change between each transition).

7 Using information from this topic and your own research, select one temple (other than Angkor Wat) and **create** a tourist brochure that:

a tells visitors when it was built, why it was built and who built it

b informs visitors why it is an interesting and significant temple to visit

c provides a number of images of the temple, including a simple visitor map.

16.7 Angkor Wat

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the significance of the archaeological site of Angkor Wat as a demonstration of the empire's power and its religious significance.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Angkor Wat

Angkor Wat (meaning 'city temple') is the world's largest religious monument. It is located in the Angkor region, just north of Tonle Sap Lake. Angkor Wat is considered the Khmer Empire's most significant and lasting achievement – a masterpiece among all Khmer temples.

Source 27 Angkor Wat as seen from above

Angkor Wat was designed and constructed at the peak of Khmer architecture and culture, during the rule of Suryavarman II. Suryavarman was devoted to the Hindu god Vishnu, who protects and brings order and harmony to the land. It was this spiritual belief that drove him to order the construction of Angkor Wat, which was completed around 1150 CE.

In 1177, Angkor Wat was raided by the Cham, who were the neighbouring enemies of the Khmer. It was not until the Khmer King Jayavarman VII defeated the Cham in 1203 that the empire was restored. At this point, Angkor Wat was converted to a Buddhist temple, as Jayavarman believed the Hindu god Vishnu had failed to protect his people. Many of the Hindu sculptures were replaced by Buddhist art.

Architecture

The architecture of Angkor Wat symbolises its grandeur as a replica of the Hindu universe. It has five distinctive towers, with the central tower reaching 70 metres in height. These towers represent the mythical Mount Meru, with its five peaks. The outer walls of the temple are 3.6 kilometres in length and represent the edge of the world. A 5-kilometre **moat** surrounds the site and represents the oceans beyond. The central shrine was believed to originally house a large statue of Vishnu, but over time most of its treasures have been stolen. However, there are still many stone carvings representing creatures from Hindu mythology such as the *garuda* – a half-bird, half-man creature on which Vishnu rode (see Source 29).

moat
a wide band of water surrounding a built structure such as a castle; it provided some protection in the event of attack

Source 28

One of these temples … erected by some ancient Michelangelo might take an honourable place beside our most beautiful buildings. It is grander than anything left to us by Greece or Rome, and presents a sad contrast to the state of barbarism in which the nation is now plunged.

Extract from French explorer Henri Mouhout, 1860

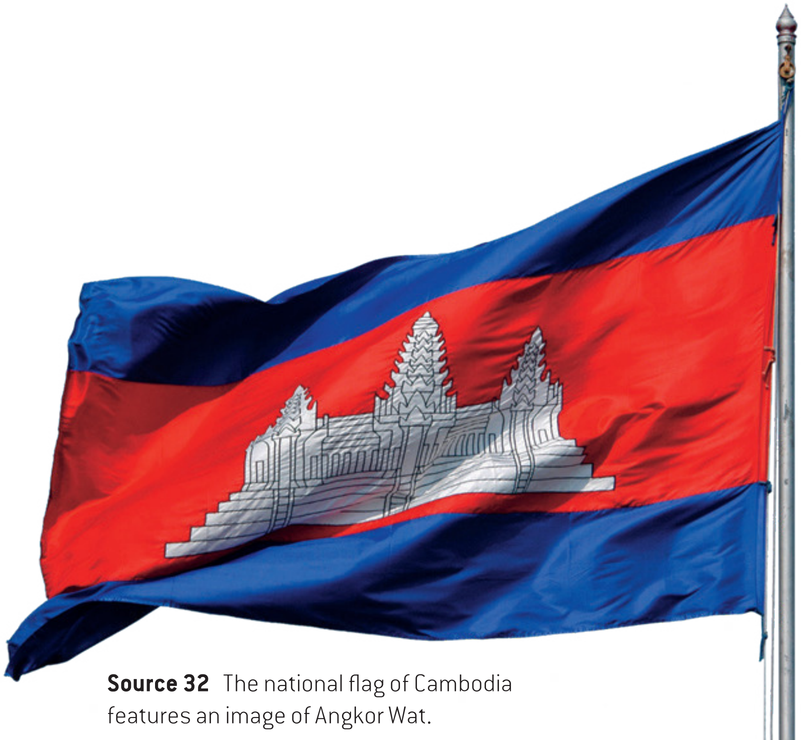
Source 29 A row of *garudas* carved into one of the stone walls at Angkor Wat

Source 30

At a first sight one is most impressed with the magnitude, minute detail, high finish and elegant proportions of this temple, and then to the bewildered beholder arise mysterious afterthoughts – who built it? When was it built? And where now are the descendants of those who built it? It is doubtful if these questions will ever be satisfactorily answered. There exist no credible traditions – all is absurd fable or extravagant legend.

Extract from Frank Vincent Jr., 'The Wonderful Ruins of Cambodia', *Journal of the American Geographical Society of New York* (1878), Vol. 10, p. 234

Source 31 Angkor Wat



Source 32 The national flag of Cambodia features an image of Angkor Wat.

Modern-day use

The people of modern-day Cambodia are very proud of their heritage. Khmer temples are so much a part of Cambodia today that an image of Angkor Wat is featured on the national flag (see Source 32). Angkor Wat is now protected as a World Heritage site and is a major tourist destination for international visitors. Despite the decline of the Khmer Empire, the site has been preserved as a temple and remains a significant religious centre for Buddhist pilgrims (people who travel to religious sites) from Cambodia, Burma and Japan.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

The purpose of Angkor Wat

Due to the lack of primary evidence on the Khmer Empire, historians are often trying to fill in the gaps. Although all historians agree on the significance of Angkor Wat, many still argue over the exact purpose for which it was built. Despite all of the historical research that has taken place since Angkor Wat was rediscovered in 1860 (see topic 16.13 on page 16.45), historians still contest whether it was built as a temple, a tomb, an observatory – or all three. Source 33 outlines the evidence supporting each theory.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 33 The key arguments for each theory regarding the purpose of Angkor Wat

Possible purpose	Supporting evidence
Temple	• The temple clearly honours Vishnu, and the narratives in the stone carvings tell the story of Suryavarman II's reign, often symbolised as struggles between Vishnu and Krishna. • Angkor Wat was built in the same overall style and pattern of other Khmer temples.
Tomb	• The temple faces west, but most other temples in the area face east, indicating a different purpose. • The stone carvings progress in an anti-clockwise direction, instead of the more usual clockwise. The anti-clockwise direction was associated with Brahmin funeral rituals in Khmer culture. • A container was found in the central tower that may have been used to store the remains of the king.
Observatory	• If you stand at the western gate on the summer solstice before dawn, the sun rises directly over Angkor Wat's central tower. • Careful measurements of the temple show that the most common measurements relate to things such as the exact length of the solar year. • The name Suryavarman means 'protector of the sun'.

Source 34 A Buddhist monk performing a ritual at Angkor Wat

16.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the half-bird, half-man creature in Hindu mythology.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why Angkor Wat was converted to a Buddhist temple.

3 **Explain** the significance of Angkor Wat to the Khmer Empire. Use the 5Rs (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit') to help structure your response.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 30.

a What is the tone of voice used in the source? Provide an example.

b Summarise the opinions or impressions the writer formed of the Khmer Empire.

c Using the concept of continuity and change, explain how this source is still relatable today.

Apply

5 Read Source 33. Which purpose do you think is most likely? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

Source 35 A sandstone sculpture of a *garuda*

16A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

The Khmer Empire's physical features

Situated around Tonle Sap Lake, the Khmer Empire was able to benefit greatly from the seasonal floodplain (area of land prone to flooding) of the Mekong River, which ensured a stable supply of fresh water.

Furthermore, the empire was well protected due to a variety of physical features. First, two rugged mountain ranges along the western coastline called the Cardamom Mountains and the Elephant Mountains helped to prevent any naval forces attacking the Empire. Second, the thick dense rainforest surrounding the northern and eastern sides of the Tonle Sap area provided another barrier to any land forces.

Source 36 An aerial image of Cambodia, that highlights the relief (shape) of the land; it has been coloured to show the prominent vegetation.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Enlarged map
Physical features of present-day Cambodia

PHYSICAL FEATURES OF PRESENT-DAY CAMBODIA

Source: Oxford University Press

Source 37 This map of present-day Cambodia shows its rivers, lakes, borders and capital city. It also includes grassland, shrubland, forest, mountains and the sea floor.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing a map

Maps are geographical representations of all or part of the Earth's surface. They show a group of features in terms of their relative size and position. They use a system of symbols, governed by a set of conventions (accepted rules), to communicate a sense of place. You may think that maps are only useful in geography, but they are also an important source of primary information for historical inquiries. It is therefore important to be able to understand and analyse maps, so that you can use information from them as evidence.

Use the information below to help you understand the information provided on maps:

- **Orientation:** It is a convention for cartographers (map-makers) to place a north point on maps. This helps the reader to establish position and direction.
- **Title:** Like a newspaper headline, the title of a map should tell the reader 'what', 'where' and 'when' about the map. The date should help the reader fit the map into its proper chronological period. (Note: the date in the title may not be the date the map was created.)
- **Legend:** This is a key that explains the symbols used by the cartographer. To visualise reality, you need to be able to convert various shapes, colours and textures into the features they represent.
- **Scale:** This is the proportion of the map to the ground. It helps the reader to judge actual distances. Scale is most often shown as a linear measure (for example, 1 centimetre on the map represents 100 kilometres of actual distance).
- **Grid:** Maps often show parallels of latitude and meridians of longitude, so that the area can be placed in its proper geographic location on the globe.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Sources 36 and 37.
   a Use the legend in Source 37 to identify the different landscapes and physical features of Cambodia. List all your observations in point form.
   b Note the different landscapes and geographical features shown in Source 37. How many are there? Which of these features act as natural barriers? Which of these are useful for developing agriculture?

2 **Create** your own map of Cambodia.
   a In your notebook, copy (or trace) the main physical features of the aerial image in Source 36 and the map in Source 37. Include the modern-day borders of Cambodia, major rivers, lakes, vegetation types and mountains. Make sure you also include 'BOLTSS' – border, orientation, legend, title, scale and source.
   b Research the extent of the Khmer Empire at its peak. Think of an appropriate symbol or legend to represent the empire, and then add it to your map.
   c Add the location of the Angkor region to your map.
   d Apply the concept of cause and effect by annotating the features on your map that significantly influenced the settlement and lifestyle of the Khmer people.

Extend your understanding

1 Conduct some research online to find a climate graph of Cambodia.
   a **Analyse** the graph by studying the change in temperature across the year and the change in rainfall throughout the year. Write a paragraph explaining what seasonal trends you see, and reporting figures such as the maximum and minimum levels of each.
   b **Summarise** the cause and effect of the climatic conditions on the establishment of the Khmer Empire.

2 **Investigate** the floating markets of the Mekong River. Places such as Chau Doc on the border of Cambodia and Vietnam are a modern-day example of the Khmer lifestyle. Create a collage poster of images, comparing the continuity and change of a modern-day floating market to life during the Khmer Empire.

16.8 Village life in the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the way of life in a Khmer village, including water management systems.

During the early days of the Khmer Empire, people used agriculture not only to feed a growing population, but also to trade and become extremely wealthy. The heart of the Khmer agricultural system was the Mekong River and Tonle Sap Lake, and villages were established all around the floodplains of the lake. Together with the inventiveness and hard work of the Khmer people, these two water sources enabled farmers across the empire to harvest vast amounts of rice. Tonle Sap Lake was also the centre of the fishing industry.

Water for rice cultivation, transport and trade

*

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the agricultural practices that were key to the success of the Khmer Empire and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

The ability of the Khmer people to exploit, direct and control the waters of the Mekong River and Tonle Sap Lake was key to the empire's success. When the Mekong River flooded during the wet season, Tonle Sap Lake would swell to cover an area of around 10 000 square kilometres. Once it was full, the Khmer would channel water from the lake into a sophisticated network of reservoirs (known as barays) and canals, so that it could be stored and used throughout the dry season when there was very little rain. This enabled the Khmer to harvest rice three or four times per year, while most other civilisations across South-East Asia could produce only one or two harvests.

At the peak of the Khmer Empire, it is thought that farmers planted over 50 million fields of rice. The water management system was vital to the growth of these crops. The Angkor region could at times suffer from drought, so it was vital to maintain a constant supply of water to keep the crops growing.

Source 1 A reservoir known as the West Baray, constructed in the eleventh century CE

Source 2 Rice production continues today in Cambodia much as it did during the time of the Khmer Empire. These farmers are harvesting a rice field close to Angkor Wat.

Source 3 Water served an important religious role in the Khmer Empire. It was used to fill the moats of temples like the one surrounding Angkor Wat.

Fish could be allowed into this canal system, which meant a plentiful supply of food that was easily available to people living in the rice-growing areas. This created a thriving economy across the Angkor region.

Until late in the Khmer Empire, there were very few roads available for transport and trade. Instead, the Khmer used the canals and rivers across the Angkor region to travel and transport goods by boat.

Trade within the empire occurred at marketplaces, which were large open squares where traders sat on straw mats to sell their produce. A levy, or tax, was paid to officials in order to secure a space. Chinese ambassador Zhou Daguan's description of the marketplace in 1296 (see Source 4) noted that it was mainly women who ran the market.

The modern-day countries that were once part of the Khmer empire are to this day world leaders in regard to female participation in trade.

Source 4

> The local people who know how to trade are all women. So when a Chinese goes to this country, the first thing he must do is take in a woman, partly with a view to profiting from her trading abilities.

Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

Water for religion

The water management system across the Angkor region was a great achievement in terms of food production and the economy, and also served an important religious function for the Khmer people. To the Khmer, the power of the Mekong River was godlike. Recent archaeological discoveries suggest that the waters provided by the monsoon rain and the great river were considered sacred.

Water was used not only to grow rice crops, but also to fill the moats that surrounded Khmer temples (such as Angkor Wat: see Source 3) and royal buildings. Water was channelled to parts of the empire where new temple building was taking place in order to support the growing numbers of people who had moved there to work on the construction. The barays were fed water through a series of dams and channels. Often the barays were constructed before any temple-building began. This ensured that the people building the temples had a constant supply of food and water.

The regular supply of water increased the size of local rice crops and led to increased trade. This made the empire wealthier and enabled the kings to build even more temples and religious monuments.

By using ground-penetrating radar, modern archaeologists have been able to uncover a vast network of channels and moats built during the Khmer Empire that had been covered by the jungle or built over by later generations.

Analyse this!
Zhou Daguan on trade

Daily life in the Khmer Empire

The artist's impression in Source 6 shows a village on the banks of Tonle Sap Lake during the Khmer Empire. A large part of what we know about village life in Angkor comes from the writings of Zhou Daguan, a Chinese ambassador who visited the Angkor region in 1296. According to his writings, the weather influenced daily life in Angkor dramatically – from what people wore and ate, and the systems they put in place to store and move water, to the way in which they built their houses.

Tonle Sap Lake was an essential part of life for the Khmer people. The water level of the lake could rise to 9 metres during the wet season. During the dry season, it could fall to as low as 1 metre. This meant that some houses built on the edge of the lake had to be built on stilts to be above the water level during the wet season. Others were designed to float on the surface of the water.

For peasants and farmers, daily life consisted of fishing on the lake in communal 'house ponds', tending to animals, and tending to the rice fields.

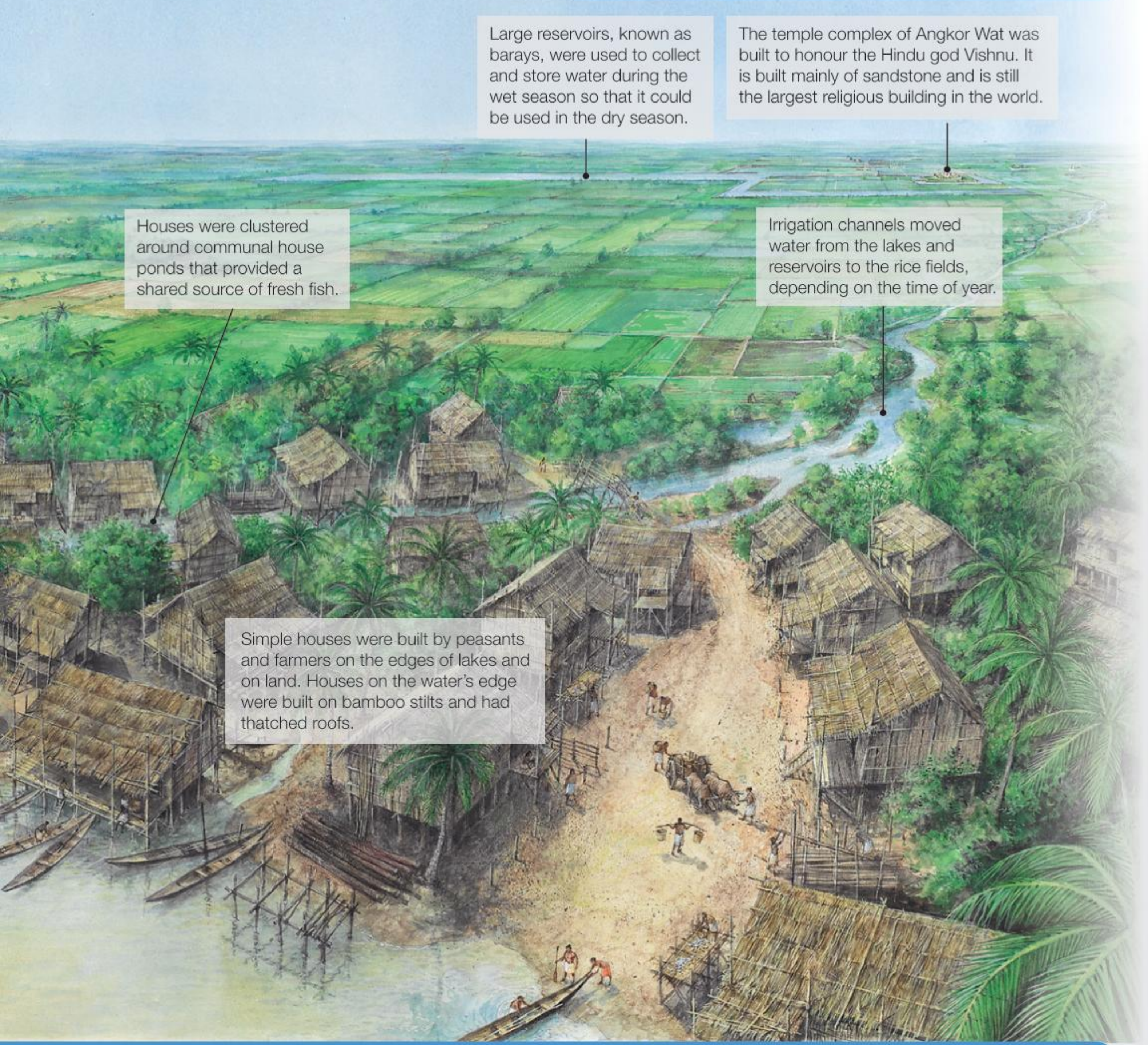
Source 5 An artist's impression of daily life in the Khmer Empire

Interactive
Daily life in the Khmer Empire

16.8 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. **Describe** how the Khmer people controlled the waters of the Mekong River and the water that fell as rain during the monsoons. Use specific terms (such as 'canal').
2. **Describe** the construction of houses in a Khmer village.
3. **Explain** how moats and barays were used by the Khmer people.
4. **Explain** why a Chinese ambassador is so important to our understanding of daily life in the Khmer Empire.



Analyse

5 What modern technologies are archaeologists using to locate channels and moats constructed during the Khmer Empire? **Consider** what the location of these channels and moats might tell historians about the Khmer Empire. Remember, when you consider something, you should think about it carefully before making a decision.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** whether the water management system built across the Angkor region was a significant achievement. You can use the 5Rs of historical significance to structure your response (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit').

7 **Create** a concept map that shows the many uses and flow-on effects of water in the Khmer Empire.

16.9 The structure of Khmer society

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» distinguish between the different roles of key social groups in the Khmer Empire

» explain how the social structure shaped daily life in the Khmer Empire.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the structure of Khmer society

Like many societies across the ancient world, the Khmer Empire was organised according to a strict hierarchy, where each group within society had certain rights and duties they were expected to perform. Khmer society was organised around the king and the village temples, where political and economic decisions were carried out.

Khmer kings

At the very top of Khmer society was the king. From the time Jayavarman II had himself declared *chakravartin* ('ruler of the world') in 802 CE, the Khmer kings served both as political and religious leaders.

Revered as *devaraja* ('god-kings'), Khmer rulers were believed to have the powers of both gods and kings. They were the source of all legal and religious power. Members of lower social groups, such as the nobles and officials, swore an oath of loyalty to the king. There was the threat of eternal punishment if they broke this oath.

Source 6 This stone carving found on the wall of the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom shows a Khmer king at his royal palace.

The king, in turn, was expected to respect his people and their social positions, and to acknowledge the local rulers within his kingdom.

The king was the main force behind the creation of public buildings and works. These projects were carried out to guarantee the prosperity of the country and to show the power of the king and the empire. Temples were generally dedicated to Hindu gods, such as Shiva and Vishnu. It was good for the king's authority and reputation for him to be associated with these gods.

Nobles and officials

The next most powerful group in the social hierarchy of the Khmer Empire was the nobles and officials. Much of this group was made up of the king's family and relatives. Most of the administrative work across the empire was carried out by these people.

Local nobles and officials in each part of the empire managed their land through the village temples. The priests of each village temple collected crops from the local farmers (as taxes) and provided a storehouse for grain. These village temples, in turn, provided support to the local farmers. Across the empire, this network of village temples reported to bigger regional temples, and these regional temples ultimately reported to a central temple linked to the king.

Artisans and professionals

The next group in the social hierarchy was artisans and professional workers, such as architects, merchants, fishermen and skilled craftsmen. This was a very small group in society, and very little information relating to them has been uncovered by historians.

Peasants

Peasants made up the largest group in Khmer society by far. Most of the evidence we have today about this group comes from stone carvings on temple walls. Most were rice farmers or workers who were forced to work and pay taxes in the form of grain to nobles, through the temple priests. They were also required to serve in the military and provide labour for building projects if so ordered by the king.

Most peasants lived in simple houses made of wood with thatched roofs. Many of these houses were grouped around communal ponds ('house ponds') that were a shared source of fish. Most peasant houses near Tonle Sap Lake were built on stilts, while others were designed to float. This ensured they were not washed away during the wet season.

Source 7 A sandstone statue of Vishnu (in a horse-headed incarnation), from the pre-Angkor period

Source 8 This stone carving found on the wall of the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom shows a group of slaves captured during a war, being transported in restraints.

Slaves

At the bottom of the Khmer social hierarchy were slaves. Although it is difficult to estimate the number of slaves and the size of this social group in Khmer society, we do know that there were a number of different types of slaves. The first type of slaves were foreign prisoners of war captured during Khmer battles with rival kingdoms; the second type of slaves were bought and sold legally or forced into slavery in order to pay debts they owed; and the third type of slaves lived and worked at temples and were considered the property of those temples.

Source 9

> The women age very quickly, no doubt because they marry and give birth when too young. When they are twenty or thirty years old, they look like Chinese women who are forty or fifty.
>
> Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

Women in Khmer society

Unlike many other societies around the world at this time, the position of women in most social classes during the Khmer Empire was relatively strong. Zhou Daguan commented on the strength of the position of Khmer women and their social freedoms in his writings on the Khmer Empire in 1296. He observed that they could inherit land and property, and that some held political posts, including positions as judges. The king's personal bodyguards were women, for instance, as it was believed that women were more trustworthy and loyal. Zhou Daguan also noted that such hard work impacted on their appearance (see Source 9).

16.9 Check your learning

Review and understand

1 How was society organised during the Khmer Empire? How many social classes were there?

2 **Recall** the responsibilities and freedom of women during the Khmer Empire. Were women in a strong social position for the time?

Apply and analyse

3 What was the largest single social group in Khmer society? **Summarise** the roles and responsibilities of these people.

4 **Explain** how nobles and officials administered their land. How were peasants expected to pay taxes to these nobles and officials?

Evaluate and create

5 In small groups, **create** and perform a role-play that captures daily life in Khmer society. Choose a scenario below or create your own. Try to include a few different social groups.

- peasants – paying taxes to the temple priest and providing labour for the king's projects
- artisans – meeting with a local noble while constructing a temple and ordering slaves to complete certain jobs
- the king – giving an 'oath of loyalty' ceremony for some nobles and military, with a priest leading rituals to the Hindu gods throughout.

16.10 Daily life for the rich and poor

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the standards of living of different social groups in the Khmer Empire

» describe the way of life in the Khmer Empire as depicted through the writings of Chinese ambassador Zhou Daguan.

There are no surviving written records kept by the Khmer people about daily life in their empire. Instead, the only written records that exist are those written by Zhou Daguan, a Chinese ambassador. From his writings in 1296 we have been able to learn about the daily lives of different groups in Khmer society, from the king and nobles right down to the peasants and slaves.

Clothing

Both men and women in Khmer society went bare-chested and barefoot. Their clothing was simple, and mostly consisted of a cloth wrapped around the waist. Although ordinary women wore no hair ornaments, they could wear jewellery such as golden rings and bracelets. If women were particularly beautiful, they might be sent to the court to serve the king or the royal family. In his writings, Zhou Daguan describes the type of clothing worn by a number of social groups.

Source 10

From the king down, the men and women all wear hair wound up in a knot, and go naked to the waist, wrapped only in a cloth. When they are not out and about, they wind a larger piece of cloth over the small one.

Only the king can wear material with a full pattern of flowers on it. On his head he wears a gold crown … Sometimes he goes without a crown, and simply wears a chain of fragrant flowers such as jasmine wound round the braids of hair. Around his neck he wears a large pearl weighing about four pounds [approximately 2 kilograms]. On his wrists and ankles and all his fingers and toes he wears gold bracelets and rings …

Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

Source 11 A Cambodian man wearing a *krama* – a traditional headcloth

Housing

From Zhou Daguan we also gain some insight into the way ordinary people lived in their homes.

Source 12

At the lowest level come the homes of the common people. They only use thatch for their roofs, and dare not put up a single tile. Although the sizes of their homes vary according to how wealthy they are, in the end they do not dare emulate [copy] the styles of the great houses …

Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

Analyse this!
Zhou Daguan on housing

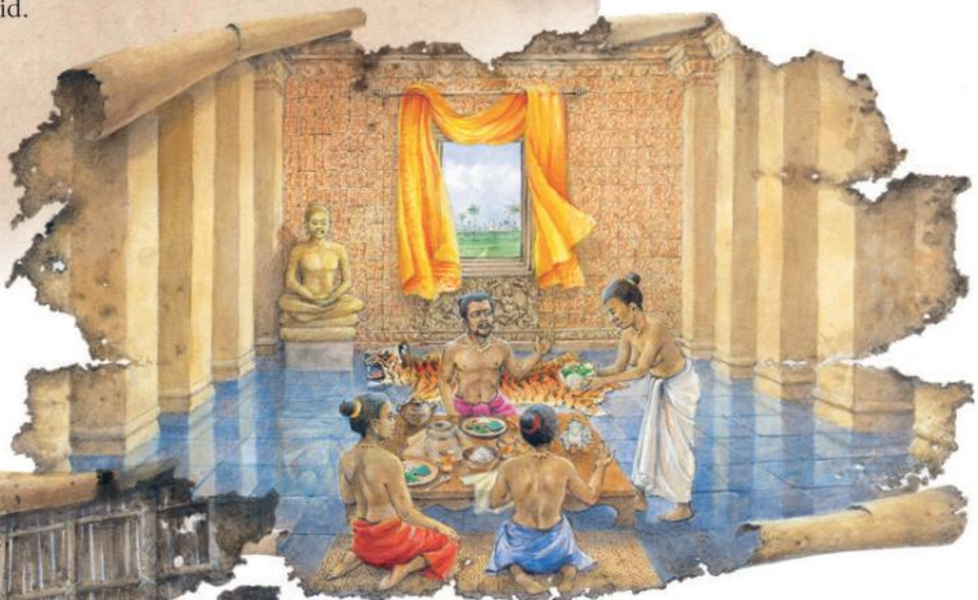
Food

From the early days of the Khmer Empire, and even well before, rice and fish formed the staples of the Khmer diet. In addition to these, the Khmer kings and officials also ate a number of tropical fruits and vegetables, such as bananas and melons. Stone carvings on the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom show scenes of pigs being slaughtered and eaten. Kings, nobles and officials may also have had their food served to them on gold or silver plates. There is even some evidence to suggest that they may have used cutlery, although some historians contest this.

For other groups in society, the types of foods prepared and the way in which they were eaten was much simpler. Zhou Daguan gives us a good understanding of the ways in which ordinary people cooked and ate in their homes.

Source 13

> Ordinary families have houses but nothing else by way of tables, chairs, jars, or buckets. They use a clay pot to cook rice in, and make sauce with a clay saucepan. For a stove they sink three stones into the ground, and for spoons they use coconut husks … When serving rice they use clay or copper dishes from China; sauce comes in a small bowl made from the leaves of a tree, which doesn't leak even when it is full of liquid. They also make small spoons from the leaves of the nypa palm, which they spoon liquid into their mouths with, and throw away after using.
>
> Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296



Source 14 An artist's impression of how Khmer kings and nobles may have lived and eaten

Source 15 An artist's impression of how Khmer peasants may have lived and eaten

KEY SKILL
Historical perspectives & interpretations

Analysing perspectives

Historical sources often convey the creator's point of view on an issue or event. When studying a topic, historians aim to understand a wide variety of views. This ensures their knowledge is as balanced as can be, allowing them to develop an informed, unbiased interpretation of the past. It is an important skill to be able to identify and describe the creator's view of places, people and events in sources.

There are three key elements to look for when analysing perspective: context, opinions and inferences (see Source 16). Where possible, it is useful to highlight or colour-code the source according to each element (see Source 17).

Source 16 The three things to look for when analysing perspective are context, opinion and inference.

What to look for	Explanation
Context	Context is the situation in which the source was produced. What background information do you have about the creator of the source and their society at the time? How would you feel if you were in the creator's shoes?
Opinions	Ask yourself, what opinions are expressed in the source? Sources can show a bias when they convey strong thoughts or feelings which are one-sided. If the source is written, ask yourself which specific words or phrases show the writer's attitudes and feelings. This is called *emotive language* as it causes people to feel strong emotions. Visual sources can also make you feel strongly.
Inferences	An inference is an indirect message or conclusion that is implied (hinted at) in the source but not stated outright. People do not always spell out what they are thinking. The reader needs to use clues in the text to 'read between the lines' and infer meanings. The creator's attitude towards something can usually be inferred by what is written and how it is expressed.

Source 17

Context: The name of the place is given.

Context: Travelling in a foreign country

Opinion: Emotive language suggests a strong opinion.

The people of Cambodia often cure themselves of many illnesses by plunging into water and washing the head again and again. Nevertheless, the traveller meets many lepers along the way. Even when these unfortunates sleep and eat among their fellow-countrymen, no protest is made. By some it is said the leprosy is the outcome of climatic conditions. Even one of the sovereigns (kings) fell victim to the disease, and so the people do not look on it as a disgrace … As in our country, drugs can be brought in the market; of these, with their strange names, I have no knowledge. There are also sorcerers who practise their arts on the Cambodians. How utterly absurd!

Inference: He feels sympathy for them.

Inference: This adverb suggests he is surprised or it is unusual.

Inference: They are not a common item in his home country.

Extract from Zhou Daguan regarding how the Khmer society coped with illness, in *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

Continued on next page

Source 18

Filled with a deep sympathy for the good of the world, the king swore his oath: 'All the beings who are plunged in the ocean of existence, may I draw them out by virtue of this good work. And may the kings of Cambodia who come after me, attached to goodness … attain with their wives, dignitaries and friends the place of deliverance where there is no more illness.'

An inscription on a wall of a hospital built by Jayavarman VII, explaining why he built it; extract from D. P. Chandler, *A History of Cambodia*, Silkworm Books, 1993

Additional resource
Extract from D.P. Chandler

Continued from previous page

Source 18 is a translation of an inscription on the wall of a hospital. There were over 100 hospitals and 100 rest houses (shelters with fires) developed by King Jayavarman VII. Known as *arogayasalas*, they all had the same temple design and were part of a massive infrastructure project following a devastating war with the Cham. Many of the ruins are still scattered throughout north-east Thailand (see Source 19, for example).

For more information on this skill, see page 216 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 19 The ruins of an *arogayasala* located on the border of Cambodia and Thailand

Practise the skill

1 **Summarise** Zhou Daguan's point of view on the Khmer approach to health in Source 17. Provide examples to support your answer.

2 Highlight the three key elements – context, opinions and inferences – on a copy of Source 18, and add annotations. Source 18 is available as a printable document on your obook pro.

3 **Summarise** the author's point of view on the Khmer approach to health in Source 18. Provide an example to support your answer.

4 Using the points of view in Sources 17 and 18, **summarise** the Khmer society's approach towards health and illness.

16.10 Check your learning

Analyse

1 **Distinguish** between the lifestyles of the rich and the poor in Khmer society. Remember, when you distinguish between two things, you should talk about how they are different. List at least five examples.

2 **Analyse** Source 10. Use the 'DAMMIT U' structure (see page 208 of 'The history toolkit') to help structure your response. Remember to think of both the strengths and weaknesses of the source when discussing usefulness.

3 What does Zhou Daguan think of ordinary families in the Khmer Empire?

Apply

4 **Create** an illustration of the king's clothing, according to Source 10. Annotate the features you have included.

16.11 Religion in the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the religious beliefs, values and practices that the Khmer people lived by.

animism
a belief system teaching that all creatures, objects and places have a spirit

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on religion in the Khmer Empire

Perhaps more than any other single factor, religion had the greatest influence on Khmer society. It affected the way society was organised, the types of buildings that were constructed, and the way people chose to live their lives.

Animism

Long before the rise of the Khmer Empire, the people of South-East Asia who settled along the Mekong River and around the edge of Tonle Sap Lake worshipped spirits of the natural world. This belief system, known as **animism**, involved the worship of all living things (such as animals, humans and plants) as well as natural phenomena (such as the wind, rain and sun). In particular, the Khmer people worshipped the spirits of their ancestors by making offerings of food, flowers and wine in order to please them. Although this type of spirit worship continues in a small way to this day, from around 100 BCE, religions brought by traders from India and China – who were moving through the region – spread across South-East Asia.

Source 20 A twelfth-century statue of the Hindu god Vishnu at Angkor Wat; during the time of the Khmer Empire, it was the responsibility of temple priests to care for statues like this one that were believed to be inhabited by the spirit of the gods.

Hinduism

Over many hundreds of years, the Indian religion of Hinduism spread across parts of South-East Asia, including the Mekong River area. While historians think that Buddhism was more popular in the early Khmer kingdom of Funan, Hinduism became the main religion in the kingdom of Chenla, which later became part of the Khmer Empire. For the next 400 years Hinduism was the dominant religion of the Khmer Empire.

At the time the Khmer Empire was founded, historians believe that Hinduism may have seemed like an attractive belief system to the Khmer people, mainly because the Indian traders who visited their region were prosperous, and brought with them evidence of an advanced and cultured society. While we cannot be sure of their reasoning, we do know that it was around this time that the Khmer people began to build temples to the Hindu gods.

Although Hinduism is a religion with many different gods, the beliefs of the Khmer people focused particularly on a group of three Hindu gods:

- Brahma is the god of creation
- Shiva is the god of destruction and re-creation
- Vishnu is the god who protects, bringing order and harmony to the land.

Source 21 Apsara carvings decorating temple walls at Angkor Wat

Hindus believe that their gods live on a sacred mountain (known as Mount Meru) in the Himalayas, surrounded by seven seas. These gods are protected and cared for by dancing female spirits known as apsaras (see Sources 21 to 23).

Evidence of the influence of Hinduism on Khmer society can be seen in the many stone temples, carved inscriptions and religious monuments found all across the Angkor region today. Inscriptions were often written in Sanskrit (the sacred language of Hinduism), and countless stone carvings of Hindu gods and apsaras decorate the temple walls.

The Khmer people believed that the gods controlled every aspect of life. They consulted the gods on all matters – from the best time to plant and harvest crops to the best person to marry.

KEY CONCEPT
Continuity & change

Apsara dance

According to Hindu beliefs, apsaras are dancing female spirits believed to care for Hindu gods at Mount Meru. They are depicted on stone carvings in many of the temples in the Angkor region, with some temples having dedicated halls for them. Apsaras were believed to entertain and distract anyone who threatened the peace or power of the Khmer kings or the Hindu gods.

Apsaras represented water and clouds, and could shape-shift. To symbolise their abilities, an apsara dance was developed and performed for the king. This dance was very graceful in movement to mimic the apsaras, with many intricate gestures narrating religious myths and legends.

Source 22 An apsara dancer at Angkor Wat

The dancers wore elaborate silk costuming, jewellery and golden headdresses. Depictions of this clothing can be seen in the stone carvings at Angkor. The golden headdresses represent the iconic 'temple-mountains' of the Angkor region (see topic 16.6 on page 16.16).

In the 1940s, this tradition was revitalised by the Royal Cambodian Ballet and the apsara dance was performed at sacred ceremonies or state events. The prima ballerina (lead female dancer) toured internationally as an apsara dancer, showcasing Cambodia's culture. However, the Khmer Rouge communist party almost destroyed the tradition in the 1970s, after carrying out mass murders on those who practised traditional arts.

Surviving dancers ensured that the heritage of the dance was taught to the next generation. It is now considered a centrepiece of Cambodian culture and the national identity and is also a significant tourist attraction.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 214 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 23 Apsara dancers at Preah Khan Temple

Buddhism

Although Buddhism had existed across South-East Asia for as long as Hinduism, it was not until Jayavarman VII came to power in 1181 that it became an official religion of the Khmer Empire. Like Hinduism, Buddhism is a religion that originated in India. It was founded by an Indian prince named Siddhartha Gautama, who would later become known to his followers as Buddha. Buddhists believe that to end pain and suffering, a person must work towards spiritual enlightenment through cycles of reincarnation (rebirth). On reaching this state of enlightenment (known as Nirvana) a person is freed from all the pain and bad things associated with being human. There are two main schools of Buddhism – Theravada Buddhism (the oldest and strictest school) and Mahayana Buddhism (a later school). As Buddhism spread throughout Asia, it influenced the history, culture and thinking of many civilisations, including the Khmer Empire.

During his rule, Jayavarman VII, a follower of Mahayana Buddhism, ordered many Buddhist temples to be built. Despite his efforts, Mahayana Buddhism did not remain the state religion of the Khmer Empire after his death in 1218. Instead, Theravada Buddhism became the state religion, and it remains the official religion of Cambodia to this day.

Source 24 The Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom was built by Jayavarman VII as the official state temple of Mahayana Buddhism. The Bayon Temple is decorated with over 200 stone faces. Many historians believe that these faces represent a combination of the faces of Jayavarman VII and Buddha.

16.11 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Recall** how the religion of Hinduism was introduced to the Khmer Empire. Why do historians think this became a popular religion?

2 **Define** 'Nirvana'.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** how the apsara dance has continued since the Khmer Empire and changed over time. Include in your summary what happened during the 1970s.

4 Look closely at Source 24.

a Many historians believe that the faces covering the Bayon Temple are a combination of two faces. Whose faces decorate the Bayon Temple?

b **Explain** why someone might have wanted to be portrayed in this way.

Apply

5 **Investigate** the key differences between Hinduism, Mahayana Buddhism and Theravada Buddhism. Create a presentation of your findings and present it to your class.

16B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Understanding daily life in the Khmer Empire

Because historians have very few sources of evidence relating to what everyday life was like for people in the Khmer Empire, the sources that they do have become much more historically significant and valuable to our understanding. Stone carvings on temple walls depicting the activities of daily life, such as those from the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom, are precious primary sources. Studying such sources closely in order to gather valuable historical evidence is an important skill for all historians.

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing historical representations

Analysing historical images is a valuable skill to develop. When analysing a photograph, painting or stone carving, it is useful to look at the following features:

- **Check the composition of the work:** What is shown in the scene? How do we know what is happening? Is the entire scene or work shown, or just a section of it?
- **Identify any important figures:** Who is shown in the scene and why? How many figures are there? Are they depicted as individuals or are they all the same? Are any figures larger than others? If so, why might they be shown this way?
- **Look closely at the background:** Does the background provide information about where the action is happening? Is the setting clearly shown? Are there any other decorations?
- **Look for small details:** Are there any small details hidden in the scene? Examine clothing, tools, weapons, animals, buildings and other objects.
- **Look for anything unusual:** Are there any elements in the scene that are confusing – either because they are new to you, or because they do not fit your understanding of the period? Make a note of these and research them further, using other primary or secondary sources.
- **Try to identify attitudes, personal points of view or bias:** When analysing a scene or work of art, keep in mind that it may not necessarily be an accurate representation of what actually happened. Remember that while a particular artwork or representation might show common people, it was almost certainly commissioned (ordered and paid for) by someone with money (such as a king or nobleman) who may have been interested in making things look a certain way for their own interests.

For more information on this skill, see page 205 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Sources 25 and 26 are photographs of stone relief carvings (meaning they have been sculpted into a flat surface of stone) on the walls of the Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom. Source 25 has been annotated for you. Your task is to **analyse** Source 26 in the same manner, taking into account the features described above and the questions you should be asking yourself. Source 26 is available as a printable document on your obook pro.

Additional resource
A stone relief carving of Khmer troops going into battle

This is a scene of a busy market with happy traders. This might have reflected well on Jayavarman VII, the king responsible for building the temple, because it shows the wealth and prosperity of his empire.

Buyers, perhaps bartering or haggling

Female traders are depicted with their hair tied up on their heads, and jewellery and garments tied around their waists.

These fish are confusing – they are not actually part of the market scene. Maybe they are part of another scene that is not shown in this photograph.

Stalls are out in the open, with some shelter provided by what looks like a canopy. The canopy looks quite low (making the woman crouch), but this could be because the whole scene needed to fit a narrow panel of sandstone.

This scene probably extends beyond the edges of the photograph, showing more trades and products.

One trader appears to be preparing something, perhaps a fish.

Source 25 A stone relief carving of a Khmer market scene

Extend your understanding

1 Imagine you have been commissioned by your principal to make a mural of everyday life at your school, which is to be displayed next to the school's entrance. What would you include in your mural and what would you not include? Remember, the principal wants to display this at the front of the school, so consider what the purpose of the mural is.

2 Draw a design for the mural, and annotate it to **explain** the composition, choice of figures, background and details.

3 Once you have completed your design and explanation, reflect on what your school mural teaches you about ancient stone relief carvings, in terms of what is likely to be shown and what is unlikely to be shown. What types of things can we hope to learn from these Khmer carvings, and what kinds of things will we not be able to learn?

Source 26 A stone relief carving of Khmer troops going into battle

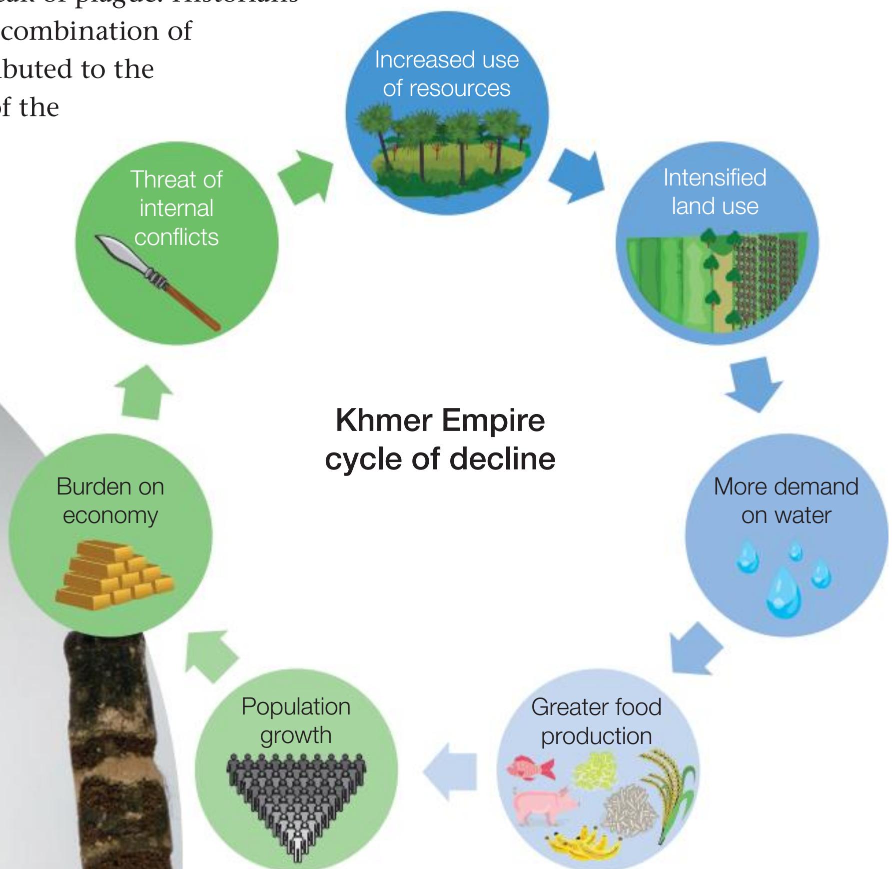
16.12 Internal challenges for the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain theories about the decline of the Khmer Empire, including the rise of Theravada Buddhism and the breakdown of Angkor's water management system.

Time and time again over the course of human history, we see evidence of the rise and fall of mighty empires, and the Khmer Empire was no different. During the rule of Jayavarman VII, the Khmer Empire reached its peak, with a large rural population stretched over 5 million hectares; but after his death in 1218, the empire entered a period of slow decline that led to its fall in around 1431. Some of the challenges faced by the empire came from within the empire itself, such as the breakdown of the water management system, economic problems and changes in religion. Other challenges came from outside the empire (see topic 16.13), such as changes in the weather, wars and even an outbreak of plague. Historians now believe that a combination of these factors contributed to the eventual collapse of the empire.



Source 1 Historians believe the Khmer Empire may have entered a causal cycle of decline which involved environmental, social, economic and political factors.

Source 2 This Khmer statue of Buddha is in Sukhotai History Park, Thailand. Historians believe that changes in religion may have contributed to the fall of the Khmer Empire.

Breakdown of the water management system

The water management system across the Angkor region allowed the Khmer Empire to grow and thrive from early in its history. Water was crucial to trade, travel, communication and the irrigation of rice crops, so the failure of the system had serious consequences. Towards the end of the empire, it appears that changes made to the local environment (such as the clearing of forests for farming) affected the water that collected in the system.

Some historians argue that overpopulation caused unsustainable deforestation (decrease in forest areas), which affected the irrigation network in two ways. First, when forests are cut down, more water runs off the land into canals and rivers. This water carries large amounts of soil with it. As a result, the Khmer canals and irrigation channels became clogged with soil and silt (other fine materials). This is called 'soil sterilisation'. It eventually killed the fish that lived in the canals and reduced the amount of water available for irrigation. Historians also believe the stagnant water could have led to an increase in water-borne diseases and infectious outbreaks, such as malaria.

Source 3 After the fall of the Khmer Empire in around 1431, the city of Angkor was left largely abandoned. Many of the buildings – such as Ta Prohm Temple, shown here – were reclaimed by the forest.

Second, from the thirteenth century onwards, historians believe the Khmer villages suffered from over-intensified land use, which degraded the land. The number of rice harvests possible each year dropped from three or four to one or two. Canals also broke down, preventing the transport of crops. Without excess rice to trade, the prosperity of the empire declined.

In addition to this, extended periods of drought are thought to have caused serious problems for the water management system. Lack of water may have caused the canals to dry up completely and damaged many of the barays (reservoirs).

Economic problems

During his rule, Jayavarman VII embarked upon a lavish building program, constructing a large number of temples, monuments, roads and hospitals. He also conquered many new territories, expanding the empire considerably. Thanks to these achievements, Jayavarman is remembered as perhaps the greatest Khmer king. However, these achievements came at a price.

The building program ordered by Jayavarman required finance, equipment and labour, and was enormously expensive. Added to the cost of the building projects was the cost of maintaining a large army to protect and defend the borders of the empire. A number of historians now believe that the physical and financial burden of both these investments ultimately contributed to the decline of the empire.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on internal challenges for the Khmer Empire

Changes in religion

Many historians also believe that a shift in the religious beliefs of the Khmer people probably influenced the downfall of their empire. It is likely that this may have begun when King Indravarman II introduced Theravada Buddhism as the state religion in the late thirteenth century.

Theravada Buddhism caused a great deal of change across the Khmer Empire, as it meant that kings were no longer regarded as divine religious rulers, as they were under Hinduism. Theravada Buddhism taught that the king was just another human – required to lead a simple and peaceful life on the road to spiritual enlightenment.

As a result of this change, temple-building decreased because there was no longer a need to recognise Khmer kings and the achievements of their reigns. The new religion taught all people to seek enlightenment and to abandon unnecessary worldly items, so grand displays and opulent (luxurious) buildings such as temples were not needed.

Other unexpected consequences may also have resulted from this religious change. Up to this time, workers had been tied to their village temples and ultimately to the king. They were required to work and pay taxes to their temple in the form of rice. With the change in the king's social position, the belief in royal authority may have decreased – meaning workers may have felt less obliged to work for the king and the temple. This development would have had serious effects on social order and prosperity within the empire.

Source 4 Many historians believe that the introduction of Theravada Buddhism may have contributed to the fall of the Khmer Empire. It remains the official religion of Cambodia to this day.

16.12 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the king who adopted Theravada Buddhism. When did this take place?

2 How did economic problems contribute to the fall of the Khmer Empire?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the authority and social position of the Khmer kings changed with the adoption of Theravada Buddhism as a state religion.

4 **Explain** why the number of temples being built may have decreased after the introduction of Theravada Buddhism.

5 Using Source 1, **summarise** the causes and effects of the unsustainable rural lifestyle in Khmer society.

Apply

6 **Evaluate** which of the three internal challenges discussed (breakdown of the water management system, economic problems, changes in religion) would have most negatively impacted the Khmer Empire.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about what contributed to the end of this empire, and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think ...
- Now I think ...

What has changed in your understanding?

16.13 External challenges for the Khmer Empire

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain theories about the decline of the Khmer Empire, including the development of an unstable climate and conflict with other nations.

Challenges facing the Khmer Empire were both intentional and unintentional. Some challenges were caused by humans, such as war and disease, while others were coincidental, such as a period of climatic change.

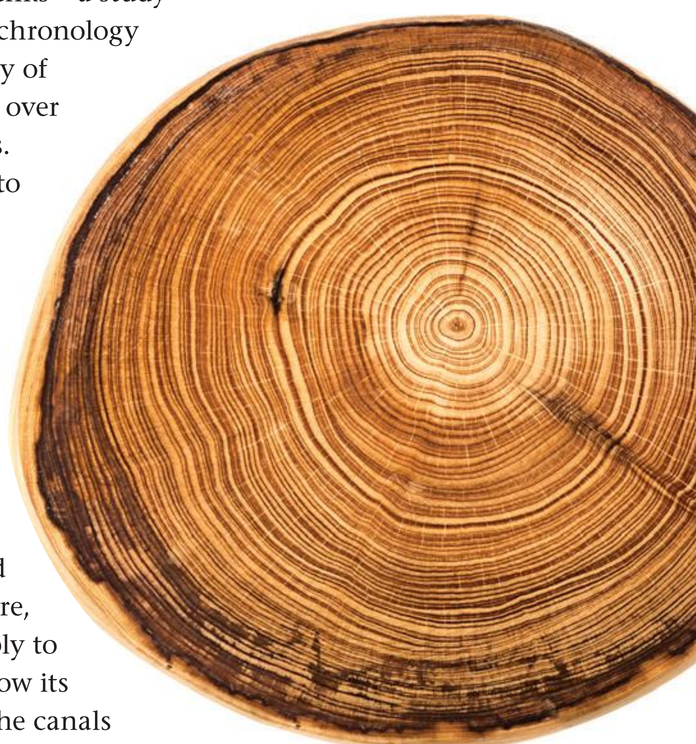
Changes in weather patterns

Recent advances in climate science have allowed researchers to gather and analyse weather data dating back thousands of years. Based on this research, many historians now believe that a period of unusually warm and stable weather from around 950 to 1250 CE helped the Khmer Empire to rise to the peak of its power. Scientists today refer to this time as the 'Medieval Warm Period'.

Scientists also point to weather in order to help explain the decline of the Khmer Empire. From around 1350 to 1850, their data shows a period of cold and unstable weather across Europe, now referred to as the 'Little Ice Age'. While South-East Asia is far from Europe, this cold weather is believed to have made the monsoon rains very unpredictable. Researchers have carried out studies on trees in the Angkor region, looking at the growth rings in tree trunks – a study known as dendrochronology. Dendrochronology provides information about the history of trees and what has happened to them over hundreds (or even thousands) of years. Each year, every tree adds a new ring to its trunk. In good years, when a tree receives plenty of water, the ring is thick; in bad years, when water is scarce, the ring is thin.

By studying trees in South-East Asia, scientists have determined that there were a number of lengthy periods of drought – the first from around 1360 to 1390 and the second from around 1415 to 1440. This would have greatly affected the Khmer Empire, which relied on a constant water supply to maintain its irrigation systems and grow its crops. If the water supply decreased, the canals would have dried up and been damaged. Although the empire had already lost control of much of its territories by this time, the extreme drought conditions would have left it weaker and more open to attacks.

Source 5 A Khmer sculpture



Source 6 By analysing the rings of trees in South-East Asia, scientists have identified two periods of serious drought that may have contributed to the fall of the Khmer Empire.

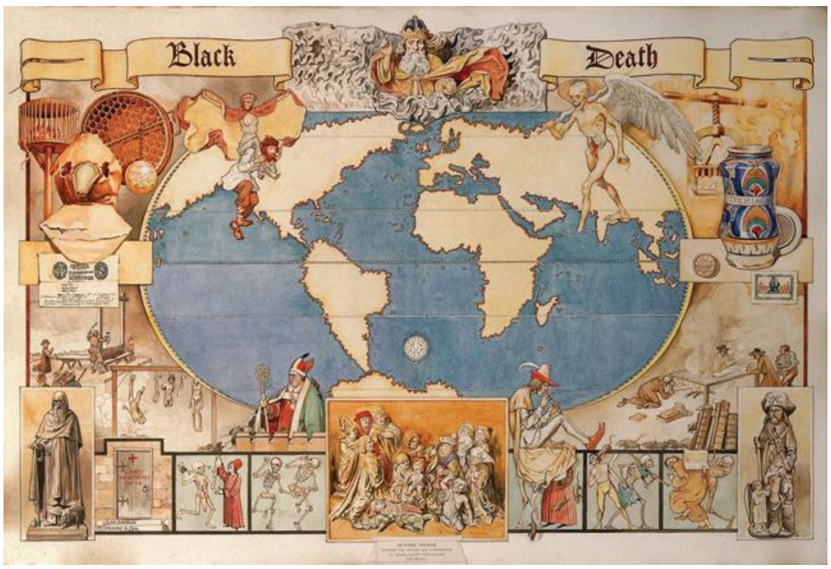
Source 7 An artist's impression of Ayutthayan war elephants going into battle

The effects of war

As the Khmer Empire became weaker, the Cham (who lived to the east of the empire) became a more and more serious threat. In 1177, the Cham successfully attacked the Khmer Empire, using the Mekong River and Tonle Sap Lake to launch a water-based invasion that resulted in Angkor being captured and plundered. Jayavarman VII was to spend a large part of his rule attacking and then finally driving off the invading Cham. By the 1190s, he had defeated them, but these constant battles left the empire exhausted and weak.

In addition to the Cham, the Khmer Empire also developed a new enemy to the north-west, known as the Ayutthayans. These people had previously been under Khmer control, but developed their own kingdom and began to challenge Khmer authority. They attacked the Khmer Empire in 1335 and 1353, capturing Angkor for a short period. It is thought that during these attacks they damaged the water management system in Angkor. They certainly carried off many Khmer as slaves, leaving fewer people to maintain the irrigation system and to plant and harvest the rice crops.

In 1431, the Ayutthayans attacked again – this time capturing and plundering Angkor, and repeatedly driving the Khmer away to the south-east. The conquering Ayutthayan king plundered the temples, removing statues of Buddha. As a result, many members of the royal court deserted cities such as Angkor Thom, and retreated to the old capitals on the Mekong River.



Source 8 This watercolour painting by Monro S. Orr (1874–1955), titled *The Black Death*, shows the global reach of the Black Death pandemic.

Spread of the Black Death

Although there is very little written evidence to support the theory, some historians believe that an outbreak of the **bubonic plague** – leading to the deadly pandemic known as the **Black Death** – may also have weakened the Khmer Empire.

The Black Death is believed to have first appeared in China around 1345, and some historians believe it may then have spread rapidly down through South-East Asia along trade routes.

bubonic plague
an infectious disease caused by bacteria (called *Yersinia pestis*), which are carried by fleas on rats and mice; it often quickly kills those who contract it

Black Death
a deadly plague that spread across Asia, Europe and Africa during the fourteenth century

If this was the case, then the Khmer Empire would most likely have been affected. As in other countries, the pandemic would have struck quickly, devastating the society by killing large groups of the population. Harvests and trade would have suffered.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on external challenges for the Khmer Empire

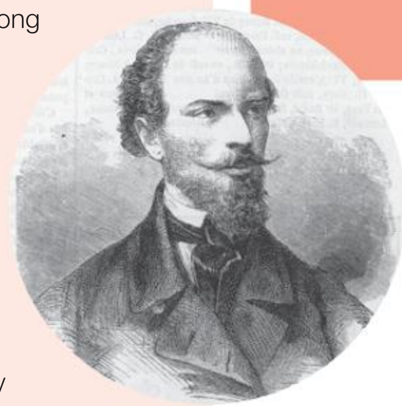
The rediscovery of Angkor

After about 1431, Angkor slowly lost influence and importance. Although the Angkor region was never completely abandoned, its large population declined greatly. Eventually, many of the temples and buildings became overrun by the surrounding forests (see Source 3 on page 16.43). It was not until 1860, when a French explorer called Henri Mouhot came across the ruins at Angkor while trekking through the region, that the outside world was introduced to the Khmer Empire. Mouhot recorded his observations, which were published shortly after his death in 1861.

The rediscovery of Angkor provided a wealth of historical evidence and raised a great deal of interest among historians. Today, a lot of work is being done to protect, preserve and restore the site, which was added to the UNESCO World Heritage List in 1993.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence



Source 9 Henri Mouhot

16.13 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Define** 'dendrochronology'. How has it helped to identify one of the reasons why the Khmer Empire came to an end?

2 **Name** two kingdoms that the Khmer Empire went to war with. Which of these kingdoms attacked Angkor in 1431, and what were the effects of this?

Comprehend

3 In your own words, **explain** the following terms:

 a Medieval Warm Period

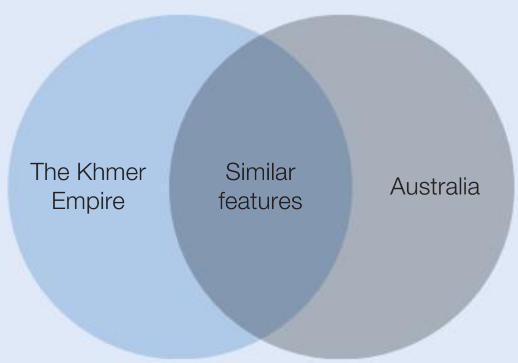
 b Little Ice Age.

4 **Describe** the effects these weather patterns had on the Khmer Empire.

Apply

5 List the six internal and external reasons put forward for the fall of the Khmer Empire (in this topic and topic 16.12) and rank each one from 1 to 6 according to the impact they had on the downfall of the empire. **Justify** (give reasons for) your ranking, and discuss your answers with your class to see if you all agree.

6 **Investigate** the effects of drought in the Khmer Empire. Compare this with the effects of drought in modern Australia. Create a Venn diagram like this one to explore the similarities and differences between these two societies.



16C

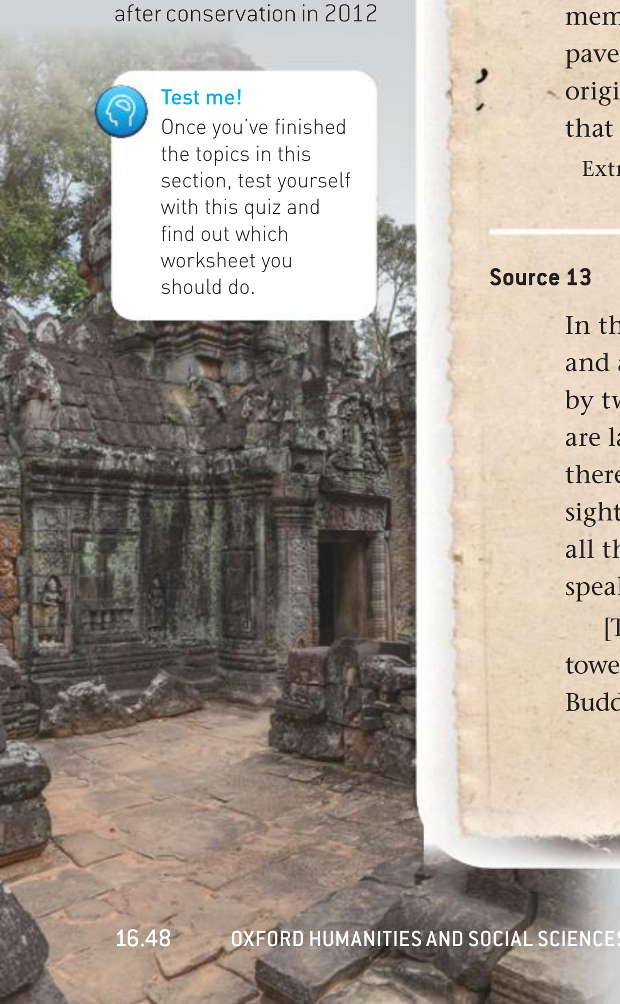
SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Conserving Khmer sites

In order to protect, preserve and restore ancient historical sites such as the temples and monuments across the Angkor region, historians and archaeologists need to conduct extensive research to understand what these sites used to look like, how they were constructed and how they may have been damaged over time.

The World Monuments Fund has been dedicated to preserving and restoring seven temples in the Angkor region since 1996. This work is time-consuming, labour-intensive and expensive. To restore one temple can cost $550 000. The World Monuments Fund has a campaign to 'adopt' a *garuda*, as it costs more than $20 000 to restore one of these statues. Sources 10 to 12 demonstrate the challenges and benefits of this work for Cambodia's cultural heritage; while Sources 13 and 14 give an idea of what the temples may have looked like during the empire.

Source 10 Ta Som Temple before conservation



Source 11 Ta Som Temple after conservation in 2012

Test me! Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 12

Addressing the structural issues [during restoration works at Phnom Bakheng Temple] required an intense, artfully engineered intervention … the sandstone wall blocks and pavers are being disassembled, along with the sanctuaries that sit atop them; laterite foundations underneath are then restored; a waterproof membrane is installed; and finally the pyramid walls are reassembled and the pavers reset on top. Whenever possible, original stones are replaced in their original positions, supplemented by stones found where they fell, or others that have been removed to the perimeters of the site over time.

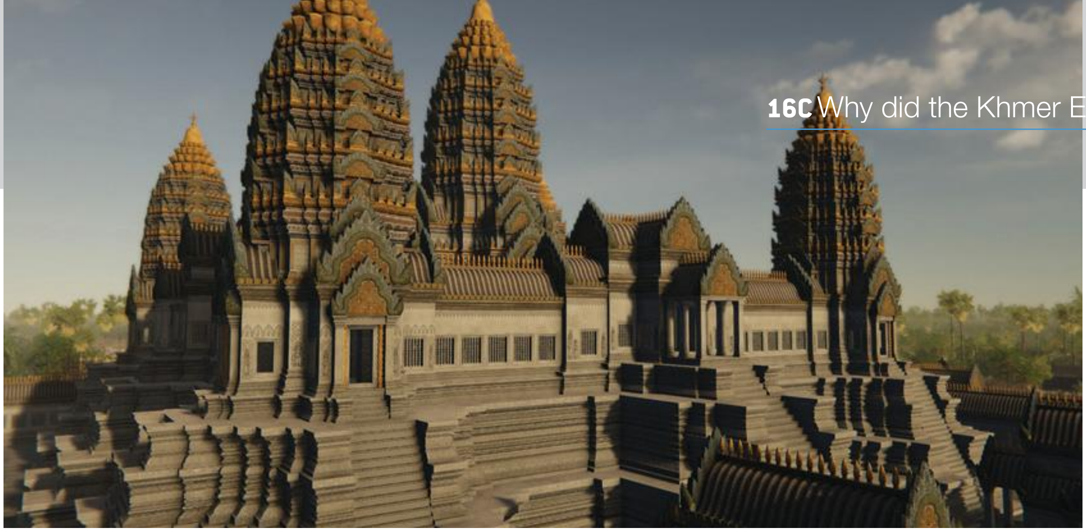
Extract from Joshua David, President of the World Monuments Fund, *My Journey through our Work at Angkor*, World Monuments Fund website

Source 13

In the center of the capital is a gold tower, flanked by twenty or so stone towers and a hundred or so stone chambers. To the east of it is a golden bridge flanked by two gold lions, one on the left and one on the right. Eight gold Buddhas are laid out in a row at the lowest stone chambers … [N]orth of the gold tower there is a bronze tower. It is even taller than the gold tower, and an exquisite sight. At the foot there are, again, several dozen stone chambers … I suppose all this explains why from the start there have been merchant seamen who speak glowingly about rich, noble Cambodia …

[T]o the north of the city lies the North Lake. In the middle of it is a gold tower, square in shape with several dozen stone chambers. A gold lion, a gold Buddha, a bronze elephant, a bronze cow, and a bronze horse – these are all there.

A description of Angkor Wat in Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296



Source 14 *A Hypothetical Visualisation of Decorative Elements at Angkor Wat, 12th Century* by Tom Chandler, Chandara Ung, Brent McKee and Mike Yeates, Monash University, 2019

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Developing a written historical argument

Presenting a series of historical arguments in writing is an important skill for all historians. It is particularly useful when convincing others of your point of view on a historical research question. You will need to present well-reasoned points, and support your argument with information from various sources.

When developing a written historical argument, follow these steps:

Step 1 Devise a research question or argument.

Step 2 Read and understand the information in the sources.

Step 3 Create a table, diagram or mind map to compare and contrast information in the sources. Work out which sources agree with each other and which do not.

Step 4 Find any information in the sources that supports or refutes your argument, and add this to your table.

Step 5 Using the TEEL paragraph structure (see page 221 of 'The history toolkit'), write your argument in one or more paragraphs, using the sources as evidence. You should explain why particular sources support your argument, and give reasons why the sources that do not support your argument are less important or not valid.

Step 6 Acknowledge your sources using referencing conventions.

For more information on this skill, see page 220 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Sources 10 to 14. Following the six steps listed in the key skill, prepare a written argument in response to this statement: 'Conservation projects are not worthwhile as they only bring limited end results for a huge outlay (amount) of time and money.' To what extent do you agree with this statement? Refer to all the sources in your arguments, and conduct extra research if required.

Extend your understanding

1 Conduct some further research to find out the reasons why UNESCO has classified temples in the Angkor region as World Heritage sites. Generally, they must fulfil some key criteria. **Categorise** the reasons given under the relevant 5Rs of historical significance (see page 219 of 'The history toolkit').

2 Conservation projects are expensive. Using the internet, **investigate** who is funding any current restoration projects and approximately how much money has been spent on them.

3 Study Sources 12 to 14 and answer the following questions:

   a **Describe** the work occurring at Phnom Bakheng Temple, using Source 12.

   b **Explain** why the work carried out at the Phnom Bakheng Temple could be described as a jigsaw puzzle.

   c **Discuss** whether you think the Phnom Bakheng Temple could be restored to look like what is outlined in Sources 12 and 13.

16 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read Source 15 and answer the questions that follow.

The king's procession

Source 15

When the king leaves his palace, the procession is headed by the soldiery; then come the flags, the banners, the music. Girls of the palace, three or five hundred in number, gaily dressed, with flowers in their hair and candles in their hands … Then came other girls carrying gold and silver vessels from the palace and a whole galaxy of ornaments, of very special design, the uses of which were strange to me. Then came still more girls, the bodyguard of the palace, holding shields and lances … Following them came chariots drawn by goats and horses, all adorned with gold, ministers and princes, mounted on elephants, were preceded by bearers of scarlet parasols, without number. Close behind came the royal wives and concubines, in palanquins and chariots, or mounted on horses or elephants, to whom were assigned at least a hundred parasols mottled with gold. Finally the sovereign [king] appeared, standing erect on an elephant and holding in his hand the sacred sword. This elephant, his tusks sheathed in gold, was accompanied by bearers of twenty white parasols with golden shafts. All around was a bodyguard of elephants, drawn close together, and still more soldiers for complete protection, marching in close order …

For the most part, [the king's] objective was a little golden pagoda in front of which stood a golden statue of the Buddha. Those who caught a glimpse of the king were expected to kneel and touch the earth with their brows. Failing to perform this obeisance [respect], which is called sun-pa [sambah], they were seized by the masters of ceremonies [marshals] who under no circumstance let them escape.

Extract from Zhou Daguan, *A Record of Cambodia*, 1296

1. Choose one word to summarise your impression of the Khmer king's procession and explain why you chose it. (1 mark)
2. Is Source 15 a primary or a secondary source? **Summarise** why. (2 marks)
3. Using Source 15, **explain** how the majesty and significance of the King's position are demonstrated to the Khmer people. (3 marks)
4. **Analyse** this source using the 'DAMMIT U' structure (see page 208 of 'The history toolkit'). In your response, provide examples from the source and from what you have learnt about the Khmer Empire. (8 marks)
5. **Discuss** how useful this source is in understanding the life of a Khmer king. Do you think it is accurate? What other evidence could help you understand more about the king's leadership? Provide examples to support your opinion. (6 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain how the physical environment influenced the development of the Khmer Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.2, page 16.4.
Understand the structure and political influence of the kingdoms within the Khmer region.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.3, page 16.7.
Describe the role and achievements of Jayavarman II. Explain how Khmer kings were revered as *devaraja* and ruled over the empire with absolute authority.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.4, page 16.9.
Summarise how the Khmer Empire expanded through trade and warfare. Explain the influence of various Khmer rulers in expanding the empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.5, page 16.12.
Describe the design and purpose of temple building in the Angkor region.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.6, page 16.16.
Explain the significance of the archaeological site of Angkor Wat as a demonstration of the empire's power and its religious significance.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.7, page 16.20.
Describe the way of life in a Khmer village, including water management systems.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.8, page 16.26.
Distinguish between the different roles of key social groups in the Khmer Empire. Explain how the social structure shaped daily life in the Khmer Empire.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.9, page 16.30.
Understand the standards of living of different social groups in the Khmer Empire. Describe the way of life in the Khmer Empire as depicted through the writings of Chinese ambassador Zhou Daguan.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.10, page 16.33.
Summarise the religious beliefs, values and practices that the Khmer people lived by.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.11, page 16.37.
Explain theories about the decline of the Khmer Empire, including the rise of Theravada Buddhism and the breakdown of Angkor's water management system.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.12, page 16.42.
Explain theories about the decline of the Khmer Empire, including the development of an unstable climate and conflict with other nations.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 16.13, page 16.45.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 16

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 16

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on the Angkor/Khmer Empire.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 16

CHAPTER 17

The Polynesian expansion across the Pacific

Between around 700 and 1756 CE, Polynesian peoples settled on thousands of islands across a wide area of the Pacific Ocean. Today, this region is known as the Polynesian Triangle. As they spread throughout this area, Polynesians formed unique societies on each of the islands they settled. Each Polynesian society had its own traditions, spiritual beliefs and ways of life, but they also shared some common features. All Polynesian societies depended on the sea for their food and for trade with other societies. Because of this, Polynesian peoples became expert sailors and navigators.

Source 1 Some of the moai on Rapa Nui (Easter Island); each statue is carved from stone.

obook pro

obook only chapter

Log in to your obook pro to access this chapter.

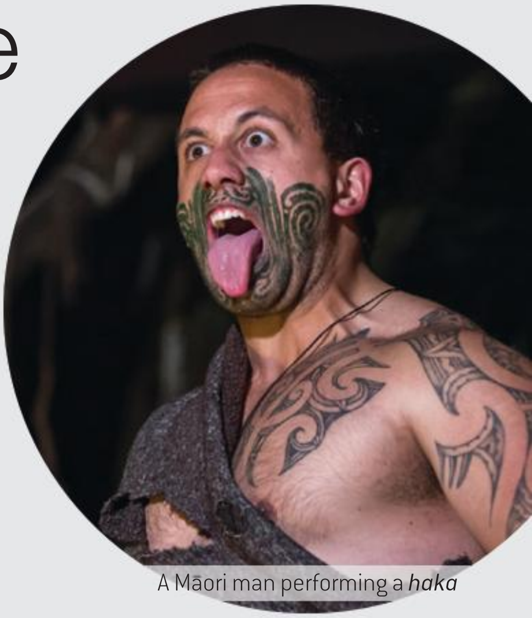
17A
How did Polynesians spread across the Pacific and where did they settle?

17B
How was society organised in Polynesian villages?

17C
What developments influenced life in Polynesia?

17.1 The Polynesian expansion across the Pacific: a timeline

Sequence this!
Key events in the Polynesian expansion across the Pacific



A Māori man performing a *haka*

c. 2000–1500
The first travellers begin to move from Asia through the islands of the Pacific Ocean, moving east towards what becomes known as the Polynesian Triangle. Tonga is settled.

c. 1000
Polynesians move further east and settle the islands of Hawaii and Rapa Nui (Easter Island). The Rapa Nui people make huge stone statues called moai.

2000 BCE — 1500 — 1000 — 1 CE — 500

c. 1500
Evidence from discoveries of Lapita pottery suggests that the ancestors of Polynesian peoples reach the Bismarck Archipelago, north of New Guinea.

c. 1000
Samoa is settled.

c. 950
Māori myth suggests that Chief Kupe sails to what is now known as New Zealand and names it 'Aotearoa'.

Lapita pottery

Source 1 A timeline of some key events in the Polynesian expansion across the Pacific

A nineteenth-century artist's impression of the arrival of the Great Fleet in Aotearoa (New Zealand)

c. 1000
Rapa Nui's environment suffers from overuse. Deforestation starts.

c. 1100
Māori myth suggests that the Polynesian explorers Toi and Whatonga arrive in Aotearoa.

c. 1350
According to myth, the 'Great Fleet' arrives and Maori people begin to settle in Aotearoa.

c. 1400
Most species of the moa, a flightless bird of Aotearoa, are extinct after being hunted as a source of food.

c. 1500
Food begins to run out on Rapa Nui. Fighting starts. The last moai is erected. A new religion begins, called the Birdman Cult.

c. 1600
As resources run out on Rapa Nui, there is warring between clans.

c. 1642
The Dutch explorer Abel Tasman claims Aotearoa for Holland. It is given the name 'New Zealand' by a Dutch map-maker.

c. 1722
The first European contact is made with the Rapa Nui people. Dutch admiral Jacob Roggeveen gives Rapa Nui the name 'Easter Island'.

c. 1744
The British explorer Captain James Cook visits Rapa Nui.

c. 1769
Cook claims New Zealand for Britain.

1000 — 1500 — 2000 CE

Moas were hunted to extinction.

17.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the English names for the islands Rapa Nui and Aotearoa. Who renamed these islands?

2 What were moa? What happened to them?

Analyse

3 **Examine** the timeline to identify the year each of the following islands was discovered by Polynesians. Place them in chronological order (from earliest to most recent):
- Rapa Nui
- Hawaii
- Aotearoa
- Tonga
- Samoa.

Evaluate and create

4 **Investigate** Lapita pottery and summarise your findings. In your writing, discuss the link between Lapita pottery and the Polynesian expansion across the Pacific.

17.2 The geography of Polynesia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » explain how the physical features of Polynesia influenced its development.

Polynesia is a region of the Pacific Ocean, within the larger region of Oceania. Oceania includes all the islands in the central and south Pacific Ocean, while Polynesia includes all the islands within what is generally called the Polynesian Triangle. The three corners of the triangle are Hawaii in the north, Rapa Nui (Easter Island) in the east and New Zealand in the south. Samoa, Tuvalu and Tonga mark the triangle's western edge.

THE POLYNESIAN TRIANGLE

Source 2

Source: Oxford University Press

There are many different natural environments in Polynesia – from tiny islands with tropical climates, to the heavily forested South Island of New Zealand with its snow-capped peaks. Within Polynesia, there are many atolls, which are ring-shaped coral reefs or islands. Atolls do not have much vegetation. In the past, Polynesians on these atolls mainly lived by fishing, growing crops such as yams and taro, and raising animals such as pigs, dogs and chickens. By contrast, Hawaii, New Zealand and remote Rapa Nui are volcanic islands, not coral islands. Societies in these places developed agriculture on a much larger scale because of the rich volcanic soil. They also lived by hunting, fishing and gathering edible plants.

Source 3 An atoll in the Tahiti Islands

Source 4

> At 6 a.m. we weighed and stood out of the Bay, which I have named Poverty Bay, because it afforded us no one thing we wanted … It is in the form of a Horse Shoe, and is known by an Island lying close under the North-East point. The 2 points which form the Entrance are high, with Steep white Cliffs … The Depth of Water in this Bay is from 12 to 5 fathoms [a fathom is 1.8 metres], a sandy bottom and good Anchorage, but you lay open to the winds between the South and East … The shore of this Bay, from a little within each Entrance, is a low, flat sand; but this is only a Narrow Slip, for the face of the Country appears with a variety of hills and Vallies, all cloathed with woods and Verdure [greenery], and to all appearance well inhabited, especially in the Vallies leading up from the Bay, where we daily saw Smoke at a great distance inland, and far back in the Country are very high Mountains … the South-West point of Poverty Bay, which I have named Young Nicks head (after the Boy who first saw this land).

Extract from Captain James Cook's *Endeavour* journal, written on 11 October 1769 upon his first landing in New Zealand

Source 5 Te Kuri (Young Nicks Head) at the north-eastern tip of New Zealand

Analyse this!
Extract from Captain James Cook's *Endeavour* journal

17.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the three locations that form the points of the Polynesian Triangle.

2 **State** at least two different climates present on the islands within Polynesia.

Comprehend

3 Use Source 2 to write a statement about the geographical location of Polynesia. **Describe** the size and location of New Zealand in comparison to other islands in Polynesia.

4 Sources 3 and 5 show the natural environments of different parts of Polynesia. **Summarise** how you think the different environments affected people's ways of life.

Apply

5 Study Sources 4 and 5.

a How reliable is Source 4 in describing the environment? **Justify** (give reasons for) your response with specific examples.

b In 2019, a dual name was made official for Tūranganui-a-Kiwa (Poverty Bay), acknowledging both the Māori culture and the heritage of Captain Cook's arrival. This change has sparked debate within the community. In pairs, **discuss** the arguments the community may have about this name change.

6 **Investigate** the climates of Samoa, Hawaii, New Zealand and Rapa Nui. Create a table to summarise your findings, comparing how the climates of these places are similar and how they are different.

Source 6 A moai on Rapa Nui, with the volcanic crater Rano Raraku in the background

See, think, wonder
Look at Source 6.
- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

17.3 Theories about Polynesian expansion

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- summarise different theories about Polynesian expansion across the Pacific.

The Polynesian expansion across the Pacific took place over a long period of time. Historians do not always agree on exactly how or when the Polynesians spread throughout the area. Most historians do believe, however, that the Polynesian expansion happened over a period of more than 2000 years, and covered a large part of the Pacific region.

Many disagree on where the Polynesian peoples came from – some historians have even tried to copy the sea voyages they think the Polynesians undertook in order to prove their theories.

East or west?

One of the biggest disagreements is which direction the Polynesians came from – east or west. Most historians agree that the Polynesians originated from South-East Asia, but other theories suggest origins in the opposite direction (west), from South America.

Who is correct? According to one argument, the travellers came from an area such as modern-day Peru – floating across the ocean on canoes and rafts created from the balsa wood common to that area. Researchers who support this idea argue that the regular wind patterns and ocean currents would enable this type of travel, while making travel in the opposite direction a great deal more difficult. They also sometimes suggest that there are similarities between Aztec, Inca and Mayan stone sculptures from South America and the stone statues of Polynesia, such as the **moai** on Rapa Nui.

moai
huge human figures created from a single block of stone, present on Rapa Nui

Source 7 An Aztec stone sculpture from Central Mexico, which has some similarities to the moai of Rapa Nui

Source 8 Moai on Rapa Nui

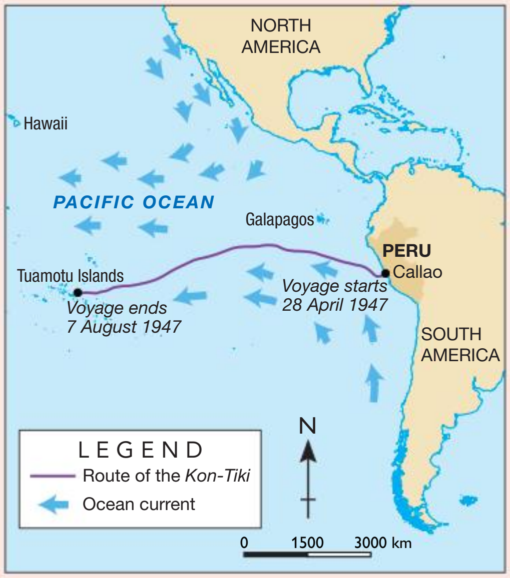
Thor Heyerdahl

In 1947, a Norwegian adventurer named Thor Heyerdahl carried out a risky voyage in an attempt to prove that the Polynesians had travelled west – from South America – across the Pacific. Heyerdahl felt that the theory of movement from the west to east was wrong. He argued that the strong currents and winds that blow from east to west in the Pacific would have made such travel almost impossible. Heyerdahl created a balsa wood raft called the *Kon-Tiki*, which he used to drift from Peru to the Tuamotu Islands – a voyage of nearly 7000 kilometres. As the Tuamotu Islands are on the eastern fringe of Polynesia, he argued that it was highly likely that this was the way that the early Polynesians had travelled.

There is no solid evidence that would support this theory, although many people consider that it is a logical explanation. Heyerdahl's proposal was valuable because it questioned established ideas. His voyage also helped to show that there was a lack of solid archaeological evidence for the 'west to east' movement theory, and encouraged historians to begin gathering evidence to support their different theories.

For more information on this key concept, see page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

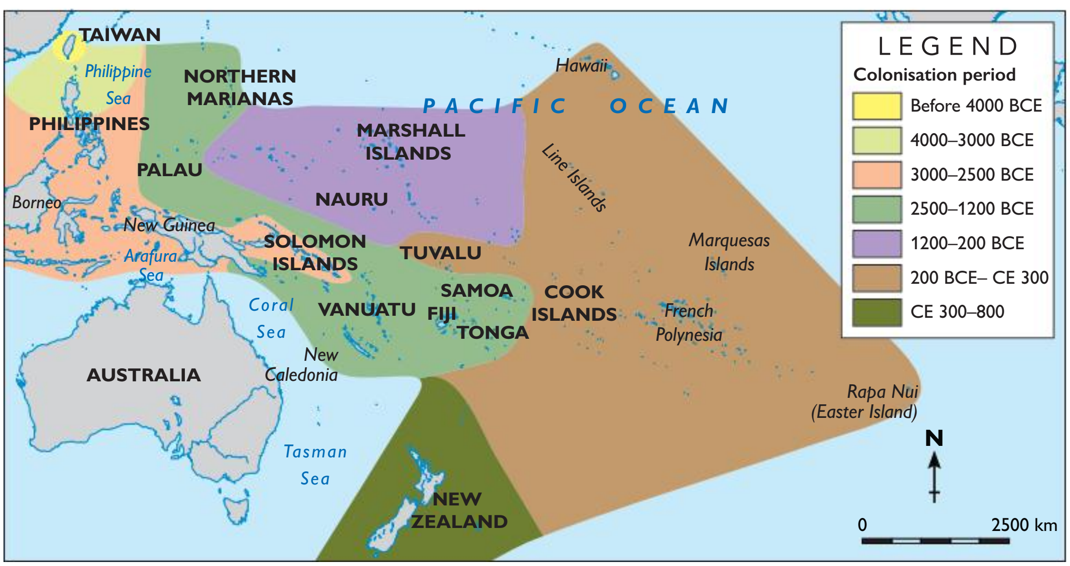
THOR HEYERDAHL'S VOYAGE



Source 9 Source: Oxford University Press

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

ASIA–PACIFIC REGION: POLYNESIAN EXPANSION FROM THE WEST



Source: Oxford University Press

Source 10 Most historians now believe this is the order in which islands across the Pacific were settled by Polynesians.

Enlarged map
Asia-Pacific Region: Polynesian expansion from the west

Settlers from the west

> **I used to think, now I think**
>
> Reflect on your learning about the different Polynesian peoples who settled across the Asia–Pacific region and complete the following sentences.
> - I used to think …
> - Now I think …
>
> What has changed in your understanding?

Despite Heyerdahl's voyage, more recent archaeological evidence strongly supports the view that the Polynesians came from the west. Most people now believe that the early ancestors of Polynesian people travelled from the Malay Islands and along the coast of New Guinea. From New Guinea, they would have moved east along the Solomon Island chain, into Vanuatu. It is thought that these initial trips were made from 1500 BCE onwards, with the travellers using double-hulled canoes to cross the vast distances between land masses.

The early settlers then moved on into modern-day Polynesia, taking with them domestic animals and plants. From Vanuatu they travelled east to the Cook Islands, then on to the Society Islands, the Marquesas and across the huge sea gap to Hawaii, Rapa Nui and down to New Zealand. These voyages possibly took place until at least 1000 CE.

Evidence of Polynesian expansion

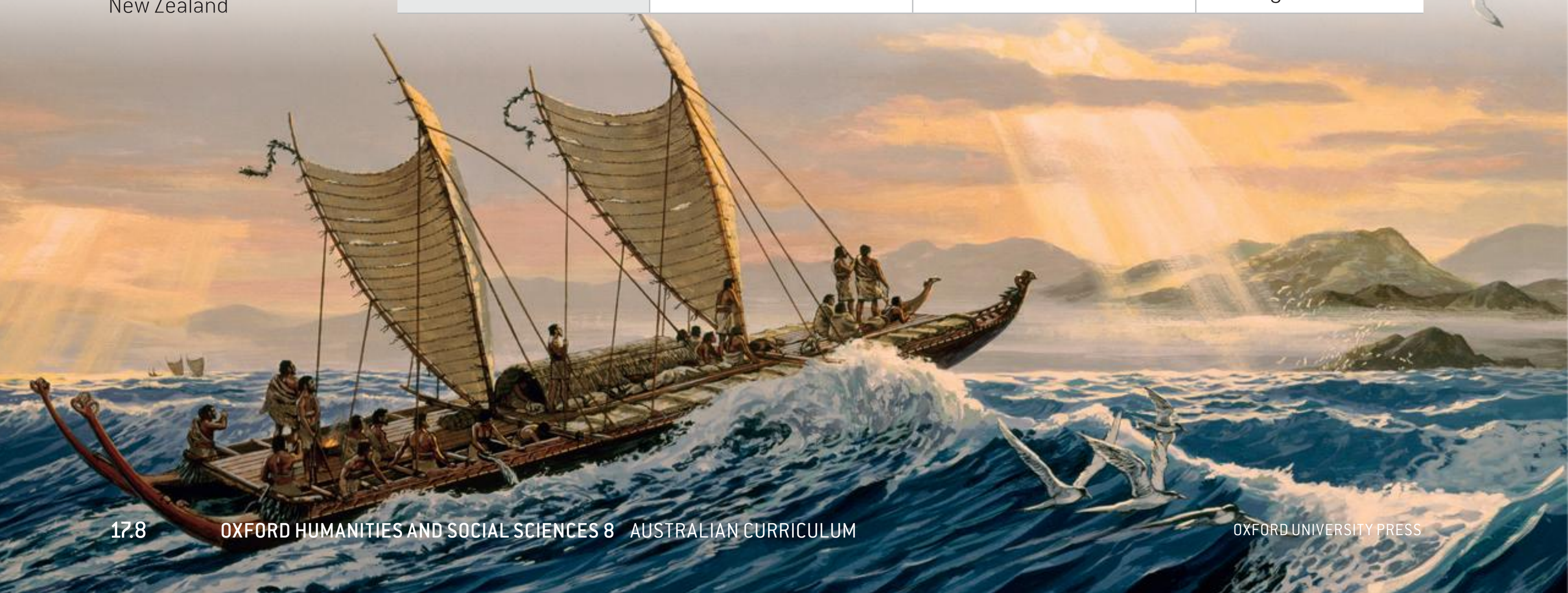
Historians and other experts have used a variety of sources as evidence to investigate Polynesian expansion.

Polynesian languages

One way of working out how different Polynesian peoples are historically related is to study their different languages and look for similarities. Among the earliest recorders of these similarities were the British explorers Joseph Banks and Captain James Cook. During their travels through Polynesia in the eighteenth century, Banks and Cook listed and compared languages from Tahiti and New Zealand. They also looked at the languages used by people in Indonesia and Melanesia. They found that all of these languages were connected, meaning that there was a link from Polynesia back to South-East Asia. In other words, the Polynesians had travelled east.

Source 11 Polynesian languages are closely related and contain many similar words.

English word	Tahitian word	Hawaiian word	Māori word
person	ta'ata	kanaka	tāngata
eye	mata	maka	mata
wind	mata'i	makani	matangi



Source 12 An artist's impression of Polynesian voyagers sailing towards New Zealand

Oral histories

Anthropologists have studied the strong oral traditions of Polynesian societies to help determine the origins of Polynesian peoples. Ancient Polynesian societies did not leave behind written records. However, stories that have been passed down through many generations offer valuable clues about how Polynesia was settled. For example, traditional stories from the Māori – the indigenous Polynesian people of New Zealand – connect the canoes that settled New Zealand to a legendary place called Hawaiki, which may be a real island or a mythical place. Hawaii has legends and stories that link it to 'Kahiki', which many believe to be the islands of Tahiti.

anthropologists
people who study human societies, customs and beliefs

DNA research

Most of what we know about Polynesian expansion is based on the work of archaeologists. These specialists study the **artefacts** of the past as evidence of people's daily lives. They look at objects that people used every day, such as weapons, cooking pots and tools. Archaeologists increasingly rely on scientific techniques, such as radiocarbon dating and DNA testing.

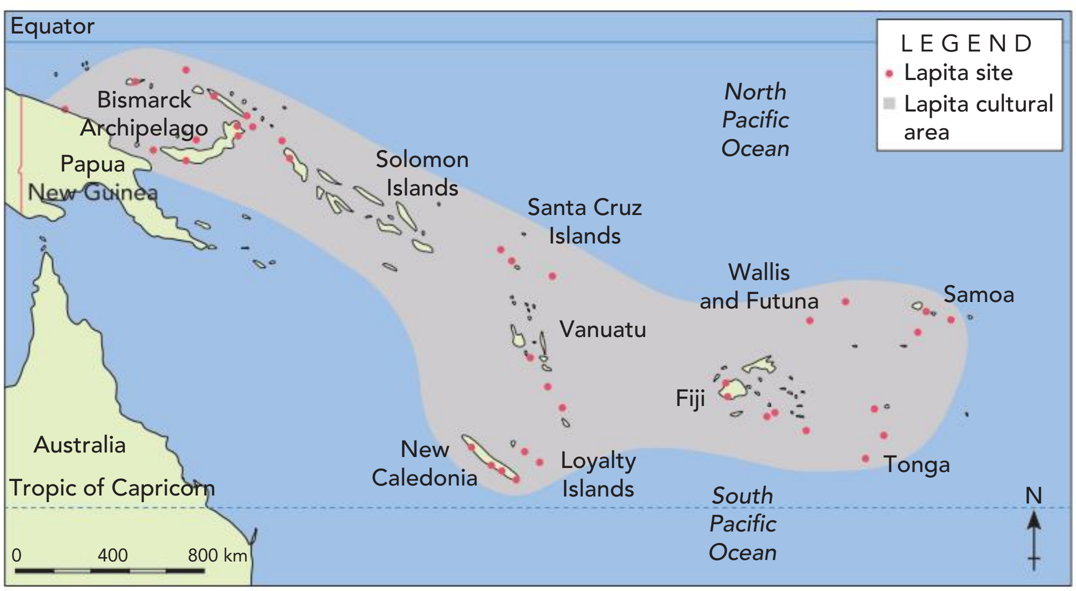
artefacts
objects, small or large, that have been made or changed by people

DNA is a genetic code inside the nucleus of every cell in the human body. Each person's DNA is slightly different. We inherit our DNA from our parents: half each from our biological mother and father. By comparing the DNA of different people across the world, scientists can tell how closely or how distantly they are related.

As a result of DNA testing of Polynesian peoples, most historians now accept that the ancestors of the Polynesians came from South-East Asia and from China more than 6000 years ago. The ancestors of the Polynesians (and Melanesian) peoples were called the Lapita. From South-East Asia and China, they made their way south, settling first in what is now Indonesia. They then settled on the Bismarck Archipelago, a group of islands north of New Guinea. The pottery of the Lapita people has been found in sites across Polynesia, and indicates the movement of people from Melanesia to Polynesia.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on theories about Polynesian expansion

SITES WHERE LAPITA POTTERY HAS BEEN FOUND



Source: Oxford University Press/Encyclopedia Britannica

Source 13 The Lapita people originally settled on the Bismarck Archipelago.

Source 14 An example of Lapita pottery

KEY CONCEPT
Evidence

The sweet potato

One of the greatest puzzles in the debate about Polynesian origins has come from one of their foods, the sweet potato. Most Polynesian foods are of South-East Asian origin, supporting the idea that the Polynesians came from the west. But sweet potatoes come from Peru.

So how did the sweet potato arrive in Polynesia? The ocean distance between South America and eastern Polynesia is vast, so it seems highly unlikely that the sweet potato arrived because of accidental drifting of plants or seeds.

Even more surprisingly, research has shown that the first islands to have sweet potato were not the ones closest to Peru, such as Rapa Nui. Instead, sweet potato probably arrived first in the Marquesas Islands.

Several theories exist. Some scholars suggest that the sweet potato arrived in Polynesia because of trade, either with Peruvians or with Chinese explorers. Both of these ideas have little evidence to support them. More commonly accepted is the idea that the Polynesians sailed east to Peru and returned with the sweet potato around 1000 years ago.

For more information on this key concept, see page 204 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 15 Kumara is the Māori name for this variety of sweet potato.

Outline map
Pacific region

Source 16 An example of a Māori carving

17.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** three reasons why many historians think the Polynesians spread into Polynesia from the west.

2 **Recall** the key points of Thor Heyerdahl's theory that the Polynesians originally came from South America in the east.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the existence of the sweet potato in Polynesia is such a mystery for historians. How does it challenge accepted theories of Polynesian expansion?

4 **Summarise** why the comparison of languages was useful for historians trying to work out where the Polynesians came from.

Apply

5 **Investigate** a traditional Māori story – or a story from another Polynesian culture – about their ancestors first arriving on the island they made home. Consider the evidence this story provides for historians. Does it tell us anything about the beliefs of the people, the voyages their ancestors made, or contacts with other peoples?

6 On an outline map of the Pacific region, mark the islands that were settled by Polynesians. (There is an outline map available on your obook pro.) Then show the direction of travel of the people who first settled Polynesia. Do the same for the opposing theory about the origin and spread of the Polynesians. In groups, **discuss** the evidence for each theory. Remember, when you discuss something, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence.

17.4 Polynesian journeys across the Pacific

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the importance of navigation in establishing settlements in Polynesia.

The story of how Polynesian people settled the Pacific region is one of history's epic tales of exploration and adventure. The Polynesians were skilled boatbuilders, navigators and sailors who saw the ocean as an important part of their world. They had many techniques for making their astonishing sea voyages. They closely observed the position of the stars, the presence of birds, the direction of the wind and the shape of the waves.

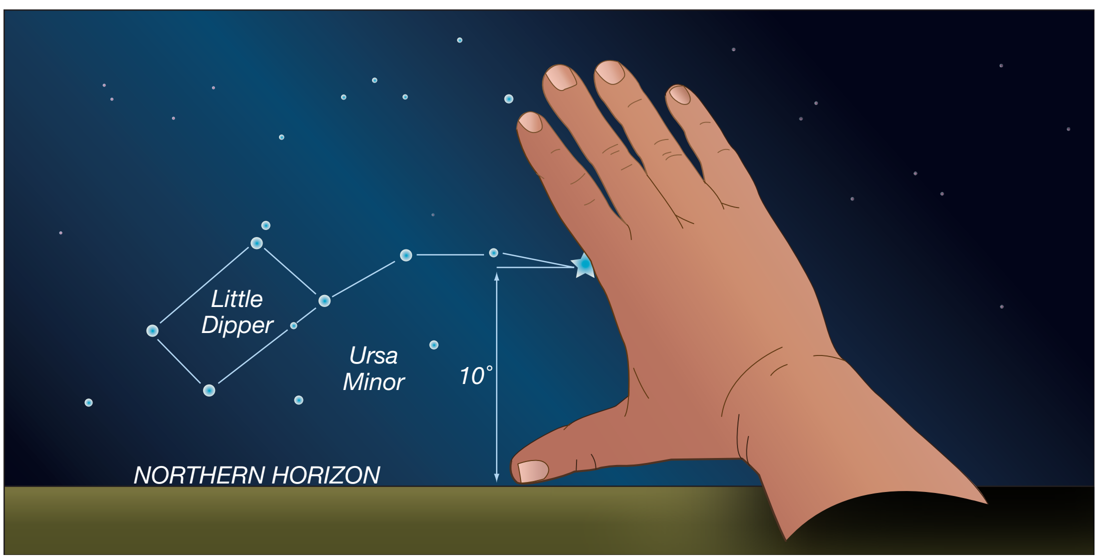
Navigation

Without modern compasses or satellite technology, the Polynesians found their way across the Pacific. What we know about traditional navigation comes in part from early European observations of Polynesian sailors. We also rely on Polynesian oral traditions for information about how they achieved their journeys.

Using the stars

The Polynesians used the stars to tell them where they were and which direction they should go in. Navigators knew by heart the positions of important stars in relation to their homelands. They also knew how the patterns of the stars would change with the time of year, or as they travelled to new places.

Stars were also useful for finding latitude (the north–south position of a point on the Earth's surface). Measuring the height of the star Polaris or the Southern Cross above the horizon using their hands, Polynesian navigators could tell roughly how far north or south of the Equator they were (see Source 17).



Source 17 Estimating latitude by placing a hand against the horizon to measure the height of the star Polaris

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 17.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Using birds, wind and waves

Sighting a bird would tell Polynesian navigators that they were near land. If it was a sea bird, the distance could be as much as 100 kilometres, but other birds were only seen closer to home. Polynesian navigators could also tell in which direction land lay, because at sunrise birds generally fly away from land to hunt out at sea. At sunset they usually fly home, towards land.

Wind and waves also gave them clues about nearby land. The nineteenth-century English missionary William Wyatt Gill recorded that the Cook Islanders recognised 32 different winds that regularly appeared from particular directions. Using a wind compass could help navigators find their way. However, this method was not as reliable as navigating by the stars.

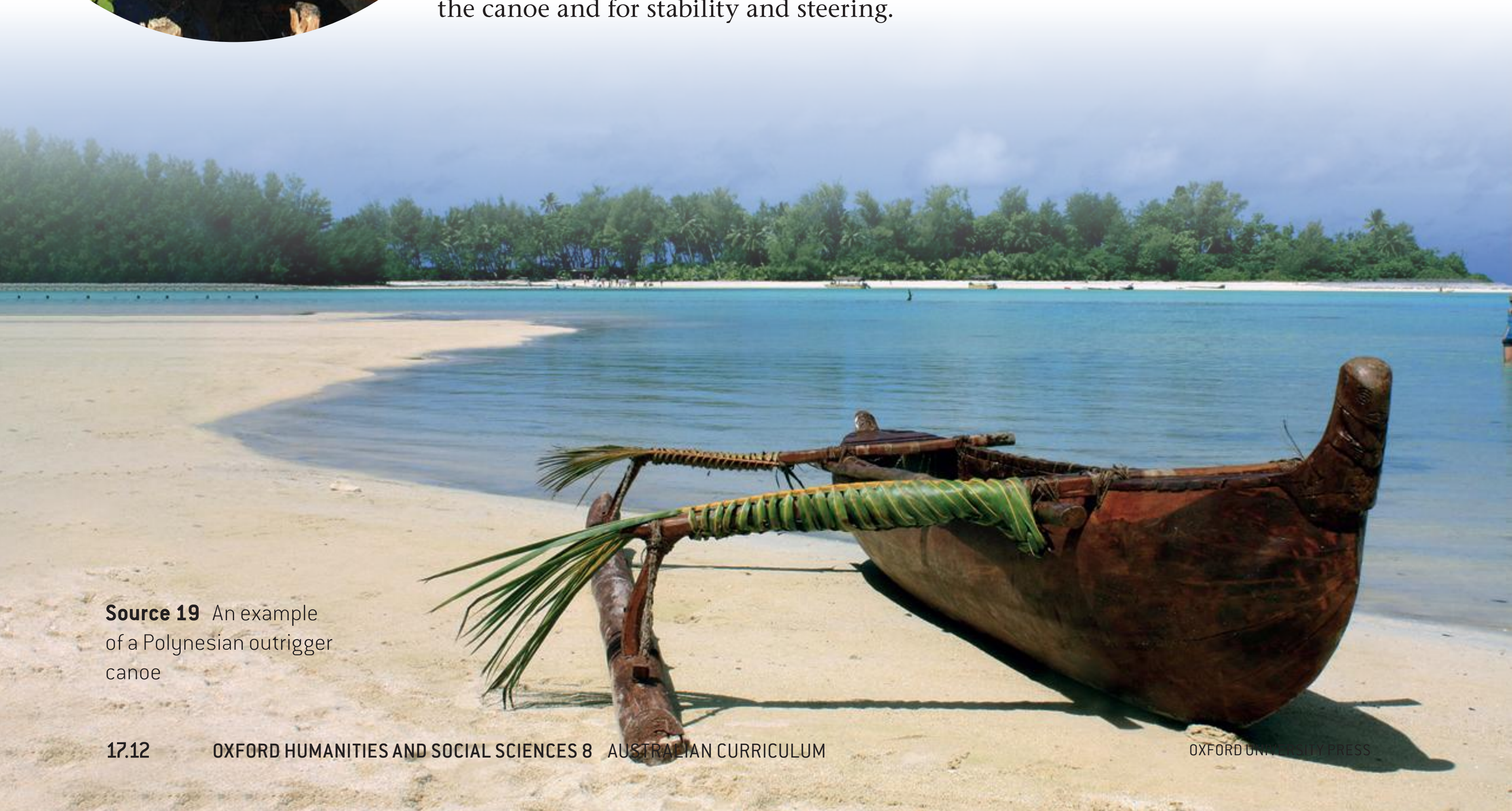
Wave patterns change near islands, and this also helps with navigation. A long ocean wave will bend around an island and some of the wave will bounce back off the shore. This disturbs the regular wave pattern of the ocean. The larger the island is, the greater the disturbance of the wave pattern. By closely observing the shape of the waters, experienced Polynesian navigators could detect land tens or even hundreds of kilometres away.

Source 18 An example of a dugout canoe

Boats

The Polynesians used many types of vessels to cross the waters of the Pacific Ocean. Rafts were widely used to transport goods near coastal areas. But the most important type of craft for sea voyages was the canoe.

The simplest canoes were dugouts, which were made by hollowing out a log. Other canoes were made by joining planks together with plaited grass or fibre and waterproofing them with sap or coconut fibre. Sails could be made by weaving together palm leaves. Paddles were used both to propel the canoe and for stability and steering.



Source 19 An example of a Polynesian outrigger canoe

An **outrigger**, or float, could be added to a canoe to improve stability. Likewise, joining two dugouts together made them less likely to capsize. Outriggers were usually connected to the main hull using crossbeams, and platforms could be built across the width of the boat to provide extra space for people and goods.

For longer voyages, or when larger numbers of people needed to be carried, the Polynesians used large double-hulled canoes. The largest of these were more than 30 metres long and could carry up to 300 people. This was useful for military purposes, such as attacking nearby islands. When Captain Cook visited Tahiti in 1774, he saw an enormous fleet of these canoes getting ready to raid their neighbours in Mo'orea. He estimated that there were about 160 double war canoes plus many smaller craft, carrying almost 8000 people in total.

To travel further, large canoes would carry fewer people and more supplies. An ocean-going double-hulled canoe with a small crew could travel hundreds of kilometres at sea.

outrigger
a wooden structure that is fixed to the side of a boat or ship in order to keep it steady in the water

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Polynesian journeys across the Pacific

Source 20 An example of a simple Polynesian double-hulled canoe

Source 21 Replicas of Polynesian ocean-going double-hulled canoes; similar vessels would have been used by the early voyagers to cross the Pacific Ocean.

17.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** four techniques that Polynesian navigators used to help them find land.

Comprehend

2 What is an outrigger? **Explain** how an outrigger works.

3 **Describe** three different types of Polynesian sea vessels.

Apply

4 Choose one of the Polynesian navigational methods. **Create** a presentation explaining how the method would have been used on Polynesian voyages. Include diagrams and images.

17A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!

Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Origin myths of the Māori

Myths and legends are passed down through the generations. Myths are a way to share people's origins, their religious beliefs and their way of understanding the environment.

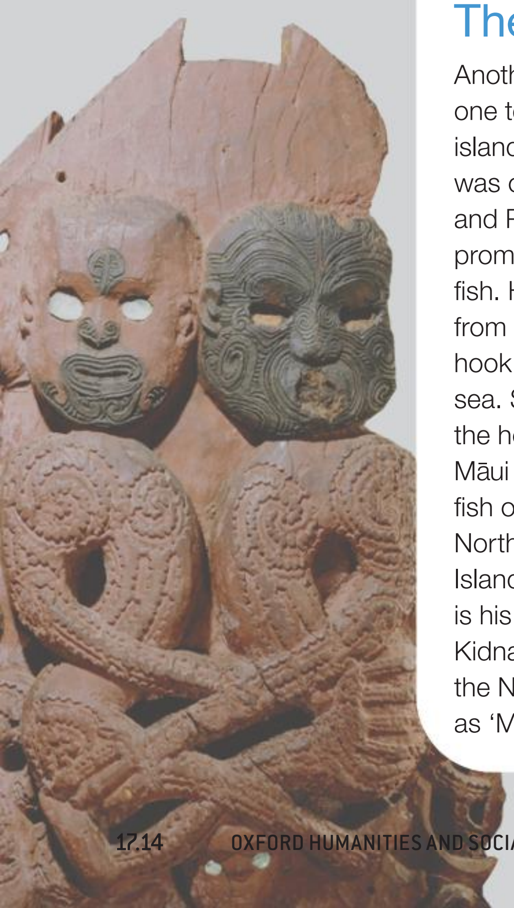
Many Māori myths feature gods performing incredible feats. But there are also Māori myths about the creatures around them and their importance to their lives. A number of myths feature whales and sharks. Whales and sharks were portrayed as guardians and often saved those in the sea from drowning. Sharks were an important part of the Māori diet and shark bone was used for carving. These myths in turn came to influence the arts and provided motifs that were used and easily understood by everyone in a tribe.

Two of the most important myths for the Māori were their creation myths – the legend of Rangi and Papa, and the legend of Māui.

The legend of Rangi and Papa

This legend tells the story of how day and night were formed. The Māori believed that the original creators were Rangi, who was the Sky Father, and Papa, who was the Earth Mother. In the beginning, Rangi and Papa clung together and their children lived in darkness. The children decided that Rangi and Papa needed to be parted. After great struggle, the children separated their parents and day was separated from night. Rangi cried at the parting, creating the oceans. The children of Rangi and Papa continued to argue. Their fighting caused the storms and the disruptions of the Earth, such as earthquakes and volcanic eruptions.

Source 22 A representation of Rangi and Papa, the Sky Father and Earth Mother in Māori mythology



The legend of Māui

Another traditional Māori legend, this one tells the story of the formation of the islands of Aotearoa (New Zealand). Māui was one of the grandchildren of Rangi and Papa. Māui decided to go fishing and promised to bring back a huge catch of fish. He prepared a special hook made from a magic jawbone. Smearing the hook with his blood, he threw it into the sea. Something immensely strong took the hook and nearly capsized the canoe. Māui pulled up the line, drawing a great fish out of the water. The fish became the North Island of New Zealand. The South Island is Māui's canoe and Stewart Island is his anchor stone. His hook is Cape Kidnappers headland in Hawke's Bay, on the North Island; the cape is also known as 'Māui's fish hook'.

Source 23 An illustration of Māui pulling up the North Island of New Zealand using a magic jawbone as a hook

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Identifying and locating relevant sources

Being able to locate relevant primary and secondary sources using the internet is an important historical skill. However, you need to keep in mind that not all information you find on the internet is necessarily true, accurate, reliable or useful. So, in addition to being able to find material online, you need to be able to evaluate its reliability, credibility and usefulness.

Use the following steps to apply this skill:

Step 1 Identify key words related to your topic and type these into a search engine, such as Google. (Do not type in sentences or questions.)

Step 2 Add further relevant key words to refine your search if you cannot find what you want.

Step 3 Look beyond the first page of results. The best results do not always appear first.

Step 4 Assess the reliability of each site by asking yourself the following questions:

- Who is the author or creator? If it is an individual, do they have their credentials listed (for example, a degree or a title)? If it is an organisation, is it a reputable one, such as a government or university department?
- What is the purpose of the website? Is it trying to inform, persuade or sell?
- Is the site objective? Is the author's point of view biased?
- Is the information accurate? Can the information be verified if you cross-check it with other sources of information?
- Does the site contain spelling mistakes or grammatical errors? (If so, this often indicates that the site is not particularly reliable.)
- Is the information current? Can you find evidence of recent updates?

For more information on this skill, see page 202 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 Conduct research online to locate and identify sources related to Māori origin myths.

2 Make a list of all the websites you visited and the sources you gathered.

  a Which of these sources do you think are the most reliable and relevant? How can you tell?

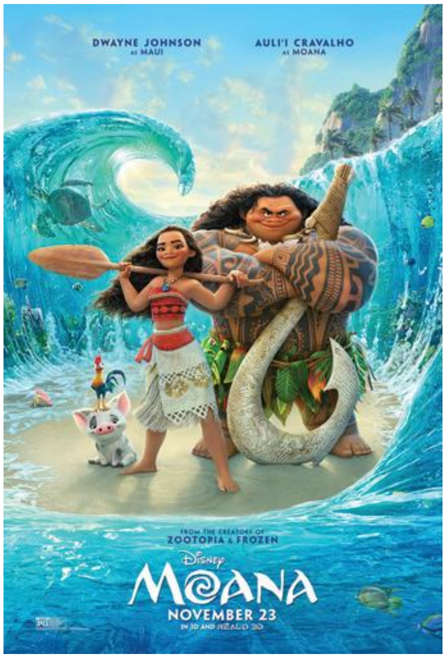
  b Which of these sources do you think are not reliable or relevant? How can you tell?

Extend your understanding

1 Further **investigate** Māori mythology. Then find out about some of the myths or legends of another Polynesian society.

  a On a scale of 1 (not very) to 5 (very) how similar are the stories of these societies?

  b **Create** a poster showing the similarities and differences.



Source 24 The Disney film *Moana* (2016) tells the legend of Māui, as he helps Moana learn how to navigate the ocean.

17.5 Polynesian societies

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the social, cultural, economic and political features of Rapa Nui society
- understand the construction of the moai on Rapa Nui, and the techniques used to make and transport them.

There were many Polynesian societies, including those in Hawaii, Samoa, the Marquesas, Tahiti, the Cook Islands, Tonga, Rapa Nui and New Zealand. Many of these societies continue today, with traditional ways of life adapting in response to the modern world. In this topic we will look at one of these societies – Rapa Nui – in greater detail.

Common features of Polynesian societies

Polynesian societies developed in many similar ways. In topic 17.3 (see page 17.8), we saw how Polynesian languages are closely related and contain many comparable words.

Tattooing and *ta moko* (see page 17.30) – using needles, chisels or a comb dipped in dye – were practised nearly everywhere in the Polynesian Triangle. Tattoos and *ta moko* often displayed a person's rank, family history or achievements. Different areas of the body were marked, depending on whether a person was male or female.

Polynesians also shared many beliefs about gods and the creation of the world. Most Polynesian societies believed there were many gods. One of the most commonly known gods in Polynesia was Tangaloa (known as Kanaloa in Hawaii and Ta'aroa in Tahiti). According to some myths, Tangaloa created the universe out of darkness.

Source 1 Traditional Polynesian tattoo tools

Source 2 A sketch made by French explorer Dumont D'Urville in the 1800s, showing a traditional Tongan tattoo

The society and culture of Rapa Nui

Polynesian people first settled Rapa Nui around 300 CE. It was then one of the most isolated settlements on Earth – located more than 2000 kilometres from the nearest inhabited Polynesian island and over 3000 kilometres from the coast of South America. Rapa Nui is only about 25 kilometres long and 12 kilometres wide. When Dutch Admiral Jacob Roggeveen arrived at Rapa Nui on Easter Sunday in 1722, he renamed it Easter Island.

The challenge for any historian studying Rapa Nui society is a lack of information. When Europeans first saw Rapa Nui it was already in dramatic decline. The population had become very small – apparently after a period of civil war. The population was further decimated by the introduction of foreign diseases that came with explorers from Europe. However, by studying the oral traditions and artefacts of the islanders, it is possible to piece together an understanding of the Rapa Nui way of life. The focus of a great deal of the study of Rapa Nui has been on the giant stone statues constructed there, called moai.

The moai

More than 800 moai have been found on Rapa Nui. It is believed that carving, moving and erecting these huge statues was a feature of islander life for about 300 years, from 1200 CE. The Rapa Nui people obtained the stone to make most of the statues at Rano Raraku, a volcanic crater. They carved the moai at Rano Raraku, and then transported them to the coast, where they set them on stone platforms facing inland. Archaeologists suggest that the Rapa Nui people used a combination of rollers, sleds and ropes to move these huge statues. The largest moai is almost 10 metres high and weighs 75 tonnes.

clans
groups of people linked and united in their aims and behaviours by the knowledge (or a belief) that they share common ancestors

Most of the statues found on Rapa Nui are still in the quarry at Rano Raraku, where they were waiting to be moved. Some were simply left unfinished (see Source 3).

Source 3 Unfinished moai at the Rano Raraku quarry on Rapa Nui

It is thought that the moai represented the ancestors of the different **clans** on Rapa Nui, and that they were placed to watch over the clans and their lands. But our understanding of the role of these statues is incomplete because there are no written records of the time before Europeans arrived. Also, later generations of islanders appear to have deliberately ruined the statues – perhaps as a rejection of their own past culture.

Social organisation and grouping

The island population was divided into social classes: the chiefs, priests and warriors were the leaders, and the common people provided the labour force.

In many Polynesian societies, including the Rapa Nui people and the Māori of Aotearoa, the leaders of the society were the ***ariki***, who belonged to a **hereditary** ruling class. In Rapa Nui society, the *ariki* claimed to be direct descendants of Hotu Matu'a. According to legend, Hotu Matu'a was a god-like figure and the first to settle the island of Rapa Nui, arriving with his extended family in two great canoes.

ariki
a member of a noble or chiefly rank in many Polynesian societies

hereditary
inherited; passed down from one generation to another

Each family or household was linked to an extended clan through a complex system of social obligations, which involved the exchange of goods, labour and wives. The Rapa Nui people did not use money. The *ariki* organised the labour force and collected taxes in the form of produce and goods. They also supervised trade between the various clans or tribes, and were responsible for keeping the peace and maintaining the food supply. In some cases, this involved controlling a central store of food to be used when food supplies were low.

Source 4 Some of the moai on Rapa Nui

Source 5 Nineteenth-century illustrations of Rapa Nui people

The labour force was made up of farmers, fishermen, craftspeople and warriors. The common people lived in small, round-walled houses, built on stone foundations. Sweet potato was the main crop on the island. It was a vital food source because it provided high yields, even in poor soil.

The Rapa Nui people had no metal tools. They used stone axes, stone fish hooks and bone needles, and made tools – such as spear points, scrapers and knives – from obsidian (volcanic glass).

The carving, moving and placement of the moai required a well-organised social structure. Some sections of the community had to ensure a surplus of food to feed the important stonemasons, tool-makers and engineers who were responsible for creating and putting up the moai.

Traditionally, marriages were arranged by the fathers of the bride and groom. Many marriages ended in divorce, and both men and women could break their marriage ties for almost any reason, and then remarry.

Explore it!
A virtual field trip to Rapa Nui

The roles for men and women were strictly defined. Men were responsible for planting the garden, fishing and building. Women harvested crops and handled domestic chores.

The decline of Rapa Nui

Rapa Nui society was devastated by clan warfare around 1680. This led to the final breakdown of its traditional structure. The population may once have been as high as 15 000, but by the time Europeans arrived, there were only 2000 to 3000 people living on the island. Contact with Europeans then ravaged the remaining population. Europeans not only brought deadly diseases such as smallpox (to which the Rapa Nui people had no immunity), but also introduced the slave trade.

Today, the island's population is approximately 8000, predominantly of Polynesian descent. Almost all live in the village of Hanga Roa. It is a Chilean dependency.

17.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** three features that most Polynesian societies had in common.

2 **Identify** the role of the *ariki* in Rapa Nui society.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the social organisation of Rapa Nui. In your summary include the relationship between the *ariki* and Hotu Matu'a.

Apply

4 According to Rapa Nui legend, the moai were once alive and walked to their current locations.

- a **Investigate** some of the archaeological theories used to explain how the moai were transported.
- b **Discuss** the methods used to test these theories. Which theory do you think is most likely to be correct, and why?

17.6 Māori society

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the social, cultural, economic and political features of Māori society

» describe the responsibilities and privileges of being a leader in Māori society.

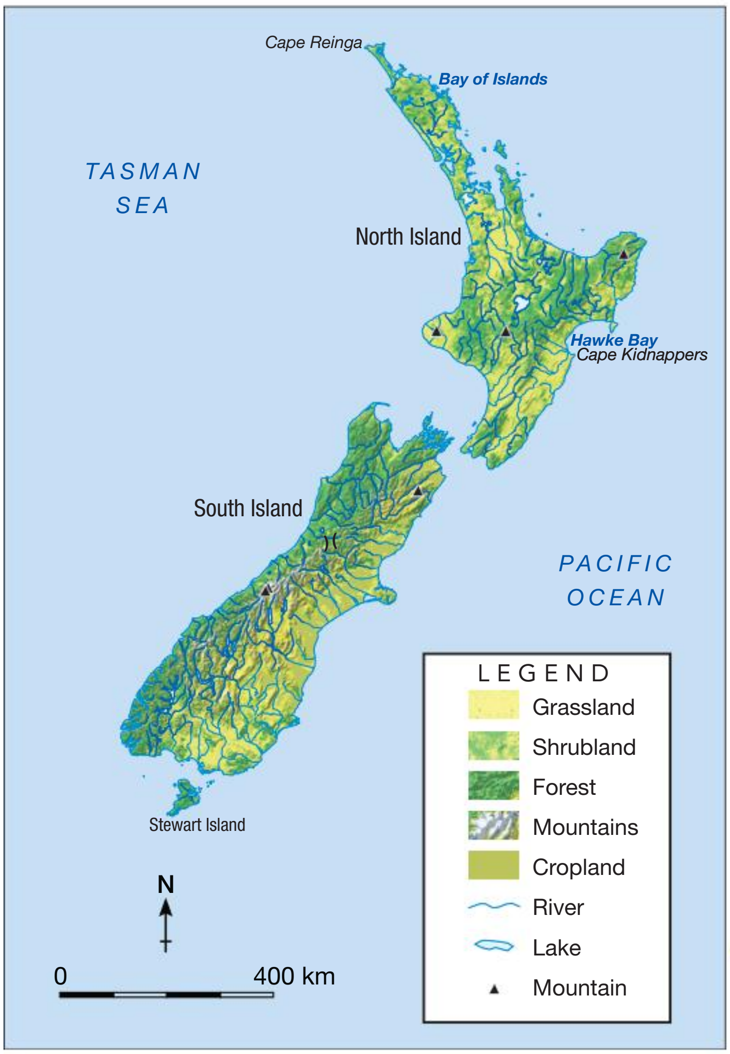
Māori society developed on the islands of New Zealand around 1000 years ago and has its own distinctive culture. The Māori call New Zealand 'Aotearoa', meaning 'land of the long white cloud'. Aotearoa is surrounded by dangerous seas and was probably one of the last areas to be settled by the Polynesians. Historians believe that the Māori probably arrived in Aotearoa between 950 and 1130 CE. The Māori have strong oral traditions about this discovery and settlement.

The Māori account of settlement

Māori tradition tells of Chief Kupe travelling to Aotearoa in about 950 CE. According to the legend, Kupe travelled in a canoe called *Maataa-hourua* from a land called Hawaiki. He landed near modern-day Wellington at a place he called Whanganui-a-tara. When Chief Kupe first saw the islands, it is believed that he said: '*He ao, he aotea he Aotearoa*' ('It is a cloud, a white cloud, a long white cloud').

Legend says that after the discovery, two more Polynesian explorers – Toi and Whatonga – followed in 1150. Then there was a voyage of settlers in 1350 known as the 'Great Fleet'. The Great Fleet was made up of eight canoes, each known as ***waka***. Modern Māori trace their ancestry to these settlers in song and oral traditions. Many modern historians question the Great Fleet story, but archaeological evidence does point to the arrival of the Polynesians around 1280.

AOTEAROA (NEW ZEALAND)



Source 6 Source: Oxford University Press

waka
a Māori canoe; it can be small and used for fishing, or large and used for war

Enlarged map
Aotearoa (New Zealand)

The importance of ancestry

Genealogy (the study of family history) is important to the Māori because each tribe traces its ancestry back to a *waka* of origin. Māori genealogy is known as *whakapapa*, which means 'placing the people in their layers'. A special carved genealogy staff called a *rākau whakapapa* is used to recite the history of the people. The *rākau whakapapa* is about a metre in length and covered in knobs. Each knob on the staff represents a different generation, and serves as a reminder to the person reciting the genealogy.

Social organisation and grouping

Māori society was organised around the *iwi* (tribe), which traced its descent to one of the original *waka* (canoes) of the Great Fleet. The main group within the *iwi* was the *hapu* (sub-tribe). The *hapu* was usually made up of approximately 500 people organised in several related family groups. Each *hapu* was independent and had established land boundaries. Rank and leadership within traditional Māori culture was based on a person's relationship to the ancestors. Māori society was made up of three main classes: *rangatira*, *tutua* and *taurekareka*.

The *rangatira*, or ruling class, was made up of the most important families. An elder within the *rangatira* ensured that the *hapu* survived, and that its land and resources were protected and defended.

The *ariki* was the leader of the *rangatira*. He was the first-born son of the most senior family that could trace its ancestry back to the founding *waka*. While the *ariki* were the clear leaders, their authority came from their family. The *ariki* were expected to listen to the opinions of all members of the tribe and to prove their leadership in war, diplomacy and the wise treatment of the people. These decisions were reached at a *marae* (a public meeting) held in or near the *whare runanga* (meeting house).

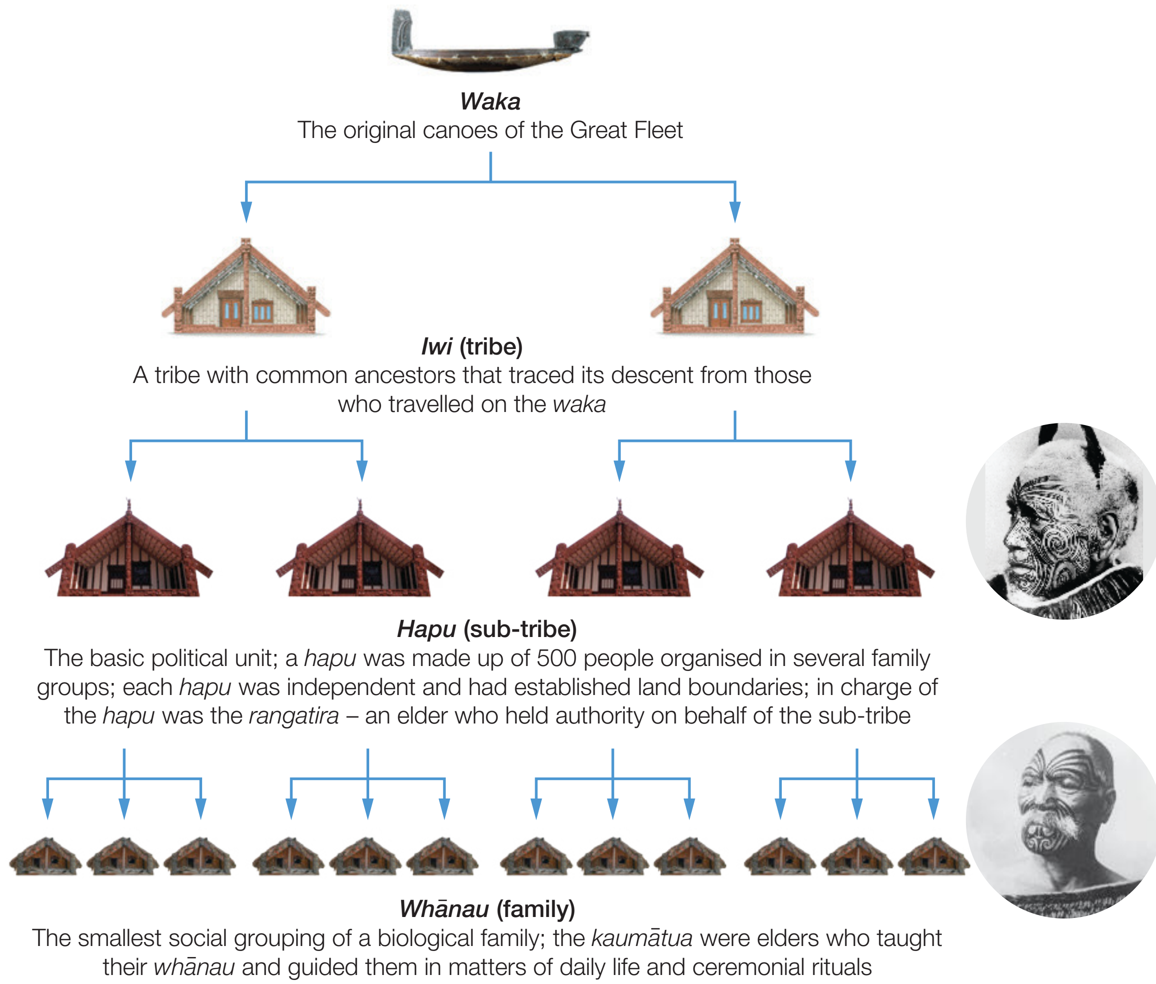
Analyse this!
Rangatira Tāmati Wāka

Source 7 A painting of Māori Tāmati Wāka Nene, created by Lindauer Gottfried, 1890

The *tutua* were the largest class in Māori society. They were not as senior in rank as the *rangatira*, but they were the most productive group. Many people in this class had specialised skills, and economic wealth depended on them.

The *taurekareka* were slaves who had been captured in war. They carried out all the menial tasks for the tribe, but they were not prisoners. Tribal beliefs stated that once they were captured, slaves were considered dead, so it made little sense for them to escape. These slaves could often marry into the tribe and their children would be free.

Within this social structure and at differing levels there was a fourth class called *tohunga*. This group consisted of people who had shown talent or skill as a child. They became the priests or the specialists who built houses or canoes, or who carried out tasks such as fishing or carving. The *tohunga* were also the educators – telling and passing on the tribal history.



Source 8 The structure of Māori society, including the *iwi*, *hapu*, *rangatira*, *whānau* and *kaumātua*

17.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** what Chief Kupe is known for, in Māori oral tradition.

Comprehend

2 **Describe** the function of a *rākau whakapapa*.

3 **Summarise** the significance of the Great Fleet in Māori tradition.

Analyse

4 **Examine** Source 6. Write a paragraph identifying the locations where you would have expected most Māori settlements to be, based on the vegetation.

Apply

5 **Create** your own hierarchical diagram (similar to Source 8) to convey the main classes in Māori society. Include a description of their roles.

6 In small groups, **discuss** to what extent family relationships in Māori society were more or less important than they are for you in your life. Remember, when you discuss something, you should approach it with your own point of view, which you support using evidence from research.

17.7 Daily life in a Māori village

Learning intention

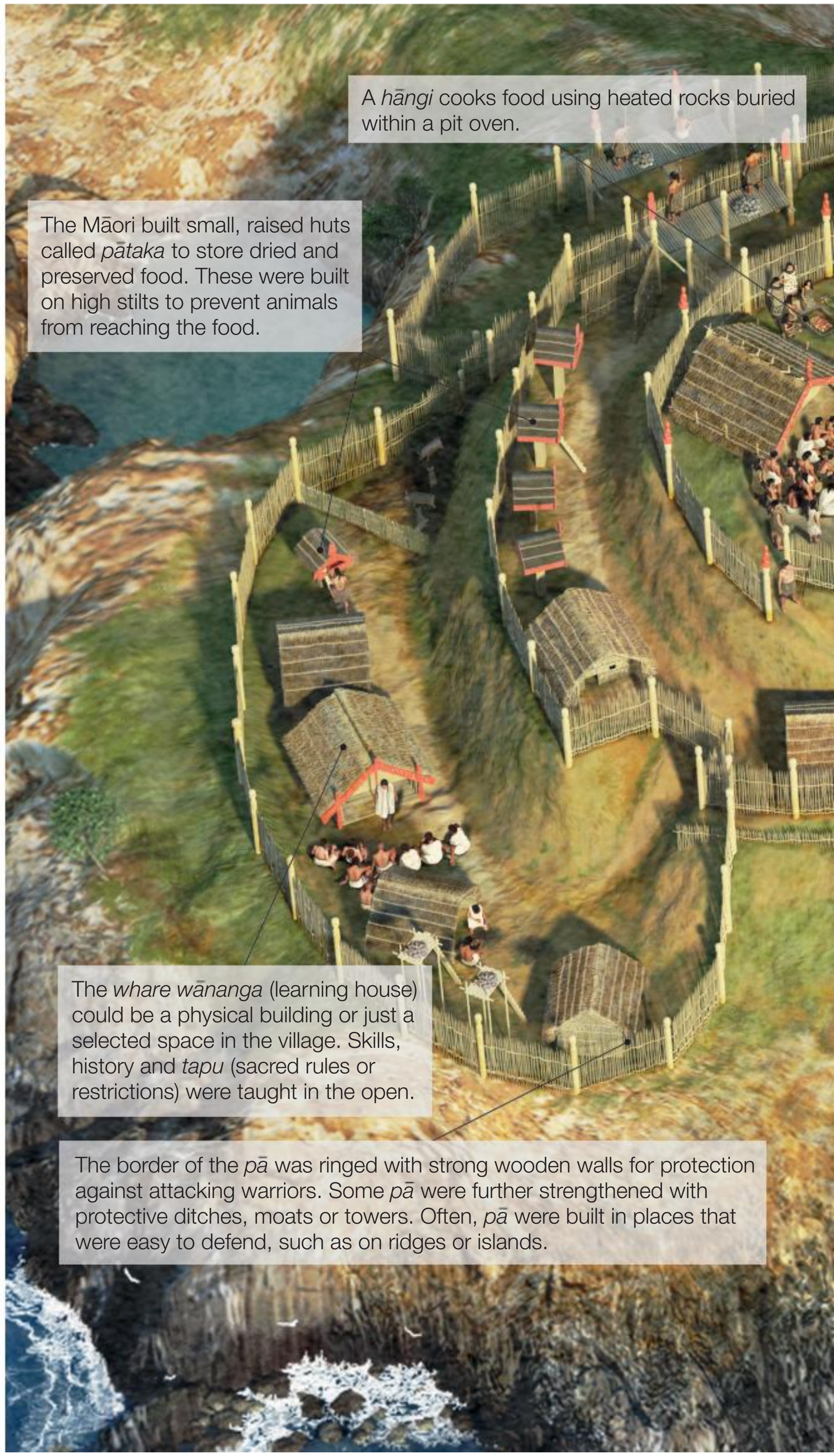
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the way of life in, and the achievements of, Māori society.

The focus of daily life in traditional Māori communities was on getting food. Everyone in the village, including children, worked together. Food was prepared and eaten together in the village, or *pā*. Māori farmed much of their food, but they also hunted and gathered food from the land and sea. Birds, fish and native vegetables were added to their staple food, kumara (sweet potato). Diets also varied between regions. On Stewart Island, for example, the mutton bird was plentiful; whereas people in other areas caught eels or collected shellfish.

The *hāngi* was a method of cooking. To make a *hāngi*, the cooks would first dig a large pit. They would light a fire and heat stones until they were hot, and then arrange the stones in the bottom of the *hāngi* pit. The food was wrapped in leaves or put in baskets to protect it from burning, and then placed on the hot stones and covered over with earth. The *hāngi* was left buried for around three hours. When the *hāngi* was 'raised', the food was ready to share.

Interactive
A traditional Māori *pā*



Source 9 A modern artist's impression of a traditional Māori *pā*

Quiz me!
Daily life in a Māori village

17.7 Check your learning

Comprehend

1. List the typical features of a Māori *pā*.
2. **Summarise** what might happen at the *marae*.
3. **Describe** how to prepare a *hāngi*.
4. Using the information in Source 9, write a paragraph to **summarise** life in a Māori *pā*.

Apply

5. In small groups, **create** a newspaper called the *Pā Times*. Your newspaper might include articles about life in the *pā*, upcoming events, and news about members of the village. Some suggestions for articles might be:
   - a notice of an upcoming *hāngi* feast
   - a story about a social scandal among the *rangatira* or the *taurekareka* (or both)
   - advertisements for services by *tohunga* canoe-builders or carpenters.

17B

SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!

Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Māori warrior culture

Traditional Māori society became very warlike. A growing population led to competition for resources which, in turn, led to an increase in warring between tribes. Conflicts could break out over land or if one tribe insulted another. After an insult or a defeat, the injured party was obliged to seek revenge and restore their *mana* (status). People prepared themselves for battle using special rituals, and a dance called the *haka*.

To scare the enemy, Māori warriors would perform a *haka* that called on Tumatauenga (the god of war). This *haka* used loud cries, the waving of weapons and fierce facial expressions, such as grimaces, tongue-poking and bulging eyes. Throat-cutting gestures and other movements would be used to show the enemy what was going to happen to them. A different *haka* could also be performed in the *pā* to retell the stories of past victories.

Once ready for war, the chief would lead groups of 70 or 140 warriors (the number that could travel in a war canoe) out to fight. They would often attack at dawn, using the natural bush as cover to carry out surprise raids. The raiders would try to kill all the enemy to prevent any revenge attacks. Fighting was hand-to-hand and fierce, using clubs made from wood, bone or greenstone.

After battle, cleansing rites would be performed. Tribes could make peace with one another by arranging marriages between people of chiefly rank.

Source 10 An illustration of a fortified Māori *pā* on Rotorua Lake, created by George French Angas in 1847

Source 11

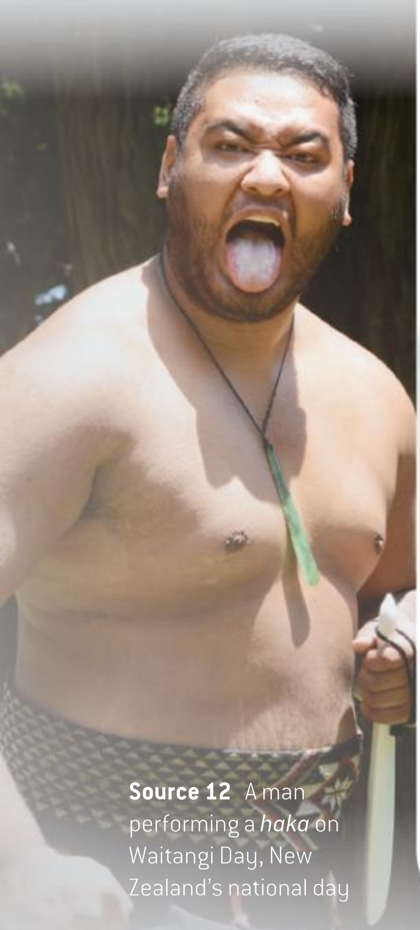
9 October 1769, Poverty Bay, New Zealand

I went ashore … manned and armed and went to the side of the river, the natives being got together on the opposite side. We called to them in the Georges Island language, but they answered us by flourishing their weapons over their heads and dancing, as we supposed the war dance …

31 October 1769, Cape Runaway, New Zealand

[F]ive canoes came off to us, in one of which were upwards of 40 men, all armed with pikes and so on. From this and other circumstances it fully appeared that they came with no friendly intention … I ordered a grapeshot [small iron balls fired together from a cannon] to be fired a little wide of them. This made them pull off a little …

Extracts from Captain James Cook's *Endeavour* journal, written during his first voyage of 1768–71, relating two of his first encounters with Māori people.



Source 12 A man performing a *haka* on Waitangi Day, New Zealand's national day

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Analysing primary sources

The primary sources that historians use to understand the traditional Māori way of life tell different stories. It is the job of historians to examine these sources and come to a conclusion about their usefulness and reliability. It is important to identify who created each source and the reason it was created. That way you can identify any potential bias.

Step 1 Evaluating reliability: To determine the reliability of a source, you need to identify whether it presents a balanced view of events. Some sources may ignore or leave out important information. In order to get a more accurate picture of an event or era, historians must identify how reliable a source is by recognising what is missing. They can then seek out the gaps in information to create a more balanced interpretation of history.

To evaluate the reliability of a source, ask the following questions:

- Who created the source?
- Why was the source created?
- What opinion does the source convey?
- What message does the source convey?
- What is included and what is excluded?
- What can the source tell me about life at the time that it was created?

Step 2 Evaluating usefulness: To evaluate the usefulness of a source, ask yourself:

- What question am I investigating?
- Does this source present a reliable interpretation of events?
- What messages is the source conveying – both explicit and implicit?
- What is the source saying or showing that will help me to answer my historical question?
- What additional information would I like that would help me to answer my question?

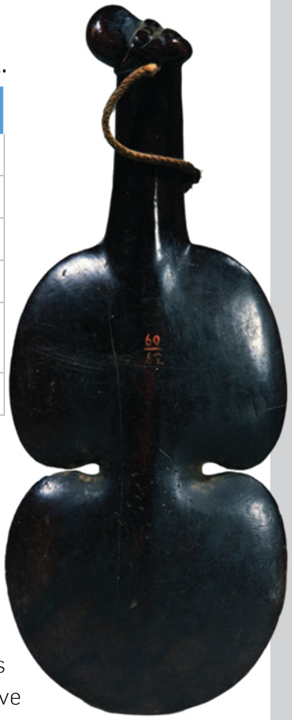
For more information on this skill, see page 207 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Examine** Sources 10, 11 and 13 carefully and complete a copy of this table in your notebook.

	Source 10	Source 11	Source 13
Who created the source?			
When was the source created?			
Why was the source created?			
What does the source suggest about the Māori?			
What evidence does the source provide that the Māori were a warlike people?			
Do you think the source is reliable? Why or why not?			

2 **Summarise** the information you have gathered above in a short paragraph titled 'The Māori: A warrior people'.



Source 13 This is an eighteenth-century example of short wooden 'stabbing' club, called a *kotiate*, which was used by Māori in close hand-to-hand combat. Māori chiefs often held it while they gave speeches.

Extend your understanding

1 Study the illustration of the *pā* on pages 17.22 to 17.23. Imagine you are a chief planning to raid this *pā*. **Describe** how you would organise your attack. Make sure you include information about:

- which direction you would come from
- what you would do to overcome the *pā*'s defences.

17.8 Managing the environment

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- explain how environmental challenges were overcome on different islands to make settlement possible
- identify the causes and effects of Polynesian settlements on the environment
- explain the significance of *rahui* as a way of prohibiting the collection of resources.

The islands and atolls of Polynesia have a limited number of resources. As Polynesian settlements grew, environmental management was vital to survival, with unsustainable practices threatening the ability of humans to live there. The inhabitants of Rapa Nui experienced the hardships of living unsustainably after logging all the trees on the island. This is still noticeable on Rapa Nui today (see Source 1).

The Māori were more closely linked to their environment than the later European arrivals. However, as the extinction of the moa shows, they also had a huge impact early in their settlement of New Zealand before they learnt to adapt and protect the environment.

Overuse of Rapa Nui's natural resources

Rapa Nui once had over a million giant palm trees and other types of trees and vegetation. But by the time the first Europeans saw the island in 1722, most of the trees were gone. As Dutchmen Jacob Roggeveen recounted: 'We counted as sand the withered grass, hay, or other scorched and burnt vegetation, because its wasted appearance could give no other impression than of a singular poverty and barrenness.' Some historians think that the history of Rapa Nui can be seen as a warning about ruining the environment through **deforestation**.

deforestation
the action of clearing a wide area of trees

Timber was used by the Rapa Nui people as fuel for fires, to build canoes and houses, and possibly to make rollers, sleds and thick rope for moving the moai. As the Rapa Nui people cut down trees to obtain timber, they gradually destroyed the ancient forests. This deforestation also caused soil to blow or wash away, and then streams began to disappear.

Think, pair, share

- Think about the ways living on such a small island would have impacted the lifestyles of the people of Rapa Nui.
- Discuss your ideas with a partner.
- Share your thoughts with the class.

Source 1 The vast grasslands of Rapa Nui are all that is left after deforestation.

Evidence found by archaeologists uncovered pollen from five different palm species. Charcoal from ancient fires matched another 16 extinct species, indicating that there had once been diverse forests present on Rapa Nui. There is evidence that the Polynesian rat, which was brought to the island with the first settlers, also contributed to the destruction of the forests. Rats ate the seeds of palm trees before they could grow.

Source 2 A Polynesian rat

The flow-on effects of deforestation were noticed by the Dutch arrivals in 1722, who saw that the Rapa Nui people's canoes were small and leaky. **Middens** have provided evidence that food sources began to dwindle, as the Rapa Nui people could no longer travel out into the ocean to catch porpoise and other large fish. Shellfish became smaller in size due to overharvesting. This led to the extinction of at least six land birds, as the Rapa Nui people became more desperate for food. The island had once been a breeding haven for 25 species of seabirds due to its lack of predators, but populations were dramatically reduced after Polynesian settlement. The Polynesian rat became the only growing food source on the island.

middens
deposits of waste containing shells, animal bones and other refuse that indicates the site of a human settlement

Deforestation did not automatically mean the end of Rapa Nui society. The Rapa Nui, like other Polynesians, were not totally dependent on wildlife or palm trees for food. They also cultivated sweet potato, raised and ate chickens, and caught seafood. The gradual disappearance of the forests over a period of 400 to 500 years meant that people were able to adapt.

Māori management of the environment

The Māori believed that all living things were descended from gods. These gods were part of the environment, and were found in the rivers, mountains and lakes. Geographical features were thought to contain *mana* (spiritual essence or power). Each tribe was responsible for maintaining the *mana* of its environment. These beliefs affected the way the Māori managed their environment – one of their most significant achievements.

The use of *tapu*

The word *tapu* has many meanings in Māori. Sometimes *tapu* means 'sacred', but it can also mean that something is forbidden. If an item is *tapu,* it cannot come into contact with a person, or the gods might become angry. People could be *tapu* – though generally only men, or possibly a woman of the highest rank.

Source 3 The Māori believed their gods were part of the environment, and that they were found in rivers, mountains and lakes.

The chief and his food were *tapu*. A lesser person in the tribe could not touch him and would be punished by death if they did. His house was also *tapu,* and could only be entered – particularly by a woman – after a special ritual was carried out. Other people who were *tapu* included the healer or priest, along with their homes and possessions. Areas such as burial grounds were *tapu*.

Tapu was also the word for the rules that were developed to protect sacred places, people and objects.

KEY CONCEPT
Cause & effect

Extinction of the moa

One early source of food for the Māori was the moa, a large flightless bird. There were originally 24 species of moa, ranging in size from that of a turkey to one that was 3.7 metres high. All moa were herbivores and lived on twigs, shrubs, leaves and tree fruits.

Unfortunately for the moa, they were just too useful. They were easy to hunt and therefore became easy prey for the early Māori settlers. Their bones also made good tools and implements. The moa were hunted into extinction soon after the arrival of the Māori.

Other species that were hunted to extinction in New Zealand included the flightless goose, the adzebill (another large flightless bird), swans and pelicans. Sea lions and elephant seals were also hunted in large numbers. But as time went on and these ready food sources started to disappear, the Māori moved from hunting to farming and storing food, as well as conservation of other wild food resources.

Like other societies, the Māori had to balance their needs with those of the environment. When resources came under pressure, the Māori learnt from their experiences with the moa and used special *tapu* (rules), called *rāhui*, to protect the environment.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 212 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 4 A skeleton of a moa, estimated to be 5000 years old

Analyse this!
A tohunga being fed by a child

Source 5 This painting shows a *tohunga* being fed by a child. Some *tohunga* were so *tapu* that they needed others to feed them, as food was believed to pollute their *tapu*.

The role of *tohunga* (priests)

The priests' most important role was to see that *tikanga* (customs or rituals) were correctly observed. They were healers of both physical and spiritual ills, and they performed the appropriate rituals when the tribe was farming, fishing, hunting and going to war. Importantly, this included the placing and lifting of *tapu*.

Rāhui and sustainability

As their populations grew and resources declined, the Māori developed ways to more actively manage their environment. One way they managed resources sustainably was through a particular type of *tapu* known as *rāhui*. *Rāhui* involved banning the use of particular environmental resources for a specified time.

For example, fishing might be forbidden in a particular lake in order to give the fish a chance to breed, or an area of land might be set aside so that plants could recover.

After declaring a *rāhui*, the chief would set its limits. He would mark it with a post or describe the features of the landscape that served as its borders. Other *rāhui* were based on time rather than space, with hunting of particular animals or birds forbidden during certain times of the year.

Source 6

> The conservation *rāhui* was used to protect the products of the land and water … [the] chief Tukuha … set up a *rāhui* post at Te Rautāwhiri.
>
> The post remained in the same position, but whenever the chief wanted to *rāhui* the eels of his part of the Rangitaiki River, he would 'hang one of his old garments' on it. That would signal a complete ban on that one resource, eels. In this instance, the name of the place, Te Rautāwhiri (the leaves twisted on), indicates that it was used by custom as a place to signal a *rāhui*.

A description of *rāhui* by Māori anthropologist Hirini Moko Mead, 2003

The system of *rāhui* meant that the Māori could use the natural resources available to them without depleting them, meaning they would still be available for future generations. This was a great achievement in early conservation and is something that Western societies are now looking at. In fact, *rāhui* is still used in New Zealand today to protect the numbers of native fish, shellfish and birds.

Additional resource
Futures wheel

17.8 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the main causes leading to the extinction of the moa.

2 **Define** the terms *mana*, *tapu* and *rāhui*.

Analyse

3 **Examine** Source 6 and answer the following questions.

 a What resources does the *rāhui* aim to protect?

 b How does the chief signal that the *rāhui* is in place?

 c What does the signal that the *rāhui* is in place mean to people in the community?

4 If you could declare a *rāhui* on any environmental resource today, what would it be? Why have you chosen this resource?

Apply

5 **Create** a flow chart or futures wheel (there is a template available on your obook pro) to show the consequences of unsustainable land use in Rapa Nui. Start with unsustainable logging and brainstorm the many flow-on effects and consequences.

6 Imagine you are a Dutch arrival to Rapa Nui in 1722. **Create** a diary or letter to describe what you saw and your thoughts about the settlements and people living on the island. Include observations about the environment.

17.9 Polynesian arts

Learning intention

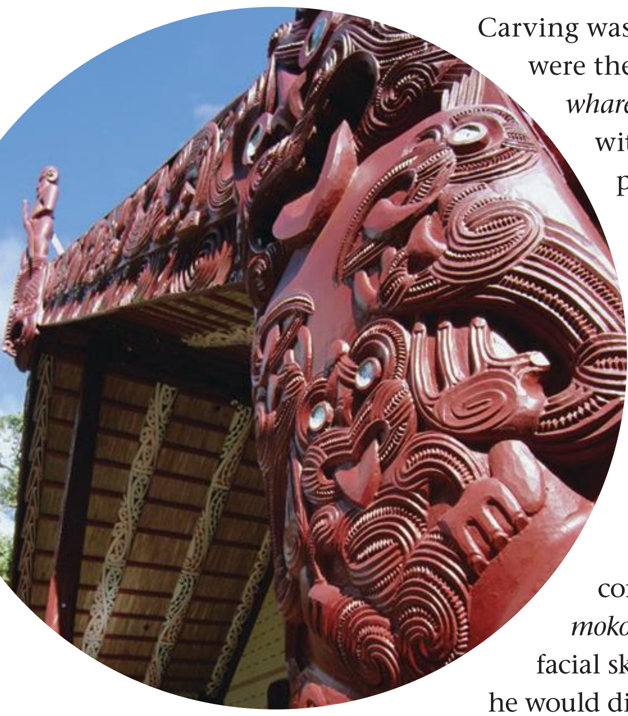
By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the significance of art in representing Polynesian beliefs and culture.

The beauty and importance of Polynesian art can most clearly be seen in their carving, weaving and *tā moko*. These arts use intricate, detailed patterns and motifs requiring high levels of skill to reproduce – making them a significant achievement. They were common across all levels of Polynesian society, communicating important information about spiritual matters, ancestry and tribal identity.

Polynesian culture was an oral culture, but stories were not just passed on by storytellers – tribes lived surrounded by their histories, both in their carvings and in their tattoos. For these reasons, the creation of art was also governed by the rules of *tapu*, and skilled artists were well respected and held high positions within the tribe.

Carving



Source 7 A detail of the carving on the *whare rūnanga* (meeting house) in the town of Waitangi

Carving was probably the most significant art form, and carvings in wood were the most important to the tribe. Carvings on canoes and within the *whare runānga* (meeting house) held the stories of the tribe's history, told with familiar motifs and symbols. The shapes used held meaning and provided a link to ancestors or spirits.

Tā moko

In traditional Māori society, *tā moko* is the permanent marking of the body and face. It is different from tattooing in that the skin is carved rather than punctured. *Tohunga-ta-moko*, or *moko* specialists, were highly respected. The patterns or *moko* illustrated a person's rank or status, and a person without *moko* had a very low position within their tribe.

A person's head was the most important area for *moko* because it communicated specific things, such as social standing. Initially, the *moko* specialist would cut into the facial skin using a bone chisel. Then he would dip the chisel into a pigment made from burnt Kauri gum or vegetable caterpillars, and tap it into the wounds. This process could be very painful. Swelling and even temporary loss of sight was common. Afterwards, the wearer was left with long, coloured grooves on their skin.

Both women and men wore *moko*, but men usually had more. Men generally received *moko* on their faces, buttocks and thighs; women would only have them on their lips, chins and nostrils. Undergoing *tā moko* was an important step in leaving childhood behind and entering the adult world.

Source 8 A Māori chief with facial *moko*

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Polynesian arts

Weaving

Weaving was done by the women of the tribe with flax. Items such as cloaks, skirts, floor mats and baskets were created. Weavers would use different types of flax, depending on the desired colour or use of the item.

Tapa cloth

Barkcloth is a material derived from the inner bark of trees, and is referred to as *tapa* in Polynesia. The art form of *tapa*-making was considered a sacred knowledge that only women could hold. The process of making the cloth involved stripping bark, soaking it in water, pounding the strips into cloth, and beating pieces together until the fibres fused to form large sheets.

Plants, roots and seeds were then used to form ink and dyes, which were painted decoratively onto the cloth using symbolic motifs and patterns. These geometric shapes, lines and curves are very significant and distinctive to Polynesian culture. The patterns on a *tapa* cloth are a form of symbolic language, with certain designs depicting gods, myths and legends. The *tapa* was to represent the sacred connection between man and nature.

Tapa cloth was primarily used for clothing and ceremonial purposes, such as wall hangings or flooring in meeting houses. It was used to wrap a newborn baby, as a wedding dress and also at a funeral in place of a coffin. Exchanging *tapa* cloth between families or clans would reinforce a relationship or the closeness of their bond.

Today, the use of these sacred designs by businesses is of concern, as they could trademark and restrict the usage of certain spiritual patterns that have been used for centuries. Over time, this could result in a loss of culture.

For more information on this key concept, refer to page 219 of 'The history toolkit'.

Source 9 A modern-day wedding using clothing made from *tapa* cloth

KEY CONCEPT
Significance

Source 10 A carved Māori greenstone *tiki*, traditionally worn around the neck

17.9 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why were skilled artists held in high regard in Polynesian societies?

2 Men and women were involved in different arts. **Identify** which of the arts were the domain of women.

Analyse

3 **Analyse** the positive and negative effects of businesses using traditional Polynesian arts. Remember, when you analyse something, you need to break it down into smaller parts, and talk about how those parts relate to each other.

Apply

4 Think about how the Polynesians used design in carving and *tapa* cloth to show their relationships with their ancestors. **Create** a design on a piece of paper that represents who you are and where you have come from. (The design does not need to be for a carving; it could be a pattern to go on a T-shirt or flag.)

17C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Canoe building

Canoe building was an important and sacred skill for Polynesian peoples. Expert carpenters were highly regarded, and in many Polynesian societies the title of 'boatbuilder' was passed down from father to son. Having a large canoe built was expensive, and often canoe builders were part of a chief or king's staff. There were also complex rituals involved in building canoes.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Source 11

Four hundred men were employed in the building of a certain canoe at Pua Ma'u, working under the direction of four [*tohunga*]. The work was done where the tree was felled and where a decorated house was erected for the workmen. Workmen and [*tohunga*] were fed by the chief, twenty men being employed in this work. The place was *tapu* to women and to strangers. Any intruder from another valley would be killed and eaten. When the canoe was finished a great feast was held at the place of manufacture, the workmen's house being decorated with ferns and wildvines.

A description of canoe-building in the Marquesas, from E. S. Craighill Handy, *The Native Culture in the Marquesas*, Bayard Dominick Expedition 1920–21, Vol. 9, Bernice P. Bishop Museum, 1923, p. 155

Source 12

Canoe building was one of the industries of ancient Hawaiians, and it is still carried on to this day. This is how it is done: when a man desires to go up to the mountain forests to get a tree to build a canoe, he must first prepare a pig, red fish, black fish and various other things as offerings to propitiate [pacify] the forest deities. When these things are ready he comes home and invites dreams in his sleep. If they are good dreams, he will go up to the forests; but if they are unfavourable, he won't go.

When he arrives at the place where the koa tree selected for his canoe stands, he kindles a fire … to cook the offerings. When all the offerings are cooked, prayers are offered to the canoe-building gods … then he eats some of the food and throws some to the gods. When all these things have been attended to, the tree is ready to be cut.

A description of canoe-building in Hawaii in A. Fornander, *Fornander Collection of Hawaiian Antiquities and Folklore*, Vol. 5, Bernice P. Bishop Museum, 1916, pp. 610–14

Source 13

The war canoes were very *tapu*; every step in their construction was accompanied by incantations said by the priests, part of whose special functions it was to act as naval architects.

Extract from Elsdon Best, *The Māori Canoe*, A. R Shearer, 1925, pp. 62–3

Source 14 The front of a carved wood and shell prow from a Māori canoe, *c.* 1860

KEY SKILL
Using historical sources

Locating, comparing, selecting and using information from a range of sources as evidence

When conducting a historical inquiry, it is important to locate, compare, select and use information from a range of sources in order to answer your key inquiry question. By doing this, you can be sure that the evidence you gather from these sources is fair, balanced and accurate.

The simplest and most effective method to compare sources is to use a source evaluation chart. This kind of chart can help you quickly decide which sources provide the most useful, relevant and reliable evidence. To create a source evaluation chart, follow these steps:

Step 1 Create a table that is four columns wide and has as many rows as required – this will vary depending on how many sources you are comparing.

Step 2 List your inquiry question at the top of the table, as well as any possible hypotheses you may have developed during your research.

Step 3 In column 1, list the name of the source and where you found it. In column 2, list the type of source – primary or secondary. In column 3, list all the positive things (pros) and negative things (cons) about the source. For example, the source may have been written by a very reputable historian (pro); but it may be short and not include many details (con). In column 4, list the details of where you found it, such as the internet address, or book title and author details.

Step 4 Once you have completed your source evaluation chart, you will be in a good position to make some decisions about which sources provide reliable evidence and which do not. This will then help you answer your inquiry question.

For more information on this skill, see page 206 of 'The history toolkit'.

Practise the skill

1 **Compare** the information provided in Sources 11 to 15 by creating a source evaluation chart as outlined above. An example of this type of chart is provided on your obook pro.

2 Based on your analysis of the available information, answer this inquiry question: 'How sacred was the skill of canoe building to the Polynesian peoples?'

Extend your understanding

1 What does the description in Source 11 tell you about the amount of work required to build a new canoe?

2 With reference to Sources 11 and 12, **explain** why you think women and strangers were banned from witnessing canoe building in some Polynesian societies.

Source 15 A Māori war canoe or *waka taua*; traditionally, war canoes were often painted black and red – black represents death and red means *tapu*.

Additional resource
A source evaluation chart

17 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read Sources 16 to 18, then answer the questions that follow.

Accidental versus intentional migration

Source 16

[I]n losing sight for two or four days of the land, [they] do not know, nor can determine their situation … the instruments of navigation of these Indians are their own eyes, or their guess of small distances. Since to what might be alleged that they direct themselves by the sun, moon, and stars? It may be replied, that the sun is not visible by night, the mutability [changing nature] of the moon is well known, and, in short they are not always present, nor in the same place, nor without clouds before stars, moon, and sun. But were all this possible (which it is not) yet their voyages must be so short as has been said.

Extract from Portuguese navigator Pedro Fernandez de Quiros, 1597

Source 17

[T]hese people sail in those Seas from Island to Island for several hundred Leagues, the Sun serving them for a Compass by day, and the Moon and Stars by night. When this comes to be proved, we shall be no longer at a loss to know how the Islands lying in those Seas came to be peopled.

Extract from Captain James Cook, July 1769

Source 18

When you go, lay the bow of the canoe to the Cloud Pillar that lies south-west. When night falls, steer towards the star Atua-tahi. Hold to the left of Mangaroa and travel on. When day breaks, again sail towards the Cloud Pillar and continue on.

Extract from Māori folklore, based on the navigation instructions of the legendary Chief Kupe

1 For each source, **identify** whether it suggests the Polynesian migration happened by accident or was intentional. Refer to each source to support your answer. (6 marks)

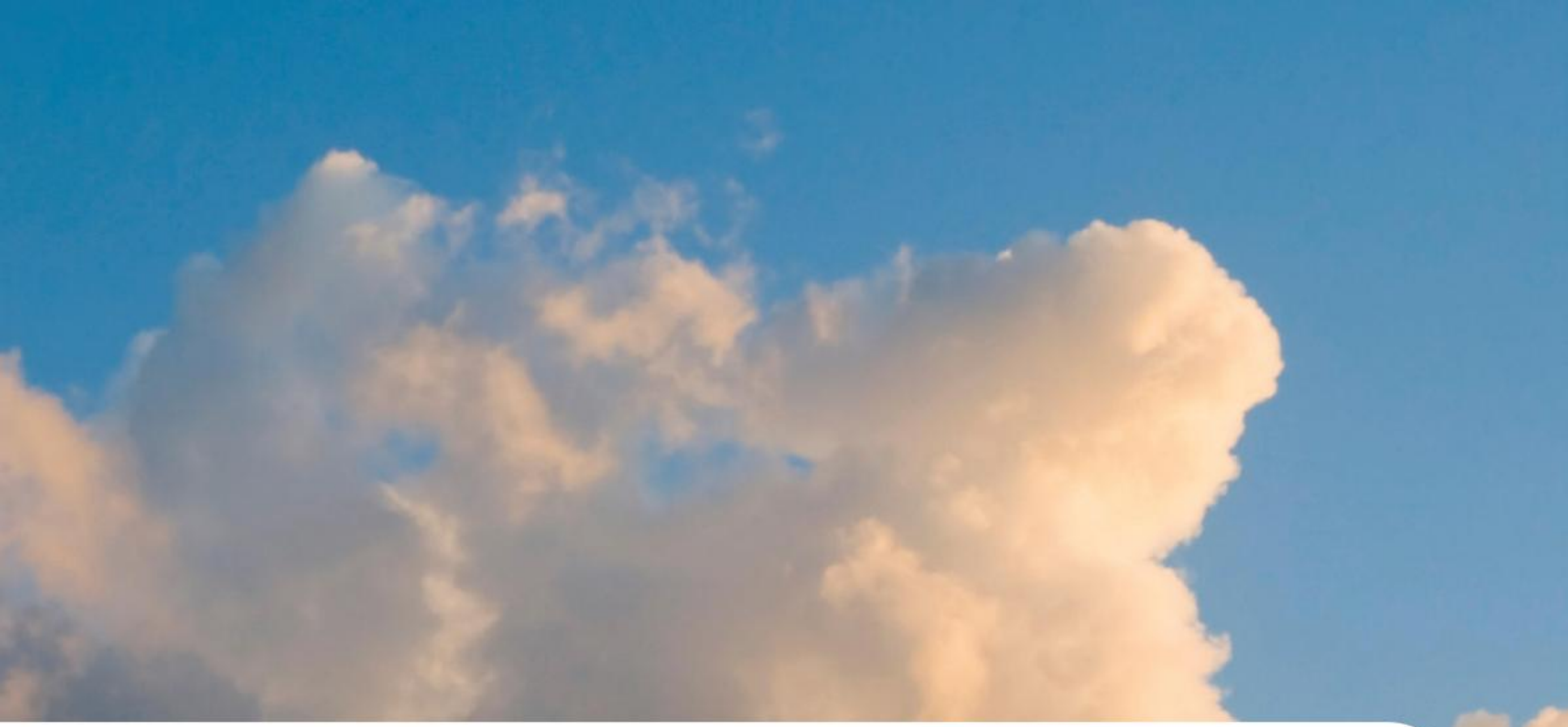
2 **Summarise** the perspectives held towards the Polynesians in Sources 16 and 17. Provide examples to support your answer. (6 marks)

3 **Create** a table like the one shown, and outline the arguments in these sources that support the two possible reasons for migration. (4 marks)

Accidental migration	Intentional migration

4 Order these three sources in order of usefulness (from most useful to least useful) for understanding Polynesian migration. **Justify** (give reasons for) your classifications. (4 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)



Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain how the physical features of Polynesia influenced its development.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.2, page 17.4.
Summarise different theories about Polynesian expansion across the Pacific.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.3, page 17.6.
Understand the importance of navigation in establishing settlements in Polynesia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.4, page 17.11.
Describe the social, cultural, economic and political features of Rapa Nui society. Understand the construction of the moai on Rapa Nui, and the techniques used to make and transport them.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.5, page 17.16.
Describe the social, cultural, economic and political features of Māori society. Describe the responsibilities and privileges of being a leader in Māori society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.6, page 17.19.
Understand the way of life in, and the achievements of, Māori society.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.7, page 17.22.
Explain how environmental challenges were overcome on different islands to make settlement possible. Identify the causes and effects of Polynesian settlements on the environment. Explain the significance of *rahui* as a way of prohibiting the collection of resources.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.8, page 17.26.
Understand the significance of art in representing Polynesian beliefs and culture.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 17.9, page 17.30.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 17

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 17

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on the Polynesian expansion across the Pacific.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 17

50
20
TWENTY
BE 08769412
100
5
20
TWENTY DOLLARS
5
3

PART 3

Economics and business

Skills

Australian markets

CHAPTER 18

The economics and business toolkit

Economics is the study of how a society shares the world's limited resources to satisfy the needs and wants of individuals. Economics is not only about making money; it is about so much more: how goods and services are made and distributed, the choices we make as consumers, and the consequences of these choices. As much as anything, economics is the study of human behaviour – how people interact with one another locally, nationally and globally. As an economics and business student, you will gain knowledge and skills that will help you make good economic decisions and avoid unnecessary risks throughout your life.

Source 1 Economics is about more than making money. It is about making informed choices and managing resources carefully so that all of us can have our needs met and society can function effectively.

18A
What are the economics and business skills?

18.1 Economics and business skills

Economics and business students use real-life examples to help them generate questions, analyse information, and argue their point of view. Students also learn through experiences where they are provided with opportunities to be innovative, to show leadership, and to practise making business decisions.

Source 1 We can access a great deal of information about businesses and the economy.

Studying economics and business requires you to analyse information and ask a range of questions to find out more about a topic. You will learn to ask 'what', 'why', 'when', 'where', 'how' and 'who' to uncover the truth about an issue. Your investigation may involve weighing up the costs and benefits of economic or business choices, and making recommendations.

As shown in Source 2, there are four key skills economists use when investigating economics and business issues. These skills are:

1. Questioning and researching
2. Interpreting and analysing
3. Evaluating, concluding and decision making
4. Communicating.

Source 2 There are four key skills used when studying economics and business. Each of these skills is like a tool in a toolkit.

18.2 Questioning and researching

Developing questions

As an economics and business student, you should ask lots of questions. You should seek out real-life economic and business cases, and undertake investigations to learn from mistakes made in the past. It is important for you to check facts and look at the arguments for and against a certain issue before reaching your own conclusions.

When you have formed your own opinion, you should be able to back up your viewpoint with supporting evidence, such as statistics and quotes.

For example, Source 3 shows how a pizza shop could develop a question and plan to conduct research to decide if it should sponsor the local basketball team.

Gathering data and information

Sources provide information for economics and business students. Sources can take many different forms, from written records in books or online, to live video and audio recordings. Examples of sources include economic journals, newspaper articles, letters, the websites of government departments and businesses, tweets, blogs and Facebook posts, cartoons and interviews.

Being able to locate a range of relevant, reliable sources is a valuable skill, which usually involves a number of different research methods; for example:

- using online search engines, such as Google
- following social media, such as Facebook and Twitter
- reading newspaper and magazine articles in print or online
- contacting local businesses and entrepreneurs or asking people who are experts in the subject area.

Source 3 An example of how to develop a question and plan to conduct research when investigating an economics or business issue

Key research question	Information needed	Possible sources of information
Is it a good idea for the local pizza shop to sponsor the local basketball team?	• How much does it cost to sponsor the local basketball team? • What is the team offering in return? • Who and how many people will know about the sponsorship? • How will the sponsorship affect the pizza shop's brand or public image?	• Contact the basketball team and ask for information about the sponsorship. • Ask past or current sponsors about their experiences of sponsoring the basketball team. • Conduct fieldwork into the basketball team's spectator numbers. • Survey current customers at the pizza shop.

Check your learning

Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 18.2.

18.3 Interpreting and analysing

Interpreting data

Economics and business students use questionnaires, surveys and statistics from many different sources – such as textbooks, websites, newspapers and the wider community – to gather data. They then create graphs and tables to summarise and represent the information.

Once you have collected, recorded and represented your data, it is time to interpret the data by identifying any trends, patterns, links or relationships in the information. You could use charts, statistical tables, case studies, interviews and simulation games to help identify the cause of a problem or event and its likely outcome or effects.

For example, Andy collected data on a phone company's advertising expenses. His data showed that the more money the company spent on advertising, the more phones it sold. Andy also recorded the number of complaints received by the phone company **employees** during this time. He found that the amount of money the company spent on advertising seemed to have no effect on the number of complaints. This means Andy was able to identify that:

- there was a relationship between advertising and the number of phones sold
- there was no relationship between advertising and the number of complaints received.

employees
people who work for a business

There are many different theories and approaches to economics, which means there are often several different answers to the same problem. It is quite common for two reputable economists to have completely different opinions on the same topic or issue. For instance, another economist may collect different data or find different trends, and think that Andy is wrong and that there is a link between advertising and complaints. Many issues require us to weigh up different points of view, while keeping an open mind.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 18.3.

Source 4 Individuals and businesses analyse a range of information and data to help them make decisions.

18.4 Evaluating, concluding and decision making

Evaluating alternatives

There is usually more than one way to solve an economic problem or find the right solution in business. An economics and business student carefully considers all of the circumstances related to an issue with an open mind. They consider the different options and make a rational decision that they believe will lead to the best outcome.

KEY SKILL
Evaluating, concluding & decision making

Evaluating options

Evaluating involves considering all the information about an issue and making a judgment based on that information. In economics and business, evaluating information and using reasoning (thinking in a logical way) to make a decision is a key skill.

Before looking at the different options in a business situation, you must first find out more about the topic. Once you know about the topic, you can then assess the options available and choose the best one.

To evaluate options, follow the steps below:

Step 1 Read different sources of information and find out what the experts say about the topic. Write down the different options.

Step 2 Make your own notes as you go, and write down any interesting facts, statistics or information that will help you to explore the options.

Step 3 Next to each option, write down the advantages and disadvantages, or costs and benefits, of that option.

Step 4 Get rid of the options that are weakest, based on their advantages or disadvantages.

Step 5 Concentrate on the strongest options, and either decide which one is best or conduct further research before choosing the best option.

Practise the skill

Let us see how we could apply this skill to help a business owner make the right decision.

Tony owns a popular pizza shop, but he is concerned with the amount of electricity the restaurant is using. He is looking for ways to reduce his electricity costs. A regular customer told him that she installed solar panels at home in order to save on her electricity bill and help the environment. Tony is considering this, as well as other options, for his pizza shop.

Answer the questions on the next page to determine the best choices for Tony.

Source 5 Business owners like Tony are regularly faced with economic choices that can determine whether or not their business is successful.

continued on the next page

continued from the previous page

1 Consider the following options and suggest a third alternative that could help Tony reduce his energy bill:
   a replacing halogen lights in the restaurant with LED lighting
   b installing solar panels on the roof of his restaurant.
2 Beside each option, use the internet to research and write down any additional information that will help you evaluate that option.
3 Identify the advantages and disadvantages of each option.
4 Suggest which option you think would be least suitable for Tony.
5 Suggest which option you think would be most suitable for Tony.

Developing responses to resolve economics and business issues

Applying the knowledge you have learnt to a real business situation is a valuable experience for an economics and business student. There are a number of ways you can do this, including:

- talking to someone in business about their experiences to see whether the theories you have learnt apply in real life
- observing the world around you – when you next go shopping, think about some of the things you have been studying, such as customer service, competition, **marketing** techniques, and types of businesses
- trying to come up with your own innovative business idea and discussing it with others
- using opportunities to role-play or play simulation games to improve your skills and put what you have learnt into practice.

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

Source 6 Observe your surroundings when you next go shopping. Try applying your knowledge of economics and business to familiar situations.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 18.4.

18.5 Communicating

In every subject, a common language is used. Source 7 lists and defines some commonly used terms in business and economics. Additional business and economics terms are listed in the glossary at the end of this book, and are also defined throughout the chapters.

Quizlet
Become familiar with economics and business terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

Source 7 Terms commonly used in economics and business

Term	Definition
Business	an activity that involves making goods or providing services in exchange for money
Consumers	people who buy things to use
Cost–benefit analysis	an estimate of what will need to be paid (cost) and the possible profits (benefit) derived from a business proposal
Economics	the study of how people and society choose to use limited resources to satisfy their needs and wants
Entrepreneur	a person who starts a business or independent organisation, takes risks and uses initiative to achieve success
Income	the money paid to an individual (or business) in exchange for their labour, or for providing a service, or for producing goods
Interest	the amount of money a person has to pay a lender in addition to the original amount borrowed
Investing	putting money into shares, property or other financial schemes in the hope of making a profit
Market	where buyers and sellers interact to exchange money for goods and services
Opportunity cost	what we miss out on when making a choice
Producers	people or businesses that make and sell goods and services for a profit
Profit	the amount of money a business earns after taking away the expenses that it has to pay
Work	a job that returns income for the tasks provided; the tasks or activities done in the course of a job

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 18.5.

Communicating in economics and business

The ability to communicate your findings is an important skill in economics and business. You can communicate your findings in many ways, including through multimedia presentations (using software such as PowerPoint or Prezi), posters, reports or essays. Whichever format you decide to use, it is a good idea to include:

- an introduction – state what your research or inquiry question was, why you asked that question and why it is important.
- an explanation of what research you did – why did you use the particular sources you chose? Discuss the facts and the arguments for and against a certain issue.
- an explanation of your results – you can present your results as graphs, tables or photographs for your audience.
- a conclusion – what were your findings? Explain how you came to that conclusion.

Source 8 A business, such as this car manufacturing plant, involves making goods or providing services in exchange for money.

CHAPTER 19

Australian markets

The Australian economy is made up of many different markets that produce the goods and services we use every day. We participate in markets as buyers when we buy goods, such as food or clothes, and pay for services, such as swimming lessons or taking the train to school.

We also participate as sellers when we create or sell goods or services. For example, have you ever been paid for mowing the lawn or babysitting? If you have, this would make you a seller, because you are selling your skills as a worker.

Markets are where buyers and sellers interact to trade things of value and are an important part of our economy.

Source 1 At this farmers market in Brisbane, customers browse for goods from a variety of local producers.

19A
How do markets influence the production of goods and services?

19B
How do businesses adapt to changes in the labour market?

19C
How do individuals and businesses budget to achieve financial goals?

19.1 Markets

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » identify who is involved in the market system in Australia
- » describe two different types of markets.

When we need or want **goods and services**, we generally buy them. This is what makes us consumers, or buyers. For this to be possible, producers, or sellers, have to make and sell these things, which they do for a **profit**. A market is where buyers and sellers interact with each other to exchange things of value. Usually, consumers pay money to producers in return for goods such as food or clothing and services such as a visit to the dentist or a Netflix subscription.

An economic market exists for anything that can be bought and sold.

Source 1 Most people pay a real estate agent to help them sell their house.

The labour market

The labour market is where workers sell their skills, knowledge and effort to **employers**. In return for their labour, the employer pays the workers a **wage**. This is how most people in our society earn an income. In Australia, wages for most jobs are higher than in other parts of the world. This is one of the reasons why so many people consider Australia to be the 'lucky country'.

There are laws that aim to stop employers treating their workers unfairly. There are also laws that require employers to maintain safe working environments for their **employees**. One of the government's goals is to improve the lives of ordinary Australians by creating jobs that provide them with an adequate income. Labour prices, such as the **minimum wage**, differ in countries around the world.

The housing market

The housing market is where houses and apartments are bought and sold. Houses and apartments satisfy people's basic need for shelter, and so most Australians want the security of owning their own home. For those who can afford it, it is possible to own multiple houses or apartments, which can also be a way of making money. This is because houses or apartments can be bought and then **leased** out to a **tenant** in exchange for rent. In this way, the owner of the property, also known as the landlord, can earn a profit. However, as more people invest in houses or apartments, the prices increase, making it more difficult for many people to afford their own homes.

For most people today, the only way to buy a home is to take out a huge loan (a mortgage) from a bank and to slowly repay the loan over a long period of time (for example, 30 years). Banks make a profit by charging people **interest** on the money it lends them.

goods and services
goods are physical things (e.g. food and clothing), while services are things people do for us (e.g. cutting our hair)

profit
the amount of money a business earns after taking away its expenses

employers
businesses that employ workers to produce goods and services

wage
the amount of money that a worker is paid based on the work they do

employees
people who work for a business

minimum wage
the lowest amount of money that a worker can be paid; it is usually an amount for each hour worked

leased
a contract that allows a person to use a property for a period of time, usually in exchange for rent (money)

tenant
a person who pays rent in exchange for living in a house owned by someone else

Analysing house prices

The key skill of interpreting and analysing involves interpreting information, evidence and data. Through analysing data, you can identify and explain any relationships and trends in the topics you are studying.

House and apartment prices vary across Australia. Have you ever wondered how much your home cost, or how much a home costs in an area that you would like to live in when you are older? House and apartment prices depend on various factors such as accessibility to transport networks, proximity to recreational areas such as a beach or park, and the distance to schools and hospitals.

Information about house and apartment prices can be easily found online. Real estate websites list the prices of houses and apartments for sale or for rent. You can see the prices of houses or apartments that have sold in a particular area, and also get an idea of the value of a property.

Practise the skill

Imagine you are an adult and have been working for several years. You feel ready to buy your first home.

Step 1 Identify the town or area where you would like to live.

Step 2 Visit a real estate website and search for a house or apartment you would like to buy in that town or area.

Step 3 On the real estate website, look for information about the prices of similar houses or apartments that have sold in the past few years.

Step 4 Analyse the data you have found. How have house or apartment prices varied in that town or area over the last few years, or in the areas directly next to it? Why is this the case?

Step 5 As a class, discuss the prices of your chosen homes. Identify whether these vary greatly.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

interest
the cost of borrowing money from a bank; a person has to pay the bank interest on top of the original amount borrowed from the bank

Quiz me!
A quick quick on markets

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Investigating why house prices increase

Weblink
Commonwealth Bank home loan repayment calculator

Source 2 Houses and apartments near cities are often more expensive than houses and apartments further away.

19.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Name** the two groups of people that interact in a market.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** what is exchanged on the labour market.
3 **Describe** how a landlord earns income from houses.

Apply

4 **Propose** (put forward) how you think not having a job would affect the way a person lives.
5 Look at the home you wanted to buy in the Key skill: Interpreting and analysing box above. How much was the home? Imagine you took out a 30-year mortgage and bought the home. Use the Commonwealth Bank's online home loan repayment calculator to calculate how much interest you would pay.

19.2 Supply and demand

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain why price affects the supply and demand of goods and services.

Buyers and sellers in the marketplace are heavily influenced by price. Prices can be influenced by many factors, such as the availability of a product, the popularity of a product, and the state of the economy. These are examples of **market forces**, which are changes in supply and demand that affect the prices people are willing to pay or accept for goods and services.

market forces
changes in supply and demand that affect how much people are willing to pay for or sell goods and services

Price mechanisms

The way price can affect the supply and demand of goods and services is known as the **price mechanism**. Price mechanisms affect the way consumers and producers respond to and influence each other in a market.

price mechanism
the way price can affect the supply and demand of goods and services

Demand

Demand refers to the amount of a particular good or service that consumers will buy at a particular price. Consumers want to pay as little as possible for goods or services. This way, they will have more money left over to buy other goods and services. If prices go up, consumers are less likely to buy. When prices are reduced, consumers are more likely to purchase a good or service. This is known as the **law of demand**, where a larger quantity is demanded when prices drop.

law of demand
when prices rise, the quantity demanded decreases and when prices fall, the quantity demanded increases

Imagine that the price of blueberry muffins at the school cafeteria went down to 50 cents. Students would flock to the cafeteria to buy the cheap muffins before they sold out. However, if the price of those same muffins went up to $5, very few muffins would be sold.

The law of demand states that as the price of blueberry muffins increases, the quantity of muffins demanded will decrease. Similarly, as the price of muffins decreases, the quantity of muffins demanded will increase.

Source 3 This table shows how many blueberry muffins would be purchased for particular selling prices.

Price of a blueberry muffin ($)	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5
Quantity of muffins demanded	190	170	150	130	110	90	70	50	30	10

Graph it!
Supply and demand

Supply

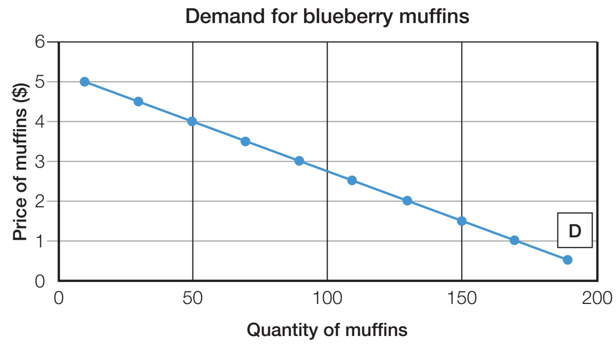
While consumers are more willing to buy goods and services if they are cheaper, producers are more willing to supply goods and services if they can sell them for a higher price. This is because selling goods and services for a higher price earns the producer greater profits. The **law of supply** states that the higher the price of a product, the higher the quantity of the product that producers will want to make and sell. Source 6 shows the prices of blueberry muffins and how many muffins a baker may be willing to sell at each price.

law of supply
the higher the price that a good or service can be sold, the higher the quantity that producers are willing to supply

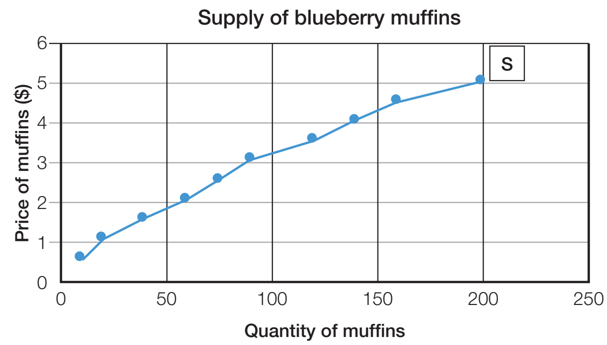
For example, bakers produce the goods they believe will sell for a high enough price to earn a profit. There is no point in baking blueberry muffins if no one will buy them at a price that covers the bakers' costs (such as the price of flour) and earns a profit.

Source 4 This table demonstrates how many blueberry muffins a baker is willing to make if they can sell them at each given price.

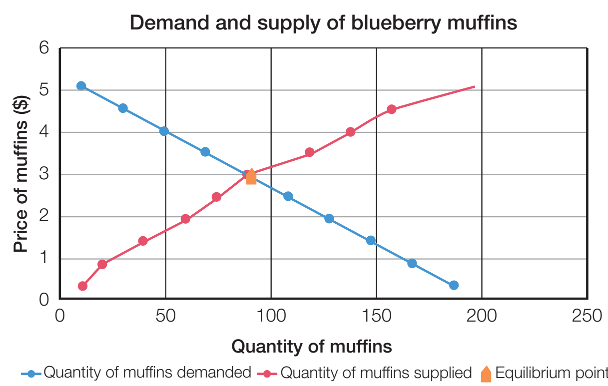
Price of a blueberry muffin ($)	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5
Quantity of muffins supplied	10	20	40	60	75	90	120	140	160	200



Source 5 The demand for blueberry muffins; this graph shows the values in Source 3, with the price of muffins on the vertical axis and the quantity of muffins on the horizontal axis. Each price and quantity point has been added to the graph, then the points have been connected to form the demand curve. The curve is labelled 'D', which shows it is a demand curve. (Note that in economics, the connection of points is called a 'curve', but it may in fact be a straight line.) By graphing the values, we can see how the demand for muffins increases as the price decreases.



Source 6 The supply of blueberry muffins; this graph shows the values in Source 4, with the price of muffins on the vertical axis and the quantity of muffins on the horizontal axis. Each price and quantity point has been added to the graph, then the points have been connected to form the supply curve. The curve is labelled with 'S', which shows it is a supply curve. By graphing the values, we can see how a baker might be willing to increase the quantity of muffins they supply as the price of the muffins increases.



Source 7 The demand and supply of blueberry muffins. We can graph both the demand and supply curves in one diagram, giving us the full picture of the blueberry muffin market. The orange mark is the equilibrium point, where the quantity of muffins demanded is equal to the quantity supplied.

19.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'market forces'.

Comprehend

2 Why do consumers like to buy goods and services when they are on sale?

3 **Explain** why producers are more willing to make goods and services that sell at a higher price.

Apply

4 A chef is at a market to buy one tonne of strawberries. The chef notices that there are two strawberry farmers selling their fruit. The first strawberry farmer's fruit looks very ripe and ready to eat, but he has priced his strawberries at $7 per kilogram. The second strawberry farmer has priced her fruit at $5 per kilogram but the strawberries are not as ripe. **Determine** (decide) who the chef should buy strawberries from and why.

19.3 Allocation of resources

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how businesses and buyers interacting can influence resource allocation.

Resource allocation refers to how we divide **resources** and how these resources are then distributed to consumers. In economics, resources (also referred to as **factors of production**) are all the things we need to create the finished product. They include:

- land – natural resources that a business uses, such as geographical locations, minerals we can mine, forests or animal populations such as fish.
- labour – the employees that a business needs to produce, develop and sell goods or services.
- capital – money, machinery and buildings businesses use to produce goods and services
- enterprise – a business's ability to combine land, labour and capital to make a profit.

The price of resources can influence what a business is able to produce, how they are able to produce it and how much they can sell it for. If the price of resources goes up, so too will the price of the final product. This can impact who has access to goods or services. For example, if a blueberry muffin costs more than $10 because the resources used to produce the muffin were expensive, not as many people will be able to buy a muffin.

resources
natural or manufactured materials that can be used to produce goods and services

factors of production
economic resources that are divided into four categories: land, labour, capital and enterprise

What to produce?

The goal of businesses is to make a profit. They aim to do this by producing goods and services to sell to buyers. They can decide what to produce based on the availability of resources to both them and their potential consumers. Some businesses might seek to make a profit by distributing a resource that is in high demand, but low in supply. This is sometimes referred to as finding a 'gap in the market'.

Source 8 Labour is a resource, or factor of production.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the allocation of resources

How to produce?

When producing goods or services, businesses will try to keep their costs as low as possible so that they will make more profit. This means they will need to manage their resources carefully. For example, consumer demand might be high for a pill that cures all food allergies. If the resources involved in making the pill are expensive, the business would have to sell the pills at a price very few could afford.

It is therefore important for businesses to keep their costs low so that they can sell their goods and services at prices people are willing to pay for. Businesses might reduce their costs by:

- increasing production so that more goods or services are produced and sold using the same resources, which is often known as using an 'economy of scale'
- using cheaper materials, although this might affect the quality of the product
- paying lower wages to employees or producing goods overseas where the labour market is cheaper
- using machinery to replace human jobs.

Different businesses will save money in different ways. Some will decide to use high quality materials and Australian workers, and will sell their products at higher prices.

CASE STUDY

Native food innovation

Australia's native plants have been used in cooking by First Nations peoples for thousands of years. However, they have been largely overlooked by non-Indigenous Australians since European colonisation. The loss of traditional land and the introduction of foreign species has significantly reduced the availability of native foods. It is only recently that native foods have started appearing on shelves and menus.

The revival of Australia's native food culture has been led by First Nations entrepreneurs. They recognised a gap in the market for unique, Australian-made food products that weren't widely available, but could be easily and sustainably produced using traditional knowledge and practices.

South Australian farmer and Yuin man Dominic Smith saw the potential for growing native foods in 2014 when he started Pundi Produce. Pundi Produce is a farming business that grows and sells native fruit, herbs and vegetables into domestic and international markets. Located in the Riverland region, Pundi Produce uses sustainable farming methods to grow river mint, lemon myrtle, wattle seed, bush tomatoes and more.

As well as satisfying the increasing demand for native Australian foods, Smith sees Pundi Produce as a way of connecting people back to the land and First Nations culture through food.

Source 9 Pundi Produce grows and sells a variety of native foods, including lemon myrtle.

Who to produce for?

An important part of resource allocation for businesses is knowing who they want to sell to. Since price is such an important part of whether or not people can access goods or services, businesses must consider who their buyers are. For example, larger retailers, such as Kmart, mass-produce their goods cheaply so that as many people as possible have access to and can afford to buy their products. On the other hand, a single piece of clothing from an exclusive designer brand would cost a lot of money to make, and would therefore cost a lot of money to buy.

19.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** resource allocation.

2 **Name** the four factors of production.

3 Give two suggestions for how a business might reduce its production costs.

Analyse

4 Read the case study 'Native food innovation' and **consider** the following: what is the business producing? How are they producing it? Who are they producing for? Remember, when you consider something, you should think about it carefully before making a decision.

Apply

5 In groups, use the idea of a 'gap in the market' to identify a market that you think would benefit from a new business or supply of goods or services. **Develop** your idea and present a summary to the class of what you would produce, how you would produce it and who you would produce it for.

19.4 Government in the market

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» identify examples of taxes paid by individuals and businesses.

While some economists believe that the market forces of supply and demand can allocate resources efficiently, the government often has to intervene in the market to act in the best interest of society as a whole. It does this to reduce or prevent the over-production of harmful goods such as alcohol and tobacco, and to provide socially beneficial goods or services that would otherwise be underproduced. Public health, education, roads, welfare and defence are all examples of goods and services that the government provides with the taxes that it collects from the public.

Australia's taxation system

For thousands of years, governments have collected taxes from the public to pay for public goods and services. The goal of Australia's taxation system is to collect the money it needs from the areas of the economy that can afford to pay it and redistribute it in a way that benefits the community. There are as many as 125 different taxes that are collected at a federal, state and local level in Australia, but most people only have to pay a few of these.

The three main taxes that make up two-thirds of all tax collected in Australia are **income tax**, **goods and services tax (GST)** and company tax.

income tax
a tax that is taken from a person's income

goods and services tax (GST)
a tax that is taken from consumers when they buy most goods and services

Income tax

If you earn an income, you are most likely paying income tax. This tax is taken directly from a person's income and is adjusted based on how much money they earn annually. Higher income earners are taxed at a higher rate, meaning they pay the government more money than lower income earners. You do not have to pay income tax if you earn less than $18 200 a year, known as the tax-free threshold.

Source 10 The government uses taxes to provide goods and services with a social benefit, like public hospitals.

Goods and services tax (GST)

Even if you don't earn an income, you are probably still paying tax. This is because the majority of goods and services sold in Australia include a goods and services tax (GST). GST is an extra cost added to products that is collected by businesses and then paid to the government. In Australia, the GST is 10 per cent of the original price, which you can calculate by dividing the total cost of a product by 11. GST is also listed on most receipts.

Some goods are free from GST because the government considers them good for society. This includes basic foods, most education, childcare and certain health goods and services.

Managing tax

Before the government can make decisions about where to spend the money collected from tax, it must decide how much tax each individual and business should pay. To do this, the government's tax collection agency, the **Australian Taxation Office (ATO)**, keeps track of how much money each person earns using a unique identification number called a **tax file number (TFN)**. A TFN allows the ATO to calculate the amount of income tax a person should pay and take it directly out of their earnings.

It is the responsibility of individuals to apply for a TFN before (or soon after) starting work, which they can do on the ATO's website. If you do not have a TFN when you start work, you may end up having to pay more tax than you should.

Australian Taxation Office (ATO) the Australian Government's principal tax collection agency

tax file number (TFN) a personal reference number used by the government to identify people for tax purposes

CASE STUDY

Medicare

For many of us, the cost of health care is very expensive. Operations, medication and consultations with specialist doctors can cost a lot of money. This is why the government provides us with Medicare, a service run on behalf of the Department of Health.

Medicare gives Australian citizens and residents access to a range of medical services, lower-cost prescriptions and, in some cases, free care in public hospitals. For those of us who are eligible, Medicare covers:

- free or subsidised (meaning it is paid for in part by the government) treatment from doctors, specialists, optometrists and other health practitioners
- free treatment and accommodation in a public hospital for public Medicare patients (patients in private hospitals must pay for care either themselves or through their private health insurance).

Medicare is an example of the Australian government intervening in the allocation of resources by redistributing money to provide all Australians with affordable (or free) access to important medical care. Without this kind of government intervention, the expensive medications and treatments that some people need would become inaccessible to many people.

Watch it! A video and quiz on getting a tax file number

19.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 What does GST stand for?

2 In your own words, **define** income tax.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the government intervenes in the market.

4 **Summarise** the purpose of Medicare.

Apply

5 Ajuma buys a new pair of roller skates for $132.00, including GST. Calculate:
   a the GST charged
   b the price of the roller skates without GST.

6 Use the weblink on your obook pro to go to the ATO website and **investigate** whether you should apply for a TFN.

Weblink ATO website

19A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Choosing chocolate

Chocolate is unhealthy and highly addictive, and many people cannot get enough of it. The damage that sugary products such as chocolate do to our health is causing many people to look at ways of kicking their chocolate-eating habit.

Even though we know that chocolate is unhealthy, there is still a high demand for chocolate and chocolate-flavoured products in Australia. In fact, the confectionary industry was expected to receive approximately $16 billion in 2021 from selling chocolate and other sugary products to Australian consumers.

The government taxes other unhealthy products, including alcohol and cigarettes, and some people suggest that the government should tax chocolate and sugary products as well. They say that if sugary products cost more, people would not buy as many of them. Do you think a tax on chocolate would affect how much chocolate Australians buy?

The relationship between the supply of and demand for chocolate products can be investigated in many ways. This makes it easier for producers to determine how much chocolate they should produce, and how much they can charge for their chocolate goods. We can also assess how a tax on chocolate would affect the demand for chocolate by constructing a demand graph.

Source 11 While delicious, chocolate is filled with sugar and fat, which can cause many health problems.

KEY SKILL
Communicating

Constructing a demand graph

In economics, being able to construct supply and demand graphs is an important skill. These graphs allow us to look at how the supply and demand for goods and services respond to changes in price. This information is especially important for businesses when they decide on what to produce, how much to produce, and what to charge.

To draw a demand graph, follow the steps below (note that the steps are very similar for drawing a supply graph):

Step 1 Gather data about how much will be demanded at different price levels.

Step 2 Create a table of values to show this (like the one in Source 12).

Step 3 Draw an L-shaped axis like you would in maths (like the one in Source 13).

Step 4 Label the vertical axis as 'Price' and fill in the values from your table.

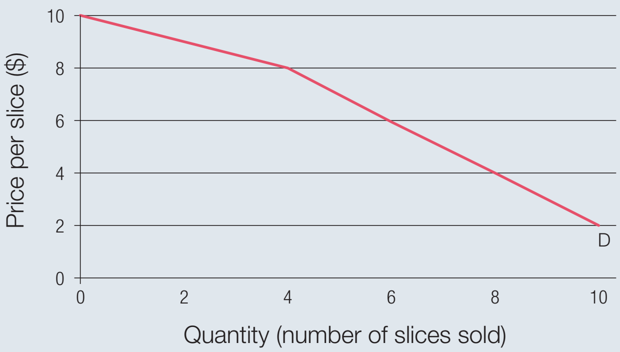
Step 5 Label the horizontal axis as 'Quantity' and fill in the values from your table.

Step 6 Plot the points from the table onto the graph.

Step 7 Draw a line connecting the graph (see Source 13).

Source 12 This table of values demonstrates how many slices of chocolate cake a cafe can sell for a given selling price.

Price per slice ($)	Quantity (number of slices sold)
2.00	10
4.00	8
6.00	6
8.00	4
10.00	0



Source 13 By graphing the values from Source 12, we can see how the demand for chocolate cake increases as the price of chocolate cake decreases.

Practise the skill

1 Copy the table below into your notebook. Using Steps 1 and 2, fill out the table showing how many of your favourite chocolate bars you think you would buy in an average week at each price.

Price ($)	Quantity (number of chocolate bars per week)
0.50	
1.00	
2.00	
3.00	
4.00	
5.00	
6.00	
7.00	
8.00	
9.00	
10.00	

2 Using the table you have just filled out, follow Steps 3 to 7 to draw a demand graph (like the one in Source 13).

3 Looking at your graph, do you believe a tax would be effective in making people eat less sugar?

4 **Explain** what you think would happen if a tax was not applied to chocolate.

Extend your understanding

1 Research the effects of sugar on health. **Summarise** your findings.

2 **State** the pros and cons of removing sugar from your diet.

3 Look at the results of your pros and cons list. Should you cut sugar from your diet? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.

4 When people become addicted to sugary products, such as chocolate, nutritionists often suggest that they replace these products with natural sugar. **Investigate** foods that contain natural sugar.

Source 14 How do you think higher prices would affect the demand for chocolate cake?

19.5 The changing work environment

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- » explain current influences on the ways people work
- » describe how businesses use technology and outsourcing to gain efficiencies.

labour market
the supply of and demand for labour; also known as the job market

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on the changing work environment

The world around us is changing. Technological advances have created new ways of doing things that most people could not have even imagined in the past. This has changed the way that goods and services are produced, and has affected the **labour market**.

Working from home

Working from home is becoming more common, thanks to improvements in communication technology. People might prefer to work from home for a number of reasons:

- It saves a lot of travel time.
- It allows those with an illness to continue working without needing to travel.
- Many people find they can concentrate better when they are working away from a noisy office environment.
- It gives people more flexibility to work when they want to.
- It allows some working parents to work flexible hours around their children's schooling.
- It enables people to feel safe and helps stops the spread of infectious diseases. This was especially true during the COVID-19 pandemic, when many people around Australia worked from home for several months at a time.

Source 1 During the COVID-19 pandemic, more people – including teachers and students – worked from home.

However, the ability to work from home often depends on the type of work a person is employed to do. For example, a brain surgeon would not be able to operate on their patients from home. They would require access to equipment and the support of other employees such as nurses, anaesthetists and other doctors – not to mention the patient – which they do not have at home.

During the COVID-19 pandemic, more people – including teachers and students – worked from home. A number of economists predict that many in the workforce are unlikely to return to full-time, on-site work in the future.

Key skill worksheet
Evaluating, concluding & decision making: Evaluating the pros and cons of working from home

Artificial intelligence

Artificial intelligence (AI) gives machines and robots the ability to think and act more like humans. Robots with AI have been used in factories and warehouses for many years. Some robots have the ability to do highly professional tasks, such as analysing data, generating reports, and even diagnosing patients. While using robots has the potential to improve our **living standards** and create new industries, a study by the McKinsey Global Institute for business and economics research predicted that, by 2025, robots could jeopardise between 40 million and 75 million jobs worldwide.

Some people argue that the increasing use of technology will put people out of work in the future. However, others believe that technology will improve our **work–life balance**, giving us more time to relax or socialise as a result of technology making our jobs quicker and easier.

Source 2 Google has successfully designed a self-driving car. The car uses sensors and software to detect objects – such as pedestrians, cyclists and vehicles – and to safely drive around them.

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods and comfort available to people

work–life balance
the relationship between a person's work and lifestyle, and the impact they have on each other

*

See, think, wonder

Look at Source 2.

- What do you see?
- What do you think?
- What do you wonder?

Outsourcing

For decades, Australian businesses have **outsourced** part of their operations to nations where labour is cheaper than it is in Australia. This reduces costs and helps the businesses compete with the cheaper products of international **competitors**. In the past, Australian businesses have mainly outsourced manual labour overseas to take advantage of the lower wages paid to unskilled workers in **developing countries**. However, in recent years, advances in communication technology have allowed for the outsourcing of more technical jobs, such as those in information technology. With more people from developing countries gaining access to education and the internet, some predict the outsourcing of many more jobs in the future.

However, outsourcing does not only give work to people overseas. Australian businesses can also benefit by outsourcing work to other local businesses. For example, a business might outsource its **marketing** or advertising to a local marketing company. This might be because the business does not have the resources to hire an employee to supply this skill or service, or because it is cheaper for the business to outsource the work than to employ someone. This is often the case for businesses that need a one-off job completed and do not want to hire a staff member to complete one task.

outsourced
to have obtained goods and services from outside suppliers to reduce costs

competitors
rival businesses that make products in the same market

developing countries
less economically developed countries that have some difficulties in supporting the needs of their people

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

19.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'work–life balance'.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the meaning of 'artificial intelligence' and how it impacts the way people work.

3 Look at Source 2. What sort of jobs do you think would be under threat from self-driving cars?

Apply

4 **Evaluate** the advantages and disadvantages for a business using robots. Be sure to give your overall opinion.

5 **Discuss** the idea that technology will improve our working lives in the future. Do you agree or disagree? Create a presentation that argues for or against this idea.

19.6 Workers in Australia

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain changes to the workforce over time.

Work has changed dramatically over the past 50 years, both in Australia and around the world. In the 1960s, men traditionally went to work full-time in order to support their wives and young families. Women often married at a relatively young age, and it was common for them to leave the workforce in their early twenties to start a family. In 2020, according to the World Bank, 60.2 per cent of the female population in Australia over the age of 15 was either employed or seeking employment. Many of these women juggle work and family commitments. Some men now also choose to spend more time at home with their young children rather than work full-time.

There has also been great change in the industries that people work in. In Australia in the 1960s, the manufacturing industry employed 26 per cent of all workers. By November 2020 manufacturing employed only 6.6 per cent of workers (seasonally adjusted). Over the five years to 2020, employment in the industry decreased by 1.7 per cent.

service sector companies, businesses and government enterprises that provide intangible goods that benefit consumers, such as tutoring, accountancy, hairdressing and legal advice

The **service sector** is now our largest industry, employing 77.7 per cent of workers in 2020, according to the World Bank. Examples of large service industries include tourism and hospitality services, financial and insurance services, education and training services, and health care.

The impact of COVID-19 on the workforce

Quiz me! A quick quiz on workers in Australia

Businesses were forced to adapt to accommodate the restrictions that the global COVID-19 pandemic placed upon them. Employers had to become creative and resourceful in order to maintain their business and continue working during the

Source 3 Members of unions, such as the Australian Rail Tram and Bus Industry Union, will at times strike to draw attention to their cause.

pandemic, particularly in the tourism and hospitality sectors. Many retailers switched to online-only shopping, while cafes and restaurants increased their takeaway services to reduce the risk of spreading the virus.

workers' unions
organised associations of workers that are formed to protect and further the workers' rights, interests and working conditions

strike
a refusal to work as a form of protest until something is done to address the workers' concerns

Workers' unions

Workers and their employers have had many disputes over the years. This is because businesses are usually mainly concerned with making as much profit as possible, which sometimes means paying their workers as little as possible. This is why **workers' unions** are so important. The roles of workers' unions include meeting with employers to negotiate better terms of employment, and holding **strikes** or other protests when negotiations fail. In many cases, the rights of workers have been protected thanks to laws introduced after campaigns from workers' unions.

Laws affecting Australian workplaces

There are many laws that affect Australian workplaces. These laws relate to things such as:

- *occupational health and safety* – businesses are required by law to ensure that their workplaces are safe at all times
- *the minimum wage* – although the government does not set the exact amount that workers must be paid for their work, it does set a minimum wage; it is illegal for employers to pay below the minimum wage
- *discrimination* – there are strict laws to ensure that people are treated equally. This means that it is illegal for a business to mistreat someone because of their race, beliefs, disability, gender or other personal circumstances that do not affect the way they do their job.

Source 4 Under occupational health and safety laws, a business must do everything in its power to prevent workplace accidents from happening. This includes providing employees with safety equipment and training them to perform tasks safely.

19.6 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Describe** the role of workers' unions in changing the workforce.

2 Look at Source 4. **Summarise** why it is important for businesses to provide safety equipment on worksites.

Analyse

3 **Reflect on** female participation in the workforce and suggest three reasons why it has increased in the past 50 years.

Apply

4 Explore your school and take note of any potential safety hazards that could harm staff, students or visitors. **Propose** (put forward) suggestions for how these can be made safe, and report back to your teacher with your findings.

5 What lockdown restrictions did your state government impose during the COVID-19 pandemic? In small groups, **discuss** the pros and cons of these restrictions for the workforce.

19B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Minimum wages

Working Australians enjoy high living standards compared to many people around the world. Part of this is because minimum wage laws ensure that we all get a fair share of the profits if we work for an employer.

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The minimum wage is the legal standard for how much people must be paid, and employers cannot pay their workers less than this amount. A minimum wage prevents workers from being taken advantage of and falling into poverty, even when they are working.

However, because businesses can outsource work to other countries, some economists argue that the minimum wage in Australia is too high and that a lower minimum wage is needed to keep jobs in Australia. These economists believe that businesses that cannot afford to pay Australia's minimum wage will either close down or move overseas, meaning fewer jobs for Australians who need employment.

Other people argue that lowering the minimum wage does nothing but cause competition between workers around the world to see who will settle for the lowest wages. Would Australians be willing to work for less than a dollar an hour, as is the case in many other nations? They argue that business owners already make substantially more than the workers who perform the actual tasks of the business, and should be required to pay workers their fair share.

Source 5 Protesters hold signs at a union rally in Melbourne in 2018. The protesters were demanding better working conditions and higher pay.

KEY SKILL
Interpreting & analysing

Analysing economic data from a bar graph

Economists need to be able to analyse economic data from graphs to answer questions about the information presented in them.

To analyse the bar graph in Source 6, follow these steps:

Step 1 Read the 'Practise the skill' questions. This will help you know what to look for in the graph and have a better understanding of the purpose of the task.

Step 2 Read the caption for the graph and the labels on each axis. This will give you an understanding of what the graph is measuring.

Step 3 Find the relationship. The point of placing data in a bar graph is to visually compare values – in this case, the minimum wages for different countries.

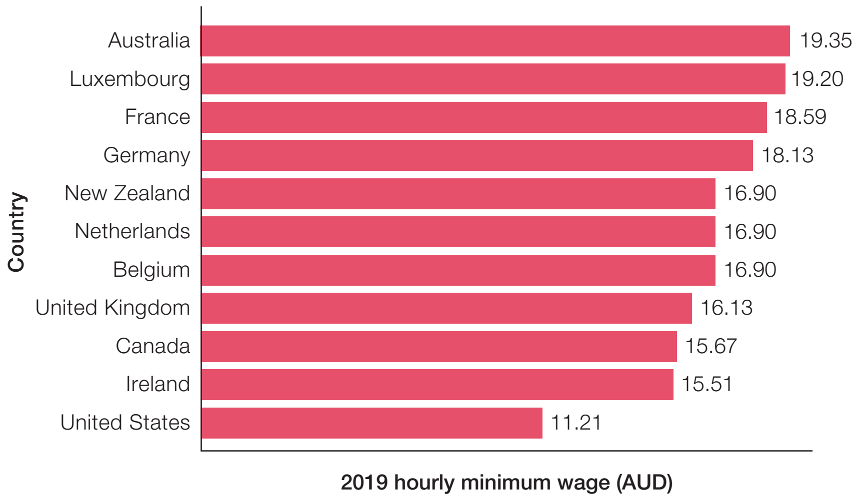
Step 4 Identify points of interest. Are there any values that stand out as being much bigger or smaller than the other values? If so, what might be the reasons for this?

Step 5 Answer the questions.

Practise the skill

Apply the first four steps above to answer the following questions about the bar graph shown in Source 6.

1 **Identify** the country that has the highest minimum wage.
2 What is New Zealand's minimum wage?
3 **Identify** the country that has the lowest minimum wage.
4 From the information in this graph, which country would you most like to live in? **Explain** your answer.
5 Do you think that Australia should lower its minimum wage, or try to help other countries raise theirs? **Justify** (give reasons for) your answer.



Source: https://stats.oecd.org

Source 6 The hourly minimum wage (shown in Australian dollars) in a selection of countries, 2019

Extend your understanding

1 Some people argue that there needs to be a 'maximum wage' to promote equality in our society. **Investigate** the idea of a 'maximum wage' and write a paragraph explaining why you think this would be a good or bad idea.

19.7 Financial goals

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» understand the importance of budgeting and planning to achieve financial goals.

Setting financial goals

When buying and selling, businesses, governments and individuals must make decisions about the best way to manage the money they have to buy the things they need and want. Knowing how to manage your money is an important life skill, and the first step to managing your money is to set financial goals for yourself. The easiest way to set financial goals is by thinking about what you would like to spend money on in the future. Once you have set financial goals, you can start to figure out how you will achieve them.

Source 1 Buying a car is an example of a long-term financial goal.

Short-term goals

Short-term financial goals can be achieved in a few weeks or months. For example, a short-term financial goal could be saving up enough money to buy a new computer game.

Long-term goals

Long-term financial goals take much longer to achieve. They require consistent effort over months, or even years, allowing us to save enough money to purchase more expensive things. Long-term financial goals could be to buy a car when we are old enough to drive, or even to save an amount of money in our bank account for the future, without knowing exactly what it will be spent on.

Achieving financial goals

saving
setting aside money to spend later

Knowing how to save money is important to achieving your financial goals. **Saving** means putting money aside to spend at a later date. People save money for a variety of reasons. For example:

- emergencies – many people feel it is important to have money set aside to help protect them in the event of an emergency, such as damage to their house or car
- expensive goods and services – many people save for a new television, computer or car, or for services such as education and holidays
- major events – to avoid future financial stress, many people will save for an important occasion such as a wedding, starting a family, or a funeral
- retirement – having savings can help provide for a higher standard of living in retirement.

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Comparing savings accounts

If you do not have enough money to pay for the things you need and want, you might have to borrow money. If you cannot pay back the money you borrow, you might end up in **debt**.

debt
money that is owed to others

Setting savings goals

Saving money can be easier if you set a savings goal. To set a savings goal:

1. Identify what you would really like to have in the future and how much it will cost.
2. Identify the amount of money you can put aside per week or month.
3. Identify how long it will take you to reach your goal.

For example, if your savings goal is to go on a holiday that will cost $2000 and you can save $100 per month, it will take you one year and eight months to reach your savings goal.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on financial goals

Opening a savings account

Did you know that banks will pay you money for keeping your savings in a bank account? This money is called **bank interest**, and the more money you have in the account, the more interest you will be paid. However, some banks can also charge fees, so you should look for a bank account that does not charge any fees.

bank interest
the amount of money paid to a person by a bank for keeping their money in an account with the bank

Increasing your savings

There are two simple ways to increase the amount of money you can save.

1. Earn more – some people work multiple jobs so that they can earn more money. You could also earn more through **investing** your money.
2. Spend less – monitor what you spend your money on. Identify areas where you might be wasting money and hold off buying items you can easily live without.

investing
when a person uses their money to make more money over time; for example, by buying a house to rent out to tenants

19.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1. Why is it important to set financial goals?
2. **Identify** two short-term financial goals you have.
3. In your own words, **define** ‘investing’.

Analyse

4. Set one long-term financial goal of your own. Identify what you would like to purchase, how much it costs and how long you think it will take you to save the money needed.

Apply

5. **Create** a flow diagram showing how a savings goal is set.
6. **Investigate** the banks listed below. Find out what kind of savings accounts they offer for people your age. Be sure to write down any important information such as how much interest they offer and what fees they charge.
   - Commonwealth Bank of Australia
   - National Australia Bank (NAB)
   - Westpac
   - Australia New Zealand Bank (ANZ)

Source 2 Saving money (setting money aside to spend later on) is important to achieving your financial goals.

19C SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The federal budget

Keeping track of how much money we earn (our income) and spend is an important part of managing our finances. A budget is one way to track how much money we have and how much money we spend. Budgets are used by individuals, businesses and even governments to figure out how they are tracking financially.

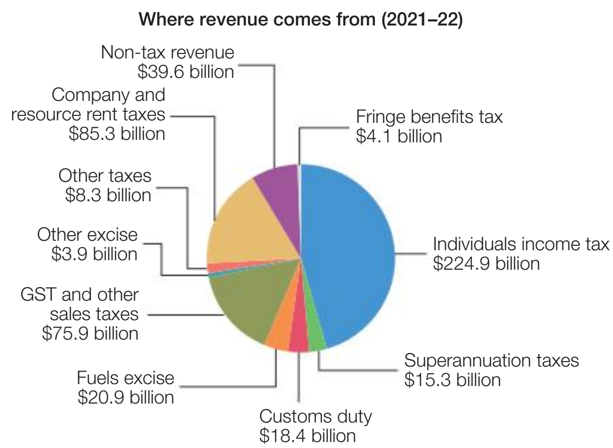
Budget	May Budgeted	May Actual
Income		
Allowance	$150	$150
Interest on savings	$10	$9
TOTAL MONTHLY INCOME	$160	$159
Expenses		
Phone bill	$50	$60
Fast food	$20	$15
Bus and train tickets	$20	$10
Cinemas	$20	$0
Birthday present for friend	$30	$20
TOTAL MONTHLY EXPENSES:	$140	$115
Income less expenses		
Total monthly income − Total monthly expenses =	$20	$54

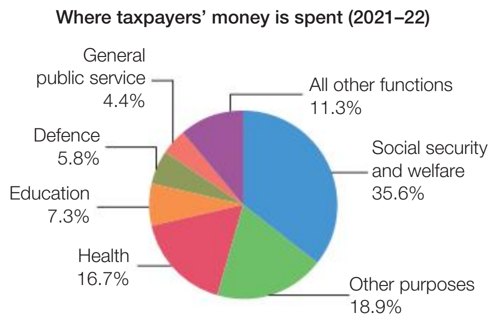
Source 3 This is what an individual monthly budget might look like. This person would be happy to know that they have saved more than they have spent.

Managing the federal budget

The Australian Government makes important financial decisions that affect the lives of every Australian. The government receives most of its money through taxes paid by people and businesses who earn an income. The government then invests this money into areas that they believe will improve the lives of Australians by providing services to the community. This might include funding for schools, hospitals and roads.

Every year, the Australian Government releases a federal budget. This budget outlines how much money the government expects to receive and spend throughout the next financial year. Because of the impact of COVID-19 on the economy, the Australian Government has increased its spending. The second pie chart in Source 4 shows what the Australian Government expected to spend money on throughout the 2021/22 financial year. As you can see, the Australian Government has spent most of the federal budget on social security and welfare, which includes payments to carers, senior citizens and people with disabilities. In this federal budget, the least amount of money is spent on general public service.





Source: https://budget.gov.au/2021–2022

Source 4 These pie charts show where the Australian Government received its income from and where it spent money.

KEY SKILL
Evaluating, concluding & decision making

Creating a budget

Being able to create a simple budget for yourself or your family is an important skill that you will be able to use your whole life. Follow the steps to create a simple budget:

Step 1 Decide what time period you want your budget to cover. This is known as the budget period. The federal budget covers a whole financial year, but you would probably find it more useful to prepare a monthly budget for yourself.

Step 2 Under the heading 'Income', list all the different types of income you expect to receive for the budget period. This can include things such as money you have earned from doing odd jobs, pocket money that you have received from your parents, or interest from your bank account.

Step 3 Add up all your income to get your total income.

Step 4 Under the heading 'Expenses', list all of the different types of payments you would expect to make over the budget period. This could include things such as daily bus tickets, food and a gift for your friend's birthday.

Step 5 Add up all your expenses to get your total expenses.

Step 6 Subtract your total expenses from your total income to check whether you will earn enough money to pay your expected costs, and whether you will save any money.

Step 7 At the end of the period, enter in all of your actual income and expenses in the 'Actual' column and compare them against what you budgeted. How close were your estimations? Why do you think there were differences? Did you forget to include something? These are all questions that will help you prepare a more accurate budget for the next period.

Practise the skill

1 Using the steps above and the information in Source 4, calculate the total income (revenue) of the Australian Government for 2021/22. Create an income list like in the sample budget from Source 3 to help with your calculation.

2 In its budget, the government often expects to have greater expenses than income, meaning it expects to spend more money than it receives. **Explain** whether you think this is good or bad.

Extend your understanding

1 Follow the steps above to **create** your own monthly budget. You should refer to Source 3 as a guide.

2 Did you save more money than you spent or did you spend more than you had budgeted? **Explain** where you were able to save money or where you spent more money than you had budgeted.

Source 5 Collecting receipts and invoices of your expenses throughout the budget period can help you remember what your actual expenses were. This will help you create a more accurate budget.

19 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Analyse the data in Source 6, then answer the questions that follow. You may also need to refer to the information on page 434.

The market for ice-creams

Producers and consumers are key components of a market. Price is often determined by both these groups of people.

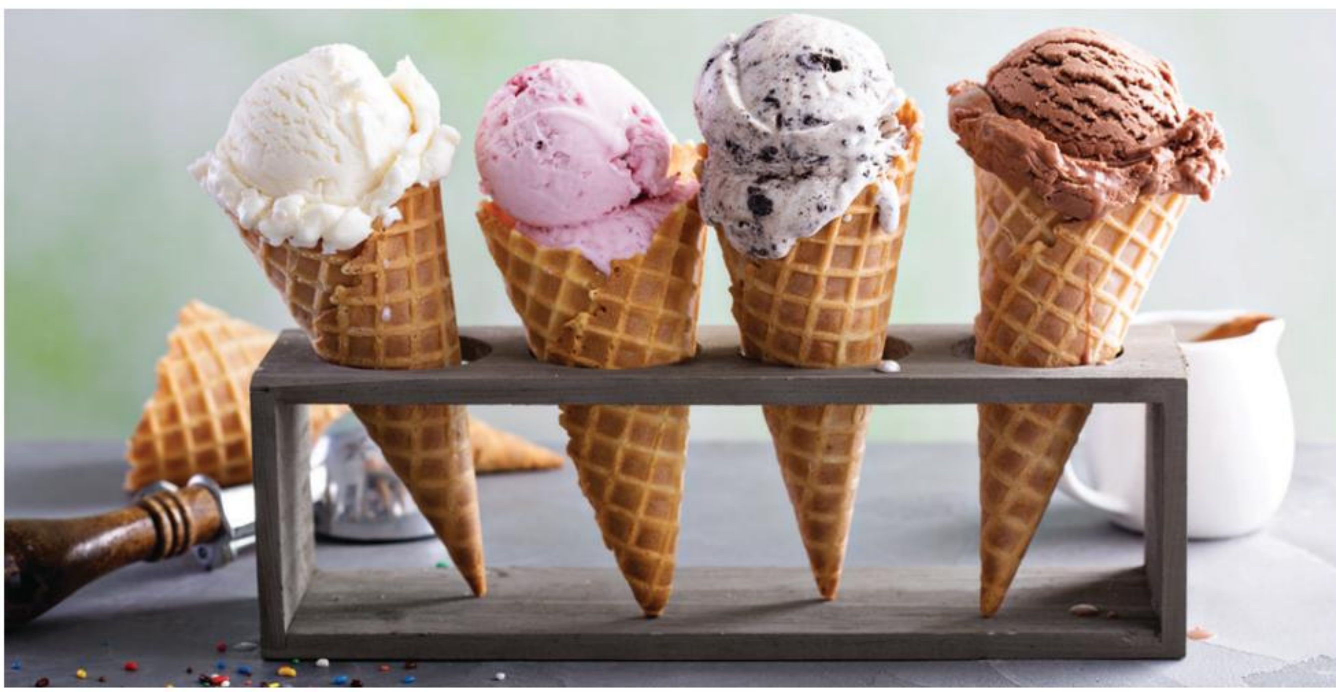
Source 6 shows the quantity of demand and supply of ice-creams.

Source 6 The demand and supply for ice-creams

Price ($)	Quantity demanded	Quantity supplied
2	120	20
4	90	40
6	60	60
8	30	80

1. In your own words, **define** 'producers'. (1 mark)
2. In your own words, **define** 'consumers'. (1 mark)
3. **Explain** what the equilibrium point is in relation to the laws of demand and supply. (3 marks)
4. **Identify** the equilibrium price and quantity of ice-creams. (2 marks)
5. **List** the four factors of production. (4 marks)
6. Give an example of each factor of production that would be needed to produce ice creams. (4 marks)
7. Use the information in Source 6 to **create** a demand and supply model on some graph paper. Remember to give your model a title and label the axes. (5 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)



Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Identify who is involved in the market system in Australia. Describe two different types of markets.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.1, page 432.
Explain why price affects the supply and demand of goods and services.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.2, page 434.
Explain how businesses and buyers interacting can influence resource allocation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.3, page 436.
Identify examples of taxes paid by individuals and businesses.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.4, page 438.
Explain current influences on the ways people work. Describe how businesses use technology and outsourcing to gain efficiencies.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.5, page 442.
Explain changes to the workforce over time.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.6, page 444.
Understand the importance of budgeting and planning to achieve financial goals.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 19.7, page 448.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

pro

Student book questions
Chapter 19

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 19

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Australian markets.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 19

4


19.07.2016
Same Story
Eric Garner
David Dungay
Different Soil
OSAKA

PART 4

Civics and citizenship

Skills

Government and democracy

Citizenship, diversity and identity

Laws and citizens

CHAPTER 20

The civics and citizenship toolkit

Civics and citizenship is the study of Australia's political and legal system. It looks at how Australians can participate in our democracy and how our laws are made. It also looks at how citizenship and national identity are understood and expressed in Australia.

Civics and citizenship teaches us to ask questions about important civics issues in order to understand and participate in the world around us. It teaches us the importance of finding, analysing and interpreting information and how to develop and communicate our own opinions. It also teaches us methods of civic participation and how to understand the perspectives of our fellow citizens.

Source 1 Situated in Canberra, Parliament House is where important decisions are debated and made by our democratically elected politicians.

20A
What are the civics and citizenship skills?

20.1 Civics and citizenship skills

Active citizens are able to question, analyse and interpret information and argue their point of view. For civics and citizenship students, the classroom is a place where you learn to share your opinions and see things from different perspectives. You should take this approach when examining how Australians participate in democracy, as well as the debate about Australia's national identity.

Studying civics and citizenship requires you to ask and develop a range of questions about civic issues. To answer these questions, you will develop an understanding of how to locate and select information to help you investigate contemporary civic issues. You will learn how to analyse information and how to evaluate different perspectives. You will explore the meaning of active citizenship and understand how Australian citizens can create change in local, national and global communities. You will learn how to use evidence and civics and citizenship terminology to communicate your explanations and arguments.

As shown in Source 1, there are four key skills to use when investigating civics and citizenship issues. These skills are:

1. Questioning and researching
2. Analysis, evaluation and interpretation
3. Civic participation and decision-making
4. Communicating.

Source 1 There are four key skills used when studying civics and citizenship. Each of these skills is like a tool in a toolkit.

20.2 Questioning and researching

Developing questions

As a civics and citizenship student, you should develop questions to investigate Australia's political and legal systems and civic issues. By asking key questions, such as 'What are the main features of a democracy?', you will investigate the important features that make up Australia's political and legal system. When developing questions, consider current events as a place to start generating questions. For example, have there been any recent examples of young people participating in democratic processes in order to influence an issue important to them? What is the issue, and why is it so important? You can also consider developing closed or open questions around the issue or topic you are investigating.

- Closed questions can be answered with 'yes' or 'no' or have only a limited range of responses.
- Open questions have a broad range of possible responses.

Source 2 Conduct research to become as informed as possible about a topic.

Locating information

Sources provide information for civics and citizenship students. Examples of sources include case transcripts and judgments, newspaper articles, letters, tweets, blogs and social media posts, cartoons and interviews.

Being able to locate a range of relevant, reliable sources is a valuable skill, which usually involves a number of different research methods, such as:

- using online search engines, such as Google
- following social media, such as Facebook and Twitter
- reading newspaper and magazine articles in print or online
- contacting local members of parliament or asking people who are experts in the subject area
- speaking with other students or family members.

Researching online

Although books and newspapers are valuable sources of information, a lot of research today is conducted online. The following guidelines will help you to ensure that the online sources you are using are accurate, reliable and relevant:

Source 3 Use reliable online sources you can trust to find information to support your point of view.

USE SEARCH ENGINES

Search engines such as Google are useful research tools, but much of the material in search results will be unreliable and inaccurate. When using search engines, be sure to define your search using specific keywords. Ask your librarian or teacher for help with this.

UNDERSTAND WEBSITE DOMAINS

Information from the websites of educational institutions (such as universities) is likely to be reliable and accurate. Other reliable sites are those linked to government departments and reputable companies. A quick way of telling if a site is linked to an educational institution or a government department is to look at the suffix of the domain name, which is part of the URL (internet address) – government websites have '.gov' at the end of the URL, and educational institutions have '.edu'.

AVOID UNRELIABLE SOURCES

Avoid blogs or social media posts created by unknown individuals. If you find information relevant to your investigation on a blog or social media site, always verify it by using a more reliable source.

AVOID PLAGIARISM

Never cut and paste online information without referencing where it is from. Taking someone else's work, ideas or words and using them as if they are your own is called plagiarism and is against school rules, while copying and pasting anything from a website without the website owner's permission is against the law.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 20.2.

20.3 Analysis, evaluation and interpretation

Analysing information

Once you have located information from a range of sources, you can analyse the information and sources you have found. A useful source is one that adds to your understanding of a civics and citizenship issue. The source needs to be relevant to the topic and it must also be reliable. The following are good questions to ask when determining whether a source is useful:

- Is the information current?
- Is it a reliable source?
- Is there enough detailed information in the source?
- Is it balanced or does it present one point of view (bias)?
- Is it based on fact or opinion?

Separating fact from opinion

When analysing information, it is important to distinguish between facts and opinion. A *fact* is something that can be proved: when an event took place, what happened and who was involved. An *opinion* is what a person may believe to be true.

A simple way to detect whether a statement is fact or opinion is to look closely at the language used. The use of words such as 'might', 'could' and 'think' all indicate that an opinion is being expressed.

For example:

- Fact: Australia's age of criminal responsibility is 10 years old. This is one of the youngest ages of criminal responsibility among similar democratic nations. The UN Committee on the Rights of the Child recommends that the age of criminal responsibility be 14 years old. (As of October 2022 some Australian jurisdictions have considered raising the age to 12 or 14.)
- Opinion: The age of criminal responsibility in Australia is too low and is unfair.

Source 4 The Raise the Age campaign advocates to raise the age of criminal responsibility in Australia.

Understanding different perspectives

In civics and citizenship it is important to understand different perspectives. Perspective is the position from which people see and understand events going on in the world around them. People will have different points of view about issues depending on their perspective, which can be affected by their age, gender, social position, beliefs and values. The more controversial an issue is, the more likely it is that there will be different points of view. In politics (and therefore in the study of civics and citizenship), people often write or speak about issues from their own perspective, which is why we must carefully evaluate sources when we are drawing conclusions from them.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 20.3.

20.4 Civic participation and decision making

Being an active and informed citizen means participating (taking part) in your community. Many Australian citizens go beyond the legal responsibilities they have as citizens, and help make the world a better place by contributing to their community on a local, regional/national or global level. They do this because they care about the community they live in and believe they have a social responsibility to make it a better place. For example:

- citizens in a local community – citizens may give their time or resources to help others in their local communities.
- citizens in the regional or national community – citizens may work at a national level to provide a better future for all Australians.
- citizens in the global community – citizens may act on the global level to help make the world a better place to live in.

Methods for civic participation

Source 5 One way to participate in democratic society is to vote.

Participation is an important part of living in a democracy. In Australia, we participate in society in a number of ways, such as by voting in an election or referendum, serving on a jury or paying taxes. One of the most important ways we participate in a democracy is by voting in an election. By voting according to the issues that are important to us, we have the power to influence the way our country is run. Other ways of participating in a democracy might include:

- volunteering
- protesting or demonstrating about important social issues
- signing petitions
- contacting your local member of parliament (such as by calling or writing emails)
- campaigning for a person or party who is trying to get elected.

Participation is important as it allows citizens to have a say in how our democratic society is run.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 20.4.

20.5 Communicating

Using civics and citizenship terminology

In every subject, a common language is used. Source 6 lists and defines some commonly used terms in civics and citizenship. Additional civics and citizenship terms are listed in the glossary at the end of this book, and are also defined throughout the chapters. If you come across a term that you are unsure of, you should use a dictionary, search for the term online, or ask your teacher to help you understand what it means. It is a good idea to keep your own glossary of subject-specific terms, adding any new words that you come across.

Source 6 Terms commonly used in civics and citizenship

Term	Definition
citizen	a person who legally lives in a geographical area, such as a town or country
citizenship	a person's status as a citizen; in a wider context, citizenship encompasses citizens' rights and responsibilities
civics	the study of the rights and responsibilities of citizens and how government works
common law	law that is created by the courts when a judge makes a ruling about a case
customary law	rules, customs and traditions upheld by First Nations peoples
democracy	a system of government where each citizen has an equal right to influence the political decisions that affect their society
government	the elected members of parliament who make decisions for a nation or state; the government is made up of the party or coalition that has won a majority of seats in the lower house of parliament
multiculturalism	the idea that people of many different cultures, races and religions can live peacefully with one another as equals
parliament	the organisation that makes the laws in a country, often with a lower house to draft laws and an upper house to review the proposed laws; in Australia, the King's representative (the governor-general) is also part of parliament and officially creates the laws
representative democracy	a system of government in which the people elect members of parliament to make laws and manage the country on their behalf
statutory law	law that is made by parliament; also called statute law

Communicating in civics and citizenship

The ability to communicate your findings is an important skill in civics and citizenship. You can communicate your findings in many ways, including through multimedia presentations (using software such as PowerPoint or Prezi), posters, reports or essays. Whichever format you decide to use, it is a good idea to include:

- an introduction – state what your research or inquiry question was, why you asked that question and why it is important. This is also a good place to define any key terms.
- an explanation of what research you did – why did you use the particular sources you chose? Discuss the facts and the arguments for and against a certain issue.
- an explanation of your results – you can present your results as graphs, tables or photographs for your audience.
- a conclusion – what were your findings? Explain how you came to that conclusion.

Check your learning
Log onto your obook pro to complete the questions for topic 20.5.

Quizlet
Become familiar with civics and citizenship terms by reviewing them on Quizlet.

Additional resource
Using cognitive verbs

CHAPTER 21

Democracy in Australia

Australia is a democracy. In a democracy, each citizen has an equal right to influence the political decisions that affect their society. This means that each person may express their opinions to help decide how their society is governed.

In a nation of over 26 million people, making sure everyone is heard can be quite difficult. For this reason, Australia has a voting system that allows us to elect politicians or political parties to represent us at local, state and national levels. A democracy relies on individuals being informed to be able to make decisions about which political party best reflects their views and values.

Source 1 Voters at a polling booth in the 2019 federal election; Australia has a representative democracy in which people vote for the political party or politician that best reflects their opinions on most political issues.

21A
How does Australia's democracy work?

21B
How do citizens participate in Australia's democracy?

21.1 Australia's political system

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the meaning of representative democracy

» describe the structure of federal parliament.

Throughout the world, there are different types of political systems (or systems of government). A political system is a set of principles, processes and laws that determine the way in which a country is run.

In Australia, our political system is known as a **representative democracy**. This means that the people vote at **elections** for representatives or **candidates** to become members of **parliament**. Once in parliament, these members make decisions and laws on behalf of the Australian people. One key feature of our representative democracy is that elections are held regularly. If our elected representatives do not make laws that reflect the views and values of the majority of the people, they may not be re-elected. In addition to being a representative democracy, Australia is also a constitutional monarchy. This means that the reigning monarch of England (for example, King Charles III) is our head of state. Although Australian citizens elect members of parliament to make laws on their behalf, any laws made by the parliament must also have approval from the reigning monarch of England. This approval (referred to as royal assent) is given by the governor-general, who is the monarch's representative in the federal parliament.

The structure of the federal parliament

In Australia the federal parliament consists of:

- the King: who is the head of state, represented by the governor-general
- two houses: a lower house and an upper house; each consists of elected representatives called **members of parliament.**

Source 1 The structure of the federal parliament

The lower house

The lower house of our federal parliament is called the House of Representatives. The House of Representatives is made up of 151 members of parliament (MPs), each representing one of Australia's federal electorates. Their role is to represent the views of Australian citizens and to make and scrutinise laws based on these views. Most proposed laws, called bills, are introduced into parliament in the House of Representatives.

Most of the members elected to parliament will belong to a **political party**. Members of a political party have similar ideas about how to best govern the country. To win an election, a party (or group of parties, known as a **coalition**) must win an **absolute majority** of seats in the House of Representatives. This means at least 76 of the 151 seats in the House of Representatives must be won by the same party (or coalition) to form government. The role of the government of the day is to make laws on behalf of the Australian people.

The leader of the winning party (or coalition) becomes the prime minister. The leader of the party (or coalition) that has the largest number of seats but has

representative democracy
a political system based on citizens voting to elect representatives

elections
processes whereby the people are able to choose their representatives and members of parliament

candidates
members of political parties who are nominated to run for office in an election

parliament
an organisation that makes the laws in a country, often with a lower house to draft laws and an upper house to review the proposed law; in Australia, the King's representative (the governor-general) is also part of parliament and officially creates the laws

members of parliament
individuals who have been elected by the people to represent their views and values in parliament

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's political system

not gained a majority in the House of Representatives is the leader of the **Opposition**. The Opposition's role is to hold the government accountable for its actions.

The government is the party (or coalition) that has a majority of seats in the lower house. By contrast, the parliament consists of all the members who are elected to both houses of parliament, as well as the governor-general.

political party
a group of people with similar views and ideas about how a country (nation), state or territory should be governed

coalition
two or more political parties that join together in an attempt to win an election and form government

absolute majority
the requirement of a candidate (or political party) to win over half the votes to be declared the winner of the electoral division (or form the government)

Opposition
the second-largest political party, or coalition of parties, after the government party in the lower house of parliament, which works to scrutinise and oppose government policies

The upper house

The upper house of our federal parliament is called the Senate. It was originally set up to protect the interests of the states. The Senate is made up of 76 senators who represent the states and territories. The Senate's purpose is to act as a 'house of review'. Any bills that are put forward by the House of Representatives are reviewed by the Senate. The Senate can approve proposed bills, with or without changes; and it can also reject them.

Source 2 The House of Representatives in Parliament House, Canberra; the House of Representatives is also known as the lower house.

21.1 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Explain** what is meant by the term 'representative democracy' and why holding regular elections is important in this type of political system.

2 **Describe** the role of the governor-general in a constitutional monarchy.

Analyse

3 **Examine** the election results from the 2022 Australian federal election (below) and explain which party or coalition formed the government.

Australian Labor Party	77
Liberal/National Coalition	58
Greens	4
Katter's Australian Party	1
Centre Alliance	1
Independents	10

Apply

4 **Create** a diagram that illustrates the structure of the federal parliament. Search online to find some relevant images to support your diagram.

21.2 Australia's political parties

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the role of political parties, including independents.

independent
a member of parliament who is not associated with a political party

The federal parliament is made up of members from a number of different political parties, along with **independent** candidates (who do not belong to a political party).

Political parties

Political parties are made up of groups of people who share similar ideas about how their country or state should be governed. In Australia, two political parties dominate: the Australian Labor Party (generally referred to as Labor Party or the ALP) and the Liberal Party of Australia (referred to as the Liberal Party). There are many other smaller political parties, such as the National Party and the Greens.

The main purpose of the two major political parties is to win the election and form the government. Each political party puts forward its own candidates at election time, and the party (or coalition) that wins more than half of the seats in the lower house will form government. The Liberal Party and the National Party often join forces in a coalition (partnership) to form government together. It is the government of the day that has the power to make important decisions about how our country is managed.

Party discipline

Political parties are made up of people who share similar ideas, but this does not mean they always agree. Party discipline is how parties in parliament control their members to make sure that members of a political party all vote the same way. In parliament, political parties are powerful when all members of a party work together.

Labor

KEY PRINCIPLES

- Australia's oldest political party
- Believes that the government should play a strong national role
- Strives for a fairer Australia for all workers
- Tries to close the gap between the rich and poor so that wealth is more evenly distributed

Liberal

KEY PRINCIPLES

- Believes in the power of the individual and business to make their own choices and prosper
- Strives for less government control
- The Liberals and the Nationals join forces at the federal level so they have enough members to form government

Nationals

KEY PRINCIPLES

- Represents the interests of those Australians that live outside the cities in country Australia
- Believes in strong local communities, referring to themselves as the 'local champions'

Source 3 The Labor and Liberal Parties are the two dominant political parties in Australia today. The Liberal Party often forms a coalition with the National Party in order to form government.

The role of independents in parliament

Not all members of parliament belong to a political party. Members who do not belong to a party are called independents. Some independents may have belonged to a political party but were dissatisfied and so left the party to run as independent candidates. Independents often have views and values that differ from those of the main political parties. While independents can never form the government, they can play a very important and powerful role in the parliament – particularly if a major party relies on their votes to pass important laws.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's political parties

Why don't Australians want to party?

CASE STUDY

In the 1950s, both major political parties had around 350 000 members nationally. Although the Australian population has more than doubled since then, from 9.2 million in 1955 to 25.8 million in 2021, memberships to political parties have decreased. By 2020, the total membership across both major parties was around 115 000 people nationally. By contrast, the reigning Australian Football League Premiers (the Richmond Football Club and the West Coast Eagles) each had more than 100 000 members.

Despite the decline in party membership, evidence suggests that people *do* have an interest in political issues and debate. Political activist group GetUp claims to have more than a million members. GetUp is not a political party, but a movement that aims to raise awareness of important political issues (such as the need for a safe and healthy climate, equality and justice for disadvantaged groups including refugees and asylum seekers, and a fair and honest democratic political system). Support for independent candidates has also increased over recent years.

So why is the membership of the two main political parties failing to keep pace with the increasing populations? Perhaps many people feel that they have their say at the polling booth, so why bother joining a party? Perhaps others feel dissatisfied with the current major political parties and would rather support one-off political issues than a party. Some commentators suggest that disputes between and within the major parties and a lack of action on major issues of importance, such as climate change and the treatment of asylum seekers, may be contributing to a general lack of trust in politicians.

There are more than 50 different political parties registered on the Australian Electoral Commission's website. Some parties have broad-ranging ideals, while others focus on fighting for specific causes.

Source 4 Many political parties exist within Australia.

Weblink
Australian Electoral Commission: Register of political parties

21.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **Identify** the main aims of the two dominant political parties in Australia.

2 **Identify** at least two possible reasons why someone might want to join a political party.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** the role of independents in parliament.

Analyse

4 Do you think the two major political parties always uphold their core values and beliefs? Explain your response.

5 **Reflect on** why membership of political parties is not as strong as it used to be.

Apply

6 A list of political parties can be found on the Australian Electoral Commission's website. Choose three parties and explain in no more than two sentences each what the party stands for. Decide whether or not you would consider voting for each party. Give reasons to justify your choice.

7 **Discuss** some possible strengths and weaknesses of having only two dominant political parties. Create a table and categorise your ideas under the column headings of 'pros' and 'cons'.

21.3 Australia's parliaments

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

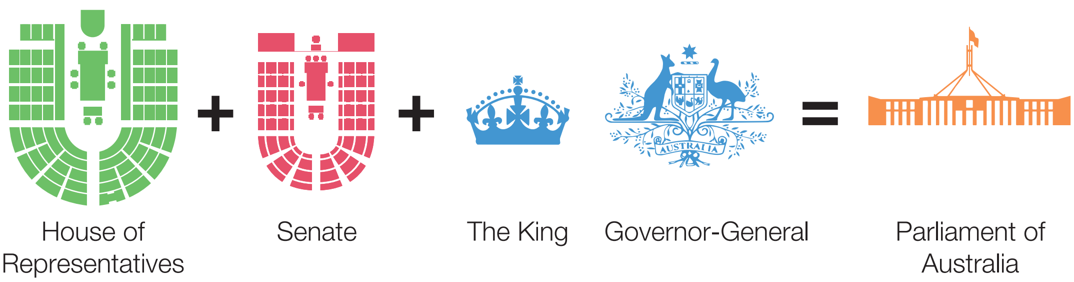
- describe the makeup of Australia's federal parliament
- summarise the makeup of Australia's state and territory parliaments
- explain the meaning of 'minority government', 'hung parliament' and 'balance of power'.

At the time of the arrival of the First Fleet in 1788, First Nations peoples in Australia had their own established system of law and governing. Despite this, British colonists put in place their own systems. From 1788, the British began developing a system of government where each of the six colonies (which are now called states) was able to establish its own parliament. Together with the British Parliament, these colonial parliaments each had the power to make laws for its own colony.

The colonial parliaments each followed the British parliamentary model, called the **Westminster parliamentary system**. This meant the parliament consists of one or two houses and the reigning English monarch, or 'the Crown'.

Westminster parliamentary system the British parliamentary system, upon which the Australian parliamentary system is modelled

The Westminster parliamentary system is still followed in Australia today, as each of the state/territory parliaments and the Commonwealth Parliament consists of one or two houses and the Crown. The Commonwealth Parliament and each of the state parliaments (except Queensland) have two houses: a lower and an upper house. The parliaments of Queensland and the territories have only the lower house.



Source 5 The key elements of the Commonwealth Parliament

CASE STUDY

Australia's 47th Parliament

Australia's Parliament is made of elected representatives in the House of Representatives and the Senate. The political party that wins the majority of the 151 seats in the House of Representatives forms government. In the 2022 federal election, the Labor Party (led by Anthony Albanese) won 77 seats, forming government (see Source 7). The Coalition formed the Opposition. The ten Independent elected representatives and minor parties (such as the Australian Greens) are smaller groups who can work with the government when their **ideologies** and values align.

In the Senate, 39 out of the 76 seats are needed to have the majority. The current government does not have a majority in the Senate (see Source 6), so they might face difficulties in getting laws passed through the Senate. The Opposition, Independents and minor parties hold many more seats, requiring the government to work with these other parties.

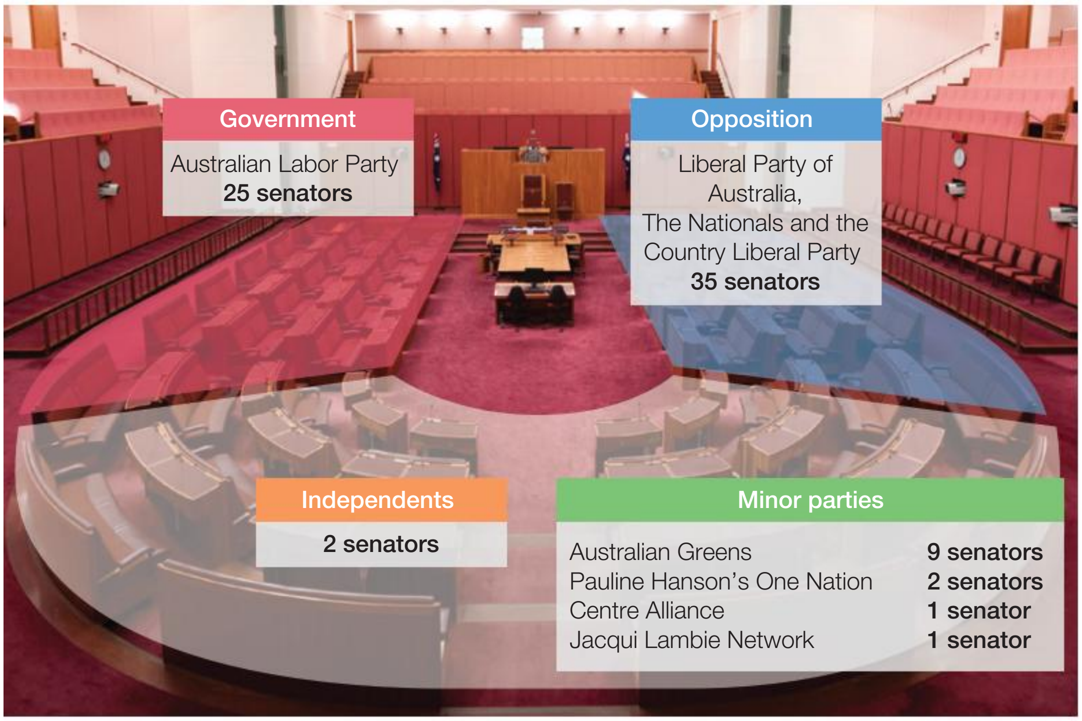
ideologies sets of ideas or beliefs about politics, economics or society

Australia's Commonwealth parliament

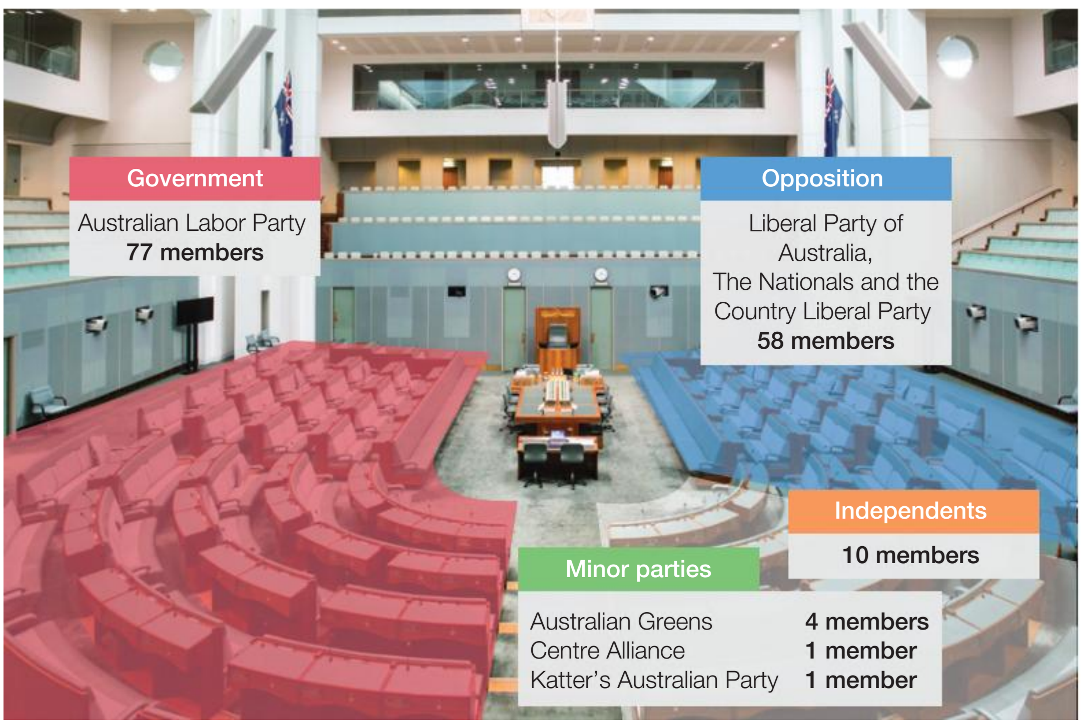
In Australia, our national parliament makes laws that apply to the whole of Australia. This includes laws on:

- defence
- immigration
- trade.

This national parliament is referred to as the federal (or Commonwealth) parliament and is located in Canberra.



Source 6 Composition of the Senate



Source 7 Composition of the House of Representatives

Australia's state and territory parliaments

In addition to the federal parliament, each of the six Australian states and two territories also has its own parliament to make laws. However – unlike the federal parliament – these parliaments only make laws that apply within the boundaries of their states or territories. This includes laws on:

- education
- public transport
- law and order
- health.

Each state parliament in Australia follows the Westminster parliamentary system, and consists of two houses and the Crown. In state parliaments, the lower house is called either the Legislative Assembly or the House of Assembly, while the upper house is called the Legislative Council. Queensland is the only state that only has a lower house. The parliaments of the two mainland territories (the Australian Capital Territory and the Northern Territory) have only one house, and do not include the Crown. This is because they were created by the Commonwealth Parliament after Federation. They were given limited power to govern themselves.

The state and territory parliaments are elected by the residents of that state or territory. Source 8 below outlines the structure and names of each house in the Australian state and territory parliaments.

Source 8 The Australian state and territory parliaments

State	Name of lower house	Number of elected members	Name of upper house	Number of elected members	Crown representative
Victoria	Legislative Assembly	88	Legislative Council	40	Governor
New South Wales	Legislative Assembly	93	Legislative Council	42	Governor
Western Australia	Legislative Assembly	59	Legislative Council	36	Governor
South Australia	House of Assembly	47	Legislative Council	22	Governor
Tasmania	House of Assembly	25	Legislative Council	15	Governor
Queensland	Legislative Assembly	93	N/A	N/A	Governor
Australian Capital Territory	Legislative Assembly	25	N/A	N/A	Governor-General
Northern Territory	Legislative Assembly	25	N/A	N/A	Administrator (appointed by the Governor-General)

hung parliament
a parliament where no one political party has enough seats to have the overall majority in the House of Representatives

minority government
a government formed by a party (or coalition of parties) which does not have a majority in the House of Representatives, but is able to govern with the support of the majority all members in the House of Representatives

Minority governments, hung parliaments and the balance of power

In Australia, the government—the group of people with the authority to govern—is formed by the political party or parties with a majority in the House of Representatives. The leader of that party becomes the Prime Minister. This government remains in power until they lose their majority in the House of Representatives, usually in an election. However, one political party might not win a majority of 76 seats. This is called a **hung parliament**. One way to resolve a hung parliament is to form a **minority government**. In a minority government, a party will still form government but will be reliant on the support of minor parties or Independents to pass laws. This was seen in 2018 after the Coalition narrowly won the 2016 federal election by one seat, but then lost their majority (due to members of parliament resigning or losing their seats). However, the Coalition managed to maintain government by having the support of the crossbench, Independents and minority party members. Individuals in this position have the **balance of power**, where their support is crucial in the passing of laws. Individuals having the balance of power can occur in both the House of Representatives and the Senate.

balance of power
the ability of individuals who are Independents or part of a minor party to decide an issue by the way they vote; this is due to no single party or coalition of parties having majority support

CASE STUDY

Queensland's 57th Parliament

Unlike other states, Queensland's Parliament only has a lower house: the Legislative Assembly, consisting of 93 elected members. In Queensland's 57th state parliament, the Australian Labor Party holds the majority with 52 seats (see Source 9). As the leader of the Queensland branch of the Australian Labour Party, Annastacia Palaszczuk is the current Premier of Queensland. There are many political parties represented in Queensland's parliament, including the Liberal National Party as the Opposition. Two of the minor parties—Katter's Australian Party and Pauline Hanson's One Nation—were founded by Queenslanders.

The Crown is also a part of Queensland's Parliament, symbolically represented by the position of Governor. The Governor acts as the King's formal representative.

Source 9 The composition of Queensland's Legislative Assembly

Composition of Queensland's 57th Parliament (from 2020 to 2024)	
Political party	**Number of elected members**
Australian Labor Party	52
Liberal National Party	34
Katter's Australian Party	3
Queensland Greens	2
Pauline Hanson's One Nation	1
Independent	1

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's parliaments

21.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define**:
- the Westminster parliamentary system
- hung parliament
- minority government
- balance of power.

2 What is the group of parties (the Liberal Party of Australia, The Nationals and the Country Liberal Party) that form the Opposition in the House of Representatives in Australia's 47th Parliament known as?

3 **State** three territories or states which do not have an upper house.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** the difference between parliament and government.

5 Read the case study on Queensland's 57th Parliament. **Explain** why Annastacia Palaszczuk is the Premier of Queensland.

Analyse

6 Look at Source 8. **Identify** and briefly describe the role of the Governor in the Australian state and territory parliaments.

Apply

7 **Create** a poster that outlines the composition of the two houses of the Commonwealth Parliament.

21.4 Australia's voting system

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe Australia's system of preferential voting.

In Australia, voting in federal, state and territory elections is compulsory. Any eligible people who fail to vote may be fined. Voting is by secret ballot, which means no one has the right to know who someone voted for.

The preferential voting system

In a federal election, voters are given two ballot papers to record their vote. The green ballot paper is used for electing one member of the House of Representatives. Members of the House of Representatives are elected for a term of three years.

The white ballot paper is used to elect senators to the Senate. Senators are elected for six years. At election time, only half the positions in the Senate become vacant. After the election, half the Senate are newly elected senators and the other half are senators who are midway through their six-year term. This ensures that the Senate reflects the view of voters at different times.

In Australian federal elections we use a **preferential system of voting**, which requires voters to *either* indicate their preference for every candidate on the ballot paper *or* indicate a specific number of preferences.

preferential system of voting
a voting system that provides multiple counts of ballot papers to determine who has gained an absolute majority of total votes

formal vote
a valid ballot paper that has been correctly completed in accordance with the instructions

informal vote
an invalid ballot paper that has not been completed in accordance with the instructions and therefore is not counted in the final vote tally

proportional voting
a system of voting which allocates seats in proportion to votes cast for candidates in an election

quota
in a Senate election, the number of votes a candidate must receive before they are elected

Casting formal votes

To cast a **formal vote** or valid vote for the House of Representatives, voters must indicate their preference for *every* candidate on the ballot paper. For example, they must mark '1' in the box next to their most preferred candidate, mark '2' in the box next to their second choice, and so on. This continues until all candidates have been ranked from most to least preferred on the ballot paper. If a voter does not follow this procedure, the vote will be considered an **informal vote** and won't be counted.

To cast a formal or valid vote for the Senate, voters must indicate their preference for *a specified number* of candidates on the ballot paper. This can be done in two ways:

- Above the line: Voters can mark their preferences numbered from 1 to at least 6 in the boxes 'above the line' (they can also number all boxes above the line).
- Below the line: Voters can number their preferences for candidates from 1 to at least 12 below the line (they can also number all boxes below the line).

Senators are elected using **proportional voting** within the preferential system of voting. This is designed to give seats to candidates in proportion to the votes cast for each candidate in an election. This usually results in more members who are Independents or from minor political parties being elected to the Senate.

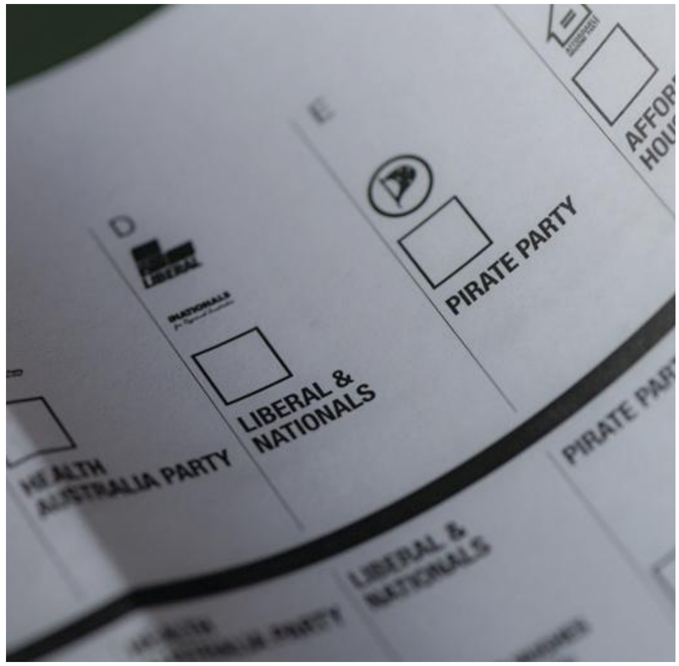
Counting the votes in the House of Representatives

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australia's voting system

To win a seat in the House of Representatives, a candidate must receive an absolute majority of the votes. This means they must receive at least 50 per cent of the votes, plus one. If a candidate receives 50 per cent or more of the first preferences, they are elected straight away. If this does not occur, then the candidate with the fewest first preferences is eliminated. The second preferences on those ballot papers are distributed to the other candidates. If there is still no clear winner, the next candidate with the least number of votes is eliminated and their preferences are distributed.

Counting the votes in the Senate

Counting the votes in the Senate is more complex than counting the votes in the House of Representatives. This is because the preferential voting system used in the Senate (which is slightly different from the one used in the House of Representatives) allows for ballot papers to be counted a number of times to determine which candidates achieve the required **quota** of formal votes to be elected.



Source 10 Example of a Senate ballot paper

21.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the consequences of failing to vote in a federal or state election in Australia.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** what is meant by the 'preferential voting system'. How does it work?

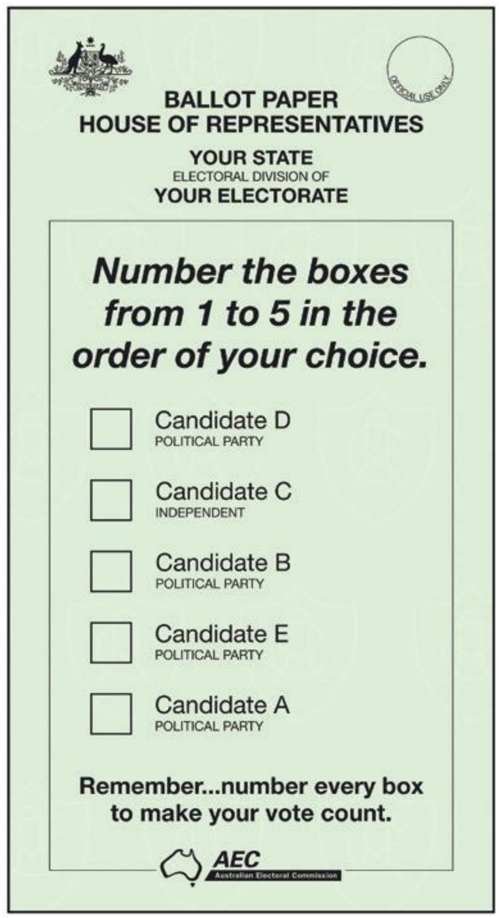
Analyse

3 **Identify** which of the candidates below has won their seat in the House of Representatives election. Assume that there are only 100 voters in the electoral division and no informal ballots are cast.

Candidate	Rachael	Isabelle	Tony	Aditi
First preferences	40	31	15	14
Secondary preferences	• Isabelle 15 • Tony 15 • Aditi 10	• Rachael 20 • Tony 10 • Aditi 1	• Rachael 5 • Isabelle 5 • Aditi 5	• Rachael 11 • Isabelle 2 • Tony 3

Apply

4 Go online and **investigate** Australia's preferential voting system. Explain one strength and one weakness of this system of voting.



Source 11 A House of Representatives ballot paper

21A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

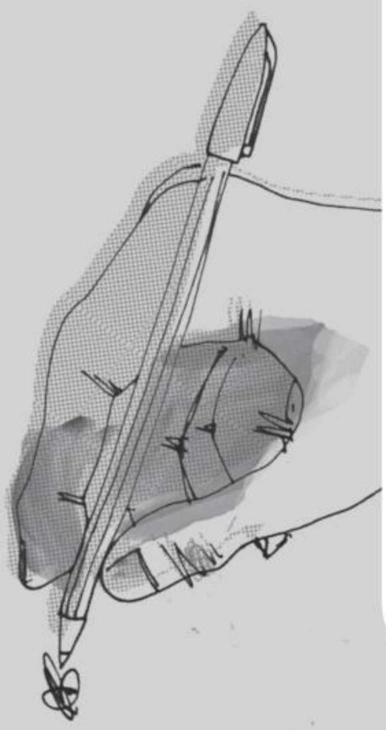
Political cartoons

Political cartoons are drawings that make a statement or deliver a message about political, economic and social issues, such as the way a country or state is governed, the people involved in government and public issues. They often portray people, political and social events in an exaggerated or humorous way. Political cartoons have been around for more than a hundred years; the term was first used in a British publication called *Punch* in the 1840s.

Over the years many historical and political figures, including US presidents and Australian prime ministers, have been subjects of political cartoons. Throughout history, political cartoons have served a number of purposes, including criticising government policies and raising awareness of the need to change the law. Cartoonists are often able to simplify complex public issues and encourage people to consider alternative viewpoints.

Political cartoonists can also use humour to comment on political, economic and social issues. Political cartoons appear in newspapers and magazines, and online.

Source 12 Many people feel that new leaders come into power making promises and making the public feel hopeful – only to fall into the same pattern as disappointing leaders before them.



KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Analysing political cartoons

Political cartoonists use different techniques to communicate their message. These could include:

- exaggerated features, where a person's physical features are exaggerated or 'caricatured' to make them look a certain way; for example, a politician with a naturally big nose might be drawn with an enormous nose
- metaphor, where a parallel is drawn between two things that are different: for example, representing a stubborn person as a mule
- symbolism, where the cartoonist uses objects that stand for a larger concept or idea; for example, a dove representing peace

- irony, where the cartoonist shows the difference between the way things are and the way things should be.

When analysing political cartoons, follow these steps:

Step 1 Identify the date when the cartoon was first published and the title of the cartoon or its caption.

Step 2 Look at the cartoon and identify what is happening without trying to understand or interpret it.

Step 3 Identify the political event or issue being shown in the cartoon. Look for visual clues to help you.

Step 4 Look for any symbols, metaphors and caricatures that give further clues to the cartoon's meaning.

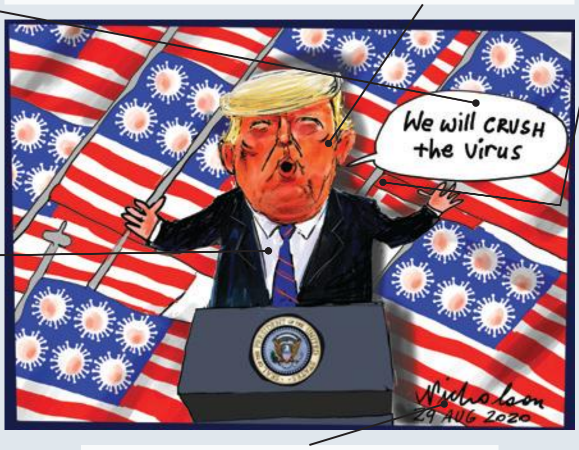
Step 5 Identify the method the cartoonist has used to bring our attention to the issue. Have they used humour? Is there a serious message the cartoonist is trying to convey behind the humour, and if so what is it? Do you agree with the message?

Step 3 The term 'crush' is in capital letters. By doing this, the cartoonist is trying to get the audience to focus on the word 'crush'. 'Crush' is a word that has connotations of force, damage and destruction. It is a lot stronger than other words that could be used, such as 'overcome', 'beat' or 'control'. 'Crush' tells the reader that Trump believes the USA can destroy the COVID-19 virus. However, the background of the image suggests the opposite.

Step 4 The cartoonist has used exaggerated features to portray Trump. His skin is a fluorescent orange colour. His mouth is rounder to look like he is shouting. His head is also much larger than his body and hands. These exaggerations make Trump appear obnoxious and comical, which tells the reader he is not to be believed.

Step 5 The cartoonist has shown the irony of Trump's claims that the USA will crush the COVID-19 virus in many ways. First, the flags that cover the background suggest that the COVID-19 virus is now a part of American life. Second, Trump has been drawn with no eyes, suggesting that he is 'blind' to the reality of the devastating virus. The cartoonist has used two recognisable symbols: the COVID-19 virus icon that represents the virus; and the American flag, which represents freedom and democracy for the American people. By combining these two symbols, the cartoonist suggests that those two things – the COVID-19 virus and the USA – have become inseparably linked.

Step 2 Then-President Donald Trump is at the centre of the cartoon. This tells us he is the topic of the cartoon on which the artist is commenting. The other main focus is the COVID-19 virus, represented in the speech bubble and the background.



Step 1 The cartoon has the date marked, which tells us it was drawn in August 2020.

Source 13 A political cartoon may be analysed by following the steps outlined.

Practise the skill

1 Visit some online news sites and find a cartoon on a current political issue. **Analyse** the cartoon following the steps above.

Extend your understanding

1 **Create** a political cartoon of your own about a current political event by following these steps.

a Investigate the current political event that you have chosen. Create a short list of 'central facts' that you need to know to draw the cartoon.

b Think of images that might help you illustrate your point. Think about how you will make people laugh. Consider using symbols, metaphors and caricature.

c Roughly sketch out the idea and check whether it works. Is the message too easy or too difficult to interpret?

d Adjust your image, and create a final copy.

21.5 Participating in Australia's democracy

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe ways Australians can participate in our democracy.

Australia is a representative democracy, which leaves much of the decision making to politicians elected by the people. It is therefore important that people make their voices heard. By ignoring politics or issues of national importance, people increase the chances of their representatives making political decisions with outcomes that might go against their interests, values or beliefs.

Contact with elected representatives

constituents
people living in an area that has elected someone to act as a political representative

In a democracy, it is the role of people elected to parliament or to local council to provide a voice for the citizens who voted them into office. They can only do this by having contact with their **constituents** and finding out about the issues that concern them. For example, in 2020, Tasmanian Senator Jacqui Lambie sought the advice of her constituents on how she should vote on a federal government bill that proposed to increase university fees for certain degrees. She spoke with students and academics at the University of Tasmania to help her understand how the bill would affect higher education in the state that she represents. As a result of Lambie's consultation with her constituents, she voted against this bill in the Senate.

Source 1 Senator Jacqui Lambie is a politician who has consulted with her constituents.

In addition, in a democracy it is the role of constituents to contact their elected representatives (by email, phone, through social media, or by arranging a meeting in person) to ensure that they understand the concerns of the people they represent.

Elections

As informed citizens, we can participate in democracy by voting for the people who we think will best represent our opinions and beliefs at local, state and federal levels of government. In fact, Australia's compulsory voting system means that all those who are enrolled to vote must do so or pay a fine.

Direct action

direct action
forms of public protest that seek to raise awareness about issues

Another way that Australians can participate in our democracy is by raising awareness about issues through **direct action**, which is also known as 'non-violent resistance'. This includes protests (such as marches and demonstrations), boycotts of products and services, and strikes. These methods of direct action have been used in the past to raise awareness and gain attention for many different causes, and to try to influence the decision-making of the people in power (such as our elected representatives).

One of the benefits of direct action is that you do not have to be of voting age to make your voice heard. Direct action has proven to be a very effective way of raising awareness about political issues.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on participating in Australia's democracy

Direct action

CASE STUDY

In August 2018, Swedish teen activist Greta Thunberg began missing school on Fridays to go on strike outside Sweden's Parliament to demand more action from her government on climate change. By March 2019, she had inspired a global 'Fridays for Future' movement, with students all over the world skipping school to campaign for greater action by their governments to address climate change. In September 2019, Thunberg delivered a speech at the United Nations headquarters as part of the 2019 Climate Action Summit.

Inspired by Thunberg, an Australian teenager, Jean Hinchliffe, became one of the lead organisers of School Strike for Climate Australia. In September 2019, an estimated 300 000 Australians attended School Strike for Climate rallies nationwide. These were some of the largest protests in our nation's history.

Source 2 School Strike for Climate Australia organisers Jean Hinchliffe (left) and Daisy Jeffrey at a climate rally in Sydney on 20 September 2019

Lobby groups

Another way that Australians can participate in our democracy is by raising awareness about issues through **lobbying**. In Australia, there are two main types of lobby groups (sometimes called 'interest groups'): insider and outsider lobby groups. Insider lobby groups work to achieve change by working with politicians directly; while outsider lobby groups harness community support to pressure the government on particular issues. School Strike for Climate is an example of an outsider lobby group. The Australian Christian Lobby (ACL) is an example of an insider lobby group.

lobbying
making requests to politicians or public groups to try to influence the government to change the law

Weblink
Australian Electoral Commission:
Find my electorate

21.5 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** a 'constituent'.
2 **State** two ways in which Australians can participate in our democracy.
3 **Identify** three types of direct action.

Comprehend

4 **Explain** the difference between an insider and an outsider lobby group.
5 **Explain** how being an active citizen helps to uphold Australia's representative democracy.

Apply

6 Greta Thunberg uses direct action, or non-violent resistance. What do you think are the advantages of using direct action to advance a political cause?
7 Use the Australian Electoral Commission's website to identify your local MP in the House of Representatives. Conduct some further research, and then **create** a profile for your local MP that includes:
- their picture
- the name of your federal electorate
- their political party (if they are a member of one)
- how long they have been an MP
- the location of their electorate office
- one issue that they are passionate about.

21.6 Having a say

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe how who can participate in Australian democracy has changed since Federation
- explain the role of an independent electoral service such as the Australian Electoral Commission.

Participation in Australia's democracy has not always been available to everybody. Australia inherited its democratic system of government from the British, who colonised Australia in 1788. None of the colonists, convicts, or First Nations people in these colonies had a say in how the colonies were governed.

Over the next few decades, more colonies were established. Increasing numbers of free settlers (people who leave their homeland by choice) arrived in Australia and demanded a say in how the colonies were governed. By the 1850s, there were six independent colonies of Australia. These would go on to become the states and territories that we recognise today. Most of these colonies had their own parliaments. Women were not allowed to vote in elections to these parliaments. In some colonies, men had to own property worth a certain value to be able to vote. Some First Nations men had been granted voting rights, but many did not know their rights, and they were not encouraged to use them.

Changes to voting since Federation

Since the federation of Australia on 1 January 1901, there have been a number of changes to who is able to vote in Australia:

- 1901: Most men who were British subjects, over 21, and resided in Australia were able to vote. First Nations men in Victoria, New South Wales and Tasmania were able to vote. Women and First Nations peoples in South Australia were able to vote.
- 1902: The *Commonwealth Franchise Act 1902* grants all Australian women over 21 the right to vote. This Act excludes First Nations peoples (unless they were on the electoral role before 1901). Most First Nations peoples are not allowed to vote in federal elections.
- 1962: The *Commonwealth Electoral Act 1962* grants all First Nations peoples the right to vote in federal elections.
- 1965: Queensland is the last state to grant First Nations peoples the right to vote in state elections.
- 1973: The voting age is lowered from 21 to 18.

The role of independent electoral services

Source 3 The Australian Electoral Commission (AEC) is responsible for managing federal elections.

In Australia voting in federal, state and territory elections is compulsory. Any eligible people who fail to vote may be fined. There are independent state/territory and federal electoral commissions (organisations). Their role is to ensure that all state/territory and federal elections are free, fair and conducted according to state/territory and Commonwealth law.

For example, the Australian Electoral Commission is responsible for managing federal elections. The AEC must:

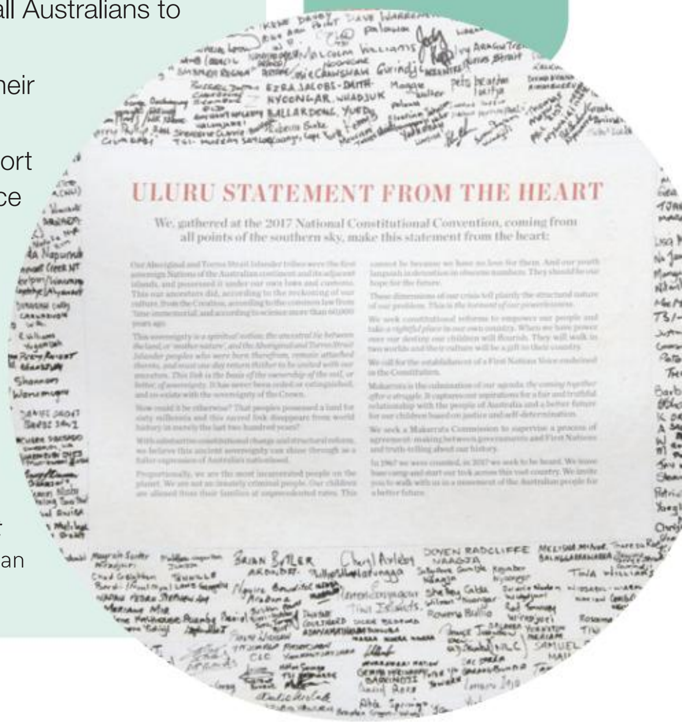
- make sure Australians are informed about enrolling to vote and voting
- maintain the Commonwealth electoral roll, which lists the names and addresses of all eligible citizens who have enrolled to vote
- check that votes are honestly counted.

CASE STUDY

Uluru Statement from the Heart campaign

Constitution conventions are meetings to officially review the Australian Constitution. In 2017, the First Nations National Constitutional Convention was held at Uluru to consider how the Constitution could better recognise First Nations peoples. At this convention, a document called the *Uluru Statement from the Heart* was drafted. It proposes some changes to the Constitution to make it more inclusive of First Nations peoples. One recommendation was the creation of a 'First Nations Voice to Parliament', which would give First Nations peoples input into proposed laws that affect their communities. The *Uluru Statement from the Heart* website encourages all Australians to participate by:

- writing a letter to their local MP
- signing up to support a First Nations Voice to Parliament
- spreading the message to other Australians by using social media tiles and email banners.



Source 4 The *Uluru Statement from the Heart* was issued to the Australian people in May 2017.

Ways citizens can have a say

Participation refers to the way people can contribute or 'have a say' in society. One of the main ways we can participate in a democracy is by voting in an election. In Australia, we all can participate in society through activities such as writing to and lobbying a member of parliament, serving on a jury or paying taxes. Younger Australians who are not yet of voting age can participate in politics by engaging with direct action (such as protests) or engaging with political and social media campaigns (see the case study above).

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on having a say

21.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the role of electoral commissions.

2 **Identify** one responsibility of the Australian Electoral Commission.

Comprehend

3 **Summarise** how the ability of the following groups to participate in Australian democracy has changed since Federation:

  a First Nations peoples
  b women
  c young people.

Apply

4 Think about one issue you are concerned about. It could be a local issue affecting your area, or a global issue affecting the wider world. **Propose** (put forward) one way you could act politically to help address this issue.

5 In small groups, brainstorm examples of campaigns (like the *Uluru Statement from the Heart*) which advocate for political change. Choose one of these campaigns to analyse. Conduct research to determine:
- how the campaign started
- who are the main people/organisations involved
- the aim of the campaign
- the campaign's message to the Australian public
- how Australians can participate in the campaign.

21.7 Informed citizens

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe ways that citizens can be influenced in how they vote.

Informed citizens are citizens who have the knowledge to understand what is happening in the world. Information is often learned and spread through traditional and social media. Traditional media are forms of mass communication such as newspapers, television and radio. Social media are the websites and apps that are used to share digital content widely (for example, Twitter and TikTok).

A democracy relies on individuals being able to make informed decisions about which political party or independent candidate would best reflect their views and values. When making such decisions, most voters gain their information from the media.

Advertising and interest groups can also influence how people understand different issues and can even influence how they will vote in elections.

Influences on citizens and voters

People learn information from many sources, and can be influenced by:

- media exposure or representation: what we read, see and hear in traditional and social media can influence our views on social and political issues. It can also influence our views on political parties and candidates.

  The media may not always present information in an unbiased (fair) way. Sometimes information is presented in a way that reflects the political views of their owners. Traditional and social media can also be used to spread disinformation. Disinformation is false information, which is deliberately spread to mislead people.
- interest groups: an interest group is a group organised to promote a certain issue the members have in common. For example, The Wilderness Society is an interest group that campaigns on environmental issues such as protecting Tasmania's forests from industrial logging.
- political campaigns: at elections, political parties need to communicate their policies in a way that will be understood by a wide variety of voters. Political campaigns can include strategies such as publicly meeting with voters, political advertising, and using traditional and social media.
- political parties: some people will always vote for the same political party, no matter what. Sometimes this party loyalty can be influenced by their family or their area of employment.
- vested interests: having a vested interest means that a person or organisation may support a political party or candidate to make a personal gain (for example, to increase their own financial wealth).

  Recently, there have been concerns that some very wealthy individuals and large corporations have been able to influence Australian politics. This is done by making large donations to political parties that benefit their interests. For example, Clive Palmer, the owner of a number of Australian mining companies, spent millions of dollars on 'anti-Labor' advertising in the 2019 federal election. This may have influenced some people to vote for the Liberal–National Coalition.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about media influence and complete the following sentences.
- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on informed citizens

Source 5 Informed citizens use the media to learn information. People can also be influenced by what they read, see and hear in traditional and social media.

The influence of disinformation

Disinformation can be spread at elections to influence how people vote. The Australian Electoral Commission (AEC) maintains a disinformation register. In the 2022 federal election, the AEC's disinformation register listed over 30 pieces of disinformation – for example, that Australian voters who were not fully vaccinated would not be able to vote. The AEC's disinformation register outlines the source of the disinformation (for example, Reddit) and the action taken in response.

Weblink
Australian Electoral Commission: Disinformation register

21.7 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the meaning of disinformation.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** three factors that can influence voter behaviour.

3 **Describe** the role of the media in influencing voter behaviour.

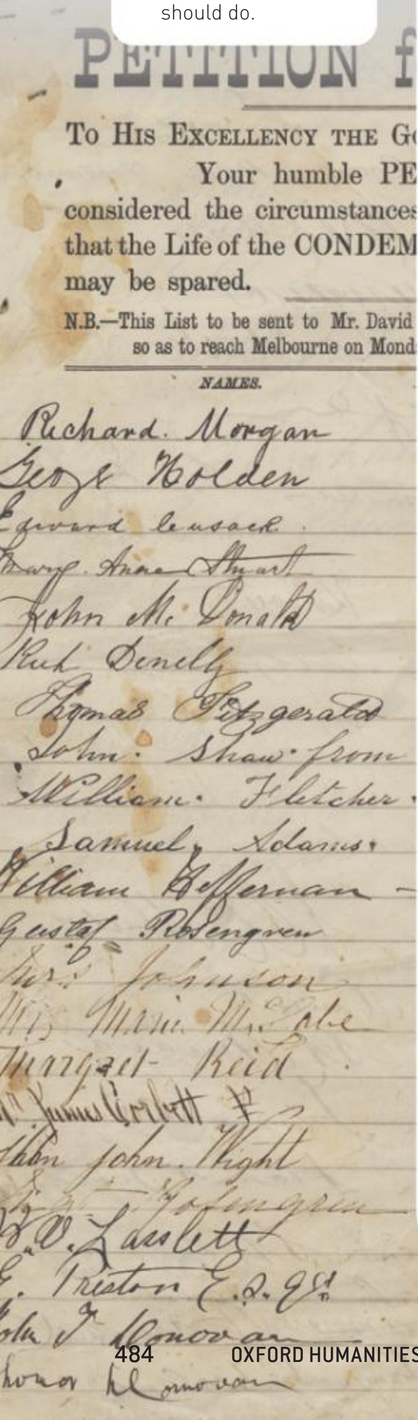
4 **Explain** how an individual or organisation with a vested interest can influence political outcomes.

Apply

5 Go online and **investigate** an issue which has been in the news recently. Try and find a example of this issue being discussed in traditional media (for example, in a newspaper article or interview transcript) and in social media (for example, on Twitter). Hint: for issues related to Australian politics, search online for #auspol.

21B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.



Petitions

Even if you are not old enough to vote, you can still make your voice heard. One method of direct action that can help raise political awareness is the use of petitions. A petition is a collection of signatures that identify people who share a stance on a particular issue. A petition can be started by anyone.

Petitions have been used for centuries by people who want to show the government that many people support a particular cause. Large numbers of signatures have often persuaded politicians and others to take up the cause of the petitioners. These days, handwritten and online petitions continue to help political causes gain momentum and ensure that politicians are made aware of their constituents' points of view.

In recent years, online petitions have become a popular form of direct action. Websites such as Change.org allow anyone to create a petition and share it via social media or email to as many people as possible. Having petitions online allows people from all over the world to see and sign these documents, which means that online petitions can gain many more signatures than handwritten petitions.

Petitions can also be created via the Parliament of Australia website. Any citizen or resident of Australia can create an e-petition that will then be submitted to the House of Representatives. For example, in 2020, former Prime Minister Kevin Rudd created an e-petition to request that the House of Representatives establish a Royal Commission (an independent investigation, with power to call witnesses) into media ownership in Australia.

Source 6 Labor MP Andrew Leigh shows a printed copy of Kevin Rudd's e-petition on media ownership to the House of Representatives in 2020.

Source 7 Online petitions are an easy way to reach lots of people. This petition about puppy farms led to the Western Australian Government drafting legislation to ban puppy farms.

KEY SKILL
Civic participation & decision making

Creating a petition

Before starting a petition, you must become well informed on the issue at hand. Many people will only sign your petition if you can explain why it is an important cause. This will require you to research the issue in depth, and to explore all sides of the argument.

To create a petition, follow these steps:

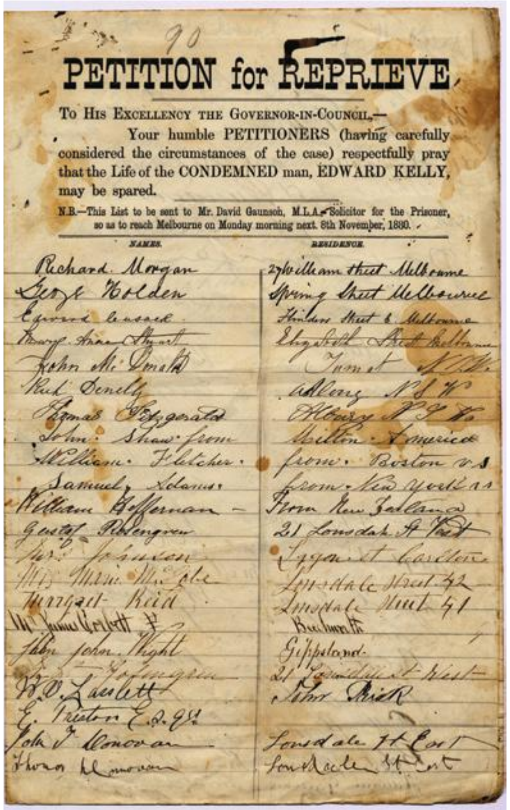
Step 1 Select a title for your petition. The title should be a simple and strong statement explaining exactly what you want to achieve with the petition.

Step 2 Identify who you are petitioning. Is your petition directed at a local politician, the prime minister, the CEO of an organisation, or your school principal? You need to clearly state the title and name of the person whom you wish to receive the petition.

Step 3 Outline the reasons why people should sign the petition. These reasons can be written in bullet points or in a few short paragraphs.

Step 4 Get signatures. These days, a great way of getting signatures is by using social media to gain support for your petition. A traditional way is to approach people whom you believe may be interested in signing the petition. A stand with a sign in a public place is an effective way of drawing people to you. Just make sure that you have the approval of your parents and teacher before you make any decisions about where to look for signatures.

For more information on this skill, see page 462 of 'The civics and citizenship toolkit'.



90

PETITION for REPRIEVE

To His Excellency the Governor-in-Council,—

Your humble PETITIONERS (having carefully considered the circumstances of the case) respectfully pray that the Life of the CONDEMNED man, EDWARD KELLY, may be spared.

N.B.—This List to be sent to Mr. David Gaunson, M.L.A., Solicitor for the Prisoner, so as to reach Melbourne on Monday morning next, 8th November, 1880.

NAMES. RESIDENCE.

Source 8 Petition for Reprieve for Ned Kelly, 1880

Practise the skill

1 **Identify** an issue that you wish to create a petition for, in order to raise support and awareness for that issue.

2 **Create** a petition using the steps above, and see how many signatures you can get from the students at your school.

Extend your understanding

1 Research and write a 200-word report on one of the following historical petitions:
- Yirrkala Bark Petitions, 1963
- Petition for Reprieve for Ned Kelly, 1880
- Bendigo Goldfields Petition, 1853
- Women's Suffrage Petition, 1891 (Victoria).

Weblink
Parliament of Australia: Petitions

21 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the information, then answer the following questions.

Should the voting age be lowered in Australia?

In 2018, Senator Jordon Steele-John of the Greens Party proposed lowering the voting age from 18 years to 16 years. Under the proposal, in addition to retaining compulsory voting for Australian citizens aged 18 years and over, the law would allow young Australian citizens aged 16 and 17 years the option to vote in federal elections. Voting for people aged 16 and 17 years would be voluntary. The proposal also suggested that people aged 14 and 15 years should be able to enrol to vote. Currently a person must be aged 17 years to enrol to vote.

There are many reasons why people believe the voting age should be lowered to 16 years – including that it would allow young people the opportunity to have a voice in the discussion of issues they will inherit from the older generations. For example, young people will be required to deal with the impact of climate change, rising house prices and rising government debt.

Many young people are also interested in and affected by social and political issues. For example, many are concerned about national and global social justice issues, including the need to recognise and improve the living standards of First Nations peoples, and treat refugees and asylum seekers with dignity and respect.

People who disagree with the proposed law argue that young people lack the life experience and maturity to be able to cast an informed vote. They also argue that young people can already participate in our democracy in other ways, such as by joining the 'youth branch' of a political party or participating in political conventions made available to schools.

1 Research online to answer the following questions:
   a **Identify** when the law in Australia was changed to lower the voting age from 21 to 18 years. **Explain** one reason why this change was made. (4 marks)
   b **Identify** the most common voting age throughout the world. (2 marks)
   c **Identify** three countries that have a minimum voting age of 16 years and three countries that have a minimum voting age of 21 years. (6 marks)
2 **Discuss** whether the federal parliament should change the law to allow young people aged 16 and 17 years the option of voting in a federal election. (8 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Explain the meaning of representative democracy. Describe the structure of federal parliament.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.1, page 466.
Summarise the role of political parties, including independents.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.2, page 468.
Describe the makeup of Australia's federal parliament. Summarise the makeup of Australia's state and territory parliaments. Explain the meaning of 'minority government', 'hung parliament' and 'balance of power'.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.3, page 470.
Describe Australia's system of preferential voting.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.4, page 474.
Describe ways Australians can participate in our democracy.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.5, page 478.
Describe how who can participate in Australian democracy has changed since Federation. Explain the role of an independent electoral service such as the Australian Electoral Commission.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.6, page 480.
Describe ways that citizens can be influenced in how they vote.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 21.7, page 482.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 21

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 21

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Democracy in Australia.

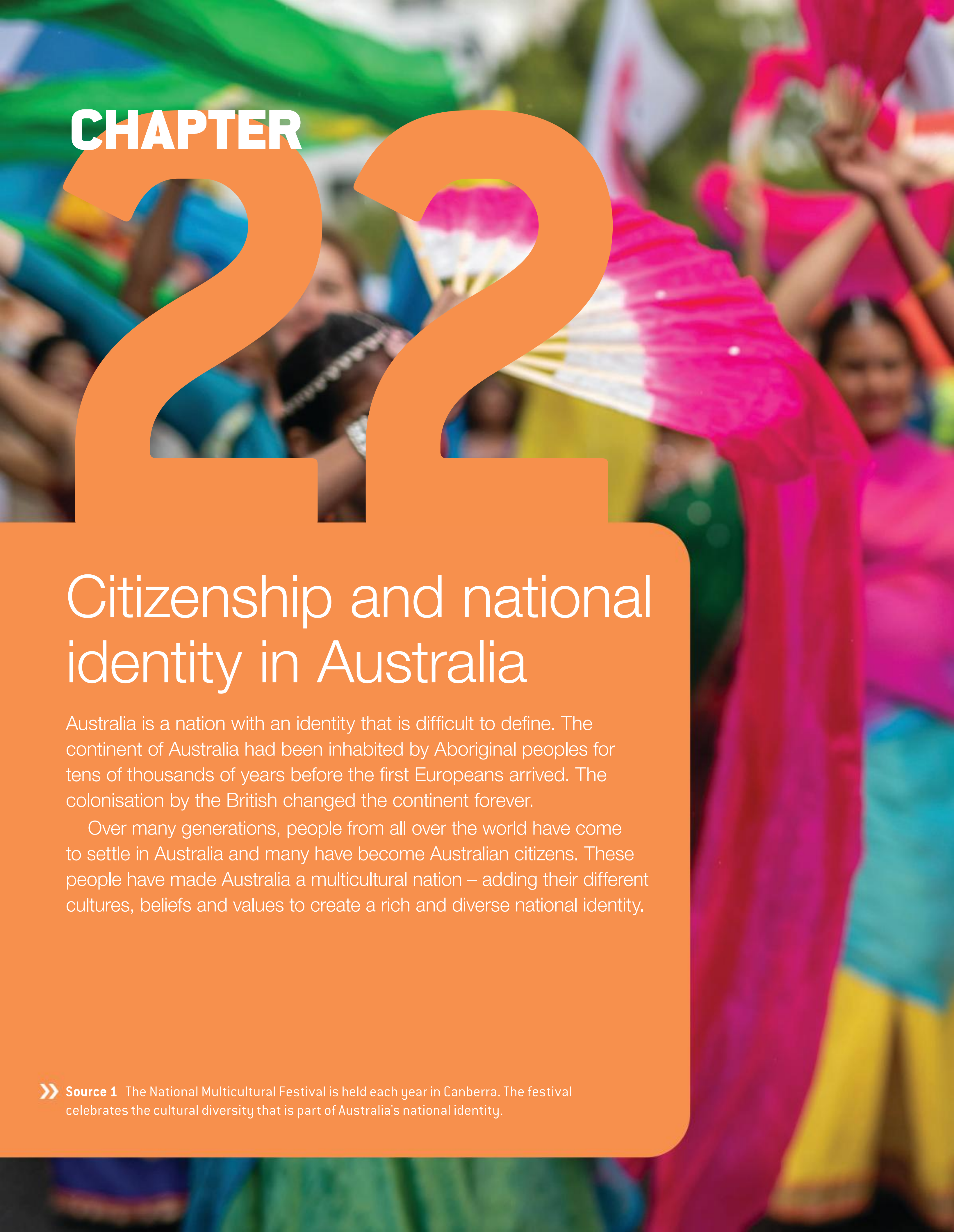
Chapter review quiz
Chapter 21

CHAPTER 22

Citizenship and national identity in Australia

Australia is a nation with an identity that is difficult to define. The continent of Australia had been inhabited by Aboriginal peoples for tens of thousands of years before the first Europeans arrived. The colonisation by the British changed the continent forever.

Over many generations, people from all over the world have come to settle in Australia and many have become Australian citizens. These people have made Australia a multicultural nation – adding their different cultures, beliefs and values to create a rich and diverse national identity.



Source 1 The National Multicultural Festival is held each year in Canberra. The festival celebrates the cultural diversity that is part of Australia's national identity.

22A
What does it mean to be an Australian citizen?

22B
How do citizens contribute to Australia's national identity?

22.1 Australian identity

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe how Australia's national identity has changed over time.

Australia's national identity is made up of our shared history and values along with our diverse traditions and cultures. Approximately 26 million people live in Australia today. First Nations peoples – the original inhabitants of Australia – make up approximately 3.2 per cent of the population. The rest of the population is made up of migrants or their descendants.

Australia's changing identity

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Exploring First Nations' perspectives

Australia is home to the oldest continuous culture on Earth, with evidence showing that Aboriginal peoples have occupied mainland Australia for at least 65 000 years. British colonisers established the first European colony at Sydney Cove in 1788. They were the first migrants to Australia. Since European **colonisation**, Australia has experienced many waves of migration.

By the time of Federation in 1901, many Australians with European heritage identified very strongly as being part of the British Commonwealth. At this stage, Australia's population was mainly white and Christian, and the national anthem was 'God Save the Queen' (or King), which is the national anthem of the United Kingdom.

Since then, **migrants** have come to Australia from approximately 200 countries, making us a culturally diverse nation with people from many different cultural backgrounds. Due to migration, Australia's national identity has gone through many changes over the past 250 years. Australia has gone from a land where only First Nations peoples lived, to being occupied by British colonists, to today, when Australia is home to people with a range of different backgrounds. Today, half of all Australians have at least one parent who was born overseas.

colonisation
the process of setting up outposts or settlements in other lands, by a country, kingdom or empire

migrants
people who move from one place to another to settle

multicultural
having many different cultures, races and/or religions

Key skill worksheet
Questioning & researching: Investigating Australia's national identity

Source 1 Australia is one of the most culturally diverse nations in the world. Our population is made up of First Nations peoples, migrants who were born overseas and the descendants of those who have migrated to Australia since 1788.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on Australian identity

As Australia's population becomes increasingly **multicultural**, this diversity has become an important part of our society and of Australia's national identity. As a diverse and multicultural country, Australia's national identity is made up of people who have different racial, cultural, religious and socio-economic backgrounds, lifestyles and life experiences. Although Australians have a diverse array of cultural backgrounds and beliefs, many of us share common values. Values are the beliefs that we consider important as a nation. Sharing values such as compassion and equality help us to live in harmony.

Source 2 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples are the First Nations peoples of Australia. Aboriginal cultures are the oldest continuous cultures on earth.

Australian citizenship

A citizen is a person who legally lives in a geographical area, such as a country. Being an Australian citizen means not only having a legal right to live in Australia, but also having rights and responsibilities. For example, Australian citizens have the right to vote for members of parliament to represent their views and to stand for election to parliament. The responsibilities of Australian citizens include voting in federal and state and territory elections and obeying the law. Australian citizens also have a social responsibility to members of our community.

Many Australian citizens also see themselves as global citizens who belong to the world community. Issues such as climate change are global issues which require a response from not just citizens of Australia, but people everywhere in the world.

Australia's national anthem

Australia's national anthem, 'Advance Australia Fair', is often played at public ceremonies or community events, such as sporting matches. It is also played at official ceremonies, both in Australia and overseas. As of 1 January 2021, the second line of the Australian National Anthem is 'For we are *one* and free'. The original line – 'For we are *young* and free' – was changed to reflect First Nations peoples' long history in Australia. Then-prime minister Scott Morrison stated that the change was for all Australians and helped to better reflect Australia's unity.

22.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** when the British colonised the country that is now called Australia.

Comprehend

2 **Summarise** how Australia's population has changed between 1700 and now.

3 **Describe** one right and one responsibility of Australian citizens.

Analyse

4 Today, half of all Australians have at least one parent who was born overseas. Calculate the percentage of your class that has at least one parent born overseas. State whether your class reflects this statistic and **reflect on** some possible reasons for any similarities or differences.

Apply

5 In pairs or small groups, **discuss** what Australia's national identity means to you. Think about how your view may have been shaped by the experiences in your life so far.

22.2 Becoming an Australian citizen

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how migrants can become Australian citizens.

Migrants are people who move from one country (or region) to another, in order to settle there. People who migrate to Australia do so for many reasons. For example, people who migrate to Australia might be economic migrants (people seeking employment or to improve their financial position) or skilled migrants (people who are encouraged to migrate due to their skills or profession).

Australian citizenship

Migrants to Australia can choose to become citizens after living in Australia for a certain period of time and meeting certain requirements. People who are born overseas generally need to meet a number of criteria and pass a citizenship test before being granted Australian citizenship. The citizenship test is an assessment of a person's:

- knowledge about Australia
- understanding of the rights and responsibilities of Australian citizenship
- understanding of Australian values
- English language skills.

Source 3 Australian citizens can apply for an Australian passport.

The final stage of becoming an Australian citizen is the citizenship ceremony. This ceremony gives the Australian Government the chance to welcome its new citizens. During this ceremony, new citizens are given the opportunity to take the Australian citizenship pledge:

> From this time forward, I pledge my loyalty to Australia and its people, whose democratic beliefs I share, whose rights and liberties I respect, and whose laws I will uphold and obey.

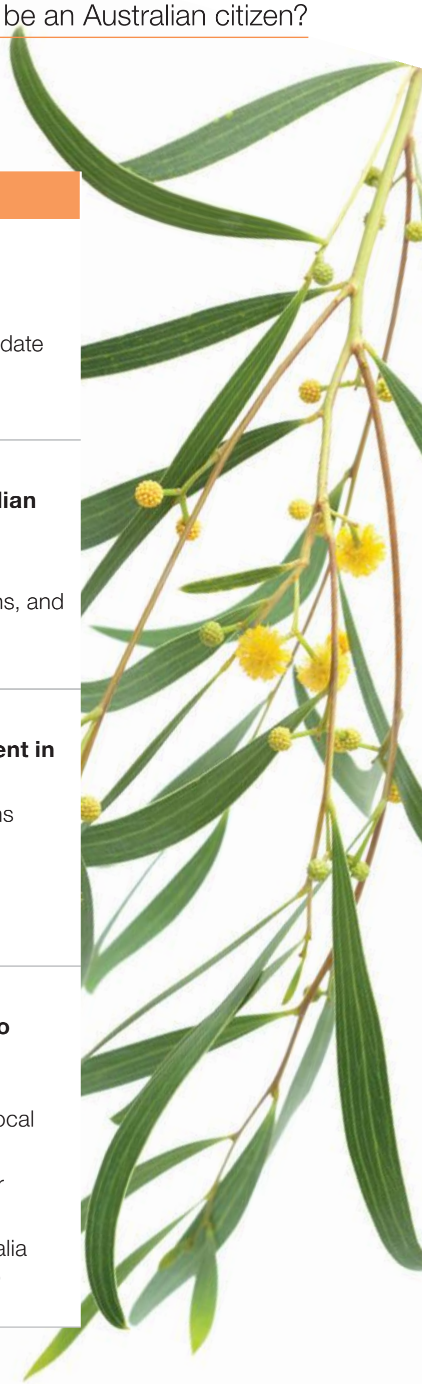
Once a person becomes an Australian citizen, they take on the rights and responsibilities that come with citizenship.

Quiz me! A quick quiz on becoming an Australian citizen

Weblink The Australian citizenship practice test

Multiple or dual citizens

Not everybody who migrates to Australia wants to or is able to become an Australian citizen. Australian citizens are allowed to also be citizens of other countries. Being a citizen of more than one country is known as holding dual (two) or multiple citizenship. However, some countries do not allow their citizens to hold dual or multiple citizenship. India is one example of a country that does not allow its citizens to have dual citizenship. If a person who has Indian citizenship wants to become an Australian citizen (or a citizen of another country), they need to renounce (formally give up) their Indian citizenship.



Source 4 Sample questions from the Australian citizenship test; migrants to Australia must pass the Australian citizenship test to become Australian citizens.

The Australian citizenship practice test	
Sample question 1 **What do we commemorate on Anzac Day?** o The landing of the Australian and New Zealand Army Corps at Gallipoli, Turkey during World War I o The arrival of the first free settlers from Great Britain o The landing of the First Fleet at Sydney Cove	Sample question 5 **Which of these statements about voting in Australian elections is correct?** o People are free and safe to vote for any candidate o Voting is by a show of hands o People must write their name on their vote
Sample question 2 **What is the Commonwealth Coat of Arms?** o The national anthem o Australia's national flower o The official symbol of Australia, which identifies Commonwealth property	Sample question 6 **Which of these is a responsibility of Australian citizens aged 18 years or over?** o To attend local council meetings o To vote in federal and state or territory elections, and in a referendum o To have a current Australian passport
Sample question 3 **What happened in Australia on 1 January 1901?** o The Australian Constitution was changed by a referendum o The separate colonies were united into a federation of states called the Commonwealth of Australia o The Australian and New Zealand Army Corps was formed	Sample question 7 **Which of these statements about government in Australia is correct?** o The government does not allow some religions o The government in Australia is secular o Religious laws are passed by Parliament
Sample question 4 **Which of these statements about passports is correct?** o Australian citizens can apply for an Australian passport o Permanent residents can hold an Australian passport o Australian citizens need a passport and visa to return to Australia	Sample question 8 **Should people in Australia make an effort to learn English?** o People in Australia should speak whichever language is most commonly spoken in their local neighbourhood o There is no expectation to learn any particular language in Australia o Yes, English is the national language of Australia and it helps to get an education, a job, and to integrate into the community

22.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 Why might people want to migrate to Australia?

2 **State** three things that the Australian citizenship test assesses.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** what it means to hold dual citizenship.

Apply

4 **Consider** whether or not people born overseas should be required to pass the Australian citizenship test before being granted citizenship. Remember, when you consider something, you should think about it carefully before making a decision.

5 Look at Source 4 or follow the weblink to the Australian citizenship practice test on the Department of Home Affairs website. What do you think the questions that are asked in the Australian citizenship test say about Australia's national identity?

22A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!

Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

The creation of Australian citizenship

Even though Australia identified as a nation from its federation in 1901, the idea of an Australian citizen didn't exist until much later. Until after World War II, Australia was still considered by many to be an extension of Britain, and anyone born in Australia or naturalised (made a citizen) became a British subject.

The Australian Government wanted to build Australia's small population, but many people were still attached to British culture and wanted to encourage migrants only from the United Kingdom. By 1947, more than 400 000 people had registered with the Assisted Passage Migration Scheme (also known as the 'Ten-Pound Pom' scheme), which helped British citizens relocate to Australia.

While the post-war immigration drive saw Australia begin to accept migrants from non-English-speaking countries, they were carefully chosen groups of people who were considered 'suitable migrants'. A new life in Australia was very appealing to many people after the devastation of World War II.

The *Nationality and Citizenship Act* was brought to the House of Representatives by Arthur Calwell, Australia's first immigration minister. The Act detailed who could become a citizen, and how. It came into effect on Australia Day of 1949.

Source 5 Migrants arriving in Sydney in 1947

The *Nationality and Citizenship Act* 1948 (Summary)

- All Australian-born and other British subjects resident in Australia for the five years prior to 26 January 1949 were automatically Australian citizens.
- Anyone born in Australia on or after that date was automatically an Australian citizen unless their father was considered an enemy alien.
- Anyone defined as an Australian citizen also became or retained the status of British subject.
- Tests could be administered to determine if an alien person not of British origin was suitable for citizenship.

Source 6 A summary of the *Nationality and Citizenship Act* 1948

KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Analysing the *Nationality and Citizenship Act 1948*

Migrants were told to assimilate to the Australian way of life to gain citizenship. Language and culture classes were offered to migrants and Australians were encouraged to help new immigrants fit into Australian society. The *Nationality and Citizenship Act 1948*, reflects Australian cultural values of the time.

Source 7 gives some clauses of the Act. A clause is one particular point of the law. Follow the steps below to analyse the Act:

Step 1 Read the clauses of the Act and identify evidence of bias in the Act. (For example, is there any indication that these were written to impact a specific group positively or negatively?)

Step 2 Determine the purpose of these clauses. (For example, why do you think these clauses were added? Who was considered to be the ideal Australian citizen when the law was written?

Step 3 Critique (review analytically) the main clauses of the Act. (For example, what do you think are the biggest issues with the Act? What group is not mentioned?)

PART II.—BRITISH NATIONALITY. 7.—(1.) A person who, under this Act, is an Australian citizen or, by an enactment for the time being in force in a country to which this section applies, is a citizen of that country shall, by virtue of that citizenship, be a British subject.

PART III.—AUSTRALIAN CITIZENSHIP. 10.— (2.) A person shall not be an Australian citizen by virtue of this section if, at the time of his birth— (a) his father was not an Australian citizen and possessed the immunity from suit and legal process which is accorded to an envoy of a foreign country accredited to His Majesty; or (b) his father was an enemy alien and the birth occurred in a place then under occupation by the enemy.

12.— (1.) (d) that he has an adequate knowledge of the English language or, if he has not such a knowledge, that he has resided in Australia or New Guinea, or partly in Australia and partly in New Guinea, for a continuous period of not less than twenty years;

(e) that he has an adequate knowledge of the responsibilities and privileges of Australian citizenship …

Source 7 Excerpts from the *Nationality and Citizenship Act 1948*

Step 4 Redevelop the Act. (For example, how would you change or adapt the clauses below to make them more suitable to our modern view of citizenship and Australian society?)

Weblink
Video testimonials on immigration

Practise the skill

1. In pairs or small groups, **discuss** the purpose of introducing a citizenship Act to a country. Why is it important to define what a citizen is and how to become one?
2. In your groups, rewrite the clauses of the Act to reflect the purpose you have identified. Include everything you think a person should know about what the government and citizens should expect from each other.
3. Present your updated citizenship Act to the class and hold a vote on each clause. Rewrite your Act based on the input of the class.

Extend your understanding

1. Use the weblinks provided on your obook pro to gain a deeper understanding of how immigration contributed to the development of Australian society.
   - **a** Watch the video testimonials from various perspectives.
   - **b** **Identify** the testimonial that you believe best outlines the positive impacts that migrants have had on Australian society. Write a summary that outlines the key points of the video.
   - **c** **Reflect on** the idea of Australian citizenship over time. What has changed? What has stayed the same?

22.3 Citizens in communities

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the many different communities that Australians may belong to.

Australia is one of the most culturally diverse nations in the world. It is difficult to define the identity of a 'typical' Australian. This is because of our cultural diversity – and because each of us has different ideas about the unique characteristics that make us Australian.

Community groups

Most Australians belong not only to the **community** of Australia, but also to communities related to their culture or religion, or even their interests. Many Australians belong to multiple communities, such as:

- cultural communities: cultural communities are made up of people who share common characteristics such as ancestry, ethnicity, language and social customs, or traditions of food, music or art. There are more than 250 cultural and ethnic groups in Australia.

community
a group of people who live in the same place and shared interests

Source 1 Many Australians are active citizens who are involved in their local communities. Before the COVID-19 pandemic, approximately one-third of Australians participated in some form of volunteering, such as helping out in charity or op shops.

- faith communities: faith communities are made up of people who belong to a particular religion. Since colonisation, Christianity has been the most common religion in Australia. The Christian faith community has historically been active in Australia. For example, many Christian charities (such as the Salvation Army) have worked in the Australian community for more than 100 years.

There are many charities and not-for-profit organisations in Australia formed by people from various faith communities. For example, during the COVID-19 pandemic, Sikh Volunteers Australia cooked and delivered more than 800 meals a day to people in need.

Sports and social clubs

Australians can also belong to local, community-based groups such as:

- sporting clubs: sporting clubs are made up of groups of people who play the same sport. For example, more than 1.4 million Australians play football in community and social clubs.
- social clubs: the purpose of social clubs is to provide social interactions within communities. RSL (Returned and Services League) clubs are an example of a social club that exists throughout Australia. RSL clubs are places for people who are serving or have served in the Australian Defence Forces to get together and share a meal.

Professional associations

Many Australians also belong to professional communities, such as:

- professional associations: professional associations are where groups of people who are involved in specific industries come together to share knowledge. Many industries (for example, the accounting industry) have professional associations.
- trade unions: trade unions are organisations of workers in a trade or profession who come together to advocate for their common interests.

Active and global citizens

All Australian citizens have responsibilities that come from having legal citizenship. These responsibilities include obeying the law, serving on a jury if asked, and voting in elections. In addition to these responsibilities, many Australians make the choice to be active citizens. Active citizens are citizens who are actively involved in their communities (for example, through volunteering at local foodbanks or op shops) and who demonstrate shared Australian values such as compassion.

Many Australians are also global citizens. Global citizens are people who see themselves as belonging not just to their local community and country, but also to the global community. Global citizens help to make the world a better place by taking action to address issues which affect everyone in the world, such as environmental issues or human rights issues.

Anjali Sharma is an example of a global citizen. In 2020, while still a high school student, Anjali (along with seven other teenagers and Christian nun Sister Brigid Arthur) filed a class action to stop then Environment Minister Sussan Ley from approving a new coal mine expansion in New South Wales. This legal action was intended to protect young people in Australia and around the world from the future harm caused by the climate change impacts of the coal mine.

Source 2 Many Australians see themselves as global citizens, with a responsibility to act on issues which affect not only our local community and country, but also the whole world – such as climate change, which can fuel extreme weather events like bushfires.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on citizens in communities

22.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** the following terms:
 a community
 b active citizenship
 c global citizenship.

Comprehend

2 Think about how many different communities you belong to (for example, your school community or sporting community). **Describe** how the different communities you are involved with affect your life.

Analyse

3 Read the following quotes and **reflect on** which statement you most agree with. Explain your response.
 'I am a citizen of the world' – Diogenes Laertius, Greek philosopher (220 CE).
 'I am not a citizen of the world. I think the entire concept is intellectual nonsense and stunningly dangerous!' – Newt Gingrich, American politician

Apply

4 **Investigate** a human rights campaign such as one of the End Poverty campaigns, the Live Below the Line challenge, the Human Rights Campaign (relating to achieving a world where every member of the LGBTQIA community has the freedom to live with equality under the law) or Reconciliation Australia (which promotes respect, trust and positive relationships between First Nations peoples and the wider Australian community). Using dot points, describe some of the methods used in these campaigns to create change for the better.

22B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Maintaining identity

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Since Federation in 1901, Australia has experienced a significant shift in cultural identity. For a long time, Australia preferred to admit migrants from western European backgrounds, ideally from the United Kingdom. Those who did not come from the UK were encouraged to assimilate, leaving behind their own culture, language, and identity to become 'Australian', and taking on customs that reflected our national ties to Britain.

There is now a strong focus on accepting the cultures that come together to make up Australian society, rather than trying to change them. Hearing the experiences of people in our First Nations and migrant communities allows us to make better-informed decisions on how to support our culturally diverse community.

In Australia, January 26 is officially the country's national day and the sole purpose of this national day is to unite people. But to Indigenous Australians this particular day is a day of mourning to reflect, acknowledge and remember all the lives that have been lost since the British claimed the land on this same day in 1788. From slavery to mass murders, this day means extreme loss and trauma to all Indigenous Australians.

Patty Mills, an Olympic basketballer and Member of the Order of Australia (AM), speaking as a First Nations person about the significance of the 'Change the Date' campaign

Source 3 Patty Mills, a Kokatha, Naghiralgal and Duaureb-Meriamat man, at the 2019 FIBA Basketball World Cup in China

Coming to Australia from South Sudan created a sense of diaspora for my parents so they were always very diligent about incorporating our culture into our everyday lives as much as possible. Whether that be speaking to each other in our mother language, eating traditional foods, attending a South Sudanese church, and consuming entertainment directly related to our culture.

Duckie Thot, a South Sudanese-Australian model, speaking about maintaining her cultural identity while living in Australia

Source 4 Duckie Thot in Florida, USA in 2022

KEY SKILL
Questioning & researching

Exploring public holidays in Australia

National public holidays that are celebrated in Australia reflect the values and religious beliefs of most of the population at the time of Federation. Only two national holidays have been added since 1901: Australia Day and Anzac Day.

First Nations peoples and migrant communities make up a significant portion of Australia’s population. In recent years, there have been debates about whether Australia’s public holidays still reflect the values and beliefs of the population. Asking questions is a good way to find out where you stand on an important issue. To formulate questions about the issue of national public holidays in Australia, follow these steps:

Step 1 In small groups, identify the groups of people involved in this issue. (For example, who is this issue important to?)

Step 2 Describe the perspective of each group you have identified. (For example, how do you think each group feels about the issue?)

Step 3 Conduct research to find at least one significant day that each group might like to celebrate to maintain their identity in Australia.

Step 4 Suggest an updated calendar of public holidays. Present your ideas to your classmates and take note of any feedback on why these days might be accepted or rejected.

Practise the skill

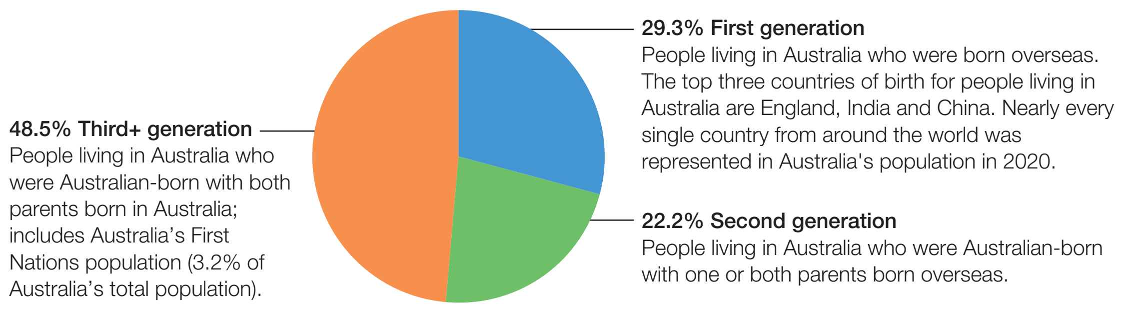
1 Using the sources in this activity, **summarise** what you think identity means in Australia.

2 Choose a holiday or cultural event that is significant to either First Nations peoples in Australia or first-generation Australians from either India or China. Research the holiday or event and **create** a flyer that describes it to other Australians. Include:
- the name of the event
- when it occurs
- what the event celebrates or commemorates
- common activities that are a part of the event.

3 Integrating cultural days into the public calendar is a way of celebrating Australia’s diverse community. **Propose** another way that First Nations or migrant Australians can celebrate their heritage and maintain their identity.

Extend your understanding

1 Research an Australian of your choice. Summarise this person's life so far, including:
- Where are they or their family from?
- What languages do they speak?
- What was their upbringing like?
- What issues or causes are important to them?



Source 5 Australia’s population from 2020 and 2021 data

22 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

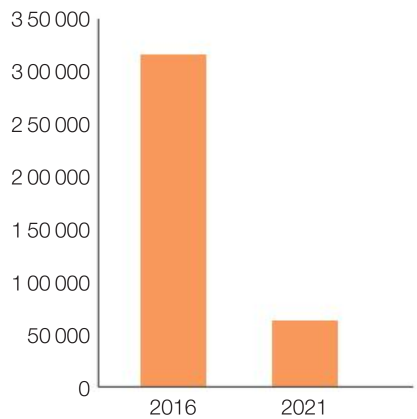
Read the information, then answer the following questions.

The Australian Census

The Census, conducted every five years, is an official survey that each household in Australia answers. The questions on the Census range from ethnicity to education levels to income. By asking every person in Australia questions about their ancestry, country of birth, language and religion, the Census can provide information about Australia's social and cultural make up. Answers to all these questions help to form a snapshot of Australia's population.

COVID-19 and the 2021 Census

Census data is considered to be some of the most accurate evidence of significant changes and events in history. The data collected on 10 August 2021 for the 2021 Australian Census provides some insight into what it was like to live in Australia during the global COVID-19 pandemic. COVID-19 restrictions were in place across the nation on Census night.



Source 6 Number of overseas visitors counted in the Census

Source 7 Population and location on Census night (10 August 2021)

Count of persons, 2021 Census (excludes overseas visitors)		Location on Census night, 2021	Count of persons	% of population
Australia	25 422 788	At home	24 437 979	96.13
By state and territory		**Visiting a home in a different statistical area**		
New South Wales	8 072 163	New South Wales	249 715	3.09
Victoria	6 503 491	Victoria	199 361	3.07
Queensland	5 156 138	Queensland	217 085	4.21
South Australia	1 781 516	South Australia	72 272	4.06
Western Australia	2 660 026	Western Australia	146 692	5.51
Tasmania	557 571	Tasmania	27 080	4.86
Northern Territory	232 605	Northern Territory	16 187	6.96
Australian Capital Territory	454 499	Australian Capital Territory	15 849	3.49

Note there are small random adjustments made to all cell values to protect the confidentiality of data. These adjustments may cause the sum of rows or columns to differ by small amounts from table totals

Source: ABS

Source 8 Location of population on Census night, 2021 and 2016

Count of persons, 2021 Census (excludes overseas visitors)		Count of persons, 2016 Census (excludes overseas visitors)	
Australia	25 422 788	Australia	23 401 892
At home on Census Night, 2021	24 437 979	At home on Census Night, 2016	21 974 376
Percentage of population at home	96.13%	Percentage of population at home	93.90%

Source: ABS

1 **Define** the term ‘census’. (1 mark)

2 **Explain** why regularly conducting a census is important for understanding Australia's social and cultural make up. (3 marks)

3 **State** the percentage of households that completed the 2021 Australian Census online. (1 mark)

4 **Explain** how the Census data demonstrates that Australia’s international borders were closed during the Census period. Support your response using specific statistics from the data provided. (5 marks)

5 Describe which parts of the country were most impacted by lockdown restrictions at the time the Census was conducted. **Justify** your response using the data provided. (10 marks)

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe how Australia's national identity has changed over time.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 22.1, page 490.
Explain how migrants can become Australian citizens.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 22.2, page 492.
Describe the many different communities that Australians may belong to.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 22.3, page 496.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 22

Key skill worksheet
Communicating: Chapter 22

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on Citizenship and national identity in Australia.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 22

CHAPTER 23

The law in Australia

An important part of any society is its legal system. The legal system interprets and applies the rules or laws that each member of society must follow. This is important when living in a community, as it creates boundaries for what is and is not acceptable. Any group of people – including families, schools and entire nations – needs a system of rules to help that community live in harmony.

In Australia, our laws are made and enforced by a range of different bodies or authorities, including the courts, tribunals, parliaments and police. Collectively, these bodies or authorities are referred to as the legal system.

Source 1 The High Court of Australia is the highest court in the Australian court hierarchy.

23A
What are the key ideas guiding Australia's legal system?

23B
How are laws made and applied in Australia?

23.1 Principles of Australia's legal system

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» describe the principles that guide Australia's legal system.

Several key ideas, or principles, guide Australia's legal system to ensure that justice is served. They focus on our responsibility as individuals to obey the law, as well as our right to fair treatment within the legal system.

The rule of law

rule of law
the idea that everyone is equal before the law, regardless of their power or status in society

The legal system enforces the laws that are designed to protect our way of life by defining our rights and responsibilities. Everyone must follow these laws. This is known as the **rule of law**. For example, even though he was deputy prime minister at the time, Barnaby Joyce was fined $200 for breaching New South Wales COVID-19 health orders by not wearing a face mask while at a service station in Armidale (NSW) in 2021.

Source 1 The right to a fair trial is one of the principles of Australia's legal system. Trials take place in courtrooms around Australia every day.

The right to a fair trial

crime
an act that breaks an existing law, is harmful to an individual or to society as a whole, and is punishable by law

jury
a group of people who are required to decide on a 'guilty' or 'not guilty' verdict for a case

Australia's system of trial is an adversarial system. This means that the trial is a truth-seeking contest between two opposing parties: the prosecution and the defence. A number of characteristics help to ensure that a fair trial takes place:

- A person's race, sex, characteristics or any other factors not related to the **crime** should not affect the outcome of the trial.
- Each party is given an equal chance to present their argument.
- A person's guilt or innocence is determined by an independent and impartial third party – a judge (sometimes with a **jury**) or a magistrate.
- Trials are public. You can visit any court and observe what is happening, except under special circumstances. Allowing the public to observe trials helps ensure transparency.

Source 2 Lawyers, such as barristers, are highly skilled professionals who use their knowledge of the law to advise and represent people.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on principles of Australia's legal system

The right to legal representation

Most members of the public have limited knowledge of the law and need help from professionals to understand legal processes. That is why every Australian who is accused of having committed a crime has the right to a legal professional to represent them in court. In addition, a person with hearing disabilities or who does not speak English also has the right to access interpreters or translation services.

Presumption of innocence and burden of proof

The idea that someone is innocent until proven guilty is an important part of any legal system. It means that a person who is accused of a crime (such as murder or assault) is not required to prove their innocence. Instead, the prosecutor must prove that the person is guilty of the crime **beyond reasonable doubt**. This means that the **burden of proof** is on the prosecutor, as they are the one required to prove or disprove the facts in court. In **civil law** cases (such as disputes between people: see page 516), it is up to the person making the complaint to prove that they are right.

The presumption of innocence is considered a human right around the world, and is used as a guiding principle in most democracies. Behind this principle is the idea that it is better to let someone guilty walk free than to imprison someone who is innocent.

beyond reasonable doubt
the standard of proof in a criminal trial; the judge or jury must be satisfied that there is no 'reasonable doubt' before finding the accused guilty

burden of proof
the responsibility for proving the case

civil law
an area of law that defines the rights and responsibilities of individuals, groups and organisations, and regulates private disputes

23.1 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'burden of proof'.
2 **Identify** three characteristics of a fair trial.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why someone might need legal representation, even if they are allowed to represent themselves in court.
4 **Summarise** why the rule of law is important in a democratic system.
5 **Explain** why the burden of proof is on the prosecution and not the defence.

23.2 Characteristics of laws

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» summarise the characteristics of laws.

Laws in Australia help to ensure the safety of citizens and protect our basic rights. Laws are formal legal rules that are designed to govern the way people act so we can all live together in one united society. There are legal consequences for not following laws (e.g. paying a fine, going to jail).

The laws that the legal system enforces must be effective for society to function properly. There are five characteristics that laws should have in order to be effective:

- reflect society's values
- be enforceable
- be known
- be clear and understood
- be stable.

Source 3 The characteristics of laws

THE CHARACTERISTICS OF LAWS ARE THAT THEY MUST:				
reflect society's values	be enforceable	be known	be clear and understood	be stable

Laws must reflect society's values

For a law to be effective, it must reflect society's current values. If a law is in line with society's current values, then members of society are more inclined to follow that law than disregard it. This means that laws need to change when society's values change.

For example, in 2018, changes were made to Australia's marriage laws to allow people of the same sex to lawfully marry each other. This followed a public vote on whether the laws should change to allow same-sex marriage. The public voted in favour of the change. Society's views and values about same-sex couples have changed over time, and the law has also changed to recognise this.

I used to think, now I think

Reflect on your learning about the characteristics of laws and complete the following sentences.

- I used to think …
- Now I think …

What has changed in your understanding?

Laws must be enforceable

An effective law must be enforceable. That is, if people break the law, it must be possible to catch and punish them, or sue them. If this is not possible, people may be less inclined to follow the law.

Laws must be known

For a law to be effective, the public must know about it. If people do not know about a law, they cannot follow it. It is the responsibility of individuals to find out what the law is on a matter that affects them. However, law-makers also need to keep the public informed of any new laws that are passed by parliament. Major changes in the law, or new laws, are usually reported in the media, and many laws are debated in the media and in society before they are introduced.

Laws must be clear and understood

It is important for a law to be written in a way that people can understand it, and so that the intent of the law is clear. If a law is ambiguous, unclear, or written in language that people don't understand, it is possible people won't follow it.

Source 4 In Australia, road laws are generally known because of visible signage on roads.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on characteristics of laws

Laws must be stable

For a law to be effective, it must be stable. If a law is constantly changing, no one would be certain what the law is. For example, there have been very few changes to the law relating to murder in Australia. Murder has always been a crime, and so there is certainty that murdering another person is against the law.

23.2 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** five characteristics of laws.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** why a society (such as Australia) has laws.

3 In your own words, **summarise** any two characteristics of laws.

Analyse

4 **Reflect on** all the laws that you are aware of. Which of these laws do you think reflects society's current values? Explain your answer.

Apply

5 In small groups, **discuss** whether you think that the ways citizens understand laws are affected by different cultural backgrounds or perspectives.

23A SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!

Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Terra Nullius to Native Title

Australia inherited its system of government from the British, who colonised Australia in 1788. When the British set up the first colonies, they imposed the British legal system. The British failed to acknowledge the existing laws of Aboriginal peoples who had been on the land (or 'on Country') for thousands of years.

The British Government imposed the legal principle of *Terra Nullius*, meaning that Australia was officially considered to be an 'empty land' before British settlement. This false legal principle remained part of Australian law until 1992.

In 1992, the High Court made a significant ruling in a case called the *Mabo* decision. The ruling recognised First Nations peoples as the traditional owners of the land. The High Court decision said that under Australian law:

- First Nations peoples have rights to land; and
- these rights had existed before colonisation and still exist.

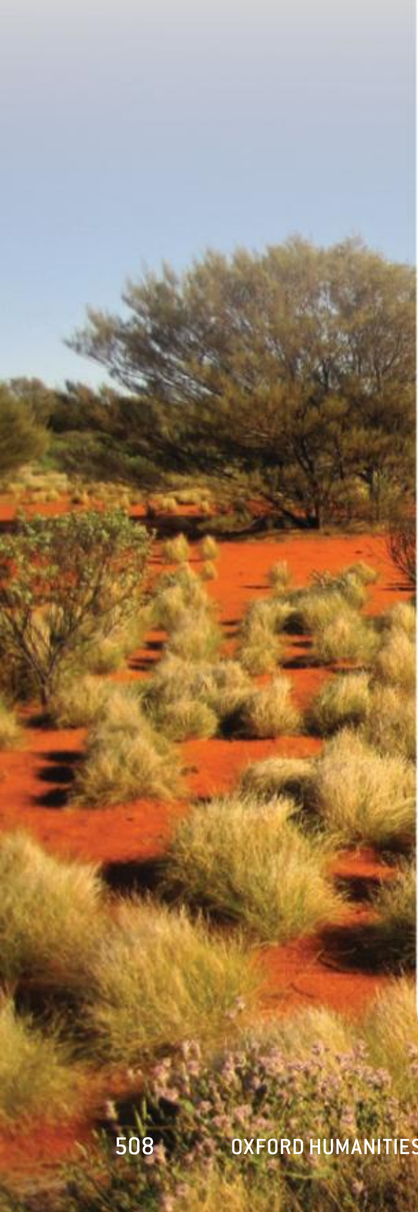
This right is called native title. Native title is the recognition of First Nations people's traditional rights in land and waters, as held under traditional law and custom, by Australian law. The *Native Title Act 1993* is an example of Native Title law.

While replacing the legal principle of *Terra Nullius* with Native Title law could not address the impact of colonisation on First Nations peoples, there was significant backlash against the *Mabo* decision and the *Native Title Act 1993*. Many non-Indigenous people believed that they would lose their homes or property, or that First Nations peoples might be granted ownership of large amounts of valuable land. There are still a lot of misconceptions surrounding the *Native Title Act* and debate about how much it actually achieved for First Nations people.

As of April 2022, 13.4 per cent of Australia's land is covered by Native Title. More information on the *Native Title Act 1993* is included in Source 5.

Source 5 The *Native Title Act 1993* is an example of Native Title law.

Name of Act	*Native Title Act 1993*
When was it passed?	In December 1993, the federal government passed the *Native Title Act* to place the *Mabo* decision in a piece of formal legislation.
What rights are included?	The Act gives the right to: • use the land for traditional purposes (such as ceremonies or camping) • hunt and gather food on the land • look after sacred sites on the land.
What is not included?	The Act does not give the right to: • exclude people from the land • stop projects (for example, mining projects) from occurring on the land • build permanent houses on the land.
Who owns the land claimed under the *Native Title Act 1993?*	Native title holders do not own land claimed under native title. Native title is most often non-exclusive and exists alongside non-Indigenous property rights such as pastoral leases.
What land can be claimed under the *Native Title Act 1993*?	Crown lands that are *not* lawfully being used or occupied (for example, as private land such as homes, for public purposes such as town services, or for pastoral purposes).



KEY SKILL
Analysis, evaluation & interpretation

Evaluating opportunities and limitations of laws

When evaluating the opportunities and limitations of laws, it is important to understand what the law does and does not include. Opportunities are the factors or circumstances that make something possible, while limitations act as restrictions. The title of the law will often provide the context or 'big picture', but the finer details are what allow us to understand the impact that it will have on the real world.

Step 1 Working in small groups, choose an issue you have seen in the media that people are trying to address by making or changing the law. Identify possible reasons why people who advocate (support) or create certain laws would want these laws in place. (For example, what were they hoping to get? What were they hoping to prevent?)

Step 2 Examine laws relating to this issue that are currently in place and identify exactly what each law includes and does not include. (For example, does the law allow or prevent an action? Does it apply only in certain situations?)

Step 3 Identify any opportunities or limitations that are present in the law. (For example, what do you think is missing or should be changed? Should the law allow for greater freedoms, or should it restrict these further?)

Step 4 Consider if the law might be symbolically important, even if there are limitations. (For example, how does the law represent change or progress? Is this law important to a specific group?)

Practise the skill

1 List some possible reasons why First Nations peoples might want Native Title laws granted.

2 Did the Mabo decision and the *Native Title Act* achieve what people hoped it would? **Explain** your answer.

3 What limitations can you identify in the *Native Title Act*? **Explain** your answer.

4 In small groups, rewrite the *Native Title Act* to address its limitations. You can add new points or change the existing ones; it's up to you!

5 In a few sentences, **reflect on** why the Mabo decision and the *Native Title Act* could be considered symbolically important.

6 Follow the weblinks to view the map of Native Title Claims and the AIATSIS map of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Australia. **Compare** the two maps and explain why the *Native Title Act* does not benefit all First Nations people.

Extend your understanding

1 Follow the weblink to read the article about the Juukan Gorge cave. **Explain** how this case is an example of the limitations of the *Native Title Act*.

2 Follow the weblink to read the article about the Martu people living on Native Title land around the Karlamilyi National Park.

a **Identify** three traditional practices used by the Martu people on their traditional land.

b **Explain** how the *Native Title Act* is important to the preservation of culture and identity for many First Nations peoples.

Weblink Map of Native Title claims

Weblink AIATSIS map of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Australia

Weblink Juukan Gorge cave

Weblink Martu Country

23.3 Common law

Australia's laws are made in two ways. **Statute law** is made and passed by parliaments (see page 512). **Common law** is created by judges and is based on the precedents they set when deciding a case.

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how common law is made in Australia.

statute law
law that is made by parliament; also called statute, legislation, Act of Parliament or statutory law

common law
law that is created by the courts when a judge makes a ruling about a case; also referred to as a precedent, because it sets a standard for all future judges to refer to when deciding a case

precedent
a previous case or example that is used as a guide for decision making when similar circumstances arise

codification
when parliament creates a statute based on a precedent set by a judge

Australian Constitution
a written set of rules and principles that guide the way Australia is governed

Making common law

The role of a judge is to interpret statutes and apply them to individual cases. However, statutes cannot anticipate every single issue that may arise, so sometimes the law is not clear about how a particular case should be dealt with. In these circumstances, judges have the power to use their legal expertise to apply a statute in a way they think best upholds the intention of the law and resolves the issue fairly. This decision may set a **precedent**, which means that similar cases in the future should be dealt with in the same way. Parliament can also decide that a precedent set by a judge is so important that it needs to be turned into a statute. This process is known as **codification**.

Common law can be created by judges in all courts. However, a judge only has to follow a precedent if it was set by a judge in a superior court in Australia's court hierarchy (see Source 1). This means that all common law created by the High Court – the highest court in the land – is binding on every court in Australia.

Which is the most powerful type of law?

When you think about the law, you probably think about the kind that is made or enforced by courts; that is, common law. However, in the hierarchy of laws in Australia, common law is actually at the bottom (see Source 4 on page 512).

In this country, the **Australian Constitution** is the most powerful piece of law, as it can only be changed by the agreement of the citizens of Australia. The second most powerful type of law is statute law, as it can only be created or changed after a robust process through both houses of parliament (see Source 5 on page 513), after which it must be given royal assent by the governor-general. Common law is the least powerful type of law in Australia, because it can be easily changed by parliament. If parliament disagrees with a new precedent set by a judge, a statute can be passed that overrides the common law and is to apply in all future cases.

23.3 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'precedent'.

2 **State** which court has the highest level of authority in Australia.

Comprehend

3 **Explain** why the need for common law might arise.

4 **Summarise** why common law is less powerful than statute law and constitutional law.

Apply

5 **Propose** (put forward) one reason why higher courts hear appeals from courts lower in the court hierarchy.

6 Look at Source 1. **Determine** (decide) which court is best suited to hear the following cases.

a a murder case

b a drink-driving case

c a taxation case

d divorce proceedings.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on common law

High Court of Australia: The highest court in the land

- Comprises the Chief Justice and six other judges
- Cases may be heard by three, five or all seven judges (full bench)
- Rulings are by majority decision; they are binding
- Has jurisdiction to hear all cases involving the federal government
- Hears appeals from supreme and federal courts
- Only court that can interpret the Constitution

Commonwealth courts

Federal Court of Australia

- Hears cases under federal laws (e.g. industrial relations, bankruptcy, taxation)
- Holds court sessions in all capital cities and some towns
- Has a Chief Justice (and sometimes other judges)
- Hears appeals from lower Commonwealth courts

Federal Circuit and Family Court of Australia

- Formed in 2021 after a reform that brought together the Federal Circuit Court and the Family Court
- Hears cases relating to family law (e.g. divorce, parenting arrangements, property settlement), discrimination, migration, privacy and copyright
- Holds hearings in all capital cities in metropolitan and regional (rural) areas

The Federal Circuit Court and the Family Court were united into a single court in 2021.

State and territory courts

Supreme Courts

- Hear most serious criminal cases (e.g. murder) and most complex civil cases
- Highest court in each state and territory
- Comprise Trial Divisions and Courts of Appeal
- Hear appeals from lower state and territory courts

Intermediate courts: District and County Courts

- Hear more serious criminal cases and more complex civil cases
- Judge hears and decides civil cases
- Judge and jury hear criminal cases: jury decides guilt; judge decides sentence
- Hear appeals from Magistrates and Local Courts

Lower courts: Magistrates and Local Courts

- Hear minor civil, family law and criminal cases (e.g. small property claims, drink driving, domestic violence)
- No jury
- Magistrate hears and decides cases

Source 1 Australia's court hierarchy – Australia has many different courts, and each has a different role, responsibilities and level of authority.

23.4 Statute law

Learning intention

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain how statute law is made in Australia.

As you have learnt, statute law is created by parliaments. A state parliament can only pass laws relating to issues affecting its own state. On the other hand, the **federal** parliament can pass laws that apply to the entire nation. For example, the *Coronavirus Economic Response Package (Jobkeeper Payments) Amendment Act 2020* (Cth) is a federal statute that was passed to provide financial support to Australian workers and businesses affected by the COVID-19 pandemic.

federal
relating to the central government of the Commonwealth of Australia

bill
a proposed law that has not been passed by both houses of parliament

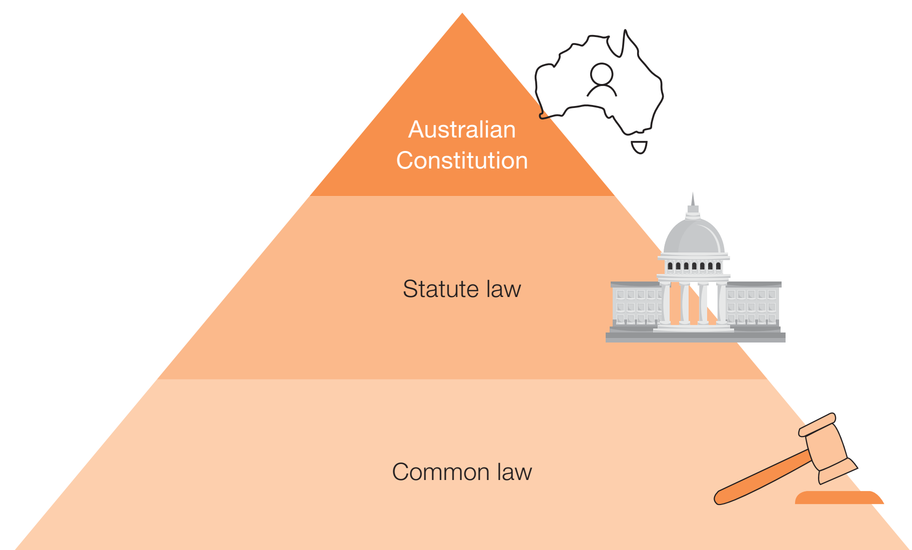
Making statute law

Both federal and state parliaments follow similar steps to make statute law. Source 5 shows the process of how a **bill** becomes a law in federal parliament, using the 2017 amendment to the *Marriage Act 1961* (Cth) as an example. Note that this bill was first introduced in the Senate. While most bills begin in the House of Representatives, they can be introduced in either house of parliament. They then follow the same procedure in each house before they become law. (See page 466 for an explanation of the houses of parliament.)

Source 2 The Australian House of Representatives

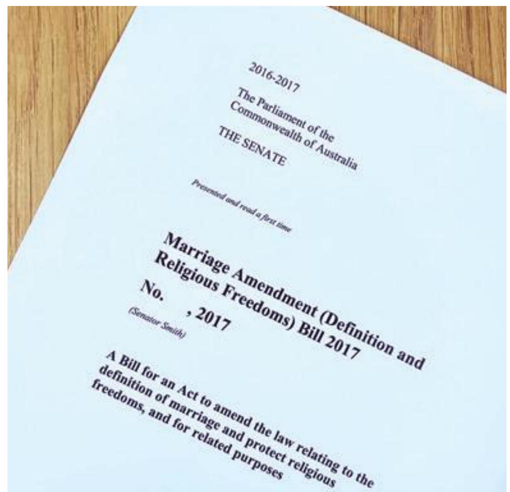
Source 3 The Australian Senate

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on statute law



Source 4 The hierarchy of laws in Australia

Source 5 The process of how a bill becomes a law through federal parliament, using the 2017 amendment to the *Marriage Act 1961* (Cth) as an example

Process	Example	
1 Preparation of a bill • A bill is proposed by a member of parliament (MP). • Bills are introduced to change an existing law or to establish a new law. • A bill only becomes a law if and when it has been approved in the exact same form by both houses of parliament and by the governor-general (the monarch's representative).	In 2017, Australians had the opportunity to have their say (in a national postal survey) on whether the definition of 'marriage' should be changed in the *Marriage Act 1961* (Cth). In the survey, Australians were asked to respond 'Yes' or 'No' to the question: 'Should the law be changed to allow same-sex couples to marry?'. Nearly 80% of Australians voted, and, of these, 61.6% voted 'Yes' to changing the law. After this survey, a bill to legalise same-sex marriage was introduced to federal parliament.	 A bill to legalise same-sex marriage in Australia was introduced after many years of campaigning and debate about this issue.
2 First reading • The MP who is introducing the Bill notifies parliament that a bill will be discussed. • The MP provides a copy of the Bill to every other MP. • At this stage, only the title of the Bill is read in parliament, giving the other members a chance to read the Bill in their own time.	On 15 November 2017, Senator Dean Smith introduced a bill to change the definition of marriage from 'the union of a man and a woman' to 'the union of two people'.	 The Marriage Amendment (Definition and Religious Freedoms) Bill 2017 (Cth)
3 Second reading debate • The MP who is introducing the Bill gives a 'second reading speech', explaining why the Bill is being introduced. • Other MPs are allowed to ask questions, suggest changes to the Bill, and debate whether the Bill is the right way to tackle the issue that it aims to address. • Because laws are such an important part of how our society functions, the second reading debate can often get quite heated, with MPs passionately arguing their different opinions on the issue. • After the debate, the MPs vote on the Bill and any changes to it. • If the Bill is passed, it progresses to a third reading.	On 16 November 2017, Senator Smith gave his second reading speech, where he stated: [T]his Bill gives effect to the view that all Australians should have equal access to Australia's marriage laws and that extending marriage to same-sex couples will strengthen and not diminish marriage in Australia.	 Senator Dean Smith introduces the Marriage Amendment (Definition and Religious Freedoms) Bill 2017 (Cth) to the Senate.

continued on next page

Process	Example
4 Third reading • After having more time to consider the details of the Bill and any changes resulting from the second reading, the house votes on the Bill. • If the majority of MPs vote to pass the Bill, it moves to the other house of parliament for consideration.	On 29 November 2017, a majority of the Senate passed the Marriage Amendment (Definition and Religious Freedoms) Bill 2017 (Cth). There were 43 'Yes' votes and 12 'No' votes.  Celebrations after the Marriage Amendment Bill 2017 (Cth) was passed in the Senate
5 Other house • The Bill goes through the three reading stages again in the other house (usually the Senate). • The Bill is passed to and from the upper and lower houses until both houses agree to any changes in the Bill, or until the Senate rejects the Bill completely.	On 4 December 2017, the Marriage Amendment Bill 2017 (Cth) was introduced into the House of Representatives. Debate on the Bill occurred across a number of days, and on 7 December 2017, the Bill was passed (with no amendments from the original bill received from the Senate). Only four MPs voted against the Bill.  Celebrations after the Marriage Amendment Bill 2017 (Cth) was passed in the House of Representatives
6 The governor-general • If the Bill is passed by both houses, the governor-general reviews and approves the law by giving the Bill royal assent. • Giving royal assent is usually just a formality, as no governor-general has ever refused to give assent to a law.	The governor-general assented to the Marriage Amendment Bill 2017 (Cth) on 8 December 2017.  Then Governor-General Sir Peter Cosgrove (right) signs the Marriage Amendment Bill 2017 (Cth), with then Prime Minister Malcolm Turnbull (left) and Attorney-General George Brandis (centre) in attendance at Government House, Canberra.

royal assent
approval given by the governor-general (as the King's representative) for a bill to become official law

23.4 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 **State** the two houses of the Australian parliament.

2 When does a bill become a law?

Comprehend

3 **Explain** what you think is the purpose of the second reading speech given by the MP who introduces a bill.

4 Think about why it is important that both houses of parliament debate a bill. What do you think would happen if this debate did not occur?

Apply

5 **Create** a flow chart that shows the process of a bill becoming a law. Keep your explanation of each stage of the process to 25 words or less, and use pictures to aid your explanation.

23.5 Different types of law

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

» explain the differences between criminal and civil law

» understand the customary laws of First Nations peoples.

In Australia, we can place law into different categories:

- *Civil law* generally deals with disputes between people or organisations, as well as acts that cause loss to others.
- *Criminal law* generally deals with acts that intentionally cause harm to others.
- *Customary law* refers to the rules, customs and traditions of First Nations peoples and, while it does not apply to all Australians, can be of great significance to these peoples.

Criminal law

Crimes can be divided into serious offences (such as murder) and less serious offences (such as damaging property or using public transport without buying a ticket):

- Serious offences are known as **indictable offences**. Indictable offences generally go to trial and are heard by a judge and jury.
- Less serious offences are known as summary, or **simple offences**. Simple offences are generally dealt with 'summarily' (that is, quickly) by the police or a magistrate.

The sanctions (penalties) for simple offences are less severe than those for indictable offences.

indictable offences
serious criminal offences that are usually heard by a judge and jury

simple offences
less serious criminal offences that are usually heard by a magistrate

Punishing crime

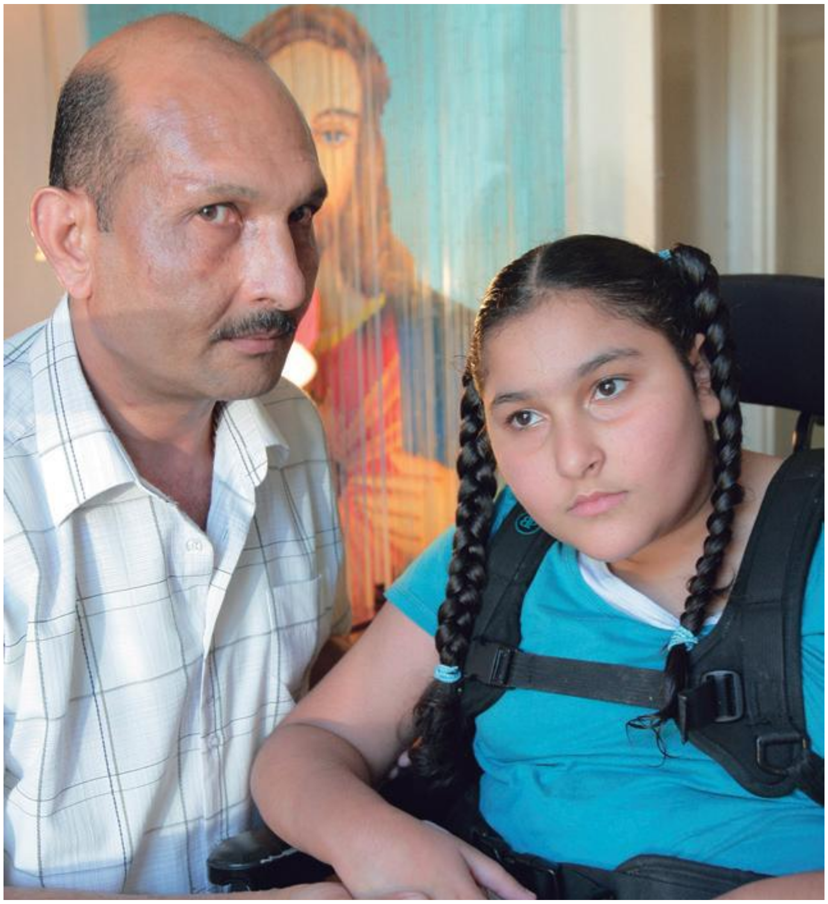
If an accused person is found guilty of committing a crime, they will be punished by a court. This is done for a number of reasons, including:

- to prevent the person from committing the crime again
- to deter other people from committing the same crime
- to show society that the crime is unacceptable and will not be tolerated.

Punishments vary and are based on the crime, the offender and other factors.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on different types of law

Source 6 In Australia, some cases can be heard by a judge and a jury. At the end of a case, the jury must work together to decide whether or not the accused is guilty or not guilty.



Source 7 Monika Samaan was awarded $8 million compensation after contracting severe salmonella (a type of food poisoning) from a KFC Twister. The salmonella poisoning left her brain-damaged and unable to speak.

Civil law

Civil law protects individuals. It typically deals with disputes between individuals, corporations and government bodies over actions (or lack of action) that result in a person experiencing loss or harm. Civil law generally aims to right wrongs by compensating (paying) for the losses suffered.

If an individual has their rights infringed and suffers or is harmed as a result, that individual can sue the party who breached their rights and caused the loss for **damages**.

Civil law means we have the right to expect others to be careful in matters that affect us. If others are not careful and we are harmed, civil law gives us ways to right this wrong. For example, if we are eating at a restaurant, we have the right to expect that the people preparing and serving our food are following safe food-handling procedures, so that we do not become sick when we eat that food. If we do become sick from eating food that has been carelessly prepared, we can take civil action against those responsible. The point of taking people to court in this way is to come to a resolution in which the person who has been wronged is compensated for their suffering.

Civil disputes are judged on the **balance of probabilities**. This means that the judge will support a claim – that is, find in favour of the plaintiff (the party making the legal claim) – if it is more likely than not that the defendant (the party being sued) caused the plaintiff harm.

damages
an amount of money that a court orders one party to pay to compensate the wronged party for the loss they have suffered

balance of probabilities
the standard of proof in civil disputes; for a plaintiff to be successful, they must establish that it is more probable (i.e. likely) than not that their version of the facts is correct

customary law
rules, customs and traditions upheld by First Nations peoples

First Nations peoples' customary law

The **customary law** of First Nations peoples has been developed over many generations and is traditionally passed down by word-of-mouth. There is some variation in the laws between different nations and language groups.

One customary law that is very different to Australian law is the idea of land ownership. The concept of owning land was first introduced by Europeans when they colonised Australia and claimed ownership of the land. First Nations peoples consider the land to be a sacred thing to look after, not own.

The Dreaming

The **Dreaming** is a belief system, or world view. Dreaming stories lay down the rules for people to live by, including the social and moral order that allows people to live together peacefully.

Dreaming
a belief system at the centre of some Aboriginal cultures, giving meaning to everything – including creation, spirituality, family, the lands, the waters and the law

Disputes and Elders

Traditionally, Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander nations and communities did not answer to a centralised government. Instead, everyone took part in the running of their community and the community's **Elders** played a very important role in maintaining order. Elders led by example, and passed down the stories and laws of the Dreaming to the younger generations.

If there was a problem or dispute, people could take their issue to the Elders for advice or resolution. Sometimes, Elders would punish a person who had broken the law. The type of punishment a person received depended on their crime (as it still does today). The threat of punishment also aimed to deter people from committing a crime.

Elders
key people and keepers of cultural and spiritual knowledge within Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander (First Nations) communities

CASE STUDY

Customary law today

While customary law is not officially recognised as Australian law, there has been some progress towards recognising it alongside Australia's current legal system.

An example of this was seen in the 1998 Northern Territory case of Galarrwuy Yunupingu and Michael McRostie.

McRostie was taking photos of Galarrwuy Yunupingu's family without a permit and contrary to Yolngu law. Yunupingu, a senior Elder of the Gumatj clan who was responsible for upholding Yolngu law, took the camera off McRostie to destroy the film, and in doing so knocked the photographer, who was still attached to his camera by a strap.

When McRostie took Yunupingu to court for assault and criminal damage, a judge found that Yunupingu was well within his rights to take the camera off McRostie in order to fulfil his responsibilities as Elder and protector of Yolngu land and law.

The case against Yunupingu was dismissed in favour of customary law over criminal law.

Weblink
The Defence of Galarrwuy Yunupingu

23.5 Check your learning

Comprehend

1 **Summarise** the role Elders play in many First Nations communities.

2 **Explain** what we mean when we refer to an individual suing for 'damages'.

Analyse

3 **Compare** simple offences and indictable offences. Remember, when you compare two things you must talk about how they are similar and how they are different.

4 **Distinguish** between the current Australian Government's idea of land ownership and the traditional ideas of land ownership held by First Nations peoples. Remember, when you distinguish between two things you must talk about how they are different.

Apply

5 **Create** a chart or table that shows the differences and similarities between criminal law, civil law, and First Nations peoples' customary law.

23.6 Parliaments and courts

Learning intentions

By the end of this topic, you will be able to:

- describe the relationship between parliament and the courts
- explain the purpose of delegated legislation.

In Australia, there is a relationship between parliament and the courts. While the main role of parliament is to make laws, the main role of courts is to resolve disputes. As a result, parliaments and the courts need to work together to ensure laws work and are enforceable (see topic 23.2). There are four main features of the relationship between parliament and the courts:

- courts' interpretations of statute law
- codification of common law
- changing common law
- the ability of courts to influence parliament.

Courts' interpretations of statute law

Statute law is law that is made and passed by parliament. Courts must apply statute law to the cases that are before them. To do this, sometimes it is necessary for a court to interpret the meaning of the words in statute law.

A court may also need to interpret the meaning of the words in **delegated legislation**.

delegated legislation rules and regulations made by authorities (such as local councils) who are given the power to do so through an Act of Parliament

Delegated legislation

Laws are made by parliaments. However, state and Commonwealth parliaments do not have the resources required to make all the laws necessary to maintain a peaceful and united society. The ability of state and Commonwealth parliaments to make laws can therefore be delegated (assigned) to certain other authorities. For example, local councils make local laws about pet ownership and rubbish removal.

Delegated legislation is the rules and regulations that have been made by authorities that have been given their law-making powers through an **Act of Parliament**. Parliament can overrule (disallow) delegated law that it does not agree with. Delegated legislation is not made directly through an Act of Parliament, but under the authority of an Act of Parliament. Delegated legislation is also known as secondary legislation.

Act of Parliament a law made by parliament (state and territory parliaments, or the Commonwealth Parliament of Australia)

Source 8 Local councils make local laws about matters such as pet ownership. Laws made by authorities such as local councils are known as delegated legislation.

Codification of common law

Parliament can make laws that confirm a precedent set in a court. This occurs by passing an Act of Parliament that reinforces the principles that were established by the court. This is known as codification of common law, because the common law is now codified – collected and put together into statute law.

Changing common law

Parliament can change or override common law. It does this by passing a law which specifically abolishes (ends) the common law principle. When a law made by courts is abolished by parliament (by an Act of Parliament), this is known as **abrogation**.

Parliament may decide to change or override common law for many reasons. For example, a court might interpret the words of a statute law in a way that does not reflect the intention of parliament.

Quiz me!
A quick quiz on parliaments and courts

abrogation
cancelling a court-made law by passing an Act of Parliament

The ability of courts to influence parliament

Courts can influence changes in the law made by parliament. This can be done through the comments judges make during court cases. For example, they may indicate in a **judgment** that they think a law should be changed by parliament.

judgment
the decision of the Court in a particular case

Source 9 Common law can be created by judges in all courts; Parliament can change common law. Judges can also influence changes in the law that is made by parliament.

23.6 Check your learning

Retrieve

1 In your own words, **define** 'abrogation'.

Comprehend

2 **Explain** the purpose of delegated legislation and how it is made.

3 **Describe** two ways that courts and parliament work together in law-making.

Apply

4 'The main role of the courts is to make laws.' Is this statement correct? **Justify** your answer.

23B SKILLS IN CONTEXT

Test me!
Once you've finished the topics in this section, test yourself with this quiz and find out which worksheet you should do.

Bullying

Bullying can be a significant problem in schools across Australia. Government research suggests that around one in four students are affected by bullying. Experiencing bullying can increase a person's risk of having poor mental health, even after leaving school.

Bullying involves repeatedly making someone feel less valuable. There are different types of bullying:

- *verbal* – using words to hurt another person's feelings, such as teasing or name-calling
- *social* – hurting someone's reputation or relationships, such as by spreading rumours about them or excluding them from group activities
- *physical* – hurting a person's body or property, such as by kicking, punching or pushing them, or breaking their belongings
- *cyberbullying* – using phones, computers or other electronic devices to hurt another person's feelings, reputation or relationships.

Bullying can happen anywhere at any time. Access to mobile phones and social media such as Instagram, Snapchat and TikTok can make the problem worse. Around one in five young people experience cyberbullying. This has left many Australians demanding tougher laws on bullying, and government funding to develop programs to fix the problem.

If you are experiencing or have witnessed bullying, notify your parents or a teacher at the school so that they can help stop the bullying from happening in the future. You can also call Kids Helpline on 1800 55 1800 or Headspace on 1800 650 890 for a chat about any problems that you might be having.

Source 10 Cyberbullying can include threatening, humiliating or abusing others online.

KEY SKILL
Civic participation & decision making

Drafting a bill

Earlier in this chapter, we looked at how a law is made from a proposed bill. Now we will look at how a bill is drafted before it is presented to parliament. A bill often requires many drafts before it is ready to be presented.

Follow these steps to draft your own bill.

Step 1 Identify the problem that you would you like to address; for example, bullying.

Step 2 Determine whether the Bill will change an existing law, or if it will be a completely new law.

Step 3 Write a short title that reflects what the Bill is about and why it is being proposed.

Step 4 Write a detailed list of rules that would help fix the problem.

Step 5 Write who would be responsible for enforcing those rules.

Step 6 Write what the penalties would be for not following the rules listed.

Step 7 Write a list of definitions explaining what any tricky words mean. This way, the Bill can be easily understood by everyone.

Practise the skill

1 In groups of three or four, apply the steps above to prepare a draft bill to help solve the issue of bullying (for step 2, assume there is no existing law related to bullying).

2 Present your draft bill to the class. Allow other members of the class to make suggestions as to how the Bill could be changed.

3 Make the suggested changes that the majority agree on, and take a class vote on whether the Bill should be passed or not.

Extend your understanding

1 **Investigate** another issue, such as climate change or the treatment of asylum seekers. What changes would you like to see on this issue? Use the information you have found to prepare a draft bill for a law to make these changes. Present the draft bill to your class, as you have done with your anti-bullying bill.

Source 11 Social bullying can include socially excluding other people, or spreading rumours or lies about them.

23 CHAPTER REVIEW

Review activity

Read the information and examine the sources, and answer the following questions.

The Code of Hammurabi

Laws have existed for thousands of years. As ancient tribes grew into complex societies, the need to determine the rights and responsibilities of people became greater. One of the oldest known groups of laws comes from Babylon, between 1792 and 1754 BCE, and is known as the Code of Hammurabi. Legend has it that the laws were given to King Hammurabi by Shamash, the god of justice.

There were as many as 300 individual laws in the Code of Hammurabi, and they covered a wide range of issues – including murder, assault, divorce, debt, adoption, trade and agricultural practices. Hammurabi used them to govern his fast-growing empire of citizens. Not only did the code stipulate the rules that all citizens must follow, but also it dictated what actions must be taken by the judges, accuser and accused.

Source 12 is a translation of one of the most famous laws from the code.

Source 12

> If a man destroys the eye of another man, they shall destroy his eye. If one breaks a man's bone, they shall break his bone.
>
> Translated extract from the Code of Hammurabi, *c.* 1792–54 BCE

Source 13 The Code of Hammurabi was carved into stones, which were then placed around the city of Babylon for the public to see.

1 Are the crimes described in Source 12 indictable offences or simple offences? (2 marks)

2 **Explain** what you think this law was trying to achieve. (3 marks)

3 **Explain** how this law might be applied to a situation where one person physically attacked another person. (3 marks)

4 **Explain** why wide-ranging laws develop in complex societies. What would happen if they didn't? (4 marks)

5 **Compare** this law with the following elements of Australia's justice system today:
- the trial system (4 marks)
- the punishment (4 marks).

(Total: 20 marks)

Chapter checklist

Now that you have completed this chapter, reflect on your ability to do the following:

	I can do this.	I cannot do this yet.
Describe the principles that guide Australia's legal system.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.1, page 504.
Summarise the characteristics of laws.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.2, page 506.
Explain how common law is made in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.3, page 510.
Explain how statute law is made in Australia.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.4, page 512.
Explain the differences between criminal and civil law. Understand the customary laws of First Nations peoples.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.5, page 515.
Describe the relationship between parliament and the courts. Explain the purpose of delegated legislation.	☐	☐ Go back to Topic 23.6, page 518.

Check your Student obook pro for these digital resources and more:

Student book questions
Chapter 23

Key skill worksheet
Communicating:
Chapter 23

Quizlet
Play a game of Quizlet on
The law in Australia.

Chapter review quiz
Chapter 23

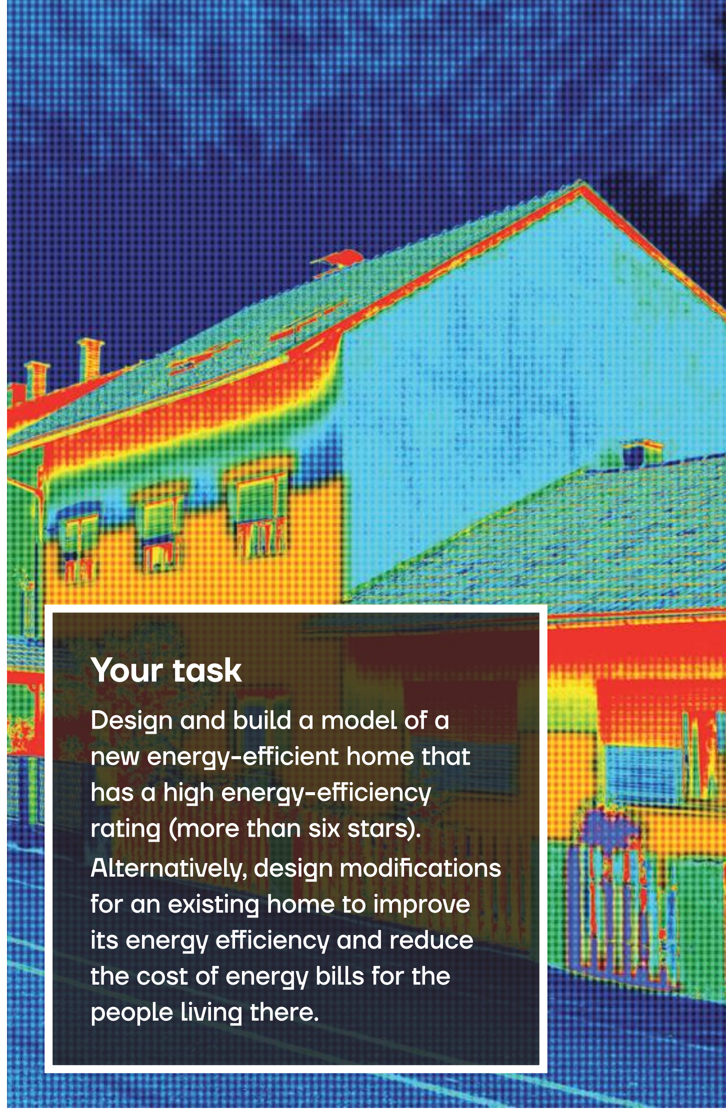
[STEAM project 1]

How can we build more energy-efficient homes so that we live more sustainably?

Have you ever considered how much energy it takes to heat or cool your home? A study by the Australian Government found that homes contribute 11 per cent of Australia's total carbon emissions. Reducing the amount of energy needed to heat or cool a home will not only save people money on their gas and electricity bills, it will make housing more sustainable.

NatHERS

The Nationwide House Energy Rating Scheme (NatHERS) is a rating system that is used across Australia to identify the energy efficiency of homes (where ten stars is the most energy efficient). Computer modelling software uses the local climate, the orientation of the home and materials used in construction to estimate the amount of energy needed to heat or cool the home. In most states and territories of Australia, new homes must reach a minimum of six stars to be approved for construction. There are many ways to improve the energy efficiency of your home. For example, if you insulate the walls, floors and roof, and use awnings (covers that extend over windows or doors), you can reduce the amount of thermal energy needed to cool the home in summer. Or in cooler climates, if you design the home so that living areas are on the northern side, you can maximise the sunlight that is available to heat the home in winter.



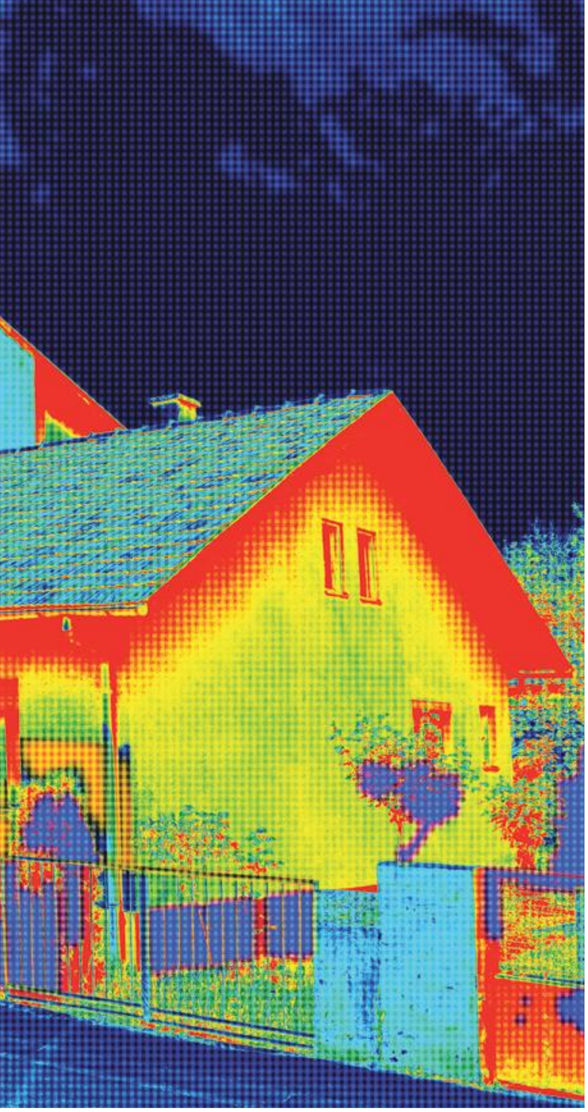
Your task

Design and build a model of a new energy-efficient home that has a high energy-efficiency rating (more than six stars). Alternatively, design modifications for an existing home to improve its energy efficiency and reduce the cost of energy bills for the people living there.

Figure 1 Infrared imaging shows warmer temperatures as red and cooler temperatures as blue. A building with insulation will lose less thermal energy to the outside environment in winter and will gain less thermal energy from the outside environment in summer.

Retrofitting homes

Not everyone wants to or can afford to build a new home. People who rent sometimes have little choice when it comes to the energy efficiency of their home, but this doesn't mean that they need to have large gas and electricity bills. There are things that they can do to reduce the movement of thermal energy in summer or winter. Covering the floor with rugs, preventing heat from moving in or out of windows, and controlling windows to manage airflow are all ways to make a home more energy-efficient and liveable.



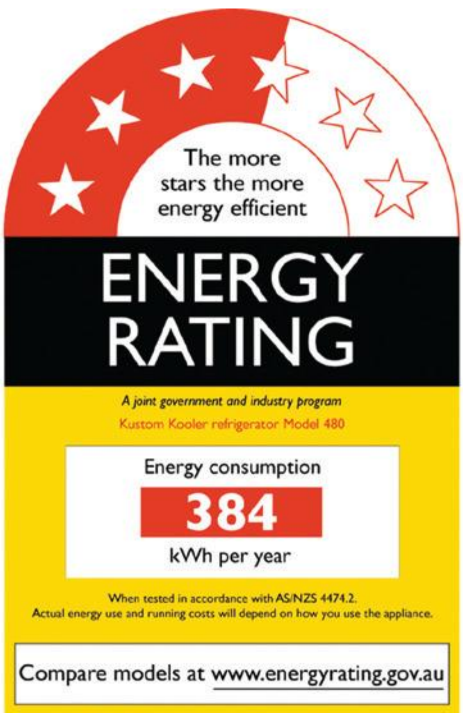


Figure 2 Energy rating schemes help consumers to understand the energy efficiency of products or appliances. The more stars, the more energy efficient the product or appliance is.

HUMANITIES

In Geography this year, you will learn about the importance of sustainable housing in Australia's urban centres and major cities. You will explore how the forecasted growth of Australia's cities could impact their liveability, and the environmental issues resulting from urbanisation.

In Economics and Business, you will study the housing market, the interaction between businesses and consumers in meeting consumer demands and when the government intervenes in markets.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to study seasonal weather patterns at the location of your energy-efficient home, to improve energy use.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 5 'Urban life' and Chapter 19 'Australian markets' of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences 8 Australian Curriculum*.

MATHS

In Maths this year, you will learn how to determine the area and volume of different shapes, using and converting between appropriate units. You will also learn skills for dealing with percentage changes in financial contexts. These skills will help you to quantify the costs and benefits of design features and predict the popularity of market incentives. You will perform calculations with and without digital technology.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to perform calculations for your model home, and then scale up to estimate the potential benefits of your design at a national level.

You will find help for applying these maths skills in sections 3B 'Percentage calculations', 3C 'Mark-ups and discounts', 8C 'Area of quadrilaterals' and 8D 'Area of a circle' of *Oxford Maths 8 Australian Curriculum*.

SCIENCE

In Science this year, you will learn about how energy can be transferred between objects and transformed (such as from the Sun's light energy to electrical energy). You will also examine earthquake-resistant materials used in construction.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to identify how each element of a home's design can affect its heating and cooling needs, and how construction materials can affect a home's stability.

You will also need to identify the elements that can be changed in a new home design, and compare these to the elements that can be changed in an established home.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 3 'Plate tectonics' and Chapter 4 'Energy' of *Oxford Science 8 Australian Curriculum*.

The design cycle

To successfully complete this task, you will need to complete each of the phases of the design cycle.

Discover

When designing solutions to a problem, you need to know who you are helping and what they need. The people you are helping, who will use your design, are called your end-users.

Consider the following questions to help you empathise with your end-users:

- Who am I designing for? How big is their family and home?
- What factors might affect the liveability of the home?
- What do they need? What do they not need?
- What does it feel like to face these limitations on liveability? What words would you use to describe how it would feel to face these limitations?

To answer these questions, you may need to investigate using different resources, or even conduct interviews or surveys.

Define

Before you start to design your home modifications, you need to define the parameters you are working towards.

Define your version of the problem

Rewrite the problem so that you describe the group you are helping, the problem they are experiencing and why it is important. Use the following phrase as a guide.

'How can we help (the group) to solve (the problem) so that (the reason)?'

Determine the criteria

1 Describe the orientation of the land where the home will be built or modified (include the location of sunrise and sunset, the angle of sun in the middle of summer and winter and any existing shadows).
2 Describe any existing energy-efficient features of the current home or design.
3 Describe how you will measure any improvement in energy-efficient features of the home.

Ideate

Once you know who you're designing for, and what the criteria are, it's time to get creative!

- Outline the criteria or requirements your design must fulfil (for example, improving heating or cooling of the home).
- Brainstorm at least one idea per person that fulfils the criteria.

Remember that there are no bad ideas at this stage. One silly thought could lead to a genius innovation!

Build

Draw each individual design.

Include in the individual designs:

a labels for each part of the design

b the materials you will use for the home's construction

c a description of how the modifications will improve the energy star rating of the home

d an estimation of the cost of applying the modifications.

Present your design to your group.

Build the prototype

Choose and build two or three model homes for your group design (scale: 2 cm = 1 m).

Use the following questions as a guideline for your prototype.

- What materials will you need to build your model home?
- What skills will you need to build your model home?
- How will you test the effectiveness of your model home? (What will you compare it to?)
- How will you identify each energy-efficient feature of your model home?
- How will you collect data that supports your claims about energy efficiency?

Test

Use the scientific method to design and test the energy efficiency of your model home. You will test more than one design so that you can compare them, so you will need to control your variables between tests.

What criteria will you use to determine the success of your model home?

Conduct your tests and record your results in an appropriate table.

Communicate

Present your home design as though you are trying to get your peers to invest in it.

In your presentation, you will need to:

- construct a labelled diagram of your model home in its orientation, including the location of sunrise and sunset, the angle of sun in the middle of summer and winter, and any existing shadows
- describe the key energy-efficient features of your model home
- explain how each energy-efficient feature affects the liveability of your model home
- explain the principles that support your design (the importance of energy efficiency and how the existing landscape affected the design of the home)
- estimate the cost of implementing your design
- explain and quantify the benefits on a national scale if all new homes were to include your design features.

Check your Student obook pro for the following digital resources to help you with this STEAM project:

Student booklet
This helpful booklet will guide you step-by-step through the project.

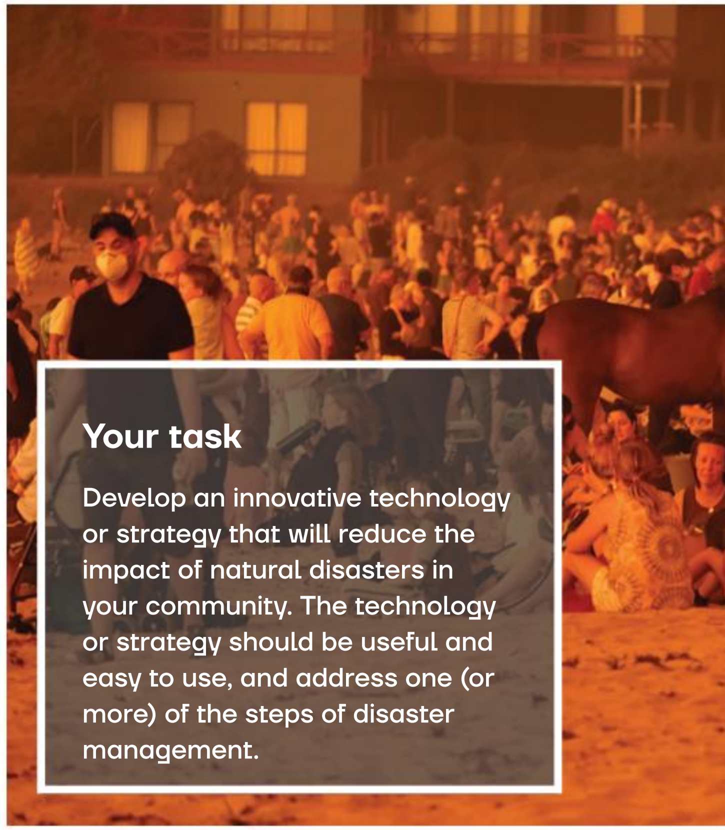
What is the design cycle?
This video will help you to better understand each phase of the design cycle.

How to manage a project
This 'how-to' video will help you to manage your time throughout the design cycle.

How to pitch your idea
This 'how-to' video will help you with the 'Communicate' phase of your project.

[STEAM project 2]

How can we use technology so that the impact of natural disasters is reduced?



Your task

Develop an innovative technology or strategy that will reduce the impact of natural disasters in your community. The technology or strategy should be useful and easy to use, and address one (or more) of the steps of disaster management.

Figure 1 Hundreds of people (and animals) huddled on Malua Bay beach in NSW for almost 24 hours, as bushfires tore through communities in the nearby Batemans Bay area.

Across the world, climate patterns are changing and weather events are becoming more extreme. In 2020, 20 per cent of Australia's forests were burnt, a record-breaking 30 named hurricanes developed over the Atlantic Ocean, and an extreme monsoon season in Asia caused flooding across a quarter of Bangladesh. Australia is particularly prone to natural disasters. Bushfires, flooding, drought periods and cyclones dramatically affect people's lives, and alter natural landscapes.

Natural disasters can be devastating for communities affected by them. Recovering from natural disasters also comes with huge economic costs. This can sometimes lead to a harmful cycle in which a nation gets stuck between experiencing disaster and responding to disaster.

Disaster management

Climate action is one of the 17 Sustainable Development Goals agreed to in 2015 by world leaders. One of the identified targets in combating climate change is to strengthen the resilience and adaptive capacity of all countries to natural disasters and hazards related to climate.

It is essential that communities prepare for disasters so as to reduce their impact. The United Nations Office for Disaster Risk Reduction (UNDRR) recommends using technology as part of disaster management, for example:

- warning systems in Japan that trigger emergency breaks in bullet trains if earthquakes are detected
- systems in sub-Saharan Africa that monitor rainfall data and analyse trends to forecast and build resilience to drought
- atlases in China that record the risk of natural disasters, using location data from spatial technologies such as GPS.

After the 2019–20 Australian bushfires, it was argued that satellite technology, drones and mobile phone apps would have been extremely helpful for fighting the fires and communicating with the people affected.

Disaster management should include four steps:

- prevention – reducing hazards before a disaster takes place, so its impact is not as severe (e.g. building schools that are earthquake resistant)
- preparation – training people so they know how to act when a disaster happens (e.g. running evacuation drills)
- response – taking action during a disaster (e.g. emergency crews and volunteers taking on emergency operations)
- recovery – taking action to help people rebuild their lives (e.g. restoring services in a community).

Disaster management is an ongoing process that can occur like a cycle between the phases of prevention, preparation, response and recovery.

HUMANITIES

In Geography this year, you will learn about landscapes and landforms and how they can be degraded by both human and natural causes. You will study a geomorphic hazard, its impacts on a place and various ways of responding to it.

In History, you might also study how past societies have dealt with disasters and managed their responses; for example, how Rapa Nui (Easter Island) inhabitants adapted to life without trees, how Shogunate Japan developed policies to sustain its forests, or how an unstable climate (including drought and heavy monsoons) affected the Khmer Empire.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to investigate a potential natural hazard in your local area. You will research any current disaster-response plans related to managing such an event, and gain an understanding of how various people and businesses in the community would be impacted.

You will find more information on this in Chapters 2, 17, 15 and 16 of *Oxford Humanities and Social Sciences 8 Australian Curriculum*.

MATHS

In Maths this year, you will consolidate and extend your skills in describing and interpreting. This will include creating and analysing plots of non-linear data, investigating the use of sampling methods, and broadening your understanding of measures of spread. You will also perform calculations with percentage changes in financial contexts. You will analyse and represent data, both with and without digital technology.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to weigh up the costs of your disaster-management technology or strategy against its potential benefits, including by estimating the likelihood of natural disasters and the severity of their effects.

You will find help for applying these maths skills and statistics in sections 3B 'Calculating percentages', 3C 'Mark-ups and discounts', 6D 'Plotting linear relationships' and 9A 'Collecting data and sampling methods' of *Oxford Maths 8 Australian Curriculum*.

Figure 2 Floodwaters near Sydney

SCIENCE

In Science this year, you will learn about how the energy of the Earth over long periods of time generates forces that can melt rocks, produce volcanoes and make diamonds. You will also learn how the kinetic energy in the air and waves can cause damage to the surrounding environments during cyclones and tsunamis. The Australian bush also contains large amounts of chemical energy that is transformed into thermal energy during the summer fire season.

To complete this task successfully, you will need to consider how energy is transferred and transformed during natural disasters. This understanding will allow you to predict and potentially reduce the impact of the disaster in your local community.

You will find more information on this in Chapter 2 'The rock cycle' and Chapter 4 'Energy' of *Oxford Science 8 Australian Curriculum*.

The design cycle

To successfully complete this task, you will need to complete each of the phases of the design cycle.

Discover

When designing solutions to a problem, you need to know who you are helping and what they need. The people you are helping, who will use your design, are called your end-users.

Consider the following questions to help you empathise with your end-users:

- Who am I designing for?
- What natural disaster could they face?
- How often could this disaster occur, and on what scale?
- What do they need? What do they not need?
- What does it feel like to face these problems? What words would you use to describe these feelings?
- What could the cost of such a disaster be in terms of lives lost, income lost, damage to private property and public infrastructure, and environmental impact?

To answer these questions, you may need to investigate using different resources, or even conduct interviews or surveys.

Define

Before you start to design your innovative strategy or technology, you need to define the parameters you are working towards.

Define your version of the problem

Rewrite the problem so that you describe the group you are helping, the problem they are experiencing and why it is important. Use the following phrase as a guide.

‘How can we help (the group) to solve (the problem) so that (the reason)?’

Determine the criteria

1 Define the term ‘innovation’. Describe how much a strategy needs to differ from current practice to be considered innovative.
2 Describe how the natural disaster will affect the people in the community.
3 Describe how you could measure whether your solution will reduce the impact of the natural disaster.
4 Explain how you could determine what cost (price) should be acceptable for implementing your solution.

Ideate

Once you know who you’re designing for, and you know what the criteria are, it’s time to get creative!

- Outline the criteria or requirements your designed strategy or technology must fulfil (for example, how many people will be helped, how much they will be helped, how long they will need the help).
- Brainstorm at least one idea per person that fulfils the criteria.

Remember that there are no bad ideas at this stage. One silly thought could lead to a genius innovation!

Build

Draw each design strategy or technological idea. Label each stage of the strategy or part of the technology and explain how it will be used by the community.

Include in the individual strategy or technology:

a the timeline for the activation of the strategy or technology (i.e. how long after the disaster will the idea be ready to be used?)

b the number of people and materials that will be needed for the strategy or technology to reduce the impact of the natural disaster

c a description of how the community will benefit from the strategy or technology.

Present your strategy or technology to your group.

Build the prototype

Choose and build two or three versions of the prototype strategy or technology for your group design.

Use the following questions as a guideline for your prototype.

- What equipment do you have access to?
- What skills do you have, or will you need, to make your prototype strategy or technology?
- How could you model your strategy or technology if equipment is not available?
- How could you test the effectiveness of the prototype strategy or technology with the community?

Test

Use the scientific method to design an experiment that will test the effectiveness of your prototype strategy or technology. Alternatively, conduct a survey of the community to determine their opinion of the usefulness of the prototype.

Conduct your tests or survey your community, and record your results in an appropriate table.

Consider how you could use the results of the experiment or survey to modify your design.

Communicate

Present your design to the class as though you are trying to get your peers to invest in your strategy or technology.

In your presentation, you will need to:

- describe how the natural disaster will affect your community
- describe your prototype strategy or technology
- describe how the prototype will reduce the impact of the natural disaster on the community
- describe the materials, people and money that will be required to have the required effect on the natural disaster.

Check your Student obook pro for the following digital resources to help you with this STEAM project:

Student booklet
This helpful booklet will guide you step-by-step through the project.

What is the design cycle?
This video will help you to better understand each phase in the design cycle.

How to manage your project
This 'how-to' video will help you to manage your time throughout the design cycle.

How to define a problem
This 'how-to' video will help you to narrow your ideas down and define a specific problem.

GLOSSARY

Glossary: Geography

A

alphanumeric grid referencing
a coordinate system on a grid in which each cell is identified by a combination of a letter and number; using this system makes it easy to locate a specific position on a map

annotated visual display (AVD)
a way of presenting the final results of a research project, incorporating images, graphs, notes and explanations in a poster-style format

aquifer
layers of rock or soil in the ground that hold water or that water can pass through

arch
a natural feature, usually rock, that forms a bridge-like arc as a result of erosion

ash
very fine rock and mineral particles, less than 2 millimetres in diameter

B

blowout dunes
horseshoe-shaped disturbances in a sand dune system

C

cardinal points
the four main directions: north, south, east and west

cave
a hollow space along the coast produced by the action of waves

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time

climate change
the long-term change in the average weather patterns of Earth

colony
a country or area under the control of another country, and occupied by people from that country

compass bearings
a precise way of giving compass directions, such as '135° south-east'

constructive waves
gentle waves that deposit material and build up beaches

contour lines
lines drawn on a map that connect points at the same height to show the height and steepness of land

converge
come together from different directions

Country
for Aboriginal peoples, Country is both a place of belonging and a way of knowing; Country includes all living things and embraces creation stories

D

decentralisation
the process of encouraging population growth and job creation in suburbs and smaller regional towns or cities, rather than in central areas of major cities

deforestation
the action of clearing a wide area of trees

deposition
the building up of land through deposits of sand and other materials

destructive waves
strong waves that wear away coasts and remove material

developing countries
less economically developed countries that have some difficulties in supporting the needs of their own people

direction
a way of orienting a map, usually shown by the use of compass points, such as north

diverge
move apart in different directions

Dreaming
the belief system central to some Aboriginal cultures; the Dreaming also provides a moral code and guidance

on interacting with Country; the Dreaming is not fixed in time – it is in the past, present and future

E

ecosystems
communities of organisms that live together and interact with each other in a specific environment

epicentre
the place on the Earth's surface directly above where an earthquake occurs

Equator
an imaginary line that runs around the middle of the Earth, separating the Northern Hemisphere from the Southern Hemisphere

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

export
sending goods or services from one country to another for sale

exurbs
areas beyond a city's suburbs, with some economic and commuting connection to the the city

F

food security
a state where all people at all times have access to enough safe, nutritious food to sustain a healthy life

G

geographical inquiry
the process that geographers use to guide their investigations of people, places and issues

glacial retreat
where the lowest point of a glacier does not extend as far down the mountain as it did previously; this is happening more often because of climate change

glaciers
rivers of ice in mountain and polar landscapes

H

headland
a piece of land jutting out into the sea

hot spots
points where there is volcanic activity, but the hot spots are not on a plate boundary

I

ice ages
cooler periods in the Earth's history when ice covered much of the northern hemisphere and sea levels were much lower than they are today

ice cap
a thick layer of ice that covers an area of land

ice sheets
layers of ice covering a large area of land for a long period of time

industrial age
a period of history that began around 1760; it saw huge social and economic changes in society due to the widespread use of machinery, factories and automatic labour

Industrial Revolution
a period of major change in the late 1700s and early 1800s, where industries were revolutionised by the use of machinery

infrastructure
the facilities and services necessary for any community, city or country to function

internally displaced persons (IDPs)
people who have been forced to migrate, but remain in their home country

K

kampongs
an Indonesian word that means 'villages'; it is also used to refer to slum areas in cities

L

lahars
destructive flows of mud or debris on the slopes of volcanoes

landforms
natural geographic features or shapes that appear on the Earth's surface (e.g. dune, hill, valley, beach or cave)

landscape
a section of the Earth's surface made up of a variety of geographical features (known as landforms) that define and characterise it; landscapes can be natural (e.g. coastal and mountain landscapes) or human (e.g. neighbourhoods and cities)

landscape degradation
a process that occurs when the productivity of land is lost

latitude
imaginary lines running east–west around the Earth's surface, parallel to the Equator, used to work out location and direction

lava
the molten material that flows from a volcano

liquefied natural gas (LNG)
natural gas that has been converted to a liquid form to make it easier and safer to transport and store

longitude
imaginary lines running north–south around the Earth's surface, from the North Pole to the South Pole, used to work out location and direction

longshore drift
the process that moves sediment in a zigzag pattern along a beach by the wash and backwash of waves approaching the shore at an angle

M

magma
the hot, liquid (molten) rock beneath the surface of the Earth

magnetic north
the physical place on the Earth, near the North Pole, to which a magnetised needle points

mantle
the soft layer of hot rock between the crust and the core of the Earth

map
a simplified plan of an area shown from directly above

megalopolis
a collection of large cities that are close together, and so closely

linked that they effectively form one continuous urban area

migrants
people who move from one place to another

migration
movement of people to a new country or area

mountain ranges
series of mountains or hills ranged in lines and connected by high ground

O

oral history
a mix of oral traditions and recorded history – allowing people to share their memories and ensure their stories are never forgotten

P

permanent residents
non-citizens with a permanent visa that allows them to remain in a country indefinitely

plan view
a way of showing something as if the viewer is looking down on it from above; a bird's-eye view

plate boundaries
the edges where two tectonic plates meet; most geologic activities take place here, including volcanoes and earthquakes

polluted
when harmful materials have been introduced into the environment

population density
a measurement of the number of individuals per unit area (e.g. 1500 people per square kilometre)

primary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was collected in the field by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. survey data, hand-drawn maps and photographs)

prime meridian
an imaginary line of longitude that runs from the North Pole to the South Pole; longitude is defined as 0 degrees at the prime meridian

pyroclastic flows
fast-moving and dangerous mixtures of hot gas and rock that are ejected from volcanoes

R

refraction
the process by which the direction of a wave is changed when moving into shallow water

refugees
people who move to another country because of a natural disaster or to avoid persecution

S

secondary data
data for a geographical inquiry that was not collected by the geographer conducting the inquiry (e.g. textbooks, atlases and government websites)

sedimentary rock
rock formed from compacted mud, sand or pebbles, or the remains of living things

settlers
people who leave their homeland by choice to settle in a new country or colony

shield volcanoes
volcanoes characterised by gentle eruptions that emit runny lava over a wide area

stack
a part of a cliff that has separated from the mainland as a result of the erosive effect of the waves

subduction
when two tectonic plates meet, and one is forced under the other

suburbanisation
the process of growing cities outwards by building new housing estates and businesses away from the Central Business District

T

tectonic plates
immense, slowly moving pieces that make up the Earth's surface (or crust)

terraced
formed a flat area on a sloping piece of land (such as a mountain face)

topographic maps
maps that show the shape of the land, its relief and landforms

training walls
walls, banks or jetties built to confine and direct the flow of a river or tide

transform boundary
when two tectonic plates scrape sideways past each other, often causing an earthquake

tsunamis
giant ocean waves, often caused by underwater earthquakes

U

urban renewal
the process of taking areas of land in a city that are no longer being used and redeveloping them

urban sprawl
the growth of a city onto productive farmland on the city fringes

V

volcanic bombs
masses of liquid rock that explode from a volcano and harden before reaching the ground

volcanic cones
triangle-shaped mountains formed as material from volcanic eruptions piles up around the volcanic vent or opening in the Earth's crust

volcanologists
scientists who study and monitor volcanoes

W

wealth inequality
the unequal distribution of money and assets in a group of people

Glossary: History

A

absolute ruler
an individual who governs with supreme authority, unrestricted by laws

absolution
a formal statement from a Christian church that a person is forgiven for what they have done wrong

absolutism
a system of government in which the monarch has complete power; their authority is not restrained by a parliament or other organisation

AD
an abbreviation of the Latin '*Anno Domini*', meaning 'in the year of our Lord' – a term used for any time after the birth of Christ (i.e. after 1 AD); it has largely been replaced by CE

age
a period of history with specific characteristics that make it stand out from other periods (e.g. the Stone Age, the Bronze Age)

anatomy
the study of the human body

Anglo-Saxon
a Germanic people who settled in Britain in the 400s CE; they drove the local Celtic people to the land's extremities

animism
a belief system teaching that all creatures, objects and places have a spirit

anthropologists
people who study human societies, customs and beliefs

apprentices
young people who work for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn the particular skills needed in their job

aqueduct
a construction – such as a series of pipes or canals – that carries water from a source to a destination further away

ariki
a member of a noble or chiefly rank in many Polynesian societies

armaments
military weapons or equipment, such as muskets, canon balls, gun powder and armour

artefacts
objects, small or large, that have been made or changed by humans

artisans
skilled workers in a specialised trade or craft

autopsies
examinations of bodies to discover – or find out more about – the cause of death

B

barbarian
a term used by ancient Romans to describe someone living outside the borders of their empire, whom they considered 'uncivilised'

bartering
the exchanging of goods or services between people (typical of trade before the use of money), where both parties agreed that what was exchanged was of roughly equal value

battlements
the top of the wall around a castle, with regular spaces, through which the people inside could shoot

BC
an abbreviation of 'Before Christ' – a term used for the period of history before the birth of Christ (i.e. before 1 BC); it has largely been replaced by BCE

BCE
an abbreviation of 'Before the Common Era' – a term used for the period of history before the birth of Christ (i.e. before 1 CE); it has largely replaced BC, because it is culturally neutral

bias
a pre-set view about someone or something that is not altered by the presentation of facts and opinions to the contrary

Black Death
a deadly plague that spread across Asia, Europe and Africa during the fourteenth century

bloodletting
the deliberate cutting of someone to cause bleeding; this medieval practice, often performed by barbers, was seen as a treatment and cure for illness

bourgeoise
a person belonging to the middle class who became wealthy from business and trade; in the early modern world, this class was wealthier than the working class, but often looked down on by nobility

buboes
the blackened, swollen, pus-filled lymph nodes (part of the human body's immune system) evident on the body of someone with the bubonic plague

bubonic plague
an infectious disease caused by bacteria (called *Yersinia pestis*), which are carried by fleas on rats and mice; it often quickly kills those who contract it; visible symptoms include buboes

Buddhism
a major world religion that originated in India, based on the teachings of Buddha; it encompasses a variety of traditions, beliefs and spiritual practices

bushido
the code of behaviour of the Japanese samurai warrior that required honour, loyalty (even to death), good living, thrift and martial arts skills

C

caliph
a historical title used for the religious and political leader of the Muslims; the caliph was regarded as the successor of Muhammad

calpulli
in Aztec society, a neighbourhood within a city-state

cannibalism
when a human eats another human's flesh

caste
a social group into which a person is born; castes are part of a social system known as the caste system, which is generally associated with the Hindu religion in India and is still used today

casualties
people who are killed or injured in war or in an accident

catapult
a weapon that worked like a giant slingshot; it hurled large rocks – and sometimes the infected bodies of people and animals – over a wall, e.g. of a city an army might be laying siege to

Catholic Church
the only Christian Church in Europe until the Protestants started breaking away from Rome in the sixteenth century

cause and effect
chains of events and developments over time (both long term and short term), and the impact these have on people and places

CE
an abbreviation of 'Common Era' – a term used for any time after the birth of Christ (i.e. after 1 CE); it has largely replaced AD, because it is culturally neutral

census
a 'head count' or audit of the number of people living in a particular place at a particular time; information collected during a census often includes age, occupation, income, etc.

centralisation
the process of bringing a region under the control of an individual person or small group; the power to make and uphold laws is not shared by many but held by this individual or small group

century
a period of 100 years

chacmool
in Aztec society, a sculpture of a reclining human figure with a tray on its lap, used to hold sacrificial offerings

charter
a formal document in which a person in authority states that certain rights or responsibilities are granted to others

chinampas
in Aztec society, human-made floating islands used for agriculture

chivalry
polite and kind behaviour that shows a sense of honour, especially by men towards women

chronicle
a detailed narrative on an event

chronological order
the order in which events have taken place

chronology
a record of events in the order they took place

circa
a Latin word meaning 'around' or 'approximately' (abbreviated as *c.*)

city-states
independent settlements made up of an inner fortified city surrounded by houses; this built centre was surrounded by farmland that supported (e.g. with food) the urban centre

clans
groups of people linked and united in their aims and behaviours by the knowledge (or a belief) that they share common ancestors

clergy
the priests or ministers of a religion, especially the Christian Church

coat of arms
a design or shield that is a special symbol of a family, city or other organisation

codex
a bound ancient manuscript, similar to a book

commissioning
ordering and paying for the creation of a work of art, building, etc.

commodities
products or raw materials that can be traded, bought, or sold; examples of commodities from the early modern world include spices, precious metals and coffee

communes
medieval towns with local governance and an oath binding them to a larger empire for mutual protection

concubines
women kept for the entertainment and pleasure of a ruler or emperor

conquistador
(pronounced con-kees-ta-dor) a Spanish word for a soldier or conqueror

constitution
the political principles on which a country or society is based and that guide its government; also, a written document that outlines these principles

contestability
refers to explanations or interpretations of past events that are open to debate

continuity and change
the state of remaining the same over time, and the state of progress or decline

conversion (religious)
taking on the beliefs and practices of a religion and excluding all others

Crusades
a series of wars fought by Christians and Muslims between 1096 and 1291 CE over control of the Holy Land

D

daimyo
a feudal lord of Japan who was a large landowner, and offered his loyalty and service to the shogun

Danelaw
an area in north-west England (which includes the city of York) that the King of Wessex gave to the Vikings in exchange for their stopping raids of the region

decade
a period of 10 years

deel
traditional Mongolian clothing, usually made of cotton, wool or silk

deforestation
the action of clearing a wide area of trees

delta
an area of flat, low land, where a river approaches the sea and empties into it

devsirme
the practice of taking boys from non-Muslim families, converting them to Islam and training them for military or civil service in the Ottoman Empire

disenfranchise
to take away somebody's rights, especially their right to vote

dissenting
refusing to accept or openly opposing the teachings of the orthodox church; the term can also mean disagreeing with a commonly held belief or idea

dowry
money and/or property that, in some societies, a wife or her family must pay to her husband when they get married

dynasty
a period of rule by successive members of one extended family

E

empathy
appreciation of the circumstances people faced in the past, and the motivations, values and attitudes behind their actions; empathy is what brings history to life; it connects us as human beings, regardless of how much time has passed

emperor
someone who rules an empire; an empire is a group of countries or areas often speaking different languages and having different cultures, but centrally ruled

Enlightenment
a school of French-inspired thinking that spread through Europe in the eighteenth century; its view was that reason, tolerance and equality should replace superstition, cruelty and injustice

era
a period of time marked by distinctive characteristics, events or circumstances (e.g. the Roman era, the Victorian era)

erosion
the wearing away of the Earth's surface by water, wind and ice

eunuchs
slaves who had been castrated by having their testicles removed; eunuchs had many responsibilities in the Ottoman Empire

evidence
information provided by a source that supports a given interpretation, or provides support for possible answers to inquiry questions

excommunicated
being cut off from the church community (including participation in communion and confession); a religious punishment

exiled
expelled from one's place of birth, usually for political reasons

F

'femme fatale'
a beautiful woman whom men find attractive, but who brings them trouble or unhappiness

feudalism
a set of legal and military customs that served to organise the society of medieval Europe and Japan; under feudalism, a lord (in Japan, a *daimyo*) gave a fief (parcel of land) to a person (called a vassal) in exchange for service and loyalty

finite
a definite limit or fixed size

flagellants
a group of radical Christians who, during the Black Death, whipped themselves to gain God's forgiveness for their sins

G

geishas
Japanese women trained to entertain men with conversation, dancing and singing

guilds
groups of people all working in the same trade (e.g. butchers, tailors, cobblers) who band together in support of their common interests

H

harem
during the Ottoman Empire, the separate part of a Muslim household reserved for wives, concubines and female servants

hereditary
inherited; passed down from one generation to another

heresy
doing or saying something regarded by the medieval Catholic Church (and by some other faiths) as being in serious conflict with its teachings

hierarchy
a social structure that organises people with the most important group on top and others ranked beneath in decreasing order of importance

Holy Land
territory in the Middle East (now mostly made up of Israel and Palestine) that is important to the Christian, Jewish and Muslim religions

humanism
a group of philosophies centred on the importance of human beings, values and evidence, rather than religion, gods and supernatural matters

humours
four liquids – blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile – that were thought in the past to influence a person's health and character

hypothesis
a considered theory or statement, based on research and evidence, about something that has not been proven (plural: hypotheses)

I

ice age
a cooler period in the Earth's history when ice covered much of the northern hemisphere and sea levels were much lower than they are today

Indianisation
the spread of culture, traditions and spiritual beliefs beyond their traditional home in India to other countries around the world

indulgences
ways that Catholics could shorten their time in purgatory and gain quicker entry to heaven

Industrial Revolution
a period driven by the development of steam power, where new methods of transport and production changed the way people worked and lived

infamous
widely known for negative reasons

infrastructure
bridges, roads and public buildings

interpretations
the assumptions and conclusions historians make about an event after the fact; interpretations are formed by examining evidence

J

jarls
the nobles of Viking society

jesters
medieval comedians who joked and 'played the fool' at occasions such as banquets and fairs; they typically wore a multi-pronged floppy hat with bells on it

jury
a group of people who are required to decide on a 'guilty' or 'not guilty' verdict in a court case

K

Kamikaze
(pronounced ka-mee-ka-zee) a Japanese term meaning 'divine wind'; a name given to the storms that saved the Japanese from Mongol invasion in the thirteenth century; during World War II, Japanese pilots who deliberately crashed their planes into Allied ships were called kamikaze

karls
in Viking society, the social class of farmers, merchants and craftsmen

khan
the title given to a leader of a Mongolian community (and, during the thirteenth century, to the head of the Mongol Empire)

khanate
a region (similar to a state or territory) of the Mongol Empire; the Mongol Empire eventually split into four khanates, each administered by a different khan (leader)

kimonos
long, loose Japanese robes with wide sleeves worn as an outer garment; it has a wide belt and is often elaborately decorated; 'kimono' means 'thing to wear'

kingdoms
regions ruled by a king or queen

knights
warriors in medieval Europe

kumis
a fermented dairy product, usually made from the milk of a horse or donkey

L

lineage
the series of families that a person comes from

longhouses
Viking houses, characterised by their long shape, often built into mounds of earth; they sheltered the extended family and their animals

longships
types of ships used by the Vikings to transport warriors on attack-and-raid missions; longships had shallow hulls, making them speedy and easy to manoeuvre, and they were often decorated with mythical creatures

loot
stolen property taken during a violent event

lords
wealthy nobles under the system of feudalism

M

Magna Carta
meaning 'Great Charter'; a document signed in 1215 by England's King John and his nobles – it outlined the rights of the people and meant that the king would thereafter be expected to rule according to the law

manuscripts
in the medieval sense, documents written by hand (usually by monks)

mass
an act of worship in the Catholic Church

medieval period
another name for the Middle Ages of European history

Meiji restoration
a period in Japanese history from 1868 to 1912 when the last shogun was overthrown and the emperor regained control over Japan

mercantile
connected with trade, merchants and commercial or business affairs

midden
a deposit of waste containing shells, animal bones and other refuse that indicates the site of a human settlement

migration
moving to another region either permanently or for an extended period

millennium
a period of 1000 years

***millet* system**
a special legal system in the Ottoman Empire that allowed non-Muslims communities to use their own laws and largely govern themselves

minstrels
medieval singers and musicians who typically wandered around the countryside performing at events (often as part of a small group)

moai
huge human figures created from a single block of stone, present on Rapa Nui (Easter Island) in Polynesia

moat
a wide band of water surrounding a built structure such as a castle; it provided some protection in the event of attack

monasteries
places where monks live, worship and work

monsoons
seasonal heavy rainfall that affects the climate of a large area of Asia

morbidity
the number of people in a population who have a particular disease

mortality rate
a measure of the number of deaths in a particular population

N

nationalism
belief in the superiority of one's own country, often to the detriment of others

New Spain
claimed Spanish territory during the colonisation of the Americas (1521–1821), including parts of North and South America, as well as some Pacific Islands

New World
a term that started being used by Europeans in the late 1400s for the new lands (the Americas) being discovered

nomadic
a society of people who do not live in a set place but move around, usually in search of food and shelter, and good pasture for their animals

O

'Out of Africa'
one model in the theory of how modern humans spread around the world; it hypothesises that modern humans developed in Africa before migrating outwards

outrigger
a wooden structure that is fixed to the side of a boat or ship in order to keep it steady in the water; 'outrigger' can also refer to a boat fitted with such a structure

P

pagans
a term sometimes used by people of Christian, Muslim and Jewish faiths to describe people who do not share their beliefs

palanquin
a covered carriage or fort, consisting of a large box, usually carried on horizontal poles by a number of bearers

pandemic
a term used to describe the spread of an infectious disease across an entire country, a large region, or even the whole world

patriotism
love of one's country and the desire to defend it

patrons
people who devote some of their wealth, time and interest to developing the skills of others (usually in the arts)

Persia
the region in southwestern Asia that is modern-day Iran; the area was once ruled by the Persian empire, a thriving region of the ancient world

perspective
a new approach to painting developed during the Renaissance, which involved making objects larger in the foreground and smaller in the background to suggest distance

perspectives
a point of view about an event or issue; a person's perspective is often influenced by their knowledge, culture or beliefs

plague
a widespread disease with a high death rate

plunder
to steal from, often using violent force

polytheistic
relating to the belief in or worship of more than one god

pre-Columbian
a term used to describe the period in the Americas before the arrival of Christopher Columbus and the Spanish

prehistory
the period of history before written records

primary source
a source that existed or was made at the time in the past being studied

Protestant
a member of one of the new Christian Churches that developed during the Reformation

purgatory
a place where Catholics believed their souls had to suffer for a time, before they were cleansed and pure enough to enter heaven

Q

quarantine
a period of time when an animal or a person that has – or may have – a disease is kept away from others in order to prevent the disease from spreading

R

Reformation
a movement that began in Europe in the sixteenth century when the scholar-monk Martin Luther publicly challenged the Catholic Church; it shifted the balance of power in Europe away from dominant control by the Church

regent
a person who rules in place of a monarch who is temporarily absent from the country (e.g. fighting a war) or who is too young or sick to rule

Renaissance
a period in Europe's history between the late twelfth and sixteenth centuries that saw a revival of culture and learning; a French term meaning 'rebirth'

republic
a system of government in which the power lies with a group of elected officials rather than a king or queen

reservoir
a large body of water (such as a natural or artificial lake) that is used as a supply of fresh water

revolution
a period of rapid change or development

runes
symbols with mysterious or magical significance, sometimes used for protection, luck or to foretell the future

S

sagas
long stories (sometimes mixed with poetry) about heroes who achieved great things and fought noble battles; often a mix of real events, legends and myths

sakoku
the name given to Japan's foreign policy during the Edo period that forbade any Japanese person from leaving Japan, or any foreigner from entering it; the penalty for disobeying was death

samurai
a Japanese medieval warrior; the word 'samurai' means 'one who serves'

sand bars
long, narrow banks of sand, especially at the mouth of a river

Sanskrit
an ancient language of India and the language used in documenting the holy books of Hinduism

Scientific Revolution
a change in thinking among sixteenth- and seventeenth-century European scholars (academics) that placed a new focus on the laws of science and the natural world rather than the spiritual world

secondary source
a source created after the time being studied

secular
not connected to religious or spiritual matters

seppuku
a form of ritual suicide common among Japanese samurai who felt they had been dishonoured; this involved self-disembowelling (cutting open the belly)

serf
a peasant who was forced to live and work on land that belonged to a landowner, whom they had to obey

shoguns
chief military commanders of Japan between the twelfth and nineteenth centuries; shoguns dictated how the country would be ruled; their positions became hereditary during the Ieyasu shogunate

shogunate
the government controlled by the shogun

siege
a military strategy to weaken an area by cutting it off from the outside world

significance
the importance given to a particular historical event, person, etc.

Silk Road
a network of trade routes stretching west from China to the Mediterranean Sea; it was the main means by which silk was introduced to the West

smelters
places where metal is extracted from its ore by a process that involves heating and melting

society
a group of people who organise themselves to best survive in their environment

steppe
a large stretch of grassland (without trees), typically found in places such as Siberia and Mongolia

successor
a person or thing that comes after another

sultan
the ultimate ruler of the Ottoman Empire; he exercised complete political, military, religious, judicial and social control

T

tariff
a tax (usually applied to goods being imported or exported)

Tatars
members of an ethnic group whose members can be found today in countries such as Turkey (Türkiye), Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, Ukraine and Azerbaijan

thing
in Viking society, a gathering or assembly that determined laws

thralls
in Viking society, the social class of slaves, prisoners of war and criminals

time period
a block of time in history

timeline
a sequence of related historical events shown in chronological order; a timeline is generally scaled, with years marked at equal distances

tithe
a tenth of the goods that a person produced, or the money that they earned, which was paid as a tax to support the Church

tournament
a public event held in medieval Europe, similar to a fair or carnival; tournaments featured organised battles and a series of jousts between knights on horseback

treason
the act of betraying one's own country or ruler

tributes
something given as a mark of respect to someone important

V

vagabond
a person who has no home or job and who wanders from place to place

value
a quality of character that a society or community regards highly, e.g. an important Australian value is freedom; a traditional Japanese value is honour

vassals
people who offered their loyalty and service to a lord in return for his protection and the granting of land

W

waka
a Māori canoe; it can be small and used for fishing, or large and used for war

warlord
someone who both rules a society (or community) and heads up its military operations

Westminster system
a system of government that includes a head of state (either the sovereign or their representative), an elected parliament, and a government formed by the political party with the majority support in the lower house of Parliament

Y

yam
a communication system that covered all regions of the Mongol Empire; stations were set up to provide food, shelter and horses to messengers in this system

year
a period of 365 days

yurt
a Mongolian circular tent, with a wooden frame and felt walls

Glossary: Economics and business

B

bank interest
the amount of money paid to a person by a bank for keeping their money in an account with the bank

C

competitors
rival businesses that make products in the same market

D

debt
money that is owed to others

developing countries
less economically developed countries that have some difficulties in supporting the needs of their people

E

employees
people who work for a business

employers
businesses that employ workers to produce goods and services

F

factors of production
economic resources that are divided into four categories: land, labour, capital and enterprise

G

goods and services
goods are physical things (e.g. food and clothing), while services are things people do for us (e.g. cutting our hair)

goods and services tax (GST)
a tax that is taken from consumers when they buy most goods and services

I

income tax
a tax that is taken from a person's income

interest
the cost of borrowing money from a bank; a person has to pay the bank interest on top of the original amount borrowed from the bank

investing
when a person uses their money to make more money over time; for example, by buying a house to rent out to tenants

L

labour market
the supply of and demand for labour; also known as the job market

law of demand
when prices rise, the quantity demanded decreases and when prices fall, the quantity demanded increases

law of supply
the higher the price that a good or service can be sold, the higher the quantity that producers are willing to supply

leased
a contract that allows a person to use a property for a period of time, usually in exchange for rent (money)

living standards
the level of wealth, material goods and comfort available to people

M

market forces
changes in supply and demand that affect how much people are willing to pay for or sell goods and services

marketing
activities that businesses undertake to promote the buying or selling of products

minimum wage
the lowest amount of money that a worker can be paid; it is usually an amount for each hour worked

O

outsourced
to have obtained goods and services from outside suppliers to reduce costs

P

price mechanism
the way price can affect the supply and demand of goods and services

profit
the amount of money a business earns after taking away its expenses

R

resources
natural or manufactured materials that can be used to produce goods and services

S

saving
setting aside money to spend later

service sector
companies, businesses and government enterprises that provide intangible goods that benefit consumers, such as tutoring, accountancy, hairdressing and legal advice

strike
a refusal to work as a form of protest until something is done to address the workers' concerns

T

tax file number (TFN)
a personal reference number used by the government to identify people for tax purposes

tenant
a person who pays rent in exchange for living in a house owned by someone else

W

wage
the amount of money that a worker is paid based on the work they do

workers' unions
organised associations of workers that are formed to protect and further the workers' rights, interests and working conditions

work–life balance
the relationship between a person's work and lifestyle, and the impact they have on each other

Glossary: Civics and citizenship

A

abrogation
cancelling a court-made law by passing an Act of Parliament

absolute majority
the requirement of a candidate (or political party) to win over half the votes to be declared the winner of the electoral division (or form the government)

Act of Parliament
a law made by parliament (state and territory parliaments, or the Commonwealth Parliament of Australia)

Australian Constitution
a written set of rules and principles that guide the way Australian is governed

B

balance of power
the ability of individuals who are Independents or part of a minor party to decide an issue by the way they vote; this is due to no single party or coalition of parties having majority support

balance of probabilities
the standard of proof in civil disputes; for a plaintiff to be successful, they must establish that it is more probable (i.e. likely) than not that their version of the facts is correct

beyond reasonable doubt
the standard of proof in a criminal trial; the judge or jury must be satisfied that there is no 'reasonable doubt' before finding an accused guilty

bill
a proposed law that has not been passed by both houses of parliament

burden of proof
the responsibility for proving the case

C

candidates
members of political parties who are nominated to run for office in an election

civil law
an area of law that defines the rights and responsibilities of individuals, groups and organisations, and regulates private disputes

coalition
two or more political parties that join together in an attempt to win an election and form government

codification
when parliament creates a statute based on a precedent set by a judge

colonisation
the process of setting up outposts or settlements in other lands, by a country, kingdom or empire

common law
law that is created by the courts when a judge makes a ruling about a case; also referred to as a precedent, because it sets a standard for all future judges to refer to when deciding a case

community
a group of people who live in the same place and share interests

constituents
people living in an area that has elected someone to act as a political representative

crime
an act that breaks an existing law, is harmful to an individual or to society as a whole, and is punishable by law

customary law
rules, customs and traditions upheld by First Nations peoples

D

damages
an amount of money that a court orders one party to pay to another party to compensate the wronged party for the loss they have suffered

delegated legislation
rules and regulations made by authorities (such as local councils) who are given the power to do so through an Act of Parliament

direct action
forms of public protest that seek to raise awareness about issues

Dreaming
a belief system at the centre of some Aboriginal cultures, giving meaning

to everything – including creation, spirituality, family, the lands, the waters and the law

E

Elders
key people and keepers of cultural and spiritual knowledge within Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander (First Nations) communities

elections
processes whereby the people are able to choose their representatives and members of parliament

F

federal
relating to the central government of the Commonwealth of Australia

formal vote
a valid ballot paper that has been correctly completed in accordance with the instructions

H

hung parliament
a parliament where no one political party has enough seats to have the overall majority in the House of Representatives

I

ideologies
sets of ideas or beliefs about politics, economics or society

independent
a member of parliament who is not associated with a political party

indictable offences
serious criminal offences that are usually heard by a judge and jury

informal vote
an invalid ballot paper that has not been completed in accordance with the instructions and therefore is not counted in the final vote tally

J

judgment
the decision of the Court in a particular case

jury
a group of people who are required to decide on a 'guilty' or 'not guilty' verdict for a case

L

lobbying
making requests to politicians or public groups to try to influence the government to change the law

M

members of parliament
individuals who have been elected by the people to represent their views and values in parliament

migrants
People who move from one place to another to settle

minority government
a government formed by a party (or coalition of parties) which does not have a majority in the House of Representatives, but is able to govern with the support of the majority all members in the House of Representatives

multicultural
having many different cultures, races and/or religions

O

Opposition
the second largest political party, or coalition of parties, after the government party in the lower house of parliament, which works to scrutinise and oppose government policies

P

parliament
an organisation that makes the laws in a country, often with a lower house to draft laws and an upper house to review the proposed laws; in Australia, the King's representative (the governor-general) is also part of parliament and officially creates the laws

political party
a group of people with similar views and ideas about how a country (nation), state or territory should be governed

precedent
a previous case or example that is used as a guide for decision making when similar circumstances arise

preferential system of voting
a voting system that provides multiple counts of ballot papers to determine who has gained an absolute majority of total votes

proportional voting
a system of voting which allocates seats in proportion to votes cast for candidates in an election

Q

quota
in a Senate election, the number of votes a candidate must receive before they are elected

R

representative democracy
a political system based on citizens voting to elect representatives

royal assent
approval given by the governor-general (as the King's representative) for a bill to become official law

rule of law
the idea that everyone is equal before the law, regardless of their power or status in society

S

simple offences
less serious criminal offences that are usually heard by a magistrate; also called a summary offence

statute law
law that is made by parliament; also called statute, legislation, Act of Parliament or statutory law

W

Westminster parliamentary system
the British parliamentary system, upon which the Australian parliamentary system is modelled

INDEX

D

E

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Y

Z

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author and the publisher wish to thank the following copyright holders for reproduction of their material.

Cover: Belinda Howell/Getty Images.

Contents: Kim Kulish/Corbis via Getty Images, p.iii bottom; tawatchai prakobkit / Alamy Stock Photo, pp. ix–xi; Shutterstock, p. iii top, p.xvi.

Chapter 1: 123RF, p.6 source 1; Getty/shannonstent, p.8 source 4; iStock / Getty Images Plus, p.9 source 6; Getty/istockphoto, p.10 source 7 (a); iStock Unreleased/DavorLovincic, p.10 source 7 (b); jimmyjamesbond/Getty Images, p.10 source 7 (e); Nearmap, p.11 source 8; Andy Selinger/Alamy Stock Photo, p.13 source 3; Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo, p.20 bottom right; Shutterstock, p.2, p.3, p.7 source 2, p.7 source 3, p.10 background, p.8 source 5, p.16 background, p.20 all, p.24 background, p.29 source 33, p.30 source 35, p.34 source 40, p.35 background, p.36 background.

Chapter 2: tawatchai prakobkit / Alamy Stock Photo, p.38; George Karbus Photography/Getty Images, p.40 source 2; Getty Images / tim phillips photos, p.44 source 6; Atlaspix / Alamy Stock Photo, p.44 source 7; Getty Images / Posnov, p.46 source 9; Newspix/Nikki Short, p.47 source 10; Taras Vyshnya / Alamy Stock Photo, p.48 source 11; Olivier Parent / Alamy Stock Photo, p.50 source 13; agefotostock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.52 source 18; FLORIAN PLAUCHEUR/AFP/Getty Images, p.52 source 19; Shutterstock, p.40 source 1, p.41 source 3, p.41 source 4, p.52 source 16, p.52 source 17, p.50 background.

Chapter 3: TAO Images Limited / Alamy Stock Photo, p.59 source 4; Art Phaneuf / Alamy Stock Photo, p.60 source 11; NASA, p.62 source 13; Getty Images / John W Banagan, p.63 source 14; AWM, p.64 source 15; Selfwood / Alamy Stock Photo, p.68 source 2; Museum Victoria / Photographer Rodney Start; Museum Victoria; Indigenous Collections, p.69 source 4; Jon Sparks / Alamy Stock Photo, p.70 source 6; Piter Lenk / Alamy Stock Photo, p.71 source 7; Shawn Fulton, p.72 source 10; Reuters, p.73 source 11; ETH Library Zurich via Reuters, p.73 source 11; Picture by Tambako the Jaguar/Getty images, p.75 source 13; AIATSIS/Jones, p.77 source 16; Tasmania Parks and Wildlife Service, p.77 source 17; Imagebroker / Alamy Stock Photo, p.78 source 19; Science Photo Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.81 source 3; Getty Images / Matteo Colombo, p.83 source 5; GARY HINCKS / SCIENCE PHOTO LIBRARY, p.87 source 10; YE AUNG THU/AFP/Getty Images, p.88 source 11; robertharding / Alamy Stock Photo, p.89 source 12; ZAW MOE HTET/AFP/Getty Images, p.89 source 13; Getty Images / Lee Cohen, p.90 source 14; Shutterstock, p.54 source 1, p.59 source 5, p.59 source 6, p.64 background, p.70 source 5, p.71 source 9, p.71 source 8, p.72 background, p.74 source 12 (all), p.75 bottom, p.76 source 14, p.80 source 2, p.84 source 7, p.86 source 9, p.90 left, p.92 source 17 (bottom).

Chapter 4: Ingo Oeland / Alamy Stock Photo, p.97 source 3; Piter Lenk / Alamy Stock Photo, p.98 source 5; franco tollardo/Getty images, p.102 source 8; David Wall / Alamy Stock Photo, p.103 source 9; Stephen French / Alamy Stock Photo, p.105 source 11; Richard Milnes / Alamy Stock Photo, p.106 source 12; Westend61 GmbH / Alamy Stock Photo, p.106 source 13; David J. Green / Alamy Stock Photo, p.107 source 14; AAP, p.110 source 2; USFWS Photo / Alamy Stock Photo, p.112 source 6; Nature Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.113 source 7; Neo Infrastructure, p.114 source 9; Image Professionals GmbH / Alamy Stock Photo, p.114 source 10; Ghost Gear Reporter, p.115 source 12; Geo Images, p.116 source 13; Geo Images, p.117 source 16; NOBORU HASHIMOTO/AFP/Getty Image, p.120 source 4; CHOO YOUN-KONG/AFP via Getty Images, p.121 source 5; Getty Images/DigitalGlobe, p.122 source 6; Getty Images/DigitalGlobe, p.122 source 7; Canva Pty Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.125 source 9; AirView Online, p.126 source 13; Shutterstock, p.94 source 1, p.97 source 2, p.97 source 4, p.98 bottom, p.104 source 10, p.111 source 4, p.119 source 3.

Chapter 5: Getty Images / Sellwell, p.128 source 1; Frédéric Soltan/Corbis/Getty Images, p.130 source 1; Tim Graham/Getty images, p.133 source 7; AsiaDreamPhoto / Alamy Stock Photo, p.136 source 13; Rob Walls / Alamy Stock Photo, p.139 source 16; Universal Images Group North America LLC / Alamy Stock Photo, p.141 source 19; Cameron Davidson/Corbis, p.150 source 8; Atlantide Phototravel/ Getty images, p.155 source 13; Nicolas Boullosa/Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic (CC BY 2.0), p.156 source 14; Matador Network, p.157 source 15; Pgiam/Getty Images, p.158 source 16; Getty Images / Photography by Mangiwau, p.162 source 3; Development Victoria, p.163 source 4 (top); Getty Images / 4FR, p.163 source 4 (bottom); National Library of Australia, p.167 source 9; © City2see.com, p.167 source 10; Shutterstock, p.132 source 6, p.133 source 8, p.133 source 9, p.135 source 12, p.139 source 17, p.140 source 18, p.142 source 22, p.145 source 3, p.148 source 6, p.149 source 7, p.151 source 9 (all), p.152 source 10, p.153 top, p.158 background, p.160 bottom, p.164 source 5, p.165 source 6, p.166 source 8.

Chapter 6: Anjo Kan / Alamy Stock Photo, p.170 source 1; AHMAD AL-ATRASH/AFP via Getty Images, p.172 source 1; Magnum Photos/Jonas Bendiksen, p.172 source 2; Dunrobin Studios / Alamy Stock Photo, p.175 source 6; Sean Pavone / Alamy Stock Photo, p.178 source 9; Jochen Brood / Alamy Stock Photo, p.179 source 11; Photos courtesy of Ross Ramsay, p.180 source 12; Yuen Man Cheung/Alamy Stock Photo, p.180 source 13; Imaginechina Limited / Alamy Stock Photo, p.181 source 14; Museums Victoria, p.184 source 1; National Archives of Australia, p.184 source 2; Scott Barbour/Getty Images, p.187 source 6 (c); Katrina Tepper/Newspix, p.187 source 6 (a); Chris Jackson/Getty Images, p.187 source 6 (b); Matt Carr/Getty Images, p.187 source 6 (d); david hancock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.192 source 12; Mark Calleja/newspix, p.190 source 10; Shutterstock, p.188 source 7, p.188 source 8, p.189 source 9, p.192 bottom.

Chapter 7: iWebbtravel / Alamy Stock Photo, p.196; Getty Images/AFP, p.198 source 1; Martin Bennett / Alamy Stock Photo, p.201 source 2; Cultura RM / Alamy Stock Photo, p.202 source 3; Berig. Shared under CC BY-SA 4.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/, p.204 source 7; Transcendental Graphics / Contributor/ Getty, p.204 source 8; North Wind Picture Archives / Alamy Stock Photo, p.207 source 11; Photo 12 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.212 source 17; CPA Media Pte Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.213 source 19; Rapp Halour / Alamy Stock Photo, p.214 source 20 (left); D. Callcut / Alamy Stock Photo, p.214 source 20 (right); Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.216 source 23; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.217 source 25; 123rf, p.218 source 28; Shutterstock, p.200 source 1, p.205 bottom, p.206 bottom, p.209 top right, p.211 right, p.215 source 21, p.215 source 22, p.219 source 29.

Chapter 8: Valery Egorov / Alamy Stock Photo, p.222 source 1; Michael Nicholson/Corbis /Getty Images, p.224 left; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.225 top; Bettmann/Getty Images, p.225 bottom; British Library Board. All Rights Reserved / Bridgeman Images, p.227 source 3; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.227 source 4; colaimages / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 (a); Ivy Close Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 (b); Heritage Image Partnership Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 (c); Lebrecht Music & Arts / Alamy Stock Photo, p.228 (d); Pavel Kusmartsev / Alamy Stock Photo, p.232 source 7; Art Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.233 source 9; The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.233 source 10; DeAgostini/Getty Images, p.234 source 11; Hemis / Alamy Stock Photo, p.236 source 14 (left); Franck Fotos / Alamy Stock Photo, p.237 source 16; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.240 source 18; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.240 source 19; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.241 source 20; Archive

Photos/Getty Images, p.242 source 1 (top); Stillman Rogers / Alamy Stock Photo, p.242 source 1 (middle); ASP Religion / Alamy Stock Photo, p.242 source 1 (bottom); FORGET Patrick / Alamy Stock Photo, p.243 source 2; Stefano Bianchetti / Bridgeman Images, p.245 source 4; Lebrecht Music & Arts / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (a); Ivy Close Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (b); Ivy Close Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (c); Lanmas / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (d); Florilegius / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (e); Historic Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.246 source 5 (e); Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.247 source 7; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.249 source 10; AAP/ Supplied, p.250 source 11; Angelo Hornak/ Corbis via Getty Images, p.253 source 3; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.253 source 4; FALKENSTEINFOTO / Alamy Stock Photo, p.254 source 6; Bridgeman Art Library, p.255 source 8; ART Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.256 source 9; Bettmann/Gettty Images, p.256 source 10; Royal Armouries Museum / Alamy Stock Photo, p.258 source 12; British Museum, p.262 source 18; Bettmann/Gettty Images, p.262 source 19; Heritage Image Partnership Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.264 source 21; GoFrance / Neil Sutherland / Alamy Stock Photo, p.266 source 26; Dennis Kunkel Microscopy, Inc/SPL, p.268 source 1; John Downer/Getty, p.268 source 2; Photo12/ UIG/Getty Images, p.269 source 3; Science Photo Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.270 source 5; Charles Walker Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.273 source 8; CPA Media Pte Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.274 source 9; AKG Images, p.275 source 11; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.279 source 14; © Antiquity Publications Ltd, 2020, p.279 source 16; Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.280 source 17; Science Photo Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.282 source 19; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.283 source 20; Dipper Historic / Alamy Stock Photo, p.286 source 24; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.281 source 18; Shutterstock, p.224 source 1 right, p.236 source 13, p.236 source 14 (right), p.237 source 15, p.252 source 2, p.259 source 16, p.265 source 24, p.272 source 7, p.285 source 23, p.266 source 25, p.267 source 27.

Chapter 9: Imagebroker / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.0 source 1, p.9.34 & p.9.35 background; The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.2 top; Keith Corrigan/Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.3 bottom; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.2 bottom; National Geographic Image Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.3 top; AGF Srl / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.5 source 4; p.9.10 source 2; Keith Corrigan/ Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.4 source 2; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.5 source 3; Archive World / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.8 source 9; SPCOLLECTION / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.11 source 3; Art Collection 2 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.11 source 4; Rapp Halour / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.16 source 12; The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.17 source 13; DeAgostini/Getty Images, p.9.18 source 15; Leemage/Corbis via Getty Images, p.9.20 source 1; AF archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.25 source 10; Getty Images, p.9.27 source 15; DEA PICTURE LIBRARY/ De Agostini/Getty Images, p.9.27 source 14; incamerastock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.9.31 source 20; Adobe, p.9.8 source 8; Shutterstock, p.9.8 source 7, p.9.8 source 8, p.9.14 source 9, p.9.15 source 10, p.9.22 source 5, p.9.22 source 6, p.9.25 source 11, p.9.23 source 8, p.9.30 source 18, p.9.31 source 21, p.9.32 source 23, p.9.14 source 8, p.9.33 source 25, p.9.34 source 28.

Chapter 10: imageBROKER / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.0 source 1, p.10.36 & p.10.37 background; Werner Otto / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.2 top; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.2 bottom left; The Granger Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.3 top left ; Library of Congress, Rare Book and Special Collections Division, p.10.3 bottom; Dennis Hallinan / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.3 top right; Album / British Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.8 source 6; British Library. Released under CC BY 4.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/ by/4.0/, p.10.10 source 10; Artokoloro / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.13 source 2; DeAgostini/Getty Images, p.10.13 source 3; Album / British Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.15 source 6; Fine Art Images/ Heritage Images/Getty Images, p.10.16 source 7; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.17 source 9; IanDagnall Computing / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.19 source 12; GRANGER - Historical Picture Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.20 source 14; Hulton Archive/Getty Images, p.10.22 source 16; North Wind Picture Archives / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.23 source 18; © GraphicaArtis / Bridgeman Images, p.10.25 source 20; CNMages / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.26 source 21; The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.26 source 24; IanDagnall Computing / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.28 source 1; PA Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.29 source 4; Look and Learn / Bridgeman Images, p.10.30 source 5; incamerastock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.31 source 6; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.31 source 7 top middle; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.31 source 7 top right; Art Collection 2 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.31 source 7 bottom middle; IanDagnall Computing / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.31 source 7 bottom right; ART Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.32 source 8; ART Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.10.33 source 9; Used with permission of William Bristow, p.10.34 source 10; Used with permission of Prof. Peter Harrison, p.10.35 source 14; Shutterstock, p.10.2 bottom right, p.10.6 source 4, p.10.10 source 8, p.10.14 source 4, p.10.16 source 8, p.10.18 source 10, p.10.18 source 11, p.10.19 source 13, p.10.23 source 17, p.10.26 source 22, p.10.28 source 2, p.10.29 source 3, p.10.31 source 7 top left, p.10.31 source 7 bottom left, p.10.34 source 13, p.10.36 source 15.

Chapter 11: NPL – DeA Picture Library / Bridgeman Images, p.292 source 1; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.294 top; Everett Collection Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.295 top; Peter Horree / Alamy Stock Photo, p.297 source 5; NPL - DeA Picture Library / Bridgeman Images, p.299 source 9; Leemage/ Corbis /Getty Images, p.300 source 10; Kevin Fleming/Corbis/VCG/Getty Images, p.300 source 11; Icom Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.301 source 12; Bettman / Getty Images, p.302 source 13; Icom Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.302 source 14; Icom Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.303 source 15; British Library Board. All Rights Reserved / Bridgeman Images, p.304 source 17; Heritage Image Partnership Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.305 source 18; Simon Burchell. Shared under CC BY-SA 3.0. https://creativecommons.org/ licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en, p.305 source 19; Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.306 source 20; The Bridgeman Art Library/ De Agostini Picture Library/G. Dagli Orti, p.308 source 24; Icom Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.312 source 31; British Museum, p.317 source 6; Bridgeman Images, p.319 source 8; Adobe, p.318 source 7; Bridgeman Images, p.320 source 10; Archives Charmet / Bridgeman Images, p.322 source 12; North Wind Picture Archives / Alamy Stock Photo, p.324 source 1; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.325 source 2; North Wind Picture Archives / Alamy Stock Photo, p.325 source 3; GRANGER - Historical Picture Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.326 source 4; DeAgostini/Getty Images, p.328 source 6; Gary Todd, p.329 source 8; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.330 source 9; Shutterstock, p.297 source 4, p.298 source 6, p.298 source 7, p.299 source 8, p.306 source 21, p.309 source 27, p.309 source 26, p.327 source 5 bottom, p.327 source 5 top, p.312 source 29, p.315 source 3.

Chapter 12: Ivy Close Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.334 bottom; robertharding / Alamy Stock Photo, p.335 top left; FORGET Patrick / Alamy Stock Photo, p.335 top right; Shibo Yang / Alamy Stock Photo, p.336 source 2; dpa picture alliance archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.338 source 5; OJPHOTOS / Alamy Stock Photo, p.340 source 9; dpa picture alliance archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.341 source 10; Ciaran Kelly/Alamy Stock Photo, p.341 source 11; ©aisa; The Bridgeman Art Library, p.342 source 12 top; Werner Forman/ Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.342 source 12 bottom; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.345 source 16; Pictorial Press Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.346 source 18;

Werner Forman/Universal Images Group/ Getty Image, p.348 source 25; Bridgeman, p.348 source 24; Peter Barritt / Alamy Stock Photo, p.350 source 1; Jean Soutif / Look At Sciences / Science Photo Library, p.351 source 3; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.351 source 5; Arctic-Images/Getty Images, p.352 source 6; AF archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.352 source 7; British Library Board. All Rights Reserved / Bridgeman Images, p.355 source 10; akg-images / Werner Forman, p.357 source 14; © The Trustees of the British Museum, p.357 source 13; © The Trustees of the British Museum, p.357 source 13; agefotostock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.353 source 8; David Noton Photography / Alamy Stock Photo, p.353 background; Art Collection 2 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.359 source 2; © The Trustees of the British Museum, p.360 source 4; National Geographic Image Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.365 source 11; All Canada Photos / Alamy Stock Photo, p.365 source 12; Price, N., Hedenstierna-Jonson, C., Zachrisson, T., Kjellström, A., Storå, J., Krzewińska, M., . . . Götherström, A. (2019). Viking warrior women? Reassessing Birka chamber grave Bj.581. Antiquity, 93(367), 181–198. doi:10.15184/aqy.2018.258, p.368 source 18 and 19; Shutterstock, p.332 source 1, p.334 top, p.337 source 4, p.339 bottom, p.343 source 14, p.346 source 17, p.354 source 9, p.350 source 2, p.364 source 10, p.366 source 14, p.366 source 16.

Chapter 13: Tuul and Bruno Morandi / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.0 source 1, p.10.46 & p.10.47 background; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.2 bottom; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.2 top; History and Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.3 top left; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.3 top right; In Pictures Ltd./Corbis/Getty Images, p.13.18 & p.13.19 background; Bloomsbury/Wayne Reynolds, p.13.5 source 4; GFC Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.7 source 6 left; Dean Conger/Corbis/ Getty Images, p.13.8 source 8; mauritius images GmbH / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.9 source 11; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.10 source 12; RGR Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.13 source 16; History and Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.15 source 20; lunstream / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.17 source 23; GL Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.24 source 7; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.25 source 8; Lebrecht Music & Arts / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.28 source 12; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.32 source 16; Bettmann / Getty Images, p.13.33 source 18; Edinburgh University Library / With kind permission of the University of Edinburgh / Bridgeman Images, p.13.34 source 21; CPA Media Pte Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.36 source 1; michel Setboun/Getty Images, p.13.39 source 6; Hemis / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.39 source 7; Bridgeman Images, p.13.42 source 10; akg-images / Erich Lessing, p.13.44 source 13, p.13.44 & p.3.45 background; The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.46 source 15; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.9 source 10; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.19 source 27; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.41 source 9; The Art Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.40 source 8; Granger Historical Picture Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.13.43 source 12

Chapter 14: LeoPatrizi/ Getty Images, p.14.0 source 1; Werner Forman/Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.14.2 top; DeAgostini/ Getty Images, p.14.3 bottom; Luisa Ricciarini / Bridgeman Images, p.14.3 top; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.4 source 2; Shirlee Klasson / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.6 source 6; Sonia Halliday Photo Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.6 source 5; Album / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.8 source 8; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.9 source 10; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.10 source 11; Historical Picture Archive/Corbis/ Getty Images, p.14.14 source 15; Jon Arnold Images Ltd / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.14 source 16; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.16 source 21; Alex Segre / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.16 source 20; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.20 source 5; mauritius images GmbH / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.21 source 7; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.23 source 9; Art Archive, p.14.26 source 13; Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.27 source 14; Science History Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.27 source 14; ART Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.28 source 15; Niday Picture Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.28 source 16; Bettmann/ Getty Images, p.14.33 source 5; INTERFOTO / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.35 source 8; Sonia Halliday Photo Library / Alamy Stock Photo, p.14.36 source 9; Bridgeman Art Library, p.14.32 source 4; Shutterstock, p.14.2 bottom, p.14.5 source 3, p.14.7 source 7, p.14.11 source 12, p.14.12 source 13, p.14.13 source 14, p.14.14 source 17, p.14.15 source 19, p.14.22 source 8, p.14.25 source 12, p.14.18 source 1, p.14.19 source 4, p.14.21 source 6, p.14.24 source 11, p.14.30 source 1, p.14.31.

Chapter 15: MARKA / Alamy Stock Photo, p.376 bottom right; © 2022 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston. All rights reserved. / William Sturgis Bigelow Collection / Bridgeman Images, p.379 source 3; akg-images / Werner Forman, p.380 source 4; White House Photo / Alamy Stock Photo, p.381 source 5; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.387 source 2 (a); The History Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.387 source 2 (b); The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.387 source 2 (c); FLHC24 / Alamy Stock Photo, p.387 source 2 (d); Ancient Art and Architecture Collection Ltd. / Bridgeman Images, p.388 source 3; Adam Zayer / Alamy Stock Photo, p.395 source 13; DeAgostini/ Getty Images, p.396 source 15; agefotostock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.401 source 19; Bridgeman Images, p.402 source 1; Henry Guttmann Collection/Hulton Archive/ Getty Images, p.403 source 2; The Picture Art Collection / Alamy Stock Photo, p.404 source 3; Alamy/Matthew Corrigan, p.407 source 9; World History Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.409 source 12; Art Archive, p.409 source 13; Matteo Omied / Alamy Stock Photo, p.410 source 14; Shutterstock, p.374 source 1, p.376 bottom left, p.377 top, p.384 source 8, p.406 source 7, p.408 source 11, p.412 source 17.

Chapter 16: Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.3 top right; Hemis / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.8 source 9; Pictures Ltd./Corbis/Getty Images, p.16.11 source 13; Arcaid Images / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.12 source 14; Martin Lindsay / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.14 source 17; TANG CHHIN SOTHY/AFP/Getty Images, p.16.14 source 18; Peter Horree / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.17 source 22; Getty Images, p.16.18 source 25; Martin Lindsay / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.21 source 29; Design Pics Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.23 source 34; Design Pics Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.26 source 1; David Wall / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.27 source 3; iStock/Eliza Snow, p.16.30 source 6; agefotostock / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.31 source 7; Design Pics Inc / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.33 source 11; Sebastien Lecocq/Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.36 source 19; Thierry Tronnel/Corbis/Getty Images, p.16.37 source 20; Thierry Falise/LightRocket via Getty Images, p.16.38 source 23; Getty Images, p.16.39 source 24; Dreamstime, p.16.45 source 5; Chris Hellier / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.46 source 7; Wellcome Library, London. Wellcome Images. Attribution only licence CC BY 4.0 http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/, p.16.46 source 8; Chronicle / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.47 source 9; Sebastian Wasek / Alamy Stock Photo, p.16.48 source 10; A hypothetical visualisation of decorative elements at Angkor Wat, 12th century, Tom Chandler, Chandara Ung, Brent McKee and Mike Yeates, Monash University, 2019, p.16.49 source 14; Shutterstock, p.16.0 source 1, p.16.50 & p.16.51 background, p.16.2 top, p.16.3 top left, p.16.3 top middle, p.16.5 source 5, p.16.5 source 6, p.16.6 source 7, p.16.9 source 10, p.16.11 source 12, p.16.13 source 15, p.16.15 source 19, p.16.16 source 21, p.16.17 source 23, p.16.18 source 24, p.16.19 source 26, p.16.20 source 20, p.16.21 source 31, p.16.22 source 32, p.16.23 source 35, p.16.24 source 36, p.16.26 source 2, p.16.32 source 8, p.16.38 source 22, p.16.38 source 21, p.16.41 source 25, p.16.41 source 26, p.16.40 left, p.16.42 source 2, p.16.43 source 3, p.16.44 source 4, p.16.45 source 6, p.16.48 source 11.

Chapter 17: All Canada Photos / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.0 source 1, p.17.34 & p.17.35

background; University of Auckland, p.17.2 bottom, p.17.9 source 14; DeAgostini/Getty Images, p.17.3 top; Florilegius / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.3 bottom; Travel Pix / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.4 source 3; Donaleen Shiell / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.5 source 5; Copyright Herbert K. Kane, LLC, p.17.8 source 12; PRISMA ARCHIVO / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.6 source 7; Roland Stockmann / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.6 source 8; Dreamstime, p.17.12 source 19; Danita Delimont / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.13 source 20; NZ Herald, p.17.13 source 21; Werner Forman/Universal Images Group/ Getty Images, p.17.14 source 22; Look and Learn / Bridgeman Images, p.17.14 source 23; PictureLux / The Hollywood Archive / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.15 source 24; Science & Society Picture Library / Getty Images, p.17.16 source 2; Horizon Images/ Motion / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.17 source 4; Sawassakoran Mattapraprut/Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.17 source 3; SPCOLLECTION / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.18 source 5; Werner Forman/Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.17.21 source 8; Dorling Kindersley RF/ Getty Images, p.17.21 source 8; Darroch Donald / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.21 source 8; Bettmann/Getty Images, p.17.21 source 8; General Photographic Agency/Getty Images, p.17.21 source 8; Gary Blake / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.23 top; Werner Forman/ Universal Images Group/Getty Images, p.17.25 source 13; Angas, George French 1822-1886: Motupoi Pah and Roto-aire Lake; Tongariro in the distance / George French Angas [del] J W Giles - [London ; McLean, 1847]. Ref: B-080-028. Alexander Turnbull Library, Wellington, New Zealand. /records/22347474, p.17.24 source 10; Sawassakoran Mattapraprut/Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.26 source 1; Newscom / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.27 source 2; The Natural History Museum/Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.28 source 4; [Robley, Horatio Gordon] 1840-1930: Tapu. [1863 or 1864]. Ref: A-080-003. Alexander Turnbull Library, Wellington, New Zealand. /records/22690532, p.17.28 source 5; Robert Harding/Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.30 source 7; Bonhams, London, UK / Bridgeman Images, p.17.31 source 10; Alamy/Fort Jackson Leader, p.17.31 source 9; W. JOEST / AKG Images, p.17.30 source 8; Matteo Omied / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.32 source 14; Nik Wheeler/Corbis, p.17.33 source 15; one-image photography / Alamy Stock Photo, p.17.27 source 3; Shutterstock, p.17.2 top, p.17.5 source 6, p.17.10 source 15, p.17.12 source 18, p.17.24 source 12, p.17.10 source 16, p.17.19 bottom right.

Chapter 18: R&R PhotoStudio / Brent Parker Jones /Lee Blaylock, Sebastian Sedlak/Oxford University Press, p.427 left; Noriko Hayashi/ Bloomberg via Getty Images, p.429 source 8; Shutterstock, p.420, p.422 source 1, p.424 source 1, p.424 source 2, p.426 source 4, p.427 source 5, p.428 source 6.

Chapter 19: Kim Kulish/Corbis via Getty Images, p.443 source 2; LeoPatrizi/Getty, p.442 source 1; Michael Dodge/Getty Images, p.444 source 3; AAP/Julian Smith, p.445 source 5; ChameleonsEye, p.430 source 1; Shutterstock, p.432 source 1, p.433 source 2, p.435 source 4, p.436 source 8, p.437 source 9, p.438 source 10, p.440 source 11, p.441 source 14, p.445 source 4, p.446 background, p.448 source 1, p.449 source 2, p.450 background, p.451 source 5, p.452 source 6.

Chapter 20: Human Rights Commission, p.461 source 4; Graham Denholm/Getty Images, p.462 source 5; Richard Milnes / Alamy Stock Photo, p.454; Shutterstock, p.456 source 1, p.458 source 1, p.460 source 3, p.459 source 2, p.460 bottom, p.462 bottom.

Chapter 21: David Gray/Bloomberg/Getty Images, p.464 source 1; MICK TSIKAS / AAP Image, p.467 source 2; Australian Electoral Commission, p.475 source 11; Jack Nicolson/ Ribbery Figures, p.477 source 13; Sam Mooy/ Getty Images, p.478 source 1; Jenny Evans/ Getty Images, p.479 source 2; Richard Milnes / Alamy Stock Photo, p.481 source 4; ALEX ELLINGHAUSEN/News Ltd, p.484 source 6; Public Records Office, Victoria, p.485 source 8; simonkr / Getty Images, p.483 source 5; Graham Denholm/Getty Images, p.486; Shutterstock, p.469 bottom, p.469 source 4, p.475 source 10, p.480 source 3, p.471 source 6, p.471 source 7.

Chapter 22: Australian Government Department of Home Affairs. Released under CC BY 3.0 AU https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/au/deed.en, p.493 source 4; National Archives of Australia, p.494 source 5; Sourced from the Federal Register of Legislation at 08/08/2022 For the latest information on Australian Government law please go to https://www.legislation.gov.au. Released under CC BY 4.0 https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/, p.495 source 7; MB Media Solutions / Alamy Stock Photo, p.498 source 3; The Glass Magazine, p.498 source 3; John Parra/Getty Images, p.498 source 3; Shutterstock, p.488 source 1, p.490 source 1, p.491 source 2, p.492 source 3, p.493 right, p.496 source 1, p.497 source 2.

Chapter 23: High Court of Australia, p.504 source 1; David Crosling / Newspix, p.505 source 2; AAP/Paul Miller, p.513 top; AAP/Mick Tsikas, p.513 bottom; Getty/ Michael Masters, p.514 top; Getty/Michael Masters, p.514 middle; AAP/Lukas Coch, p.514 bottom; Getty Images / dcdebs, p.515 source 6; Adam Ward / Newspix, p.516 source 7; Westend61 GmbH / Alamy Stock Photo, p.521 source 11; RyersonClark/Getty Images, p.519 source 9; Shutterstock, p.512 source 2, p.512 source 3, p.520 source 10, p.522 source 13, p.520 bottom, p.502 source 1, p.507 source 5, p.518 source 8, p.511 source 1 (b).

STEAM project 1: Shutterstock, p.524 fig 1; © Commonwealth of Australia 2019. CC BY 3.0 AU licence, p.525 fig 2.

STEAM project 2: Alex Coppel / Newspix, p.528 fig 1; Shutterstock, p.529 fig 2.

Glossary and Index: Shutterstock, p.532; © Royal Armouries Museum / Bridgeman Images, p.544.

Every effort has been made to trace the original source of copyright material contained in this book. The publisher will be pleased to hear from copyright holders to rectify any errors or omissions.

WORLD: POLITICAL

* *Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia*

180°
150°W
120°W
90°W
60°W
30°W
0°
30°E
O C E A N
Kalaallit Nunaat
(Greenland)
(Denmark)
Arctic Circle
ICELAND
Reykjavik
Alaska
(USA)
60°N
CANADA
Ottawa
St Pierre and Miquelon
(France)
ATLANTIC
Washington DC
Azores
(Portugal)
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
Bermuda (UK)
OCEAN
30°N
P A C I F I C
BAHAMAS
Nassau
Tropic of Cancer
Havana
CUBA
Socorro Island
(Mexico)
MEXICO
HAITI
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC
CAPE
VERDE
Hawaii
(USA)
Mexico City
Port-au-Prince
Santo Domingo
Clarion Island
(Mexico)
GUATEMALA
Guatemala City
42
43
44
45
46
HONDURAS
Praia
San Salvador
Tegucigalpa
47
48
49
50
EL SALVADOR
NICARAGUA
MARSHALL
ISLANDS
Majuro
O C E A N
Clipperton
(France)
Managua
San Jose
COSTA RICA
Caracas
TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO
Port of Spain
Panama City
PANAMA
VENEZUELA
GUYANA
Georgetown
Paramaribo
French Guiana (France)
Bogota
COLOMBIA
SURINAME
NAURU
South Tarawa
Yaren
Quito
Equator
0°
Galapagos Islands
(Ecuador)
ECUADOR
KIRIBATI
SOLOMON
ISLANDS
Honiara
Funafuti
TUVALU
PERU
BRAZIL
Lima
SAMOA
Apia
American Samoa
(USA)
VANUATU
Port Vila
FIJI
Suva
French
Polynesia
(France)
Brasilia
La Paz
BOLIVIA
Sucre
TONGA
Nukualofa
NIUE
Alofi
COOK
ISLANDS
Avarua
New Caledonia
(France)
PARAGUAY
Tropic of Capricorn
Pitcairn Island
(UK)
Asuncion
Norfolk Island
(Australia)
Rapa Nui
(Easter Island)
(Chile)
San Felix
(Chile)
CHILE
30°S
International Date Line
Juan Fernandez Islands
(Chile)
Santiago
URUGUAY
Buenos Aires
Montevideo
ARGENTINA
Wellington
NEW ZEALAND
Chatham Islands
(New Zealand)
LEGEND
Country border
Disputed country border
Country capital city
Azores
(Portugal)
Dependency
Auckland Islands
(New Zealand)
Falkland Islands (UK)
South Georgia (UK)
0
1000
2000
3000 km
N
SCALE 1:77 000 000 at 40°N and S
1 centimetre on the map measures
770 kilometres on the ground.
Modified Times Projection
60°S
O C E A N
Antarctic Circle
ANTARCTICA
180°
150°W
120°W
90°W
60°W
30°W
0°

Coastal landscapes are some of the most highly populated areas on Earth. We use the coast for many different purposes, including for recreational activities such as surfing, swimming and sailing. In Burleigh Heads, Queensland (shown in this image), the regular movements of water and wind have shaped the coastline to make it an ideal surfing destination. Coasts are dynamic places, meaning they are constantly changing. The sand that this surfer walks over today will by tomorrow have moved along the beach in a process known as longshore drift.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

visit us at **oup.com.au** or
contact customer support at **oup.com.au/help**